

The background of the cover is a mosaic depicting several figures in classical Roman or Greek attire. On the left, a woman is shown from the chest up, wearing a patterned garment. On the right, a man is seated, wearing a long, draped robe (pallium) over a tunic, with his hands resting on his lap. The mosaic is composed of small, irregular tiles in shades of brown, tan, and black.

6 T H E D I T I O N

WHEELLOCK'S LATIN

Frederic M. Wheelock

Revised by Richard A. LaFleur

*The
Classic
Introductory
Latin Course,
Based
on Ancient
Authors*

HERBERT S. MATSEN
605 SOUTH 34TH AVENUE
YAKIMA, WA 98902-3928
U.S.A.

AUG 19 2003

Wheelock's Latin



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2010

<http://www.archive.org/details/wheelockslatin00whee>

Wheelock's Latin

Frederic M. Wheelock

Revised by **Richard A. LaFleur**

6th Edition



HarperResource

An Imprint of HarperCollins Publishers

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Maps

pages xlvii–xlix: All maps copyright by Richard A. LaFleur and Thomas R. Elliott with materials courtesy of the American Philological Association's Classical Atlas Project (http://www.unc.edu/depts/cl_atlas)

Photographs

cover (detail) and page 289: Virgil between two Muses, mosaic, early 3rd century A.D., Musée National du Bardo, Tunis, Tunisia—Giraudon/Art Resource, NY; **page xxxiv:** Giraudon/Art Resource, NY; **pages xl, 7, 8, 23, 30, 73, 88, 102, 108, 120, 127, 139, 154, 176, 177, 201, 208, 209, 216, 227, 282:** Scala/Art Resource, NY; **pages 42, 47, 87, 153, 160, 217, 241:** Erich Lessing/Art Resource, NY; **pages 53, 169, 170:** Nimatallah/Art Resource, NY; **pages 60, 244:** SEF/Art Resource, NY; **p. 80:** The Pierpont Morgan Library/Art Resource, NY; **page 96:** Fine Art Photographic Library, London/Art Resource, NY; **page 114:** Philadelphia Museum of Art: The George W. Elkins Collection; **pages 133, 199:** Alinari/Art Resource, NY; **page 192:** Tate Gallery, London/Art Resource, NY; **page 265:** James C. Anderson, jr.

Editorial consultant: Prof. Ward Briggs, University of South Carolina

WHEELOCK'S TM is a trademark of Martha Wheelock and Deborah Wheelock Taylor.

WHEELOCK'S LATIN (*Sixth Edition*). Copyright © 2000 by Frederic M. Wheelock, Martha Wheelock, and Deborah Wheelock Taylor. Revision text copyright © 2000 by Richard A. LaFleur. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States. No part of this book may be used or reproduced in any manner whatsoever without written permission except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews. For information address HarperCollins Publishers, Inc., 10 East 53rd Street, New York, NY 10022.

HarperCollins books may be purchased for educational, business, or sales promotional use. For information, please write to: Special Markets Department, HarperCollins Publishers, Inc., 10 East 53rd Street, New York, NY 10022.

FIRST EDITION

ISBN: 0-06-095641-0

03 04 GC/RRD 20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11

Contents

Foreword	ix
Preface	xiii
The Revised Edition.....	xxi
Introduction.....	xxvii
The Position of the Latin Language in Linguistic History	xxvii
A Brief Survey of Latin Literature	xxxii
The Alphabet and Pronunciation	xxxix
Maps.....	xl
1 Verbs; First and Second Conjugations:	
Present Infinitive, Indicative, and Imperative Active; Translating	1
2 Nouns and Cases; First Declension;	
Agreement of Adjectives; Syntax	9
3 Second Declension: Masculine Nouns and Adjectives;	
Apposition; Word Order	17
4 Second Declension Neuters; Adjectives; Present Indicative	
of <i>Sum</i> ; Predicate Nouns and Adjectives; Substantive Adjectives.....	24
5 First and Second Conjugations:	
Future and Imperfect; Adjectives in <i>-er</i>	31
6 <i>Sum</i> : Future and Imperfect Indicative; <i>Possum</i> : Present,	
Future, and Imperfect Indicative; Complementary Infinitive.....	37
7 Third Declension Nouns.....	43
8 Third Conjugation: Present Infinitive, Present, Future,	
and Imperfect Indicative, Imperative	49
9 Demonstratives <i>Hic, Ille, Iste</i> ; Special <i>-īus</i> Adjectives.....	55
10 Fourth Conjugation and <i>-iō</i> Verbs of the Third	62
11 Personal Pronouns <i>Ego, Tū, and Is</i> ; Demonstratives <i>Is</i> and <i>Īdem</i>	67

12 Perfect Active System of All Verbs	75
13 Reflexive Pronouns and Possessives; Intensive Pronoun	82
14 <i>I</i> -Stem Nouns of the Third Declension; Ablatives of Means, Accompaniment, and Manner	89
15 Numerals; Genitive of the Whole; Genitive and Ablative with Cardinal Numerals; Ablative of Time	97
16 Third Declension Adjectives	104
17 The Relative Pronoun	110
18 First and Second Conjugations: Passive Voice of the Present System; Ablative of Agent	116
19 Perfect Passive System of All Verbs; Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives	122
20 Fourth Declension; Ablatives of Place from Which and Separation	129
21 Third and Fourth Conjugations: Passive Voice of the Present System	135
22 Fifth Declension; Ablative of Place Where; Summary of Ablative Uses	141
23 Participles	147
24 Ablative Absolute; Passive Periphrastic; Dative of Agent	155
25 Infinitives; Indirect Statement	162
26 Comparison of Adjectives; Declension of Comparatives; Ablative of Comparison	171
27 Special and Irregular Comparison of Adjectives	179
28 Subjunctive Mood; Present Subjunctive; Jussive and Purpose Clauses	186
29 Imperfect Subjunctive; Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of <i>Sum</i> and <i>Possum</i> ; Result Clauses	194
30 Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive; Indirect Questions; Sequence of Tenses	202
31 <i>Cum</i> Clauses; <i>Ferō</i>	211
32 Formation and Comparison of Adverbs; <i>Volō</i> , <i>Mālō</i> , <i>Nōlō</i> ; Proviso Clauses	219
33 Conditions	228
34 Deponent Verbs; Ablative with Special Deponents	234
35 Dative with Adjectives; Dative with Special Verbs; Dative with Compounds	245
36 Jussive Noun Clauses; <i>Fīrī</i>	253
37 Conjugation of <i>Eō</i> ; Constructions of Place and Time	260
38 Relative Clauses of Characteristic; Dative of Reference; Supines	269
39 Gerund and Gerundive	276
40 <i>-Ne</i> , <i>Num</i> , and <i>Nōne</i> in Direct Questions; Fear Clauses; Genitive and Ablative of Description	284

Locī Antīquī	292
Locī Immūtātī.....	304
Optional Self-Tutorial Exercises	356
Key to Exercises	396
Appendix	435
Some Etymological Aids.....	435
Supplementary Syntax	442
Summary of Forms	446
English-Latin Vocabulary	461
Latin-English Vocabulary	468
Abbreviations.....	489
Index.....	493
Location of the <i>Sententiae Antīquae</i>	506

Foreword

The genesis of, and inspiration for, *Wheelock's Latin* was the 1946 G.I. Education bill which granted World War II Veterans a college education upon their return from service. "Why would a vet, schooled on the battlefields of Europe and Asia, want to study Latin?" asked our father, then a Professor of Classics at Brooklyn College. What could this language say to those who had already seen so much reality? How could a teacher make a *dead* language become alive, pertinent, and viable? How could one teach Latin, not as an extinct vehicle, but as the reflection of a lively culture and philosophy? This was the challenge our father undertook.

Frederic Wheelock set about to create a Latin text that would give students something to think about, a humanistic diet to nurture them both linguistically and philosophically. The book began with lessons he designed especially for his Brooklyn College students. As children we smelled regularly the pungent hectograph ink which allowed him to painstakingly reproduce the chapters of a book he was designing, page by page on a gelatin pad, for one student at a time. In 1950, on Frederic's six-month sabbatical leave, the Wheelock family travelled to the remote village of San Miguel De Allende in Mexico, where Frederic conscientiously wrote his text, and our diligent mother, Dorothy, meticulously typed the manuscript on an old portable typewriter. We young children scampered irreverently underfoot or played with native children and burros.

Twelve years of refinement, revision, and actual usage in our father's classrooms resulted in the book's first edition. When students needed to learn grammar, they read lessons and literature from the great ancient writers who used the grammar in a meaningful context. Our father sought to graft the vital flesh and blood of Roman experience and thinking onto the basic bones of forms, syntax, and vocabulary; he wanted students to tran-

scend mere gerund grinding by giving them literary and philosophical substance on which to sharpen their teeth.

As early as we can remember classical heritage filled our house. The etymology of a word would trigger lengthy discussion, often tedious for us as adolescents but abiding as we became adults. Knowing Latin teaches us English, we were constantly reminded; 60% of English words are derived from Latin. Students who take Latin are more proficient and earn higher scores on the verbal SAT exam. The business world has long recognized the importance of a rich vocabulary and rates it high as evidence of executive potential and success. Understanding the etymological history of a word gives the user vividness, color, punch, and precision. It also seems that the clearer and more numerous our verbal images, the greater our intellectual power. *Wheelock's Latin* is profuse with the etymological study of English and vocabulary enrichment. Our own experiences have shown that students will not only remember vocabulary words longer and better when they understand their etymologies, but also will use them with a sharper sense of meaning and nuance.

Why, then, exercise ourselves in the actual translation of Latin? "Inexorably accurate translation from Latin provides a training in observation, analysis, judgment, evaluation, and a sense of linguistic form, clarity, and beauty which is excellent training in the shaping of one's own English expression," asserted Frederic Wheelock. There is a discipline and an accuracy learned in the translation process which is transferable to any thinking and reasoning process, such as that employed by mathematicians. In fact, our father's beloved editor at Barnes and Noble, Dr. Gladys Walterhouse, was the Math Editor there and yet an ardent appreciator of Latin and its precision.

Our father loved the humanistic tradition of the classical writers and thinkers. And he shared this love not only with his students through the *Sententiae Antiquae* sections of his Latin text, but also with his family and friends in his daily life. As young girls, we were peppered with phrases of philosophical power from the ancients, and our father would show how these truths and lessons were alive and valid today. Some of the philosophical jewels which students of Latin will find in this book are: *carpe diem*, "seize the day"; *aurea mediocritās*, "the golden mean"; *summum bonum*, "the Highest Good"; and the derivation of "morality" from *mōrēs* ("good habits create good character," as our father used to tell us).

If learning the Latin language and the translation process are important, then getting to know the messages and art of Horace, Ovid, Virgil, and other Roman writers is equally important. Wheelock presents these Classical authors' writings on such illuminating topics as living for the future, attaining excellence, aging, and friendship. The *summum bonum* of Latin studies,

Frederic Wheelock wrote, “is the reading, analysis and appreciation of genuine ancient literary humanistic Latin in which our civilization is so deeply rooted and which has much to say to us in our 20th century.”

For the 45 years that Frederic Wheelock was a Professor of Latin, he instilled in his students the love of Latin as both language and literature, and he did so with humor and humility. He dearly loved teaching, because he was so enthusiastic about what he taught. He had a deep and abiding respect for his students and demanded discipline and high standards. He wished for Latin to be loved and learned as he lived it, as a torch passed down through the ages, to help light our way today.

In 1987, as Frederic Wheelock was dying at the end of 85 richly lived years, he recited Homer, Horace, and Emily Dickinson. He, like the ancients, leaves a legacy of the love of learning and a belief that we stand on the shoulders of the ancients. He would be delighted to know that there are still active and eager students participating in the excitement and enjoyment of his beloved Latin.

Martha Wheelock and Deborah Wheelock Taylor

Filiae amantissimae

Preface

Why a new beginners' Latin book when so many are already available? The question may rightly be asked, and a justification is in order.

It is notorious that every year increasing numbers of students enter college without Latin; and consequently they have to begin the language in college, usually as an elective, if they are to have any Latin at all. Though some college beginners do manage to continue their study of Latin for two or three years, a surprising number have to be satisfied with only one year of the subject. Among these, three groups predominate: Romance language majors, English majors, and students who have been convinced of the cultural and the practical value of even a little Latin.¹ Into the hands of such mature students (and many of them are actually Juniors and Seniors!) it is a pity and a lost opportunity to put textbooks which in pace and in thought are graded to high-school beginners. On the other hand, in the classical spirit of moderation, we should avoid the opposite extreme of a beginners' book so advanced and so severe that it is likely to break the spirit of even mature students in its attempt to cover practically everything in Latin.

Accordingly, the writer has striven to produce a beginners' book which is mature, humanistic, challenging, and instructive, and which, at the same time, is reasonable in its demands. Certainly it is not claimed that Latin can be made easy and effortless. However, the writer's experience with these

¹ I have even had inquiries about my lessons from graduate students who suddenly discovered that they needed some Latin and wanted to study it by themselves—much as I taught myself Spanish from E. V. Greenfield's *Spanish Grammar* (College Outline Series of Barnes & Noble) when I decided to make a trip to Mexico. Such instances really constitute a fourth group, adults who wish to learn some Latin independently of a formal academic course.

chapters in mimeographed form over a number of years shows that Latin can be made interesting despite its difficulty; it can give pleasure and profit even to the first-year student and to the student who takes only one year; it can be so presented as to afford a sense of progress and literary accomplishment more nearly commensurate with that achieved, for instance, by the student of Romance languages. The goal, then, has been a book which provides both the roots and at least some literary fruits of a sound Latin experience for those who will have only one year of Latin in their entire educational career, and a book which at the same time provides adequate introduction and encouragement for those who plan to continue their studies in the field. The distinctive methods and devices employed in this book in order to attain this goal are here listed with commentary.

1. SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE AND LOCĪ ANTĪQUĪ

It can hardly be disputed that the most profitable and the most inspiring approach to ancient Latin is through original Latin sentences and passages derived from the ancient authors themselves. With this conviction the writer perused a number of likely ancient works,² excerpting sentences and passages which could constitute material for the envisioned beginners' book. A prime desideratum was that the material be interesting per se and not chosen merely because it illustrated forms and syntax. These extensive excerpts provided a good cross section of Latin literature on which to base the choice of the forms, the syntax, and the vocabulary to be presented in the book. All the sentences which constitute the regular reading exercise in each chapter under the heading of *Sententiae Antīquae* are derived from this body of original Latin, as is demonstrated by the citing of the ancient author's name after each sentence. The same holds for the connected passages which appear both in the chapters and in the section entitled *Locī Antīquī*. Experience has shown that the work of the formal chapters can be covered in about three-quarters of an academic year, and that the remaining quarter can be had free and clear for the crowning experience of the year—the experience of reading additional real Latin passages from ancient authors,³ passages which cover a wide range of interesting topics such as love, biography, philosophy, religion, morality, friendship, philanthropy, games, laws of war, anecdotes, wit, satirical comment. These basic exercises, then, are derived from

²Caesar's works were studiously avoided because of the view that Caesar's traditional place in the curriculum of the first two years is infelicitous, and that more desirable reading matter can be found.

³A half-dozen passages from late Latin and medieval authors are included to illustrate, among other things, the continuance of Latin through the Middle Ages.

Latin literature⁴; they are not “made” or “synthetic” Latin. In fact, by the nature of their content they constitute something of an introduction to Roman experience and thought; they are not mere inane collections of words put together simply to illustrate vocabulary, forms, and rules—though they are intended to do this too.

2. VOCABULARIES AND VOCABULARY DEVICES

Every chapter has a regular vocabulary list of new Latin words to be thoroughly learned. Each entry includes: the Latin word with one or more forms (e.g., with all principal parts, in the case of verbs); essential grammatical information (e.g., the gender of nouns, case governed by prepositions); English meanings (usually with the basic meaning first); and, in parentheses, representative English derivatives. The full vocabulary entry must be memorized for each item; in progressing from chapter to chapter, students will find it helpful to keep a running vocabulary list in their notebooks or a computer file, or to use vocabulary cards (with the Latin on one side, and the rest of the entry on the other). With an eye to the proverb *repetitio mātē memoriae*, words in the chapter vocabularies are generally repeated in the sentences and reading passages of the immediately following chapters, as well as elsewhere in the book.

In order to avoid overloading the regular chapter vocabularies, words that are less common in Latin generally or which occur infrequently (sometimes only once) in this book are glossed in parentheses following the *Sententiae Antiquae* and the reading passages. These glosses are generally less complete than the regular vocabulary entries and are even more abbreviated in the later chapters than in the earlier ones, but they should provide sufficient information for translating the text at hand; for words whose meanings can be easily deduced from English derivatives, the English is usually not provided. The instructor's requirements regarding these vocabulary items may vary, but in general students should be expected to have at least a “passive” mastery of the words, i.e., they should be able to recognize the words if encountered in a similar context, in a later chapter, for example, or on a test; full entries for most of these “recognition” items will also be found in the end Vocabulary.

⁴To be sure, at times the Latin has had to be somewhat edited in order to bring an otherwise too difficult word or form or piece of syntax within the limits of the student's experience. Such editing most commonly involves unimportant omissions, a slight simplification of the word order, or the substitution of an easier word, form, or syntactical usage. However, the thought and the fundamental expression still remain those of the ancient author.

3. SYNTAX

Although the above-mentioned corpus of excerpts constituted the logical guide to the syntactical categories which should be introduced into the book, common sense dictated the mean between too little and too much, as stated above. The categories which have been introduced should prove adequate for the reading of the mature passages of *Locī Antīquī* and also provide a firm foundation for those who wish to continue their study of Latin beyond the first year. In fact, with the skill acquired in handling this mature Latin and with a knowledge of the supplementary syntax provided in the Appendix, a student can skip the traditional second-year course in Caesar and proceed directly to the third-year course in Cicero and other authors. The syntax has been explained in as simple and unpedantic a manner as possible, and each category has been made concrete by a large number of examples, which provide both the desirable element of repetition and also self-tutorial passages for students. Finally, in light of the sad experience that even English majors in college may have an inadequate knowledge of grammar, explanations of most grammatical terms have been added, usually with benefit of etymology; and these explanations have not been relegated to some general summarizing section (the kind that students usually avoid!) but have been worked in naturally as the terms first appear in the text.

4. FORMS AND THEIR PRESENTATION

The varieties of inflected and uninflected forms presented here are normal for a beginners' book. However, the general practice in this text has been to alternate lessons containing noun or adjective forms with lessons containing verb forms. This should help reduce the ennui which results from too much of one thing at a time. The same consideration prompted the postponement of the locative case, adverbs, and most irregular verbs to the latter part of the book, where they could provide temporary respite from subjunctives and other heavy syntax.

Considerable effort has been made to place paradigms of more or less similar forms side by side for easy ocular cross reference in the same lesson⁵ and also, as a rule, to have new forms follow familiar related ones in natural sequence (as when adjectives of the third declension follow the i-stem nouns).

The rate at which the syntax and the forms can be absorbed will obviously depend on the nature and the caliber of the class; the instructor will have to adjust the assignments to the situation. Though each chapter forms a logical unit, it has been found that at least two assignments have to be allotted to many of the longer chapters: the first covers the English text,

⁵ The same device has been carefully employed in the Appendix.

the paradigms, the vocabularies, the *Practice and Review*, and some of the *Sententiae Antiquae*; the second one requires review, the completion of the *Sententiae*, the reading passage, and the section on etymology. Both these assignments are in themselves natural units, and this double approach contains the obvious gain of repetition.

5. PRACTICE AND REVIEW

The *Practice and Review* sentences were introduced as additional insurance of repetition of forms, syntax, and vocabulary, which is so essential in learning a language. If the author of a textbook can start with a predetermined sequence of vocabulary and syntax, for example, and is free to compose sentences based thereon, then it should be a fairly simple matter to make the sentences of succeeding lessons repeat the items of the previous few lessons, especially if the intellectual content of the sentences is not a prime concern. On the other hand, such repetition is obviously much more difficult to achieve when one works under the exacting restrictions outlined above in Section I. Actually, most of the items introduced in a given chapter do re-appear in the *Sententiae Antiquae* of the immediately following chapters as well as passim thereafter, but the author frankly concocted the *Practice and Review* sentences⁶ to fill in the lacunae, to guarantee further repetition than could otherwise have been secured, and to provide exercises of continuous review. The English-into-Latin sentences, though few in number on the grounds that the prime emphasis rests on learning to read Latin, should, however, be done regularly, but the others need not be assigned as part of the ordinary outside preparation. They are easy enough to be done at sight in class as time permits; or they can be used as a basis for review after every fourth or fifth chapter in lieu of formal review lessons.

6. ETYMOLOGIES

Unusually full lists of English derivatives are provided in parentheses after the words in the vocabularies to help impress the Latin words on the student, to demonstrate the direct or indirect indebtedness of English to Latin, and to enlarge the student's own vocabulary. Occasionally, English cognates have been added. At the end of each chapter a section entitled *Etymology* covers some of the recognition vocabulary items introduced in the sentences and reading passages, as well as other interesting points which could not be easily indicated in the vocabulary. From the beginning, the student should be urged to consult the lists of prefixes and suffixes given in the Appendix under the heading of *Some Etymological Aids*. To interest

⁶ Ancient Latin sentences suggested some of them.

students of Romance languages and to suggest the importance of Latin to the subject, Romance derivatives have been listed from time to time.

7. THE INTRODUCTION

In addition to discussing the Roman alphabet and pronunciation, the book's general introduction sketches the linguistic, literary, and palaeographical background of Latin. This background and the actual Latin of the *Sententiae Antiquae* and the *Locī Antīquī* give the student considerable insight into Roman literature, thought, expression, and experience, and evince the continuity of the Roman tradition down to our own times. It is hoped that the Introduction and especially the nature of the lessons themselves will establish this book as not just another Latin grammar but rather as a humanistic introduction to the reading of genuine Latin.

The book had its inception in a group of mimeographed lessons put together rather hurriedly and tried out in class as a result of the dissatisfaction expressed above at the beginning of this Preface. The lessons worked well, despite immediately obvious imperfections traceable to their hasty composition. To Professor Lillian B. Lawler of Hunter College I am grateful for her perusal of the mimeographed material and for her suggestions. I also wish to acknowledge the patience of my students and colleagues at Brooklyn College who worked with the mimeographed material, and their helpfulness and encouragement in stating their reactions to the text. Subsequently these trial lessons were completely revised and rewritten in the light of experience. I am indebted to Professor Joseph Pearl of Brooklyn College for his kindness in scrutinizing the 40 chapters of the manuscript in their revised form and for many helpful suggestions. To the Reverend Joseph M.-F. Marique, S.J., of Boston College I herewith convey my appreciation for his encouraging and helpful review of the revised manuscript. Thomas S. Lester of Northeastern University, a man of parts and my *alter idem amīcissimus* since classical undergraduate years, has my heartfelt thanks for so often and so patiently lending to my problems a sympathetic ear, a sound mind, and a sanguine spirit. To my dear wife, Dorothy, who so faithfully devoted herself to the typing of a very difficult manuscript, who was often asked for a judgment, and who, in the process, uttered many a salutary plea for clarity and for compassion toward the students, I dedicate my affectionate and abiding gratitude. My final thanks go to Dr. Gladys Walterhouse and her colleagues in the editorial department of Barnes & Noble for their friendly, efficient, and often crucial help in many matters. It need hardly be added that no one but the author is responsible for any infelicities which may remain.

The Second and Third Editions

Because of the requests of those who found that they needed more reading material than that provided by the *Locī Antīquī*, the author prepared a second edition which enriched the book by a new section entitled *Locī Immūtātī*. In these passages the original ancient Latin texts have been left unchanged except for omissions at certain points. The footnotes are of the general character of those in the *Locī Antīquī*. It is hoped that these readings will prove sufficiently extensive to keep an introductory class well supplied for the entire course, will give an interesting additional challenge to the person who is self-tutored, and will provide a very direct approach to the use of the regular annotated texts of classical authors.

Because of the indisputable value of repetition for establishing linguistic reflexes, the third edition includes a new section of Self-Tutorial Exercises. These consist of questions on grammar and syntax, and sentences for translation. A key provides answers to all the questions and translations of all the sentences.

The second and third editions would be incomplete without a word of deep gratitude to the many who in one way or another have given kind encouragement, who have made suggestions, who have indicated emendanda. I find myself particularly indebted to Professors Josephine Bree of Albertus Magnus College, Ben L. Charney of Oakland City College, Louis H. Feldman of Yeshiva College, Robert J. Leslie of Indiana University, Mr. Thomas S. Lester of Northeastern University, the Reverend James R. Murdock of Glenmary Home Missioners, Professors Paul Pascal of the University of Washington, Robert Renahan of Harvard University, John E. Rexine of Colgate University, George Tyler of Moravian College, Ralph L. Ward of Hunter College, Dr. Gladys Walterhouse of the Editorial Staff of Barnes & Noble, and most especially, once again, to my wife.

Frederic M. Wheelock

The Revised Edition

When Professor Frederic Wheelock's *Latin* first appeared in 1956, the reviews extolled its thoroughness, organization, and concision; at least one reviewer predicted that the book "might well become the standard text" for introducing college students and other adult learners to elementary Latin. Now, more than four decades later, that prediction has certainly been proven accurate. A second edition was published in 1960, retitled *Latin: An Introductory Course Based on Ancient Authors* and including a rich array of additional reading passages drawn directly from Latin literature (the *Locī Immū-tātī*); the third edition, published in 1963, added Self-Tutorial Exercises, with an answer key, for each of the 40 chapters and greatly enhanced the book's usefulness both for classroom students and for those wishing to study the language independently. In 1984, three years before the author's death, a list of passage citations for the *Sententiae Antīquae* was added, so that teachers and students could more easily locate and explore the context of selections they found especially interesting; and in 1992 a fourth edition appeared under the aegis of the book's new publisher, HarperCollins, in which the entire text was set in a larger, more legible font.

The fifth edition, published in 1995 and aptly retitled *Wheelock's Latin*, constituted the first truly substantive revision of the text in more than 30 years. The revisions which I introduced were intended, not to alter the basic concept of the text, but to enhance it; indeed, a number of the most significant changes were based on Professor Wheelock's own suggestions, contained in notes made available for the project by his family, and others reflected the experiences of colleagues around the country, many of whom (myself included) had used and admired the book for two decades or more and had in the process arrived at some consensus about certain basic ways in which it might be improved for a new generation of students.

The most obvious change in the fifth edition reflected Wheelock's own principal desideratum, shared by myself and doubtless by most who had used the book over the years, and that was the addition of passages of continuous Latin, based on ancient authors, to each of the 40 chapters. These are in the early chapters quite brief and highly adapted, but later on are more extensive and often excerpted verbatim from a variety of prose and verse authors; some had appeared in previous editions among the *Locī Antīquī* and the *Locī Immūtātī*, while many were included for the first time in the fifth edition. Some of the Practice and Review sentences were revised or replaced, as were a few of the *Sententiae Antīquae* (which in some instances were expanded into longer readings), again as suggested in part by Professor Wheelock himself.

The chapter vocabularies, generally regarded as too sparse, were expanded in most instances to about 20–25 words, a quite manageable list including new items as well as many found previously as parenthetical glosses to the *Sententiae Antīquae*. Full principal parts were provided for all verbs from the beginning, as colleagues around the country had agreed should be done, so students would not be confronted with the somewhat daunting list previously presented in Chapter 12.

There was only minimal shifting of grammar, but in particular the imperfect tense was introduced along with the future in Chapters 5, 8, and 10, so that a past tense would be available for use in the readings at a much earlier stage. Numerals and the associated material originally in Chapter 40 were introduced in Chapter 15; and a half dozen or so important grammatical constructions previously presented in the Supplementary Syntax were instead introduced in Chapter 40 and a few of the earlier chapters. Many of the grammatical explanations were rewritten; essential information from the footnotes was incorporated into the text, while some less important notes were deleted.

Finally, I included at the end of each chapter in the fifth edition a section titled *Latīna Est Gaudium—et Ūtilis*, which presents, in a deliberately informal style, a miscellany of Latin mottoes and well-known quotations, familiar abbreviations, interesting etymologies, classroom conversation items, occasional tidbits of humor, and even a few ghastly puns, all intended to demonstrate, on the lighter side, that Latin can indeed be pleasurable as well as edifying.

The Sixth Edition

The very considerable success of the fifth edition encouraged all of us involved—Professor Wheelock's daughters, Martha Wheelock and Deborah Wheelock Taylor, our editor Greg Chaput and his associates at HarperCollins, and myself—to proceed with the further revisions I had proposed for this new sixth edition. We all hope that teachers and students alike will

benefit from the numerous improvements, the most immediately apparent of which are: the handsome new cover art, a Roman mosaic from Tunisia depicting Virgil with a copy of the *Aeneid* in his lap and flanked by two Muses representing his work's inspiration; the three maps of ancient Italy, Greece and the Aegean area, and the Mediterranean, which have been specially designed to include, inter alia, all the placenames mentioned in the book's readings and notes (except a few situated on the remotest fringes of the empire); and the numerous photographs selected primarily from classical and later European art to illustrate literary and historical figures and aspects of classical culture and mythology presented in the chapter readings. Among the less obvious but, we hope, equally helpful changes are: revision of chapter readings, especially the Practice and Review sentences, for greater clarity and increased reinforcement of new and recently introduced chapter vocabulary items; expansion of derivatives lists in the chapter vocabularies and of cross-references to related words in other chapters; and enlargement of the English-Latin end vocabulary.

A final note for professors and teachers: This revised edition of *Wheelock's Latin* very likely contains more material for translation than can actually be covered in the two or three days typically allotted to a chapter in a semester course or the week or so allotted in high school. Instructors may thus pick and choose and be selective in the material they assign: my suggestion for the first day or two is to assign for written homework only limited selections from the Practice and Review sentences and the *Sententiae Antiquae*, while reserving the others (or some of the others, carefully selected in advance) for in-class sight translation; assignments for the second or third day should nearly always include the reading passages following the *Sententiae Antiquae*, which will give students the experience they need with continuous narrative. Students should regularly be encouraged to practice new material at home with the Self-Tutorial Exercises located at the back of the book, checking their accuracy with the answer key that follows, and sentences from these exercises, again pre-selected for the purpose, can be used to drill mastery of new concepts via sight translation in class. Most instructors will also want their students to use the new *Workbook for Wheelock's Latin* (the revised third edition by Paul Comeau and myself, published concurrently with, and as a companion to, this sixth edition of *Wheelock's Latin*); the *Workbook* contains a wide range of additional exercises, including for each chapter a detailed set of objectives, a series of questions designed to focus directly on the newly introduced grammar, a variety of transformation drills, word, phrase, and sentence translations, questions on etymologies, synonyms, antonyms, and analogies for new vocabulary items, and reading comprehension questions to test the student's understanding of the chapter's reading passages. There are many further materials designed to complement *Wheelock's Latin* and the *Workbook for Wheelock's Latin*,

including supplemental readers, computer software, and a wealth of internet resources, many of which, along with further suggestions on teaching Latin via Wheelock, are described in my book *Latin for the 21st Century: From Concept to Classroom* (available from Prentice Hall Publishers).

There are many whom I am eager to thank for their support of the fifth and sixth editions of *Wheelock's Latin*: my dear wife Laura, first of all, for giving me up to my computer throughout the countless hours and days this task has demanded; my children, Jean-Paul, Laura Caroline, and Kimberley Ellen, for their constant affection; my colleague Jared Klein, a distinguished Indo-European linguist, for reading and offering his judicious advice on my revisions to both the Introduction and the individual chapters; graduate assistants Cleve Fisher, Marshall Lloyd, Matthew Payne, and Jim Yavenditti, for their energetic and capable help with a variety of tasks; Mary Wells Ricks, long-time friend and my Senior Associate Editor for the *Classical Outlook*, for her expert counsel on a variety of editorial matters; our department secretaries, JoAnn Pulliam and Connie Russell, for their generous clerical assistance; my editors at HarperCollins, Erica Spaberg, Patricia Leasure, and Greg Chaput, each of whom enthusiastically supported my proposals for the revised editions; Tim McCarthy of Art Resource in New York, as well as colleagues Jim Anderson, Bob Curtis, Timothy Gantz, and Frances Van Keuren, for their assistance with the graphics; Tom Elliott, with the American Philological Association's Classical Atlas Project and the International Ancient Mediterranean Project, for the lion's share of the work involved in designing the sixth edition's maps; students and associates at the University of Georgia who field-tested the new material or provided other helpful assistance, among them Bob Harris and Richard Shedenhelm; colleagues around the country who offered suggestions for specific revisions to one or both of these editions, especially Ward Briggs at the University of South Carolina (whose biography of Professor Wheelock appears in his book, *A Biographical Dictionary of American Classicists*, Westport CT: Greenwood Press, 1994), Rob Latousek, John McChesney-Young, Braden Mechley, Betty Rose Nagle, John Ramsey, Cliff Roti, Les Sheridan, David Sider, Alden Smith, and Stephen Wheeler; Dean Wyatt Anderson, for his encouragement of my own work and all our Classics Department's endeavors; Martha Wheelock and Deborah Wheelock Taylor, for their steadfast advocacy of my work on the revised editions and their generous sharing of their father's notes; and finally, Professor Frederic M. Wheelock himself, for producing a textbook that has truly become a classic in its own right and one whose revision, therefore, could be indeed a *labor amoris*.

Richard A. LaFleur
University of Georgia
Autumn, 1999

I love the language, that soft bastard Latin,
Which melts like kisses from a female mouth.

George Noel Gordon, Lord Byron
Beppo

I would make them all learn English: and then I would
let the clever ones learn Latin as an honor, and Greek
as a treat.

Sir Winston Churchill
Roving Commission: My Early Life

He studied Latin like the violin, because he liked it.

Robert Frost
The Death of the Hired Man

Introduction

*Wer fremde Sprachen nicht kennt, weiss nichts von seiner eigenen.
Apprendre une langue, c'est vivre de nouveau.*

Interest in learning Latin can be considerably increased by even a limited knowledge of some background details such as are sketched in this introduction. The paragraphs on the position of the Latin language in linguistic history provide one with some linguistic perspective not only for Latin but also for English. The brief survey of Latin literature introduces the authors from whose works have come the *Sententiae Antiquae* and the *Locī Antiqui* of this book; and even this abbreviated survey provides some literary perspective which the student may never otherwise experience. The same holds for the account of the alphabet; and, of course, no introduction would be complete without a statement about the sounds which the letters represent.

THE POSITION OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE IN LINGUISTIC HISTORY

Say the words "I," "me," "is," "mother," "brother," "ten," and you are speaking words which, in one form or another, men and women of Europe and Asia have used for thousands of years. In fact, we cannot tell how old these words actually are. If their spelling and pronunciation have changed somewhat from period to period and from place to place, little wonder; what does pique the imagination is the fact that the basic elements of these symbols of human thought have had the vitality to traverse such spans of time

and space down to this very moment on this new continent. The point is demonstrated in the considerably abbreviated and simplified table that follows.¹

English	<i>I</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>mother</i>	<i>brother</i>	<i>ten</i>
Sanskrit ²	aham	mā	asti	mātar-	bhrātar-	daśam
Greek	egō	me	esti	mētēr	phrātēr ³	deka
Latin	ego	mē	est	māter	frāter	decem
Anglo-Saxon ⁴	ic	mē	is	mōdor	brōthor	tīen
Old Irish ⁵		mé	is	máthir	bráthir	deich
Lithuanian ⁶	aš	manè	esti	motė	broterėlis	dešimtis
Russian ⁷	ja	menja	jest'	mat'	brat	desjat'

You can see from these columns of words that the listed languages are related.⁸ And yet, with the exception of the ultimate derivation of English from Anglo-Saxon,⁹ none of these languages stems directly from another in the list. Rather, they all go back through intermediate stages to a common ancestor, which is now lost but which can be predicated on the evidence of the languages which do survive. Such languages the philologist calls "cognate" (Latin for "related" or, more literally, "born together," i.e., from the same ancestry). The name most commonly given to the now lost ancestor of all these "relatives," or cognate languages, is *Indo-European*, because its descendants are found both in or near India (Sanskrit, Iranian) and also in Europe (Greek and Latin and the Germanic, Celtic, Slavic, and Baltic languages).¹⁰ The oldest of these languages on the basis of documents writ-

¹ Some elements have been omitted from this table as not immediately necessary. The words in the table are only a few of the many which could be cited.

² The language of the sacred writings of ancient India, parent of the modern Indo-European languages of India.

³ Though cognate with the other words in this column, classical Greek **phrātēr** meant *member of a clan*.

⁴ As an example of the Germanic languages; others are Gothic, German, Dutch, Danish, Norwegian, Swedish, Icelandic, English.

⁵ As an example of the Celtic languages; others are Gaulish, Breton, Scots (Gaelic). Old Irish **mé** in the chart is actually nominative case, equivalent to "I" in meaning and usage but to "me" in form.

⁶ As an example of the Baltic group; others are Latvian and Old Prussian.

⁷ As an example of the Slavic group; others are Polish, Bulgarian, Czech.

⁸ This large family of languages shows relationship in the matter of inflections also, but no attempt is made here to demonstrate the point. An inflected language is one in which the nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and verbs have variable endings by which the relationship of the words to each other in a sentence can be indicated. In particular, note that Anglo-Saxon, like Latin, was an inflected language but that its descendant English has lost most of its inflections.

⁹ The later connection between English and Latin will be pointed out below.

¹⁰ Note that many languages (e.g., the Semitic languages, Egyptian, Basque, Chinese, the native languages of Africa and the Americas) lie outside the Indo-European family.

ten in them are Sanskrit, Iranian, Greek, and Latin, and these documents go back centuries before the time of Christ.

The difference between *derived* (from roots meaning “to flow downstream from” a source) and *cognate* languages can be demonstrated even more clearly by the relationship of the Romance languages to Latin and to each other. For here we are in the realm of recorded history and can see that with the Roman political conquest of such districts as Gaul (France), Spain, and Dacia (Roumania) there occurred also a Roman linguistic conquest. Out of this victorious ancient Latin as spoken by the common people (**vul-gus**, hence “vulgar” Latin) grew the Romance languages, such as French, Spanish, Portuguese, Roumanian, and, of course, Italian. Consequently, we can say of Italian, French, and Spanish, for instance, that they are *derived* from Latin and that they are *cognate* with each other.

Parent	Cognate Romance Derivatives			
Latin	Italian	Spanish	French	English Meaning
amīcus	amico	amigo	ami	friend
liber	libro	libro	livre	book
tempus	tempo	tiempo	temps	time
manus	mano	mano	main	hand
bucca	bocca	boca	bouche	mouth (cheek in classical Lat.) ¹¹
caballus ¹²	cavallo	caballo	cheval	horse
filius	figlio	hijo	fil	son
ille	il	el	(le) ¹³	the (that in classical Lat.)
illa	la	la	la	the (that in classical Lat.)
quattuor	quattro	cuatro	quatre	four
bonus	buono	bueno	bon	good
bene	bene	bien	bien	well (adv.)
facere	fare	hacer	faire	make, do
dīcere	dire	decir	dire	say
legere	leggere	leer	lire	read

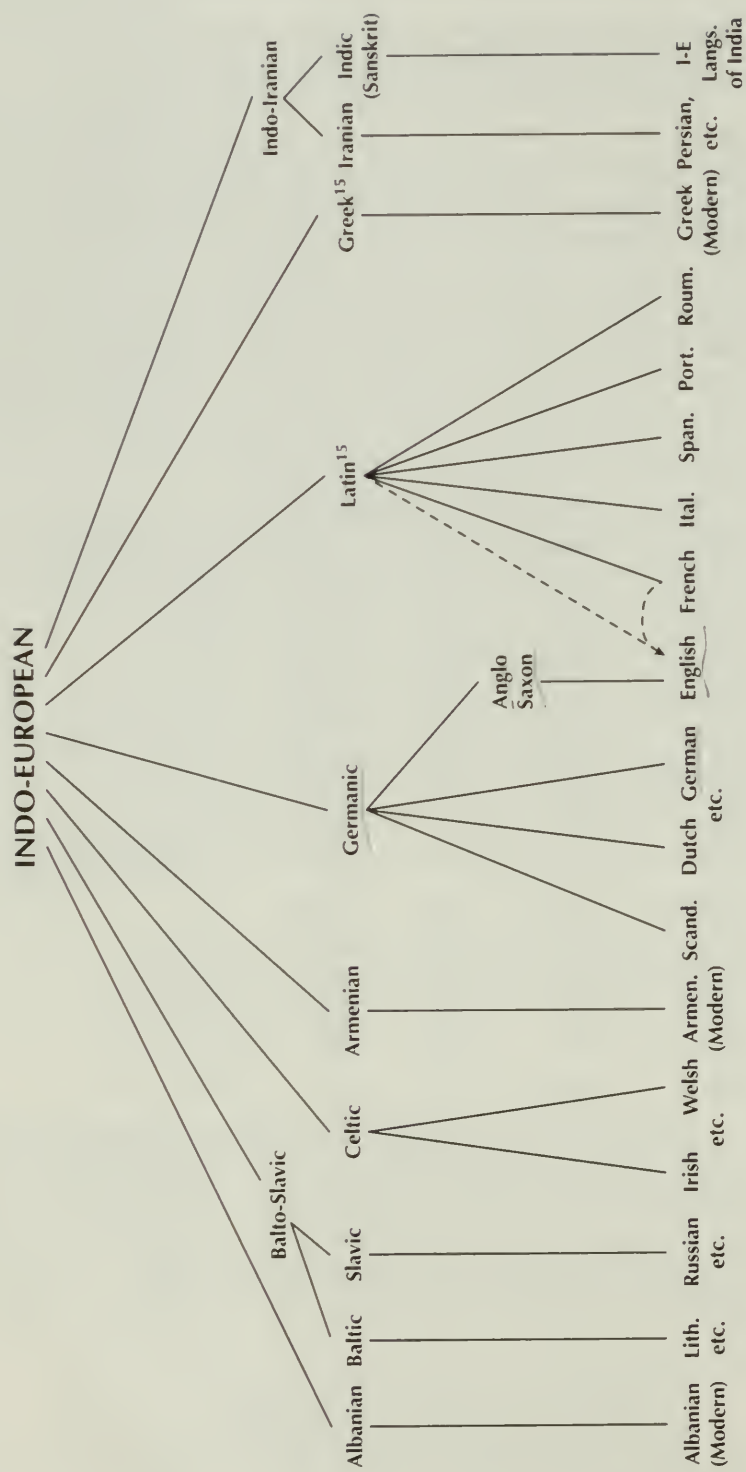
Although it was noted above that English ultimately stems from Anglo-Saxon, which is cognate with Latin, there is much more than that to the story of our own language. Anglo-Saxon itself had early borrowed a few words from Latin; and then in the 7th century more Latin words¹⁴ came in as a result of the work of St. Augustine (the Lesser), who was sent by Pope Gregory to Christianize the Angles. After the victory of William the Con-

¹¹ The classical Latin word for *mouth* was *ōs*, *ōris*.

¹² The classical Latin word for *horse* was *equus*.

¹³ Derived from *ille* but not actually cognate with *il* and *el*.

¹⁴ Many of these were of Greek and Hebrew origin but had been Latinized. The Latin *Vulgate* played an important role.



¹⁵ Actually, Latin was only one of a number of Italic dialects (among which were Oscan and Umbrian), and some time passed before Latin won out over the other dialects in Italy. Similarly, among the Greeks there were a number of dialects (Aeolic, Attic, Ionic, Doric).

queror in 1066, Norman French became the polite language and Anglo-Saxon was held in low esteem as the tongue of vanquished men and serfs. Thus Anglo-Saxon, no longer the language of literature, became simply the speech of humble daily life. Some two centuries later, however, as the descendants of the Normans finally amalgamated with the English natives, the Anglo-Saxon language reasserted itself; but in its poverty it had to borrow hundreds of French words (literary, intellectual, cultural) before it could become the language of literature. Borrow it did abundantly, and in the 13th and 14th centuries this development produced what is called Middle English, known especially from Chaucer, who died in 1400. Along with the adoption of these Latin-rooted French words there was also some borrowing directly from Latin itself, and the renewed interest in the classics which characterized the Renaissance naturally intensified this procedure during the 16th and the 17th centuries.¹⁶ From that time to the present Latin has continued to be a source of new words, particularly for the scientist.¹⁷

Consequently, since English through Anglo-Saxon is cognate with Latin and since English directly or indirectly has borrowed so many words from Latin, we can easily demonstrate both cognation and derivation by our own vocabulary. For instance, our word "brother" is *cognate* with Latin *frāter* but "fraternal" clearly is *derived* from *frāter*. Other instances are:

English	Latin Cognate ¹⁸	English Derivative
mother	māter	maternal
two	duo	dual, duet
tooth	dēns, <i>stem</i> dent-	dental
foot	pēs, <i>stem</i> ped-	pedal
heart	cor, <i>stem</i> cord-	cordial
bear	ferō	fertile

¹⁶ Thomas Wilson (16th century) says: "The unlearned or foolish fantastical, that smells but of learning (such fellows as have been learned men in their days), will so Latin their tongues, that the simple cannot but wonder at their talk, and think surely they speak by some revelation." Sir Thomas Browne (17th century) says: "If elegancy still proceedeth, and English pens maintain that stream we have of late observed to flow from many, we shall within a few years be fain to learn Latin to understand English, and a work will prove of equal facility in either." These statements are quoted by permission from the "Brief History of the English Language" by Hadley and Kittredge in Webster's *New International Dictionary*, Second Edition, copyright, 1934, 1939, 1945, 1950, 1953, 1954, by G. & C. Merriam Co.

¹⁷ And apparently even our 20th-century composers of advertisements would be reduced to near beggary if they could not draw on the Latin vocabulary and the classics in general.

¹⁸ Grimm's law catalogues the Germanic shift in certain consonants (the stops). This shows how such apparently different words as English *heart* and Latin *cor*, *cord-*, are in origin the same word.

In fact, here you see one of the reasons for the richness of our vocabulary, and the longer you study Latin the more keenly you will realize what a limited language ours would be without the Latin element.

Despite the brevity of this survey you can comprehend the general position of Latin in European linguistic history and something of its continuing importance to us of the 20th century. It is the cognate¹⁹ of many languages and the parent of many; it can even be called the adoptive parent of our own. In summary is offered the much abbreviated diagram on page xxx above.²⁰

A BRIEF SURVEY OF LATIN LITERATURE

Since throughout this entire book you will be reading sentences and longer passages excerpted from Latin literature, a brief outline is here sketched to show both the nature and the extent of this great literature. You will find the following main divisions reasonable and easy to keep in mind, though the common warning against dogmatism in regard to the names and the dates of periods should certainly be sounded.

- I. Early Period (down to ca. 80 B.C.)
- II. Golden Age (80 B.C.–14 A.D.)
 - A. Ciceronian Period (80–43 B.C.)
 - B. Augustan Period (43 B.C.–14 A.D.)
- III. Silver Age (14–ca. 138 A.D.)
- IV. Patristic Period (late 2nd–5th cens. of our era)
- V. Medieval Period (6th–14th cens. of our era)
- VI. Period from the Renaissance (ca. 15th cen.) to the Present

THE EARLY PERIOD (DOWN TO CA. 80 B.C.)

The apogee of Greek civilization, including the highest development of its magnificent literature and art, was reached during the 5th and the 4th centuries before Christ. In comparison, Rome during those centuries had little to offer. Our fragmentary evidence shows only a rough, accentual na-

¹⁹ Take particular care to note that Latin is simply cognate with Greek, not derived from it.

²⁰ In the interests of simplicity and clarity a number of languages and intermediate steps have been omitted. In particular it should be noted that no attempt has been made to indicate the indebtedness of English to Greek. Two branches of the Indo-European language family, Anatolian and Tocharian, are now extinct and are not shown on the chart.

tive meter called Saturnian, some native comic skits, and a rough, practical prose for records and speeches.

In the 3d century B.C., however, the expansion of Roman power brought the Romans into contact with Greek civilization. Somehow the hard-headed, politically and legally minded Romans were fascinated by what they found, and the writers among them went to school to learn Greek literature. From this time on, Greek literary forms, meters, rhetorical devices, subjects, and ideas had a tremendous and continuing influence on Roman literature, even as it developed its own character and originality in a great many ways.

In fact, the Romans themselves did not hesitate to admit as much. Although the Romans now composed epics, tragedies, satires, and speeches, the greatest extant accomplishments of this period of apprenticeship to Greek models are the comedies of Plautus (ca. 254–184 B.C.) and Terence (185–159 B.C.). These were based on Greek plays of the type known as New Comedy, the comedy of manners, and they make excellent reading today. Indeed, a number of these plays have influenced modern playwrights; Plautus' *Menaechmi*, for instance, inspired Shakespeare's *Comedy of Errors*.

THE GOLDEN AGE (80 B.C.–14 A.D.)

During the first century before Christ the Roman writers perfected their literary media and made Latin literature one of the world's greatest. It is particularly famous for its beautiful, disciplined form, which we know as classic, and for its real substance as well. If Lucretius complained about the poverty of the Latin vocabulary, Cicero so molded the vocabulary and the general usage that Latin remained a supple and a subtle linguistic tool for thirteen centuries and more.²¹

THE CICERONIAN PERIOD (80–43 B.C.). The literary work of the Ciceronian Period was produced during the last years of the Roman Republic. This was a period of civil wars and dictators, of military might against constitutional right, of selfish interest, of brilliant pomp and power, of moral and religious laxity. Outstanding authors important for the book which you have in hand are:

Lucretius (Titus Lūcrētius Cārus, ca. 98–55 B.C.): author of *Dē Rērum Nātūrā*, a powerful didactic poem on happiness achieved through the Epicurean philosophy. This philosophy was based on pleasure²² and was buttressed by an atomic theory which made the universe a realm of natural, not divine, law and thus eliminated the fear of the gods and the tyranny of religion, which Lucretius believed had shattered men's happiness.

Catullus (Gāius Valerius Catullus, ca. 84–54 B.C.): lyric poet, the Robert

²¹ See below under Medieval and Renaissance Latin.

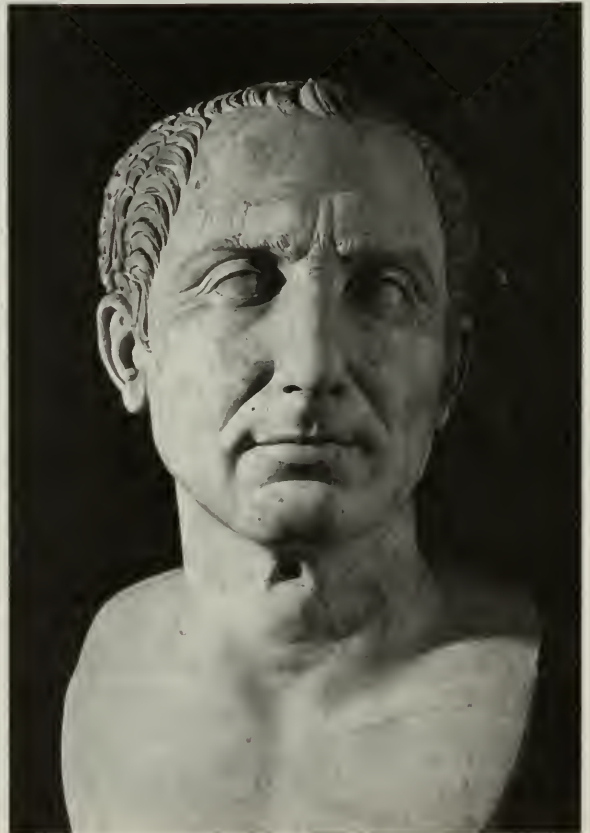
²² However, that it meant simply "eat, drink, and be merry" is a vulgar misinterpretation.

Burns of Roman literature, an intense and impressionable young provincial from northern Italy who fell totally under the spell of an urban sophisticate, Lesbia (a literary pseudonym for her real name, Clodia), but finally escaped bitterly disillusioned; over 100 of his poems have survived.

Cicero (Mārcus Tullius Cicerō, 106–43 B.C.): the greatest Roman orator, whose eloquence thwarted the conspiracy of the bankrupt aristocrat Catiline²³ in 63 B.C. and 20 years later cost Cicero his own life in his patriotic opposition to Anthony's high-handed policies; admired also as an authority on Roman rhetoric, as an interpreter of Greek philosophy to his countrymen, as an essayist on friendship (*Dē Amīcitiā*) and on old age (*Dē Senectūte*), and, in a less formal style, as a writer of self-revealing letters. Cicero's vast contributions to the Latin language itself have already been mentioned.

Caesar (Gāius Iūlius Caesar, 102 or 100–44 B.C.): orator, politician, general, statesman, dictator, author; best known for his military memoirs, *Bellum Gallicum* and *Bellum Cīvile*.

²³ See the introductory notes to "Cicero Denounces Catiline" in Ch. 11 and "Evidence and Confession" in Ch. 30.



Julius Caesar
1st century B.C.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale
Naples, Italy

Nepos (Cornēlius Nepōs, 99–24 B.C.): friend of Catullus and Caesar and a writer of biographies noted rather for their relatively easy and popular style than for greatness as historical documents.

Publilius Syrus (fl. 43 B.C.): a slave who was taken to Rome and who there became famous for his mimes, which today are represented only by a collection of epigrammatic sayings.

THE AUGUSTAN PERIOD (43 B.C.–14 A.D.). The first Roman Emperor gave his name to this period. Augustus wished to correct the evils of the times, to establish civil peace by stable government, and to win the Romans' support for his new regime. With this in mind he and Maecenas, his unofficial prime minister, sought to enlist literature in the service of the state. Under their patronage Virgil and Horace became what we should call poets laureate. Some modern critics feel that this fact vitiates the noble sentiments of these poets; others see in Horace a spirit of independence and of genuine moral concern, and maintain that Virgil, through the character of his epic hero Aeneas, is not simply glorifying Augustus but is actually suggesting to the emperor what is expected of him as head of the state.²⁴

Virgil (Pūblius Vergilius Marō, 70–19 B.C.): from humble origins in northern Italy; lover of nature; profoundly sympathetic student of humankind; Epicurean and mystic; severe and exacting self-critic, master craftsman, linguistic and literary architect, "lord of language"; famous as a writer of pastoral verse (the *Eclogues*) and of a beautiful didactic poem on farm life (the *Georgics*); best known as the author of one of the world's great epics,²⁵ the *Aeneid*, a national epic with ulterior purposes, to be sure, but one also with ample universal and human appeal to make it powerful 20th-century reading.

Horace (Quīntus Horātius Flaccus, 65–8 B.C.): freedman's son who, thanks to his father's vision and his own qualities, rose to the height of poet laureate; writer of genial and self-revealing satires; author of superb lyrics both light and serious; meticulous composer famed for the happy effects of his linguistic craftsmanship (*cūriōsa fēlicitās*, *painstaking felicity*); synthesist of Epicurean *carpe diem* (*enjoy today*) and Stoic *virtūs* (*virtue*); preacher and practitioner of *aurea mediocritās* (*the golden mean*).

Livy (Titus Līvius, 59 B.C.–17 A.D.): friend of Augustus but an admirer of the Republic and of olden virtues; author of a monumental, epic-spirited history of Rome, and portrayer of Roman character at its best as he judged it.

²⁴ See, for instance, E. K. Rand, *The Builders of Eternal Rome* (Harvard Univ. Press, 1943).

²⁵ The *Aeneid* is always associated with Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, to which it owes a great deal, and with Dante's *Divine Comedy* and Milton's *Paradise Lost*, which owe a great deal to it.

Propertius (Sextus Propertius, ca. 50 B.C.–ca. 2 A.D.): author of four books of romantic elegiac poems, much admired by Ovid.

Ovid (Pūblius Ovidius Nāsō, 43 B.C.–17 A.D.): author of much love poetry which was hardly consonant with Augustus' plans; most famous today as the writer of the long and clever hexameter work on mythology entitled *Metamorphōsēs*, which has proved a thesaurus for subsequent poets. Ovid, like Pope, "lisped in numbers, for the numbers came."

THE SILVER AGE (14–CA. 138 A.D.)

In the Silver Age there is excellent writing; but often there are also artificialities and conceits, a striving for effects and a passion for epigrams, characteristics which often indicate a less sure literary sense and power—hence the traditional, though frequently overstated, distinction between "Golden" and "Silver." The temperaments of not a few emperors also had a limiting or blighting effect on the literature of this period.

Seneca (Lūcius Annaeus Seneca, 4 B.C.–65 A.D.): Stoic philosopher from Spain; tutor of Nero; author of noble moral essays of the Stoic spirit, of tragedies (which, though marred by too much rhetoric and too many conceits, had considerable influence on the early modern drama of Europe), and of the *Apocolocyntōsis* ("Pumpkinification"), a brilliantly witty, though sometimes cruel, prosimetric satire on the death and deification of the emperor Claudius.

Petronius (exact identity and dates uncertain, but probably Titus Petrōnius Arbiter, d. 65 A.D.): Neronian consular and courtier; author of the *Satyricon*, a satiric, prosimetric novel of sorts, famous for its depiction of the nouveau-riche freedman Trimalchio and his extravagant dinner-parties.

Quintilian (Mārcus Fabius Quīntiliānus, ca. 35–95 A.D.): teacher and author of the *Īnstitūtiō Ōrātōria*, a famous pedagogical work which discusses the entire education of a person who is to become an orator; a great admirer of Cicero's style and a critic of the rhetorical excesses of his own age.

Martial (Mārcus Valerius Mārtiālis, 45–104 A.D.): famed for his more than 1,500 witty epigrams and for the satirical twist which he so often gave to them. As he himself says, his work may not be great literature but people do enjoy it.

Pliny (Gāius Plīnius Caecilius Secundus, ca. 62–113 A.D.): a conscientious public figure, who is now best known for his *Epistulae*, letters which reveal both the bright and the seamy sides of Roman life during this imperial period.

Tacitus (Pūblius Cornēlius Tacitus, 55–117 A.D.): most famous as a satirical, pro-senatorial historian of the period from the death of Augustus to the death of Domitian.

Juvenal (Decimus Iūnius Iuvenālis, ca. 55–post 127 A.D.): a relentless, intensely rhetorical satirist of the evils of his times, who concludes that the

only thing for which one can pray is a *mēns sāna in corpore sālō* (a sound mind in a sound body). His satires inspired Dr. Samuel Johnson's *London* and *The Vanity of Human Wishes* and the whole conception of caustic, "Juvenalian" satire.

THE ARCHAISING PERIOD. The mid- to late 2nd century may be distinguished as an archaizing period, in which a taste developed for the vocabulary and style of early Latin and for the incorporation of diction from vulgar Latin; characteristic authors of the period were the orator Fronto and the antiquarian Aulus Gellius, known for his miscellaneous essays *Noctēs Atticae* ("Nights in Attica").

THE PATRISTIC PERIOD (Late 2nd Cen.–5th Cen.)

The name of the Patristic Period comes from the fact that most of the vital literature was the work of the Christian leaders, or fathers (*patrēs*), among whom were Tertullian, Cyprian, Lactantius, Jerome, Ambrose, and Augustine. These men had been well educated; they were familiar with, and frequently fond of, the best classical authors; many of them had even been teachers or lawyers before going into service of the Church. At times the classical style was deliberately employed to impress the pagans, but more and more the concern was to reach the common people (*vulgus*) with the Christian message. Consequently, it is not surprising to see vulgar Latin re-emerging²⁶ as an important influence in the literature of the period. St. Jerome in his letters is essentially Ciceronian, but in his Latin edition of the Bible, the *Vulgate* (383–405 A.D.), he uses the language of the people. Similarly St. Augustine, though formerly a teacher and a great lover of the Roman classics, was willing to use any idiom that would reach the people (*ad ūsum vulgī*) and said that it did not matter if the barbarians conquered Rome provided they were Christian.

THE MEDIEVAL PERIOD (6th–14th Cens.)

During the first three centuries of the Medieval Period, vulgar Latin underwent rapid changes²⁷ and, reaching the point when it could no longer be called Latin, it became this or that Romance language according to the locality.

²⁶ Vulgar Latin has already been mentioned as the language of the common people. Its roots are in the early period. In fact, the language of Plautus has much in common with this later vulgar Latin, and we know that throughout the Golden and the Silver Ages vulgar Latin lived on as the colloquial idiom of the people but was kept distinct from the literary idiom of the texts and the polished conversation of those periods.

²⁷ E.g., the loss of most declensional endings and the increased use of prepositions; extensive employment of auxiliary verbs; anarchy in the uses of the subjunctive and the indicative.

On the other hand, Latin, the literary idiom more or less modified by the *Vulgate* and other influences, continued throughout the Middle Ages as the living language of the Church and of the intellectual world. Though varying considerably in character and quality, it was an international language, and Medieval Latin literature is sometimes called "European" in contrast to the earlier "national Roman." In this Medieval Latin was written a varied and living literature (religious works, histories, anecdotes, romances, dramas, sacred and secular poetry), examples of which are included below, in the excerpt from the 7th century writer Isidore of Seville (in Ch. 29) and selections from other authors in the *Locī Antīquī*. The long life of Latin is attested in the early 14th century by the facts that Dante composed in Latin the political treatise *Dē Monarchiā*, that he wrote in Latin his *Dē Vulgārī Ēloquentiā* to justify his use of the vernacular Italian for literature, and that in Latin pastoral verses he rejected the exhortation to give up the vernacular, in which he was writing the *Divine Comedy*, and compose something in Latin.²⁸

THE PERIOD FROM THE RENAISSANCE (ca. 15th Cen.) TO THE PRESENT

Because of Petrarch's new-found admiration of Cicero, Renaissance scholars scorned Medieval Latin and turned to Cicero in particular as the canon of perfection. Although this return to the elegant Ciceronian idiom was prompted by great affection and produced brilliant effects, it was an artificial movement which made Latin somewhat imitative and static compared with the spontaneous, living language which it had been during the Middle Ages. However, Latin continued to be effectively employed well into the modern period,²⁹ and the ecclesiastical strain is still very much alive (despite its de-emphasis in the early 1960s) as the language of the Roman Catholic Church and seminaries. Furthermore, the rediscovery of the true, humanistic spirit of the ancient Latin and Greek literatures and the fresh attention to literary discipline and form as found in the classics proved very beneficial to the native literature of the new era.

The purpose of this abbreviated outline has been to provide some sense of the unbroken sweep of Latin literature from the 3rd century B.C. down to our own times. Besides enjoying its own long and venerable history, Latin literature has also inspired, schooled, and enriched our own English and other occidental literatures to a degree beyond easy assessment. Add to this

²⁸ At the same time, by token of Dante's success and that of others in the use of the vernacular languages, it must be admitted that Latin had begun to wage a losing battle.

²⁹ For instance, note its use by Erasmus and Sir Thomas More in the 16th century, by Milton, Bacon, and Newton in the 17th century, and by botanists, classical scholars, and poets of the later centuries.

the wide influence of the Latin language itself as outlined above and you can hardly escape the conclusion that Latin is dead only in a technical sense of the word, and that even a limited knowledge of Latin is a great asset to anyone who works with or is interested in English and the Romance languages and literatures.

THE ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION

The forms of the letters which you see on this printed page are centuries old. They go back through the earliest Italian printed books of the 15th century³⁰ and through the finest manuscripts of the 12th and 11th centuries to the firm, clear Carolingian bookhand of the 9th century as perfected under the inspiration of the Carolingian Renaissance by the monks of St. Martin's at Tours in France. These monks developed the small letters from beautiful clear semi-uncials, which in turn lead us back to the uncials³¹ and square capitals of the Roman Empire. Today we are in the habit of distinguishing the Roman alphabet from the Greek, but the fact is that the Romans learned to write from the Etruscans, who in turn had learned to write from Greek colonists who had settled in the vicinity of Naples during the 8th century B.C. Actually, therefore, the Roman alphabet is simply one form of the Greek alphabet. But the Greeks were themselves debtors in this matter, for, at an early but still undetermined date, they had received their alphabet from a Semitic source, the Phoenicians.³² And finally the early Semites appear to have been inspired by Egyptian hieroglyphs. This brief history of the forms of the letters which you see in our books today provides one more illustration of our indebtedness to antiquity.

The Roman alphabet was like ours except that it lacked the letters *j* and *w*. Furthermore, the letter *v* originally stood for both the sound of the vowel

³⁰ Called "incunabula" because they were made in the "cradle days" of printing. The type is called "Roman" to distinguish it from the "black-letter" type which was used in northern Europe (cp. the German type). The Italian printers based their Roman type on that of the finest manuscripts of the period, those written for the wealthy, artistic, exacting Renaissance patrons. The scribes of those manuscripts, seeking the most attractive kind of script with which to please such patrons, found it in manuscripts written in the best Carolingian book-hand.

³¹ The uncial letters are similar to the square capitals except that the sharp corners of the angular letters have been rounded so that they can be written with greater rapidity. An illustration can be found in Webster's *Collegiate Dictionary*, entry *uncial*.

³² The 22 letters of the Phoenician alphabet represented only consonant sounds. The Greeks showed their originality in using some of these letters to designate vowel sounds.



*Portrait of a young woman with stilus and tabella, fresco from Pompeii
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy*

u and the sound of the consonant **w**.³³ Not till the second century of our era did the rounded **u**-form appear, but for convenience both **v** and **u** are employed in the Latin texts of most modern editions. The letter **k** was rarely

³³ Note that our letter **w** is simply double **u** of the **v**-shaped variety.

used, and then only before **a**, in a very few words. The letters **y**³⁴ and **z** were introduced toward the end of the Republic to be used in spelling words of Greek origin.

The following tables indicate approximately the sounds of Latin and how the letters were used by the Romans to represent those sounds.

Vowels

Vowels in Latin had only two possible pronunciations, long and short. Long vowels were generally held about twice as long as short vowels (cf. half notes to quarter notes in music) and are marked in this book, as in most beginning texts (though not in the actual classical texts), with a “macron” or “long mark” (e.g., **ā**); vowels without a macron are short. Students should regard macrons as part of the spelling of a word, since the differences of pronunciation they indicate are often crucial to meaning (e.g., **liber** is a noun meaning *book*, while **liber** is an adjective meaning *free*). The pronunciations are approximately as follows:

Long	Short
ā as in <i>father</i> : dās , cārā	a as in <i>Dinah</i> : dat , casa
ē as in <i>they</i> : mē , sēdēs	e as in <i>pet</i> : et , sed
ī as in <i>machine</i> : hīc , sīca	i as in <i>pin</i> : hic , sicca
ō as in <i>clover</i> : ōs , mōrēs	o as in <i>orb</i> , <i>off</i> : os , mora
ū as in <i>rude</i> : tū , sūmō	u as in <i>put</i> : tum , sum
y as in French tu or German über	

Diphthongs

Latin has the following six diphthongs, combinations of two vowel sounds that were collapsed together into a single syllable:

ae as *ai* in *aisle*: **cārae**, **saepe**

au as *ou* in *house*: **aut**, **laudō**

ei as in *reign*: **deinde**

eu as Latin **e** + **u**, pronounced rapidly as a single syllable: **seu**.

The sound is not found in English and is rare in Latin.

oe as *oi* in *oil*: **coepit**, **proelium**

ui as in Latin **u** + **i**, spoken as a single syllable like Spanish **muy** (or like Eng. *gooey*, pronounced quickly as a single syllable). This diphthong occurs only in **huius**, **cuius**, **huic**, **cui**, **hui**. Elsewhere the two letters are spoken separately as in **fu-it**, **frūctu-ī**.

³⁴ This was really Greek **u**, upsilon (Υ), a vowel with a sound intermediate between **u** and **i**, as in French **u**.

Consonants

Latin consonants had essentially the same sounds as the English consonants with the following exceptions:

bs and **bt** were pronounced *ps* and *pt* (e.g., **urbs**, **obtineō**); otherwise Latin

b had the same sound as our letter (e.g., **bibēbant**).

c was always hard as in *can*, never soft as in *city*: **cum**, **cīvis**, **facilis**.

g was always hard as in *get*, never soft as in *gem*: **glōria**, **gerō**.

h was a breathing sound, as in English, only less harshly pronounced:

hic, **haec**

i (which also represented a vowel) usually functioned as a consonant with the sound of *y* as in *yes* when used before a vowel at the beginning of a word (**iūstus** = *yustus*); between two vowels within a word it served in double capacity: as the vowel *i* forming a diphthong with the preceding vowel, and as the consonant *y* (**reiectus** = *rei-yectus*, **maior** = *mai-yor*, **cuius** = *cui-yus*); otherwise it was usually a vowel. Consonantal **i** regularly appears in English derivatives as a *j* (a letter added to the alphabet in the Middle Ages); hence **maior** = *major*, **Iulius** = *Julius*.

q, as in English, is always followed by consonantal **u**, the combination having the sound *kw*: **quid**, **quoque**.

r was trilled; the Romans called it the *littera canīna*, because its sound suggested the snarling of a dog: **Rōma**, **cūrāre**.

s was always voiceless as in *see*; never voiced as in our word *ease*: **sed**, **posuissēs**, **mīsistis**.

t always had the sound of *t* as in *tired*, never of *sh* as in *nation* or *ch* as in *mention*: **taciturnitās**, **nātiōnem**, **mentiōnem**.

v had the sound of our *w*: **vīvō** = *wīwō*, **vīnum** = *wīnum*.

x had the sound of *ks* as in *axle*; not of *gz* as in *exert*: **mixtum**, **exerceō**.

ch represented Greek *chi* and had the sound of *ckh* in *block head*, not of *ch* in *church*: **chorus**, **Archilochus**.

ph represented Greek *phi* and had the sound of *ph* in *up hill*, not of *ph* in our pronunciation of *philosophy*: **philosophia**.

th represented Greek *theta* and had the sound of *th* in *hot house*, not of *th* in *thin* or *the*: **theātrum**.

The Romans quite appropriately pronounced double consonants as two separate consonants; we in our haste usually render them as a single consonant. For instance, the **rr** in the Latin word **current** sounded like the two *r*'s in *the cur ran*; and the **tt** in **admittent** sounded like the two *t*'s in *admit ten*.

Syllables

In Latin as in English, a word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

Syllabification: In dividing a word into syllables:

1. Two contiguous vowels or a vowel and a diphthong are separated: **dea, de-a; deae, de-ae.**
2. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second vowel: **amīcus, a-mī-cus.**
3. When two or more consonants stand between two vowels, generally only the last consonant goes with the second vowel: **mittō, mit-tō; servāre, ser-vā-re; cōnsūptus, cōn-sūmp-tus.** However, a stop (**p, b, t, d, c, g**) + a liquid (**l, r**) count as a single consonant and go with the following vowel:³⁵ **patrem, pa-trem; castra, cas-tra.** Also counted as single consonants are **qu** and the aspirates **ch, ph, th**, which should never be separated in syllabification: **architectus, ar-chi-tec-tus; loquā-cem, lo-quā-cem.**

Syllable quantity: A syllable is long *by nature* if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong; a syllable is long *by position* if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants³⁶ or by **x**, which is a double consonant (= **ks**). Otherwise a syllable is short; again, the difference is rather like that between a musical half-note and a quarter-note.

Syllables long by nature (here underlined): **lau-dō, Rō-ma, a-mī-cus.**

Syllables long by position (underlined): **ser-vat, sa-pi-en-ti-a, ax-is** (= *ak-sis*).

Examples with all long syllables, whether by nature or by position, underlined: **lau-dā-te, mo-ne-ō, sae-pe, cōn-ser-vā-tis, pu-el-lā-rum.**

Even in English, syllables have this sort of temporal quantity, i.e., some syllables take longer to pronounce than others (consider the word “enough,” with its very short, clipped first syllable, and the longer second syllable), but it is not a phenomenon we think much about. The matter is important in Latin, however, for at least two reasons: first, syllable quantity was a major determinant of the rhythm of Latin poetry, as you will learn later in your study of the language; and, of more immediate importance, syllable quantity determined the position of a word’s stress accent, as explained below.

Accent

Words in Latin, like those in English, were pronounced with extra emphasis on one syllable (or more, in the case of very long words); the place-

³⁵ But in poetry the consonants may be separated according to the rule for two consonants.

³⁶ But remember that a stop + a liquid as well as **qu** and the aspirates **ch, ph, and th** generally count as a single consonant: e.g., **pa-trem, quo-que.**

ment of this “stress accent” in Latin (unlike English) followed these strict and simple rules:

1. In a word of two syllables the accent always falls on the first syllable:
sér-vo, saé-pe, ní-hil.
2. In a word of three or more syllables (a) the accent falls on the next to last syllable (sometimes called the “penult”), if that syllable is long (**ser-vá-re, cōn-sér-vat, for-tú-na**); (b) otherwise, the accent falls on the syllable before that (the “antepenult”: **mó-ne-ō, pá-tri-a, pe-cú-ni-a, vó-lu-cris**).

Because these rules for accentuation are so regular, accent marks (as opposed to macrons) are not ordinarily included when writing Latin; in this text, however, accents are provided in both the “paradigms” (sample declensions and conjugations) and the chapter vocabularies, as an aid to correct pronunciation.

Although oral-aural communication and conversational skills are sometimes—and unfortunately—given little stress in the Latin classroom, nevertheless a “correct” or at least a consistent pronunciation is essential to the mastery of any language. An ability to pronounce Latin words and sentences aloud according to the rules provided in this introduction will also enable you to “pronounce” correctly in your mind and, as you think of a word, to spell it correctly.

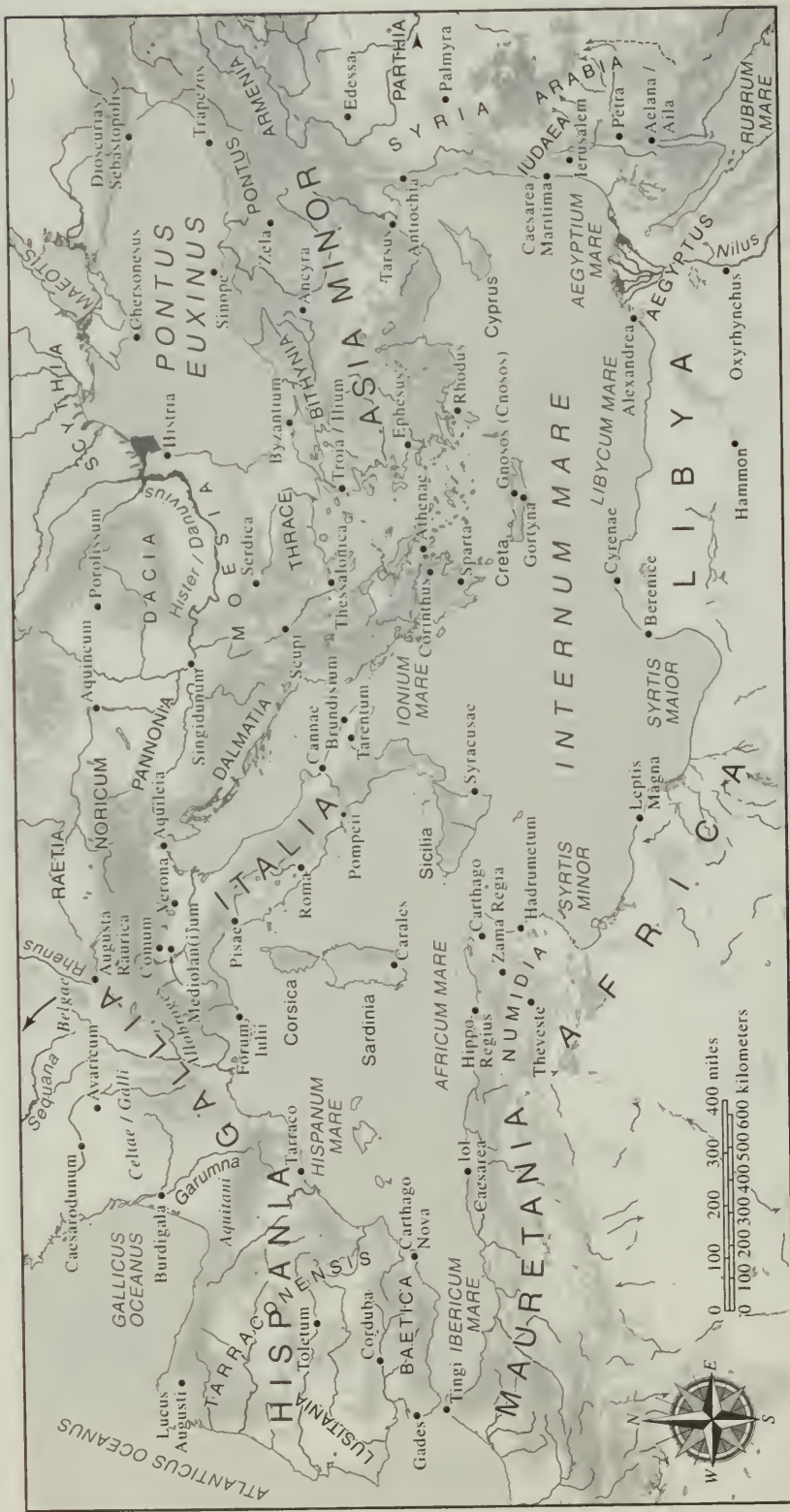
As you begin your study of Latin, remember that it did not merely consist of written texts to be silently read (in fact, the Romans themselves nearly always read aloud!), but it was for centuries a spoken language—a language learned and spoken by Roman boys and girls, in fact, just as your own native language was acquired and spoken by you in your childhood, and not only by famous orators, poets, and politicians. You should apply all four language learning skills in your study every day, listening and speaking as well as reading and writing; always pronounce paradigms and vocabulary items aloud, and most especially read aloud every Latin sentence or passage you encounter; and always read *for comprehension*, before attempting a translation into English.

MAPS



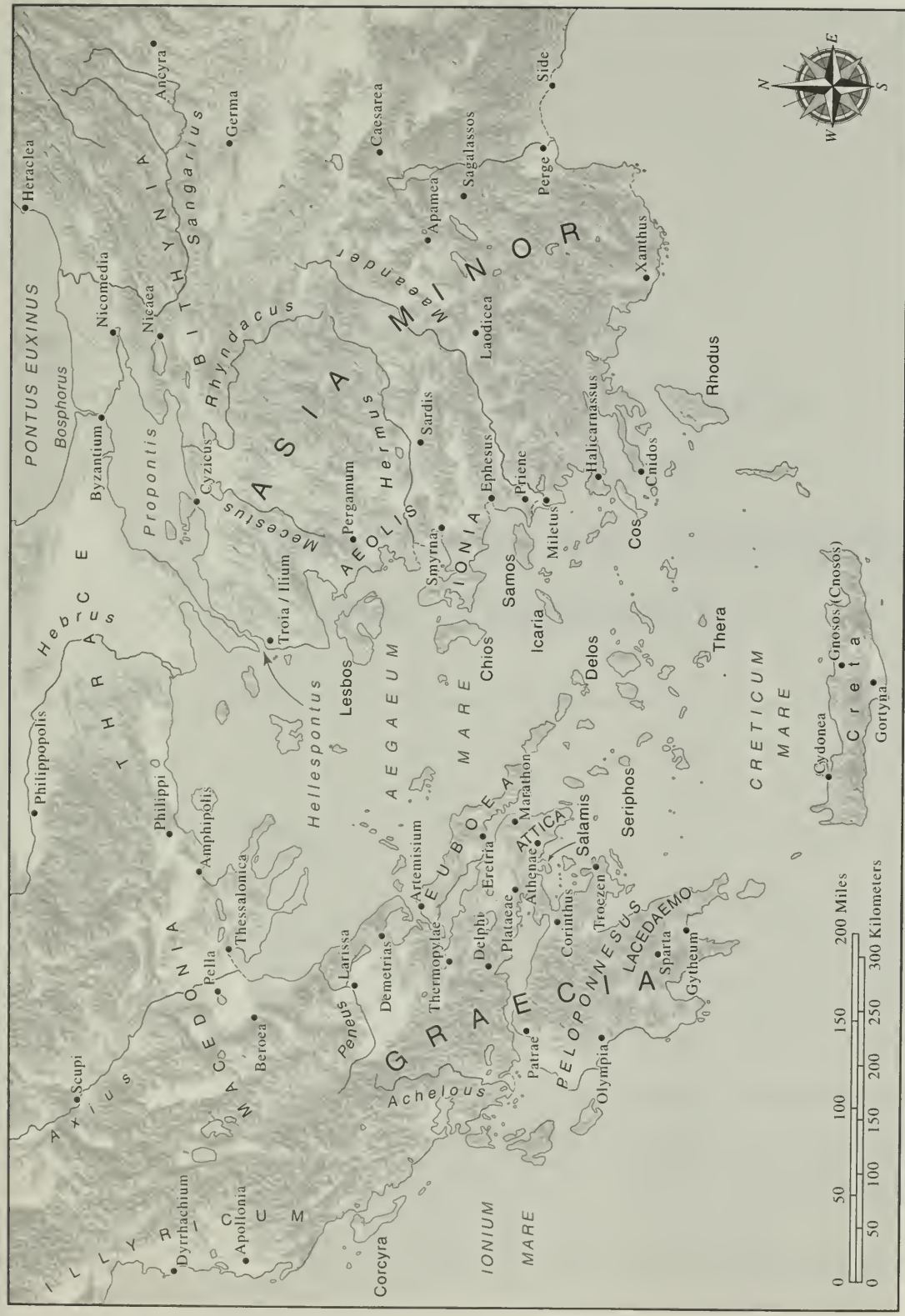
Map 1: ANCIENT ITALY

Map by Richard A. LaFleur and Thomas R. Elliott, using materials provided by the American Philological Association's Classical Atlas Project (http://www.unc.edu/depts/cl_atlas)



Map 2: THE ROMAN EMPIRE

Map by Richard A. LaFleur and Thomas R. Elliott, using materials provided by the American Philological Association's Classical Atlas Project (http://www.unc.edu/depts/cl_atlas)



Map 3: ANCIENT GREECE AND THE AEGEAN

Verbs; First and Second Conjugations: Present Infinitive, Indicative, and Imperative Active; Translating

VERBS

One might properly consider the verb (from Lat. **verbum**, *word*), which describes the subject's activity or state of being, to be the most important word in a sentence, and so we may best begin our study of Latin with a look at that part of speech (the other parts of speech in Latin are the same as those in English: nouns, pronouns, adjectives, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, interjections).

In Latin as in English, verbs exhibit the following five characteristics:

PERSON (Lat. **persōna**): who is the subject, i.e., who performs (or, in the passive, receives) the action, from the speaker's point of view; 1st person = the speaker(s), *I, we*; 2nd = the person(s) spoken to, *you*; 3rd = the person(s) spoken about, *he, she, it, they*.

NUMBER (**numerus**): how many subjects, singular or plural.

TENSE (**tempus**, *time*): the time of the action; Latin has six tenses, present, future, imperfect, perfect (or present perfect), future perfect, and pluperfect (or past perfect).

MOOD (**modus**, *manner*): the manner of indicating the action or state of being of the verb; like English, Latin has the indicative (which “indicates” facts) and the imperative (which orders actions), introduced in this chapter, and the subjunctive (which describes, in particular, hypothetical or potential actions), introduced in Ch. 28.

VOICE (**vox**): an indication, with transitive verbs (those that can take direct objects), of whether the subject performs the action (the active voice) or receives it (passive).

CONJUGATION

To conjugate (Lat. **coniugāre**, *join together*) a verb is to list together all its forms, according to these five variations of person, number, tense, mood, and voice. If asked to conjugate the English verb *to praise* in the present tense and the active voice of the indicative mood, you would say:

	Singular	Plural
<i>1st person</i>	I praise	we praise
<i>2nd person</i>	you praise	you praise
<i>3rd person</i>	he (she, it) praises	they praise

The person and the number of five of these six forms cannot be determined in English without the aid of pronouns *I*, *you*, *we*, *they*. Only in the third person singular can you omit the pronoun *he* (*she*, *it*) and still make clear by the special ending of the verb that *praises* is third person and singular.

PERSONAL ENDINGS

What English can accomplish in only one of the six forms, Latin can do in all six by means of “personal endings,” which indicate distinctly the person, the number, and the voice of the verb. Since these personal endings will be encountered at every turn, the time taken to memorize them at this point will prove an excellent investment. For the active voice they are:

Singular

<i>1st person</i>	-ō or -m, which corresponds to <i>I</i> .
<i>2nd person</i>	-s, which corresponds to <i>you</i> .
<i>3rd person</i>	-t, which corresponds to <i>he, she, it</i> .

Plural

1st person

-mus, which corresponds to *we*.

2nd person

-tis, which corresponds to *you*.

3rd person

-nt, which corresponds to *they*.

The next step is to find a verbal “stem” to which these endings can be added.

PRESENT INFINITIVE¹ ACTIVE AND PRESENT STEM

The present active infinitives of the model verbs used in this book for the first and second conjugations are respectively:

laudāre, *to praise*monēre, *to advise*

You see that **-āre** characterizes the first conjugation and **-ēre** characterizes the second.

Now from the infinitives drop the **-re**, which is the actual infinitive ending, and you have the “present stems”:

laudā-

monē-

To this present stem add the personal endings (with the few modifications noted below), and you are ready to read or to say something in Latin about the present: e.g., **laudā-s**, *you praise*; **monē-mus**, *we advise*.

This leads to the first of many paradigms. “Paradigm” (pronounced páradime) derives from Greek **paradeigma**, which means *pattern, example*; and paradigms are used at numerous points throughout the chapters and in the Appendix to provide summaries of forms according to convenient patterns. Of course, the ancient Romans learned the many inflected forms from their parents and from daily contacts with other people by the direct method, as we ourselves learn English today. However, since we lack this natural Latin environment and since we usually begin the study of Latin at a relatively late age under the exigencies of time, the analytical approach through paradigms, though somewhat artificial and uninspiring, is generally found to be the most efficacious method.

In the process of memorizing all paradigms, be sure always to say them aloud, for this gives you the help of two senses, both sight and sound; speak-

¹ The *infinitive* (**īnfinītus**, **īnfinītīvus**, *not limited*) simply gives the basic idea of the verb; its form is “not limited” by person and number, though it does indicate tense and voice.

ing and listening to the language, to its basic sounds and rhythms, will be an enormous aid to acquiring mastery.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *Laudō & Moneō*

Singular

1. laudō, <i>I praise, am praising, do praise</i>	moneō, <i>I advise, etc.</i>
2. laudās, <i>you praise, are praising, do praise</i>	monēs, <i>you advise, etc.</i>
3. laudat, <i>he (she, it) praises, is praising, does praise</i>	monet, <i>he (she, it) advises, etc.</i>

Plural

1. laudāmus, <i>we praise, are praising, do praise</i>	monēmus, <i>we advise, etc.</i>
2. laudātis, <i>you praise, are praising, do praise</i>	monētis, <i>you advise, etc.</i>
3. laudant, <i>they praise, are praising, do praise</i>	monent, <i>they advise, etc.</i>

Note that Latin has only these present active indicative forms, and so simple or progressive or emphatic translations are possible, depending on context; e.g., **mē laudant**, *they praise me* or *they are praising me* or *they do praise me*.

Remember that the accent marks are provided in the paradigm only for convenience; they follow the strict rules for accentuation explained in the Introduction, and need not be included in your own conjugation of Latin verbs (unless you are asked to do so by your instructor).

The macrons, however, must be included, and the vowel sounds they indicate must be taken into account in memorizing the paradigm and in conjugating other first and second conjugation verbs. Notice that the stem vowel has no macron in certain forms (e.g., **moneō**, **laudant**); you should learn the following rule, which will make it easier to account for macrons that seem to disappear and reappear arbitrarily:

Vowels that are normally long are usually shortened when they occur immediately before another vowel (hence **moneō** instead of ***monēō**²), before **-m**, **-r**, or **-t** at the end of a word (hence **laudat**, not ***laudāt**), or before **nt** or **nd** in any position (hence **laudant**).

In the case of first conjugation, or **-ā-**, verbs (by contrast with the second conjugation, **-ē-** verbs), the stem vowel is not merely shortened but disappears entirely in the first person singular, through contraction with the final **-ō** (hence **laudō**, not ***laudāō**).

² The asterisk here and elsewhere in this book indicates a form not actually occurring in classical Latin.

PRESENT ACTIVE IMPERATIVE

The imperative mood is used for giving commands; the singular imperative form is identical to the present stem and the plural imperative (employed when addressing two or more persons) is formed simply by adding **-te** to the stem:

2nd person singular	laúdā, <i>praise!</i>	mónē, <i>advise!</i>
2nd person plural	laudāte, <i>praise!</i>	monēte, <i>advise!</i>

E.g., **Monē mē!** *Advise me!* **Servāte mē!** *Save me!*

READING AND TRANSLATING LATIN

The following simple rules will assist you with translating the sentences and the reading passage in this chapter; further assistance will be provided in subsequent chapters. First, always read each sentence from beginning to end aloud; read for comprehension, thinking about the meanings of the individual words and the likely sense of the whole sentence. The verb often comes last in a Latin sentence: remember that if its ending is either first or second person, you already know the subject (“I,” “we,” or “you”); if the verb is third person, look for a noun that might be the subject (frequently the first word in the sentence). Subject-object-verb (SOV) is a common pattern. Now, once you have memorized the paradigms above and the vocabulary in the following list, and practiced conjugating some of the verbs in the list, try your hand at reading and translating the sentences and short passage that conclude the chapter. **BONAM FORTŪNAM!** (*Good luck!*)

VOCABULARY

Remember, in memorizing the vocabularies always be sure to say all the Latin words *aloud* as you learn the meanings. N.B.: Like an English verb, a Latin verb has “principal parts” (usually four, vs. three in English) which must be memorized in order to conjugate the verb in all its forms. As you will see from the following list, the first principal part is the first person singular present active indicative, and the second principal part is the present active infinitive; the function of the remaining principal parts will be explained in subsequent chapters.

mē, pronoun, *me, myself*

quid, pronoun, *what* (quid pro quo)

nihil, noun, *nothing* (nihilism, annihilate)

nōn, adverb, *not*

saépe, adverb, *often*

sī, conjunction, *if*

ámō, **amāre**, **amāvī**, **amátum**, *to love, like*; **amábō tē**, idiom, *please* (lit., *I will love you*) (amatory, Amanda)

cōgitō, **cōgitāre**, **cōgitāvī**, **cōgitátum**, *to think, ponder, consider, plan* (cogitate)

dēbeō, **dēbere**, **dēbuī**, **dēbitum**, *to owe; ought, must* (debt, debit, due, duty)

dō, **dāre**, **dédī**, **dátum**, *to give, offer* (date, data)

errō, **errāre**, **errāvī**, **errátum**, *to wander, err, go astray, be mistaken* (erratic, errant, erroneous, error, aberration)

laúdō, **laudāre**, **laudāvī**, **laudátum**, *to praise* (laud, laudable, laudatory)

móneō, **monēre**, **mónuī**, **mónitum**, *to remind, advise, warn* (admonish, admonition, monitor, monument, monster, premonition)

sálveō, **salvēre**, *to be well, be in good health*; **sálvē**, **salvēte**, *hello, greetings* (salvation, salver, salvage)

sérvō, **servāre**, **servāvī**, **servátum**, *to preserve, save, keep, guard* (observe, preserve, reserve, reservoir)

cōservō, **cōservāre**, **cōservāvī**, **cōservátum** (**con-servō**), a stronger form of **servō**, *to preserve, conserve, maintain* (conservative, conservation)

térreō, **terrēre**, **térruī**, **térritum**, *to frighten, terrify* (terrible, terrific, terrify, terror, terrorist, deter)

váleō, **valēre**, **valuī**, **valitúrum**, *to be strong, have power; be well*; **válē** (**valēte**), *good-bye, farewell* (valid, invalidate, prevail, prevalent, valedictory)

videō, **vidēre**, **vidī**, **vísium**, *to see; observe, understand* (provide, evident, view, review, revise, revision, television)

vócō, **vocāre**, **vocāvī**, **vocátum**, *to call, summon* (vocation, advocate, vocabulary, convoke, evoke, invoke, provoke, revoke)

SENTENTIAE (SENTENCES)³

1. Labor mē vocat. (**labor**, a noun, and one of hundreds of Latin words that come into English with their spelling unchanged; such words are often not defined in the chapters but may be found in the end Vocab., p. 468–88 below.)
2. Monē mē, amábō tē, sī errō.
3. Festīnā lentē. (a saying of Augustus.—**festīnō**, **festīnāre**, *to hasten, make haste*.—**lentē**, adv., *slowly*.)
4. Laudās mē; culpant mē. (**culpō**, **culpāre**, *to blame, censure*.)
5. Saepe peccāmus. (**peccō**, **peccāre**, *to sin*.)

³ All these sentences are based on ancient Roman originals but most of them had to be considerably adapted to meet the exigencies of this first chapter.

6. Quid dēbēmus cōgitāre?
7. Cōservāte mē!
8. Rūmor volat. (**volō, volāre, to fly.**)
9. Mē nōn amat.
10. Nihil mē terret.
11. Apollō mē saepe servat.
12. Salvēte!—quid vidētis? Nihil vidēmus.
13. Saepe nihil cōgitās.
14. Bis dās, sī cito dās. (**bis, adv., twice.**—**cito, adv., quickly.**—What do you suppose this ancient proverb actually means?)
15. Sī valēs, valeō. (A friendly sentiment with which Romans often commenced a letter.)
16. What does he see?
17. They are giving nothing.
18. You ought not to praise me.
19. If I err, he often warns me.
20. If you love me, save me, please!

THE POET HORACE CONTEMPLATES AN INVITATION

Maecēnās et Vergilius mē hodiē vocant. Quid cōgitāre dēbeō? Quid dēbeō respondēre? Sī errō, mē saepe monent et culpant; sī nōn errō, mē laudant. Quid hodiē cōgitāre dēbeō?

(For Horace, and the other authors cited in these chapter reading passages, review the Introd.; the patron Maecenas and the poet Virgil were both friends of Horace, and this brief passage is very freely adapted from autobiographical references in his poetry.—**et, conj., and.**—**hodiē, adv., today.**—**respondeō, respondēre, to reply, respond.**)



Roman portrait medal of Horace
Museo Nazionale Romano delle Terme
Rome, Italy

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Here and at the close of each subsequent chapter, you will find a variety of Latin “tidbits,” for your pleasure and edification! (**Gaudium**, by the way, is the Lat. noun for *joy* or just plain *fun*, and **ūtilis** is an adj. meaning *useful*.) To start with, here is some “first day” conversational Latin:

Salvē, discipula or **discipule!** *Hello, student!* (The **-a/-e** variants distinguish between female and male students respectively.)

Salvēte, discipulae et discipulī! *Hello, students!* (Feminine and masculine plural.)

Salvē, magister or **magistra!** *Greetings, teacher!* (Again, masculine or feminine.)

Valēte, discipulī et discipulae! **Valē, magister (magistra)!** *Good-bye, students . . . , etc.*

Quid est nōmen tuum? *What's your name?*

Nōmen meum est “Mark.” *My name is Mark.* (Or, better yet, how about a Latin name: **nōmen meum est “Mārcus.”**)

Remember that **labor** in sentence 1 above is just one of a great many Latin words that come directly into English without any alteration in spelling? Well, **rumor** in sentence 8 is another, and so is **videō** in the Vocabulary. **Amō**, however, does not mean “bullets,” nor is **amat** “a small rug,” so beware of . . . **iocī terribilēs** (*terrible jokes*): **valēte!**



*Model of Rome in the 4th century A.D.
Museo della Civiltà Romana, Rome, Italy*

2

Nouns and Cases; First Declension; Agreement of Adjectives; Syntax

NOUNS AND CASES

As a Latin verb has various inflections or terminations which signal its particular role in a given sentence, so a Latin noun (from **nōmen**, *name*) has various terminations to show whether it is used as the subject or the object of a verb, whether it indicates the idea of possession, and so on. The various inflected forms of a noun are called “cases,” the more common uses and meanings of which are catalogued below; you will encounter several other case uses in subsequent chapters, all of which you must be able to identify and name, so it is advisable to begin now keeping a list for each case, with definitions and examples, in your notebook or computer file. For illustrative purposes it will be convenient to refer to the following English sentences.¹ which later in the chapter will be translated into Latin for further analysis.

- A. The poet is giving the girl large roses (*or* is giving large roses to the girl).
- B. The girls are giving the poet’s roses to the sailors.
- C. Without money the girls’ country (*or* the country of the girls) is not strong.

¹ These sentences have been limited to the material available in Chs. 1 and 2 so that they may readily be understood when turned into Latin.

Nominative Case

The Romans used the nominative case most commonly to indicate the *subject* of a finite verb; e.g., *poet* in sentence A and *girls* in sentence B.

Genitive Case

When one noun was used to modify² another, the Romans put the modifying, or limiting, noun in the genitive case, as we do in such instances as *poet's* in sentence B and *girls'* in sentence C. One idea very commonly conveyed by the genitive is *possession* and, although other categories besides the genitive of possession are distinguished, the meaning of the genitive can generally be ascertained by translating it with the preposition *of*. A Latin noun in the genitive case usually follows the noun it modifies.

Dative Case

The Romans used the dative to mark the person or thing indirectly affected by the action of the verb, as *girl (to the girl)* in sentence A and *to the sailors* in B; both of these nouns are *indirect objects*, the most common use of the dative. In most instances the sense of the dative can be determined by using *to* or *for* with the noun.

Accusative Case

The Romans used the accusative case to indicate the *direct object* of the action of the verb, the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb. It can also be used for the object of certain prepositions: e.g., **ad**, *to*; **in**, *into*; **post**, *after*, *behind*.³ In sentences A and B, *roses* is the direct object of *is (are) giving*.

Ablative Case

The ablative case we sometimes call the adverbial⁴ case because it was the case used by the Romans when they wished to modify, or limit, the verb by such ideas as *means* ("by what"), *agent* ("by whom"), *accompaniment* ("with whom"), *manner* ("how"), *place* ("where; from which"), *time* ("when or within which"). The Romans used the ablative sometimes with a preposition and sometimes without one. There is no simple rule of thumb for translating this complex case. However, you will find little difficulty when a Latin preposition is used (**ab**, *by*, *from*; **cum**, *with*; **dē** and **ex**, *from*; **in**, *in*, *on*); and in general you can associate with the ablative such English preposi-

² Modify derives its meaning from Latin **modus** in the sense of "limit"; it means to limit one word by means of another. For example, in sentence B *roses* by itself gives a general idea but the addition of *poet's* modifies, or limits, *roses* so that only a specific group is in mind. The addition of *red* would have modified, or limited, *roses* still further by excluding white and yellow ones.

³ A preposition is a word placed before (**prae-positus**) a noun or pronoun, the "object of the preposition," to indicate its relationship to another word in a sentence; prepositional phrases can function adjectivally ("a man *of wisdom*") or adverbially ("he came *from Rome*").

⁴ Latin **ad verbum** means *to* or *near the verb*; an adverb modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

tions as *by, with, from, in, on, at*.⁵ The more complex uses will be taken up at convenient points in the following chapters.

Vocative Case

The Romans used the vocative case, sometimes with the interjection⁶ *Ō*, to address (*vocāre, to call*) a person or thing directly; e.g., (*Ō*) *Caesar*, (*O*) *Caesar*; *Ō fortūna*, *O fortune*. In modern punctuation the vocative (or noun of *direct address*) is separated from the rest of the sentence by commas. With one major exception to be studied in Ch. 3, the vocative has the same form as that of the nominative, and so it is ordinarily not listed in the paradigms.

FIRST DECLENSION⁷ — NOUN AND ADJECTIVE

The listing of all the cases of a noun—or an adjective—is called a “declension.” Just as we conjugate verbs by adding endings to a stem, so we “decline” nouns and adjectives by adding endings to a “base.” The nominative and genitive singular forms of a noun are provided in the vocabulary entry, which must be completely memorized, and the base is then found by dropping the genitive ending; the procedure for an adjective is similar and will be clarified in Chs. 3–4. The following paradigm, which should be memorized (and remember to practice *aloud!*), illustrates the declension of a noun/adjective phrase, *porta magna, the large gate*:

	porta, gate	magna, large		
	Base: port-	Base: magn-		Endings
Singular				
<i>Nom.</i>	pórtā	mágnā	<i>the (a)</i> ⁸ <i>large gate</i>	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	pórtae	mágnae	<i>of the large gate</i>	-ae
<i>Dat.</i>	pórtae	mágnae	<i>to/for the large gate</i>	-ae
<i>Acc.</i>	pórtam	mágnam	<i>the large gate</i>	-am
<i>Abl.</i>	pórtā	mágnā	<i>by/with/from, etc., the large gate</i>	-ā
<i>Voc.</i>	pórtā	mágnā	<i>O large gate</i>	-a

⁵ For instance: *pecūniā*, *by or with money*; *ab puellā*, *by or from the girl*; *cum puellā*, *with the girl*; *cum irā*, *with anger, angrily*; *ab (dē, ex) patriā*, *from the fatherland*; *in patriā*, *in the fatherland*; *in mēnsā*, *on the table*; *ūnā hōrā*, *in one hour*.

⁶ Lat. *interiectiō* means, lit., *throwing something in*, i.e., without syntactical connection to the rest of the sentence.

⁷ The term *declension* is connected with the verb *dē-clīnāre, to lean away from*. The idea of the ancient grammarians was that the other cases “lean away from” the nominative; they deviate from the nominative.

⁸ Since classical Latin had no words corresponding exactly to our definite article *the* or our indefinite article *a*, *porta* can be translated as *gate* or *the gate* or *a gate*.

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	pórtae	mágnae	<i>the large gates or large gates</i>	-ae
<i>Gen.</i>	portárum	magnárum	<i>of the large gates</i>	-árum
<i>Dat.</i>	pórtīs	mágnīs	<i>to/for the large gates</i>	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	pórtās	mágnās	<i>the large gates</i>	-ās
<i>Abl.</i>	pórtīs	mágnīs	<i>by/with/from, etc., the large gates</i>	-īs
<i>Voc.</i>	pórtae	mágnae	<i>O large gates</i>	-ae

GENDER OF FIRST DECLENSION = FEMININE

Like English, Latin distinguishes three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter. While Latin nouns indicating male beings are naturally masculine and those indicating female beings are feminine, the gender of most other nouns was a grammatical concept, not a natural one, and so a noun's gender must simply be memorized as part of the vocabulary entry.

Nouns of the first declension are normally feminine; e.g., **puella**, *girl*; **rosa**, *rose*; **pecūnia**, *money*; **patria**, *country*. A few nouns denoting individuals engaged in what were among the Romans traditionally male occupations are masculine; e.g., **poēta**, *poet*; **nauta**, *sailor*; **agricola**, *farmer* (others not employed in this book are **aurīga**, *charioteer*; **incola**, *inhabitant*; **pīrāta**, *pirate*).

In this book, as a practical procedure the gender of a noun will not be specifically labeled *m.*, *f.*, or *n.* in the notes, if it follows the general rules.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

The normal role of adjectives is to accompany nouns and to modify, or limit, them in size, color, texture, character, and so on; and, like nouns, adjectives are declined. Naturally, therefore, an adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case (an adjective that modifies more than one noun usually agrees in gender with the nearest one, though sometimes the masculine predominates). An adjective (**adiectum**, *set next to, added*) is a word *added* to a noun. As its Latin root meaning also suggests, an adjective was usually positioned next to its noun (except in poetry, where word order is much freer). Most often the adjective followed the noun, a logical arrangement since the person or thing named is generally more important than the attribute; exceptions were adjectives denoting size or number, as well as demonstratives (**hic**, *this*; **ille**, *that*), which normally precede, as do any adjectives which the speaker or writer wishes to emphasize.

SYNTAX

The Greek verb **syntattein** means *to arrange* or, in particular, to draw up an army in orderly array. Similarly, in grammatical terminology “syntax” is the orderly marshaling of words according to the service which they are to perform in a sentence. To explain the syntax of a given noun or adjective, you should state its form, the word on which it most closely depends, and the reason for the form (i.e., its grammatical use or function in the sentence). The sample sentences given above, here translated into Latin, provide some examples. Notice in the subject and verb endings the rule that *a verb must agree with its subject in person and number*; notice too that where a noun ending such as **-ae** can represent more than one case, word order and context provide necessary clues to a sentence’s meaning (hence **puellae** is the indirect object in A, subject in B).

- A. Poëta puellae magnās rosās dat.
- B. Puellae nautīs rosās poëtae dant.
- C. Patria puellārum sine pecūniā nōn valet.

The syntax of some of these words can be conveniently stated thus:

Word	Form	Dependence	Reason
<i>Sentence A</i>			
poëta	nom. sg.	dat	subject
puellae	dat. sg.	dat	indirect object
magnās	acc. pl.	rosās	agreement of adj. with its noun
<i>Sentence B</i>			
puellae	nom. pl.	dant	subject
nautīs	dat. pl.	dant	indirect object
rosās	acc. pl.	dant	direct object
poëtae	gen. sg.	rosās	possession
<i>Sentence C</i>			
pecūniā	abl. sg.	sine	object of preposition

Be ready to explain the syntax of all nouns and adjectives in the sentences and reading passage below.

VOCABULARY

- fāma, fāmae**, f., *rumor, report; fame, reputation* (famous, defame, infamy)
- fōrma, fōrmae**, f., *form, shape; beauty* (formal, format, formula, formless, deform, inform, etc.; but not formic, formidable)
- fortūna, fortūnae**, f., *fortune, luck* (fortunate, unfortunate)
- īra, īrae**, f., *ire, anger* (irate, irascible; but not irritate)
- naūta, naūtae**, m., *sailor* (nautical)

- pátria, pátriae, f.**, *fatherland, native land, (one's) country* (expatriate, repatriate)
- pecúnia, -ae,**⁹ *f., money* (pecuniary, impecunious; cp. peculation)
- philosóphia, -ae, f.** (Greek **philosophia**, *love of wisdom*), *philosophy*
- poéna, -ae, f.**, *penalty, punishment*; **poénās dāre**, *idiom, to pay the penalty* (penal, penalize, penalty, pain, subpoena)
- poéta, -ae, m.**, *poet* (poetry)
- pórta, -ae, f.**, *gate, entrance* (portal, portico, porch, porthole)
- puélla, -ae, f.**, *girl*
- rósa, -ae, f.**, *rose* (rosary, roscate, rosette)
- senténtia, -ae, f.**, *feeling, thought, opinion, vote, sentence* (sententious, sentencing)
- víta, -ae, f.**, *life; mode of life* (vital, vitals, vitality, vitamin, vitalize, devitalize, revitalize)
- antíqua, -ae, adjective,**¹⁰ *ancient, old-time* (antique, antiquities, antiquated, antiquarian)
- mágna, -ae, adj.**, *large, great, important* (magnify, magnificent, magnate, magnitude, magnanimous)
- méa, -ae, adj.**, *my*
- múlta, -ae, adj.**, *much, many* (multitude, multiply, multiple; multi-, a prefix as in multimillionaire)
- túa, -ae, adj.**, *your*, used when speaking to only one person
- et**, conjunction, *and*; **et . . . et**, *both . . . and*
- sed**, conj., *but*
- Ō**, interjection, *O!, Oh!*, commonly used with the vocative
- síne**, preposition + abl., *without* (sinecure, sans)
- est**, *is*

SENTENTIAE ANTÍQUAE¹¹

1. Salvē, Ō patria! (Plautus.)
2. Fāma et sententia volant. (Virgil.—**volāre**, *to fly, move quickly*.)

⁹ **pecúnia, -ae** = **pecúnia, pecúniae**; this abbreviated format will be employed in all subsequent entries for regular first decl. nouns.

¹⁰ Given here are the adjectives' nom. and gen. forms, the latter abbreviated as with first decl. nouns; after the masculine and neuter forms are learned in the next two chapters, adj. entries will provide the nom. endings only for all three genders (see, e.g., **bónus, -a, -um** in the Ch. 4 Vocab.).

¹¹ Sentences of ancient Roman origin. Henceforth, the author of every ancient Latin sentence will be named. An asterisk before an author's name means that the sentence is quoted verbatim. The lack of an asterisk means that the original sentence had to be somewhat altered to bring it into line with the student's limited knowledge of Latin, but the student may be assured that the thought and the expression are those of the ancient author indicated. The specific passage from which each sentence is adapted is identified below, p. 505–07, for students who are interested in the context and wish to do further reading.

3. Dā veniam puellae, amābō tē. (Terence.—**venia**, -ae, *favor, pardon*.)
4. Clēmēntia tua multās vītās servat. (Cicero.—**clēmēntia**, -ae, *clemency*.)
5. Multam pecūniam dēportat. (Cicero.—**dēportāre**, *to carry away*.)
6. Fortūnam et vītā antīquae patriae saepe laudās sed recūsās. (Horace.—**recūsāre**, *to refuse, reject*.)
7. Mē vītāre turbam iubēs. (*Seneca.—**vītāre**, *to avoid*; do not confuse this verb with the noun **vīta**.—**turba**, -ae, *crowd, multitude*.—**iubēre**, *to order*.)
8. Mē philosophiae dō. (Seneca.)
9. Philosophia est ars vītae. (*Cicero.—**ars**, nom. sg., *art*.)
10. Sānam fōrmam vītae cōservāte. (Seneca.—**sāna**, -ae, adj., *sound, sane*.)
11. Immodica īra creat īnsāniam. (Seneca.—**immodica**, -ae, adj., *immoderate, excessive*.—**creāre**, *to create*.—**īnsānia**, -ae, *unsoundness, insanity*.)
12. Quid cōgītās?—dēbēmus īram vītāre. (Seneca.)
13. Nūlla avāritia sine poenā est. (*Seneca.—**nūlla**, -ae, adj., *no*.—**avāritia**, -ae, *avarice*.)
14. Mē saevīs catēnīs onerat. (Horace.—**saeva**, -ae, adj., *cruel*.—**catēna**, -ae, *chain*.—**onerāre**, *to load, oppress*.)
15. Rotam fortūnae nōn timent. (Cicero.—**rota**, -ae, *wheel*.—**timēre**, *to fear*.)
16. The girls save the poet's life.
17. Without philosophy we often go astray and pay the penalty.
18. If your land is strong, nothing terrifies the sailors and you ought to praise your great fortune.
19. We often see the penalty of anger.
20. The ancient gate is large.

CATULLUS BIDS HIS GIRLFRIEND FAREWELL

Puella mea mē nōn amat. Valē, puella! Catullus obdūrat: poēta puellam nōn amat, fōrmam puellae nōn laudat, puellae rosās nōn dat, et puellam nōn bāsiat! Īra mea est magna! Obdūrō, mea puella—sed sine tē nōn valeō.

(Catullus 8; prose adaptation. For this 1st cen. B.C. poet, see the Introd., and for unadapted excerpts from the original poem, see Ch. 19.—Note the poet's shift from first person, to third, and back to first; what is the intended emotional effect?—**obdūrāre**, *to be firm, tough*.—**bāsiāre**, *to kiss*.—**tē**, *you*.)

ETYMOLOGY

Note that “etymology” comes from the Greek **etymos**, *true, real*, and **logos**, *word, meaning*. Consequently, the etymology of a word traces the deri-

vation of the word and shows its original meaning. Under this heading will be introduced various items not covered by the derivatives listed in the vocabularies. Each chapter so abounds in such material, however, that complete coverage cannot be attempted.

Pecūnia is connected with **pecus**, *cattle*, just as English *fee* is related to German **Vieh**, *cattle*.

Fortūna derives from **fors**, *chance, accident*.

Explain the meanings of the following English words on the basis of the appropriate Latin words found in the sentences indicated. Further aid, if needed, can be obtained from a good dictionary; *Webster's New World Dictionary* and the *American Heritage Dictionary* are especially helpful with etymologies.

volatile (2)	tenet (10)	onerous (14)
venial (3)	creature (11)	rotary, rotate (15)
turbulent (7)	nullify (13)	obdurate ("Catullus")
insane (10)	concatenation (14)	

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulī et discipulae! From the Vocab.: To do something **sub rosā** is to do it secretly or in confidence (the rose was in antiquity a symbol of secrecy); **aqua vītae**, lit., *the water of life*, is an old Latin phrase for "whiskey"; and a "sinecure" (from **sine** + **cūra**, *care*) is an office or position that is largely *without responsibility*.

And here's some more conversational Latin:

Quid agis hodiē? *How are you today?*

Optimē! *Great!*

Pessimē! *Terrible!*

Bene! *Good!*

Satis bene. *So-so or Okay.*

Nōn bene. *Not well.*

Et tū? *And you?*

Discipulae et discipulī, valēte!

Second Declension: Masculine Nouns and Adjectives; Apposition; Word Order

THE SECOND DECLENSION

The second declension follows the rule already given for the first declension: base + endings. However, the endings differ from those of the first declension, except in the dative and the ablative plural. The nouns of this declension are regularly either masculine or neuter; the masculines are introduced below, the neuters in Ch. 4. Most second declension masculine nouns have a nominative singular ending in **-us**, while a few end in **-er** (the neuters, as we shall see in the next chapter, end with **-um**).

MASCULINES IN -us

	amīcus, friend	magnus, great		
Base:	amīc-	magn-		Endings
Singular				
Nom.	amīcus	māgnus	<i>althe great friend</i>	-us
Gen.	amīcī	māgnī	<i>of a great friend</i>	-ī
Dat.	amīcō	māgnō	<i>to/for a great friend</i>	-ō
Acc.	amīcum	māgnum	<i>a great friend</i>	-um
Abl.	amīcō	māgnō	<i>by/with/from a great friend</i>	-ō
Voc.	amīce	māgne	<i>O great friend</i>	-e

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	amīcī	māgnī	<i>great friends</i>	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	amīcōrum	magnōrum	<i>of great friends</i>	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	amīcīs	māgnīs	<i>to/for great friends</i>	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	amīcōs	māgnōs	<i>great friends</i>	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	amīcīs	māgnīs	<i>by/with/from¹ great friends</i>	-īs
<i>Voc.</i>	amīcī	māgnī	<i>O great friends</i>	-ī

MASCULINES IN -er

Of the second declension **-er** masculines, some like **puer** retain the **-e-** in the base, while most, like **ager**, drop the **-e-**, hence the special importance of learning the genitive as part of the full vocabulary entry (though a knowledge of such English derivatives as “puerile” and “agriculture” will also help you remember the base). Similar is the unique **-ir** masculine, **vir**, **virī**, *man*.

Base:	puer, boy puer-	ager, field agr-		Endings
Singular				
<i>Nom.</i>	p <u>u</u> er ²	ágr ²	mágnus ³	(none)
<i>Gen.</i>	p <u>u</u> erī	ágrī	māgnī	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	p <u>u</u> erō	ágrō	māgnō	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	p <u>u</u> erum	ágrum	mágnus	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	p <u>u</u> erō	ágrō	māgnō	-ō
<i>Voc.</i>	p <u>u</u> er	áger	mágne	(none)
Plural				
<i>Nom.</i>	p <u>u</u> erī	ágrī	māgnī	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	magnōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	p <u>u</u> erīs	ágrīs	māgnīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	p <u>u</u> erōs	ágrōs	māgnōs	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	p <u>u</u> erīs	ágrīs	māgnīs	-īs
<i>Voc.</i>	p <u>u</u> erī	ágrī	māgnī	-ī

¹ Remember that this is only an imperfect, makeshift way of representing the ablative, and remember that prepositions are commonly used with the ablative, especially when the noun indicates a person; in English translation a preposition is virtually always used.

² The underlined forms are the ones which call for special attention.

³ Added for the sake of comparison and contrast. Note the combination of **puer magnus**, *a big boy*, and **Ō puer magne**, *O big boy*.

COMMENTS ON CASE ENDINGS

It should be helpful to note that some second declension endings are identical to those in the first (the dat. and abl. pl. in **-īs**) and others are similar (e.g., **-am/-um** in the acc. sg., **-ārum/-ōrum** gen. pl., and **-ās/-ōs** acc. pl.). As in the first declension, some second declension endings are used for different cases (e.g., what different cases may the forms **amīcī**, **amīcō**, and **amīcīs** represent?); again, word order and context will be in such instances essential aids to reading comprehension and translation.

It is especially important to note that only in the singular of **-us** nouns and adjectives of the second declension does the vocative ever differ in spelling from the nominative: singular **amīcus**, **amīce**; but plural **amīcī**, **amīcī**. Nouns in **-ius** (e.g., **filius**, *son*, **Vergilius**, *Virgil*) and the adjective **meus**, *my*, have a single **-ī** in the vocative singular: **mī fili**, *my son*; **Ō Vergilī**, *O Virgil*.

APPOSITION

Gāium, filium meum, in agrō videō.

I see Gaius, my son, in the field.

In this sentence **filium** is in apposition with **Gāium**. An appositive is a noun which is “put beside”⁴ another noun as the explanatory equivalent of the other noun; nouns in apposition always agree in case, usually in number, and often in gender as well. An appositive is commonly separated from the preceding noun by commas.

WORD ORDER

A typical order of words in a simplified Latin sentence or subordinate clause is this: (1) the subject and its modifiers, (2) the indirect object, (3) the direct object, (4) adverbial words or phrases, (5) the verb. In formal composition, the tendency to place the verb at the end of its clause is probably connected with the Romans’ fondness for the periodic style, which seeks to keep the reader or listener in suspense until the last word of a sentence has

⁴ **ad** (*to, near*) + **pōnō**, **positus** (*put*).

been reached. Remember, too, that adjectives and genitive nouns commonly follow the words they modify. However, although the patterns described above should be kept in mind, the Romans themselves made many exceptions to these rules for the purposes of variety and emphasis. In fact, in highly inflected languages like Latin, the order of the words can be relatively unimportant to the sense, thanks to the inflectional endings, which tell so much about the interrelationship of the words in a sentence. On the other hand, in English, where the inflections are relatively few, the sense commonly depends on stricter conventions of word order.

For example, study the following idea as expressed in the one English sentence and the four Latin versions, which all mean essentially the same despite the differences of word order.

- (1) *The boy is giving the pretty girl a rose.*
- (2) *Puer puellae bellae rosam dat.*
- (3) *Bellae puellae puer rosam dat.*
- (4) *Bellae puellae rosam dat puer.*
- (5) *Rosam puer puellae bellae dat.*

Whatever the order of the words in the Latin sentence, the sense remains the same (though the emphasis does vary). Note also that according to its ending, **bellae** must modify **puellae** no matter where these words stand. But if you change the order of the words in the English sentence, you change the sense:

- (1) *The boy is giving the pretty girl a rose.*
- (2) *The pretty girl is giving the boy a rose.*
- (3) *The girl is giving the boy a pretty rose.*
- (4) *The girl is giving the pretty boy a rose.*
- (5) *The rose is giving the boy a pretty girl.*

In all these sentences the same words are used with the same spellings, but the sense of each sentence is different in accordance with the conventions of English word order. Furthermore, where the fifth English sentence is senseless, the fifth Latin sentence, though in much the same order, makes perfectly good sense.

VOCABULARY

áger, ágrī, m., *field, farm* (agrarian, agriculture, agronomy; cp. **agricola**)

agrícōla, -ae, m., *farmer*

amíca, -ae, f., and **amícus**, **amícī**, m., *friend* (amicable, amiable, amity; cp. **amō**)

fémīna, -ae, f., *woman* (female, feminine, femininity)

filia, -ae, f., dat. and abl. pl. **filíabus**, *daughter* (filiation, affiliation, affiliate, filial, hidalgo)

filius, **filii**, m., *son* (see **filia**)

- númerus, -ī,**⁵ m., *number* (numeral, innumerable, enumerate)
pópulus, -ī, m., *the people, a people, a nation* (populace, population, popularity, popularize, populous)
púer, púerī, m., *boy*; pl. *boys, children* (puerile, puerility)
sapiéntia, -ae, f., *wisdom* (sapience, sapient, sage, savant)
vir, virī, m., *man, hero* (virtue, virile, triumvirate; *not* virulent)
avárus (m.), **avára** (f.), adj., *greedy, avaricious* (avarice)
paúcī (m.), **paúcae** (f.), adj., usually pl., *few, a few* (paucity)
Rōmānus (m.), **Rōmána** (f.), adj., *Roman* (Romance, romance, romantic, romanticism, Romanesque, Roumania)
dē, prep. + abl., *down from, from; concerning, about*; also as a prefix **dē-** with such meanings as *down, away, aside, out, off* (demote, from **dē-moveō**; decline, descend)
in, prep. + abl., *in, on*
hódīē, adv., *today*
sēmpēr, adv., *always* (sempiternal)
hábēō, habére, hábuī, hábitum, *to have, hold, possess, consider, regard* (inhabit, “hold in”; ex-hibit, “hold forth”; habit, habitat)
sātiō (1),⁶ *to satisfy, sate* (sate, insatiable, satiety, satisfaction; cp. *satis*, Ch. 5)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Fílium nautae Rōmānī in agrīs vidēmus.
2. Puerī puellās hodiē vocant.
3. Sapientiam amīcārum, fīlia mea, sēmpēr laudat.
4. Multī virī et fēminae philosophiam antīquam cōnservant.
5. Sī ira valet, Ō mī filī, saepe errāmus et poenās damus.
6. Fortūna virōs magnōs amat.
7. Agricola filiābus pecūniam dat.
8. Without a few friends life is not strong.
9. Today you have much fame in your country.
10. We see great fortune in your daughters' lives, my friend.
11. He always gives my daughters and sons roses.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Dēbētis, amīcī, dē populō Rōmānō cōgitāre. (Cicero.)
2. Maecēnās, amīcus Augustī, mē in numerō amīcōrum habet. (Hor-

⁵Regular second declension **-us** nouns will be abbreviated this way in subsequent Vocab. entries (i.e., **númerus, -ī** = **númerus, númerī**).

⁶Regular first conjugation verbs with principal parts following the pattern **-ō/-āre/ -āvi/-ātum** will be indicated with this (1) in subsequent Vocab. entries.

- ace.—**Maccēnās**, a name in nom. sg.; see Ch. 1 reading passage.—**Augustus**, -ī.)
3. Libellus meus et sententiae meae vītās virōrum monent. (Phaedrus.—**libellus**, -ī, *little book*.)
 4. Paucī virī sapientiae student. (Cicero.—**studēre** + dat., *to be eager for*.)
 5. Fortūna adversa virum magnae sapientiae nōn terret. (Horace.—**adversus**, **adversa**, adj. = English.)
 6. Cimōn, vir magnae fāmae, magnam benevolentiam habet. (Nepos.—**Cimōn**, proper name nom. sg.—**benevolentia**, -ae = Eng.)
 7. Semper avārus eget. (*Horace.—**avārus** = **avārus vir**.—**egēre**, *to be in need*.)
 8. Nūlla cōpia pecūniae avārum virum satiat. (Seneca.—**cōpia**, -ae, *abundance*.)
 9. Pecūnia avārum irrītat, nōn satiat. (Publilius Syrus.—**irrītāre**, *to excite, exasperate*.)
 10. Sēcrētē amīcōs admonē; laudā palam. (*Publilius Syrus.—**sēcrētē**, adv., *in secret*.—**admonē** = **monē**.—**palam**, adv., *openly*.)
 11. Modum tenēre dēbēmus. (*Seneca.—**modus**, -ī, *moderation*.—**tenēre**, *to have, observe*.)

THE GRASS IS ALWAYS GREENER

Agricola et vītā et fortūnam nautae saepe laudat; nauta magnam fortūnam et vītā poētae saepe laudat; et poēta vītā et agrōs agricolae laudat. Sine philosophiā avārī virī dē pecūniā semper cōgitant: multam pecūniā habent, sed pecūnia multa virum avārum nōn satiat.

(Horace, *Sermōnēs* 1.1; free prose adaptation.)

ETYMOLOGY

The following are some of the Romance words which you can recognize on the basis of the vocabulary of this chapter.

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French
amīcus	amico	amigo	ami
fīlius	figlio	hijo	fils
numerus	numero	número	numéro
populus	popolo	pueblo	peuple
paucī	poco	poco	peu
semper	sempre	siempre	
habēre	avere	haber	avoir
dē	dī	de	de

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, amīcae et amīcī! Quid agitis hodiē? Well, if you are in the Coast Guard, you are **semper parātus**, *always prepared*, or if you're a U.S. Marine, it's **semper fidēlis**, *always faithful* (from the same Latin root as "Fido," your trusty hound). These are just two (suggested by this chapter's Vocab.) of countless Latin mottoes representing a wide range of modern institutions and organizations. Valēte et habēte fortūnam bonam!



Augustus of Prima Porta
Late 1st century B.C.
Vatican Museums
Vatican State

4

Second Declension Neuters; Adjectives; Present Indicative of Sum; Predicate Nouns and Adjectives; Substantive Adjectives

SECOND DECLENSION—NEUTERS

In the first declension there are no nouns of neuter gender but in the second declension there are many. They are declined as follows, again by adding endings to a base:

Base:	dōnum, gift dōn-	cōnsilium, plan cōnsili-	magnum, great magn-	Endings
Singular				
<i>Nom.</i>	dōnum	cōnsilium	mágnum	-um
<i>Gen.</i>	dōnī	cōnsilī ¹	mágnī	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	dōnō	cōnsiliō	mágnō	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	dōnum	cōnsilium	mágnum	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	dōnō	cōnsiliō	mágnō	-ō

¹ The gen. sg. of second declension nouns ending in -ius or -ium was spelled with a single -ī (*filius*, gen. *filiī*; *cōnsilium*, gen. *cōnsilī*) through the Ciceronian Period. However,

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	dōna	cōnsília	mágha	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	dōnōrum	cōnsiliōrum	magnōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	dōnīs	cōnsiliīs	magnīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	dōna	cōnsília	mágha	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	dōnīs	cōnsiliīs	magnīs	-īs

Notice that the second declension neuter endings are the same as the masculine endings, except that the nominative, accusative, and vocative are identical to one another (this is true of all neuters of all declensions): **-um** in the singular, **-a** in the plural. Word order and context will often enable you to distinguish between a neuter noun used as a subject and one used as an object (vocatives are even more easily distinguished, of course, as they are regularly set off from the rest of the sentence by commas). The plural **-a** ending might be mistaken for a first declension nominative singular, so you can see again how important it is to memorize all vocabulary entries completely, including the gender of nouns. Regular second declension neuters will be presented in the vocabularies in the following abbreviated form: **dōnum, -ī** (= **dōnum, dōnī**), n.

DECLENSION AND AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

The paradigms of **magnus** presented in Chs. 2–4 have illustrated the point that, while the base remains constant, the adjective has masculine, feminine, or neuter endings according to the gender of the noun with which it is used, and it likewise agrees with its noun in number and case. The full declension of **magnus** below provides a good review of the first two declensions.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Singular			
<i>Nom.</i>	mághus	mágha	mághum
<i>Gen.</i>	mághī	mághae	mághī
<i>Dat.</i>	mághō	mághae	mághō
<i>Acc.</i>	mághum	mágham	mághum
<i>Abl.</i>	mághō	mághā	mághō
<i>Voc.</i>	mágha	mágha	mághum

since the genitive form **-ī** (**filī**, **cōnsiliī**) became established during the Augustan Period and since **-ī** was always the rule in adjectives (**eximius**, gen. **eximī**), this is the form which will be employed in this text.

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	magnī	magnae	magna
<i>Gen.</i>	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	magnōs	magnās	magna
<i>Abl.</i>	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
<i>Voc.</i>	magnī	magnae	magna

Henceforth, such first and second declension adjectives will appear thus in the vocabularies:

mēus, -a, -um mūltus, -a, -um paucī, -ae, -a (pl. only)

Sum: PRESENT INFINITIVE AND PRESENT INDICATIVE

As the English verb *to be* is irregular, so is the Latin **sum**. Although the personal endings can be distinguished, the stem varies so much that the best procedure is to memorize these very common forms as they are given. Notice that, because **sum** is an intransitive linking verb, we do not refer to its voice as either active or passive.

PRESENT INFINITIVE OF Sum: esse, to be

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF Sum

Singular

1. sum, *I am*
2. es, *you are*
3. est, *he (she, it) is, there is*

Plural

- sūmus, *we are*
 éstis, *you are*
 sunt, *they are, there are*

PREDICATE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

As an intransitive verb, **sum** cannot take a direct object. Instead, like a coupling which connects two cars in a train, **sum** (and other linking verbs to be learned later) serves to connect the subject of a clause with a noun or adjective in the predicate². Such predicate nouns and adjectives—or “predicate nominatives,” as they are often called—are connected or even equated

²The two main divisions of a sentence are the subject and the predicate. The predicate is composed of the verb and all its dependent words and phrases.

with the subject by the linking verb, and so they naturally agree with the subject in number and case (usually the nominative, of course) and, wherever possible, in gender as well. In the case of compound subjects of different gender, a predicate adjective usually agrees in gender with the nearest, though the masculine often predominates. Study the following examples, and be prepared to identify the predicate nouns and adjectives in the chapter's sentences and reading passage.

Vergilius est amīcus Augustī, *Virgil is the friend of Augustus.*

Vergilius est poēta, *Virgil is a poet.*

Vergilius est magnus, *Virgil is great.*

Fāma Vergiliī est magna, *the fame of Virgil is great.*

Amīcae sunt bonae, *the girlfriends are good.*

Puerī dēbent esse bonī, *the boys ought to be good.*

Puer et puella sunt bonī, *the boy and girl are good.*

Dōnum est magnum, *the gift is large.*

Dōna sunt magna, *the gifts are large.*

Sumus Rōmānī, *we are Romans (Roman men).*

Sumus Rōmānae, *we are Roman women.*

SUBSTANTIVE ADJECTIVES

The Romans often used an adjective as a “substantive,” i.e., in place of a noun, just as we do in English (“The meek shall inherit the earth”—i.e., “the meek *people*”). Such a substantive adjective should generally be translated as a noun, often by supplying *man* or *men*, *woman* or *women*, *thing* or *things*, in accordance with its number and gender, as illustrated in the following examples:

Bonās saepe laudant, *they often praise the good women.*

Multī sunt stultī, *many (men) are foolish.*

Puerī mala nōn amant, *the boys do not love bad things.*

Paucī dē periculō cōgitant, *few (men) are thinking about the danger.*

VOCABULARY

bāsium, -ī (= bāsī), n., *kiss*

béllum, -ī, n., *war* (bellicose, belligerent, rebel, rebellion, revel)

cōsīlium, -iī, n., *plan, purpose, counsel, advice, judgment, wisdom* (counsel, counselor)

cūra, -ae, f., *care, attention, caution, anxiety* (cure, curator, curious, curiosity, curio, curettage, sinecure; cp. cūrō, Ch. 36)

dōnum, -ī, n., *gift, present* (donate, donation, condone; cp. dō)

- exítium**, -ī, n., *destruction, ruin* (exit; cp. **exeō**, Ch. 37)
- magíster**, **magístrī**, m., and **magístra**, -ae, f., *schoolmaster or schoolmistress, teacher, master or mistress* (magistrate, magistracy, magisterial, maestro, mastery, mister, miss; cp. **magnus**)
- móra**, -ae, f., *delay* (moratorium, demur)
- nihil**, indeclinable, n., *nothing* (see Ch. 1)
- óculus**, -ī, m., *eye* (ocular, oculist, binoculars, monocle)
- offícium**, -ī, n., *duty, service* (office, officer, official, officious; cp. **faciō**, Ch. 10)
- ótium**, -ī, n., *leisure, peace* (otiose, negotiate)
- perículum**, -ī, n., *danger, risk* (peril, perilous, imperil, parlous)
- remédium**, -ī, n., *cure, remedy* (remedial, irremediable, remediation)
- béllus**, -a, -um, *pretty, handsome, charming* (belle, beau, beauty, embellish, belladonna, belles-lettres). Do not confuse with **bellum**, *war*.
- bónus**, -a, -um, *good, kind* (bonus, bonanza, bonny, bounty, bona fide)
- hūmánus**, -a, -um, *pertaining to man* (**homō**, Ch. 7), *human, humane, kind, refined, cultivated* (humanity, humanitarian, humanism, the humanities, humanist, inhuman, superhuman)
- málus**, -a, -um, *bad, wicked, evil* (malice, malicious, malign, malignant, malaria, malady, malefactor, malfeasance, malevolent; mal-, a prefix as in maladjustment, malnutrition, maltreat, malapropos)
- párvus**, -a, -um, *small, little* (parvovirus, parvule, parvicellular)
- stúltus**, -a, -um, *foolish*; **stúltus**, -ī, m., *a fool* (stultify, stultification)
- vêrus**, -a, -um, *true, real, proper* (verify, verisimilitude, very, veracity)
- iúvō** (or **ádiuvō**), **iuvāre**, **iúvī**, **iútum**, *to help, aid, assist; to please* (adjutant, coadjutant, aid, aide-de-camp)
- sum**, **esse**, **fúi**, **futúrum**, *to be, exist* (essence, essential, future, futurity)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Ōtium est bonum, sed ōtium multōrum est parvum.
2. Bella (from **bellum**, -ī, n.) sunt mala et multa perícula habent.
3. Offícium nautam dē ōtiō hodiē vocat.
4. Paucī virī avārī multās fōrmās perículī in pecūniā vident.
5. Sī multam pecūniā habētis, saepe nōn estis sine cūrīs.
6. Puellae magistrā dē cōsiliō malō sine morā monent.
7. Ō magne poēta, sumus vērī amīcī; mē iuvā, amābō tē!
8. Fēmina agricolae portam videt.
9. You (sg.) are in great danger.
10. My son's opinions are often foolish.
11. The daughters and sons of great men and women are not always great.
12. Without wisdom the sailors' good fortune is nothing and they are paying the penalty.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Fortūna est caeca. (*Cicero.—**caecus**, -a, -um, *blind*.)
2. Sī perīcula sunt vēra, īnfortūnātus es. (Terence.—**īnfortūnātus**, -a, -um, *unfortunate*.)
3. Salvē, Ō amīce; vir bonus es. (Terence.)
4. Nōn bella est fāma filiī tuī. (Horace.)
5. Errāre est hūmānum. (Seneca.—As an indeclinable neuter verbal noun, an infinitive can be the subject of a verb.)
6. Nihil est omnīnō beātum. (Horace—**omnīnō**, adv., *wholly*.—**beātus**, -a, -um, *happy, fortunate*.)
7. Remedium īrae est mora. (Seneca.)
8. Bonus Daphnis, amīcus meus, ōtium et vītā agricolae amat. (Virgil.—Daphnis is a pastoral character.)
9. Magistrī parvīs puerīs crūstula et dōna saepe dant. (Horace.—**crūstulum**, -ī, *cookie*.)
10. Amīcam meam magis quam oculōs meōs amō. (Terence.—**magis quam**, *more than*.)
11. Salvē, mea bella puella—dā mihi multa bāsia, amābō tē! (Catullus.—**mihi**, dat., *to me*.)
12. Īnfinītus est numerus stultōrum. (Ecclesiastes.—**īnfinītus**, -a, -um = Eng.)
13. Officium mē vocat. (Persius.)
14. Malī sunt in nostrō numerō et dē exitiō bonōrum virōrum cōgitant. Bonōs adiuvāte; cōservāte populum Rōmānum. (Cicero.—**nostrō**, *our*.)

THE RARITY OF FRIENDSHIP

Paucī virī vērōs amīcōs habent, et paucī sunt dignī. Amīcitia vēra est praeclāra, et omnia praeclāra sunt rāra. Multī virī stultī dē pecūniā semper cōgitant, paucī dē amīcīs; sed errant: possumus valēre sine multā pecūniā, sed sine amīcitiā nōn valēmus et vīta est nihil.

(Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā* 21.79–80.—**dignus**, -a, -um, *worthy, deserving*. **amīcitia**, -ae, *friendship*.—**omnia**, *all [things]*.—**praeclārus**, -a, -um, *splendid, remarkable*.—**rārus**, -a, -um = Eng.—**possumus**, *we are able*.)

ETYMOLOGY

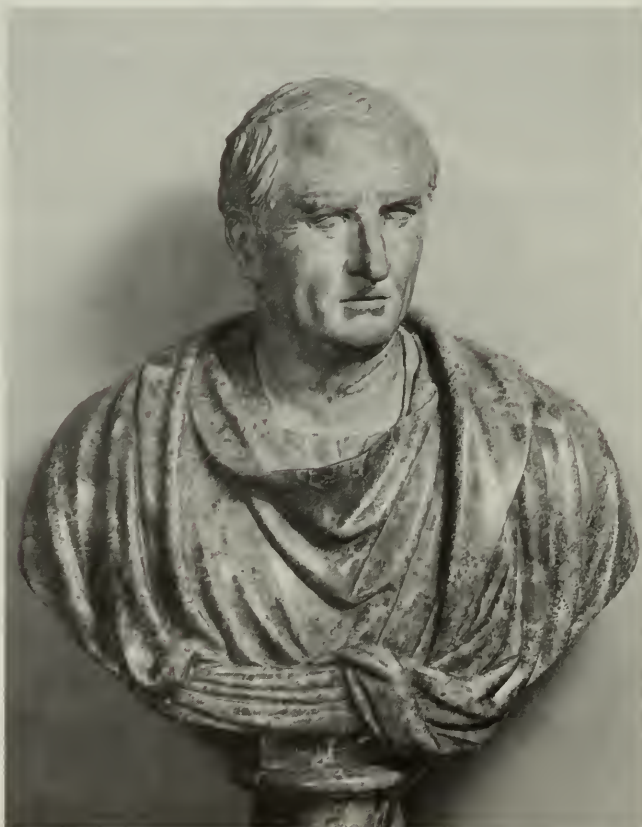
Some Romance derivatives:

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French
oculus	occhio	ojo	œil
ōtium	ozio	ocio	oisiveté
perīculum	pericolo	peligro	péril

officium	officio	oficio	office
bonus	buono	bueno	bon
vērū	vero	verdadero	vrai
magister	maestro	maestro	maître
bellus	bello	bello	belle
hūmānus	umano	humano	humain
beātus	beato	beato	béat
bāsium	bacio	beso	baiser
rārus	raro	raro	rare

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvē, amīce! There are countless Latin expressions in current English usage (remember **sub rosā?**); one of them, related to an adjective encountered in this chapter, is **rāra avis**, lit. *a rare bird*, but used for an exceptional or unusual individual or a rarity. The student of Latin in the United States was becoming a **rāra avis** in the 1960s and early 70s, but there has been a remarkable resurgence of interest since then. **Ergō**, *therefore*, is another Latin word that has come straight into English; ergo, you now know what Descartes meant in his *Discourse on Method* when he said **cōgitō ergō sum**. **Semper cōgitā, amīce, et valē!**



Cicero
Uffizi
Florence, Italy

First and Second Conjugations: Future and Imperfect; Adjectives in -er

THE FUTURE AND IMPERFECT TENSES

The Romans indicated future time in the first two conjugations by inserting the future tense sign (**-bi-** in most forms) between the present stem and the personal endings. The tense sign **-bā-** was similarly employed (in all four conjugations) for the imperfect tense, a past tense generally equivalent to the English past progressive. The forms of these future and imperfect endings are seen in the following paradigms:

FUTURE AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *Laudō* AND *Moneō*

Future	Imperfect
Singular	
1. <i>laudā-bō, I shall praise</i>	<i>laudā-ba-m, I was praising, kept praising, used to praise, praised</i>
2. <i>laudā-bi-s, you will praise</i>	<i>laudā-bā-s, you were praising, etc.</i>
3. <i>laudā-bi-t, he, she, it will praise</i>	<i>laudā-ba-t, he was praising, etc.</i>
Plural	
1. <i>laudā-bimus, we shall praise</i>	<i>laudā-bā-mus, we were praising, etc.</i>
2. <i>laudā-bitis, you will praise</i>	<i>laudā-bātis, you were praising, etc.</i>
3. <i>laudā-bunt, they will praise</i>	<i>laudā-bant, they were praising, etc.</i>

Singular

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. monē-bō, <i>I shall advise</i> | monē-ba-m, <i>I was advising, kept advising, used to advise, advised</i> |
| 2. monē-bi-s, <i>you will advise</i> | monē-bā-s, <i>you were advising, etc.</i> |
| 3. monē-bi-t, <i>he, she, it will advise</i> | monē-ba-t, <i>he was advising, etc.</i> |

Plural

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. monēbimus, <i>we shall advise</i> | monēbāmus, <i>we were advising, etc.</i> |
| 2. monēbitis, <i>you will advise</i> | monēbātis, <i>you were advising, etc.</i> |
| 3. monēbunt, <i>they will advise</i> | monēbant, <i>they were advising, etc.</i> |

Notice the vowel change in the first person singular and third plural future endings (remember **bō/bi/bi/bi/bu**—sounds like baby talk!), and the shortened **-a-** in the first and third singular and third plural of the imperfect (remember that vowels which are normally long are regularly shortened before **-m**, **-r**, and **-t** at the end of a word, and before **nt** or another vowel in any position).

The “infixes” **-bi-** and **-bā-** (with the distinctive **-i-** and **-ā-**) can be easily remembered as signs of the future and imperfect tenses, respectively, if they are associated with the English auxiliary verbs “will” and “was” (also spelled with **-i-** and **-a-**), which are generally used to translate those two tenses. Note that, where English requires three separate words for the ideas *he will praise* or *he was praising*, Latin requires only a single word with the three components of stem + tense sign + personal ending (**laudā + bi + t** = *praise-will-he* or **laudā-ba-t** = *praising-was-he*).

TRANSLATION

Translation of the future tense, usually with *shall* in the first person and *will* in the second and third, should present no difficulty: **dē amīcō cōgitābō**, *I shall think about my friend*; **multam sapientiam habēbunt**, *they will have much wisdom*.

The imperfect tense commonly indicates an action that was continuing or progressive in the past, as suggested by the term “imperfect” (from **imperfectum**, *not completed*), including actions that were *going on*, *repeated*, *habitual*, *attempted*, or *just beginning*. All the following translations are possible, depending upon the context in which the sentence appears:

Nautam monēbam, *I was warning (kept warning, used to warn, tried to warn, was beginning to warn) the sailor*.

Poētae vītam agricolae laudābant, *poets used to praise the farmer's life*.

Magister puerōs vocābat, *the teacher kept calling (was calling) the boys*.

Occasionally the imperfect may be translated as a simple past tense, especially with an adverb that in itself indicates continuing action: **nautam saepe monēbam**, *I often warned the sailor*.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION IN -er

The problem with **e** before **r** appears in adjectives as well as in nouns like **puer** and **ager** (Ch. 3). This problem is no great one if you memorize the forms of the adjectives as given in the vocabularies (nominative masculine, feminine, neuter), since the base, whether with or without the **-e-**, appears in the feminine and the neuter forms, as seen in the following examples; likewise, just as with the **-er** nouns, your familiarity with English derivatives can be an aid to remembering the base (“liberal” from **liber**, “pulchritude” from **pulcher**, “miserable” from **miser**, etc.).

liber	liber-a	liber-um	<i>free</i>
pulcher	pulchr-a	pulchr-um	<i>beautiful</i>

The rest of the paradigm continues with the base and the regular endings:

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae (etc.)	liberō	pulchrō	pulchrae (etc.)	pulchrō

For the singular of these samples fully declined, see the Summary of Forms, p. 445, and remember to refer to this Summary on a regular basis, when reviewing declensions and conjugations.

VOCABULARY

adulēscēntia, -ae, f., *youth, young manhood, youthfulness* (adolescence, adolescent)

ánimus, -ī, m., *soul, spirit, mind*; **ánimī**, -ōrum, *high spirits, pride, courage* (animus, animosity, magnanimous, unanimous, pusillanimous)

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heaven* (ceiling, celestial, Celeste, cerulean)

cūlpa, -ae, f., *fault, blame* (cp. **culpō** below; culpable, culprit, exculpate, inculpate)

glória, -ae, f., *glory, fame* (glorify, glorification, glorious, inglorious)

vérbum, -ī, n., *word* (verb, adverb, verbal, verbiage, verbose, proverb)

tē, abl. and acc. sg., *you; yourself*; cp. **mē**

liber, **libera**, **liberum**, *free* (liberal, liberality, libertine; cp. **libertās**, Ch. 8, **liberō**, Ch. 19)

nóster, **nóstra**, **nostrum**, *our, ours* (nostrum, paternoster)

púlcher, **púlchra**, **púlchrum**, *beautiful, handsome; fine* (pulchritude)

sánus, **-a**, **-um**, *sound, healthy, sane* (sanity, sanitary, sanitation, sanitarium, insane)

igitur, conj., postpositive,¹ *therefore, consequently*

-ne, enclitic or suffix added to the emphatic word placed at the beginning of a sentence to indicate a question the answer to which is uncertain.

(For other types of direct questions, see **nōne** and **num** in Ch. 40.)

própter, prep. + acc., *on account of, because of*

crās, adv., *tomorrow* (procrastinate, procrastination)

herī, adv., *yesterday*

quándō, interrogative and relative adv. and conj., *when; sī quándō, if ever*

sátis, indecl. noun, adj., and adv., *enough, sufficient (-ly)* (cp. **satiō**; satisfy, satisfactory, satiate, insatiable, sate; assets, from **ad**, *up to* + **satis**)

tum, adv., *then, at that time; thereupon, in the next place*

cēnō (1), *to dine* (cenacle; cp. **cēna**, Ch. 26)

cúlpō (1), *to blame, censure* (cp. **culpa** above)

remáneō, **remanére**, **remánsī**, **remánsūm**, or **máneō**, **manére**, **mánsī**, **mánsūm**, *to remain, stay, stay behind, abide, continue* (permanent, remnant, mansion, manor, immanent—do not confuse with imminent)

súperō (1), *to be above* (cp. **super**, adv. and prep. + abl. or acc., *above*), *have the upper hand, surpass; overcome, conquer* (superable, insuperable)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Officium liberōs virōs semper vocābat.
2. Habēbimusne multōs virōs et fēminās magnōrum animōrum?
3. Perīcula bellī nōn sunt parva, sed patria tua tē vocābit et agricolae adiuvābunt.
4. Propter culpās malōrum patria nostra nōn valēbit.
5. Mora animōs nostrōs superābat et remedium nōn habēbāmus.
6. Multī in agrīs herī manēbant et Rōmānōs iuvābant.
7. Paucī virī dē cūrā animī cōgitābant.
8. Propter iram in culpā estis et crās poenās dabit.
9. Vērum otium nōn habēs, vir stulte!
10. Nihil est sine culpā; sumus bonī, sī paucās habēmus.
11. Poēta amīcae multās rosās, dōna pulchra, et bāsia dabat.

¹ A postpositive word is one which does not appear as the first word of a sentence; it is put after (**post-pōnō**) the first word.

12. Will war and destruction always remain in our land?
13. Does money satisfy the greedy man?
14. Therefore, you (sg.) will save the reputation of our foolish boys.
15. Money and glory were conquering the soul of a good man.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Invidiam populī Rōmānī crās nōn sustinēbis. (Cicero.—**invidia**, -ae, *dislike*.—**sustinēre**, *to endure, sustain*.)
2. Perīculumne igitur herī remanēbat? (Cicero.)
3. Angustus animus pecūniam amat. (Cicero.—**angustus**, -a, -um, *narrow*.)
4. Superā animōs et īram tuam. (Ovid.)
5. Culpa est mea, Ō amīcī. (Cicero.)
6. Dā veniam filiō et filiābus nostrīs. (Terence.—**venia**, -ae, *favor, pardon*.)
7. Propter adulēscēntiam, filiī meī, mala vītae nōn vidēbātis. (Terence.)
8. Amābō tē, cūrā filiam meam. (Cicero.—**cūrāre**, *to take care of*.)
9. Vīta hūmāna est supplicium. (Seneca.—**supplicium**, -iī, *punishment*.)
10. Satisne sānus es? (Terence.)
11. Sī quandō satis pecūniae habēbō, tum mē cōnsiliō et philosophiae dabō. (Seneca.—**pecūniae**, gen. case.)
12. Semper glōria et fāma tua manēbunt. (Virgil.)
13. Vir bonus et perītus aspera verba poētārum culpābit. (Horace.—**perītus**, -a, -um, *skillful*.—**asper**, **aspera**, **asperum**, *rough, harsh*.)

HIS ONLY GUEST WAS A REAL BOAR!

Nōn cēnat sine aprō noster, Tite, Caeciliānus:
bellum convīvam Caeciliānus habet!

(*Martial 7.59. This is the first of several selections included in this book from the *Epigrams* of Martial, a popular poet of the late 1st cen. A.D., briefly discussed in the Introd.; these poems are generally quite short, like this two-verse elegiac couplet, satirical, and targeted at a specific, but usually fictitious, character, here the glutton Caecilianus.—**Titus**, the poem's addressee, but not its victim.—**aper**, **apri**, *boar, pig*.—**convīva**, -ae, one of a few masc. first decl. nouns, *dinner-guest*.)

THERMOPYLAE: A SOLDIER'S HUMOR

"Exercitus noster est magnus," Persicus inquit, "et propter numerum sagittārum nostrārum caelum nōn vidēbitis!" Tum Lacedaemonius respondet: "In umbrā, igitur, pugnābimus!" Et Leōnidās, rēx Lacedaemoniōrum, exclāmat: "Pugnāte cum animīs, Lacedaemoniī; hodiē apud umbrās fortasse cēnābimus!"

(Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 1.42.101; an anecdote from the battle of Thermopylae, 480 B.C., in which the Persians under king Xerxes defeated the Spartans under Leonidas.—**exercitus**, *army*.—**Persicus**, -ī, *a Persian*.—**inquit**, *says*.—**sagitta**, -ae, *arrow*.—**Lacedaemonius**, -ī, *a Spartan*.—**respondere** = Eng.—**umbra**, -ae, *shade, shadow; ghost*.—**pugnare**, *to fight*.—**rēx**, *king*.—**exclamare**, *to shout*.—**cum** + abl., *with*.—**apud** + acc., *among*.—**fortasse**, adv., *perhaps*.)

ETYMOLOGY

Related to **animus** is **anima**, -ae, *the breath of life*; hence: animal, animated, inanimate.

“Envy” came to us from **invidia** (sent. 1) indirectly through French; “invidious” we borrowed directly from Latin.

“Expert” and “experience” are both related to **perītus** (13). The **ex** here is intensive (= *thoroughly*) and the stem **perī-** means *try, make trial of*. What, then, is an “experiment”? Apparently there is no experiment without some risk (**perī-culum**).

In sent. 13: asperity, exasperate (**ex** again intensive). In “Thermopylae”: sagittate; umbrella (through Italian, with diminutive ending), umbrage, adumbrate; pugnacious, pugilist.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, et amīcī et amīcae meae! Quid agitis hodiē? In fact, I hope you are **sānī et sānae**, both physically and spiritually; if so, you have attained what the 1st cen. A.D. Roman satirist Juvenal suggested was the highest good in life, **mēns sāna in corpore sālō**, *a healthy mind in a healthy body* (you’ll encounter the two third decl. nouns **mēns** and **corpus** later on, but in the meantime you can keep this famous quotation **in mente**). It’s rumored, by the way, that the athletic gear brand-name ASICS is an acronym for **animus sānus in corpore sālō**; with a glance back at the Vocab. you can figure that one out too. NIKE, an ASICS competitor, takes its name from the Greek word for “victory,” which in Latin is **victōria**, a winning name for a queen or any powerful lady (whose male counterpart might well be dubbed “Victor,” from Lat. **victor**).

You may have encountered the expressions **verbum sap** and **mea culpa** before; if not, you will. The former is an abbreviation of **verbum satis sapientī est**: **sapientī** is dat. of the third decl. adj. **sapiēns**, *wise*, used here as a noun (remember substantive adjs. from Ch. 4?), so you should already have deduced that the phrase means *a word to the wise is sufficient*. If you couldn’t figure that out, just shout “**mea culpa!**” and (here’s a **verbum sap**) go back and review the vocabulary in Chs. 1–5. **Valēte!**

6

Sum: Future and Imperfect Indicative; Possum: Present, Future, and Imperfect Indicative; Complementary Infinitive

FUTURE AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF *Sum*

As we return to the irregular verb **sum, esse**, the best procedure for learning the future and imperfect tenses is again simply to memorize the paradigms below; these forms are more regular than those for the present tense, however, each formed on the stem **er-** and with the familiar present system personal endings (**-ō/-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt**).

	Future Indicative	Imperfect Indicative
Sg.	1. <i>érō, I shall be</i>	<i>éram, I was</i>
	2. <i>éris, you will be</i>	<i>érās, you were</i>
	3. <i>érit, he (she, it, there) will be</i>	<i>érat, he (she, it, there) was</i>
Pl.	1. <i>érimus, we shall be</i>	<i>erâmus, we were</i>
	2. <i>éritis, you will be</i>	<i>erâtis, you were</i>
	3. <i>érunt, they (there) will be</i>	<i>érant, they (there) were</i>

IRREGULAR Possum, Posse, Potuī: To Be Able, Can, Could

The very common verb **possum**, **posse**, **potuī**, is simply a compound of **pot-**, from the irregular adjective **potis** (*able, capable*; cp. “potent,” “potential”) + **sum**. Before forms of **sum** beginning with **s-**, the **-t-** was altered or “assimilated” to **-s-** (hence **possum** from ***potsum**); otherwise the **-t-** remained unchanged. The irregular present infinitive **posse** developed from an earlier form which followed this rule (**potesse**).

	Present Indicative	Future Indicative	Imperfect Indicative
	<i>I am able, can</i>	<i>I shall be able</i>	<i>I was able, could</i>
Sg.	1. p ^o s-sum	p ^o t-erō	p ^o t-eram
	2. p ^o t-es	p ^o t-eris	p ^o t-erās
	3. p ^o t-est	p ^o t-erit	p ^o t-erat
Pl.	1. p ^o s-sumus	pot-érimus	pot-erāmus
	2. pot-éstis	pot-éritis	pot-erātis
	3. p ^o s-sunt	p ^o t-erunt	p ^o t-erant

For both **sum** and **possum** it may be helpful to note the similarity of the future and imperfect endings, **-ō/-is/-it**, etc., and **-am/-ās/-at**, etc., to the first and second conjugation future and imperfect endings, **-bō/-bis/-bit**, etc., and **-bam/-bās/-bat**, etc., which were introduced in the previous chapter.

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

Possum, exactly like the English *to be able* or *can*, regularly requires an infinitive to complete its meaning. Hence we have the term “complementary” infinitive, which simply means “completing” infinitive, a point that is emphasized by the spelling: complementary in contrast to complimentary. You have already seen the complementary infinitive used with **dēbeō**, and you will find it employed with other verbs.

Our friends were able to overcome (could overcome) many dangers.
Amīcī nostrī poterant superāre multa perīcula.

My friend is not able to remain (cannot remain).
Amīcus meus nōn potest remanēre.

You ought to save your money.
Dēbēs cōservāre pecūniam tuam.

Note that a complementary infinitive has no separate subject of its own; its subject is the same as that of the verb on which it depends.

VOCABULARY

- dea**, -ae, f., dat. and abl. pl. **deābus**, *goddess*, and **dēus**, -ī, m., voc. sg. **deus**, nom. pl. **dī**, dat. and abl. pl. **dīs** (the plurals **deī** and **deīs** became common during the Augustan Period), *god* (adieu, deity, deity)
- discípula**, -ae, f., and **discípulus**, -ī, m., *learner, pupil, student* (disciple, discipline, disciplinary; cp. **discō**, Ch. 8)
- īnsīdiae**, -ārum, f. pl., *ambush, plot, treachery* (insidious)
- liber**, **librī**, m., *book* (library, libretto); not to be confused with **liber**, *free*
- tyrānnus**, -ī, m., *absolute ruler, tyrant* (tyrannous, tyrannicide)
- vītium**, -īī, n., *fault, crime, vice* (vitiare, vicious; but not vice in vice versa)
- Graécus**, -a, -um, *Greek*; **Graécus**, -ī, m., *a Greek*
- perpétuus**, -a, -um, *perpetual, lasting, uninterrupted, continuous* (perpetuate, perpetuity)
- plénus**, -a, -um, *full, abundant, generous* (plenary, plenteous, plentiful, plenitude, plenty, replenish, plenipotentiary)
- sálvus**, -a, -um, *safe, sound* (cp. **salveō**)
- secúndus**, -a, -um, *second; favorable* (secondary)
- véster**, **véstra**, **vétrum**, *your* (pl., i.e., used in addressing more than one person, vs. **tuus**, -a, -um), *yours*
- que**, enclitic conjunction, *and*. It is appended to the second of two words to be joined: **fāma glōriaque**, *fame and glory*.
- sed**, conj., *but*
- úbī**: (1) rel. adv. and conj., *where, when*; (2) interrog. adv. and conj., *where?* (ubiquitous)
- íbi**, adv., *there* (ib. or ibid.)
- nunc**, adv., *now, at present* (quidnunc)
- quārē**, adv., lit. *because of which thing* (**quā rē**), *therefore, wherefore, why*
- póssum**, **pósse**, **pótuī**, *to be able, can, could, have power* (posse, possible, potent, potentate, potential, puissant, omnipotent)
- tólerō** (1), *to bear, endure* (tolerate, toleration, tolerable, intolerable, intolerance; cp. **tollō**, Ch. 22, **ferō**, Ch. 31)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

- Oculī nostrī nōn valēbant; quārē agrōs bellōs vidēre nōn poterāmus.
- Sine multā pecūniā et multīs dōnīs tyrannus satiāre populum Rōmānum nōn poterit.
- Nōn poterant, igitur, tē dē poenā amīcōrum tuōrum herī monēre.
- Parvus numerus Graecōrum crās ibi remanēre poterit.
- Magister puerōs malōs sine morā vocābit.

6. Fīliae vestrae dē librīs magnī poētae saepe cōgitābant.
7. Quandō satis sapientiae habēbimus?
8. Multī librī antīquī propter sapientiam cōsiliumque erant magnī.
9. Glōria bonōrum librōrum semper manēbit.
10. Possuntne pecūnia ōtiumque cūrās vītae hūmānae superāre?
11. Therefore, we cannot always see the real vices of a tyrant.
12. Few free men will be able to tolerate an absolute ruler.
13. Many Romans used to praise the great books of the ancient Greeks.
14. Where can glory and (use **-que**) fame be perpetual?

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Dionȳsius tum erat tyrannus Syrācūsānōrum. (Cicero.—**Dionȳsius, -iī**, a Greek name.—**Syrācūsānus, -ī**, a *Syracusan*.)
2. Optāsne meam vītam fortūnamque gustāre? (Cicero.—**optāre**, to wish.—**gustāre**, to taste.)
3. Possumusne, Ō dī, in malīs īnsidiīs et magnō exitiō esse salvī? (Cicero.—Can you explain why the nom. pl. **salvī** is used here?)
4. Propter cūram meam in perpetuō periculō nōn eritis. (Cicero.)
5. Propter vitia tua multī tē culpant et nihil tē in patriā tuā dēlectāre nunc potest. (Cicero.—**dēlectāre**, to delight.)
6. Fortūna Pūnicī bellī secundī varia erat. (Livy.—**Pūnicus, -a, -um**, *Punic, Carthaginian*.—**varius, -a, -um**, *varied*.)
7. Patria Rōmānōrum erat plēna Graecōrum librōrum statuārumque pulchrārum. (Cicero.—**statua, -ae**, Eng.)
8. Sine dīs et deābus in caelō animus nōn potest sānus esse. (Seneca.)
9. Sī animus īnfirminus est, nōn poterit bonam fortūnam tolerāre. (Publilius Syrus.—**īnfirminus, -a, -um**, *not strong, weak*.)
10. Ubi lēgēs valent, ibi populus līber potest valēre. (Publilius Syrus.—**lēgēs**, nom. pl., *laws*.)

"I DO NOT LOVE THEE, DOCTOR FELL"

Nōn amo tē, Sabidī, nec possum dīcere quārē.

Hoc tantum possum dīcere: nōn amo tē.

(*Martial 1.32; meter: elegiac couplet. **amo**: final -ō was often shortened in Latin poetry.—**Sabidius, -iī**.—**nec** = **et nōn**.—**dīcere**, to say.—**hoc**, *this*, acc. case.—**tantum**, adv., *only*.)

THE HISTORIAN LIVY LAMENTS THE DECLINE OF ROMAN MORALS

Populus Rōmānus magnōs animōs et paucās culpās habēbat. Dē officiīs nostrīs cōgitābāmus et glōriam bellī semper laudābāmus. Sed nunc multum ōtium habēmus, et multī sunt avārī. Nec vitia nostra nec remedia tolerāre possumus.

(Livy, from the preface to his history of Rome, *Ab Urbe Condītā*; see Introd.—*nec . . . nec*, conj., *neither . . . nor*.)

ETYMOLOGY

Eng. “library” is clearly connected with **liber**. Many European languages, however, derive their equivalent from **bibliothēca**, a Latin word of Greek origin meaning in essence the same thing as our word. What, then, do you suppose **biblos** meant in Greek? Cp. the *Bible*.

In the readings¹

2. option, adopt.—gusto, disgust. 5. delectable, delight. 10. legal, legislative, legitimate, loyal.

French *y* in such a phrase as **il y a** (*there is*) may prove more understandable when you know that *y* derives from **ibi**.

The following French words are derived from Latin as indicated: **êtes** = **estis**; **nôtre** = **noster**; **vôtre** = **vester**; **goûter** = **gustāre**. What, then, is one thing which the French circumflex accent indicates?

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulī et discipulae! Quid hodiē agitis, amīcī? Cōgitātisne dē linguā Latīnā? Well, I assume by now that your etymological sense will tell you that **lingua Latīna** means . . . *the Latin language* or just “Latin,” your favorite subject. Now that you’ve developed a taste for the language, I know that you study with great “gusto”! (If you missed that bit of etymologizing, see S.A. 2 above.) The new Vocab. item **deus** turns up in the expression **deus ex machinā**, *god from a machine*, which refers (in drama and other contexts) to any person or mechanism that performs an amazing rescue from some seemingly hopeless dilemma.

Do you know that **sub** is a preposition meaning *under*, as in “subterranean,” under the **terra**, *earth*; if so, you can laugh at this old favorite: **semper ubi sub ubi!** (Good hygiene and prevents rash!) And speaking of **ubi**, it asks the question that **ibi** answers; a compound form of the latter constructed with the intensifying suffix **-dem**, *the same* (see Ch. 11 for a similar use of **-dem**), **ibidem**, gives us **ibid.**, *in the same place cited*, just one of many Latin-based abbreviations commonly employed in English. Here are some others:

cf. = **cōfer**, *compare*

cp. = **comparā**, *compare*

e.g. = **exemplī grātiā**, *for the sake of example*

et al. = **et alii/alīae**, *and others* (of persons)

¹ For the sake of brevity this phrase will henceforth be used to direct attention to words etymologically associated with words in the sentences indicated.

etc. = **et cētera**, *and others* (of things)

i.e. = **id est**, *that is*

n.b. = **nōtā bene**, *note carefully* (i.e., pay close attention)

v.i. and v.s. = **vidē infrā** and **vidē suprā**, *see below* and *see above*

Semper ubi sub ubi AND the scholarly **ibid.** both in the same lesson?
Well, that's what the title means: **Latīna EST gaudium—et ūtilis! Valēte!**



Paquius Proculus (?) and wife
Wallpainting from Pompeii, house at region VII.ii.6, 1st century A.D.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy

Third Declension Nouns

The third of Latin's five declensions contains nouns of all three genders with a great variety of nominative singular endings, but all characterized by the genitive singular in **-is**; because of this variety of gender and nominative form, it is especially important to memorize the full vocabulary entry (which in the chapter vocabularies will include the complete, unabbreviated genitive form—abbreviations will be used only in the notes). The declension itself is a simple matter, following the same principles already learned for first and second declension nouns: find the base (by dropping the genitive singular **-is**¹) and add the endings. Because the vocative is always identical to the nominative (with the sole exception of second declension **-us/-ius** words), it will not appear in any subsequent paradigms.

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

	rēx, m. <i>king</i>	virtūs, f. <i>merit</i>	homō, m. <i>man</i>	corpus, n. <i>body</i>	Case Endings	
Base	rēg-	virtūt-	homin-	corpor-	M./F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	rēx (rēg-s)	virtūs	hómō	córpus	—	—
<i>Gen.</i>	rēg-is	virtútis	hóminis	cóporis	-is	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	rēg-ī	virtútī	hóminī	cóporī	-ī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	rēg-em	virtútem	hóminem	córpus	-em	—
<i>Abl.</i>	rēg-e	virtúte	hómīne	córpore	-e	-e

¹ As has been pointed out before, English derivatives can also be helpful in remembering the base; e.g., **iter**, **itineris**, *journey*: itinerary; **cor**, **cordis**, *heart*: cordial; **custōs**, **custōdis**, *guard*: custodian.

<i>Nom.</i>	rēg-ēs	virtūtēs	hóminēs	córpora	-ēs	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	rēg-um	virtútum	hóminum	cóporum	-um	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	rēg-ibus	virtútibus	homínibus	corpóribus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēg-ēs	virtūtēs	hóminēs	córpora	-ēs	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	rēg-ibus	virtútibus	homínibus	corpóribus	-ibus	-ibus

GENDER

Rules have been devised to assist you in remembering the gender of the many third declension nouns, but, aside from the fact that those denoting human beings are masculine or feminine according to sense, the exceptions to most of the other rules are numerous.² The safest procedure is to learn the gender of each noun as you first encounter it.³

TRANSLATION

In translating (as well as declining), take very careful note of the fact that a third declension noun may be modified by a first or second declension adjective; e.g., *great king* in Latin is **magnus rēx**, **magnī rēgis**, etc., *true peace* is **vēra pāx**, **vērae pācis**, etc. While an adjective and noun must agree in number, gender, and case, the spelling of their endings will not necessarily be identical.

Because some of the endings of third declension nouns are identical to the endings of different cases of nouns in other declensions (e.g., the dative singular -ī is the same as the genitive singular and the masculine nominative plural in the second declension), it is absolutely essential when reading and translating not only to pay attention to word order and context but also to recognize a particular noun's declension. Again, meticulous study of the vocabulary is the key to success.

² However, the following rules have few or no exceptions:

Masculine

-or, -ōris (amor, -ōris; labor, -ōris; arbor, *tree*, is a principal exception)

-tor, -tōris (victor, -tōris; scriptor, -tōris, *writer*)

Feminine (including a large group of abstract nouns)

-tās, -tātis (vēritās, -tātis, *truth*; libertās, -tātis)

-tūs, -tūtis (virtūs, -tūtis; senectūs, -tūtis, *old age*)

-tūdō, -tūdinis (multitūdō, -tūdinis; pulchritūdō, -tūdinis)

-tiō, -tiōnis (nātiō, -tiōnis; orātiō, -tiōnis)

Neuter

-us (corpus, corporis; tempus, temporis; genus, generis)

-e, -al, -ar (mare, maris, *sea*; animal, animālis)

The gender of nouns following these rules will not be given in the notes.

³ A helpful device is to learn the proper form of some adjective like **magnus**, **-a**, **-um**, with each noun. This practice provides an easily remembered clue to the gender and is comparable to learning the definite article with nouns in Romance languages. For example: **magna virtūs**, **magnum corpus**, **magnus labor**.

VOCABULARY

- ámor, amóris**, m., *love* (amorous, enamored; cp. **amō**, **amīcus**)
- cármēn, cárminis**, n., *song, poem* (charm)
- cīvitās, cīvitātis**, f., *state, citizenship* (city; cp. **cīvis**, Ch. 14)
- córpūs, córporis**, n., *body* (corps, corpse, corpuscle, corpulent, corporal, corporeal, corporate, corporation, incorporate, corsage, corset)
- hómō, hómīnis**, m., *human being, man* (homicide, homage; homo sapiens, but not the prefix homo-; cp. **hūmānus** and **vir**)
- lábōr, labóris**, m., *labor, work, toil; a work, production* (laboratory, belabor, laborious, collaborate, elaborate; cp. **labōrō**, Ch. 21)
- littera, -ae**, f., *a letter of the alphabet*; **litterae, -ārum**, pl., *a letter (epistle), literature* (literal, letters, belles-lettres, illiterate, alliteration)
- mōs, móris**, m., *habit, custom, manner*; **móreś, mórūm**, pl., *habits, character* (mores, moral, immoral, immorality, morale, morose)
- nómen, nómīnis**, n., *name* (nomenclature, nominate, nominative, nominal, noun, pronoun, renown, denomination, ignominy, misnomer)
- pāx, pácis**, f., *peace* (pacify, pacific, pacifist, appease, pay)
- rēgīna, -ae**, f., *queen* (Regina, regina, reginal; cp. **regō**, Ch. 16)
- rēx, régis**, m., *king* (regal, regalia, regicide, royal; cp. rajah)
- tēmpus, tēmporis**, n., *time; occasion, opportunity* (tempo, temporary, contemporary, temporal, temporize, extempore, tense [of a verb])
- tērra, -ae**, f., *earth, ground, land, country* (terrestrial, terrace, terrier, territory, inter [verb], parterre, subterranean, terra cotta)
- úxor, uxóris**, f., *wife* (uxorial, uxorious, uxoricide)
- virgō, vírginis**, f., *maiden, virgin* (virgin, virginal, virginity, Virginia)
- virtūs, virtútis**, f., *manliness, courage, excellence, character, worth, virtue* (virtuoso, virtuosity, virtual; cp. **vir**)
- nóvus, -a, -um**, *new; strange* (novel, novelty, novice, innovate)
- post**, prep. + acc., *after, behind* (posterity, posterior, posthumous, post mortem, P.M. = post meridiem, preposterous, post- as a prefix, postgraduate, postlude, postwar, etc.; cp. **postrēmum**, Ch. 40)
- sub**, prep. + abl. with verbs of rest, + acc. with verbs of motion, *under, up under, close to* (sub- or by assimilation suc-, suf-, sug-, sup-, sus-, in countless compounds: subterranean, suburb, succeed, suffix, suggest, support, sustain)
- aúdeō, audére, aúsus sum** (the unusual third principal part of this “semi-deponent” verb is explained in Ch. 34), *to dare* (audacious, audacity)
- nécō** (1), *to murder, kill* (internecine; related to **noceō**, Ch. 35, and **necro-** from Gk. **nekros**).

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Secundās litterās discipulae herī vidēbās et de verbīs tum cōgitābās.
2. Fēminae sine morā cīvitātem dē īnsidiīs et exitiō malō monēbunt.

3. Rēx et rēgīna igitur crās nōn audēbunt ibi remanēre.
4. Mōrēs Graecōrum nōn erant sine culpīs vitīisue.
5. Quandō hominēs satis virtūtis habēbunt?
6. Corpora vestra sunt sāna et animī sunt plēnī sapientiae.
7. Propter mōrēs hūmānōs pācem vērā nōn habēbimus.
8. Poteritne cīvītās perīcula temporum nostrōrum superāre?
9. Post bellum multōs librōs dē pāce et remediīs bellī vidēbant.
10. Officia sapientiamque oculīs animī possumus vidēre.
11. Without sound character we cannot have peace.
12. Many students used to have small time for Greek literature.
13. After bad times true virtue and much labor will help the state.
14. The daughters of your friends were dining there yesterday.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Homō sum. (*Terence.)
2. Nihil sub sōle novum (*Ecclesiastes.—**sōl**, **sōlis**, m., *sun*.—**novum**: sc. **est**.)
3. Carmina nova dē adūlēscentiā virginibus puerīsque nunc cantō. (Horace.—**cantāre**, *to sing*.)
4. Laudās fortūnam et mōrēs antīquae plēbis. (*Horace.—**plēbs**, **plēbis**, f., *the common people*.)
5. Bonī propter amōrem virtūtis peccāre ōdērunt. (Horace.—**peccāre**, *to sin*.—**ōdērunt**, defective vb., 3d per. pl., *to hate*.)
6. Sub prīncipe dūrō temporibusque malīs audēs esse bonus. (Martial.—**prīnceps**, **-cipis**, m., *chief, prince*; **dūrus**, **-a**, **-um**, *hard, harsh*.)
7. Populus stultus virīs indignīs honōrēs saepe dat. (Horace.—**honor**, **-nōris**, *honor, office*.—**indignus**, **-a**, **-um**, *unworthy*.)
8. Nōmina stultōrum in parietibus et portīs semper vidēmus. (Cicero.—The desire to scribble names and sentiments in public places is as old as antiquity!—**pariēs**, **-etis**, m., *wall of a building*.)
9. Ōtium sine litterīs mors est. (*Seneca.—**mors**, **mortis**, f., *death*.)
10. Multae nātiōnēs servitūtem tolerāre possunt; nostra cīvītās nōn potest. Praeclāra est recuperātiō libertātis. (Cicero.—**nātiō**, **-ōnis** = Eng.—**servitūs**, **-tūtis**, *servitude*.—**praeclārus**, **-a**, **-um**, *noble, remarkable*.—**recuperātiō**, **-ōnis**, *recovery*.—**libertās**, **-tātis** = Eng.)
11. Nihil sine magnō labōre vīta mortālibus dat. (Horace.—**mortālis**, **-tālis**, *a mortal*.)
12. Quōmodo in perpetuā pāce salvī et liberī esse poterimus? (Cicero.—**quōmodo**, *how*.)
13. Glōria in altissimīs Deō et in terrā pāx hominibus bonae voluntātis. (*Luke.—**altissimīs**, abl. pl., *the highest*.—**voluntās**, **-tātis**, *will*.)

THE RAPE OF LUCRETIA

Tarquinius Superbus erat rēx Rōmānōrum, et Sextus Tarquinius erat fīlius malus tyrannī. Sextus Lucrētiam, uxōrem Collātīnī, rapuit, et fēmina bona, propter magnum amōrem virtūtis, sē necāvit. Rōmānī antīquī virtūtem animōsque Lucrētiaē semper laudābant et Tarquiniōs culpābant.

(Livy 1.58; Superbus was Rome's last king, Collatinus a Roman nobleman; according to legend, the rape of Lucretia led to the overthrow of the Tarquin dynasty, the end of monarchy, and the establishment of the Roman Republic in 509 B.C.—**rapuit**, *raped*.—**sē**, *herself*.—**necāvit**, a past tense form.)



Tarquin and Lucretia
Titian, 1570–75

Akademie der Bildenden Kuenste, Vienna, Austria

CATULLUS DEDICATES HIS POETRY BOOK

Cornēliō, virō magnae sapientiae, dabō pulchrum librum novum. Cornēlī, mī amīce, librōs meōs semper laudābās, et es magister doctus literārū! Quārē habē novum labōrem meum: fāma librī (et tua fāma) erit perpetua.

(Catullus 1, prose adaptation; see L.I. 1. Catullus dedicated his first book of poems to the historian and biographer Cornelius Nepos.—**doctus**, *-a, -um*, *learned, scholarly*.)

ETYMOLOGY

From what Latin word do you suppose It. **uomo**, Sp. **hombre**, and Fr. **homme** and **on** are derived?

“Tense” meaning the “time” of a verb comes from **tempus** through old

Fr. *tens*; but “tense” meaning “stretched tight” goes back to **tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēnsūm, to stretch**.

In late Latin **cīvitās** came to mean *city* rather than *state*, and thus it became the parent of the Romance words for city: It. **città**, Sp. **ciudad**, Fr. **cit  **.

In the readings

2. solar, solstice.—novel, novelty, novice, novitiate, innovate, renovate.
 3. chant, enchant, incantation, cant, recant, canto, cantabile, precentor.
 4. plebeian, plebe, plebiscite. 5. peccant, peccadillo. 6. dour, duration, endure, obdurate. 13. volunteer, involuntary.

It may prove helpful to list the Romance and English equivalents of three of the suffixes given in n. 2.

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French	English
-tās, -tātis	-t��	-dad	-t��	-ty
v��rit��s	verit��	verdad	v��rit��	verity (truth)
ant��quit��s	antichit��	antig��edad	antiquit��	antiquity
-ti��, -ti��nis	-zione	-ci��n	-tion	-tion
n��ti��	nazione	naci��n	nation	nation
rati��	razione	raci��n	ration	ration
-tor, -t��ris	-tore	-tor	-teur	-tor
inventor	inventore	inventor	inventeur	inventor
actor	attore	actor	acteur	actor

LAT  NA EST GAUDIUM—ET   UTILIS!

Salv  te, et discipul   et discipulae! Quid nunc agitis? You are beginning to see by now that Latin is living everywhere in our language; in fact, it’s a **r  ra avis** these days who considers Latin a dead language. To anyone who does, you might quip, **quot homin  s, tot sententiae**—an old proverb from the 2nd cen. B.C. comic playwright Terence meaning, freely, *there are as many opinions as there are men*.

Notice **terra** in the Vocab.: we met “subterranean” in the last chapter, now do you think of ET? In the 1980s the little guy was everybody’s favorite *ExtraTerrestrial* (from **extr  **, prep. + acc., *beyond*, + **terra**). Until he became familiar with the terrain, he was in a **terra incognita**; but once he’d learned the territory he felt he was on **terra firma** (look all four of those up in your Funk and Wagnall’s—if you need to!). And, speaking of movies, Stephen Spielberg’s top-grossing *Jurassic Park* reminded us all that Tyrannosaurus rex was truly both a “tyrant” and a “king” (though Spielberg’s “velociraptors” were certainly terrifying “swift-snatchers,” from the Lat. adj. **v  l  x**, *fast*, as in “velocity,” + **raptor**, a third decl. noun based on the verb **rapere**, *to seize, snatch, grab*). **Lat  nam semper am  bitis—val  te!**

Third Conjugation: Present Infinitive, Present, Future, and Imperfect Indicative, Imperative

The third conjugation, particularly in its present system tenses (present, future, and imperfect), is the most problematic of the four Latin conjugations. Because the stem vowel was short (-e-) and generally unaccented, unlike the stem vowels of the other three conjugations (-ā- in the first, -ē- in the second, and -ī- in the fourth, introduced in Ch. 10—cf. **laudāre**, **monēre**, and **audire** with **ágere**), it had undergone a number of sound and spelling changes by the classical period. The surest procedure, as always, is to memorize the following paradigms; a little extra effort invested in mastering these forms now will pay rich dividends in every subsequent chapter.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

	1. ág-ō	(I lead)
Sg.	2. ág-is	(you lead)
	3. ág-it	(he, she, it leads)
	1. ágimus	(we lead)
Pl.	2. ágitis	(you lead)
	3. águnt	(they lead)

FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

	1. ág-am	(I shall lead)
	2. ág-ēs	(you will lead)
	3. ág-et	(he, she, it will lead)
	1. agēmus	(we shall lead)
	2. agētis	(you will lead)
	3. ág-ent	(they will lead)

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

	1. ag-ēbam	(I was leading, used to lead, etc.)
Sg.	2. ag-ēbās	(you were leading, etc.)
	3. ag-ēbat	(he, she, it was leading, etc.)
	1. agēbāmus	(we were leading, etc.)
Pl.	2. agēbātis	(you were leading, etc.)
	3. agēbant	(they were leading, etc.)

PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

2. Sg. áge	(lead)	2. Pl. ágite	(lead)
------------	--------	--------------	--------

PRESENT INFINITIVE

As **-āre** and **-ēre** by this time immediately indicate to you the first and the second conjugations respectively, so **-ere** will indicate the third. Once again you can see the importance of meticulous vocabulary study, including attention to macrons: you must be especially careful to distinguish between second conjugation verbs in **-ēre** and third conjugation verbs in **-ere**.

PRESENT STEM AND PRESENT INDICATIVE

According to the rule for finding the present stem, you drop the infinitive ending **-re** and have **age-** as the present stem. To this you would naturally expect to add the personal endings to form the present indicative. But in fact the short, unaccented stem vowel disappears altogether in the first person singular, and it was altered to **-i-** in the second and third persons singular and the first and second persons plural, and appears as **-u-** in the third plural. Consequently, the practical procedure is to memorize the endings.¹

FUTURE INDICATIVE

The striking difference of the future tense in the third conjugation (and the fourth, as we shall see in Ch. 10) is the lack of the tense sign **-bi-**. Here **-ē-** is the sign of the future in all the forms except the first singular, and by contraction the stem vowel itself has disappeared.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

The imperfect tense is formed precisely according to the rules learned for the first two conjugations (present stem + **-bam**, **-bās**, etc.), except that

¹ This mnemonic device may help: (a) for the present use an IOU (i in 4 forms, o in the first, u in the last); (b) for the future you have the remaining vowels, a and e. It may also be helpful to note that the vowel alternation is exactly the same as that seen in the future endings of first and second conjugation verbs (**-bō**, **-bis**, **-bit**, **-bimus**, **-bitis**, **-bunt**).

the stem vowel has been lengthened to **-ē-**, yielding forms analogous to those in the first and second conjugations.

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

Also in accordance with the rule already learned, the second person singular of the present imperative is simply the present stem; e.g., **mitte** (from **mittere**, *to send*), **pōne** (**pōnere**, *to put*). In the plural imperative, however, we see again the shift of the short, unaccented **-e-** to **-i-**: hence, **mittite** and **pōnite** (not ***mittete** or ***pōnete**).

The singular imperative of **dūcere** was originally **dūce**, a form seen in the early writer Plautus. Later, however, the **-e** was dropped from **dūce**, as it was from the imperatives of three other common third conjugation verbs: **dīc** (**dīcere**, *say*), **fac** (**facere**, *do*), and **fer** (**ferre**, *bear*). The other verbs of this conjugation follow the rule as illustrated by **age**, **mitte**, and **pōne**; the four irregulars, **dīc**, **dūc**, **fac**, and **fer**, should simply be memorized.

VOCABULARY

Cicerō, **Cicerōnis**, m., (*Marcus Tullius Cicero*) (Ciceronian, cicerone)
cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance, supply*; **cōpiae**, -ārum, pl., *supplies, troops, forces*
 (copious, copy, cornucopia)

frāter, **frātris**, m., *brother* (fraternal, fraternity, fraternize, fratricide)

laus, **laudis**, f., *praise, glory, fame* (laud, laudable, laudation, laudatory,
 magna cum laude; cp. **laudō**)

lībértās, **lībértātis**, f., *liberty* (cp. **līber**, **lībērō**, Ch. 19, **lībērālis**, Ch. 39)

rātiō, **ratiōnis**, f., *reckoning, account; reason, judgment, consideration;*
system; manner, method (ratio, ration, rational, irrational, ratiocination)

scrīptor, **scrīptōris**, m., *writer, author* (scriptorium; cp. **scrībō** below)

sóror, **sorōris**, f., *sister* (sororal, sororate, sororicide, sorority)

victória, -ae, f., *victory* (victorious; see **Latīna Est Gaudium**, Ch. 5, and
 cp. **vincō** below)

dum, conj., *while, as long as, at the same time that*; + subjunctive, *until*
ad, prep. + acc., *to, up to, near to*, in the sense of “place to which” with
 verbs of motion; contrast the dat. of indirect object (administer, ad
 hoc, ad hominem). In compounds the **d** is sometimes assimilated to
 the following consonant so that **ad** may appear, for instance, as **ac-**
 (**accipiō**: **ad-capiō**), **ap-** (**appellō**: **ad-pellō**), **a-** (**aspiciō**: **ad-spiciō**).

ex or **ē**, prep. + abl., *out of, from, from within; by reason of, on account*
of (exact, except, exhibit, evict). The Romans used **ex** before conso-
 nants or vowels; **ē** before consonants only. Like **ad** and many other
 prepositions, **ex/ē** was often used as a prefix in compounds, some-
 times with the **x** assimilated to the following consonant; e.g., **excipiō**,
ēdūcō, **ēventus**, **efficiō** from **ex** + **faciō**, etc.

númquam, adv., *never* (cp. **umquam**, Ch. 23)

támen, adv., *nevertheless, still*

ágō, ágere, ĕgī, áctum, *to drive, lead, do, act; pass, spend* (life or time);
grātiās agere + dat., *to thank someone*, lit., *to give thanks to* (agent,
 agenda, agile, agitate, active, actor, action, actual, actuate)

dēmónstrō (1), *to point out, show, demonstrate* (demonstrable, demon-
 stration, demonstrative; see the demonstrative pronouns in Ch. 9)

discō, discere, didici, to learn (cp. **discipulus, discipula**)

dóceō, docēre, dócuī, dóctum, *to teach* (docent, docile, document, doctor,
 doctrine, indoctrinate)

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, dúctum, *to lead; consider, regard; prolong* (ductile, ab-
 duct, adduce, deduce, educate, induce, produce, reduce, seduce)

gērō, gérere, gessī, géstum, *to carry, carry on, manage, conduct, accom-
 plish, perform* (gerund, gesture, gesticulate, jest, belligerent, congest,
 digest, suggest, exaggerate, register, registry)

scrībō, scríbere, scrípsī, scríptum, *to write, compose* (ascribe, circum-
 scribe, conscript, describe, inscribe, proscribe, postscript, rescript,
 scripture, subscribe, transcribe, scribble, scrivener, shrive)

tráhō, tráhere, tráxī, tráctum, *to draw, drag, derive* (attract, contract, re-
 tract, subtract, tractor, etc.; see Etymology section below)

víncō, vincere, vícī, víctum, *to conquer, overcome* (convince, convict,
 evince, evict, invincible, Vincent, victor, Victoria, vanquish)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Tempora nostra nunc sunt mala; vitia nostra, magna.
2. Quārē soror mea uxōrī tuae litterās scríbit (scríbet, scríbēbat)?
3. Tyrannus populum stultum ē terrā vestrā dūcet (dūcit, dūcēbat).
4. Ubi satis ratiōnis animōrumque in hominibus erit?
5. Cōpia vērae virtūtis multās culpās superāre poterat.
6. In līberā cīvitatē adulēscēntiam agēbāmus.
7. Rēgem malum tolerāre numquam dēbēmus.
8. Post parvam moram multa verba dē īnsidiīs scríptōrum stultōrum scríbēmus.
9. The body will remain there under the ground.
10. Write (sg. and pl.) many things about the glory of our state.
11. Does reason always lead your (pl.) queen to virtue?
12. We shall always see many Greek names there.

SENTENTIAE ANTÍQUAE

1. Frāter meus vītam in ōtiō semper aget. (Terence.)
2. Age, age! Iuvā mē! Dūc mē ad secundum fīlium meum. (Terence.—
 age, age = *come, come!*)

3. Ō amīcī, lībertātem perdimus. (Laberius.—**perdere**, to destroy.)
4. Nova perīcula populō Rōmānō expōnam sine morā. (Cicero.—**expōnere**, to set forth.)
5. Numquam perīculum sine perīculō vincēmus. (Publilius Syrus.)
6. Ex meīs errōribus hominibus rēctum iter dēmōnstrāre possum. (Seneca.—**error**, -rōris.²—**rēctus**, -a, -um, right.—**iter**, itineris, n., road, way.)
7. Catullus Mārcō Tulliō Cicerōnī magnās grātiās agit. (Catullus.—See “Thanks a Lot, Tully!” Ch. 27.)
8. Eximia fōrma virginis oculōs hominum convertit. (Livy.—**eximius**, -a, -um, extraordinary.—**convertere**, to turn around, attract.)
9. Agamemnon magnās cōpiās ē terrā Graecā ad Trōiā dūcet, ubi multōs virōs necābit. (Cicero.—**Agamemnon**, -nonis.)



Gold funerary mask of “Agamemnon”

Mycenae, 16th century B.C.

National Archaeological Museum, Athens, Greece

10. Amor laudis hominēs trahit. (Cicero.)
11. Auctōrēs pācis Caesar cōnservābit. (Cicero.—**auctor**, -tōris, author.—**Caesar**, -saris.)
12. Inter multās cūrās labōrēsque carmina scribere nōn possum. (Horace.—**inter**, prep. + acc., among.)
13. Dum in magnā urbe dēclāmās, mī amīce, scrīptōrem Trōiānī bellī in ōtiō relegō. (Horace.—**urbs**, **urbis**, f., city.—**dēclāmāre**, to de-claim.—**Trōiānus**, -a, -um.—**relegere**, to re-read.)
14. Nōn vītae, sed scholae, discimus. (*Seneca.—**vītae** and **scholae**, datives expressing purpose; see S.S., p. 443.—**schola**, -ae, school.)
15. Hominēs, dum docent, discunt. (*Seneca.)
16. Ratiō mē dūcet, nōn fortūna. (Livy.)

² Hereafter in the notes, when a Latin word easily suggests an English derivative, the English meaning will be omitted.

CICERO ON THE ETHICS OF WAGING WAR

Cīvitās bellum sine causā bonā aut propter iram gerere nōn dēbet. Sī fortūnās et agrōs vītāsque populī nostrī sine bellō dēfendere poterimus, tum pācem cōservāre dēbēbimus; sī, autem, nōn poterimus servāre pātriam lībertātemque nostram sine bellō, bellum erit necessārium. Semper dēbēmus dēmōnstrāre, tamen, magnum officium in bellō, et magnam clēmēntiam post victōriam.

(Cicero, *Dē Officiis* 1.11.34–36 and *Dē Rē Pūblicā* 3.23.34–35, and see L.A. 7 for a fuller adaptation.—*causa*, -ae.—*dēfendere*.—*autem*, conj., *however*.—*necessārius*, -a, -um.—*clēmēntia*, -ae.)

ETYMOLOGY

Also connected with **trahō** are: abstract, detract, detraction, distract, distraction, distraught, extract, protract, portray, portrait, retreat, trace, tract, tractable, intractable, traction, contraction, retraction, trait, treat, treaty, train, training.

In the readings

6. rectitude; cp. Eng. cognate “right.”—itinerary, itinerant. 11. kaiser, czar. 14. “School” comes through Lat. **schola** from Greek **scholē**, *leisure*. “Waging War”: causation; defense, defensive; necessary; clement, clemency.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! With this chapter's copious new vocabulary, you can see again what a veritable linguistic cornucopia (a “horn of plenty,” from **cōpia** + **cornū**, *horn*, which is cognate with “cornet”!) you have in Latin. **Scrīptor** is one of a large group of masc. third decl. nouns formed by replacing the -um of a verb's fourth principal part with -or, a suffix meaning essentially *one who performs the action of the verb*. So, a **monitor**, -tōris, is *one who advises*, i.e., *an advisor*; an **amātor** is *a lover*; etc. What would be the similarly formed nouns from **docēre** and **agō**? Look at the other verbs introduced in this chapter and at the vocabularies in the previous chapters; what other such -or nouns can you form and recognize?

The point is that if you know one Latin root word, then you will often discover and be able to deduce the meanings of whole families of words: the verb **discere**, e.g., is related to **discipulus** and **discipula**, of course, and also to the noun **disciplīna**. I like to point out that “discipline” is *not* “punishment” but “learning.” If you saw the popular 1993 film *Man Without a Face*, you heard lots of Latin, including a favorite old injunction, **aut discere aut discēde**, *either learn or leave* (I have this posted on my office door). You'll be learning, not leaving, I have no doubt, but for now, **valēte, discipulī et discipulae!**

Demonstratives Hic, Ille, Iste; Special -ius Adjectives

DEMONSTRATIVES

The Latin demonstratives (from **dēmōnstrāre**, *to point out*) function either as pronouns or adjectives equivalent to English *this/these* and *that/those*; the declension generally follows that of **magnus**, **-a**, **-um** (see Ch. 4), with the exception of the forms underlined in the following paradigms (which, as always, should be memorized by repeating the forms aloud, from left to right, **hic**, **haec**, **hoc**; **huius**, **huius**, **huius**; etc.).

	<i>ille, that, those</i>			<i>hic, this, these</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Singular						
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	<u>illud</u>	hic	haec	<u>hoc</u>
<i>Gen.</i>	<u>illius</u>	<u>illius</u>	<u>illius</u>	<u>huius</u>	<u>huius</u>	<u>huius</u>
<i>Dat.</i>	<u>illi</u>	<u>illi</u>	<u>illi</u>	<u>huic</u>	<u>huic</u>	<u>huic</u>
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	<u>illud</u>	hunc	hanc	<u>hoc</u>
<i>Abl.</i>	illo	illa	<u>illo</u>	hoc	hac	<u>hoc</u>
Plural						
<i>Nom.</i>	illi	illae	illa	hi	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	illorum	illarum	illorum	horum	harum	horum
<i>Dat.</i>	illis	illis	illis	his	his	his
<i>Acc.</i>	illos	illas	illa	hos	has	<u>haec</u>
<i>Abl.</i>	illis	illis	illis	his	his	his

DECLENSION

Iste, ista, istud, *that (near you), that of yours, such*, follows the declension of **ille**: *nom.* iste, ista, istud; *gen.* istīus, istīus, istīus; *dat.* istī, istī, istī; etc. Be ready to give all the forms orally.

Again, all three demonstratives follow the pattern of **magnus, -a, -um** quite closely, entirely in the plural with the exception of the neuter **haec**. The most striking differences are in the distinctive genitive and dative singular forms (shared by the nine other special adjectives discussed below) and the **-e** in several forms of **hic**, a shortened form of the demonstrative enclitic **-ce**. Note that **huius** and **huic** are among the few words in which **ui** functions as a diphthong; for the special pronunciation of **huius** (= **huí-yus**) see the Introduction (p. xli).

USAGE AND TRANSLATION

In general the demonstratives point out persons or things either near the speaker (**hic liber**, *this book = this book of mine, this book here*) or near the addressee (**iste liber**, *that book, that book of yours, that book next to you*), or distant from both (**ille liber**, *that book = that book over there, that book of his or hers*). **Ille** and **hic** are sometimes equivalent to *the former* and *the latter*, respectively, and occasionally they have little more force than our personal pronouns, *he, she, it, they*; **ille** can also mean *the famous . . .*; **iste** is sometimes best translated *such*, and occasionally has a disparaging sense, as in **ista ira**, *that awful anger of yours*.

When demonstratives modify nouns, they function as adjectives; since they are by nature emphatic, they regularly precede the nouns they modify. The following examples will provide practice with some of the more troublesome forms.

hic liber, <i>this book</i>	hanc cīvitātem, <i>this state</i>
ille liber, <i>that book</i>	huic cīvitātī, <i>to this state</i>
illīus librī, <i>of that book</i>	illī cīvitātī, <i>to that state</i>
illī librī, <i>those books</i>	illae cīvitātēs, <i>those states</i>
illī librō, <i>to that book</i>	haec cīvitās, <i>this state</i>
illō librō, <i>by that book</i>	haec cōnsilia, <i>these plans</i>
istīus amīcī, <i>of that friend (of yours)</i>	hoc cōnsilium, <i>this plan</i>
istī amīcī, <i>those friends (of yours)</i>	hōc cōnsiliō, <i>by this plan</i>
istī amīcō, <i>to that friend (of yours)</i>	huic cōnsiliō, <i>to this plan</i>

When used alone, demonstratives function as pronouns (from Lat. **prō**, *for, in place of*, + **nōmen**, *name, noun*) and can commonly be translated as *this man, that woman, these things*, and the like, according to their gender, number, and context.

hic, *this man*
 hanc, *this woman*
 hunc, *this man*
 haec, *this woman*
 haec, *these things*
 istum, *that man*
 istārum, *of those women*

ille, *that man*
 illa, *that woman*
 illa, *those things*
 huius, *of this man or woman*¹
 illī, *to that man or woman*¹
 illī, *those men*

SPECIAL *-ius* ADJECTIVES

The singular of nine adjectives of the first and the second declensions is irregular in that the genitive ends in *-ius* and the dative in *-ī*, following the pattern of *illius* and *illī* above. Elsewhere in the singular and throughout the plural these are regular adjectives of the first and the second declensions, following the pattern of *magnus, -a, -um*.²

	sōlus, -a, -um, <i>alone, only</i>			alius, alia, aliud, <i>another, other</i>		
Singular						
<i>Nom.</i>	sólus	sóla	sólum	álius	ália	áliud
<i>Gen.</i>	sólius	sólius	sólius	alteríus ³	alteríus	alteríus
<i>Dat.</i>	sólī	sólī	sólī	áliī	áliī	áliī
<i>Acc.</i>	sólum	sólam	sólum	álium	áliam	áliud
<i>Abl.</i>	sólō	sólā	sólō	áliō	áliā	áliō
Plural						
<i>Nom.</i>	sólī	sólae etc.	sóla	áliī	áliae etc.	ália

The nine adjectives in this group can be easily remembered via the acronym UNUS NAUTA, each letter of which represents the first letter of one of the adjectives (and which at the same time includes one of the nine words, *ūnus*, and even reminds you that *nauta*, though a first declension noun, is masculine, hence the masculine form *ūnus*). Note, too, that each of the nine words indicates some aspect of number:

¹ As a rule, the neuter was used as a pronoun only in the nominative and the accusative. In the genitive, the dative, and the ablative cases the Romans preferred to use the demonstrative as an adjective in agreement with the noun for “thing”; e.g., *huius rei*, *of this thing*.

² Except for the neuter singular form *aliud* (cp. *illud*).

³ This form, borrowed from *alter*, is more common than the regular one, *alius*.

UNUS:

ūnus, -a, -um (ūnīus, etc.), *one*
 nūllus, -a, -um (nūllīus, etc.), *no, none*
 ūllus, -a, -um, *any*
 sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, only*

NAUTA:

neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither*
 alius, -a, -ud, *another, other*
 uter, utra, utrum, *either, which (of two)*
 tōtus, -a, -um, *whole, entire*
 alter, altera, alterum, *the other (of two)*

VOCABULARY

lōcus, -ī, m., *place; passage in literature*; pl., **lōca**, -ōrum, n., *places, region*; **lōcī**, -ōrum, m., *passages in literature* (allocate, dislocate, locality, locomotion)
mōrbus, -ī, m., *disease, sickness* (morbid, morbidity)
stūdium, -iī, n. *eagerness, zeal, pursuit, study* (studio, studious; cp. **studeō**, Ch. 35)
hic, **haec**, **hoc**, *this; the latter*; at times weakened to *he, she, it, they* (ad hoc)
ille, **illa**, **illud**, *that; the former; the famous; he, she, it, they*
iste, **ista**, **istud**, *that of yours, that; such*; sometimes with contemptuous force
ālius, -a, -ud, *other, another*; **āliī** . . . **āliī**, *some . . . others* (alias, alibi, alien)
āler, **ātera**, **ālerum**, *the other (of two), second* (alter, alteration, alternate, alternative, altercation, altruism, adulterate, adultery)
neūter, **neūtra**, **neūtrum**, *not either, neither* (neutrality, neutron)
nūllus, -a, -um, *not any, no, none* (null, nullify, nullification, annul)
sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, only, the only*; **nōn sōlum** . . . **sed étiam**, *not only . . . but also* (sole, solitary, soliloquy, solo, desolate, sullen)
tōtus, -a, -um, *whole, entire* (total, totality, factotum, in toto)
ūllus, -a, -um, *any*
ūnus, -a, -um, *one, single, alone* (unit, unite, union, onion, unanimous, unicorn, uniform, unique, unison, universal, university)
úter, **útra**, **útrum**, *either, which (of two)*
énim, postpositive conj., *for, in fact, truly*
in, prep. + acc., *into, toward; against* (also **in** + abl., *in*, see Ch. 3). In compounds **in-** may also appear as **il-**, **ir-**, **im-**; and it may have its literal meanings or have simply an intensive force. (Contrast the inseparable negative prefix **in-**, *not, un-, in-*.)
nímis or **nímium**, adv., *too, too much, excessively*

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Hic tōtus liber litterās Rōmānās semper laudat.
2. Hī igitur illīs deābus herī grātiās agēbant.
3. Illud dē vitiīs istīus rēgīnae nunc scrībam, et ista poenās dabit.
4. Neuter alterī plēnam cōpiam pecūniae tum dabit.
5. Potestne laus ūllīus terrae esse perpetua?
6. Labor ūnīus numquam poterit hās cōpiās vincere.
7. Mōrēs istīus scrīptōris erant nimis malī.
8. Nūllī magistrī, tamen, sub istō vērā docēre audēbant.
9. Valēbitne pāx in patriā nostrā post hanc victōriam?
10. Dum illī ibi remanent, aliī nihil agunt, aliī discunt.
11. Cicero was writing about the glory of the other man and his wife.
12. The whole state was thanking this man's brother alone.
13. On account of that courage of yours those (men) will lead no troops into these places tomorrow.
14. Will either book be able to overcome the faults of these times?

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Ubi illās nunc vidēre possum? (Terence.)
2. Hic illam virginem in mātrimōnium dūcet. (Terence.—**mātrimōnium**, -ī.)
3. Huic cōnsiliō palmam dō. (Terence.—**palmā**, -ae, *palm branch of victory*.)
4. Virtūtem enim illīus virī amāmus. (Cicero.)
5. Sōlus hunc iuvāre potes. (Terence.)
6. Poena istīus ūnīus hunc morbum cīvītātis relevābit sed perīculum semper remanēbit. (Cicero.—**relevāre**, *to relieve, diminish*.)
7. Hī enim dē exitiō huius cīvītātis et tōtīus orbis terrārum cōgitant. (Cicero.—**orbis**, **orbis**, *m., circle, orb*; **orbis terrārum**, *idiom, the world*.)
8. Est nūllus locus utrī hominī in hāc terrā. (Martial.)
9. Nōn solum ēventus hoc docet—iste est magister stultōrum!—sed etiam ratiō. (Livy.—**ēventus**, *outcome*.)

WHEN I HAVE . . . ENOUGH!

Habet Āfricānus mīliēns, tamen captat.
Fortūna multīs dat nimis, satis nūllī.

(*Martial 12.10; meter: choliambic.—Āfricānus, -ī, a personal name.—mīliēns, call it *millions*.—**captāre**, *to hunt for legacies*.)

Sī vīs studēre philosophiae animōque, hoc studium nōn potest valēre sine frūgālītate. Haec frūgālītās est paupertās voluntāria. Tolle, igitur, istās excūsatiōnēs: “Nōndum satis pecūniae habeo. Sī quandō illud ‘satis’ ha-

bēbō, tum mē tōtum philosophiae dabō.” Incipe nunc philosophiae, nōn pecūniae, studēre.

(Seneca, *Epistulae* 17.5.—*vīs*, irreg. form, *you wish*.—*studēre* + dat., *to be eager for, devote oneself to*.—*frūgālītās -tātis*.—*paupertās, -tātis*, *small means, poverty*.—*voluntārius, -a, -um*.—*tollere*, *to take away*.—*excūsātiō, -ōnis*.—*nōndum*, adv., *not yet*.—*incipere*, imper., *begin*.)



Seneca (the Younger)
Museo Archeologico Nazionale
Naples, Italy

ETYMOLOGY

A few examples of **in-** as a prefix connected with the preposition: invoke, induce, induct, inscribe, inhibit, indebted.

Some examples of **in-** as an inseparable negative prefix: invalid, innumerable, insane, insuperable, intolerant, inanimate, infamous, inglorious, impetuous, illiberal, irrational.

Latin **ille** provided Italian, Spanish, and French with the definite article and with pronouns of the third person; and Latin **ūnus** provided these languages with the indefinite article. Some of these forms and a few other derivatives are shown in the following table:

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French
ille, illa	il, la	el, la	le, la
ille, illa	egli, ella	él, ella	il, elle
ūnus, ūna	un(o), una	un(o), una	un, une
tōtus	tutto	todo	tout
sōlus	solo	solo	seul
alter	altro	otro	autre

Fr. *là* (*there*) comes from *illāc* (*viā*), an adverbial form meaning *there* (*that way*); similarly, It. *là* and Sp. *allá*.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Here is a mysterious old inscription, found on a hitching post out west in Dodge City:

TOTI
EMUL
ESTO

Aha!—looks like the newly learned dat. of *tōtus* + *emul*, like *simul*, *simultaneously*? + some form of *sum*, *es*, *est*, the exotic future imperative, perhaps? (NOT!—that old post was just “to tie mules to”!)

Here are some more vocab. items useful for Latin conversation and other classroom activities: *surgere*, *to rise, stand up* (surge, resurgence, insurgence); *sedēre*, *to sit* (sedentary); *ambulāre*, *to walk* (ambulatory, amble, ambulance); *aperīre* (fourth conj.), *to open* (aperture); *claudere*, *to close* (clause, closet); *dēclīnāre*; *coniugāre*; *crēta*, *-ae*, *chalk* (cretaceous); *ērāsūra*, *-ae*, *eraser*; *stilus*, *-ī*, *pen* or *pencil* (actually a stylus); *tabula*, *-ae*, *chalkboard* (tabular, tabulate); *tabella*, *-ae*, the diminutive form of *tabula*, *notebook, writing pad* (tablet); *iānua*, *-ae*, *door* (janitor, Janus, January); *fenestra*, *-ae*, *window*; *cella*, *-ae*, *room* (cell); *sella*, *-ae*, *chair*; *mēnsa*, *-ae*, *table*; *podium*, *-ī*. Now you’ll know just what to do when your instructor says to you, *Salvē, discipula* (or *discipule*)! *Quid agis hodiē?* Surge ex sellā tuā, ambulā ad tabulam, et dēclīnā “*hic, haec, hoc*.” Next thing you know, you’ll be speaking Latin—not so difficult (even Roman toddlers did!): *semper valēte, amīcae amīcīque!*

Fourth Conjugation and -iō Verbs of the Third

This chapter introduces the last of the regular conjugations, in the active voice, the fourth conjugation (illustrated here by **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum, to hear**) and **-iō** verbs of the third (illustrated by **capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, to take, seize**). Like the first two conjugations, the fourth is characterized by a long stem vowel; as seen in the paradigm below, the **-ī-** is retained through all the present system tenses (present, future, imperfect), although it is shortened before vowels as well as before final **-t**. Certain third conjugation verbs are formed in the same way in the present system, except that the **-i-** is everywhere short and **e** appears as the stem vowel in the singular imperative (**cape**) and the present active infinitive (**capere**). **Agō** is presented alongside these new paradigms for comparison and review (see Ch. 8).

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

	1. ágō	aúdi-ō	cápi-ō	(I hear, take)
Sg.	2. ágis	aúdī-s	cápi-s	(you hear, take)
	3. ágit	aúdi-t	cápi-t	(he, she, it hears, takes)
	1. ágimus	audīmus	cápi-mus	(we hear, take)
Pl.	2. ágitis	audītis	cápit-is	(you hear, take)
	3. águnt	aúdiunt	cápiunt	(they hear, take)

FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

	1. ágam	aúdi-am	cápi-am	(I shall hear, take)
Sg.	2. ágēs	aúdi-ēs	cápi-ēs	(you will hear, take)
	3. áget	aúdi-et	cápi-et	(he, she, it will hear, take)
	1. agēmus	audiēmus	capiēmus	(we shall hear, take)
Pl.	2. agētis	audiētis	capiētis	(you will hear, take)
	3. ágent	aúdient	cápi-ent	(they will hear, take)

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

	1. agēbam	audi-ēbam	capi-ēbam	(I was hearing, taking)
Sg.	2. agēbās	audi-ēbās	capi-ēbās	(you were hearing, taking)
	3. agēbat	audi-ēbat	capi-ēbat	(he, she, it was hearing, taking)
	1. agēbāmus	audiēbāmus	capiēbāmus	(we were hearing, taking)
Pl.	2. agēbātis	audiēbātis	capiēbātis	(you were hearing, taking)
	3. agēbant	audiēbant	capiēbant	(they were hearing, taking)

PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

Sg.	2. áge	aúdī	cápe	(hear, take)
Pl.	2. ágite	audī-te	cápi-te	(hear, take)

CONJUGATION OF Audiō

The **-īre** distinguishes the infinitive of the fourth conjugation from the infinitives of the other conjugations (**laud-āre**, **mon-ēre**, **ág-ere**, **aud-īre**, **cá-pere**).

As in the case of the first two conjugations, the rule for the formation of the present indicative is to add the personal endings to the present stem (**audī-**). In the third person plural this rule would give us ***audi-nt** but the actual form is **audi-unt**, an ending reminiscent of **águnt**.

For the future of **audiō** a good rule of thumb is this: shorten the **ī** of the present stem, **audi-**, and add the future endings of **agō**: **-am**, **-ēs**, **-et**, **-ēmus**, **-ētis**, **-ent**. Once again, as in the third conjugation, **-ē-** is the characteristic vowel of the future.

The imperfect is formed with **-iē-**, instead of simply the stem vowel **-ī-**, before the **-bā-** tense sign, so that the forms are **audiēbam**, **audiēbās**, etc. (rather than ***audībam**, etc., as might be expected).

The imperatives, however, follow exactly the pattern of the first and second conjugations, i.e., the singular is the same as the present stem (**audī**) and the plural merely adds **-te** (**audīte**).

CONJUGATION OF *Capiō*

The infinitive **capere** is clearly an infinitive of the third conjugation, not of the fourth. The imperative forms also show that this is a verb of the third conjugation.

The present, future, and imperfect indicative of **capiō** follow the pattern of **audiō**, except that **capiō**, like **agō**, has a short **-i-** in **cápis**, **cápmus**, **cápitis**.

Note again very carefully the rule that the **-i-** appears in all present system active indicative forms for both fourth and third **-iō** verbs, and remember that two vowels, **-iē-**, appear before the **-bā-** in the imperfect.

VOCABULARY

amīcītia, -ae, f., *friendship* (cp. **amō**, **amīca**, **amīcus**)

cupīditās, **cupīditātis**, f., *desire, longing, passion, cupidity, avarice* (cp. **cupīo**, Ch. 17)

hōra, -ae, f., *hour, time*

nātūra, -ae, f., *nature* (natural, preternatural, supernatural; cp. **nāscor**, Ch. 34)

senectūs, **senectūtis**, f., *old age* (cp. **senex**, Ch. 16)

tímor, **timōris**, m., *fear* (timorous; cp. **timeō**, Ch. 15)

vēritās, **vēritātis**, f., *truth* (verify, veritable, verity; cp. **vērus**, **vērō**, Ch. 29)

vía, -ae, f., *way, road, street* (via, viaduct, deviate, devious, obvious, pervious, impervious, previous, trivial, voyage, envoy)

volúptās, **voluptātis**, f., *pleasure* (voluptuary, voluptuous)

beātus, -a, -um, *happy, fortunate, blessed* (beatific, beatify, beatitude, Beatrice)

quóniam, conj., *since, inasmuch as*

cum, prep. + abl., *with*. As a prefix **cum** may appear as **com-**, **con-**, **cor-**, **col-**, **co-**, and means *with, together, completely*, or simply has an intensive force (complete, connect, corroborate, collaborate)

aúdiō, **audīre**, **audīvī**, **audītum**, *to hear, listen to* (audible, audience, audit, audition, auditory; cp. **audītor**, Ch. 16)

cápiō, **cápere**, **cēpī**, **cáptum**, *to take, capture, seize, get*. In compounds the **-a-** becomes **-i-**, **-cipiō**: **ac-cipiō**, **ex-cipiō**, **in-cipiō**, **re-cipiō**, etc. (capable, capacious, capsule, captious, captive, captor)

dīcō, **dīcere**, **dīxī**, **dictum**, *to say, tell, speak; name, call* (dictate, dictum, diction, dictionary, dight, ditto, contradict, indict, edict, verdict)

fáciō, **fácere**, **fēcī**, **fáctum**, *to make, do, accomplish*. In compounds the **-a-** becomes **-i-**, **-ficiō**: **cōn-ficiō**, **per-ficiō**, etc. (facile, fact, faction, factotum, facsimile, faculty, fashion, feasible, feat)

fúgiō, **fúgere**, **fúgī**, **fúgitūrum**, *to flee, hurry away; go into exile; avoid, shun* (fugitive, fugue, centrifugal, refuge, subterfuge)

veníō, venīre, vēnī, vēntum, *to come* (advent, adventure, avenue, convene, contravene, covenant, event, inconvenient, intervene, parvenu, prevent, provenience)

inveníō, invenīre, -vēnī, -vēntum, *to come upon, find* (invent, inventory)

vívō, vívere, víxī, víctum, *to live* (convivial, revive, survive, vivacity, vivid, vivify, viviparous, vivisection, victual, vittle; cp. **vīta**)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Quid discipulae hodiē discere dēbent?
2. Frātrēs nihil cum ratiōne herī gerēbant.
3. Ille magnam virtūtem labōris et studiī docēre saepe audet.
4. Hic dē senectūte scrībēbat; ille, dē amōre; et alius, dē libertāte.
5. Ex librīs ūnīus virī nātūram hārum īnsidiārum dēmōnstrābimus.
6. Istī sōlī victōriam nimis amant; neuter dē pāce cōgitat.
7. Ubi cīvītās ūllōs virōs magnae sapientiae audiet?
8. Ex illīs terrīs in hunc locum salvum cum amīcīs vestrīs venīte.
9. Post paucās hōrās sorōrem illīus invenīre poterāmus.
10. Cōpia vestrae utrum virum ibi numquam capient.
11. Alter Graecus remedium huius morbi inveniet.
12. Carmina illīus scrīptōris sunt plēna nōn sōlum vēritātis sed etiam virtūtis.
13. We shall then come to your land without any friends.
14. While he was living, nevertheless, we were able to have no peace.
15. The whole state now shuns and will always shun these vices.
16. He will, therefore, thank the queen and the whole people.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Cupiditātem pecūniae glōriaque fugite. (Cicero.)
2. Officium meum faciam. (*Terence.)
3. Fāma tua et vīta fīliae tuae in perīculum crās venient. (Terence.)
4. Vīta nōn est vīvere sed valēre. (Martial.)
5. Semper magnō cum timōre incipiō dīcere. (Cicero.— **incipiō, -ere**, *to begin*.)
6. Sī mē dūcēs, Mūsa, corōnam magnā cum laude capiam. (Lucretius.— **Mūsa, -ae**, *Muse*. — **corōna, -ae**, *crown*.)
7. Vīve memor mortis; fugit hōra. (Persius.— **memor**, adj. nom. sg. m. or f., *mindful*. — **mors, mortis**, f., *death*.)
8. Rapite, amīcī, occāsiōnem dē hōrā. (Horace.— **rapiō, -ere**, *to snatch, seize*. — **occāsiō, -ōnis**, f., *opportunity*.)
9. Paucī veniunt ad senectūtem. (*Cicero.)
10. Sed fugit, intereā, fugit tempus. (Virgil.— **intereā**, adv., *meanwhile*. — The verb is repeated for emphasis.)
11. Fāta viam invenient. (*Virgil.— **fātum, -ī**, *fate*.)

12. Bonum virum nātūra, nōn ōrdō, facit. (*Publilius Syrus.—ōrdō, -dinis, m., rank.)
 13. Obsequium parit amīcōs; vērītās parit odium. (Cicero.—obsequium, -iī, compliance.—pariō, -ere, to produce.—odium, -iī, hate.)

THE INCOMPARABLE VALUE OF FRIENDSHIP

Nihil cum amīcitiā possum comparāre; dī hominibus nihil melius dant. Pecūniam aliī mālunt; aliī, corpora sāna; aliī, fāmam glōriamque; aliī, voluptātēs—sed hī virī nimium errant, quoniam illa sunt incerta et ex fortūnā veniunt, nōn ex sapientiā. Amīcitia enim ex sapientiā et amōre et mōribus bonīs et virtūte venit; sine virtūte amīcitia nōn potest esse. Sī nūllōs amīcōs habēs, habēs vītā tyrannī; sī inveniēs amīcum vērum, vīta tua erit beāta.

(Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā*, excerpts; see L.A. 6.—comparāre.—melius, better.—mālunt, prefer.—incertus, -a, -um, uncertain.)

ETYMOLOGY

Audiō is the ultimate ancestor of these surprising descendants: “obey” through Fr. **obéir** from Lat. **obēdīre** (**ob** + **audīre**); “obedient” (**ob** + **audiēns**); “oyez, oyez” from Fr. **ouir**, Lat. **audīre**.

In the readings

5. incipient, inception. 6. museum, music.—corona, coronation, coronary, coroner, corolla, corollary. 7. memory, memoir, commemorate. 8. rapid, rapture, rapacious. 13. obsequious.—odium, odious. “Friendship”: comparable.—certainty.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Do you remember being introduced to masc. **-or** nouns formed from the fourth principal parts of verbs? (That was back in Ch. 8.) Well, there are lots of others related to the new verbs in this chapter: **audītor**, Eng. *auditor, listener*, is one; can you find others? Look at the section on Etymological Aids in the App., p. 435–42 below, and you’ll learn a great deal more about word families, including another group of third decl. nouns, mostly fem., formed by adding the suffix **-iō** (**-iōnis**, **-iōnī**, etc.) to the same fourth principal part. Such nouns generally indicate the performance or result of an action, e.g., **audītiō**, **audītiōnis**, f., *listening, hearing*, and many have Eng. derivatives in **-ion** (like “audition”). Another example from this chapter’s Vocab. is **dictiō**, (*the act of*) *speaking, public speaking*, which gives us such Eng. derivatives as “diction” (the manner or style of one’s speaking or writing), “dictionary,” “benediction,” “contradiction,” etc. How many other Latin nouns and Eng. derivatives can you identify from the new verbs in this chapter? Happy hunting, but in the meantime **tempus fugit**, so I’ll have to say **valēte!**

Personal Pronouns Ego, Tū, and Is; Demonstratives Is and Īdem

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

A personal pronoun is a word used in place of a noun (remember **prō + nōmen**) to designate a particular person, from the speaker's point of view: the first person pronoun indicates the speaker himself or herself (Lat. **ego/nōs**, *I/me, we/us*), the second person pronoun indicates the person(s) addressed by the speaker (**tū/vōs**, *you*), and the third person indicates the person(s) or thing(s) the speaker is talking about (**is, ea, id**, and their plurals, *he/him, she/her, it, they/them*).

THE FIRST AND SECOND PERSON PRONOUNS Ego/Nōs, Tū/Vōs

While the first and second person pronouns are irregular in form, their declensions are quite similar to one another and are easily memorized; note that there are two different forms for the genitive plural.

1st Person—Ego, <i>I</i>			2nd Person—Tū, <i>You</i>	
Singular				
<i>Nom.</i>	égo	(<i>I</i>)	tū	(<i>you</i>)
<i>Gen.</i>	mēī	(<i>of me</i>)	tūī	(<i>of you</i>)
<i>Dat.</i>	mīhi	(<i>to/for me</i>)	tībi	(<i>to/for you</i>)
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	(<i>me</i>)	tē	(<i>you</i>)
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	(<i>by/with/from me</i>)	tē	(<i>by/with/from you</i>)

Plural

Nom.	nōs	(we)	vōs	(you)
Gen.	nóstrum	(of us)	véstrum	(of you)
	nóstrī	(of us)	véstrī	(of you)
Dat.	nóbīs	(to/for us)	vóbīs	(to/for you)
Acc.	nōs	(us)	vōs	(you)
Abl.	nóbīs	(by/with/from us ¹)	vóbīs	(by/with/from you)

THE THIRD PERSON/DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN Is, Ea, Id

The declension of the pronoun **is, ea, id** is comparable to those of **hic** and **ille** (Ch. 9), i.e., the pattern is that of **magnus, -a, -um** (Ch. 4), with the exception of the forms underlined below; note that the base is **e-** in all but four forms (including the alternate nominative plural **īī**).

	Masculine		Feminine		Neuter
Singular					
N.	<u>is</u> (he ²)		<u>éa</u> (she ²)		<u>id</u> (it ²)
G.	<u>éius</u> ³ (of him, his)		<u>éius</u> (of her, her)		<u>éius</u> (of it, its)
D.	<u>éī</u> (to/for him)		<u>éī</u> (to/for her)		<u>éī</u> (to/for it)
A.	<u>éum</u> (him)		<u>éam</u> (her)		<u>id</u> (it)
A.	<u>éō</u> (by/w./lfr. him)		<u>éā</u> (by/w./lfr. her)		<u>éō</u> (by/w./lfr. it)
Plural					
N.	<u>ēī, īī</u> (they, masc.)		<u>éae</u> (they, fem.)		<u>éa</u> (they, neut.)
G.	<u>eōrum</u> (of them, their)		<u>eārum</u> (of them, their)		<u>eōrum</u> (of them, their)
D.	<u>éis</u> (to/for them)		<u>éis</u> (to/for them)		<u>éis</u> (to/for them)
A.	<u>éōs</u> (them)		<u>éās</u> (them)		<u>éa</u> (them)
A.	<u>éis</u> (by/w./lfr. them)		<u>éis</u> (by/w./lfr. them)		<u>éis</u> (by/w./lfr. them)

USAGE

Since these pronouns are employed as substitutes for nouns, they are in general used as their corresponding nouns would be used: as subjects, direct objects, indirect objects, objects of prepositions, and the like.

Ego tibi (vóbīs) librōs dabō, *I shall give the books to you.*

Ego eī (eīs) librōs dabō, *I shall give the books to him or her (to them).*

Tū mē (nōs) nōn capiēs, *you will not capture me (us).*

¹ You will find that a preposition is used in Latin with most ablatives when the noun or pronoun in the ablative indicates a person.

² Also *this/that man, woman, thing*.

³ Pronounced **eí-yus** (cp. **huius**, Ch. 9).

Eī id ad nōs mittent, *they* (masc.) *will send it to us*.

Vōs eōs (eās, ea) nōn capiētis, *you will not capture them (them)*.

Eae ea ad tē mittent, *they* (fem.) *will send them (those things) to you*.

Notice, however, that the Romans used the nominatives of the pronouns (**ego, tū**, etc.) *only* when they wished to stress the subject. Commonly, therefore, the pronominal subject of a Latin verb is not indicated except by the ending.

Eīs pecūniam dabō, *I shall give them money*.

Ego eīs pecūniam dabō: quid tū dabis? *I shall give them money; what will you give?*

Another point of usage: when **cum** was employed with the ablative of the personal pronouns (as well as the relative and reflexive pronouns, to be studied later), it was generally suffixed to the pronoun, rather than preceding it as a separate preposition: **eōs nōbiscum ibi inveniēs**, *you will find them there with us*.

Notice also that the genitives of **ego** and **tū** (namely **meī**, **nostrum**, **nostrī**; **tuī**, **vestrum**, **vestrī**) were *not* used to indicate possession.⁴ To convey this idea, the Romans preferred the possessive pronominal adjectives, which you have already learned:

meus, -a, -um, *my*

tuus, -a, -um, *your*

noster, -tra, -trum, *our*

vester, -tra, -trum, *your*

English usage is comparable: just as Latin says **liber meus**, not **liber meī**, so English says *my book*, not *the book of me*.

The genitives of **is**, **ea**, **id**, on the other hand, were quite commonly used to indicate possession. Hence, while **eius** can sometimes be translated *of him/ of her/ of it*, it is very often best translated *his/ her/ its*; likewise **eōrum/ eārum/ eōrum** can be rendered *of them*, but its common possessive usage should be translated *their*. Study the possessives in the following examples, in which **mittam** governs all the nouns.

Mittam (*I shall send*)

pecūniam meam (*my money*).

amīcōs meōs (*my friends*).

pecūniam nostram (*our money*).

amīcōs nostrōs (*our friends*).

pecūniam tuam (*your money*).

amīcōs tuōs (*your friends*).

⁴ **Meī** and **tuī** were used as objective genitives (e.g., **tīmor tuī**, *fear of you*—see S.S., p. 442–43 below) and partitive genitives (or “genitives of the whole,” e.g., **pars meī**, *part of me*—see Ch. 15). **nostrī** and **vestrī** only as objective gens., and **nostrum** and **vestrum** only as partitive gens.

pecūniam vestram (<i>your money</i>).	amīcōs vestrōs (<i>your friends</i>).
pecūniam eius (<i>his, her money</i>).	amīcōs eius (<i>his, her friends</i>).
pecūniam eōrum (<i>their money</i>).	amīcōs eōrum (<i>their friends</i>).
pecūniam eārum (<i>their money</i>).	amīcōs eārum (<i>their friends</i>).

The possessive pronominal adjectives of the first and the second persons naturally agree with their noun in *gender, number, and case*, as all adjectives agree with their nouns. The possessive genitives **eius**, **eōrum**, and **eārum**, being genitive pronouns, remain unchanged regardless of the gender, number, and case of the noun on which they depend.

A last important point regarding possessives is the fact that Latin frequently omits them, except for emphasis or to avoid ambiguity. English, on the other hand, employs possessives regularly, and so you will often need to supply them in translating from Latin (just as you do the articles “a,” “an,” and “the”), in order to produce an idiomatic translation; e.g., **patriam amāmus**, *we love our country*.

Is, Ea, Id AS DEMONSTRATIVE

While commonly serving as Latin's third person pronoun, **is** was also used as a demonstrative, somewhat weaker in force than **hic** or **ille** and translatable as either *this/these* or *that/those*. In general you should translate the word in this way when you find it immediately preceding and modifying a noun (in the same number, gender, and case); contrast the following:

Is est bonus, *he is good*.

Is amīcus est vir bonus, *this friend is a good man*.

Vidēsne eam, *do you see her?*

Vidēsne eam puellam, *do you see that girl?*

DEMONSTRATIVE **īdem**, **Eadem**, **Idem**, the Same

The very common demonstrative **īdem**, **eadem**, **idem**, *the same* (*man, woman, thing*), is formed simply by adding **-dem** directly to the forms of **is**, **ea**, **id**, e.g., gen. **eiusdem**, dat. **eīdem**, etc.; besides the singular nominatives **īdem** (masc., for ***isdem**) and **idem** (neut., rather than ***iddem**), the only forms not following this pattern exactly are those shown below, where final **-m** changes to **-n-** before the **-dem** suffix (for the full declension of **īdem**, see the Summary of Forms, p. 449 below).

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
<i>Acc.</i>	eúndem ⁵	eándem	ídem
Plural			
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrúndem ⁵	eārúndem	eōrúndem

Like other demonstratives, **īdem** may function as an adjective or a pronoun: **eōsdem mittō**, *I am sending the same men*; **dē eādem ratiōne cōgitābāmus**, *we were thinking about the same plan*.

VOCABULARY

cáput, cápitis, n., *head; leader; beginning; life; heading; chapter* (cape = headland, capital, capitol, capitulate, captain, chief, chieftain, chef, cattle, chattels, cadet, cad, achieve, decapitate, recapitulate, precipice, occiput, sinciput, kerchief)

cōnsul, cōnsulis, m., *consul* (consular, consulate, consulship; cp. **cōnsilium**)

nēmō, nūllīus,⁶ **nēminī, nēminem, nūllō**⁶ or **nūllā**, m. or f., *no one, nobody*

ēgo, mēī, *I* (ego, egoism, egotism, egotistical)

tū, túī, *you*

is, éa, id, *this, that; he, she, it* (i.e. = **id est**, *that is*)

īdem, éadem, ídem, *the same* (id., identical, identity, identify)

amīcus, -a, -um, *friendly* (amicable, amiable, amiably—cp. **amō** and the nouns **amīcus, amīca**, and **amīcītia**).

cārus, -a, -um, *dear* (caress, charity, charitable, cherish)

quod, conj., *because*

néque, nec, conj. *and not, nor*; **néque . . . néque** or **nec . . . nec**, *neither . . . nor*

auté, postpositive conj., *however; moreover*

béne, adv. of **bonus**, *well, satisfactorily, quite* (benediction, benefit, benefactor, beneficent, benevolent)

étiam, adv., *even*

intéllegō, intellégere, intelléxī, intelléctum, *to understand* (intelligent, intellegentsia, intelligible, intellect, intellectual; cp. **legō**, Ch. 18)

míttō, mittere, mīsī, mīssum, *to send, let go* (admit, commit, emit, omit, permit, promise, remit, submit, transmit, compromise, demise)

séntiō, sentīre, sénsī, sēsum, *to feel, perceive, think, experience* (assent, consent, dissent, presentiment, resent, sentimental, scent)

⁵Try pronouncing ***eumdem** or ***cōrundem** rapidly and you will probably end up changing the **-m-** to **-n-** before **-d-**, just as the Romans did.

⁶The genitive and ablative forms of **nūllus** are usually found in place of **nēminis** and **nēmine**.

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Eum ad eam cum aliō agricolā herī mittēbant.
2. Tū autem filiā beātā eius nunc amās.
3. Propter amīcitiā, ego hoc faciō. Quid tū faciēs, mī amīce?
4. Vōsne eāsdem litterās ad eum mittere crās audēbitis?
5. Dūc mē ad eius discipulā (ad eam discipulā), amābō tē.
6. Post labōrem eius grātiās magnās eī agēmus.
7. Tūne vērītatem in eō librō dēmōnstrās?
8. Audē, igitur, esse semper īdem.
9. Venitne nātūra mōrum nostrōrum ex nōbīs sōlīs?
10. Dum ratiō nōs dūcet, valēbimus et multa bene gerēmus.
11. Illum timōrem in hōc virō ūnō invenīmus.
12. Sine labōre autem nūlla pāx in cīvitatē eōrum veniet.
13. Studium nōn solum pecūniā sed etiam voluptātis hominēs nimium trahit; aliī eās cupiditātēs vincere possunt, aliī nōn possunt.
14. His life was always dear to the whole people.
15. You will often find them and their friends with me in this place.
16. We, however, shall now capture their forces on this road.
17. Since I was saying the same things to him about you and his other sisters, your brother was not listening.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Virtūs tua mē amīcum tibi facit. (Horace.)
2. Id solum est cārum mihi. (Terence.—**cārus** and other adjectives indicating relationship or attitude often take the dat., translated *to* or *for*; see Ch. 35).
3. Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō. (Pliny.—**bene est**, idiom, *it is well*.)
4. Bene est mihi quod tibi bene est. (Pliny.)
5. “Valē.” “Et tū bene valē.” (Terence.)
6. Quid hī dē tē nunc sentiunt? (Cicero.)
7. Omnēs idem sentiunt. (*Cicero.—**omnēs**, *all men*, nom. pl.)
8. Videō nēminem ex eīs hodiē esse amīcum tibi. (Cicero.—The subject of an infinitive is regularly in the acc., hence **nēminem**; add this to your list of acc. case uses, and see Ch. 25.)
9. Hominēs vidēre caput Cicerōnis in Rōstrīs poterant. (Liv.—**eius**: Antony proscribed Cicero and had the great orator's head cut off and displayed on the Rostra!—**Rōstra**, **-ōrum**; see Etymology below.)
10. Nōn omnēs eadem amant aut eāsdem cupiditātēs studiaque habent. (Horace.)
11. Nec tēcū possum vīvere nec sine tē (*Martial.)
12. Vērus amīcus est alter īdem. (Cicero.—Explain how **alter īdem** can mean “a second self.”)

CICERO DENOUNCES CATILINE IN THE SENATE

Quid facis, Catilīna? Quid cōgitās? Sentīmus magna vitia īnsidiāsque tuās. Ō tempora! Ō mōrēs! Senātus haec intellegit, cōsul videt. Hic tamen vīvit. Vīvit? Etiam in senātum venīt; etiam nunc cōsilia agere audet; oculīs dēsignat ad mortem nōs! Et nōs, bonī virī, nihil facimus! Ad mortem tē, Catilīna, cōsul et senātus dūcere dēbent. Cōsiliū habēmus et agere dēbēmus; sī nunc nōn agimus, nōs, nōs—apertē dīcō—errāmus! Fuge nunc, Catilīna, et dūc tēcum amīcōs tuōs. Nōbīscum remanēre nōn potes; nōn tē, nōn istōs, nōn cōsilia vestra tolerābō!

(Cicero, *In Catilīnam* 1.1.ff. Lucius Sergius Catilina, “Catiline,” masterminded a conspiracy against the Roman government during Cicero’s consulship; this excerpt is adapted from the first oration Cicero delivered against him, before the senate, in 63 B.C. See L.I. 5–6 and the reading passage in Ch. 14 below.—*senātus*, senate.—*dēsignāre*.—*mors*, *mortis*, f., death.—*apertē*, adv., openly.)



Cicero Denouncing Catiline in the Roman Senate
Cesare Maccari, 19th century
Palazzo Madama, Rome, Italy

ETYMOLOGY

Cārus was sometimes used in the sense of *expensive* just as Eng. “dear” and Fr. *cher* can be used.

In the sentences

9. **Rōstra**, the ramming beaks of captured ships affixed to the speakers' platform in the Roman Forum to attest a victory won in 338 B.C. at Antium (Anzio). These beaks gave their name to the platform. Though the pl. *rostra* is still the regular Eng. form, we sometimes use the sg. *rostrum*. "Cicero Denounces Catiline": senator, senatorial; senile.—designate, designation.—mortal, mortality.—aperture; cp. **aperīre**, *to open*.

Some Romance derivatives from the Lat. personal pronouns follow.

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French
ego, tū	io, tu	yo, tu	je, tu
mihi, tibi	mi, ti		
mē, tē	me, te	me, te	me, moi, te, toi ⁷
nōs, vōs (nom.)	noi, voi	nosotros, vosotros ⁸	nous, vous
nōs, vōs (acc.)		nos, os	nous, vous

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulī et discipulae cārae! Notice the ending on that adj. **cārae**?—remember that when adjs. modify two nouns of different gender, the tendency is to have it agree with the one closer to it in the sentence. By the way, now you know the source of Freud's **ego** and **id**, and the meaning of the salutation **pāx vōbīscum/pāx tēcum**. And, you Caesar fans, can you believe that all three of the following have the same translation (well . . . sort of!): **Caesar, Caesar! Caesar eam videt. Caesar, cape eam!** According to tradition, Caesar's last words to the assassin Brutus were **et tū, Brūte?** (To which Brutus hungrily replied, according to the late great Brother Dave Gardner, "Nah, I ain't even et one yet!")

Did you notice in the Vocab. the origin of the abbreviations **i.e.** and **id.**? There are dozens of Latin abbreviations in current usage; for some others, besides those at the end of Ch. 6, see the list below, p. 490–91.

And remember those **-or/-iō** nouns? From the verbs in this Vocab. come **missor, missōris**, m., *a shooter* (of "missiles"—lit., *a sender*) and **missiō, missiōnis**, f., lit. *a sending forth* and used in classical Lat. for *release from captivity, liberation* (itself from **liberāre, to free**), *discharge* (from military service), *dismissal*, and, of course, *mission*; from compounds of **mittō** come a host of Latin nouns with further English derivatives such as "admission," "commission," "emission," "permission," etc. Can you think of others, both the Lat. nouns and the Eng. derivatives, from **mittō**? And how about **sentiō**?

Well, **tempus fugit**, so **pāx vōbīscum et valēte!**

⁷ Fr. **moi, toi** came from accented Lat. **mē, tē**, and Fr. **me, te** came from unaccented Lat. **mē, tē**.

⁸ -**otros** from **alterēs**.

Perfect Active System of All Verbs

You are already familiar with the formation and translation of the present, future, and imperfect tenses, the three tenses that constitute the present system, so-called because they are all formed on the present stem and all look at time from the absolute perspective of the present. In Latin, as in English, there are three other tenses, the perfect (sometimes called the “present perfect”), the future perfect, and the pluperfect (or “past perfect”), which constitute the “perfect system,” so-called because they are formed on a perfect (active or passive) stem and look at time from a somewhat different perspective.

Learning the forms for these three tenses in the active voice (the perfect passive system is taken up in Ch. 19) is a relatively easy matter, since verbs of all conjugations follow the same simple rule: perfect active stem + endings.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

To ascertain the perfect active stem of a Latin verb you must know the principal parts of the verb, just as you must similarly know the principal parts of an English verb if you want to use English correctly.¹ As you have

¹ In fact the principal parts of an English verb to some extent parallel those of a Latin verb:

(1) Present Tense:

praise	lead	take	see	sing	be/am
--------	------	------	-----	------	-------

(2) Past Tense:

praised	led	took	saw	sang	was
---------	-----	------	-----	------	-----

(3) Past Participle:

praised	led	taken	seen	sung	been
---------	-----	-------	------	------	------

Note that, since the pres. indic. and the pres. inf. are normally identical in English, only one form need be given. Note also that the past participle is really a past passive participle like the Latin *laudātum*.

seen from your vocabulary study, most regular Latin verbs have four principal parts, as illustrated by **laudō** in the following paradigm:

1. Present Active Indicative: **laudō**, *I praise*
2. Present Active Infinitive: **laudāre**, *to praise*
3. Perfect Active Indicative: **laudāvī**, *I praised, have praised*
4. Perfect Passive Participle: **laudātum**, *praised, having been praised*

The principal parts of the verbs which have appeared in the paradigms are as follows:

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Partic.
laudō	laudāre	laudāvī , <i>I praised</i>	laudātum , <i>having been praised</i>
mōneō	monēre	mōnuī , <i>I advised</i>	mōnitum , <i>having been advised</i>
ágō	ágere	ēgī , <i>I led</i>	āctum , <i>having been led</i>
cāpiō	cāpere	cēpī , <i>I took</i>	cāptum , <i>having been taken</i>
aúdiō	audīre	audīvī , <i>I heard</i>	audītum , <i>having been heard</i>
sum	esse	fūī , <i>I was</i>	futūrum , <i>about to be</i>
póssum	pósse	pótuī , <i>I was able</i>	————

The first two principal parts, necessary for conjugating a verb in the present system, have been dealt with extensively already. As the first person singular of the perfect active indicative, which always ends in **-ī**, a verb's third principal part is analogous to its first (which is, of course, the first person singular of the present active indicative and regularly ends in **-ō**). The fourth principal part, while given in its neuter form in this book, is for regular transitive verbs the perfect passive participle, a fully declinable verbal adjective of the **-us/-al/-um** variety (**laudātus**, **-a**, **-um**, etc.—some uses of participles will be explained in Chs. 19 and 23–24). Verbs lacking a perfect passive participle substitute the accusative supine (see Ch. 38), and some verbs like **sum** and other intransitives substitute a future active participle (e.g., **futūrum** = **future**, **-a**, **-um**), while others like **possum** have no fourth principal part at all.

THE PERFECT ACTIVE STEM

While the first and second principal parts for regular verbs follow a very consistent pattern, there are no simple rules to cover the many variations in the third and fourth principal parts (though, as we have seen, most first conjugation verbs, marked by a [1] in the vocabularies, do follow the **-ō/-āre/-āvī/-ātum** pattern of **laudō**, and many second and fourth conjugation verbs follow the patterns of **moneō** and **audiō**); hence, as pointed out earlier, it is crucial to memorize all the principal parts in the vocabulary entry for each verb by both *saying them aloud* and *writing them out*. Your knowledge of English will help you in this memorization, since there are many derivatives from both the present stem and the perfect participial stem, as you have already discovered (e.g., “docile” and “doctor,” “agent” and “action,” etc.).

Once you know a verb's principal parts, finding the perfect active stem is easy: simply drop the final **-ī** which characterizes the third principal part of every verb. The stems for the sample verbs in the preceding list are: **laudāv-**, **monu-**, **ēg-**, **cēp-**, **audīv-**, **fu-**, and **potu-**. The following paradigms show you the endings for the three perfect system tenses.

Perfect Active Indicative

	<i>I praised, have praised</i>	<i>I led, have led</i>	<i>I was, have been</i>	Endings
Sg.	1. laudāv-ī	ēg-ī	fú-ī	-ī
	2. laudāv-ístī	ēg-ístī	fu-ístī	-ístī
	3. laudāv-it	ēg-it	fú-it	-it
Pl.	1. laudāvimus	ēgimus	fúimus	-imus
	2. laudāvístis	ēgístis	fuístis	-istis
	3. laudāvērunt	ēgērunt	fuērunt	-ērunt, -ēre ²

Pluperfect Active Indicative

	<i>I had praised</i>	<i>I had been</i>	<i>I shall have praised</i>	<i>I shall have been</i>
Sg.	1. laudāv-eram	fú-eram	laudāv-erō	fú-erō
	2. laudāv-erās	fú-erās	laudāv-eris	fú-eris
	3. laudāv-erat	fú-erat	laudāv-erit	fú-erit
Pl.	1. laudāverāmus	fuerāmus	laudāverimus	fuērimus
	2. laudāverātis	fuerātis	laudāveritis	fuēritis
	3. laudāverant	fúerant	laudāverint	fúerint

The perfect endings (**-ī**, **-ístī**, **-it**, etc.) are quite new and must be memorized. The pluperfect is in effect the perfect stem + **eram**, the imperfect of **sum**. The future perfect is in effect the perfect stem + **erō**, the future of **sum**, except that the third person plural is **-erint**, not **-erunt**.

USAGE, TRANSLATION, AND DISTINCTION FROM THE IMPERFECT

The perfect tense, like the imperfect, is sometimes translated as a simple past tense, hence both **puer amicum monuit** and **puer amicum monēbat** may in certain contexts be translated *the boy warned his friend*. But whereas the imperfect tense is like a video of the past, the perfect tense (from **perficiō**, **perficere**, **perfēcī**, **perfectum**, *to finish, complete*) is rather like a snapshot: with the imperfect the action is viewed as going on, repeated, or habitual, so a more exact translation of **puer amicum monēbat**, depending upon the

² The alternate ending **-ēre** (**laudāvēre**, **ēgēre**, **fuēre**), while fairly common, especially in Lat. poetry, appears only once or twice in this book.

context, might be *the boy was warning/kept warning/lused to warn his friend*. Conversely, the more static perfect tense looks back at an action as a single, completed event (*he warned his friend once*), or as an event that, although completed, has consequences for the present (*he has warned his friend, and so his friend is now prepared*).

The pluperfect (from **plūs quam perfectum**, *more than complete*, i.e., time “prior to the perfect”) and the future perfect are employed generally as they are in English and, like the perfect tense, generally look at the consequences of completed actions. Consider these English sentences, illustrating the pluperfect, perfect, and future perfect, respectively, and note the use of the English auxiliary verbs “had,” “has,” and “will have” (the past, present, and future tenses of the verb “to have”): “he had studied the material and so he knew it well”; “he has studied the material and so he knows it well”; “he will have studied the material and so he will know it well.” You can see from these examples how the three perfect system tenses parallel the three tenses of the present system; in the latter we simply look at events of the past, present, or future, while in the former we look at events of the past, present, or future and consider the impact of previously completed actions on those events.

VOCABULARY

adulēscēns, adulēscētis, m. and f., *young man or woman* (adolescent, adolescence, adult; cp. **adulēscēntia**)

ānnus, -ī, m., *year* (annals, anniversary, annuity, annual, biennial, perennial, centennial, millennium, superannuated)

Āsia, -ae, f., *Asia*, commonly referring to Asia Minor

Caēsar, Caēsarīs, m., *Caesar* (Caesarian, Caesarism, kaiser, czar, tsar)

māter, mātris, f., *mother* (maternal, maternity, matriarchy, matrimony, matricide, matriculate, matrilineal, matrix, matron)

mēdicus, -ī, m., and **mēdica, -ae**, f., *doctor, physician* (medic, medical, medicate, medicine, medicinal)

pāter, pātris, m., *father* (paternal, paternity, patrician, patrimony, patron, patronage, patronize, patter, padre, père; cp. **patria**)

patiēntia, -ae, f., *suffering, patience, endurance* (patient, impatient; cp. **pator**, Ch. 34)

prīncīpium, -iī, n., *beginning* (principal, principle; cp. **prīnceps**, Ch. 28)

acérbus, -a, -um, *harsh, bitter, grievous* (acerbity, exacerbate)

prō, prep. + abl., *in front of, before, on behalf of, for the sake of, in return for, instead of, for, as*; also as prefix (pros and cons, pro- as a prefix)

dīū, adv., *long, for a long time*

nūper, adv., *recently*

āmīttō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *to lose, let go*

cādō, cādere, cécidī, cāsūrum, *to fall* (cadence, case, casual, cascade,

chance, accident, incident, decadence, decay, deciduous)
crēō (1), *to create* (creation, creativity, creature, procreate)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Vōs nōbīs dē voluptātibus adūlēscēntiae tum scrīpsistis.
2. Ratiōnēs alterīus filiae herī nōn fuērunt eadem.
3. Nēmō in hanc viam ex utrā portā fūgerat.
4. Illī autem ad nōs cum medicā eius nūper vērērunt.
5. Illī adūlēscētēs ad nōs propter amīcitiā saepe veniēbant.
6. Eundem timōrem in istō cōnsule sēnsimus.
7. Post paucās hōrās Caesar Asiā cēpit.
8. Illa fēmina beāta sōla magnam cupiditātem pācis sēnsit.
9. Potuistisne bonam vītā sine ūllā lībertāte agere?
10. Vērītās igitur fuit tōtī populō cāra.
11. Neuter medicus nōmen patris audīverat.
12. That friendly queen did not remain there a long time.
13. Our mothers had not understood the nature of that place.
14. However, we had found no fault in the head of our country.
15. They kept sending her to him with me.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

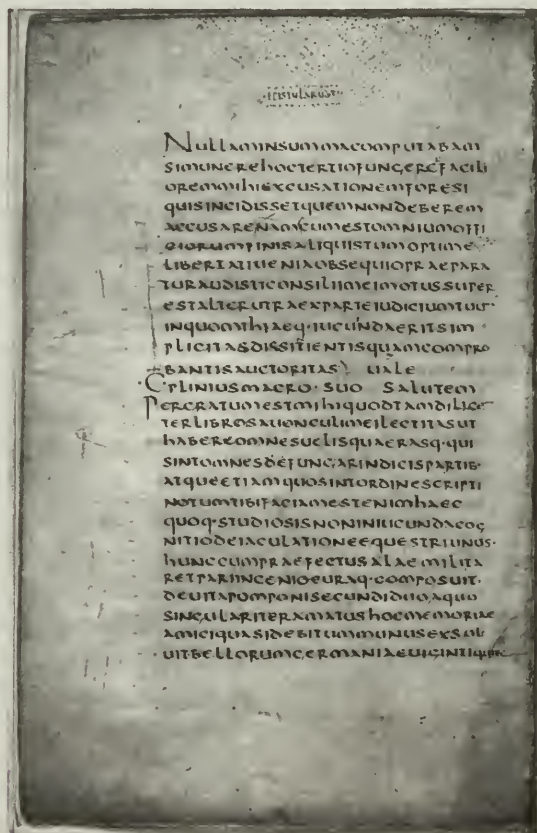
1. In prīncipiō Deus creāvit caelum et terram; et Deus creāvit hominem. (Genesis.)
2. In triumphō Caesar praetulit hunc titulum: “Vērī, vīdī, vīcī.” (Suetonius.—**triumphus, -ī**, *triumphal procession*, here celebrating his quick victory at Zela in Asia Minor in 47 B.C.—**praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum**, *to display*.—**titulus, -ī**, *placard*.)
3. Vīxit, dum vīxit, bene. (*Terence.)
4. Adūlēscēns vult diū vīvere; senex diū vīxit. (Cicero.—**vult**, *irreg.*, *wishes*.—**senex, senis**, *m.*, *old man*.)
5. Nōn ille diū vīxit, sed diū fuit. (*Seneca.)
6. Hui, dīxistī pulchrē! (*Terence.—**hui**, *interj.*, comparable to Eng. “wheel!”—**pulchrē**, *adv.* from **pulcher**; *advs.* were commonly formed from *adjs.* in this way. See Chs. 26–27, and *cp.*, e.g., **vērē** from **vērū**, **līberē** from **līber**, and the irregular **bene** from **bonus**.)
7. Sophoclēs ad summam senectūtem tragoediās fēcit. (*Cicero.—**Sophoclēs, -clis**, the famous Athenian playwright.—**summus, -a, -um**, *extreme*.—**tragoedia, -ae**, *tragedy*.)
8. Illī nōn solum pecūniam sed etiam vītā prō patriā prōfūdērunt. (Cicero.—**prōfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum**, *to pour forth*.)
9. Rēgēs Rōmā ā prīncipiō habuērunt; lībertātem Lūcius Brūtus Rōmānīs dedit. (Tacitus.—**ā** + *abl.*, *from*.)
10. Sub Caesare autem lībertātem perdidimus. (Laberius.—**perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum**, *to destroy, lose*.)

11. Quandō libertās ceciderit, nēmō liberē dicere audēbit. (Publilius Syrus.)

**PLINY WRITES TO MARCELLINUS ABOUT THE DEATH OF
FUNDANUS' DAUGHTER**

Salvē, Marcellīne! Haec tibi scrībō dē Fundānō, amīcō nostrō; is fīliam cāram et bellam amīsīt. Illa puella nōn XIII annōs vīxerat, sed nātūra eī multam sapientiam dederat. Mārem patremque, frātrem sorōremque, nōs et aliōs amīcōs, magistrōs magistrāsque semper amābat, et nōs eam amābāmus laudābāmusque. Medicī eam adiuvāre nōn poterant. Quoniam illa autem magnōs animōs habuit, morbum nimis malum cum patientiā tolerāvit. Nunc, mī amīce, mitte Fundānō nostrō litterās dē fortunā acerbā fīliae eius. Valē.

(Pliny, *Epistulae* 5.16; see L.I. 40.—XIII annōs, for 13 years, acc. of duration of time, Ch. 37. Minicius Fundanus was a consul in A.D. 107; his daughter's funerary urn and the following epitaph were found in the family's tomb outside of Rome: D[is] M[ānibus] Miniciae Marcellae Fundānī f[īliae]; v[ixit] a[nnos] XII



Page from manuscript of Pliny's *Epistulae*
(*Epist.* III.4.8–9 and III.5.1–3)
6th century A.D., Italy
The Pierpont Morgan Library, New York

m[ēnsēs] XI d[iēs] VII.—The bracketed text was abbreviated in the original inscription.—The **dī mănēs** were the *spirits of the dead*, who protected the deceased.—**mēnsēs**, *months*.—**diēs**, *days*.)

DIAULUS STILL BURIES HIS CLIENTS

Nūper erat medicus, nunc est vespillō Diaulus.

Quod vespillō facit, fēcerat et medicus.

(*Martial 1.47; meter: elegiac couplet.—**vespillō**, **-lōnis**, m., *undertaker*.—Diaulus' name is delayed for suspense.—**quod**, *what*.—**et** = *etiam*.)

ETYMOLOGY

Further examples of the help of English words in learning principal parts of Latin verbs are:

Latin Verb	Pres. Stem in Eng. Word	Perf. Partic. Stem in Eng. Word
videō	provide (vidēre)	provision (vīsum)
maneō	permanent (manēre)	mansion (mānsum)
vīvō	revive (vīvere)	victuals (vīctum)
sentiō	sentiment (sentīre)	sense (sēnsum)
veniō	intervene (venīre)	intervention (ventum)
faciō	facile (facere)	fact (factum)

The connection between Latin **pater** and **patria** (*father-land*) is obvious. However, although English “patriarch,” “patriot,” and “patronymic” have in them a stem, **patr-**, which is meaningful to one who knows the Latin words, nevertheless these English words are actually derived from Greek, in which the stem **patr-** is cognate with the same stem in Latin; cp. Greek **patēr**, *father*, **pátrā** or **patrís**, *fatherland*, **patriá**, *lineage*.

In the readings

2. prefer, prelate.—title, titular. 8. confound, confuse, effuse, effusive, fuse, fusion, refund, refuse, transfusion. 10. perdition.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulae discipulique cārī! As we saw in S. A. 2 above, Caesar is said to have proclaimed **vēnī**, **vīdī**, **vīcī** in propagandizing his victory at Zela—a good example of the perfect tense, a “snapshot” of the action whose rapid conclusion the general wanted to emphasize. There are now some 20th-cen. variants on this boast: from the mall-masters, **VENI, VIDI, VISA**, “I came, I saw, I bought everything in sight!” and from the vegetarians, **VENI, VIDI, VEGI**, “I came, I saw, I had a salad.” Are you groaning?!!—but remember, **patientia est virtūs**, and there may yet be worse to come: meantime, **rīdēte** (from **rīdēre**, *to smile*) **et valēte!**

Reflexive Pronouns and Possessives; Intensive Pronoun

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

Reflexive pronouns differ from other pronouns in that they are used ordinarily only in the predicate and refer back to the subject. "Reflexive," which derives from **re-flexus, -a, -um** (**reflectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexum**, *to bend back*) means "bent back," and so reflexive pronouns "bend back" to the subject, or, to put it another way, they "reflect" or refer to the subject. English examples are:

Reflexive Pronouns

I praised *myself*.

Cicero praised *himself*.

Personal Pronouns

You praised *me*.

Cicero praised *him* (Caesar).

DECLENSION OF REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

Since reflexive pronouns refer to the subject, they cannot serve as subjects of finite¹ verbs and they have no nominative case. Otherwise, the declension of the reflexives of the first and the second persons is the same as that of the corresponding personal pronouns.

¹ "Finite" verb forms are those which are limited (**fīnītus, -a, -um**, *having been limited, bounded*) by person and number; reflexives can serve as the subject of an infinitive, however, as you will see in Ch. 25.

The reflexive pronoun of the third person, however, has its own peculiar forms; these are easily recognizable because, as seen from the following chart, they are identical to the singular of **tū**, except that the nominative is lacking and the forms begin with **s-** rather than **t-**. Note also that the singular and plural are identical, or, to put it another way, singular and plural were not distinguished and did not need to be, since reflexives in fact “reflect” the number (as well as the gender) of the subject; e.g., **sē** is easily understood to mean *herself* in the sentence **fēmina dē sē cōgitābat** (*the woman was thinking about herself*) and *themselves* in the sentence **virī dē sē cōgitābant** (*the men were thinking about themselves*).

	1st Pers.	2nd Pers.	3rd Pers.
Singular			
Nom.	—	—	—
Gen.	mēi (<i>of myself</i>)	tūi	sūi (<i>of himself, herself, itself</i>)
Dat.	mīhi (<i>to/for myself</i>)	tībi	sībi (<i>to/for himself, etc.</i>)
Acc.	mē (<i>myself</i>)	tē	sē (<i>himself, herself, itself</i>)
Abl.	mē (<i>by/w./fr. myself</i> ²)	tē	sē (<i>by/w./fr. himself, etc.</i>)
Plural			
Nom.	—	—	—
Gen.	nōstrī (<i>of ourselves</i>)	vēstrī	sūi (<i>of themselves</i>)
Dat.	nōbīs (<i>to/for ourselves</i>)	vōbīs	sībi (<i>to/for themselves</i>)
Acc.	nōs (<i>ourselves</i>)	vōs	sē (<i>themselves</i>)
Abl.	nōbīs (<i>by/w./fr. ourselves</i>)	vōbīs	sē (<i>by/w./fr. themselves</i>)

PARALLEL EXAMPLES OF REFLEXIVE AND PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF 1ST AND 2ND PERSONS.³

1. Tū laudāvistī **tē**, *you praised yourself*.
2. Cicerō laudāvit **tē**, *Cicero praised you*.
3. Nōs laudāvimus **nōs**, *we praised ourselves*.
4. Cicerō laudāvit **nōs**, *Cicero praised us*.
5. Egō scrīpsī litterās **mīhi**, *I wrote a letter to myself*.
6. Cicerō scrīpsit litterās **mīhi**, *Cicero wrote a letter to me*.

PARALLEL EXAMPLES OF REFLEXIVE AND PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF 3RD PERSON

1. Cicerō laudāvit **sē**, *Cicero praised himself*.
2. Cicerō laudāvit **eum**, *Cicero praised him* (e.g., Caesar).

² See Ch. 11, n. 1.

³ The word order in these examples is modified for the sake of clarity.

3. Rōmānī laudāvērunt **sē**, *the Romans praised themselves.*
4. Rōmānī laudāvērunt **eōs**, *the Romans praised them* (e.g., the Greeks).
5. Puella servāvit **sē**, *the girl saved herself.*
6. Puella servāvit **eam**, *the girl saved her* (i.e., another girl).

REFLEXIVE POSSESSIVES

The reflexive possessives of the first and the second persons are identical with the regular possessives already familiar to you: **meus**, **tuus**, **noster**, **vester** (i.e., *my*, *my own*; *your*, *your own*; etc.). They will never cause you any difficulty.

The reflexive possessive of the third person, however, is the adjective **suus**, **sua**, **suum**, *his (own)*, *her (own)*, *its (own)*, *their (own)*. While the forms themselves are easily declined (on the same pattern as **tuus**, **-a**, **-um**, a regular first/second declension adjective), a few important points must be kept in mind regarding the word's usage and translation. First, like any adjective, **suus**, **-a**, **-um**, must agree with the noun it modifies in number, gender, and case. Its English translation, however, like that of the reflexive pronoun, must naturally reflect the gender and number of the subject to which it refers (e.g., **vir filium suum laudat**, *the man praises his [own] son*, vs. **fēmina filium suum laudat**, *the woman praises her [own] son*, and **virī patriam suam laudant**, *the men praise their [own] country*). Finally, the reflexive possessive adjective **suus**, **-a**, **-um** must be carefully distinguished from the nonreflexive possessive genitives **eius**, **eōrum**, **eārum** (*his/her*, *their*: see Ch. 11), which do not refer to the subject.

1. Cicerō laudāvit amīcum **suum**, *Cicero praised his (own) friend.*
2. Cicerō laudāvit amīcum **eius**, *Cicero praised his (Caesar's) friend.*
3. Rōmānī laudāvērunt amīcum **suum**, *the Romans praised their (own) friend.*
4. Rōmānī laudāvērunt amīcum **eōrum**, *the Romans praised their (the Greeks') friend.*
5. Fēmina scrīpsit litterās amīcīs **suīs**, *the woman wrote a letter to her (own) friends.*
6. Fēmina scrīpsit litterās amīcīs **eius**, *the woman wrote a letter to his (or her, i.e., someone else's) friends.*
7. Fēmina scrīpsit litterās amīcīs **eōrum**, *the woman wrote a letter to their (some other persons') friends.*

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN *Ipse, Ipsa, Ipsum*

The intensive **ipse, ipsa, ipsum** follows the peculiar declensional pattern of the demonstratives in the genitive and the dative singular (i.e., gen. **ipsīus, ipsīus**, dat. **ipsī, ipsī, ipsī**); otherwise, it is like **magnus, -a, -um**.⁴ The Romans used the intensive pronoun to emphasize a noun or pronoun of any person in either the subject or the predicate of a sentence; consequently its possible translations include *myself/ourselves* (1st pers.), *yourself/yourselves* (2nd pers.), and *himself/herself/itself/themselves*, as well as *the very* and *the actual*, as illustrated in the following examples:

Cicerō **ipse** laudāvit mē, *Cicero himself praised me.*

Cicerō laudāvit mē **ipsum**, *Cicero praised me myself* (i.e., *actually praised me*)

Ipse laudāvī eius amīcum, *I myself praised his friend.*

Fīlia scrīpsit litterās vōbīs **ipsīs**, *your daughter wrote a letter to you yourselves.*

Cicerō vīdit Caesaris litterās **ipsās**, *Cicero saw Caesar's letter itself* (i.e., *Caesar's actual letter*).

VOCABULARY

dīvítiae, -ārum, f. pl., *riches, wealth* (cp. **dīves**, Ch. 32)

fáctum, -ī, n., *deed, act, achievement* (fact, faction, feat; cp. **faciō**)

sígnum, -ī, n., *sign, signal, indication, seal* (assign, consign, countersign, design, ensign, insignia, resign, seal, signet)

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive pron., *myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, etc., the very, the actual* (ipso facto, solipsistic)

quísque, quídque (gen. **cuíusque**; dat. **cuíque**—cp. **quis**, Ch. 19), indefinite pron., *each one, each person*

súi, reflexive pron. of 3rd pers., *himself, herself, itself, themselves* (suicide, sui generis, per se)

dóctus, -a, -um, *taught, learned, skilled* (doctor, doctorate, doctrine, indoctrinate; cp. **doceō**)

fortūnátus, -a, -um, *lucky, fortunate, happy* (unfortunate; cp. **fortūna**)

súus, -a, -um, reflexive possessive adj. of 3rd pers., *his own, her own, its own, their own*

nam, conj., *for*

ánte, prep. + acc., *before* (in place or time), *in front of*; adv., *before, previously*; not to be confused with Greek **anti**, *against* (antebellum, antedate, ante-room, anterior, antediluvian, A.M. = **ante merīdiem**, advance, advantage)

⁴ See the Summary of Forms, p. 448, for the full declension.

per, prep. + acc., *through*; with reflexive pron., *by*; **per-** (assimilated to **pel-** before forms beginning with **l-**), as a prefix, *through, through and through* = *thoroughly, completely, very* (perchance, perforce, perhaps, perceive, perfect, perspire, percolate, percussion, perchloride, pelucid)

ŏlim, adv., *at that time, once, formerly; in the future*

ālō, ālere, āluī, āltum, *to nourish, support, sustain, increase, cherish* (alible, aliment, alimentary, alimony, coalesce, adolescence)

diligō, diligere, dilēxī, dilēctum, *to esteem, love* (diligent, diligence; cp. **legō**, Ch. 18)

iūngō, iūngere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *to join* (join, joint, junction, juncture, adjunct, conjunction, enjoin, injunction, subjunctive)

stō, stāre, stētī, stātum, *to stand, stand still or firm* (stable, state, station, statue, stature, statute, establish, instant, instate, reinstate, stay; cp. **praestō**, Ch. 28)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Cōsulēs sē nec tēcum nec cum illīs aliīs iungēbant.
2. Tōtus populus Rōmānus lībertātem amīsīt.
3. Rēx malus enim mē ipsum capere numquam potuit.
4. Ad patrem mātremque eōrum per illum locum tum fūgistis.
5. Dī animōs creant et eōs in corpora hominum ē caelō mittunt.
6. Ipsī per sē eum in Asiā nūper vīcērunt.
7. In hāc viā Cicerō medicum eius vīdit, nōn suum.
8. Nēmō fīliam acerbam cōsulis ipsīus diū dīligere potuit.
9. Hī Cicerōnem ipsum sēcum iūnxērunt, nam eum semper dīlēxerant.
10. Fēmina ante illam hōram litterās suās mīserat.
11. Ille bonam senectūtem habuit, nam bene vīxerat.
12. Māter fīlium bene intellēxit, et adulēscēns eī prō patientiā grātiās ēgit.
13. However, those young men came to Caesar himself yesterday.
14. Cicero, therefore, will never join his (Caesar's) name with his own.
15. Cicero always esteemed himself and even you esteem yourself.
16. Cicero used to praise his own books and I now praise my own books.
17. The consul Cicero himself had never seen his (Caesar's) book.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Ipse ad eōs contendēbat equitēsque ante sē mīsīt. (Caesar.—**contendō, -ere, to hasten.**—**eques, equitis, m., horseman.**)
2. Ipsī nihil per sē sine eō facere potuērunt. (Cicero.)
3. Ipse signum suum et litterās suās ā prīncipiō recognōvit. (Cicero.—**recognōscō, -ere, -cognōvī, -cognitum, to recognize.**)
4. Quisque ipse sē dīligit, quod quisque per sē sibi cārus est. (Cicero.)

5. Ex vitiō alteriūs sapiēns ēmendat suum. (*Publilius Syrus.—**sapi-ēns, -entis**, m., *wise man, philosopher*.—**ēmendāre**, *to correct*.)
6. Recēde in tē ipsum. (*Seneca.—**recēdō, -ere**, *to withdraw*.)
7. Animus sē ipse alit. (*Seneca.)
8. Homō doctus in sē semper dīvitiās habet. (Phaedrus.)

ALEXANDER THE GREAT AND THE POWER OF LITERATURE

Magnus ille Alexander multōs scrīptōrēs factōrum suōrum sēcum semper habēbat. Is enim ante tumulum Achillis ōlim stetit et dīxit haec verba: “Fuiſtī fortunātus, ō adulēscēns, quod Homērum laudātōrem virtūtis tuae invēnistī.” Et vērē! Nam, sine *Īliade* illā, idem tumulus et corpus eius et nōmen obruere potuit. Nihil corpus humānum cōservāre potest; sed litterae magnae nōmen virī magnī saepe cōservāre possunt.

(Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 24. —**ille**, usually when placed after the word it modifies, can mean *that famous*.—**tumulus, -ī**, *tomb, grave*.—**Achillēs, -lis**, m.—**Homērus, -ī**.—**laudātōr, -tōris**, *one who praises* [see Ch. 8, *Latīna Est Gaudium*], here *chronicler*.—**vērē**, adv. of **vērūs**.—**Īlias, -adis**, f.—**obruō, -ere**, *to overwhelm, bury*.)



Alexander the Great
Pergamon, 3rd century B.C.
Archaeological Museum, Istanbul, Turkey

THE AUTHORITY OF A TEACHER'S OPINION

Magistrī bonī discipulīs sentiētiās suās nōn semper dīcere dēbent. Discipulī Pŷthagorae in disputātiōnibus saepe dīcēbant: “Ipse dīxit!” Pŷthagorās, eōrum magister philosophiae, erat “ipse”: sentiētiā eius etiam sine ratiōne valuērunt. In philosophiā autem ratiō sōla, nōn sentiētia, valēre dēbet.

(Cicero, *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* 1.5.10.—**Pŷthagorās, -ae**, m.—**disputātiō, -ōnis**, *argument, debate*.)

ETYMOLOGY

The adj. **altus**, **-a**, **-um**, *high*, literally means *having been nourished*, and so, *grown large*; hence altitude, alto, contralto, exalt, hautboy, oboe.

In the readings

1. contend, contention, contentious.—equestrian; cp. **equus**, *horse*.
5. emend, emendation, mend. 6. recede, recession. “Alexander”: tumulus, tumular, tumulose.—laudatory. “Authority”: disputable, dispute, disputant, disputation, disputatious.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! If you’ve spent much time in court, or even watching *Perry Mason* reruns, you’ve doubtless encountered some legal Latin. **Ipse** turns up more than once in the lawyer’s lexicon: there’s **ipsō factō**, *by that very fact*; **ipsō jūre** (classical **iūre**), *by the law itself*; and **rēs ipsa loquitur**, *the matter speaks for itself*. And from the third pers. reflexive there’s **suī jūris** (**iūris**), lit. *of his own right*, i.e., legally competent to manage one’s own affairs. Not a legal term, but from the reflexive and common in Eng. is **suī generis**, lit. *of his/her/its own kind* (see **genus**, Ch. 18), used of a person or thing that is unique. Another common Eng. phrase, seen in the above reading on Pythagoras, is **ipse dixit**, used of any dogmatic or arbitrary statement; likewise from the intensive pronoun are the phrase **ipsissima verba**, *the very words* (of a person being quoted), the medical term “ipsilateral,” meaning “on or affecting the same side of the body” (from Lat. **latus**, **lateris**, n., *side*), and the word “solipsism,” for the philosophical theory that the self alone is the only reality or that it conditions our perception of reality.

By now you’ve had all the vocabulary needed to translate the famous quotation from Constantine, **in hōc signō vincēs** (*under this standard*—i.e., the cross—you shall prevail), seen in more recent decades on a well-known brand of cigarettes; freely it means, *You’ll win with this brand* (but would the U.S. Surgeon General agree?). Well, **tempus iterum fūgit: valēte!**



School of Athens, detail of Pythagoras and a boy
Raphael, 1508
Stanza della Segnatura
Vatican Palace, Vatican State

I-Stem Nouns of the Third Declension; Ablatives of Means, Accompaniment, and Manner

Some nouns of the third declension differ from those introduced in Ch. 7 in that they have a characteristic *i* in certain case endings. Because of this *i* these nouns are called *i*-stem nouns, and the rest are known as consonant-stems. As you will see from the following paradigms, the only new ending shared by all *i*-stems is the genitive plural in **-ium** (rather than simply **-um**); neuters have, in addition, **-ī** instead of **-e** in the ablative singular and **-ia** instead of **-a** in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural; **vīs** is a common irregular *i*-stem and should be memorized (its gen. and dat. sg., given in parentheses, are rarely used).

Cons.-stem Reviewed			Base in 2 Consonants	Neut. in -e, -al, -ar	Irregular
Parisyllabics					
<i>rēx, rēgis,</i> m., king	<i>cīvis, -is,</i> m., citizen	<i>nūbēs, -is,</i> f., cloud	<i>urbs, -is,</i> f., city	<i>mare, -is,</i> n., sea	<i>vīs, vīs,</i> f., force; pl. strength
<i>N. rēx</i>	<i>cīvis</i>	<i>nūbēs</i>	<i>úrbs</i>	<i>máre</i>	<i>vīs</i>
<i>G. rēgis</i>	<i>cīvis</i>	<i>nūbis</i>	<i>úrbis</i>	<i>máris</i>	<i>(vīs)</i>
<i>D. rēgī</i>	<i>cīvī</i>	<i>núbī</i>	<i>úrbī</i>	<i>márī</i>	<i>(vī)</i>
<i>A. rēgem</i>	<i>cīvem</i>	<i>núbem</i>	<i>úrbem</i>	<i>máre</i>	vīm
<i>A. rēge</i>	<i>cīve</i>	<i>núbe</i>	<i>úrbe</i>	<i>márī</i>	<i>vī</i>

N.	rēgēs	cīvēs	nūbēs	urbēs	mária	vīrēs
G.	rēgum	cīvium	nūbium	urbium	márium	vírium
D.	rēgibus	cīvibus	nūbibus	urbibus	máribus	víribus
A.	rēgēs	cīvēs	nūbēs	urbēs	mária	vīrēs
A.	rēgibus	cīvibus	nūbibus	urbibus	máribus	víribus

An important alternate masculine and feminine accusative plural ending in **-īs** (e.g., **cīvīs** for **cīvēs**), though rarely appearing in this book, was frequently employed throughout Republican literature and into the Augustan Period and should be remembered.

Besides learning these few new endings, it is also important to be able to recognize that a noun is an **i-stem** when you encounter it in a vocabulary list or a reading. The following three rules will enable you to do so and should be memorized.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE i-STEMS

1. Masculine and feminine nouns with a nominative singular in **-is** or **-ēs** and having the same number of syllables in both the nominative and genitive (often called "parisyllabic," from **pār**, *equal*, + **syllaba**).¹

hostis, hostis, m.; hostium; *enemy*
 nāvis, nāvis, f.; nāvium; *ship*
 mōlēs, mōlis, f.; mōlium; *mass, structure*

2. Masculine and (chiefly) feminine nouns with a nominative singular in **-s** or **-x** which have a base ending in two consonants; most, like the following examples, have monosyllabic nominatives.

ars, art-is, f.; artium; *art, skill*
 dēns, dent-is, m.; dentium; *tooth*
 nox, noct-is, f.; noctium; *night*
 arx, arc-is, f.; arcium; *citadel*

Again, the only ending ordinarily distinguishing these masculine and feminine nouns from consonant stems is the genitive plural in **-ium**.

NEUTER i-STEMS

3. Neuter nouns with a nominative singular in **-al**, **-ar**, or **-e**. Again, these have the characteristic **i** not only in the genitive plural **-ium** but also in the ablative singular **-ī** and the nominative/accusative/vocative plural **-ia**.

¹ **Canis**, **canis**, *dog*, and **iuvenis**, **-is**, *youth*, are exceptions, having **-um** in the gen. pl. There are a few nouns with **-er** nominatives in this category, e.g., **imber**, **imbris**, m., *shower, rain* (gen. pl. **imbrium**).

animal, animālis, n., *animal*
 exemplar, exemplāris, n., *model, pattern, original*
 mare, maris, n., *sea*

IRREGULAR Vīs

The common and irregular **vīs** must be thoroughly memorized and must be carefully distinguished from **vir**. Note that the characteristic **ī** appears in most forms. Practice with the following forms: **virī**, **vīrēs**, **virīs**, **vīrium**, **vīribus**, **virōs**, **virum**.

ABLATIVE CASE USES

So far the ablative has generally appeared along with prepositions and for that reason has occasioned little difficulty. However, the Romans frequently used a simple ablative without a preposition to express ideas which in English are introduced by a preposition. The proper interpretation of such ablatives requires two things: (1) a knowledge of the prepositionless categories and (2) an analysis of the context to see which category is the most logical.

Following are three common uses (or “constructions”) of the ablative case, which should be added to the one you have already learned (i.e., object of certain prepositions); several additional uses for this case will be introduced in later chapters, so it is important to maintain a list in your notebook or computer file, complete with the name, a definition, and examples for each (you should be maintaining similar lists, of course, for all of the other cases as well).

ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT

The ablative of means or instrument is one of the most important of the prepositionless categories. It answers the questions *by means of what (instrument)?*, *by what?*, *with what?* and its English equivalent is a phrase introduced by the prepositions *by*, *by means of*, *with*.

Litterās stilō scrīpsit, *he wrote the letter with a pencil (stilus, -ī).*

Cīvēs pecūniā vīcit, *he conquered the citizens with/by money.*

Id meīs oculīs vīdī, *I saw it with my own eyes.*

Suīs labōribus urbem cōservāvit, *by his own labors he saved the city.*

You have already encountered this construction a few times in the reading and translation exercises.

ABLATIVES OF ACCOMPANIMENT AND MANNER

You have also already encountered the use of **cum** + ablative to indicate (1) accompaniment, which answers the question *with whom?* and (2) manner, which answers the question *how?*

Cum amīcīs vēnērunt, *they came with friends* (= with whom?)

Cum celeritāte vēnērunt, *they came with speed* (= how?; *speedily*. — celeritās, -tātis).

Id cum eīs fēcit, *he did it with them* (= with whom?).

Id cum virtūte fēcit, *he did it with courage* (= how?; *courageously*).

You will notice that each of these three constructions may be translated using the English preposition “with” (among other possibilities), but the three constructions are conceptually different and must be very carefully distinguished. Remember that ablative constructions generally function adverbially, telling you something about the action of the verb; in these three instances they tell you, respectively, by what means or with what instrument the action was performed, with whom the action was performed, and in what manner the action was performed.

Your only real difficulty will come in translating from English to Latin. If *with* tells *with whom* or *in what manner*, use **cum** + ablative; if *with* tells *by means of what*, use the ablative without a preposition.

VOCABULARY

ānimal, animālis, n., *a living creature, animal* (related to **anima**, Ch. 34, *breath, air, spirit, soul*, and **animus**; *animate, animation*)

āqua, -ae, f., *water* (aquatic, aquarium, Aquarius, aqueduct, subaqueous, ewer, sewer, sewage, sewerage)

ars, ārtis, f., *art, skill* (artifact, artifice, artificial, artless, artist, artisan, inert, inertia)

aúris, aúris, f., *ear* (aural, auricle, auricular, auriform; not to be confused with “auric,” “auriferous,” from **aurum**, *gold*)

cívīs, cívīs, m. and f., *citizen* (civil, civilian, civility, incivility, civilize, civic; cp. **cívītās, cívilis**, *related to one's fellow citizens*)

iūs, iúris, n., *right, justice, law* (jurisdiction, jurisprudence, juridical, jurist, juror, jury, just, justice, injury; cp. **iniúria**, Ch. 39, **iústus**, Ch. 40)

- māre, mārīs**, n., *sea* (marine, mariner, marinate, maritime, submarine, cormorant, rosemary, mere = Eng. cognate, archaic for “small lake.”)
- mors, mōrtis**, f., *death* (mortal, immortal, mortify, mortgage; murder = Eng. cognate; cp. **mortālis**, Ch. 18, **immortālis**, Ch. 19)
- nūbēs, nūbis**, f., *cloud* (nubilous)
- ōs, ōris**, n., *mouth, face* (oral, orifice)
- pars, pārtis**, f., *part, share; direction* (party, partial, partake, participate, participle, particle, particular, partisan, partition, apart, apartment, depart, impart, repartee)
- Rōma, -ae**, f., *Rome* (romance, romantic, romanticism; cp. **Rōmānus**)
- tūrba, -ae**, f., *uproar, disturbance, mob, crowd, multitude* (cp. **turbāre**, *to disturb, throw into confusion*; turbid, turbulent, turbine, turbo, disturb, perturb, imperturbable, trouble)
- urbs, ūrbis**, f., *city* (urban, urbane, urbanity, suburb, suburban)
- vīs, vīs**, f., *force, power, violence*; **vīrēs, vīrium**, pl., *strength* (vim, violate, violent; do not confuse with **vir**)
- ā** (before consonants), **ab** (before vowels or consonants), prep. + abl., *away from, from; by* (personal agent); frequent in compounds (aberration, abject, abrasive, absolve, abstract, abundant, abuse)
- trāns**, prep. + acc., *across*; also a prefix (transport, transmit)
- appellō** (1), *to speak to, address (as), call, name* (appellation, appellative, appeal, appellant, appellate)
- cūrrō, cūrrere, cucurrī, cūsum**, *to run, rush, move quickly* (current, curative, cursory, course, coarse, discursive, incur, occur, recur)
- mūtō** (1), *to change, alter; exchange* (mutable, immutable, mutual, commute, permutation, transmutation, molt)
- tēneō, tenēre, tenuī, tēntum**, *to hold, keep, possess; restrain*; **-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum** in compounds, e.g., **contineō** (tenable, tenacious, tenant, tenet, tenure, tentacle, tenor, continue, content, continent, pertinent, pertinacity, lieutenant, appertain, detain, retain, sustain)
- vītō** (1), *to avoid, shun*; not to be confused with **vīvō** (inevitable)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Magnam partem illārum urbium post multōs annōs vī et cōnsiliō capiēbat.
2. Ante Caesaris ipsiūs oculōs trāns viam cucurrimus et cum amīcīs fūgimus.
3. Nēmō vitia sua videt, sed quisque illa alteriūs.
4. Monuitne nūper eōs dē vīribus illārum urbium in Asiā?
5. Ipsī autem libertātem cīvium suōrum magnā cum cūrā aluerant.
6. Nōmina multārum urbium nostrārum ab nōminibus urbium antīquārum trāximur.
7. Pars cīvium dīvitiās cēpit et per urbem ad mare cucurrit.

8. Hodiē multae nūbēs in caelō sunt signum īrae acerbae deōrum.
9. Illud animal herī ibi cecidit et sē trāns terram ab agrō trahēbat.
10. That wicked tyrant did not long preserve the rights of these citizens.
11. Great is the force of the arts.
12. His wife was standing there with her own friends and doing that with patience.
13. Cicero felt and said the same thing concerning his own life and the nature of death.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Et Deus aquās maria in pīncipiō appellāvit. (Genesis; **aquās** is direct object; **maria** is predicate acc. or objective complement.²)
2. Terra ipsa hominēs et animālia ōlim creāvit. (Lucretius.)
3. Pān servat ovēs et magistrōs fortūnātōs ovium. (Virgil.—Pan, the god of pastures and shepherds.—**ovis, ovis**, f., *sheep*.)
4. Parva formīca onera magna ōre trahit. (Horace.—**formīca, -ae, ant.**—**onus, oneris**, n., *load*.)
5. Auribus teneō lupum. (*Terence.—a picturesque, proverbial statement of a dilemma, like Eng. “to have a tiger by the tail.”—**lupus, -ī, wolf**.)
6. Ille magnam turbam clientium sēcum habet. (Horace.—**cliēns, -entis**, m., *client, dependent*.)
7. Hunc nēmō vī neque pecūniā superāre potuit. (Ennius.)
8. Animus eius erat ignārus artium malārum. (Sallust.—**ignārus, -a, -um, ignorant**.)
9. Magna pars meī mortem vītābit. (Horace.—**meī**, partitive gen., Ch. 15.)
10. Vōs, amīcī doctī, exemplāria Graeca semper cum cūrā versāte. (Horace.—**exemplar, -plāris**, *model, original*.—**versāre, to turn; study**.)
11. Nōn vīribus et celeritāte corporum magna gerimus, sed sapientiā et sententiā et arte. (Cicero.—**celeritās, -tātis**, *swiftness*.)
12. Istī caelum, nōn animum suum, mūtant, sī trāns mare currunt. (Horace.)

STORE TEETH

Thāis habet nigrōs, niveōs Laecānia dentēs.

Quae ratiō est? Ēmptōs haec habet, illa suōs.

(*Martial 5.43; meter: elegiac couplet.—**Thāis** and **Laecānia** are names of women.—**niger, -gra, -grum, black**.—**niveus, -a, -um, snowy**.—**dēns, dentis**, m.,

²Such verbs as *to call* (**appellō, vocō**), *consider* (**dūcō, habeō**), *choose* (**legō**), *make* (**faciō, creō**) may be followed by two accusatives: one is the direct object; the other is a type of predicate noun or adjective sometimes called an “objective complement.”

tooth.—**quae** (interrogative adj. modifying **ratio**), *what*.—**ēmtōs** [**dentēs**], perf. pass. partic., *bought, purchased*.)

CICERO IMAGINES THE STATE OF ROME ITSELF URGING HIM TO PUNISH THE CATILINARIAN CONSPIRATORS

M. Tullī Cicerō, quid agis? Istī prō multīs factīs malīs poenās dare nunc dēbent; eōs enim ad mortem dūcere dēbēs, quod Rōmam in multa perīcula traxērunt. Saepe Rōmānī in hāc cīvitatē etiam cīvēs morte multāvērunt. Sed nōn dēbēs cōgitāre hōs malōs esse cīvēs, nam numquam in hāc urbe prōditōrēs patriae iūra cīvium tenuērunt; hī iūra sua amīsērunt. Populus Rōmānus tibi magnās grātiāsaget, M. Tullī, sī istōs cum virtūte nunc multābis.

(Cicero, *In Catilīnam* 1.11.27–28; see the readings in Ch. 11 above and Ch. 20 below. —**multāre**, *to punish*.—**prōditor**, **-tōris**, *betray*.)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

4. formic, formaldehyde.—onus, onerous. 11. celerity, accelerate, accelerator. “Store Teeth”: Negro (Spanish from **niger**), Negroid; dental, dentist, dentifrice, dentil, indent, dandelion (Fr. **dent de lion**), tooth = Eng. cognate.

Pan (sent. 3), the Greek god of woods and countryside, was accredited with the power of engendering sudden fear in people. Hence from Greek comes our word “panic.” (However, “pan-,” as in “Pan-American,” comes from another Greek word meaning *all*.)

Study the following Romance derivatives:

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French
ars, artis; artem	arte	arte	art
mors, mortis; mortem	morte	muerte	mort
pars, partis; partem	parte	parte	parti
pēs, pedis; pedem	piede	pie	pied
dēns, dentis; dentem	dente	diente	dent
nāvis, nāvis; nāvem	nave	nave	navire nef (<i>nave</i>)
nox, noctis; noctem	notte	noche	nuit

Clearly these Romance derivatives do not come from the nominative of the Latin words. The rule is that Romance nouns and adjectives of Latin origin generally derive from the accusative form, often with the loss of some sound or feature of the final syllable.³

³One exception thus far in this book has been Fr. **fi**ls, *son*, from Lat. **fili**us. (Old Fr. **fiz**, whence Eng. “Fitz-,” *natural son*, e.g., Fitzgerald.)

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Quid agitis, amīcī et amīcae! Here's hoping yours is a **mēns sāna in corpore sānō**, in all of its **partēs**. You've now learned the Latin names for several: **oculus**, **auris**, **ōs**, and **dēns** (remember Thais and Laecania?). Here are some others, from the **caput** up only, that can be easily remembered from their Eng. derivatives: **collum**, **-ī**, *neck* ("collar"); **nāsus**, **-ī**, *nose* ("nasal"); **supercilium**, **-ī**, *eyebrow* (let's hope you've never raised an eyebrow superciliously at a friend); **coma**, **-ae**, *hair* (astronomy buffs know the constellation **Coma Berenīcēs**, *Berenice's lock*—sorry, no connection with "comb," but "comet" is related); **lingua**, **-ae**, *tongue* as well as *language* ("multilingual," "lingo," and even "linguine," which is long and flat like a tongue!). For more **partēs corporis**, see Ch. 20.

Languages, by the way, should be learned with "oral-aural" techniques, and not just through reading and writing, so I hope you're remembering to practice your declensions and conjugations aloud, and to say **salvē** or **tē amō** to someone everyday.

Oops—looking back at the Vocab. and the new **i**-stems, I am reminded of **ars grātiā artis**, *art for the sake of art*, the motto of M.G.M. film studios, and **B.A.** and **M.A.** for **Baccalaureus Artium** and **Magister Artium**, academic degrees you may have or aspire to. Then there's the familiar Latin phrase, **mare nostrum**, which is either what the Romans used to call the Mediterranean (*our sea*) or, perhaps somewhat less likely, Caesar's critical comment on his unmusical equine ("my horse doesn't play the guitar"—groan!!!). **Valēte!**



*The Forum, Rome, Giovanni Paolo Pannini, 18th century
Private Collection*

Numerals; Genitive of the Whole; Genitive and Ablative with Cardinal Numerals; Ablative of Time

NUMERALS

The commonest numerals in Latin, as in English, are the “cardinals” (from **cardō**, **cardinis**, m., *hinge*, the “pivotal” numbers in counting, “one, two, three . . .,” etc.) and the “ordinals” (from **ōrdō**, **ōrdinis**, m., *rank, order*, the numerals indicating “order” of occurrence, “first, second . . .,” etc.).

CARDINAL NUMERALS

In Latin most cardinal numerals through 100 are indeclinable adjectives; the one form is used for all cases and genders. The following, however, are declined as indicated.

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one* (see Ch. 9.)

	duo , <i>two</i>			trēs , <i>three</i>		mīlle , <i>thousand</i> mīlia , <i>thousands</i>	
	M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.F.N.	N.
<i>N.</i>	dúo	dúae	dúo	trēs	tría	mīlle	mīlia
<i>G.</i>	duórum	duárum	duórum	tríum	tríum	mīlle	mīlium
<i>D.</i>	duóbus	duábus	duóbus	tríbus	tríbus	mīlle	mīlibus
<i>A.</i>	dúōs	dúās	dúo	trēs	tría	mīlle	mīlia
<i>A.</i>	duóbus	duábus	duóbus	tríbus	tríbus	mīlle	mīlibus

The cardinals indicating the hundreds from 200 through 900 are declined like plural adjectives of the first and second declensions; e.g., **ducentī, -ae, -a**, *two hundred*.

Mīlle, 1,000, is an indeclinable *adjective* in the singular, but in the plural it functions as a neuter i-stem *noun* of the third declension (e.g., **mīlle virī**, *a thousand men*; **mīlia virōrum**, *thousands of men*).

The cardinals from **ūnus** through **vīgintī quīnque** should be memorized (see the list in the Appendix, p. 451) and with them **centum** (100) and **mīlle**. The following sentences illustrate these various forms and uses of cardinal numerals:

Trēs puerī rosās dedērunt duābus puellīs, *three boys gave books to two girls*.

Octō puerī librōs dedērunt decem puellīs, *eight boys gave books to ten girls*.

Ūnus vir vēnit cum quattuor amīcīs, *one man came with four friends*.

Cōnsul vēnit cum centum virīs, *the consul came with 100 men*.

Cōnsul vēnit cum ducentīs virīs, *the consul came with 200 men*.

Cōnsul vēnit cum mīlle virīs, *the consul came with 1,000 men*.

Cōnsul vēnit cum sex mīlibus virōrum, *the consul came with six thousand(s) (of) men*.

ORDINAL NUMERALS

The ordinal numerals, which indicate the order of sequence, are regular adjectives of the first and the second declensions (**prīmus, -a, -um; secundus, -a, -um**; etc.—see Appendix, p. 451). The ordinals from **prīmus** through **duodecimus** should be learned.

GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE

The genitive of a word indicating the whole of some thing or group is used after a word designating a part of that whole.

pars urbis, *part of the city* (city = the whole)

nēmō amīcōrum meōrum, *no one of my friends*

This genitive of the whole (sometimes called the “partitive genitive”) can also be used after the neuter nominative and accusative of certain pronouns and adjectives such as **aliquid, quid, multum, plūs, minus, satis, nihil, tantum, quantum**.

nihil temporis, *no time (nothing of time)*
 quid cōsiliī, *what plan?*
 satis ēloquentiae, *sufficient eloquence*

The genitive of the whole may itself be the neuter singular of a *second* declension adjective.

multum bonī, *much good (lit. of good)*
 quid novī, *what (is) new?*
 nihil certī, *nothing certain*

GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE WITH CARDINAL NUMERALS

With **mīlia** the genitive of the whole is used.

decem mīlia virōrum, *10,000 men (but mille virī, 1,000 men)*

With other cardinal numerals and with **quīdam** (*a certain one*, introduced in Ch. 26) the idea of the whole is regularly expressed by **ex** or **dē** and the ablative. This construction is sometimes found after other words.

trēs ex amīcīs meīs, *three of my friends (but trēs amīcī = three friends)*
 quīnque ex eīs, *five of them*
 centum ex virīs, *100 of the men*
 quīdam ex eīs, *a certain one of them*

ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN OR WITHIN WHICH

The Romans expressed the idea of “time when” or “within which” using the ablative without a preposition. The English equivalent is usually a prepositional phrase introduced by *at*, *on*, *in*, or *within*, depending on the English idiom (*for*, which indicates “duration of time,” is *not* an option: see Ch. 37).

Eō tempore nōn poteram id facere, *at that time I could not do it.*
 Agricolae bonīs annīs valēbant, *in good years the farmers flourished.*
 Eōdem diē vēnērunt, *they came on the same day (diē, abl. of diēs, day).*
 Aestāte lūdēbant, *in the summer they used to play. (aestāte, abl. of aestās, summer)*
 Paucīs hōrīs id faciet, *in (within) a few hours he will do it.*

Since this construction always involves some noun indicating a unit of time, without a preposition, you should easily distinguish it from the other ablative case uses you have now learned (object of certain prepositions, means, manner, and accompaniment, abl. with cardinal numerals); you must be able to recognize, name, and translate each of the six types of ablative usages.

VOCABULARY

Itália, -ae, f., *Italy* (italics, italicize)

memória, -ae, f., *memory, recollection* (memoir, memorial, memorize, memorandum, commemorate)

tempētās, tempestātis, f., *period of time, season; weather, storm* (tempest, tempestuous; cp. **tempus**)

Cardinal numerals from **ūnus** to **vīgintī quīque** (App., p. 451)

Ordinal numerals from **prīmus** to **duodécimus** (App., p. 451)

céntum, indecl. adj., *a hundred* (cent, centenary, centennial, centi-, centigrade, centimeter, centipede, centurion, century, bicentenary, bicentennial, sesquicentennial, tercentenary)

mīlle, indecl. adj. in sg., *thousand*; **mīlia, mīlium**, n. pl., *thousands* (millennium, millennial, mile, milli-, milligram, millimeter, millipede, million, mill (= 1/10 cent), bimillennium, millefiori)

miser, misera, miserum, *wretched, miserable, unfortunate* (misery, Misere, commiserate)

inter, prep. + acc., *between, among* (intern, internal; common as Eng. prefix, e.g., interact, intercept, interdict)

itaque, adv., *and so, therefore*

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīssum, *to entrust, commit* (committee, commission, commissary, commitment, noncommissioned, noncom)

expēctō (1), *to look for, expect, await* (expectancy, expectation)

iāciō, iācere, iēcī, iāctum, *to throw, hurl*. This verb appears in compounds as **-iciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum**: e.g., **ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectum**, *to throw out, drive out* (abject, adjective, conjecture, dejected, eject, inject, interject, object, project, subject, reject, trajectory)

tímēō, tímēre, tímuī, *to fear, be afraid of, be afraid* (timid, timorous, intimidate; cp. **timor**)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Illae quīque fēminae inter ea animālia mortem nōn timēbant.
2. Duo ex filiīs ā portā per agrōs cum patre suō herī currēbant et in aquam cecidērunt.
3. Primus rēx dīvitiās in mare iēcit, nam magnam īram et vim turbae timuit.
4. Nēmō eandem partem Asiae ūnō annō vincet.

5. Rōmānī quattuor ex eīs urbibus prīmā viā iūnxērunt.
6. Itaque mīlia librōrum eius ab urbe trāns Italiam mīsistis.
7. Lībertātem et iūra hārum urbium artibus bellī cōservāvimus.
8. Dī Graecī sē inter hominēs cum virtūte saepe nōn gerēbant.
9. Cicerō mīlia Rōmānōrum vī sentiētiarum suārum dūcēbat.
10. Sententiae medicī eum cārum mihi numquam fēcērunt.
11. The tyrant used to entrust his life to those three friends.
12. The greedy man never has enough wealth.
13. At that time we saved their mother with those six letters.
14. Through their friends they conquered the citizens of the ten cities.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Diū in istā nāve fuī et propter tempestātem nūbēsque semper mortem exspectābam. (Terence.—**nāvis, nāvis, f.**, ship.)
2. Septem hōrīs ad eam urbem vēnimus. (Cicero.)
3. Italia illīs temporibus erat plēna Graecārum artium, et multī Rōmānī ipsī hās artēs colēbant. (Cicero.—**artēs**, in the sense of studies, literature, philosophy.—**colō, -ere**, to cultivate, pursue.)
4. Inter bellum et pācem dubitābant. (Tacitus.—**dubitāre**, to hesitate, waver.)
5. Eō tempore istum ex urbe ēiciēbam. (Cicero.)
6. Dīcēbat quisque miser: “Cīvis Rōmānus sum.” (Cicero.)
7. Mea puella passerem suum amābat, et passer ad eam sōlam semper pīpiābat nec sē ex gremiō movēbat. (Catullus.—**passer, -seris**, m., sparrow, a pet bird.—**pīpiāre**, to chirp.—**gremium, -iī**, lap.—**movēre**.)
8. Filiū meī frātre meum dīligēbant, mē vītābant; mē patrem acerbum appellābant et meam mortem exspectābant. Nunc autem mōrēs meōs mūtāvī et duōs filiōs ad mē crās traham. (Terence.)
9. Dionȳsius tyrannus, quoniam tōnsōrī caput committere timēbat, filiās suās barbam et capillum tondēre docuit; itaque virginēs tondēbant barbam et capillum patris. (Cicero.—**tōnsor, -sōris**, barber.—**barba, -ae**, beard.—**capillus, -ī**, hair.—**tondēre**, to shave, cut.)

CYRUS' DYING WORDS ON IMMORTALITY

Ō meī filiī trēs, nōn dēbētis esse miserī. Ad mortem enim nunc veniō, sed pars meī, animus meus, semper remanēbit. Dum eram vōbiscum, animum nōn vidēbātis, sed ex factīs meīs intellegēbātis eum esse in hōc corpore. Crēdite igitur animum esse eundem post mortem, etiam sī eum nōn vidēbitis, et semper cōservāte mē in memoriā vestrā.

(Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 22.79–81.—Cyrus the Great, whom Cicero quotes here, was a Persian king of the 6th cen. B.C.—**crēdō, -ere**, to believe.)

FABIAN TACTICS

Etiam in senectūte Quīntus Fabius Maximus erat vir vērae virtūtis et bella cum animīs adulēscēntis gerēbat. Dē eō amīcus noster Ennius, doctus ille poēta, haec verba ōlim scrīpsit: “Ūnus homō cīvitatē fortunātam nōbīs cūnctātiōne cōnservāvit. Rūmōrēs et fāmam nōn pōnēbat ante salūtem Rōmae. Glōria eius, igitur, nunc bene valet et semper valēbit.”

(Ibid. 4.10.—Quintus Fabius Maximus enjoyed considerable success against Hannibal in the Second Punic War [218–201 B.C.] through his delaying tactics, thus earning the epithet *Cūnctātor*, *the Delayer*.—*Ennius*, an early Roman poet.—*cūnctātiō*, *-ōnis*, *delaying*.—*rūmor*, *-mōris*, *rumor*, *gossip*.—*pōnō*, *-ere*, *to put*, *place*.—*salūs*, *salūtis*, *f.*, *safety*.)



Hamilcar Asks Hannibal to Swear His Hatred Against the Romans
Giovanni Battista Pittoni, 18th century
Pinacoteca di Brera, Milan, Italy

ETYMOLOGY

The following are some of the Eng. derivatives from the Lat. cardinals and ordinals 2–12: (2) dual, duel, duet, double (cp. doubt, dubious), duplicity; second; (3) trio, triple, trivial; (4) quart, quarter, quartet, quatrain; (5) quinquennium, quintet, quintuplets, quincunx; (6) sextet, sextant; (7) September; (8) October, octave, octavo; (9) November, noon; (10) December, decimal, decimate, dime, dean; (12) duodecimal, dozen.

The following table lists some Romance cardinal numbers derived from Latin.

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French
ūnus	un(o)	un(o)	un
duo	due	dos	deux
trēs	tre	tres	trois
quattuor	quattro	cuatro	quatre
quīnque	cinque	cinco	cinq
sex	sei	seis	six
septem	sette	siete	sept
octō	otto	ocho	huit
novem	nove	nueve	neuf
decem	dieci	diez	dix
ūndecim	undici	once	onze
duodecim	dodici	doce	douze
centum	cento	ciento	cent
mīlle	mille	mil	mille

In the readings

3. cult, culture, agriculture, horticulture (**hortus**, *garden*), colony. 7. passerine.—“pipe,” both verb and noun, an onomatopoeitic (imitative) word widely used; e.g., Gk. **pipos**, *a young bird*, and **pipizein** or **peppizein**, *to peep, chirp*, Ger. **piepen** and **pfeifen**, Eng. “peep,” Fr. **piper**. 9. tonsorial, tonsure.—barber, barb, barbed, barbate.—capillary, capillaceous. “Cyrus”: credo, creed, credible, credulous (see Vocab., Ch. 25). “Fabian”: cunctation.—component, etc. (Ch. 27).—salutation, salutary; cf. **salvēre**.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Quid novī, meī amīcī amīcaeq̃ue? Latin has other types of numerals, besides the cardinals and ordinals, which you will encounter later in your study of the language and many of which are already familiar. “Roman numerals” developed from counting on the fingers: I = one finger, II = two, etc., V = five (the hand held outstretched with the thumb and index finger making a “V”), VI = a “handful of fingers” plus one, etc., X = two V’s, one inverted on the other, and so on. There were also “distributive” numerals, **singulī**, -ae, -a (*one each*); **bīnī**, -ae, -a (*two each*), **ternī**, -ae, -a, etc., and “multiplicatives,” **simplex**, **simplicis** (*single*), **duplex** (*double*), **triplex**, etc.; likewise numeral adverbs, **semel** (*once*), **bis** (*twice*), **ter** (*three times*), etc. All these words have numerous (pardon the pun) Eng. derivatives!

“Me, I believe in grammar, but I did not really know about it until I learnt a little Latin—and that is a gift, an absolute gift.”—Margaret Thatcher. **Id est bonum cōsiliū**, whatever your politics. **Valēte!**

Third Declension Adjectives

Latin has two major categories of adjectives. You are already quite familiar with those having first and second declension forms like **magnus**, **-a**, **-um** (Ch. 4) and the small sub-category of first/second declension adjectives that have **-ius** in the genitive singular and **-ī** in the dative singular (Ch. 9).

Adjectives of the second major group generally have third declension **i**-stem forms and are declined exactly like **i**-stem nouns of the third declension, except that the ablative singular of all genders (not just the neuter) ends with **-ī**.

Adjectives of this group fall into three categories that differ from each other in simply one respect. Some, called “adjectives of three endings,” have distinct forms of the *nominative singular* that differentiate each of the three genders, just as **magnus**, **magna**, and **magnum** do (e.g., **ācer** M., **ācris** F., and **ācre** N.); those of “two endings” (the largest category of third declension adjectives) have a single nominative form for both masculine and feminine, and another for the neuter (e.g., **fortis** M. and F., **forte** N.); and those of “one ending” do not differentiate the genders at all in the nominative singular (e.g., **potēns** is the M., F., and N. nom. sg. form). In all other respects the adjectives of all three categories are the same, with the masculine and feminine endings differing from the neuters only in the accusative singular and the nominative (= vocative) and accusative plural.

Paradigms are given below, with the distinctive **i**-stem endings in bold; the nouns **civis** and **mare** are provided for comparison (review Ch. 14, if necessary) and to show that there is very little new to be learned in order to master third declension adjectives.

I-Stem Nouns Reviewed			Adj. of 2 Endings <i>fortis, forte, strong, brave</i>	
	M. or F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	cīvis	māre	fórtis	fórtē
<i>Gen.</i>	cīvis	máris	fórtis	fórtis
<i>Dat.</i>	cívī	márī	fórtī	fórtī
<i>Acc.</i>	cívem	māre	fórtē	fórtē
<i>Abl.</i>	cíve	márī	fórtī	fórtī
<i>Nom.</i>	cívēs	mária	fórtēs	fórtia
<i>Gen.</i>	cívium	márium	fórtium	fórtium
<i>Dat.</i>	cívibus	máribus	fórtibus	fórtibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cívēs ¹	mária	fórtēs ¹	fórtia
<i>Abl.</i>	cívibus	máribus	fórtibus	fórtibus
Adj. of 3 Endings <i>ācer, ācris, ācre, keen, severe, fierce</i>			Adj. of 1 Ending <i>potēns, gen. potentis, powerful</i>	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer, ācris	ācre	pótēns	pótēns
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	poténtis	poténtis
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	poténtī	poténtī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācre	poténtē	pótēns
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	poténtī	poténtī
<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācria	poténtēs	poténtia
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	poténtium	poténtium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	poténtibus	poténtibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrēs ¹	ācria	poténtēs ¹	poténtia
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	poténtibus	poténtibus

OBSERVATIONS

Note carefully the places in which the characteristic **i** appears,² as indicated in the paradigms:

- (1) **-ī** in the ablative singular of all genders.
- (2) **-ium** in the genitive plural of all genders.
- (3) **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural of the neuter.

¹ Remember that *i*-stem nouns and adjectives have an alternate **-īs** ending in the acc. pl. (the regular ending until the Augustan Period), but it will rarely be used in this book.

² A few third-declension adjectives of one ending are declined without this characteristic **i** in one or more of the three places; e.g., *vetus, veteris, old: vetere* (abl. sg.), *veterum* (gen. pl.), *vetera* (neut. nom. and acc. pl.). The forms of comparatives and present participles will be taken up later.

Note also that an adjective of the third declension can be used with a noun of any declension just as an adjective of the first and the second declensions can. In the following illustrations **omnis**, **-e**, *every*, *all*, is used as the example of an adjective of two endings.

omnis amīcus <i>or</i> homō	ācer amīcus/homō	potēns amīcus/homō
omnis rēgīna <i>or</i> māter	ācris rēgīna/māter	potēns rēgīna/māter
omne bellum <i>or</i> animal	ācre bellum/animal	potēns bellum/animal

For the sake of practice, study and analyze the forms in the following phrases:

omnī fōrmae	in omnī fōrmā	omnium fōrmārum
omnī animō	in omnī animō	omnium animōrum
omnī hominī	in omnī homine	omnium hominum
omnī urbī	in omnī urbe	omnium urbium
omnī marī	in omnī marī	omnium marium

The vocabulary entries for adjectives of three endings (**-er** words like **ācer**, some of which retain the **-e-** in the base, some of which drop it) and two endings (of the **-is/-e** variety) list the different nominative endings; the base can be determined from the feminine or neuter form. For adjectives of one ending (many of these end in **-ns** or **-x**) the genitive is provided so that you can determine the base (by dropping the **-is** ending, e.g., **potēns**, **potent-is**).

USAGE

Third declension adjectives function in the same ways as other adjectives: they modify nouns (**omnēs agricolae**, *all the farmers*, sometimes called the “attributive” use); they can serve as “predicate nominatives” (**virī erant ācrēs**, *the men were fierce*) or “objective complements” (**virtūs fecit virōs fortēs**, *virtue made the men brave*); they can take the place of nouns (**fortūna fortēs adiuvat**, *fortune helps the brave*, sometimes called the “substantive” use). Remember, too, that attributive adjectives usually follow the nouns they modify, except those that denote size or quantity, demonstratives, and any that are meant to be emphasized.

VOCABULARY

- aetās, aetātis**, f., *period of life, life, age, an age, time* (eternal, eternity)
audītor, audītōris, m., *hearer, listener, member of an audience* (auditor, auditory, auditorium; cp. **audiō**)
clēmēntia, -ae, f., *mildness, gentleness, mercy* (clement, clemency, inclement, Clement, Clementine)
mēns, mētis, f., *mind, thought, intention* (mental, mentality, mention, demented; Minerva [?]; cp. mind)

- sátura**, -ae, f., *satire* (satirist, satirical, satirize)
âcer, **âcris**, **âcre**, *sharp, keen, eager; severe, fierce* (acrid, acrimony, acrimonious, eager, vinegar)
brévis, **brève**, *short, small, brief* (brevity, breviary, abbreviate, abridge)
cêler, **cêleris**, **cêlere**, *swift, quick, rapid* (celerity, accelerate)
difficilis, **difficile**, *hard, difficult, troublesome* (difficulty)
dúlcis, **dúlce**, *sweet; pleasant, agreeable* (dulcify, dulcet, dulcimer)
fácilis, **fácil**, *easy, agreeable* (facile, facility, facilitate; cp. **faciō**)
fórtis, **fórt**, *strong, brave* (fort, forte, fortify, fortitude, force, comfort)
ingēns, gen. **ingéntis**, *huge*
iūcúndus, -a, -um, *pleasant, delightful, agreeable, pleasing* (jocund)
lóngus, -a, -um, *long* (longitude, longevity, elongate, oblong, prolong; Eng. "long" is cognate.)
ómnis, **ómne**, *every, all* (omnibus, bus, omnipresent, omnipotent, omniscient, omnivorous; cp. **omnīnō**, Ch. 40)
pótēns, gen. **poténtis**, pres. part. of **possum** as an adj., *able, powerful, mighty, strong* (potent, impotent, omnipotent, potentate, potential)
sénex, gen. **sénis**, adj. and noun, *old, aged; old man* (*senate, senator, senescent, senile, senior, seniority, sir, sire*)
quam, adv., *how*
rêgō, **rêgere**, **rêxī**, **rêctum**, *to rule, guide, direct* (regent, regime, regiment, regular, regulate, correct, direction, rectitude; cp. **rêx**, **rêgīna**)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Fortēs virī et fēminae ante aetātem nostram vīvēbant.
2. Eōs centum senēs miserōs ab Italiā trāns maria difficilia herī mittēbat.
3. Illī duo virī omnēs cupiditātēs ex sē ēiēcērunt, nam nātūram corporis timuērunt.
4. Potēns rēgīna, quoniam sē dīlēxit, istōs trēs vītāvit et sē cum eīs numquam iūnxit.
5. Itaque inter eōs ibi stābam et signum cum animō fortī diū exspectābam.
6. Celer rūmor per ōra aurēsque omnium sine morā currēbat.
7. Vīs bellī acerbī autem vītā eius paucīs hōrīs mūtāvit.
8. Quīnque ex nautīs sē ex aquā trāxērunt sēque Caesarī potentī commīsērunt.
9. Caesar nōn poterat suās cōpiās cum celeribus cōpiīs rēgis iungere.
10. Themistoclēs omnēs cīvēs ōlim appellābat et nōmina eōrum ācrī memoriā tenēbat.
11. In caelō sunt multae nūbēs et animālia agricolae tempestāte malā nōn valent.
12. The father and mother often used to come to the city with their two sweet daughters.

13. The souls of brave men and women will never fear difficult times.
14. Does he now understand all the rights of these four men?
15. The doctor could not help the brave girl, for death was swift.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Quam dulcis est lībertās! (Phaedrus.)
2. Labor omnia vīcit. (*Virgil.)
3. Fortūna fortēs adiuuat. (Terence.)
4. Quam celeris et ācris est mēns! (Cicero.)
5. Polyphēmus erat mōnstrum horrendum, īnfōrme, ingēns. (Virgil.—
mōnstrum, -ī.—horrendus, -a, -um.—īnfōrmis, -e, *formless, hideous*.)



The blinding of Polyphemus
Hydria from Cerveteri, 525 B.C.
Museo Nazionale di Villa Giulia, Rome, Italy

6. Varium et mūtābile semper fēmina. (*Virgil.—Order: **fēmina semper** [est] **varium et mūtābile**.—**varius**, -a, -um, *varying, fickle*.—**mūtābilis**, -e, *changeable*; the neuters **varium** and **mūtābile** are used to mean “a fickle and changeable thing.”)
7. Facile est epigrammata belle scrībere, sed librum scrībere difficile est. (*Martial.—**epigramma**, -matis, n., *short poem, epigram*.—**belle**, adv. from **bellus**, -a, -um.)
8. Īra furor brevis est; animum rege. (*Horace.—**furor**, -rōris, *madness*.)
9. Ars poētica est nōn omnia dīcere. (*Servius.—**poēticus**, -a, -um.)
10. Nihil est ab omnī parte beātum. (*Horace.)
11. Liber meus hominēs prūdentī cōnsiliō alit. (Phaedrus.—**prūdēns**, gen. **prūdentis**.)
12. Māter omnium bonārum artium sapientia est. (*Cicero.)
13. Clēmēntia rēgem salvum facit; nam amor omnium cīvium est inexpugnābile mūnīmentum rēgis. (Seneca.—**inexpugnābilis**, -e, *impregnable*.—**mūnīmentum**, -ī, *fortification, defense*.)
14. Vīta est brevis; ars, longa. (Hippocrates, quoted by Seneca.)
15. Breve tempus aetātis autem satis longum est ad bene vīvendum. (Cicero.—**vīvendum**, *living*, verbal noun obj. of **ad**, *for*.)
16. Vīvit et vīvet per omnium saeculōrum memoriā. (*Velleius Paterculus.—**saeculum**, -ī, *century, age*.)

JUVENAL EXPLAINS HIS IMPULSE TO SATIRE

Semper ego audītor erō? Est turba poētārum in hāc urbe—ego igitur erō poēta! Sunt mīlia vitiōrum in urbe—dē istīs vitiīs scrībam! Difficile est saturam nōn scrībere. Sī nātūra mē adiuvāre nōn potest, facit indignātiō versum. In librō meō erunt omnia facta hominum—timor, īra, voluptās, culpa, cupiditās, īnsidiae. Nunc est plēna cōpia vitiōrum in hāc miserā urbe Rōmae!

(Juvenal, *Saturae* 1.1ff; prose adaptation from the opening of Juvenal's programmatic first satire.—**indignātiō, -ōnis.**—**versus, verse, poetry.**)

ON A TEMPERAMENTAL FRIEND

Difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus—es īdem:
nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sine tē.

(*Martial, 12.46; meter: elegiac couplet.)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

5. monstrous.—horrendous.—informal, inform (adj. with neg. prefix in-) 6. variety, variegated, vary, unvaried, invariable. 8. furor. 11. **prūdēns**, syncopated form of **prōvidēns** as seen in “providence,” “providential.” “Juvenal”: indignation, indignant.—verse, versify, versification.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Quid agitis? Quid hodiē est tempestās? Here are some possible answers, many of which you can again recognize from Eng. derivatives: **frīgida** (**tempestās** is fem., as you recall from Ch. 15, hence the fem. adj., from **frīgīdus, -a, -um**); **calida** (Eng. “scald” is a derivative); **nimbōsa** (from **nimbus**, which means the same as **nūbēs**, + the common suffix **-ōsus, -a, -um, full of**, hence “cloudy”—cp. Eng. “cumulonimbus clouds”); **ventōsa** (an identical formation from **ventus, wind**); **sōl lūcet, the sun is shining** (cp. “solar,” “translucent”); **pluit, it's raining** (“pluvial,” “pluviometer”); **ningit, it's snowing** (Eng. “niveous” from Lat. **niveus, -a, -um** is related).

Well, enough of the weather. Here's an omnibus of **omni-** words and phrases to delight you all: If you were “omnific” (from **facere**) and “omnipresent” (*-sent* from **sum**) and your appetite “omnivorous” (**vorāre, to eat**, cp. “carnivorous,” “herbivorous”) and your sight were “omnidirectional” (see **regō** in the Vocab. above), then you might potentially be “omnipotent” and even “omniscient” (**scīre, to know**). But as a proverbial saying from Virgil reminds us, **nōn omnēs possumus omnia**. (By the way **regō**, mentioned above, does NOT mean *to go again* nor should **regit** be translated *leave, and this time I mean it!*)

Valēte, omnēs amīcī et amīcae meae, et semper amāte Latīnam!

The Relative Pronoun

The relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod**, as common in Latin as its English equivalent *who/which/that*, ordinarily introduces a subordinate clause and refers back to some noun or pronoun known as its “antecedent”; the relative clause itself has an adjectival function, providing descriptive information about the antecedent (e.g., “the man who was from Italy” . . . = “the Italian man”).

The forms of the relative pronoun are so diverse that the only practical procedure is to memorize them. However, it is easy to see that the endings of the genitive **cuius** and dative **cui** are related to those of **illius** and **illi**; and it is easy to identify the case, the number, and often the gender of most of the remaining forms.

QUĪ, QUAE, QUOD, *who, which, that*

Singular			Plural		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
cuius ¹	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
cui ¹	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

USAGE AND AGREEMENT

Since the relative pronoun (from Lat. **referō, referre, rettulī, relātum**, Ch. 31) refers to and is essentially equivalent to its antecedent (from **antecēdere**,

¹ For the pronunciation of the **ui** in **cuius** (as if spelled *cui-yus*) and in **cui**, cp. **huius** and **huic** (Ch. 9) and see the Introd., p. xli.

to go before, since the antecedent usually appears in a preceding clause), the two words naturally agree in number and gender; the case of the relative, however, like that of any noun or pronoun, is determined by its use within its own clause. The logic of this can be demonstrated by analyzing and translating the following sentence:

The woman whom you are praising is talented.

1. The main clause of the sentence reads:

The woman . . . is talented. Fēmina . . . est docta.

2. *Whom* introduces a subordinate, relative clause modifying *woman*.
3. *Woman (fēmina)* stands before the relative *whom* and is its antecedent.
4. *Whom* has a double loyalty: (1) to its antecedent, **fēmina**, and (2) to the subordinate clause in which it stands.
 - a. Since the antecedent, **fēmina**, is feminine and singular, *whom* in Latin will have to be feminine and singular.
 - b. Since in the subordinate clause *whom* is the direct object of (*you*) *are praising (laudās)*, it must be in the accusative case in Latin.
 - c. Therefore, the Latin form must be *feminine* and *singular* and *accusative*: **quam**.

The complete sentence in Latin appears thus:

Fēmina quam laudās est docta.

Again, succinctly, the rule is this: the *gender* and the *number* of a relative are determined by its antecedent; the *case* of a relative is determined by its use in its own clause.

Analyze the gender, the number, and the case of each of the relatives in the following sentences:

1. Dīligō puellam **quae** ex Italiā vēnit, *I admire the girl who came from Italy.*
2. Homō dē **quō** dīcēbās est amīcus cārus, *the man about whom you were speaking is a dear friend.*
3. Puella **cui** librum dat est fortūnāta, *the girl to whom he is giving the book is fortunate.*
4. Puer **cuius** patrem iuvābāmus est fortis, *the boy whose father we used to help is brave.*
5. Vītam meam committam eīs virīs **quōrum** virtūtēs laudābās, *I shall entrust my life to those men whose virtues you were praising.*

6. Timeō idem periculum **quod** timētis, *I fear the same danger which you fear.*

In translating, be sure not to introduce words from the relative clause into the main clause or vice versa; e.g., in the third sentence above, **puella** should not be mistaken as the subject of **dat**. Note that a relative clause is a self-contained unit, beginning with the relative pronoun and often ending with the very first verb you encounter (**cui . . . dat** in the third sample sentence); in complex sentences, like S.A. 3 below, you may find it helpful first to identify and actually even bracket the relative clause(s):

Multī cīvēs aut ea perīcula [quae imminent] nōn vident aut ea [quae vident] negligunt.

Begin next to read the rest of the sentence and then, as soon as you have translated the relative pronoun's antecedent (which very often precedes the relative pronoun immediately), translate the relative clause.

VOCABULARY

libellus, -ī, m., *little book* (libel, libelous; diminutive of **liber**)

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that* (quorum)

caecus, -a, -um, *blind* (caecum, caecal, caecilian)

lēvis, **léve**, *light, slight, easy, trivial* (levity, lever, levy, levee, Levant, leaven, legerdemain, alleviate, elevate, relevant, irrelevant, relieve)

aut, conj., *or*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*

cīto, adv., *quickly* (excite, incite, recite; cp. **recitō**, below)

quóque, adv., *also, too*

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīssum, *to admit, receive, let in* (admission, admissible, inadmissible, admittedly)

coēpī, **coepisse**, **coēptum**, *began*, defective verb used in the perfect system only; the present system is supplied by **incipiō** (below).

cūpiō, **cūpere**, **cupīvī**, **cupītum**, *to desire, wish, long for* (Cupid, cupidity, concupiscence, covet, covetous, Kewpie doll; cp. **cupiditās**, **cupīdō**, Ch. 36, **cupidus**, Ch. 39)

dēleō, **dēlēre**, **dēlēvī**, **dēlētum**, *to destroy, wipe out, erase* (delete, indelible)

dēsīderō (1), *to desire, long for, miss* (desiderate, desideratum, desiderative, desire, desirous)

incipiō, -cūpere, -cēpī, -cēptum, *to begin* (incipient, inception; cp. **capiō**)

nāvīgō (1), *to sail, navigate* (navigation, navigable; cp. **nauta**)

neglegō, **neglégere**, **neglěxī**, **neglěctum**, *to neglect, disregard* (negligent, neglige, negligible; cp. **legō**, Ch. 18)

recitō (1), *to read aloud, recite* (recital, recitation, recitative)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Potēns quoque est vīs artium, quae nōs semper alunt.
2. Miserōs hominēs, autem, sēcum iungere coeperant.
3. Nam illā aetāte pars populī in Italiā iūra cīvium numquam tenuit.
4. Incipimus vērītātem intellegere, quae mentēs nostrās semper regere dēbet et sine quā valēre nōn possumus.
5. Quam difficile est bona aut dulcia ex bellō trahere!
6. Centum ex virīs mortem diū timēbant et nihil clēmēntiae exspectābant.
7. Puer mātrem timēbat, quae eum saepe neglegēbat.
8. Inter omnia perīcula illa fēmina sē cum sapientiā gessit.
9. Itaque celer rūmor ācris mortis per ingentēs urbēs cucurrit.
10. Quoniam memoria factōrum nostrōrum dulcis est, beātī nunc sumus et senectūtem facilem agēmus.
11. Multī audītōrēs saturās ācrēs timēbant quās poēta recitābat.
12. They feared the powerful men whose city they were ruling by force.
13. We began to help those three pleasant women to whom we had given our friendship.
14. We fear that book with which he is beginning to destroy our liberty.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Salvē, bone amīce, cui fīlium meum herī commīsī. (Terence.)
2. Dionȳsius, dē quō ante dīxī, ā Graeciā ad Siciliam per tempestātem nāvīgābat. (Cicero.—**Sicilia, -ae, Sicily.**)
3. Multī cīvēs aut ea perīcula quae imminent nōn vident aut ea quae vident neglegunt. (Cicero.—**imminēre, to impend, threaten.**)
4. Bis dat quī cito dat. (Publilīus Syrus.—**bis, adv., twice.**)
5. Quī coepit, dīmidium factī habet. Incipe! (Horace.—**dīmidium, -īī, half.**)
6. Levis est fortūna: id cito repōscit quod dedit. (Publilīus Syrus.—**repōscō, -ere, to demand back.**)
7. Fortūna eum stultum facit quem nimium amat. (Publilīus Syrus.)
8. Nōn sōlum fortūna ipsa est caeca sed etiam eōs caecōs facit quōs semper adiuvat. (Cicero.)
9. Bis vincit quī sē vincit in victōriā. (*Publilīus Syrus.)
10. Simulātiō dēlet vērītātem, sine quā nōmen amīcitiāe valēre nōn potest. (Cicero.—**simulātiō, -ōnis, pretense, insincerity.**)
11. Virtūtem enim illīus virī amāvī, quae cum corpore nōn periit. (Cicero.—**pereō, -īre, -īī, -itum, to perish.**)
12. Turbam vītā. Cum hīs vīve quī tē meliōrem facere possunt; illōs admitte quōs tū potes facere meliōrēs. (Seneca.—**melior, better.**)

ON THE PLEASURES OF LOVE IN OLD AGE

Estne amor in senectūte? Voluptās enim minor est, sed minor quoque est cupiditās. Nihil autem est cūra nōbīs, sī nōn cupimus, et nōn caret is quī nōn dēsīderat. Adulēscētēs nimis dēsīderant; senēs satis amōris saepe habent et multum sapientiae. Cōgitō, igitur, hoc tempus vītae esse iūcundum.

(Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 14.47.—**minor**, *less*.—**carēre**, *to lack, want*.)

IT'S ALL IN THE DELIVERY

Quem recitās meus est, ō Fīdentīne, libellus;
sed male cum recitās, incipit esse tuus!

(*Martial, 1.38; meter: elegiac couplet.—**Fīdentīnus**, a fellow who had publicly recited some of Martial's poems.—**libellus**, diminutive of **liber**, is the delayed antecedent of **quem**; in prose the order would be **libellus quem recitās est meus**.—**male**, adv. of **malus**.—**cum**, conj., *when*.)



A Reading from Homer, Sir Lawrence Alma-Tadema, 1885
Philadelphia Museum of Art: The George W. Elkins Collection

ETYMOLOGY

The Lat. rel. pron. was the parent of the following Romance forms: It. **chi**, **che**; Sp. **que**; Fr. **qui**, **que**.

If the suffix **-scō** shows a Latin verb to be an “inceptive” verb, what force or meaning does this ending impart to the verb?—**tremō**, *tremble*; **tremēscō** = ?

In medieval manuscripts many texts begin with an “incipit”; e.g., **liber prīmus Epistulārum Plīnī incipit.**

To Latin **aut** can be traced It. **o**, Sp. **o**, Fr. **ou**.

In the readings

3. imminent. 10. simulation, simulator, dissimulation. 11. **perīre**: Fr. **périr**, **périssant**: Eng. “perish.” 12. ameliorate. “Old Age”: minority.—caret.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Iterum salvēte! There are a couple of Eng. abbreviations from **quī, quae, quod** which you may have seen: **q.v.** = **quod vidē**, *which see* (i.e., “see this item”), and **Q.E.D.** = **quod erat dēmōstrandum**, *that which was to be proved* (used, e.g., in mathematical proofs—for the verbal form, a “passive periphrastic,” see Ch. 24). Less common are **q.e.** = **quod est**, *which is*, and **Q.E.F.** = **quod erat faciendum**, *which was to be done*. You are beginning to see that for a truly literate person Latin is **sine quā nōn** (*indispensable*, lit. something *without which* one can *not* manage), and that’s a point we needn’t “quibble” over (a diminutive derived from the frequent use of **quibus** in legal documents).

The root meaning of **recitāre**, by the way, is *to arouse again* (cp. “excite,” “incite”); when we “recite” a text, we are quite literally “reviving” or bringing it back to life, which is why we—just like the Romans—should always read literature, especially poetry, aloud!

Here’s some good advice on doing your translations: **semper scrībe sentiās in tabellā tuā** (*your notebook*). An ancient proverb tells you why: **quī scrībit, bis discit!** And here’s an old proverb with the new Vocab. item **cito**: **cito matūrum, cito putridum**, *quickly ripe, quickly rotten*. So let’s not go too fast: **valēte!**

First and Second Conjugations: Passive Voice of the Present System; Ablative of Agent

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATION: PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE VOICE

In Latin as in English there are passive verb forms and passive sentence types, in which the subject is *recipient* of the action (rather than *performing* the action, as in the active voice). The rule for forming the passive of first and second conjugation present system passives (i.e., passives of the present, future, and imperfect tenses) is an easy one: simply substitute the new passive endings (-r, -ris, -tur; -mur, -mini, -ntur) for the active ones learned in Ch. 1 (-ō/-m, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt). The few exceptions to this rule are highlighted in bold in the following paradigms.

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *Laudō* and *Moneō*

PASSIVE ENDINGS

1. -r	laúd-or	móneor	<i>I am (am being) praised, warned</i>
2. -ris	laudá-ris	monēris	<i>you are (are being) praised, warned</i>
3. -tur	laudá-tur	monētur	<i>he is (is being) praised, warned</i>

1. -mur	laudā-mur	monēmur	<i>we are (are being) praised, warned</i>
2. -minī	laudā-minī	monēminī	<i>you are (are being) praised, warned</i>
3. -ntur	laudā-ntur	monēntur	<i>they are (are being) praised, warned</i>

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

*I was (being) praised,
used to be praised, etc.*

1. laudā-ba-r
2. laudā-bā-ris
3. laudā-bā-tur

*I was (being) warned,
used to be warned, etc.*

- monēbar
- monēbāris
- monēbātur

1. laudā-bā-mur
2. laudā-bā-minī
3. laudā-bā-ntur

- monēbāmur
- monēbāminī
- monēbāntur

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

I shall be praised

1. laudā-**b-or**
2. laudā-**be-ris**
3. laudā-bi-tur

I shall be warned

- monē**bor**
- monēberis
- monēbitur

1. laudā-bi-mur
2. laudā-bi-minī
3. laudā-bú-ntur

- monēbimur
- monēbiminī
- monēbúntur

The exceptional forms, highlighted in bold above, are few: in the first person singular, present and future, the **-r** is added *directly* to the full active form (with the **-o-** shortened before final **-r**); **-bi-** is changed to **-be-** in the future second person singular. Notice, too, that the stem vowel remains short in **laudantur/monentur** but is long in **laudātur/monētur** (review the rule in Ch. 1: vowels are generally shortened before **nt** in any position but only before a *final* **-m**, **-r**, or **-t**, hence **laudat** but **laudātur**). You should note the existence of an alternate second person singular passive ending in **-re** (e.g., **laudābere** for **laudāberis**); this ending is not employed in this book, but you will certainly encounter it in your later readings.

THE PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE

The present passive infinitive of the first and the second conjugations is formed simply by changing the final **-e** of the active to **-ī**.

laudār-ī, *to be praised*

monēr-ī, *to be warned*

THE PASSIVE VOICE

When the verb is in the active voice (from **agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, to act**), the subject performs the action of the verb. When the verb is in the passive voice (from **patior, patī, passus sum, to undergo, experience**) the subject is acted upon: it suffers or passively permits the action of the verb. As a rule, only transitive verbs can be used in the passive; and what had been the object of the transitive verb (receiving the action of the verb) now becomes the subject of the passive verb (still receiving the action of the verb).

Caesarem admonet, *he is warning Caesar.*

Caesar admonētur, *Caesar is being warned.*

Urbem dēlēbant, *they were destroying the city.*

Urbs dēlēbātur, *the city was being destroyed.*

Patriam cōservābit, *he will save the country.*

Patria cōservābitur, *the country will be saved.*

ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT

The personal *agent by whom* the action of a passive verb is performed is indicated by **ab** and the “ablative of agent”; the *means by which* the action is accomplished is indicated by the “ablative of means” without a preposition, as you have already learned in Ch. 14.

Dī Caesarem admonent, *the gods are warning Caesar.*

Caesar ā dīs admonētur, *Caesar is warned by the gods. (Agent)*

Caesar hīs prōdigiīs admonētur, *Caesar is warned by these omens.*

(Means); prōdīgium, -iī, *omen.*

Malī virī urbem dēlēbant, *evil men were destroying the city.*

Urbs ab malīs virīs dēlēbātur, *the city was being destroyed by evil men.*

(Agent)

Urbs flammīs dēlēbātur, *the city was being destroyed by flames. (Means);*

flamma, -ae.

Hī cīvēs patriam cōservābunt, *these citizens will save the country.*

Patria ab hīs cīvibus cōservābitur, *the country will be saved by these citizens. (Agent)*

Patria armīs et vērītate cōservābitur, *the country will be saved by arms and truth. (Means)*

In summary, and as seen in the preceding examples, an active sentence construction can generally be transformed to a passive construction as follows: what was the direct object becomes the subject, the recipient of the

action; what was the subject becomes an ablative of agent (remember to add this to your list of ablative uses), if a person, or an ablative of means, if a thing; and the appropriate passive verb form is substituted for the active.

VOCABULARY

flūmen, flūminis, n., *river* (flume; cp. **fluō**, below)

gēnus, gēneris, n., *origin, kind, sort, class* (genus, generic, genitive, gender, general, generous, genuine, degenerate, genre, congenial; cp. **gēns**, Ch. 21, **ingenium**, Ch. 29)

hóstis, hóstis, m., *an enemy* (of the state); **hóstēs, -ium**, *the enemy* (hostile, hostility, host)

lūdus, -ī, m., *game, sport; school* (ludicrous, delude, elude, elusive, allude, allusion, illusion, collusion, interlude, prelude, postlude)

próbitās, probitātis, f., *uprightness, honesty* (probity; cp. **probāre**, Ch. 27)

sciéntia, -ae, f., *knowledge* (science, scientific; cp. **sciō**, Ch. 21)

clārus, -a, -um, *clear, bright; renowned, famous, illustrious* (clarify, clarity, claret, clarinet, clarion, declare, Clara, Clarissa, Claribel)

mortālis, mortāle, *mortal* (mortality, immortality; cp. **mors**)

cūr, adv., *why*

deinde, adv., *thereupon, next, then*

flúō, flúere, flúxī, flúxum, *to flow* (fluid, fluent, flux, influx, affluence, effluence, influence, confluence, influenza, flu, mellifluous, superfluous)

légō, légere, lēgī, lēctum, *to pick out, choose; read* (elect, elegant, eligible, lecture, legend, legible, intellect; cp. **intellegō, neglegō**)

misceō, miscēre, miscuī, míxtum, *to mix, stir up, disturb* (miscellanea, miscellaneous, miscellany, miscible, meddle, meddlesome, medley, melee, admixture, intermixture, promiscuous)

móveō, movēre, móvī, mótum, *to move; arouse, affect* (mobile, motion, motive, motor, commotion, emotion, remote, locomotive, mutiny)

videor, vidēri, vísus sum, pass. of **videō**, *to be seen, seem, appear*

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Multī morte etiam facilī nimis terrentur.
2. Beāta memoria amīcitiārum dulcium numquam dēlēbitur.
3. Illa fēmina caeca omnia genera artium quoque intellēxit et ab amīcīs iucundīs semper laudābātur.
4. Pater senex vester, ā quō saepe iuvābāmur, multa dē celeribus perīculīs ingentis maris herī dīcere coepit.
5. Mentēs nostrae memoriā potentī illōrum duōrum factōrum cito moventur.
6. Cōsilia rēgīnae illō tertiō bellō longō et difficilī dēlēbantur.

7. Itaque māter mortem quartī filiī exspectābat, quī nōn valēbat et cuius aetās erat brevis.
8. Bella difficilia sine cōnsiliō et clēmētiā numquam gerēbāmus.
9. Tē cum novem ex aliīs miserīs ad Caesarem crās trahent.
10. Rēgem ācrem, quī officia neglēxerat, ex urbe suā eiēcērunt.
11. Ille poēta in tertiō libellō saturārum scrīpsit dē hominibus avārīs quī ad centum terrās aliās nāvigāre cupiunt quod pecūniā nimis dēsīderant.
12. Mercy will be given by them even to the citizens of other cities.
13. Many are moved too often by money but not by truth.
14. The state will be destroyed by the powerful king, whom they are beginning to fear.
15. Those ten women were not frightened by plans of that trivial sort.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Possunt quia posse videntur. (*Virgil.—**quia**, conj., *because*.)
2. Etiam fortēs virī subitīs periculīs saepe terrentur. (Tacitus.—**subitus**, -a, -um, *sudden*.)
3. Tua cōnsilia sunt clāra nōbīs; tenēris scientiā hōrum cīvium omnium. (Cicero.)
4. Malum est cōsiliū quod mūtārī nōn potest. (*Publilius Syrus.)
5. Fās est ab hoste docērī. (Ovid.—**fās est**, *it is right*.)
6. Eō tempore erant circēnsēs lūdī, quō genere levī spectāculī numquam teneor. (Pliny.—**circēnsēs lūdī**, *contests in the Circus*.—As here with **genere**, the antecedent is often attracted into the rel. clause.—**spectāculum**, -ī.)



Relief with scene of
Circus Maximus
Museo Archeologico
Foligno, Italy

7. Haec est nunc vīta mea: admittō et salūtō bonōs virōs quī ad mē veniunt; deinde aut scrībō aut legō; post haec omne tempus corporī datur. (Cicero.—**salūtāre**, *to greet* at the early morning reception.)
8. Nihil igitur mors est, quoniam nātūra animī habētur mortālis. (Lucretius.)

9. Amor miscērī cum timōre nōn potest. (*Publilius Syrus.)
10. Numquam enim temeritās cum sapientiā commiscētur. (*Cicero.—**temeritās, -tātis, rashness.**)
11. Dīligēmus eum quī pecūniā nōn movētur. (Cicero.)
12. Laudātur ab hīs; culpātur ab illīs. (*Horace.)
13. Probitās laudātur—et alget. (*Juvenal.—**algēre, to be cold, be neglected.**)

ON DEATH AND METAMORPHOSIS

Ō genus humānum, quod mortem nimium timet! Cūr perīcula mortis timētis? Omnia mūtantur, omnia fluunt, nihil ad vēram mortem venit. Animus errat et in alia corpora miscētur; nec manet, nec eāsdem fōrmās servat, sed in fōrmās novās mūtātur. Vīta est flūmen; tempora nostra fugiunt et nova sunt semper. Nostra corpora semper mūtantur; id quod fuimus aut sumus, nōn crās erimus.

(Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* 15.153–216; prose adaptation.—The ancients had some imaginative views on the transmigration of souls.)

ETYMOLOGY

Hostis meant originally *stranger* and then *enemy*, since any stranger in early times was a possible enemy. From **hostis, enemy**, stems our “host” in the sense of “army.” **Hospes, hospitis**, which is an ancient compound of **hostis, stranger**, and **potis, having power over, lord of** (cf. Russ. **gospodin, lord, gentleman**), means *host* (one who receives strangers or guests) and also *guest*; cp. “hospital,” “hospitality,” “hostel,” “hotel” (Fr. **hôtel**), and Eng. cognate “guest.”

In the readings

6. circus.—spectator, spectacle, specter, spectacular. 10. temerity (contrast “timidity”).

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Wondering how the same verb, **legere**, can mean both *to pick out* and *to read*? Because the process of reading was likened to gathering and collecting the words of a text. What a splendid metaphor: we are all of us (especially Latin students) “word collectors”! “Gather ye rosebuds while ye may” . . . and also the delights of language.

Remember the special pass. meaning of **videor** introduced in this Vocab.; here it is in the pres. pass. inf. form, also newly introduced in this chapter: **esse quam vidērī, to be rather than to seem**, the state motto of North Carolina. **Scientia** also turns up in several mottoes: **scientia est potentia, knowledge is power**, is one favorite, and another is **scientia sōl mentis est, knowledge is the sun of the mind** (motto of the University of Delaware). **Valēte, discipulae discipulique!**

Perfect Passive System of All Verbs; Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives

THE PERFECT PASSIVE SYSTEM

The construction of the forms of the perfect passive system is quite simple: a verb's perfect passive participle (the fourth principal part) is combined with **sum**, **erō**, and **eram** to form the perfect, future perfect, and pluperfect passive, respectively. The same pattern is employed for verbs of all conjugations; thus, in the following paradigms, **monitus**, **āctus**, **audītus**, **captus**, or any other perfect passive participle could be substituted for **laudātus**.

PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

1. laudātus, -a, -um sum
2. laudātus, -a, -um es
3. laudātus, -a, -um est

*I was praised, have been praised
you were praised, have been praised
he, she, it was praised, has been praised*

1. laudātī, -ae, -a sumus
2. laudātī, -ae, -a estis
3. laudātī, -ae, -a sunt

*we were praised, have been praised
you were praised, have been praised
they were praised, have been praised*

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

I shall have been praised, etc.

1. laudātus, -a, -um erō
2. laudātus, -a, -um eris
3. laudātus, -a, -um erit

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

I had been praised, etc.

1. laudātus, -a, -um eram
2. laudātus, -a, -um erās
3. laudātus, -a, -um erat

1. laudātī, -ae, -a érimus
2. laudātī, -ae, -a éritis
3. laudātī, -ae, -a érunť

1. laudātī, -ae, -a erāmus
2. laudātī, -ae, -a erātis
3. laudātī, -ae, -a érant

USAGE AND TRANSLATION

Although **sum** + the participle function together in Latin as a verbal unit, the participle in essence is a type of predicate adjective; i.e., **puella laudāta est** = **puella est laudāta**, cp. **puella est bona**. Consequently, and logically, the participle agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

Just as Latin uses the present, future, and imperfect of **sum**, **esse** to form these perfect system passive verbs, so English uses the present, future, and past tenses of the verb *to have* as perfect system (active and passive) auxiliaries: **laudātus est**, *he has been praised* (or, simple past, *was praised*); **laudātus erit**, *he will have been praised*; **laudātus erat**, *he had been praised*.¹ Be careful to avoid such common mistranslations as *is praised* for **laudātus est** and *was praised* for **laudātus erat** (caused by looking at the forms of **esse** and the participle separately, rather than seeing them as a unit).

The following examples illustrate these rules of form, usage, and translation:

Puella laudāta est, the girl has been (or was) praised.

Puellae laudātae erant, the girls had been praised.

Puellae laudātae erunt, the girls will have been praised.

Puerī monitī sunt, the boys have been (were) warned.

Perīculum nōn vīsum erat, the danger had not been seen.

Perīcula nōn vīsa sunt, the dangers were not seen.

Litterae scrīptae erunt, the letter will have been written.

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

As with the English interrogative pronoun (who, whose, whom? what, which?), the Latin interrogative pronoun **quis**, **quid** asks for the identity of a person or thing: e.g., **quid legis?** *what are you reading?* and **quis illum librum legit?** *who is reading that book?* In the plural the forms of the Latin interrogative pronoun are identical to those of the relative pronoun; in the singular, also, it follows the pattern of the relative with two exceptions: (1) the mascu-

¹ The perfect system tenses are sometimes (and with greater clarity, in fact) called the present perfect, future perfect, and past perfect; from the use of present, future, and past tense auxiliaries discussed in this chapter, you can see the appropriateness of this terminology.

line and the feminine have the same forms, (2) the nominative forms have their distinctive spellings **quis**, **quid** (and **quid** is also, of course, the neut. acc. form).

	Singular		Plural		
	M. & F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

As with the English interrogative adjective (which, what, what kind of), the Latin interrogative adjective **quī**, **quae**, **quod** asks for more specific identification of a person or thing: e.g., **quem librum legis?** *which (or what) book are you reading?* and **quae fēmina illum librum legit?** *which woman is reading that book?* The forms of the interrogative adjective are identical to those of the relative pronoun, in both the singular and the plural.

THE INTERROGATIVES AND RELATIVE DISTINGUISHED

The forms **quis** and **quid** are easily recognized as interrogative pronouns, but otherwise the interrogative pronoun, the interrogative adjective, and the relative pronoun can only be distinguished by their function and context, not by their forms. The following points will make the distinction simple:

the *relative pronoun* usually introduces a subordinate clause, has an antecedent, and does not ask a question (in fact, relative clauses *answer* questions, in the sense that they are adjectival and provide further information about their antecedents: e.g., **liber quem legis est meus**, *the book which you are reading is mine*);

the *interrogative pronoun* asks a question about the identity of a person or thing, has no antecedent, and often introduces a sentence with a question mark at the end (an exception is the “indirect question,” introduced in Ch. 30); and

the *interrogative adjective* asks for more specific identification of a person or thing and both precedes and agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun it is asking about.

Consider these additional examples, and determine whether a relative pronoun, an interrogative pronoun, or an interrogative adjective is used in each one:

Quis librum tibi dedit? *Who gave the book to you?*

Vir **quī** librum tibi dedit tē laudāvit, *the man who gave the book to you praised you.*

Quem librum tibi dedit? *Which book did he give you?*

Cuius librum Cicerō tibi dedit? *Whose book did Cicero give to you?*

Cuius librī fuit Cicerō auctor? *Of which book was Cicero the author?*

Vir **cuius** librum Cicerō tibi dedit tē laudāvit, *the man whose book Cicero gave to you praised you.*

Cui amīcō librum dedistī? *To which friend did you give the book?*

Cui librum Cicerō dedit? *To whom did Cicero give the book?*

Vir **cui** Cicerō librum dedit tē laudāvit, *the man to whom Cicero gave the book praised you.*

Quid dedit? *What did he give?*

Quod praemium dedit? *What reward did he give? (praemium, -ī.)*

Praemium **quod** dedit erat magnum, *the reward which he gave was large.*

Ā quō praemium datum est? *By whom was the reward given?*

Vir **ā quō** praemium datum est tē laudāvit, *the man by whom the reward was given praised you.*

Quō praemiō ille mōtus est? *By which reward was that man motivated?*

VOCABULARY

argūméntum, -ī, n., *proof, evidence, argument* (argumentation, argumentative)

auctor, auctōris, m., *increaser, author, originator* (authority, authorize)

beneficiū, -iī, n., *benefit, kindness; favor* (benefice, beneficence, beneficial, beneficiary; cp. **faciō**)

família, -ae, f., *household, family* (familial, familiar, familiarity, familiarize)

Graécia, -ae, f., *Greece*

iūdex, iūdicis, m., *judge, juror* (judge, judgment; cp. **iūdicium**, below, **iūs, iniūria**, Ch. 39, **iustus**, Ch. 40)

iūdicium, -iī, n., *judgment, decision, opinion; trial* (adjudge, adjudicate, judicial, judicious, injudicious, misjudge, prejudice, prejudice)

scélus, scéleris, n., *evil deed, crime, sin, wickedness*

quis? quid?, interrog. pron., *who? whose? whom? what? which?* (quiddity, quidnunc, quip)

quī? quae? quod? interrog. adj., *what? which? what kind of?* (quo jure)

cértus, -a, -um, *definite, sure, certain, reliable* (ascertain, certify, certificate)

grávis, gráve, *heavy, weighty, serious, important, severe, grievous* (aggravate, grief, grievance, grieve, grave, gravity)

immortális, immortalē, *not subject to death, immortal* (cp. **mors**)

at, conj. *but; but, mind you; but, you say*; a more emotional adversative than **sed**

nisi, conj., *if . . . not, unless; except* (nisi prius)

contrā, prep. + acc., *against* (contra- in compounds such as contradict, contrast, contravene, contrapuntal; contrary, counter, encounter, country, pro and con)

iam, adv., *now, already, soon*

dēlectō (1), *to delight, charm, please* (delectable, delectation; cp. **dēlectātiō**, Ch. 27)

liberō (1), *to free, liberate* (liberate, liberation, liberal, deliver; cp. **liber, libertās**)

parō (1), *to prepare, provide, get, obtain* (apparatus, compare, parachute, parapet, parasol, pare, parry, repair, reparation, separate, several)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Quis libertātem eōrum eō tempore dēlēre coepit?
2. Cuius libertās ab istō auctōre deinde dēlēta est?
3. Quōs librōs bonōs poēta caecus herī recitāvit?
4. Fēminae librōs difficilēs crās legent quōs mīsistī.
5. Omnia flūmina in mare fluunt et cum eō miscuntur.
6. Itaque id genus lūdōrum levium, quod ā multīs familiīs laudābātur, nōs ipsī numquam cupimus.
7. Puerī et puellae propter facta bona ā mātribus patribusque laudātae sunt.
8. Cur istī vērītatem timēbant, quā multī adiūtī erant?
9. Hostis trāns ingēns flūmen in Graeciā deinde nāvīgāvit.
10. Quī vir fortis clārusque, dē quō lēgistī, aetātem brevem mortemque celerem expectābat?
11. Quae studia gravia tē semper dēlectant, aut quae nunc dēsīderās?
12. Who saw the six men who had prepared this?
13. What was neglected by the second student yesterday?
14. We were helped by the knowledge which had been neglected by him.
15. Whose plans did the old men of all cities fear? Which plans did they esteem?

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Quae est nātūra animī? Est mortālis. (Lucretius.)
2. Illa argūmenta vīsa sunt et gravia et certa. (Cicero.)

3. Quid nōs facere contrā istōs et scelera eōrum dēbēmus? (Cicero.)
4. Quid ego ēgī? In quod perīculum iactus sum? (Terence.)
5. Ō dī immortālēs! In quā urbe vīvimus? Quam cīvitatē habēmus?
Quae scelera vidēmus? (Cicero.)
6. Quī sunt bonī cīvēs nisi eī quī beneficia patriae memoriā tenent?
(Cicero.)
7. Alia, quae pecūniā parantur, ab eō stultō parāta sunt; at mōrēs eius
vērōs amīcōs parāre nōn potuērunt. (Cicero.)

THE AGED PLAYWRIGHT SOPHOCLES HOLDS HIS OWN

Quam multa senēs in mentibus tenent! Sī studium grave et labor et probitās in senectūte remanent, saepe manent etiam memoria, scientia, sapientiaque.

Sophoclēs, scrīptor ille Graecus, ad summam senectūtem tragoediās fēcit; sed propter hoc studium familiam negligere vidēbātur et ā filiīs in iūdicium vocātus est. Tum auctor eam tragoediam quam sēcum habuit et quam proximē scrīpserat, “Oedipum Colōnēum,” iūdicibus recitāvit. Ubi haec tragoedia recitāta est, senex sententiīs iūdicum est līberātus.

(Cicero, *Dē Senectūte*, 7.22.—**summam**, *extreme*.—**tragoedia**, *-ae*; the diphthong *oe* has become *e* in the English word.—**proximē**, *adv., shortly before*.—“Oedipus at Colonus.”)



Sophocles
Roman copy, 4th century B. C.
Museo Gregoriano Profano
Vatican Museums, Vatican State

CATULLUS BIDS A BITTER FAREWELL TO LESBIA

Valē, puella—iam Catullus obdūrat.

...

- 15 Scelestā, vae tē! Quae tibi manet vīta?
 Quis nunc tē adībit? Cui vidēberis bella?
 Quem nunc amābis? Cuius esse dīcēris?
 Quem bāsiābis? Cui labella mordēbis?
 At tū, Catulle, dēstinātus obdūrā.

(*Catullus 8.12, 15–19; meter: choliambic. See L.A. 1, below (and cp. the adaptation of this passage in Ch. 2). **obdūrāre**, *to be hard*.—**scelestus**, **-a**, **-um**, *wicked, accursed*.—**vae tē**, *woe to you*.—**Quae**, with **vīta**.—**adībit**, *will visit*.—**dīcēris**, *will you be said*.—**bāsiāre**, *to kiss*.—**cui**, here = **cuius**.—**labellum**, **-ī**, *lip*.—**mordēre**, *to bite*.—**dēstinātus**, **-a**, **-um**, *resolved, firm*.)

MESSAGE FROM A BOOKCASE

Sēlectōs nisi dās mihī libellōs,
 admittam tineās trucēsque blattās!

(*Martial 14.37; meter: hendecasyllabic.—**sēlectus**, **-a**, **-um**, *select, carefully chosen*.—**tinea**, **-ae**, *maggot, bookworm*.—**trux**, gen. **trucis**, *fierce, savage*.—**blatta**, **-ae**, *cockroach*.)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

“Catullus”: obdurate, mordant, mordent.—destine, destination, destiny. “Sophocles”: sum, summary, consummate—proximate, approximate. “Message”: truculent.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte!—**quid agitis?** We’ve been seeing **quid** in that idiom (*how are you doing?* not *what are you doing?*) ever since Ch. 2, and do you recall **quid novī**, *what’s new?*, from the discussion of the gen. of the whole in Ch. 15? Even before beginning your study of Latin you’d likely encountered the common phrase **quid prō quō**, *one thing in return for another* (= “tit for tat”—**quid** was often equivalent to the indefinite *something*) and you may even have run into **quidnunc**, a “busybody” (lit., *what-now?*). The interrogative adj. has also come into Eng.: **quō jūre** (= classical **iūre**), *by what (legal) right*, **quō animō**, *with what intention*, and **quō modō**, *in what manner*.

You learned **iaciō**, **iacere**, **iēcī**, **iacum** in Ch. 15: you can now recognize the perfect passive form in Julius Caesar’s famous dictum, **alea iacta est**, *the die has been cast*, a remark he made when crossing the Rubicon river in northern Italy in 49 B.C. and embarking upon civil war with Pompey the Great. **Discipulī discipulaeque, valēte!**

Fourth Declension; Ablatives of Place from Which and Separation

FOURTH DECLENSION

The fourth declension presents fewer problems than the third and contains fewer nouns; most are masculine, with the nominative singular in **-us**, but there are some feminines, also in **-us** (*manus*, *hand*, and *domus*, *house*, appear in this book), and a very few neuters, with the nominative singular in **-ū**.

As with all nouns, in order to decline, simply add the new endings presented below to the base; note that the characteristic vowel **u** appears in all the endings except the dative and ablative plural (and even there a few nouns have **-ubus** for **-ibus**) and that of all the **-us** endings only the masculine and feminine nominative singular has a short **-u-**.

	fructus, -ūs, m. <i>fruit</i>	cornū, -ūs, n. <i>horn</i>	Endings M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	fructus	cornū	-us	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	fructūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	fructuī	cornū	-uī	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	fructum	cornū	-um	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	fructū	cornū	-ū	-ū

Nom.	frūctūs	córnuā	-ūs	-uā
Gen.	frūctuum	córnuum	-uum	-uum
Dat.	frūctibus	cór nibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	frūctūs	córnuā	-ūs	-uā
Abl.	frūctibus	cór nibus	-ibus	-ibus

Remember that there are also **-us** nouns in the second and third declensions, e.g., **amīcus** and **corpus**; it is a noun's genitive ending, not the nominative, that determines its declension, so it is imperative that you memorize the full vocabulary entry for every new noun you encounter. Remember, too, that a noun and modifying adjective, though they must agree in number, gender, and case, will not necessarily have the same endings, hence **frūctus dulcis**, **frūctūs dulcis**, etc., *sweet fruit*; **manus mea**, **manūs meae**, etc., *my hand*; **cornū longum**, **cornūs longī**, etc., *a long horn*; etc.

ABLATIVES OF PLACE FROM WHICH AND SEPARATION

The ablatives of place from which and separation are two very common and closely related constructions (which should be added now to your list of ablative case uses). The principal difference is that the former, which you have in fact already encountered in your readings, virtually always involves a *verb of active motion* from one place to another; nearly always, too, the ablative is governed by one of the prepositions **ab**, **dē**, or **ex** (*away from*, *down from*, *out of*):

Graecī ā patriā suā ad Italiam navigāvērunt, *the Greeks sailed from their own country to Italy*.

Flūmen dē montibus in mare flūxit, *the river flowed down from the mountains into the sea*.

Multī ex agrīs in urbem venient, *many will come from the country into the city*.

Cicerō hostēs ab urbe mīsīt, *Cicero sent the enemy away from the city*.

The ablative of separation, as the terminology suggests, implies only that some person or thing is separated from another; there is no active movement from one place to another; and sometimes there is no preposition, particularly with certain verbs meaning "to free," "to lack," and "to deprive," which commonly take an ablative of separation:

Cicerō hostēs ab urbe prohibuit, *Cicero kept the enemy away from the city* (cp. the similar example above).

Eōs timōre liberāvit, *he freed them from fear.*

Agricolae pecūniā saepe carēbant, *the farmers often lacked money.*

VOCABULARY

coniūrātī, -ōrum, m. pl., *conspirators* (conjure, conjurer; cp. **coniūrātiō**, *conspiracy, conjuration*)

córnu, cónūs, n., *horn* (corn—not the grain, but a thick growth of skin; cornea, corner, cornet, cornucopia, unicorn)

frúctus, frúctūs, m., *fruit, profit, benefit, enjoyment* (fructify, fructose, frugal)

génū, génūs, n., *knee* (genuflect, genuflection; *knee* and **genū** are cognates)

mánu, mánūs, f., *hand, band; handwriting* (manual, manufacture, manuscript, emancipate, manacle, manage, manicle, maneuver)

métus, -ūs (= **métūs**; subsequent 4th decl. nouns will be abbreviated in this way), m., *fear, dread, anxiety* (meticulous; cp. **metuō**, Ch. 38)

mōns, móntis, m., *mountain* (mount, mountainous, Montana, amount, catamount, paramount, surmount, tantamount)

senátus, -ūs, m., *senate* (senatorial; cp. **senex**)

sénsus, -ūs, m., *feeling, sense* (sensation, sensory, sensual, sensuous, senseless, insensate, sensible, sensitive; cp. **sentiō**)

sérvitūs, servitútis, f., *servitude, slavery* (cp. **servō**)

spíritus, -ūs, m., *breath, breathing; spirit, soul* (spiritual, spiritous, conspire, inspire, expire, respiratory, transpire; cp. **spīrāre**, *to breathe*)

vérsus, -ūs, m., *line of verse* (versify, versification; cp. **vertō**, Ch. 23)

commúnis, commúne, *common, general, of/for the community* (communal, commune, communicate, communicable, communion, communism, community, excommunicate)

déxter, dextra, dextrum, *right, right-hand* (dexterity, dextrous, ambidextrous)

siníster, sinistra, sinístrum, *left, left-hand; harmful, ill-omened* (sinister, sinistral, sinistrodextral, sinistrorse)

cáreō, carére, cáruī, caritūrum + abl. of separation, *to be without, be deprived of, want, lack; be free from* (caret)

dēfendō, -fēndere, -fēndī, -fēnsū, *to ward off; defend, protect* (defendant, defense, defensible, defensive, fence, fencing, fend, fender, offend)

discédō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssū, *to go away, depart* (cp. **cedō**, Ch. 28)

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrum (a so-called “defective” verb, having only perf. system forms and a fut. act. participle), *to hate* (odious; cp. **odium**, Ch. 38)

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitū, *to keep (back), prevent, hinder, restrain, prohibit* (prohibitive, prohibition, prohibitory; cp. **habeō**)

prōnūntiō (1), *to proclaim, announce; declaim; pronounce* (pronouncement, pronunciation; cp. **nūntius**, *messenger, message*)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Etiam senēs fructibus sapientiae et cōsiliīs argūmentīsque certīs saepe carent.
2. Aut ingentēs montēs aut flūmina celeria quae dē montibus fluēbant hostēs ab urbe prohibēbant.
3. Quoniam nimis fortia facta faciēbat, aetās eius erat brevis.
4. Illa medica facere poterat multa manū dextrā sed sinistrā manū pauca.
5. Vēritās nōs metū gravī iam liberābit quō diū territī sumus.
6. Quibus generibus scelerum sinistrōrum illae duae cīvītātēs dēlētae sunt?
7. Quī mortālis sine amīcitiā et probitāte et beneficiō in aliōs potest esse beātus?
8. Pater pecūniam ex Graeciā in suam patriam movēre coeperat, nam familia discēdere cupīvit.
9. Ā quibus studium difficilium artium eō tempore neglēctum est?
10. Ubi versūs illius auctōris clārī lēctī sunt, auditōrēs delectātī sunt.
11. Sē cito iēcērunt ad genua iūdicum, quī autem nūllam clēmēntiam dēmōnstrāvērunt.
12. We cannot have the fruits of peace, unless we ourselves free our families from heavy dread.
13. Those bands of unfortunate men and women will come to us from other countries in which they are deprived of the benefits of citizenship.
14. The old men lacked neither games nor serious pursuits.
15. Who began to perceive our common fears of serious crime?

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

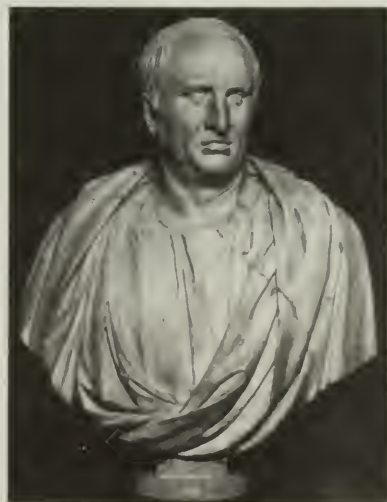
1. Cornua cervum ā periculīs dēfendunt. (Martial.—**cervus**, -ī, *stag*.)
2. Oedipūs duōbus oculīs sē prīvāvit. (Cicero.—**prīvāre**, *to deprive*.)
3. Themistoclēs bellō Persicō Graeciam servitūte liberāvit. (Cicero.—**Persicus**, -a, -um, *Persian*.)
4. Dēmōsthenēs multōs versūs ūnō spīritū prōnūntiābat. (Cicero.)
5. Persicōs apparātūs ōdī. (Horace.—**apparātus**, -ūs, *equipment, display*.)
6. Iste commūnī sēnsū caret. (Horace.)
7. Senectūs nōs prīvat omnibus voluptātibus neque longē abest ā morte. (Cicero.—**longē**, adv. of **longus**.—**absum**, *to be away*.)
8. Nūllus accūsātor caret culpā; omnēs peccāvimus. (Seneca.—**accūsātor**, -tōris.—**peccāre**, *to sin*.)

9. Nūlla pars vītae vacāre officiō potest. (Cicero.—**vacāre**, to be free from.)
10. Prīma virtūs est vitiō carēre. (Quintilian.)
11. Vir scelere vacuus nōn eget iaculīs neque arcū. (Horace.—**vacuus**, -a, -um, free from.—**egēre**, to need.—**iaculum**, -ī, javelin.—**arcus**, -ūs, bow.)
12. Magnī tumultūs urbem eō tempore miscēbant. (Cicero.—**tumultus**, -ūs.)
13. Litterae senātuī populōque Allobrogum manibus coniūrātōrum ipsōrum erant scrīptae. (Cicero.—**Allobrogēs**, -gum, m. pl., a Gallic tribe whom the Catilinarian conspirators tried to arouse against Rome.)

CICERO URGES CATILINE'S DEPARTURE FROM ROME

Habēmus senātūs consultum contrā tē, Catilīna, vehemēns et grave; ācre iūdicium habēmus, et vīrēs et cōnsilium civitās nostra habet. Quid est, Catilīna? Cūr remanēs? Ō dī immortalēs! Discēde nunc ex hāc urbe cum malā manū scelerātōrum; magnō metū mē liberābis, sī omnēs istōs coniūrātōs tēcum ēdūcēs. Nisi nunc discēdēs, tē cito eiciēmus. Nihil in civitāte nostrā tē dēlectāre potest. Age, age! Deinde curre ad Manlium, istum amīcum malum; tē diū dēsīderāvit. Incipe nunc; gere bellum in civitātem! Brevī tempore tē omnēsque tuōs, hostēs patriae, vincēmus, et omnēs vōs poenās gravēs semper dabitīs.

(Cicero, *In Catilīnam* 1.1.3ff; see the readings in Chs. 11 and 14 above, and "Evidence and Confession," Ch. 30.—**cōnsultum**, -ī, decree.—**vehemēns**, gen. **vehementis**.—**scelerātus**, -a, -um, adj. from **scelus**.—Manlius was one of Catiline's principal fellow conspirators.)



Cicero
Museo Capitolino, Rome, Italy

ETYMOLOGY

The Roman *senate* was in origin a council of elders, hence the connection with **senex**.

If one knows the derivation of “caret,” one is not likely to confuse this word with “carat.”

In the readings

5. peach (Persian apple). 7. absent. 9. vacant, vacuous, vacate, vacation, vacuity, evacuate. 11. arc, arcade. 12. tumult, tumultuous. “Cicero”: consult, consultation.—vehement, vehemence.)

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! This chapter's Vocab. provides some “handy” items: can you explain the etymologies of “manumit,” “manuscript,” and “manufacture”? A “manual” is the Latinate equivalent of the Germanic “handbook.” Then there's the old Roman proverb **manus manum lavat** (**lavāre**, *to bathe*, gives us “lavatory”), *one hand washes the other*. You can see the right-handed bias in the etymologies of “dexterity” and “sinister” (from the ancient superstition that bad signs and omens appeared to one's left) and even “ambidextrous” (from **ambo**, *both, two*: is having “two right hands” better than having two left hands?).

And speaking of hands, how about fingers? The Latin word is **digitus**, -ī, which gives us “digit,” “digital,” “prestidigitation” (for a magician's quick fingers), and even “digitalis,” a heart medication from a plant whose flowers are finger-shaped. These appendages are also handy for counting (**numerāre**): **prīmus digitus**, **secundus digitus**, **tertius . . .** etc. (**Potestisne numerāre omnēs digitōs vestrōs, discipulī et discipulae?** If not, look back at Ch. 15 and review your **numerī!**) The Romans had special names for each of the fingers, beginning with the thumb, **pollex**, then **index** (from **indicāre**, *to point*), **medius** (*middle*) or **īnfāmis** (*infamous, evil*—not all our body language is new!), **quartus** or **ānulārius** (where they often wore **ānulī**, *rings*: see “Ringo,” Ch. 31), and **minimus** (*the smallest*) or **auriculārius** (the **parvus digitus**, and so handy for scratching or cleaning one's **aurēs!**). **Valēte!**

Third and Fourth Conjugations: Passive Voice of the Present System

The pattern of substituting passive endings for active endings, which you learned in Ch. 18 for the present system passives of first and second conjugation verbs, generally applies to third and fourth conjugation verbs as well; the only exceptions are in the second person singular present tense (set in bold in the following paradigms) and the present infinitive of third conjugation verbs.

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

1. ágor	aúdior	cápior
2. ágeris	audíris	cáperis
3. ágitur	audítur	cápitur
1. ágimur	audímur	cápimur
2. agíminī	audíminī	capíminī
3. agúntur	audiúntur	capiúntur

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

1. ágar	aúdiar	cápiar
2. agéris	audiéris	capiéris
3. agétur	audiétur	capiétur

1. agēmur	audiēmur	capiēmur
2. agēminī	audiēminī	capiēminī
3. agéntur	audiéntur	capiéntur

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

1. agēbar	audiēbar	capiēbar
2. agēbāris	audiēbāris	capiēbāris
3. agēbātur	audiēbātur	capiēbātur
1. agēbāmur	audiēbāmur	capiēbāmur
2. agēbāminī	audiēbāminī	capiēbāminī
3. agēbāntur	audiēbāntur	capiēbāntur

Be careful not to confuse the second person singular present and future third conjugation forms, which are distinguished only by the vowel quantity (*ageris* vs. *agēris*). Note that **capiō** and **audiō** are identical throughout the present system active and passive, except for variations in **-i-** vs. **-ī-** (in the present tense only) and the second singular passive **caperis** vs. **audīris**. Remember that the perfect passive system for third and fourth conjugation verbs follows the universal pattern introduced in Ch. 19.

PRESENT INFINITIVE PASSIVE

The present infinitive passive of the fourth conjugation is formed by changing the final **-e** to **-ī**, as in the first two conjugations; but in the third conjugation, including **-iō** verbs, the whole **-ere** is changed to **-ī**.

audīre, <i>to hear</i>	audīrī, <i>to be heard</i> (cp. laudārī, monērī)
ágere, <i>to lead</i>	ágī, <i>to be led</i>
cápere, <i>to take</i>	cápī, <i>to be taken</i>

SYNOPSIS

To test your ability to conjugate a Latin verb completely, you may be asked to provide a labelled "synopsis" of the verb in a specified person and number, in lieu of writing out all of the verb's many forms. Following is a sample third person singular synopsis of **dūcō** in the indicative mood:

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut. Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	ágit	áget	agēbat	égit	égerit	égerat
Pass.	ágitur	agétur	agēbātur	actus est	actus érit	actus érat

VOCABULARY

- cása**, -ae, f., *house, cottage, hut* (casino)
caúsa, -ae, f., *cause, reason; case, situation; caúsā*, abl. with a preceding gen., *for the sake of, on account of* (accuse, because, excuse)
fenéstra, -ae, f., *window* (fenestra, fenestrated, fenestration, fenestella, defenestration)
finis, **finis**, m., *end, limit, boundary, purpose; finēs, -ium*, boundaries, territory (affinity, confine, define, final, finale, finance, fine, finesse, finial, finicky, finish, finite, infinite, paraffin, refine)
gēns, **géntis**, f., *clan, race, nation, people* (gentile, gentle, genteel, gentry; cp. **genus**, **ingenium**, Ch. 29)
múndus, -i, m., *world, universe* (mundane, demimonde)
nāvis, **nāvis**, f., *ship, boat* (naval, navy, navigable, navigate, nave; cp. **nāvi-gāre**, **nauta**)
sálūs, **salútis**, f., *health, safety; greeting* (salubrious, salutary, salutation, salute, salutatorian, salutatory; cp. **salveō**, **salvus**)
Tróia, -ae, f., *Troy*
vīcínus, -i, m., **vīcīna**, -ae, f., *neighbor* (vicinity)
vúlgus, -i, n. (sometimes m.), *the common people, mob, rabble* (vulgar, vulgarity, vulgarize, vulgate, divulge)
ásper, **áspera**, **ásperum**, *rough, harsh* (asperity, exasperate, exasperation)
átque or **ac** (only before consonants), conj., *and, and also, and even*
íterum, adv., *again, a second time* (iterate, iterative, reiterate, reiteration)
contíneō, -**tinēre**, -**tínui**, -**téntum**, *to hold together, contain, keep, enclose, restrain* (content, discontent, malcontent, continual, continuous, incontinent, countenance; cp. **teneō**)
iúbeō, **iubēre**, **iússī**, **iússum**, *to bid, order, command* (jussive)
labóro (1), *to labor, be in distress* (laboratory, laborer, belabor; cp. **labor**)
rápīō, **rápere**, **rápuī**, **ráptum**, *to seize, snatch, carry away* (rapacious, rapid, rapine, rapture, ravage, ravine, ravish; cp. **ēripiō**, Ch. 22)
relínquō, -**línquere**, -**líquī**, -**lícitum**, *to leave behind, leave, abandon, desert* (relinquish, reliquary, relict, relic, delinquent, dereliction)
scíō, **scíre**, **scívi**, **scítum**, *to know* (science, scientific, conscience, conscious, prescience, scilicet; cp. **scientia**, **nesciō**, Ch. 25)
tángō, **tángere**, **tétigī**, **táctum**, *to touch* (tangent, tangible, tact, tactile, contact, contagious, contiguous, contingent, integer, taste, tax)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Laus autem nimis saepe est neque certa neque magna.
2. Senēs in gente nostrā ab fīlīs numquam neglegēbantur.
3. Quis tum iussus erat Graeciam metū līberāre, familiās dēfendere, atque hostēs ā patriā prohibēre?

4. Salūtis commūnis causā cōs coniūrātōs ex urbe discēdere ac trāns flūmen ad montēs dūcī iussit.
5. Aliī auctōrēs coepērunt spīritūs nostrōs contrā iūdicium atque argū-
menta senātūs iterum movēre, quod omnēs metū novō territī erant.
6. Omnia genera servitūtis nōbīs videntur aspera.
7. Rapiēturne igitur Cicerō ex manibus istōrum?
8. Quī finis metūs atque servitūtis in eā cīvitate nunc potest vidērī?
9. At senectūtis bonae causā iam bene vīvere dēbēmus.
10. In familiā eōrum erant duae filiae atque quattuor filiī.
11. Casa vicinī nostrī habuit paucās fenestrās per quās vidēre potuit.
12. Quandō cornū audīvit, senex in genua cecidit et deīs immortālibus
grātiās prōnūntiābat.
13. Propter beneficia et sēnsū commūnem tyrannī, paucī eum odērunt.
14. The truth will not be found without great labor.
15. Many nations which lack true peace are being destroyed by wars.
16. Their fears can now be conquered because our deeds are understood
by all.
17. Unless serious pursuits delight us, they are often neglected for the
sake of money or praise.

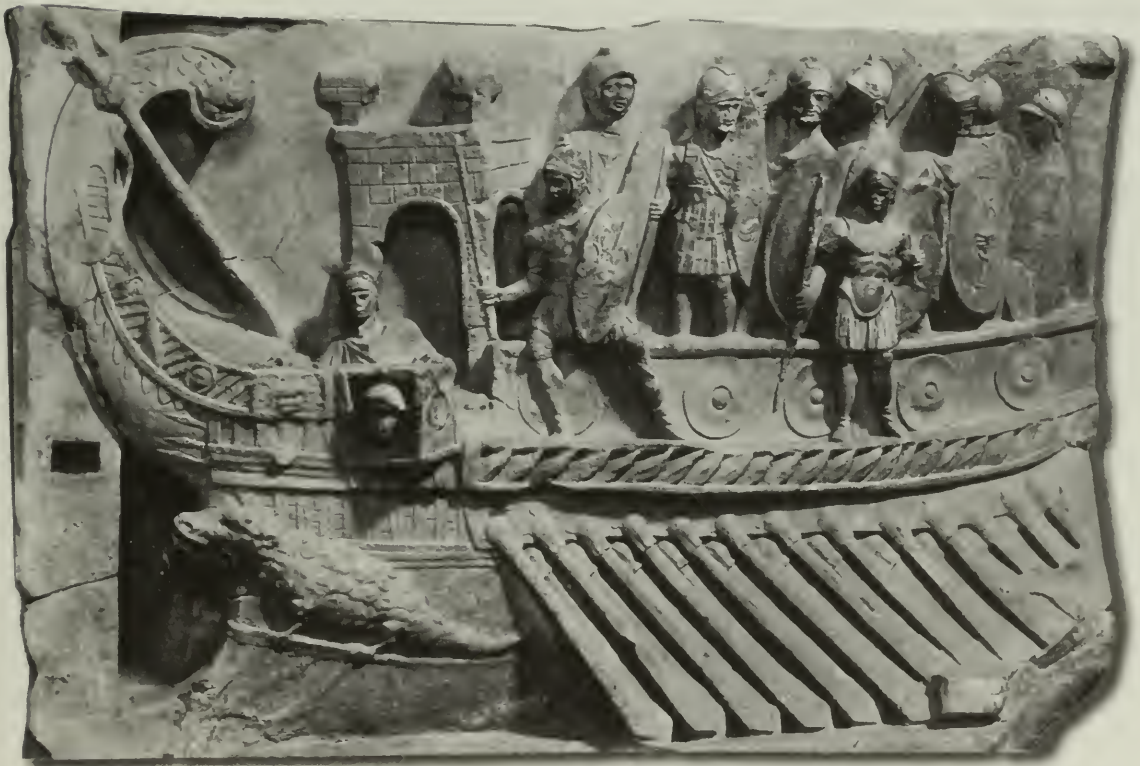
SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Numquam perīculum sine perīculō vincitur. (Publilius Syrus.)
2. Novius est vicīnus meus et manū dextrā tangī dē fenestrīs meīs
potest. (Martial.—**Novius**, a personal name.)
3. Nōne iūdicēs iubēbunt hunc in vīcula dūcī et ad mortem rapī?
(Cicero.—**nōne** introduces a question which anticipates the answer
“yes”; see Ch. 40.—**vīculum**, **-ī**, *chain*.)
4. Altera aetās bellīs cīvīlibus teritur et Rōma ipsa suis vīribus dēlētur.
(Horace.—**cīvīlis**, **-e**.—**terō**, **-ere**, **trīvī**, **trītum**, *to wear out*.)
5. At amīcitia nūllō locō exclūdītur; numquam est intempestīva aut si-
nistra; multa beneficia continet. (Cicero.—**exclūdō**, **-ere**, *to shut
out*.—**intempestīvus**, **-a**, **-um**, *untimely*.)
6. Futūra scīrī nōn possunt. (Cicero.—**futūrus**, **-a**, **-um**.)
7. Prīncipiō ipse mundus deōrum hominumque causā factus est, et
quae in eō sunt, ea parāta sunt ad frūctum hominum. (Cicero.)
8. Quam cōpiōsē ā Xenophonte agrīcultūra laudātur in eō librō quī
“Oeconomicus” īnscrībitur. (Cicero.—**cōpiōsē**, *adv.*, *cp.* **cōpia**.—
Xenophōn, **-phontis**.—**agrīcultūra**, **-ae**.—**īnscrībō**, **-ere**, *to entitle*.)
9. Vulgus vult dēcipī. (*Phaedrus.—**vult**, *want* (irreg. form).—**dēcipiō**,
-ere, *to deceive*.)
10. Ubi scientia ac sapientia inveniuntur? (Job.)
11. Vērītās nimis saepe labōrat; exstinguitur numquam. (Livy.—**ex-
stinguō**, **-ere**.)

VIRGIL'S MESSIANIC ECLOGUE

Venit iam magna aetās nova; dē caelō mittitur puer, quī vītā deōrum habēbit deōsque vidēbit et ipse vidēbitur ab illīs. Hic puer reget mundum cui virtūtēs patris pācem dedērunt. Pauca mala, autem, remanēbunt, quae hominēs iubēbunt labōrāre atque bellum asperum gerere. Erunt etiam altera bella atque iterum ad Trōiam magnus mittētur Achillēs. Tum, puer, ubi iam longa aetās tē virum fēcerit, erunt nūllī labōrēs, nūlla bella; nautae ex navibus discēdent, agricolae quoque iam agrōs relinquent, terra ipsa omnibus hominibus omnia parābit. Currite, aetātēs; incipe, parve puer, scīre mātrem, et erit satis spīritūs mihi tua dīcere facta.

(Virgil, *Eclogae* 4; written ca. 40 B.C., the poem from which this reading is adapted was taken by many early Christians as a prophecy of the birth of Christ.—**altera bella**, *the same wars over again*.—**scīre mātrem**, i.e., to be born.)



Relief of warship, temple of Fortuna Primigenia, Praeneste
1st century A.D., Museo Pio Clementino, Vatican Museums, Vatican State

ETYMOLOGY

Exempli causā was Cicero's equivalent of the somewhat later **exempli grātiā**, whence our abbreviation **e.g.**

Romance derivatives from some of the words in the vocabulary:

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French
causa	cosa	cosa	chose
finis	fine	fin	fin
gēns	gente	gente	gent; gens (pl.)
continēre	continere	contener	contenir
mundus	mondo	mundo	monde

In the readings

3. **vinculum** (in mathematics). 4. **civil**; cp. **cīvis**, **cīvitās**.—trite, contrite, contrition, attrition, detriment. 5. **ex + claudō** (-ere, **clausī**, **clausum**, *to shut, close*): conclude, include, preclude, seclude, recluse, clause, close, closet, cloister.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulae atque discipuli! Quid novī? Well, how about some more well-known Latin phrases and mottoes related to the **verba nova** in this chapter's Vocab.? First, for you *Godfather* fans, there's It. **cosa nostra**, from **causa nostra** (shh!). **Vestra causa tōta nostra est** is the motto of the American Classical League, one of our national professional organizations for teachers of Latin, Greek, and classical humanities. The University of Georgia's motto is **et docēre et rērum exquīrere causās**, *both to teach and to seek out the causes of things* (i.e., to conduct research—for **rērum**, see the next chapter). Here are some others: **finis corōnat opus**, *the end crowns the work*; **gēns togāta**, *the toga-clad nation* (a phrase Virgil applies to Rome, where the toga was a man's formal attire); **tangere ulcus**, *to touch a sore spot* (lit., *ulcer*); **sic trānsit glōria mundi**, *so passes the glory of the world* (Thomas à Kempis, on the transitory nature of worldly things—some comedian who shall forever remain nameless has offered an alternate translation, to wit, "Gloria always gets sick on the subway at the beginning of the week"!!!); and the abbreviation **sc.**, meaning *supply* (something omitted from a text but readily understood), comes from **scilicet**, short for **scīre licet**, lit. *it is permitted for you to understand*. **Hic est finis: valēte!**

Fifth Declension; Ablative of Place Where; Summary of Ablative Uses

THE FIFTH DECLENSION

This chapter introduces the fifth and last of the Latin noun declensions. The characteristic vowel is **-ē-**, and **-ēī** or **-eī** is the genitive and dative ending (the gen./dat. **-e-** is long when preceded by a vowel, short when preceded by a consonant; cp. **diēī** and **reī** below); to avoid confusion, the genitive form will be spelled out in full for fifth declension nouns (as they are with third declension nouns) in the chapter vocabularies. Nouns of this declension are all feminine, except **diēs** (*day*) and its compound **merīdiēs** (*midday*), which are masculine.

To decline, follow the usual pattern, i.e., drop the genitive ending to find the base, then add the new endings.

	rēs, reī, f. thing	diēs, diēī, m. day	Case Endings
<i>Nom.</i>	rēs	dīēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	reī	diēī	-eī, -ēī
<i>Dat.</i>	reī	diēī	-eī, -ēī
<i>Acc.</i>	rem	díem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	rē	dīē	-ē
<i>Nom.</i>	rēs	dīēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	rērum	diērum	-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	rēbus	diēbus	-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēs	dīēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	rēbus	diēbus	-ēbus

OBSERVATIONS

Notice that the genitive and dative singular are identical (true of the first declension also), as are the nominative singular and the nominative and accusative plural (the vocatives, too, of course), and the dative and ablative plural (true of all declensions); word order, context, and other cues such as subject-verb agreement will help you distinguish them in a sentence.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE WHERE AND SUMMARY OF ABLATIVE USES

You have thus far been introduced to these specific ablative case uses: ablative of means, manner, accompaniment (Ch. 14), ablative with cardinal numerals and ablative of time (Ch. 15), ablative of agent (Ch. 18), place from which and separation (Ch. 20).

You have in fact also encountered frequently the construction known as ablative of "place where," which consists most commonly of the preposition **in**, *in/on*, or **sub**, *under*, plus a noun in the ablative to describe where someone or something is located or some action is being done:

In magnā casā vīvunt, *they live in a large house.*

Nāvis sub aquā fuit, *the ship was under water.*

Some of these case uses require a preposition in Latin, others do not, and in some instances the practice was variable. A case in point, and something to be carefully noted, is that in the ablative of manner construction, when the noun is modified by an adjective, **cum** is frequently omitted; if **cum** is used, it is usually preceded by the adjective (e.g., **id magnā cūrā fēcit** and **id magnā cum cūrā fēcit**, both meaning *he did it with great care*).

The following summary reviews each of the ablative uses studied thus far:

I. THE ABLATIVE WITH A PREPOSITION

The ablative is used with:

1. **cum** to indicate *accompaniment*
Cum amīcō id scrīpsit, *he wrote it with his friend.*
2. **cum** to indicate *manner*; cp. II.2 below
Cum cūrā id scrīpsit, *he wrote it with care.*
Magnā cum cūrā id scrīpsit, *he wrote it with great care.*
3. **in** and **sub** to indicate *place where*
In urbe id scrīpsit, *he wrote it in the city.*

4. **ab, dē, ex** to indicate *place from which*
Ex urbe id mīsit, *he sent it from the city.*
5. **ab, dē, ex** to indicate *separation*; cp. II. 4 below
Ab urbe eōs prohibuit, *he kept them from the city.*
6. **ab** to indicate *personal agent*
Ab amīcō id scrīptum est, *it was written by his friend.*
7. **ex** or **dē** following certain *cardinal numerals* to indicate a group of which some part is specified
Trēs ex nāvibus discessērunt, *three of the ships departed.*

II. THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION

The ablative is used without a preposition to indicate:

1. *means*
Suā manū id scrīpsit, *he wrote it with his own hand.*
2. *manner*, when an adjective is used
Magnā cūrā id scrīpsit, *he wrote it with great care.*
3. *time when or within which*
Eō tempore or ūnā hōrā id scrīpsit, *he wrote it at that time or in one hour.*
4. *separation*, especially with ideas of freeing, lacking, depriving
Metū eōs liberāvit, *he freed them from fear.*

VOCABULARY

dīēs, diēī, m., *day* (diary, dial, dismal, diurnal, journal, adjourn, journey, meridian, sojourn)

ferrum, -ī, n., *iron; sword* (ferric, ferrite, ferro-, farrier)

fīdēs, fīdeī, f., *faith, trust, trustworthiness, fidelity, promise, guarantee, protection* (confide, diffident, infidel, perfidy, fealty)

īgnis, īgnis, m., *fire* (igneous, ignite, ignition)

mōdus, -ī, m., *measure, bound, limit; manner, method, mode, way* (model, moderate, modern, modest, modicum, modify, mood)

rēs, réī, f., *thing, matter, business, affair* (real, realistic, realize, reality, real estate)

rēs pública, réī públicae, f., *state, commonwealth, republic* (Republican)

spēs, spēī, f., *hope* (despair, desperate; cf. **spērō**, Ch. 25)

aéquus, -a, -um, *level, even; calm; equal, just; favorable* (equable, equanimity, equation, equator, equilateral, equilibrium, equinox, equity, equivalent, equivocal, inequity, iniquity, adequate, coequal)

fēlīx, gen. **fēlīcis**, *lucky, fortunate, happy* (felicitate, felicitation, felicitous, infelicitous, felicity, infelicity, Felix)

incértus, -a, -um (in-certus), *uncertain, unsure, doubtful* (incertitude)

Latínus, -a, -um, *Latin* (Latinate, Latinist, Latinity, Latinize, Latino)

médius, -a, -um, *middle*; used partitively, *the middle of*: **media urbs**, *the middle of the city* (mediterranean, medium, median, mediate, mean, medieval, meridian, demimonde, immediate, intermediary; cp. **mediocris**, Ch. 31)

quóndam, adv., *formerly, once* (quondam)

últrā, adv. and prep. + acc., *on the other side of, beyond* (ultra, ultra-sonic, ultrasound, ultraviolet, outrage, outrageous)

prōtinus, adv., *immediately*

cérnō, cernere, crévī, crētum, *to distinguish, discern, perceive* (discern, discernible, discreet, discrete, discretion; cp. **dēcernō**, Ch. 36)

ērípiō, -rípere, -rípuī, -réptum (ē-rapiō), *to snatch away, take away; rescue*
ínquit, defective verb, *he says or said*, placed after one or more words of a direct quotation but usually translated first

tóllō, tollere, sústulī, sublātum, *to raise, lift up; take away, remove, destroy* (extol; cp. **tolerō, ferō**, Ch. 31)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Vīcīnī nostrī sē in genua prōtinus iēcērunt et omnēs deōs in mundō laudāvērunt.
2. Gentēs Graeciae ingentibus montibus et parvīs fīnibus continēbantur.
3. Quis iussit illam rem pūblicam servitūte asperā liberārī?
4. "Iste," inquit, "sceleribus suis brevī tempore tollētur."
5. Contrā aliās manūs malōrum cīvium eadem rēs iterum parābuntur; rem pūblicam dēfendēmus et istī cito discēdent.
6. Senectūs senēs ā mediīs rēbus saepe prohibet.
7. At rēs gravēs neque vī neque spē geruntur sed cōnsiliō.
8. Sī versūs hōrum duōrum poētārum neglegētis, magnā parte Rōmānārum litterārum carēbitis.
9. Eōdem tempore nostrae spēs salūtis commūnis vestrā fidē altae sunt, spīritūs sublātī sunt, et timōrēs relictī sunt.
10. Nova genera scelerum in hāc urbe inveniuntur quod multī etiam nunc bonīs mōribus et sēnsū commūnī carent ac nātūram sinistram habent.
11. Vulgus multa ex fenestrīs casārum ēiciēbat.
12. Great fidelity can now be found in this commonwealth.
13. His new hopes had been destroyed by the common fear of uncertain things.
14. On that day the courage and the faith of the brave Roman men and women were seen by all.
15. With great hope the tyrant ordered those ships to be destroyed.
16. He could not defend himself with his left hand or his right.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Dum vīta est, spēs est. (Cicero.)
2. Aequum animum in rēbus difficilibus servā. (Horace.)
3. Ubi tyrannus est, ibi plānē est nūlla rēs pūblica. (*Cicero.—**plānē**, adv., *clearly*.)
4. Fuērunt quondam in hāc rē pūblicā virī magnae virtūtis et antīquae fideī. (Cicero.)
5. Hanc rem pūblicam salvam esse volumus. (*Cicero.—**volumus**, *we wish*.)
6. Spēs coniūrātōrum mollibus sentiētiis multōrum cīvium alitur. (Cicero.—**mollis**, **-e**, *soft, mild*.)
7. Rēs pūblica cōnsiliis meis eō diē ex igne atque ferrō ērepta est. (Cicero.)
8. Quod bellum ōdērunt, prō pāce cum fidē labōrābant. (Livy.)
9. Dīc mihi bonā fidē: tū eam pecūniam ex eius manū dextrā nōn ēripuistī? (Plautus.)
10. Amīcus certus in rē incertā cernitur. (Ennius.)
11. Homērus audītōrem in mediās rēs rapit. (Horace.)
12. Fēlix est quī potest causās rērum intellegere; et fortūnātus ille quī deōs antīquōs dīligit. (Virgil.)
13. Stōicus noster, “Vitium,” inquit, “nōn est in rēbus sed in animō ipsō.” (Seneca.—**Stōicus**, **-ī**, *a Stoic*.)
14. Et mihi rēs subiungam, nōn mē rēbus. (Horace.—**subiungō**, **-ere**, *to subject*.)
15. Est modus in rēbus; sunt certī finēs ultrā quōs virtūs invenīrī nōn potest. (Horace.)
16. Hoc, Fortūna, tibi vidētur aequum? (*Martial.)

A VISIT FROM THE YOUNG INTERNS

Languēbam: sed tū comitātus prōtinus ad mē
 vēnistī centum, Symmache, discipulīs.
 Centum mē tetigēre manūs aquilōne gelātae:
 nōn habuī febrem, Symmache, nunc habeo!

(*Martial 5.9; meter: elegiac couplet.—**languēre**, *to be weak, sick*.—**comitātus**, **-a**, **-um**, *accompanied (by)*.—**Symmachus**, a Greek name, used here for a medical school professor.—**centum . . . discipulīs**, abl. of agent with **comitātus**; the preposition was often omitted in poetry.—**tetigēre** = **tetigērunt**; for this alternate ending, see Ch. 12.—**aquilō**, **-lōnis**, m., *the north wind*.—**gelātus**, **-a**, **-um**, *chilled*, here modifying **centum . . . manūs**; cp. Eng. gel, gelatin.—**febris**, **febris**, f., *fever*.)

ON AMBITION AND LITERATURE, BOTH LATIN AND GREEK

Poëtae per litterās hominibus magnam perpetuamque fāmam dare possunt; multī virī, igitur, litterās dē suīs rēbus scrībī cupiunt. Trahimur omnēs studiō laudis et multī glōriā dūcuntur, quae aut in litterīs Graecīs aut Latīnīs invenīrī potest. Quī, autem, videt multum frūctum glōriae in versibus Latīnīs sed nōn in Graecīs, nimium errat, quod litterae Graecae leguntur in omnibus ferē gentibus, sed Latīnae in finibus suīs continentur.

(Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 11.26, 10.23.—ferē, adv., *almost*.)

ETYMOLOGY

Connected with **diēs** is the adj. **diurnus**, *daily*, whence come the words for “day” in Italian and French: It. **giorno**, Fr. **jour**, **journée**; cp. Sp. **día**. In late Latin there was a form **diurnālis**, from which derive It. **giornale**, Fr. **journal**, Eng. “journal”; cp. Sp. **diario**. English “dismal” stems ultimately from **diēs malus**.

The stem of **fidēs** can be found in the following words even though it may not be immediately obvious: *affidavit*, *defy*, *affiance*, *fiancé*. Eng. “faith” is from early Old Fr. **feit**, **feid**, from Latin **fidem**.

Other words connected with **modus** are: *modulate*, *accommodate*, *commodious*, *discommode*, *incommode*, *à la mode*, *modus operandi*.

In the readings

6. mollify, emollient, mollusk. 13. The Stoic philosophy was so called because Zeno, its founder, used to teach in a certain stoa (portico) at Athens. 14. subjunctive.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Now that you’ve encountered **merīdiēs**, you understand **a.m.** and **p.m.** from **ante** and **post merīdiem**. Your physician might prescribe a medication **diēbus alternīs**, *every other day*, or **diēbus tertiīs**, *every third day*, or even **b.i.d.** or **t.i.d.**, **bis in diē** or **ter in diē** (if you’ve thought about those last two twice or thrice and still can’t figure them out, look back at Ch. 15!). Other items you might encounter one of these days: **diem ex diē**, *day by day*; **diēs felīx**, *a lucky day*; the legal terms **diēs jūridicus** and **nōn jūridicus**, days when court is and is not in session; and the **Diēs Irae**, a medieval hymn about the Day of Judgment, part of the requiem mass. And surely you follow Horace’s advice every day and **carpe diem** (an agricultural metaphor, since **carpō**, **carpere** really means *to pluck* or *harvest* from the vine or stalk—so your day, once seized, should be a bountiful cornucopia).

Now you know, too, what is meant by the common phrase, **amīcus certus in rē incertā**; a **bonā fidē** agreement is made *with good faith* (recognize the abl. usage?); and if your “friend indeed” is your trusty dog, you should consider dubbing him “Fido.” **Carpite omnēs diēs, discipulī discipulaeque, et valēte!**

Participles

Like English, Latin has a set of verbal adjectives, i.e., adjectives formed from a verb stem, called “participles.” Regular transitive verbs in Latin have four participles, two of them in the active voice (the present and future), and two in the passive (future and perfect); they are formed as follows:

	Active	Passive
<i>Pres.</i>	present stem + -ns (gen. -ntis)	————
<i>Perf.</i>	————	partic. stem + -us, -a, -um
<i>Fut.</i>	participial stem + -ūrus, -ūra, -ūrum ¹	pres. stem + -ndus, -nda, -ndum

It is important to know the proper stem for each participle as well as the proper ending. Note that the present active and the future passive are formed on the present stem, while the perfect passive and future active are formed on the so-called “participial stem” (found by dropping the endings from the perfect passive participle, which is itself most often a verb’s fourth principal part: i.e., **laudāt-** from **laudātus, -a, -um**). This pattern can perhaps best be recalled by memorizing the participles of **agō**, in which the difference between the present stem and the participial stem is sufficient to eliminate any confusion. It is also helpful to note that the base of the present participle is marked by **-nt-**, the future active by **-ūr-**¹, and the future passive, often called the “gerundive,” by **-nd-**.

¹ The ending of the future active participle is very easy to remember if you keep in mind the fact that our word *future* comes from **futūrus, -a, -um**, the future (and, incidentally, the only) participle of *sum*.

agō, agere, ēgi, āctum, *to lead*

Active	Passive
Pres. ágēns, agéntis, <i>leading</i>	_____
Perf. _____	āctus, -a, -um, <i>led, having been led</i>
Fut. āctūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to lead, going to lead</i>	agēndus, -a, -um, <i>(about) to be led,</i> <i>deserving or fit to be led</i>

English derivatives are illustrative of the sense of three of these participles: "agent" (from **agēns**), *a person doing something*; "act" (**āctus, -a, -um**), *something done*; "agenda" (**agendus, -a, -um**), *something to be done*. The participles of three of the model verbs follow.

	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
Pres.	ágēns	_____	aúdiēns	_____	cápiēns	_____
Perf.	_____	āctus	_____	audītus	_____	cáptus
Fut.	āctūrus	agēndus	audītūrus	audiēndus	captūrus	capiēndus

Note carefully that fourth conjugation and third conjugation **-iō** verbs have **-ie-** in both the present active participle (**-iēns, -ientis**) and the future passive (**-iendus, -a, -um**). Notice too that while Latin has present active, perfect passive, and future active and passive participles, the equivalents of *praising, having been praised, about to praise, and (about) to be praised*, it lacks both a present passive participle (*being praised*) and a perfect active participle (*having praised*).

DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES

Three of the four participles are declined on the pattern of **magnus, -a, -um**. Only the present participle has third declension forms, following essentially the model of **potēns** (Ch. 16), except that the ablative singular sometimes ends in **-e**, sometimes **-ī**²; the vowel before **-ns** in the nominative singular is always long, but before **-nt-** (according to the rule learned earlier) it is always short.

	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	ágēns	ágēns
Gen.	agéntis	agéntis
Dat.	agéntī	agéntī
Acc.	agéntem	ágēns
Abl.	agéntī, agénte	agéntī, agénte

² The present participle has **-ī** in the ablative singular when used strictly as an attributive adjective (**ā patre amantī**, *by the loving father*) but **-e** when it functions verbally (e.g., with an object, **patre filium amante**, *with the father loving his son*) or as a substantive (**ab amante**, *by a lover*).

<i>Nom.</i>	agētēs	agéntia
<i>Gen.</i>	agéntium	agéntium
<i>Dat.</i>	agéntibus	agéntibus
<i>Acc.</i>	agētēs	agéntia
<i>Abl.</i>	agéntibus	agéntibus

PARTICIPLES AS VERBAL ADJECTIVES

The etymology of the term participle, from **participere**, *to share in* (**pars** + **capere**), reflects the fact that participles share in the characteristics of both adjectives and verbs. As *adjectives*, participles naturally agree in gender, number, and case with the words which they modify. Sometimes also, like adjectives, they modify no expressed noun but function as nouns themselves: **amāns**, *a lover*; **sapiēns**, *a wise man, philosopher*; **venientēs**, *those coming*.

As *verbs*, participles have tense and voice; they may take direct objects or other constructions used with the particular verb; and they may be modified by an adverb or an adverbial phrase:

Patrem in casā videntēs, puella et puer ad eum cucurrērunt, *seeing their father in the house, the boy and girl ran up to him*.

In Latin as in English, the tense of a participle, it should be carefully noted, is not absolute but is relative to that of the main verb. For example, the action of a present participle is contemporaneous with the action of the verb of its clause, no matter whether that verb is in a present, a past, or a future tense; in the preceding sample you can see that it was at some time in the past that the children first saw and then ran toward their father (seeing him, i.e., when they saw him, they ran up to him). A similar situation obtains for the perfect and future participles, as can be seen in the following table:

1. Present participle = action *contemporaneous* with that of the verb (the same time).
2. Perfect participle = action *prior* to that of the verb (time before).
3. Future participle = action *subsequent* to that of the verb (time after).

Graecī nautae, videntēs Polyphēmum, timent, timuērunt, timēbunt.
The Greek sailors, seeing Polyphemus, are afraid, were afraid, will be afraid.

Graecī nautae, vīsī ā Polyphēmō, timent, timuērunt, timēbunt.
The Greek sailors, (having been) seen by P., are afraid, were afraid, will be afraid.

Graecī nautae, vīsūrī Polyphēmum, timent, timuērunt, timēbunt.
The Greek sailors, about to see Polyphemus, are afraid, were afraid, will be afraid.

TRANSLATING PARTICIPIAL PHRASES AS CLAUSES

Participial phrases are used much more frequently in Latin than in English, which prefers clauses with regular finite verbs. In translating from Latin to idiomatic English, therefore, it is often preferable to transform a participial phrase (especially if it sounds stilted in English) into a subordinate clause.

In doing so you need to consider 1) the relationship between the action in the phrase and the action in the clause to which it is attached, so that you can then choose an appropriate subordinating conjunction (especially "when," "since," or "although"), and 2) the relativity of participial tenses, so that you can then transform the participle into the appropriate verb tense.

Thus the example given earlier, **patrem in casā videntēs, puella et puer ad eum cucurrerunt**, can be translated *seeing their father in the house, the girl and boy ran up to him* or, more idiomatically, *when they saw their father in the house, the girl and boy ran up to him*. Likewise **Graeci nautae, vīsī ā Polyphēmō, timuērunt** is better translated *when they had been seen* [time prior to main verb] *by Polyphemus, the Greek sailors were afraid* than the more literal *having been seen by Polyphemus, the Greek sailors were afraid*. Consider these further examples:

Māter, fīlium amāns, auxilium dat, *since she loves her son* [lit., *loving her son*], *the mother gives him assistance*.

Pater, fīliam vīsūrus, casam parābat, *since he was about to see his daughter*, *the father was preparing the house*.

Puella, in casam veniēns, gaudēbat, *when she came into the house* [lit., *coming into the house*], *the girl was happy*.

VOCABULARY

arx, ārcis, f., *citadel, stronghold*

dux, dūcis, m., *leader, guide; commander, general* (duke, ducal, ducat, duchess, duchy, doge; cp. **dūcō**)

ēquus, -ī, m., *horse* (equestrian, equine; cp. **equa, -ae**, *mare*)

hāsta, -ae, f., *spear* (hastate)

īnsula, -ae, f., *island* (insular, insularity, insulate, isolate, isolation, peninsula)

lītus, lītoris, n., *shore, coast* (littoral)

mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier* (military, militaristic, militate, militant, militia)

ōrātor, ōrātōris, m., *orator, speaker* (oratory, oratorio; cp. **ōrō**, Ch. 36, **ōrātiō**, Ch. 38)

sacérdōs, sacerdotīs, m., *priest* (sacerdotal; cp. **sacer**, *sacred*)

āliquis, āliquid (gen. **alicuius**, dat. **alicui**, etc.; cp. decl. of **quis, quid**; nom. and acc. neut. pl. are **āliqua**), indef. pron., *someone, somebody, something*

quisquis, quidquid (**quis** repeated; cases other than nom. rare), indef. pron., *whoever, whatever*

magnánimus, -a, -um, *great-hearted, brave, magnanimous* (magnanimity)
úmquam, adv., in questions or negative clauses, *ever, at any time* (cp. **numquam**)

ēducō (1), *to bring up, educate* (education, educator, educable; do not confuse with **ēducō**, *to lead out*)

gaúdeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *to be glad, rejoice* (gaudeamus; cp. **gaudium, -iī**, *joy*, as in **Latīna est gaudium!**)

ostēndō, ostēndere, ostēndī, osténtum, *to exhibit, show, display* (ostentation, ostentatious, ostensible, ostensive; cp. **tendō, stretch, extend**)

pétō, pétēre, petīvī, petítum, *to seek, aim at, beg, beseech* (appetite, compete, competent, impetuous, petition, petulant, repeat; cp. **perpetuus**)

prēmō, prēmere, prēssī, prēssum, *to press, press hard, pursue*; **-primō** in compounds as seen in **opprimō** below (compress, depress, express, impress, imprint, print, repress, reprimand, suppress)

ópprimō, -primere, -prēssī, -prēssum, *to suppress, overwhelm, overpower, check* (oppress, oppression, oppressive, oppressor)

vértō, vértēre, vértī, vérsu(m), *to turn; change*; so **āvertō, turn away, avert, revertō, turn back**, etc. (adverse, advertise, avert, averse, convert, controversy, divers, diverse, divorce, invert, obverse, pervert, revert, subvert, subversive, transverse, verse, version, animadvert)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Aliquid numquam ante audītum cernō.
2. Illum ōrātōrem in mediō senātū iterum petentem finem bellōrum ac scelerum nōn adiūvistis.
3. Certī fructūs pācis ab territō vulgō atque senātū cupiēbantur.
4. Quī vir magnanimus aliās gentēs gravī metū servitūtis liberābit?
5. Nēmō fidem neglegēns timōre umquam carēbit.
6. Illa fēmina fortunāta haec cōnsilia contrā eōs malōs quondam aluit et salūtis commūnis causā semper labōrābat.
7. Illam gentem Latīnam oppressūrī et dīvitiās raptūrī, omnēs virōs magnae probitātis premere ac dēlēre prōtinus coepērunt.
8. Tollēturne fāma huius medicī istīs versibus novīs?
9. At vīta illīus modī aequī aliquid iūcundī atque fēlīcis continet.
10. Quō diē ex igne et ferrō atque morte certā ēreptus es?
11. We gave many things to nations lacking hope.
12. Those ten men, (when) called, will come again with great eagerness.
13. Through the window they saw the second old man running out of his neighbor's house and away from the city.
14. He himself was overpowered by uncertain fear because he desired neither truth nor liberty.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Vīvēs meīs praesidiīs oppressus. (Cicero.—**praesidium**, -iī, *guard*.)
2. Illī autem, tendentēs manūs dextrās, salūtem petēbant. (Livy.—**tendō**, -ere, *to stretch, extend*.)
3. Tantalus sitiēns flūmina ab ōre fugientia tangere desīderābat. (Horace.—**sitire**, *to be thirsty*.)
4. Signa rērum futūrārum mundō ā dīs ostenduntur. (Cicero.)
5. Graecia capta asperum victōrem cēpit. (Horace.—**victor**, -tōris, here = Rome.)
6. Atticus Cicerōnī ex patriā fugientī multam pecūniam dedit. (Ne-pos.—**Atticus**, a friend of Cicero.)
7. Sī mihi eum ēducandum committēs, studia eius fōrmāre ab infantiā incipiam. (Quintilian.—**fōrmāre**.—**infantia**, -ae.)
8. Saepe stilum verte, bonum libellum scrīptūrus. (Horace.—**stilum** **vertere**, *to invert the stilus* = to use the eraser.)
9. Cūra ōrātōris dictūrī eōs audītūrōs dēlectat. (Quintilian.)
10. Mortī Sōcratis semper illacrimō, legēns Platōnem. (Cicero.—**Sōcratēs**, -cratis.—**illacrimāre**, *to weep over*.—**Platō**, -tōnis.)
11. Memoria vītāe bene āctāe multōrumque bene factōrum iūcunda est. (Cicero.)
12. Quī timēns vīvet, līber nōn erit umquam. (Horace.—**quī**, as often, = **is quī**.)
13. Nōn is est miser quī iussus aliquid facit, sed is quī invītus facit. (Seneca.—**invītus**, -a, -um, *unwilling*; the adj. here has adverbial force, as it commonly does in Latin.)
14. Verbum semel ēmissum volat irrevocābile. (Horace.—**semel**, adv., *once*.—**ē-mittere**.—**volāre**, *to fly*.—**irrevocābilis**, -e.)

LAOCOON SPEAKS OUT AGAINST THE TROJAN HORSE

Oppressī bellō longō et ā deīs aversī, ducēs Graecōrum, iam post decem annōs, magnum equum ligneum arte Minervae faciunt. Uterum multīs mīlitibus complent, equum in lītore relinquunt, et ultrā īnsulam proximam nāvīgant. Trōiānī nūllās cōpiās aut nāvēs vident; omnis Trōia gaudet; panduntur portae. Dē equō, autem, Trōiānī sunt incertī. Aliī eum in urbem dūcī cupiunt; aliī eum Graecās īnsidiās appellant. Prīmus ibi ante omnēs, dē arce currēns, Laocoon, sacerdos Trōiānus, haec verba dīcit: “Ō miserī cīvēs, nōn estis sānī! Quid cōgitātis? Nōne intellegitis Graecōs et īnsidiās eōrum? Aut inveniētis in istō equō multōs mīlitēs ācrēs, aut equus est machina bellī, facta contrā nōs, ventūra in urbem, vīsūra casās nostrās et populum. Aut aliquid latet. Equō nē crēdite, Trōiānī: quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna gerentēs!” Dīxit, et potentem hastam magnīs vīribus manūs sinistrae in uterum equī iēcit; stetit illa, tremēns.

(Virgil, *Aeneid* 2.13–52; prose adaptation.—**ligneus**, -a, -um, wooden, of wood.—Minerva, goddess of war and protectress of the Greeks.—**uterus**, -ī.—**complēre**, to fill up, make pregnant.—**proximus**, -a, -um, nearby.—**Trōiānus**, -a, -um, Trojan.—**pandō**, -ere, to open.—**Nōnne** introduces a question anticipating an affirmative answer, *Don't you . . . ?*—**machina**, -ae.—**vīsūra**, here to spy on.—**latēre**, to hide, be hidden, be concealed.—**equō**, dat. with **crēdite** (see Ch. 35).—**nē** = **nōn**.—**Danaōs** = **Graecōs**.—**et** (with **gerentēs**) = **etiam**.—**tremō**, -ere, to tremble, shake, vibrate.—To be continued. . .)



Trojan horse with Greek soldiers
Relief from neck of an amphora, Mykonos, 7th century B.C.
Archaeological Museum, Mykonos, Greece

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

2. tend, tent, tense, attend, contend, distend, extend, extent, extensive, intend, intent, intense, portend, pretend, subtend, superintendent; cp. **ostendō** in the vocabulary. 3. tantalize, Gk. derivative. 8. stilus, style. 10. lachrymose. 14. volatile, volley. “Laocoon”: uterine.—complete, completion, complement, complementary.—proximity, approximate.—expand, expansive.—machine, machinery, machination.—latent.—tremor, tremulous, tremulant, tremble, tremendous.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! This chapter's Vocab. suggests a couple of literary titles from ancient Rome: among Cicero's dozens of books was a rhetorical treatise titled **Dē Ōrātōre**, and one of Plautus' most popular plays was the **Miles Glōriōsus**, usually translated *The Braggart Soldier*. Then there's the medieval student song with the famous line (quite apt for college Latin students) **gaudeāmus, igitur, iuvenēs dum sumus**, *so let us rejoice, while we are young!*

From **vertere** is **verte** for *turn the page* and **versō** for the left-hand page in a book (i.e., the side you see when you have just *turned* the page); printers call the the right-hand page the **rectō**.

And from the reading passage: the expression “a Trojan horse” is used of any person, group, or device that tries to subvert a government or any organization from within. Also from the Trojan saga and Virgil's story of Aeneas' sojourn in Carthage is the famous quotation **dux fēmina factī**, *a woman (was) leader of the action!* **Gaudēte atque valēte!**



Athena (Minerva) constructing the Trojan horse
Red-figure Greek kylix, the Sabouroff Painter, 470–460 B.C.
Museo Archeologico, Florence, Italy

Ablative Absolute; Passive Periphrastic; Dative of Agent

The participles which you learned in the last chapter were employed by the Romans in two very common constructions introduced below, the “ablative absolute” and the “passive periphrastic.”

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

The ablative absolute is a type of participial phrase generally consisting of a noun (or pronoun) and a modifying participle in the ablative case; somewhat loosely connected to the rest of the sentence (hence the term, from **absolūtum**, *loosened from, separated*) and usually set off by commas, the phrase describes some general circumstances under which the action of the sentence occurs.

Rōmā vīsā, virī gaudēbant, *Rome having been seen, the men rejoiced.*

As typified by this example, the ablative absolute always is self-contained, i.e., the participle and the noun it modifies are both in the same phrase and the noun of the ablative absolute phrase is not referred to at all in the attached clause. In other types of participial phrases (such as those seen in

Ch. 23), the participles modify some noun or pronoun in the attached clause; compare the following example, which has an ordinary participial phrase, with the previous example:

Rōmam videntēs, virī gaudēbant, seeing Rome, the men rejoiced.

In this instance the participle modifies the subject of the main clause, and so an ablative absolute cannot be used.

Like other participial phrases, the ablative absolute can be translated quite literally, as in **Rōmā vīsā**, (*with*) *Rome having been seen*. Often, however, it is better style to transform the phrase to a clause, converting the participle to a verb in the appropriate tense, treating the ablative noun as its subject, and supplying the most logical conjunction (usually “when,” “since,” or “although”), as explained in the last chapter; thus, a more idiomatic translation of **Rōmā vīsā, virī gaudēbant** would be *when Rome was (had been) seen, the men rejoiced*. Compare the following additional examples:

Hīs rēbus audītīs, coepit timēre.

These things having been heard, he began to be afraid.

Or in much better English:

When (since, after, etc., depending on the context) these things had been heard, he began . . .

When (since, after, etc.) he had heard these things, he began . . .

Eō imperium tenente, ēventum timeō.

With him holding the power,

Since he holds the power,

When he holds the power,

If he holds the power,

Although he holds the power.

I fear the outcome.

In the ablative absolute, the ablative noun/pronoun regularly comes first, the participle last; when the phrase contains additional words, like the direct object of the participle in the preceding example, they are usually enclosed within the noun/participle “frame.”

As seen in the following examples, even two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, can function as an ablative absolute, with the present participle of **sum** (lacking in classical Latin) to be understood:

Caesare duce, nihil timēbimus.

Caesar being the commander,

Under Caesar's command,

With Caesar in command,

Since (when, if, etc.) Caesar is the commander,

we shall fear nothing.

Caesare incertō, bellum timēbāmus.

Since Caesar was uncertain (with Caesar uncertain), we were afraid of war.

THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION: GERUNDIVE + *Sum*

Despite its horrendous name, the passive periphrastic conjugation is simply a passive verb form consisting of the gerundive (i.e., the future passive participle) along with a form of *sum*.¹ The gerundive, as a predicate adjective, agrees with the subject of *sum* in gender, number, and case, e.g., *haec fēmina laudanda est, this woman is to be praised.*

The gerundive often conveys an idea of necessary, obligatory, or appropriate action, rather than simple futurity, and this is the case in the passive periphrastic construction. Hence *id faciendum est* means not simply *this is about to be done*, but rather *this has to be done*; *hic liber cum cūrā legendus erit, this book will have to be (must be) read with care.*

Just as Latin uses the auxiliary *sum* in its various tenses in this construction, English commonly uses the expressions “has to be,” “had to be,” “will have to be”; “should,” “ought,” and “must” are other auxiliaries commonly used in translating the passive periphrastic (cp. *dēbeō*, which, as you have already learned, is also used to indicate obligatory action).

THE DATIVE OF AGENT

Instead of the ablative of agent, the dative of agent is used with the passive periphrastic. A literal translation of the passive periphrastic + dative of agent generally sounds awkward, and so it is often best to transform such a clause into an active construction; consider the following examples:

Hic liber mihi cum cūrā legendus erit, this book will have to be read by me with care or (better) *I will have to (ought to, must, should) read this book with care.*

¹The word “periphrasis” (adj. “periphrastic”) comes from the Gk. equivalent of Lat. *circumlocutiō*, a roundabout way of speaking, and simply refers to the form’s construction from a participle plus *sum* as an auxiliary (even “did sing” in Eng. is a periphrastic for “sang”); the entire perfect passive system is similarly “periphrastic,” consisting of *sum* + the perfect passive participle rather than the gerundive (be careful not to confuse the two: the pass. periphrastic will always contain an *-nd-* gerundive).

Illa fēmina omnibus laudanda est, that woman should be praised by all or everyone should praise that woman.

Pāx ducibus nostrīs petenda erat, peace had to be sought by our leaders or our leaders had to seek peace.

VOCABULARY

Carthāgō, Carthāginis, f., Carthage (a city in North Africa)

fābula, -ae, f., story, tale; play (fable, fabulous, confabulate; cp. **fāma**)

imperātor, imperātōris, m., general, commander-in-chief, emperor (cp. **parō, imperium, imperō, Ch. 35**)

impērium, -iī, n., power to command, supreme power, authority, command, control (imperial, imperialism, imperious, empire)

perfūgium, -iī, n., refuge, shelter (cp. **fugiō**)

sērvus, -ī, m., and sērva, -ae, f., slave (serf, servant, servile, service; cp. **serviō, Ch. 35**)

sōlācium, -iī, n., comfort, relief (solace, consolation, inconsolable)

vūlnus, vūlneris, n., wound (vulnerable, invulnerable)

re- or red-, prefix, again, back (recede, receive, remit, repeat, repel, revert)

ut, conj. + indic., as, just as, when

pōsteā, adv., afterwards (cp. **post**)

accipiō, -cīpere, -cēpī, -cēptum, to take (to one's self), *receive, accept* (cp. **capiō**)

excipiō, -cīpere, -cēpī, -cēptum, to take out, except; take, receive, capture (exception, exceptionable)

recipiō, -cīpere, -cēpī, -cēptum, to take back, regain, admit, receive (recipe, R_x , receipt, recipient, receptacle, reception)

pēllō, pēllere, pēpulī, pūlsum, to strike, push, drive out, banish (compel, compulsion, compulsory, dispel, expel, impel, propel, repel, pelt, pulsate, pulse)

expēllō, -pēllere, -pulī, -pūlsum, to drive out, expel, banish (expulsion)

nārrō (1), to tell, report, narrate (narration, narrative, narrator)

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, to seek, look for, strive for; ask, inquire, inquire into (acquire, conquer, exquisite, inquire, inquest, inquisition, perquisite, query, quest, question, request, require)

rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsum, to laugh, laugh at (deride, derisive, ridicule, ridiculous, risibilities; cf. **rīdiculus, Ch. 30, subrīdeō, Ch. 35**)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Igne vīsō, omnēs virī et uxōrēs territae sunt et ultrā urbem ad lītus īnsulae navigāvērunt, ubi perfugium inventum est.
2. Populō metū oppressō, iste imperātor nōbīs ex urbe pellendus est.

3. Ōrātor, signō ā sacerdotē datō, eō diē revēnit et nunc tōtus populus Latīnus gaudet.
4. Gēns Rōmāna versūs illīus scrīptōris magnā laude quondam recēpit.
5. Laudēs atque dōna huius modī ab ōrātōribus dēsīderābantur.
6. Imperiō acceptō, dux magnanimus fidem suam reī pūblicae ostendit.
7. Aliquis eōs quīnque equōs ex igne ēripī postea iusserat.
8. Cernisne omnia quae tibi scienda sunt?
9. Ille, ab arce urbis reveniēns, ab istīs hominibus premī coepit.
10. Cupiō tangere manum illīus mīlitis quī metū caruit atque gravia scelera contrā rem pūblicam oppressit.
11. Iste dux prōtinus expulsus est, ut imperium excipiēbat.
12. Illae servae, autem, perfugium sōlāciumque ab amīcīs quaerēbant.
13. Cornū audītō, ille mīles, incertus cōsiliī, cōpiās ad mediam īnsulam vertit.
14. When the common danger had been averted, two of our sons and all our daughters came back from Asia.
15. Our hopes must not be destroyed by those three evil men.
16. Since the people of all nations are seeking peace, all leaders must conquer the passion for (= of) power. (Use an ablative absolute and a passive periphrastic.)
17. The leader, having been driven out by both the free men and the slaves, could not regain his command.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Carthāgō dēlenda est. (Cato.)
2. Asiā victā, dux Rōmānus fēlīx multōs servōs in Italiam mīsīt. (Pliny the Elder.)
3. Omnibus ferrō mīlitis perterritīs, quisque sē servāre cupiēbat. (Caesar.)
4. Quidquid dīcendum est, liberē dīcam. (Cicero.—**liberē**, adv. of **liber**.)
5. Haec omnia vulnera bellī tibi nunc sānanda sunt. (Cicero.—**sānāre**, to heal.)
6. Nec tumultum nec hastam mīlitis nec mortem violentam timēbō, Augustō terrās tenente. (Horace.—**tumultus -ūs**, disturbance, civil war.—**violentus, -a, -um**.—**Augustus, -ī**.)
7. Tarquiniō expulsō, nōmen rēgis audīre nōn poterat populus Rōmānus. (Cicero.)
8. Ad ūtilitātem vītae omnia cōsilia factaque nōbīs regenda sunt. (Tacitus.—**ūtilitās, -tātis**, benefit, advantage.)

DĒ CUPIDITĀTE

Homō stultus, “Ō cīvēs, cīvēs,” inquit, “pecūnia ante omnia quaerenda est; virtūs et probitās post pecūniam.”

Pecūniae autem cupiditās fugienda est. Fugienda etiam est cupiditās glōriae; ēripit enim libertātem. Neque imperia semper petenda sunt neque semper accipienda sunt.

(Adapted from Horace, *Epistulae* 1.1.53, and Cicero, *Dē Officiis* 1.20.68.)

Herculēs, in caelum propter virtūtem receptus, deōs salūtāvit; sed Plūtō veniente, quī est fīlius Fortūnae, Herculēs oculōs āvertit. Tum, causā quae-sītā, “Iste,” inquit, “spernendus est quod lucrī causā omnia corrumpit.”

(Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 4.12.—Herculēs, -culis.—salūtāre, to greet.—Plūtus, -ī, god of wealth.—spernō, -ere, to scorn.—lucrum, -ī, gain, profit.—corrumpō, -ere.)



Heracles (Hercules) fighting the Nemean lion, one of his 12 labors
Attic black-figure kalpis, Early 5th century B.C.
Kunsthistorisches Museum, Vienna, Austria

THE SATIRIST'S MODUS OPERANDI

Rīdēns saturās meās percurram, et cūr nōn? Quid vetat mē rīdentem dīcere vērum, ut puerīs ēducandīs saepe dant crūstula magistrī? Quaerō rēs gravēs iūcundō lūdō et, nōminibus fictīs, dē multīs culpīs vitiisque narrō. Sed quid rīdēs? Mūtātō nōmine, dē tē fābula narrātur!

(Horace, *Sermōnēs* 1.1.23–27, 69–70; prose adaptation.—per + currō.—vetāre, to forbid.—puerīs . . . magistrī, the order of the nouns is varied for effect: indirect obj., direct obj., subject.—crūstulum, -ī, cookie, pastry.—fingō, -ere, fīnxī, fictum, to form, invent, make up.)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

6. tumultuous.—“Violent” is clearly based on **vīs**.—Originally the Romans, counting March as the first month of the year, named the fifth month **Quīntilis** (**quīntus**, *fifth*), but Julius Caesar renamed it **Iūlius** (July) because he was born in July. Subsequently, when the Roman Senate gave Octavian, Caesar’s heir, the title of “Augustus” (the august, the revered one), the Senate also changed the name of the sixth month (**Sextilis**) to **Augustus** (August). “**Dē Cupiditāte**”: Herculean—salute; cp. **salvēre**, **salūs**.—plutocrat, a word of Gk. origin.—Eng. “spurn” is cognate with Lat. **spernō**.—lucre, lucrative.)—“The Satirist”: veto.—crust.—fiction, fictitious, fictive.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, amīcae amīcīque! Quid agitis hodiē? Bet you didn’t know that **R_x** and “recipe” came from the same word (see **recipiō** in the Vocab.), but now, thanks to Latin, you do! There are countless derivatives from the **capiō** family, as you have seen already; and from **excipere** there are some “exceptionally” familiar phrases: **exceptiō probat regulam**, *the exception proves the rule*, and **exceptis excipiendis**, *with all the necessary exceptions* (lit., *with things excepted that should be excepted*: recognize the gerundive?). And, by analogy with this last, what are the idiomatic and the literal meanings of the very common phrase **mūtātis mūtandis**? (If you can’t figure that out, it’s in your Webster’s, along with hundreds of other Latin phrases, mottoes, words, and abbreviations in current Eng. usage!)

Some other gerundives that pop up in Eng.: **agenda** (*things to be done*), **corrigenda** (*things to be corrected*, i.e., an **errāta** list), and even the passive periphrastics **dē gustibus nōn disputandum est**, sometimes shortened simply to **dē gustibus** (*you can’t argue about taste*), and **quod erat dēmōnstrandum** (which we’ve seen before), abbreviated **Q.E.D.** at the end of a mathematical proof.

Servus, also in the new Vocab., gives us one of the Pope’s titles, **servus servōrum deī** (another is **pontifex**, the name of an ancient Roman priestly office, which may originally have meant *bridge-builder*—because priests bridge the gap between men and gods?); and **quaere** is used in Eng. as a note to request further information. **Nunc est satis: valēte atque semper rīdēte!**

Infinitives; Indirect Statement

INFINITIVES

Having surveyed the forms and uses of the verbal adjectives known as participles in the last two chapters, we turn now to the common verbal noun known as the infinitive (e.g., *amāre*, *to love*—two other verbal nouns, the supine and the gerund, are introduced in Chs. 38–39). Most transitive verbs have six infinitives, the present, future, and perfect, active and passive, though the future passive is rare¹; intransitive verbs usually lack the passive. You are already familiar with the present active and passive infinitives, whose forms vary with each of the four conjugations; the perfect and future infinitives are all formed according to the following patterns, regardless of conjugation:

	Active	Passive
Pres.	-āre, -ēre, -ere, -īre ²	-ārī, -ērī, -ī, -īrī
Perf.	perfect stem + -isse	perf. pass. participle + esse
Fut.	fut. act. participle + esse	[supine in -um + īrī] ³

¹ In other words, there are active and passive infinitives for each of the three basic time frames, past, present, and future; contrast participles, which lack present passive and perfect active forms.

² Actually, the ending of the present active infinitive is -re, which is added to the present stem; but for purposes of distinction it is convenient to include here the stem vowel as well.

³ The future passive infinitive is given in brackets here because it is not a common form and does not occur in this book. The Romans preferred a substitute expression like *fore ut* + subjunctive (result clause). The supine in -um has the same spelling as that of the perf. pass. part. in the nom. neut. sg.

INFINITIVES OF *agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, to lead*

	Active	Passive
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ágere, to lead</i>	<i>ágī, to be led</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>ēgisse, to have led</i>	<i>āctus, -a, -um⁴ esse, to have been led</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>āctūrus, -a, -um⁴ esse, to be about to lead, to be going to lead</i>	<i>āctum írī, to be about to be led, to be going to be led</i>

The literal translations of the six infinitives given above are conventional; in actual use (especially in indirect statement, as explained below) the perfect and particularly the future infinitives are rarely translated literally.

The infinitives of the other model verbs are as follows:

Active

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>laudāre</i>	<i>monēre</i>	<i>audīre</i>	<i>cāpere</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>laudāvisse</i>	<i>monuisse</i>	<i>audīvisse</i>	<i>cēpisse</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>laudātūrus,</i> <i>-a, -um,</i> <i>esse</i>	<i>monitūrus,</i> <i>-a, -um,</i> <i>esse</i>	<i>audītūrus,</i> <i>-a, -um,</i> <i>esse</i>	<i>captūrus,</i> <i>-a, -um,</i> <i>esse</i>

Passive

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>laudārī</i>	<i>monērī</i>	<i>audīrī</i>	<i>cāpī</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>laudātus,</i> <i>-a, -um,</i> <i>esse</i>	<i>mónitus,</i> <i>-a, -um,</i> <i>esse</i>	<i>audītus,</i> <i>-a, -um,</i> <i>esse</i>	<i>cáptus,</i> <i>-a, -um,</i> <i>esse</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>laudātum</i> <i>írī</i>	<i>mónitum</i> <i>írī</i>	<i>audītum</i> <i>írī</i>	<i>cáptum</i> <i>írī</i>

USAGE

As a verbal noun, an infinitive can function in a variety of ways. We have seen its use as a subject (*errāre est humānum, to err is human*) and as a complement with such verbs as *possum* and *dēbeō* (*discēdere nunc possunt, they can leave now*—Ch. 6), and the infinitive, with its own accusative subject, can also serve as a direct object (*iussit eōs venīre, he ordered them to come*: see S.S., p. 445). One of the commonest uses of the infinitive, however, is in a construction known as “indirect statement.”

⁴The participles are regarded as predicate adjectives and so are made to agree with the subject of *esse*.

INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENT WITH ACCUSATIVE SUBJECT

An indirect statement simply reports indirectly (i.e., not in direct quotation) what someone has said, thought, felt, etc. The following is a *direct* statement, made by a teacher:

Julia is a good student.

Here the teacher's comment is *directly* reported or quoted:

"Julia is a good student," says the teacher.

The teacher said, "Julia is a good student."

Latin also uses direct quotations with certain verbs of speaking, etc., including **inquit** (Ch. 22 Vocab.):

"Iūlia," magister inquit, "est discipula bona."

Often, however, both Latin and English will report someone's remarks (or thoughts or feelings) indirectly. In English we regularly put such indirect statements into a subordinate clause introduced by *that*:

The teacher says that Julia is a good student.

The teacher said that Julia was a good student.

Latin, on the other hand, uses no introductory word for *that* and employs an infinitive phrase with an accusative subject, instead of a clause:

Magister dīcit Iūliam esse discipulam bonam.

Magister dīxit Iūliam esse discipulam bonam.

This indirect statement construction is regularly employed in Latin after verbs of "speech," "mental activity," or "sense perception" (i.e., saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, feeling, seeing, hearing, etc.: see the list of Latin verbs following the Vocab.). English uses a similar objective case + infinitive construction after a few verbs of this type (e.g., "the teacher considers *her to be* a good student"), but in classical Latin this pattern is always followed and the accusative subject is always expressed, even when it is the same as the subject of the verb of *saying*, etc. (in which case the subject is ordinarily a reflexive pronoun):

Iūlia putat sē esse bonam discipulam, *Julia thinks that she (herself) is a good student.*

Recognizing indirect statements is easy: look for the main verb of speech, mental activity, or sense perception with an accusative + infinitive

phrase following. The greater challenge is in translation, since you must nearly always supply *that* and convert the infinitive phrase into a regular clause, as in the above examples, where literal translations (e.g., *the teacher says Julia to be a good student* or *Julia thinks herself to be a good student*) would not produce idiomatic English. After supplying *that* and translating the accusative subject as if it were a nominative, you must then transform the infinitive into a regular finite verb *in the correct tense*, noting that tenses of the infinitive, like those of the participle, are relative not absolute.

INFINITIVE TENSES IN INDIRECT STATEMENT

Study carefully the *tenses* in the following groups of sentences.

1. *Dīcunt*— They say

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| A. eum <i>iuvāre</i> eam. | <i>that he is helping her.</i> |
| B. eum <i>iūvisse</i> eam. | <i>that he helped her.</i> |
| C. eum <i>iūtūrum esse</i> eam. | <i>that he will help her.</i> |

2. *Dīxērunt*— They said

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A. eum <i>iuvāre</i> eam. | <i>that he was helping her.</i> |
| B. eum <i>iūvisse</i> eam. | <i>that he had helped her.</i> |
| C. eum <i>iūtūrum esse</i> eam. | <i>that he would help her.</i> |

3. *Dīcent*— They will say

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| A. eum <i>iuvāre</i> eam. | <i>that he is helping her.</i> |
| B. eum <i>iūvisse</i> eam. | <i>that he helped her.</i> |
| C. eum <i>iūtūrum esse</i> eam. | <i>that he will help her.</i> |

You probably noticed that after any tense of the main verb (*dīcunt*, *dīxērunt*, *dīcent*) the present, the perfect, or the future tense of the infinitive may be used. This fact shows that the tenses of the infinitive are not absolute but are relative.

To put it another way, *regardless of the tense of the main verb*:

1. the *present infinitive* indicates the *same time as* that of the main verb (= contemporaneous infinitive).
2. the *perfect infinitive* indicates *time before* that of the main verb (= prior infinitive).
3. the *future infinitive* indicates *time after* that of the main verb (= subsequent infinitive).

Here are some further examples; note carefully the translation of tenses, the use of reflexives, the agreement of participial endings with the accusative subjects, and the use in one instance of the passive periphrastic infinitive (gerundive + *esse*, to indicate obligatory action).

Gāius dīcit sē iūvisse eam.

Gaius says that he (Gaius) helped her.

Gāius dīxit eum iūvisse eam,

Gaius said that he (e.g., Marcus) had helped her.

Gāius dīcit litterās ā sē scrīptās esse,

G. says that the letter was written by him (Gaius).

Gāius dīcit litterās tibi scrībendās esse,

G. says that the letter ought to be written by you (or that you ought to write the letter).

Discipulī putant sē linguam Latīnam amātūrōs esse,

the (male) students think that they will love the Latin language.

Magistra scīvit discipulās Latīnam amātūrās esse,

the (female) teacher knew that the (female) students would love Latin.

VOCABULARY

língua, -ae, f., *tongue; language* (linguist, linguistics, bilingual, lingo, linguine: see **Latīna Est Gaudium**, Ch. 14)

fērōx, gen. **ferōcis**, *fierce, savage* (ferocious, ferocity; cp. **ferus, -ī**, *beast*)

fidēlis, **fidēle**, *faithful, loyal* (fidelity, infidelity, infidel; cp. **fidēs**)

gēminus, -a, -um, *twin* (geminate, gemination, Gemini)

sāpiēns, gen. **sapiēntis**, as adj., *wise, judicious*; as noun, *a wise man, philosopher* (homo sapiens, sapience, insipience, sapid, insipid, verbum sapienti, savant, sage; cp. **sapientia, sapiō**, Ch. 35)

últimus, -a, -um, *farthest, extreme; last, final* (ultimate, ultimum, penultimate, antepenult)

déhinc, adv., *then*

hīc, adv., *here*

āit, āiunt, *he says, they say, assert*, commonly used in connection with proverbs and anecdotes (adage)

crédō, credere, crēdidī, crēditum + acc. or (Ch. 35) dat., *to believe, trust* (credence, credentials, credible, incredible, credulity, credulous, creed, credibility, credo, credit, creditable, accreditation, miscreant, grant)

iáceō, iacēre, iacuī, *to lie, lie prostrate, lie dead* (adjacent, adjacency, interjacent, subjacent, gist, joist; do not confuse with **iaciō, iacere**)

négō (1), *to deny, say that . . . not* (negate, negative, abnegate, renegade, renege, denial, runagate)

nesciō, nescīre, nescivī, nescītum, *not to know, be ignorant* (nice; cp. **sciō**)

nūntiō (1), *to announce, report, relate* (denounce, enunciate, pronounce, renounce, nuncio; cp. **prōnūntiō, nūntius, -ī**, *messenger*)

patefáciō, -fācere, -fēcī, -fāctum, *to make open, open; disclose, expose*

- pútō** (1), *to clean, trim; reckon, suppose, judge, think, imagine* (compute, count, account, depute, dispute, impute, putative, repute, amputate)
spērō (1), *to hope for, hope, regularly + fut. inf. in ind. state.* (despair, desperado, desperate, desperation, prosper; cp. **spēs**.)
suscipiō, -cípere, -cépī, -céptum (sub-capiō), to undertake (susceptible, susceptibility)

LIST OF VERBS CAPABLE OF INTRODUCING INDIRECT STATEMENT⁵

1. *saying*: **dícō, négō, áit, nūntiō, prōnūntiō, nárrō, scrībō, dóceō, osténdō, dēmōnstrō, móneō, pétō**
2. *knowing*: **sciō, nésciō, intéllegō, memóriā téneō, díscō**
3. *thinking*: **cérnō, cōgitō, crēdō, hábeō, pútō, spērō**
4. *perceiving and feeling*: **aúdiō, vídeō, séntiō, gaúdeō**

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. "Quisque," inquit, "semper putat suās rēs esse magnās."
2. Postea audivimus servōs dōnōrum causā labōrāvisse, ut mīlitēs fidēlēs herī narrāverant.
3. Vīcīnī nostrī vim ignis magnā virtūte dēhinc āvertērunt, quod laudem atque dōna cupīvērunt.
4. Hoc signum periculī tōtam gentem nostram tanget, nisi hostem ex urbe excipere ac ab Italiā pellere poterimus.
5. Duce ferōcī Carthāginis expulsō, spēs fidēsque virōrum magnanimōrum rem pūblicam continēbunt.
6. Cūr iūcundus Horātius culpās hūmānās in saturīs semper ostendēbat atque rīdēbat?
7. Crēdimus fidem antīquam omnibus gentibus iterum alendam esse.
8. Dux, ad senātum missus, imperium accēpit et imperātor factus est.
9. Rēs pūblica, ut āit, libellīs huius modī tollī potest.
10. Aliquī negant hostēs victōs servitūte umquam opprimendōs esse.
11. Crēdunt magistrā sapientem vērītatem patefactūram esse.
12. Quisquis vērītatem recipiet bene ēducābitur.
13. We thought that your sisters were writing the letter.
14. They will show that the letter was written by the brave slavegirl.
15. He said that the letter had never been written.
16. We hope that the judge's wife will write those two letters tomorrow.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Id factum esse tum nōn negāvit. (Terence.)
2. Hīs rēbus prōnūntiātīs, igitur, eum esse hostem scīvistī. (Cicero.)

⁵ Others to be introduced later are **respondeō**, *answer*; **cognōscō**, *learn, know*; **arbitror**, *think*; **opīnor**, *think, suppose*; **prōmittō**, *promise*; **dēcernō**, *decide*; **doleō**, *grieve*.

3. Eum ab hostibus expectārī nunc sentīs. (Cicero.)
4. Vīdī eōs in urbe remānsisse et nōbīscum esse. (Cicero.)
5. Itaque aeternum bellum cum malīs cīvibus ā mē susceptum esse cernō. (Cicero.)
6. Idem crēdō tibi faciendum esse. (Cicero.)
7. Tē enim esse fidēlem mihi sciēbam. (Terence.)
8. Hostibus sē in cīvītatē vertentibus, senātus Cincinnātō nūntiāvit eum factum esse dictātōrem. (Cicero.—**Cincinnātus**, -ī.—**dictātor**, -tōris.)
9. Dīcō tē, Pyrrhe, Rōmānōs posse vincere. (Ennius.—**Pyrrhus**, -ī.)
10. Dīc, hospes, Spartae tē nōs hīc iacentēs vīdisse, patriae fidēlēs. (Cicero; epigram on the Spartans who died at Thermopylae.—**hospes**, -pitis, m., *stranger*.—**Spartae**, *to Sparta*.)
11. Sōcratēs putābat sē esse cīvem tōtīus mundī. (Cicero.)
12. Illī magistrī negant quemquam virum esse bonum nisi sapientem. (Cicero.—**quisquam**, **quidquam**, *anyone, anything; any*.)
13. Negāvī, autem, mortem timendam esse. (Cicero.)
14. Crēdō deōs immortālēs sparsisse spīritūs in corpora hūmāna. (Cicero.—**spargō**, -ere, **sparsī**, **sparsum**, *to scatter, sow*.)
15. Adulēscēns spērat sē diū vīctūrum esse; senex potest dīcere sē diū vīxisse. (Cicero.—Do not confuse **vīctūrum**, from **vīvō**, with **victūrum**, from **vincō**.)
16. Āiunt enim multum legendum esse, nōn multa. (*Pliny.)

THE DEATH OF LAOCOON . . . AND TROY

Hīc alius magnus timor (Ō fābula misera!) animōs caecōs nostrōs terret. Lāocoōn, sacerdos Neptūnī fortūnā factus, ācrem taurum ad āram in lītore mactābat. Tum geminī serpentēs potentēs, mare prementēs, ab īnsulā ad lītora currunt. Iamque agrōs tenēbant et, oculīs igne ardentibus, ōra linguīs sībīlis lambēbant.

Nōs omnēs fugimus; illī viā certā Lāocoonta filiōsque eius petunt. Prīmum parva corpora duōrum puerōrum capiunt et lacerant necantque dēvōrantque. Tum patrem fortem, ad filiōs miserōs currentem, rapiunt et magnīs spīrīs tenent et superant. Nec sē ā vulneribus dēfendere nec fugere potest, et ipse, ut taurus saucius ad āram, clāmōrēs horrendōs ad caelum tollit. Eōdem tempore serpentēs fugiunt, petuntque perfugium in arce Minervae ācris.

Quod Lāocoōn in equum Minervae hastam iēcerat, nōs putāvimus eum errāvisse et poenās dedisse; vērītatem acerbam nescīvimus. Portās patefacimus et admittimus istum equum in urbem; atque puerī puellaeque—Ō patria, Ō dī magnī, Ō Trōia!—eum tangere gaudent. Et quoque gaudēmus nōs miserī, quibus ille diēs fuit ultimus ac quibus numquam erit ūllum sōlācium.

(Virgil, *Aeneid* 2.199–249; prose adaptation.—**Lāocoōn**, -ontis, m.—**Neptūnus**, god of the sea, took the side of the Greeks in the Trojan war.—**taurus**, -ī, bull.—**āra**, -ae, altar.—**mactāre**, to sacrifice, sacrificially slaughter.—**serpēns**, -pentis, m.—**ardēre**, to blaze.—**sībilus**, -a, -um, hissing.—**lambō**, -ere, to lick.—**Lāocoonta**, Gk. acc.—**prīnum**, adv. of **prīmus**.—**lacerāre**, to tear to pieces, mangle.—**dēvōrāre**, to devour.—**spīra**, -ae, coil.—**saucius**, -a, -um, wounded.—**clāmor**, -mōris, shout, scream.—**horrendus**, -a, -um.)



The Laocoön group

*Roman copy, perhaps after Agesander, Athenodorus, and Polydorus of Rhodes
1st century B.C., Vatican Museums, Vatican State*

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

8. propinquity.—“Cincinnati,” both the organization composed originally of the officers who served under George Washington and also the city named after the organization. 9. Pyrrhus, the Greek general, defeated the Romans twice, but the victories cost him almost as many men as they cost the Romans; hence the term “Pyrrhic victory.” 14. aspersion, disperse, intersperse, sparse. “Laocoon”: toreator.—serpent, serpentine; “herpes” is cognate.—lambent.—lacerate, laceration.—voracious.—spire, spiral.—clamor, clamorous; cp. **clāmāre**, **dēclāmāre**, **exclāmāre**.—horrendous.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Quid agitis hodiē, amīcī et amīcae? Also from **iacēre** in the new Vocab. is the phrase **hīc iacet**, *here lies* . . . , often inscribed on tombstones (sometimes spelled **hic jacet** and mistaken to mean *a country boy's sportcoat!*). And here are some other well-known mottoes and phrases: **dum spīrō, spērō**, *while I breathe, I hope* (South Carolina's state motto—the verb **spīrāre** is related to **spīritus**, Ch. 20, and gives us “conspire,” “expire,” “inspire,” “perspire,” “respiratory,” “transpire,” etc.); **crēde Deō**, *trust in God* (for **crēdere** + dat., see Ch. 35); and It. **lingua franca**, lit. *Frankish language*, used of any hybrid language that is employed for communication among different cultures. **Spīrāte, spērāte, rīdēte, atque valēte!**



*Trojan horse fresco from the House of Menander
Pompeii, mid- to late 1st century A.D.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy*

Comparison of Adjectives; Declension of Comparatives; Ablative of Comparison

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

The adjective forms you have learned thus far indicate a basic characteristic (a quality or quantity) associated with the modified noun, e.g., **vir beātus**, *a happy man*. This is called the “positive degree” of the adjective.

In Latin, as in English, an adjective may be “compared” in order to indicate whether a person or thing being described has a greater degree of a particular characteristic than some other person(s) or thing(s), or more than is usual or customary. When comparing a person/thing with just one other, the “comparative degree” is used: **vir beātiōr**, *the happier man*. When comparing a person/thing with two or more others, the “superlative degree” is employed: **vir beātissimus**, *the happiest man*.

FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE AND THE SUPERLATIVE

The form of the positive degree is learned from the vocabulary. The forms of the comparative and the superlative of regular adjectives are ordinarily made on the *base* of the positive, which is identified, as you know, by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.¹

¹ Occasionally an adjective is compared by adding **magis** (*more*) and **maximē** (*most*) to the positive. This is regular in adjectives like **idōneus**, **-a**, **-um** (*suitable*) where a vowel precedes the endings: **magis idōneus**, **maximē idōneus**.

Comparative: base of positive + **-ior** (m. & f.), **-ius** (n.); **-iōris**, gen.

Superlative: base of positive + **-issimus**, **-issima**, **-issimum**

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
cārus, -a, -um (<i>dear</i>)	cārior, -ius (<i>dearer</i>)	cārissimus, -a, -um (<i>dearest</i>)
lóngus, -a, -um (<i>long</i>)	lóngior, -ius (<i>longer</i>)	longíssimus, -a, -um (<i>longest</i>)
fórtis, -e (<i>brave</i>)	fórtior, -ius (<i>braver</i>)	fortíssimus, -a, -um (<i>bravest</i>)
fēlīx, gen. fēlícis (<i>happy</i>)	fēlícior, -ius (<i>happier</i>)	fēlícíssimus, -a, -um (<i>happiest</i>)
pótēns, gen. poténtis (<i>powerful</i>)	poténtior, -ius (<i>more powerful</i>)	potentíssimus, -a, -um (<i>most powerful</i>)
sápiēns, gen. sapiéntis (<i>wise</i>)	sapiéntior, -ius (<i>wiser</i>)	sapientíssimus, -a, -um (<i>wisest</i>)

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

The declension of superlatives quite simply follows the pattern of **magnus**, **-a**, **-um**. Comparatives, however, are two-ending adjectives of the third declension, but they follow the *consonant declension*; and so they constitute the chief exception to the rule that adjectives of the third declension belong to the *i-stem* declension (i.e., comparatives do *not* have the **-ī** abl. sg., **-ium** gen. pl., or **-ia** neut. nom./acc. pl. endings that characterize other third declension adjectives, as seen in Ch. 16). Memorize the following paradigm, taking special note of the endings given in bold.

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	fórtior	fórtius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortiōrem	fórtius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Abl.</i>	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

USAGE AND TRANSLATION

Comparative degree adjectives are commonly translated with *more* or the suffix *-er* and superlatives with *most* or *-est*, depending on the context and English idiom, e.g.: **fēmina sapiēntior**, *the wiser woman*; **urbs antiq̄uior**,

a more ancient city; **tempus incertissimum**, a most uncertain time; **lūx clāris-sima**, the brightest light. Though there is no direct connection between the forms, it may be helpful for mnemonic purposes to associate the Latin comparative marker **-ōr-** with English *more/-er* and the superlative marker **-ss-** with English *most/-est*.

The comparative sometimes has the force of *rather*, indicating a greater degree of some quality than usual (**lūx clārrior**, a rather bright light), or *too*, indicating a greater degree than desirable (**vīta eius erat brevior**, his/her life was too short). The superlative is sometimes translated with *very*, especially when comparing a person/thing to what is usual or ideal: **vīta eius erat brevissima**, his/her life was very short.

Quam WITH THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE

When **quam** follows a comparative degree adjective it functions as a coordinating conjunction meaning *than*, linking two items that are being compared; the same case or construction follows **quam** as precedes:

Hī librī sunt clārīōrēs quam illī, *these books are more famous than those.*

Dīcit hōs librōs esse clārīōrēs quam illōs, *he says that these books are more famous than those.*

When **quam** precedes a superlative, it functions adverbially and indicates that the person/thing modified has the greatest possible degree of a particular quality:

Amīcus meus erat vir quam iūcundissimus, *my friend was the pleasantest man possible or as pleasant as can be.*

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

When the first element to be compared was in the nominative or accusative case, **quam** was often omitted and the second element followed in the ablative case, the so-called “ablative of comparison” (which should be added to your now extensive list of ablative case uses).

Cōnsilia tua sunt clārīōra lūce, *your plans are clearer than light.*

(Cp. **cōnsilia tua sunt clārīōra quam lūx**, which means the same.)

Quis in Italiā erat clārrior Cicerōne? *Who in Italy was more famous than Cicero?*

Vīdī paucōs fēlīciōres patre tuō, *I have seen few men happier than your father.*

VOCABULARY

- cēna**, -ae, f., *dinner* (cenacle)
fórum, -ī, n., *marketplace, forum* (forensic)
lēx, **légis**, f., *law, statute*; cp. **iūs**, which emphasizes *right, justice* (legal, legislator, legitimate, loyal, colleague, college, privilege)
límen, **líminis**, n., *threshold* (liminality, subliminal, eliminate, preliminary)
lūx, **lúcis**, f., *light* (lucid, elucidate, translucent, lucubration, illustrate, illuminate)
mēnsa, -ae, f., *table, dining, dish, course*; **mēnsa secúnda**, *dessert* (the constellation Mensa)
nox, **nóctis**, f., *night* (nocturnal, nocturne, equinox, noctiluca, noctuid; cp. **pernoctō**, Ch. 39)
sómnus, -ī, m., *sleep* (somnambulate, somnambulism, somnambulist, somniferous, somniloquist, somnolent, insomnia, Sominex)
quīdam, **quaēdam**, **quiddam** (pron.) or **quóddam** (adj.), indef. pron. and adj.; as pron., *a certain one or thing, someone, something*; as adj., *a certain, some* (gen. **cuiúsdam**, dat. **cuīdam**, etc.)
puđícus, -a, -um, *modest, chaste* (impudent, pudency, pudendum; cp. **puđicitia**, *modesty, chastity*)
supérbus, -a, -um, *arrogant, overbearing, haughty, proud* (superb; cp. **superāre**)
trīstis, **tríste**, *sad, sorrowful; joyless, grim, severe* (cp. **trīstitia**, *sorrow*)
túrpis, **túrpe**, *ugly, shameful, base, disgraceful* (turpitude)
urbānus, -a, -um, *of the city, urban*; *urbane, elegant* (urbanity, urbanization, suburban, suburbanite; cp. **urbs**)
prae, prep. + abl., *in front of, before* (frequent as a prefix, e.g., **praepōnere**, *to put before, prefer*; sometimes intensifying, e.g., **praeclārus**, -a, -um, *especially famous, remarkable*; precede, prepare, preposition; cp. **praeter**, Ch. 40)
quam, adv. and conj. after comparatives, *than*; with superlatives, *as . . . as possible*: **quam fortissimus**, *as brave as possible* (cp. **quam**, *how*, Ch. 16, and do not confuse with the rel. pron. fem. acc. sg.)
tántum, adv., *only*
invítō (1), *to entertain, invite, summon* (invitation, vie)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Ille dux nescīvit sē imperium prōtinus susceptūrum esse.
2. "Quīdam," inquit, "imperium quondam petēbant et liberōs virōs opprimere cupiēbant."
3. Eōdem diē decem mīlia hostium ab duce fidēlissimō āversa ac pulsa sunt; multī mīlitēs vulnera recēperant et in agrīs iacēbant.

4. Morte tyrannī ferōcis nūntiātā, quisque sē ad ōrātōrem potentissimum magnā spē vertit.
5. Rīdēns, scrīptor illīus fābulae sapiēns aliquid iūcundius dēhinc nār-rāvit.
6. Hīs rēbus audītīs, adulēscētēs geminī propter pecūniae cupiditātem studium litterārum relinquent.
7. Rēgīna fortissima Carthāginis postea ostendit fidem semper esse sibi cāriōrem dīvitīs.
8. Negāvit sē umquam vīdisse servam fideliōrem quam hanc.
9. Iūcundior modus vītae hominibus nunc quaerendus est.
10. Crēdimus illōs vīgintī liberōs virōs fēmināsque vītā quam iūcundis-simā agere.
11. Imperātor centum mīlītēs fortissimōs prae sē herī mīsīt.
12. Lūx in illā casā nōn fuit clārissima, quod familia paucās fenestrās patefēcerat.
13. Amīcōs trīstēs excēpit, ad mēsam invītāvit, et eīs perfugium ac sō-lācium hīc dedit.
14. What is sweeter than a very pleasant life?
15. Certain men, however, say that death is sweeter than life.
16. When these three very sure signs had been reported, we sought ad-vice and comfort from the most powerful leader.
17. In that story the author says that all men seek as happy lives as pos-sible.
18. This light is always brighter than the other.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Senectūs est loquācior. (Cicero.—**loquāx**, gen. **loquācis**, *garrulous*.)
2. Tua cōnsilia omnia nōbis clārīōra sunt quam lūx. (Cicero.)
3. Quaedam remedia graviōra sunt quam ipsa perīcula. (Seneca.)
4. Eō diē virōs fortissimōs atque amantissimōs reī pūblicae ad mē vo-cāvī. (Cicero.—**amāns reī pūblicae**, i.e., *patriotic*.)
5. Quī imperia libēns accēpit, partem acerbissimā servitūtis vītāt. (Seneca.—**libēns**, gen. **libentis**, *willing*; here, as is often the case, the adj. has adverbial force.)
6. Iūcundissima dōna, ut āiunt, semper sunt ea quae auctor ipse cāra facit. (Ovid.)
7. Beātus sapiēnsque vir forum vītāt et superba līmina potentiōrum cīvium. (Horace.)
8. Quid est turpius quam ab aliquō illūdī? (Cicero.—**illūdō**, -ere, *to de-ceive*.)
9. Quid enim est stultius quam incerta prō certīs habēre, falsa prō vērīs? (*Cicero.—**falsus**, -a, -um.)

10. Saepe mihi dīcis, cārissime amīce: "Scrībe aliquid magnum; dēsidiōsissimus homō es." (Martial.—**dēsidiōsus**, -a, -um, *lazy*.)
11. Verba currunt; at manus notārii est v̄lōcior illīs; nōn lingua mea, sed manus eius, labōrem perfēcit. (Martial.—**notārius**, -iī, *stenographer*.—**v̄lōx**, gen. **v̄lōcis**, *swift*.—**perficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *to complete*.)
12. Multī putant rēs bellicās graviōrēs esse quam rēs urbānās; sed haec sententia mūtanda est, nam multae rēs urbānae sunt graviōrēs clāriōrēsque quam bellicae. (Cicero.—**bellicus**, -a, -um, *adj. of bellum*.)
13. Invītātus ad cēnam, manū sinistrā lintea neglegentiōrum sustulisti. Hoc salsum esse putās? Rēs sordidissima est! Itaque mihi lintheum remitte. (Catullus.—**lintheum**, -ī, *linen, napkin*.—**neglegēns**, gen. **neglegentis**, *careless*.—**salsus**, -a, -um, *salty; witty*.—**sordidus**, -a, -um, *dirty, mean*.)

THE NATIONS OF GAUL

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sequana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.

(*Caesar, *Bellum Gallicum* 1.1.—The places and peoples mentioned: Gaul, the Belgae, the Aquitani, the Celts or Gauls, and the rivers Garonne, Marne, and Seine.—**dīvidō**, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum, *to divide, separate*.—**incolō**, -ere, *to inhabit*; Belgae, Aquītānī, and [eī] quī are all subjects of this verb.—**ipsōrum linguā** = linguā suā.—**nostrā**, sc. linguā.—**institūtum**, -ī, *custom, institution*.—**differō**.)



Julius Caesar
Museo Pio Clementino, Vatican Museums, Vatican State

THE GOOD LIFE

Haec sunt, amīce iucundissime, quae vītam faciunt beātiōrem: rēs nōn facta labōre sed ā patre relictā, ager fēlix, parvum forī et satis ōtiī, mēns aequa, vīrēs et corpus sānum, sapientia, amīcī vērī, sine arte mēnsa, nox nōn ebria sed solūta cūrīs, nōn trīstis torus et tamen pudīcus, somnus facilis. Dēsīderā tantum quod habēs, cupe nihil; nōlī timēre ultimum diem aut spērare.

(Martial 10.47; prose adaptation.—**rēs**, here *property, wealth*.—**ā patre relictā**, i.e., inherited. **forī**, gen. of the whole with **parvum**.—**sine arte**, i.e., simple, modest.—**ebrius, -a, -um**, *drunken*.—**solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum**, *to loosen, free (from)*.—**torus, -ī**, *bed*.—**nōlī** is used with the inf. for a negative command, here *do not fear*.)



*Funeral banquet, Etruscan fresco
Tomb of the Leopards, early 5th century B.C.
Tarquinia, Italy*

ETYMOLOGY

In Sp. the comparative degree of an adjective is regularly formed by putting **más** (*more*) before the adjective: **más caro**, **más alto**. This **más** comes from the **magis**, mentioned in n. 1. Sp. and It. both retain some vestiges of the Lat. superlative ending **-issimus**. Forms with this ending, however, are not the normal superlative forms, but are used to convey the intensive idea of *very*, *exceedingly*.

Latin	Italian	Spanish	
cārissimus	carissimo	carisimo	<i>very dear</i>
clārissimus	chiarissimo	clarisimo	<i>very clear</i>
altissimus	altissimo	altisimo	<i>very high</i>

In the readings

1. loquacious, loquacity. 8. illusion, illusive, illusory. 11. notary, note. 13. lint.—From **salsus** through Fr. come “sauce,” “saucer,” “saucy,” “sausage.” “Gaul”: divide, division.—institute.—differ, differential, differentiate. “The Good Life”: inebriated.—solve, absolve, absolution, dissolve, resolve, solution, resolution, ablative absolute.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Here are some more familiar mottoes, phrases, famous quotations, and etymological tidbits **ex vocābulārīō huius capitis** (**vocābulārīum** is medieval Lat. for *vocabulary*, a list of “what you call things,” words that is, from **vocāre**): **auctor ignōtus** means *author unknown*, i.e., “anonymous”; **cēna Dominī** is the *Lord's Supper*; **dūra lēx sed lēx**, *a harsh law, but the law nevertheless*; **lēx nōn scrīpta**, *customary law* (as opposed to **lēx scrīpta**—what are the lit. meanings?—you can also figure out **lēx locī**); then there's Ovid's admonition to loners, **trīstis eris sī sōlus eris**, and the hope of one of Plautus' characters for **lēx eadem uxōrī et virō**; a legal decree of **ā mēnsā et torō**, *from table and bed* (**torus**, -ī), is a separation prohibiting husband and wife from cohabiting.

Knowing the noun **lūx** and the related verb **lūceō**, **lūcēre**, *to shine brightly*, can shed some light on these items: **lūx et vērītās** is the motto of Yale University, **lūx et lēx** is the motto of the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, pellucid explanations are perfectly clear (**per + lūc-**), translucent materials let the light shine through, and Lux soap will make you shine like light! **Lūcēte, discipulae discipulīque, et valēte!**

Special and Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

ADJECTIVES HAVING PECULIAR FORMS IN THE SUPERLATIVE

Two groups of adjectives, which are otherwise regular, have peculiar forms in the superlative:

I. Six adjectives ending in **-lis** form the superlative by adding **-limus**, **-lima**, **-limum** to the *base*.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
fácilis, -e (<i>easy</i>)	facílior, -ius (<i>easier</i>)	facíl-limus, -a, -um (<i>easiest</i>)
diffícilis, -e (<i>difficult</i>)	diffícilior, -ius (<i>more difficult</i>)	difficillimus, -a, -um (<i>most difficult</i>)
símilis, -e (<i>like</i>)	simílior, -ius (<i>more l.</i>)	simillimus, -a, -um (<i>most l.</i>)

Dissimilis (*unlike, dissimilar*), **gracilis** (*slender, thin*), and **humilis** (*low, humble*) follow this same pattern; all other **-lis** adjectives have regular superlatives (e.g., **fidélissimus**, **ūtilissimus**, etc.).

II. Any adjective which has a masculine in **-er**, regardless of the declension, forms the superlative by adding **-rimus** directly to this masculine **-er**, *not* to the base; note that the comparatives of **-er** adjectives are formed regularly, by adding **-ior**, **-ius** to the base (which, as you know, in some cases retains the **-e-** and sometimes drops it).

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
liber, -bera, -berum (free)	liberior, -ius (freer)	liber-rimus, -a, -um (freest)
pulcher, -chra, -chrum (beautiful)	pulchrior, -ius (more beautiful)	pulcherrimus, -a, -um (most beautiful)
acer, -acris, -acre (keen)	acrior, -acrius (keener)	acerrimus, -a, -um (keenest)

ADJECTIVES OF IRREGULAR COMPARISON

More important from the consideration of frequency of appearance are a few adjectives which are so irregular in their comparison that the only solution to the difficulty is memorization. However, English derivatives from the irregular forms greatly aid the memorization (see the Etymology section below). A list of the most useful of these adjectives follows.¹

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um (good)	melior, -ius (better)	optimus, -a, -um (best)
magnus, -a, -um (great)	maior, -ius (greater)	maximus, -a, -um (greatest)
malus, -a, -um (bad)	peior, -ius (worse)	peissimus, -a, -um (worst)
multus, -a, -um (much)	—, plus (more)	plurimus, -a, -um (most)
parvus, -a, -um (small)	minor, minus (smaller)	minimus, -a, -um (smallest)
(prae, pro) ² (in front of, before)	prior, -ius (former)	primus, -a, -um (first)
superus, -a, -um (that above)	superior, -ius (higher)	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> summus, -a, -um (highest, furthest) supremus, -a, -um (highest, last) </div>

¹ Others less important for this book are:

exterus, -a, -um (foreign), **exterior, -ius** (outer), **extrēmus, -a, -um** (outermost)
inferus, -a, -um (below), **inferior, -ius** (lower), **infimus, -a, -um** (lowest)
(prope, near), propior, -ius (nearer), **proximus, -a, -um** (nearest)

² There is no positive degree adj. corresponding to **prior** and **primus**, since those words, by the very definition of "priority" and "primacy," imply comparison with one or more persons or things; the prepositions **prae** and **pro**, however, are related.

DECLENSION OF **Plūs**

None of the irregular forms offers any declensional difficulty except **plūs**. In the plural **plūs** functions as an adjective (e.g., **plūrēs amīcī**), but has mixed **i**-stem and consonant-stem forms (**-ium** in the genitive plural but **-a**, not **-ia**, in the neuter nominative and accusative); in the singular it functions not as an adjective at all, but as a neuter noun which is commonly followed by a genitive of the whole (e.g., **plūs pecūniae**, *more money*, lit. *more of money*—see Ch. 15).

	Singular M. & F.	N.	Plural M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Abl.</i>	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

VOCABULARY

dēlectātiō, **dēlectātiōnis**, f., *delight, pleasure, enjoyment* (delectation, delectable, delicious, dilettante; cp. **dēlectō**, **dēlicia**, *delight*)

népōs, **nepōtis**, m., *grandson, descendant* (nephew, nepotism, niece)

sōl, **sōlis**, m., *sun* (solar, solarium, solstice, parasol)

dīligēns, gen. **dīligētis**, *diligent, careful* (diligence, diligently)

dissimilis, **dissimile**, *unlike, different* (dissimilar, dissimilarity, dissemble)

gracilis, **gracile**, *slender, thin* (gracile)

hūmilis, **hūmile**, *lowly, humble* (humility, humiliate, humiliation; cp. **humus**, Ch. 37)

maior, **maius**, comp. adj., *greater; older*; **maiōrēs**, **maiōrum**, m. pl., *ancestors* (i.e., *the older ones*; major, majority, etc.—see Etymology below).

prīmus, **-a**, **-um**, *first, foremost, chief, principal* (primary, primate, prime, primeval, primer, premier, primitive, prim, primo-geniture, prima facie, primordial, primrose)

quot, indecl. adj., *how many, as many as* (quota, quotation, quote, quotient)

sīmilis, **sīmile**, + gen. or dat., *similar (to), like, resembling* (similarly, simile, assimilate, dissimilar, dissimilarity, simulate, dissimulate, verisimilitude, assemble, resemble, simultaneous; cp. same)

sūperus, **-a**, **-um**, *above, upper*; **sūperī**, **-ōrum**, m. pl., *the gods* (superior, etc.; cp. **superō** and see Etymology below)

ūtilis, **ūtile**, *useful, advantageous* (what Latin is to YOU!—utility, from **ūtilitās**, **-tātis**; utilitarian, utilization, utilize; cp. **ūtor**, Ch. 34)

All the irregular adjectival forms given above in this lesson.

pónō, pōnere, pósuī, pōsitum, *to put, place, set* (See Etymology at end of chapter.)

próbō (1), *to test, approve, recommend* (probe, probate, probation, probative, probable, probably, probability, approbation, proof, prove, approve, approval, disprove, improve, reprove, reprobate; cp. **probitās**)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Quisque cupit quam pulcherrima atque ūtilissima dōna dare.
2. Quīdam turpēs habent plūrima sed etiam plūra petunt.
3. Ille ōrātor, ab tyrannō superbissimō expulsus, ducem iūcundiōrem et lēgēs aequiōrēs dēhinc quaesīvit.
4. Summum imperium optimīs virīs semper petendum est.
5. Senex nepōtibus trīstibus casam patefēcit et eōs trāns līmen invītāvit.
6. Ostendit hostēs ultimum signum lūce clārissimā illā nocte dedisse.
7. Iste tyrannus pessimus negāvit sē virōs liberōs umquam oppressisse.
8. Fidēlissimus servus plūs cēnae ad mēnsam accipiēbat quam trēs peiōrēs.
9. Aiunt hunc auctōrem vītā humillimā hīc agere.
10. Cūr dī superī oculōs ā rēbus hūmānīs eō tempore āvertērunt?
11. Habēsne pecūniam et rēs tuās prae rē pūblicā?
12. Sōlem post paucās nūbēs gracillimās in caelō hodiē vidēre possumus.
13. Some believe that very large cities are worse than very small ones.
14. In return for the three rather small gifts, the young man gave even more and prettier ones to his very sad mother.
15. Those very large mountains were higher than these.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Trahit mē nova vīs: videō meliōra probōque, sed peiōra tantum faciō et nesciō cūr. (Ovid.)
2. Quaedam carmina sunt bona; plūra sunt mala. (Martial.)
3. Optimum est. Nihil melius, nihil pulchrius hōc vīdī. (Terence.)
4. Spērō tē et hunc nātālem et plūrimōs aliōs quam fēlicissimōs āctūrum esse. (Pliny.—**nātālis** [diēs], *birthday*.)
5. Quoniam cōnsilium et ratiō sunt in senibus, maiōrēs nostrī summum concilium appellāvērunt senātum. (Cicero.—**concilium**, **-iī**, *council*.)
6. Plūs operae studiīque in rēbus domesticīs nōbīs nunc pōnendum est etiam quam in rēbus mīlitāribus. (Cicero.—**opera**, **-ae**, *work, effort*.—**domesticus**, **-a**, **-um**.—**mīlitāris**, **-e**.)
7. Neque enim perīculum in rē pūblicā fuit gravius umquam neque ōtium maius. (Cicero.)
8. Sumus sapientiōrēs illīs, quod nōs nātūram esse optimā ducem

scīmus. (Cicero.—**optimam**, f. by attraction to the gender of **nātūrā**.)

9. **Nātūra** minimum petit; **nātūrae** autem **sē sapiēns** accommodat. (*Seneca.—**accommodāre**, to adapt.)

10. Maximum **remedium** **īrae** mora est. (*Seneca.)

11. Quī **animum** vincit et **īram** continet, eum cum **summīs virīs** nōn comparō sed eum esse **simillimum** **deō dīcō**. (Cicero.—**comparāre**, to compare.)

12. **Dionysius**, tyrannus urbis **pulcherrimae**, erat vir **summae** in **vīctū** **temperantiae** et in omnibus **rēbus dīligentissimus** et **ācerrimus**. **Īdem** tamen erat **ferōx** ac **iniūstus**. Quā ex **rē**, sī **vērūm dīcimus**, **vidēbātur** **miserrimus**. (Cicero.—**Dionysius**, ruler of Syracuse in the 4th cen. B.C.—**vīctus**, -ūs, mode of life.—**temperantia**, -ae.—**in-iūstus**, -a, -um, unjust.—**Quā ex rē** = **Ex illā rē**.)

13. Nisi **superōs** **vertere** possum, **Acheronta** **movēbō**. (Virgil.—**Acheronta**, Gk. acc., *Acheron*, a river in the underworld, here by metonymy *the land of the dead*.)

ALLEY CAT

Caelī, Lesbia nostra, Lesbia illa,
illa Lesbia, quam Catullus ūnam
plūs quam **sē** atque **suōs** amāvit omnēs,
nunc in **quadriviīs** et **angiportīs**

5 glūbit magnanimī **Remī** nepōtēs.

(*Catullus 58; meter: hendecasyllabic.—**Caelius**, a rival of Catullus for Lesbia's favors.—**quadrivium**, -iī, crossroads.—**angiportum**, -ī, alley.—**glūbō**, -ere, to peel (back), strip (off); used of stripping the bark off trees or the skin off an animal, here in an obscene sense.—**Remus**, brother of Romulus, legendary founders of Rome.)

THANKS A LOT, TULLY!

Dīsertissime **Rōmulī** nepōtum,
quot sunt quotque **fuēre**, Marce **Tullī**,
quotque post aliīs erunt in **annīs**,
grātiās tibi **maximās** Catullus
5 agit, **pessimus** omnium **poēta**,
tantō **pessimus** omnium **poēta**
quantō tū **optimus** omnium **patrōnus**.

(*Catullus 49; meter: hendecasyllabic. The poet sends thanks to the orator and statesman, Marcus Tullius Cicero; whether or not the tone is ironic is a matter

debated by scholars.—*dīsertus*, -a, -um, *eloquent, learned*.—*fuēre* = *fuērunt*, see p. 77.—*post* = *postea*.—*tantō . . . quantō*, *just as much . . . as*.—*tū*, sc. *es*.)

AN UNCLE'S LOVE FOR HIS NEPHEW AND ADOPTED SON

Adulēscēns est cārīor mihi quam ego ipse! Atque hic nōn est filius meus sed ex frātre meō. Studia frātris iam diū sunt dissimillima meīs. Ego vītam urbānam ēgī et ōtium petīvī et, id quod quīdam fortunātius putant, uxōrem numquam habuī. Ille, autem, haec omnia fēcīt: nōn in forō sed in agrīs vītam ēgīt, parvum pecūniae accēpit, uxōrem pudīcam dūxit, duōs filiōs habuit. Ex illō ego hunc maiōrem adoptāvī mihi, ēdūxī ā parvō puerō, amāvī prō meō. In eō adulēscēnte est dēlectātiō mea; solum id est cārū mihi.

(Terence, *Adelphoe* 39–49.—*dūxit*, *he married*.—*adoptāre*.—*ēdūxī*, *I raised*.)

ETYMOLOGY

In many instances the irregular comparison of a Latin adjective can easily be remembered by English derivatives:

bonus

melior: ameliorate

optimus: optimist, optimum, optimal

magnus

maior: major, majority, mayor

maximus: maximum

malus

peior: pejorative

pessimus: pessimist

multus

plūs: plus, plural, plurality, nonplus

parvus

minor: minor, minority, minus, minute, minuet, minister, minstrel

minimus: minimum, minimize

(prō)

prior: prior, priority

prīmus: prime, primacy, primary, primeval, primitive

superus

superior: superior, superiority

summus: summit, sum, consummate

suprēmus: supreme, supremacy

Lat. *plūs* is the parent of Fr. *plus* and It. *più*, words which are placed before adjectives to form the comparative degree in those Romance languages. If the definite article is then added to these comparatives, it converts them into superlatives.

Latin	French	Italian
longior	plus long	più lungo
longissimus	le plus long	il più lungo
cārior	plus cher	più caro
cārissimus	le plus cher	il più caro

From **pōnō** come innumerable derivatives: apposite, apposition, component, composite, compost, compound, deponent, deposit, deposition, depot, exponent, exposition, expound, imposition, impost, impostor, juxtaposition, opponent, opposite, positive, post, postpone, preposition, proposition, propound, repository, supposition, transposition.

However, note that “pose” and its compounds derive, not from **pōnō** as one would think, but from the late Latin **pausāre**, which stems from Gk. **pausis**, a pause, and **pauein**, to stop. In Fr. this **pausāre** became **poser**, which took the place of **pōnō** in compounds. Consequently, the forms given above under **pōnō** are not etymologically related to the following words despite their appearance: compose, depose, expose, impose, oppose, propose, repose, suppose, transpose.

In the readings

4. natal, prenatal, postnatal, Natalie. 5. council (vs. **cōnsilium**, *counsel*), conciliate, conciliatory. 6. opera, operetta.—domesticate, etc.; cp. **domus**.—military, cp. **mīles**. 9. accommodate, accommodation. 11. comparative, incomparable. 12. victual, victualer, vittles.—temperance, intemperance.—injustice. “An Uncle’s Love”: adopt, adoption.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvē! Quid agis hodiē? Spīrasne? Spērāsne? Rīdēsne? Valēsne? Sī tū valēs, ego valeō! And here are some more **rēs Latīnae** to give you a **mēns sāna**: First, an old Latin maxim which you should now be able to read, **sapiēns nihil affīrmat quod nōn probat**. Likewise this quote from Horace (*Epistulae* 1.1.106), **sapiēns ūnō minor est Iove**, and the motto of the Jesuit order, **ad maiōrem glōriam Deī**. Now, **quid est tempestās? Pluitne? Estne frīgida? Nimbōsa?** Well, it really won’t matter, if you remember this proverb: **sōl lūcet omnibus!** (Remember **lūcēre** from last chapter?) Birds of a feather flock together and, according to another old Latin proverb, **similis in similī gaudet**.

Here are some more from the irregular comparatives and superlatives you’ve just learned: **meliōrēs priōrēs**, freely, *the better have priority*; **maximā cum laude** and **summā cum laude** (what you should have on your next diploma, **sī es dīligēns in studiō Latīnae!**); **peior bellō est timor ipse bellī** (note the abl. of comparison); **ē plūribus ūnum**, motto of the United States, *one from several*, i.e., one union from many states; **prīmus inter parēs**, *first among equals*; **prīmā faciē**, *at first sight*; and, finally, **summum bonum**, *the highest good*, which can come from studying Latin, of course: **valē!**

Subjunctive Mood; Present Subjunctive; Jussive and Purpose Clauses

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

You will recall from Ch. 1 that “mood” (from Lat. **modus**) is the “manner” of expressing a verbal action or state of being. Thus far we have encountered verbs in two of the three Latin moods, the indicative and the imperative. As you know, an imperative (from **imperāre**, *to command*) emphatically commands someone to undertake an action that is not yet going on, while indicatives (from **indicāre**, *to point out*) “indicate” real actions, i.e., actions that have in fact occurred (or have definitely not occurred) in the past, that are occurring (or are definitely not occurring) in the present, or that fairly definitely will (or will not) occur in the future.

In contrast to the indicative, the mood of actuality and factuality, the subjunctive is in general (though not always) the mood of potential, tentative, hypothetical, ideal, or even unreal action. An example in English is, “If the other student were here, he would be taking notes”; in this conditional sentence, which imagines actions that are contrary to the actual facts, English employs the auxiliaries “were” and “would” to indicate that the action described is only ideal. Among the other auxiliaries used in English to describe potential or hypothetical actions are “may,” “might,” “should,” “would,” “may have,” “would have,” etc.

Latin employs the subjunctive much more frequently than English, in a wide variety of clause types, and it uses special subjunctive verb forms rather

than auxiliaries. There are two tasks involved in mastering the subjunctive: first, learning the new forms, which is a relatively simple matter; second, learning to recognize and translate the various subjunctive clause types, which is also quite easily done, if your approach is systematic.

SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES

There are only four tenses in the subjunctive mood. The present subjunctive is introduced in this chapter and has rules for formation that vary slightly for each of the four conjugations; rules for forming the imperfect (Ch. 29), perfect, and pluperfect (Ch. 30) are the same for all four conjugations, and even for irregular verbs.

SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES

In this and subsequent chapters you will be introduced to a series of subjunctive clause types: the jussive subjunctive and purpose clauses (Ch. 28), result clauses (29), indirect questions (30), **cum** clauses (31), proviso clauses (32), conditions (33, with three distinct subjunctive types), jussive noun clauses (36), relative clauses of characteristic (38), and fear clauses (40). You should catalog these clause types in your notebook or computer file and systematically learn three details for each: (1) its definition, (2) how to recognize it in a Latin sentence, and (3) how to translate it into English.

CONJUGATION OF THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

1. laúdem	móneam	ágam	aúdiam	cápiam
2. laúdēs	móneās	ágās	aúdiās	cápiās
3. laúdet	móneat	ágat	aúdiat	cápiat
1. laudēmus	moneāmus	agāmus	audiāmus	capiāmus
2. laudētis	moneātis	agātis	audiātis	capiātis
3. laudent	moneant	agant	audiant	capiant

Note that in the first conjugation the characteristic stem vowel changes from **-ā-** in the present indicative to **-ē-** in the present subjunctive. In the other conjugations **-ā-** is consistently the sign of the present subjunctive, but with variations in the handling of the actual stem vowel (shortened in the second, replaced in the third, altered to short **-i-** in the fourth/third **-iō**); the sentence “we fear a liar” will help you remember that the actual vowels preceding the personal endings are **-ē-**, **-eā-**, **-ā-**, and **-iā-** for the first, second, third, and fourth/third **-iō** conjugations, respectively.

Note that a subjunctive may be mistaken for an indicative, if you neglect to recognize a verb’s conjugation (e.g., cp. **agat** with **amat**, and **amet** with **monet**), so remember your vocabulary.

The present passive subjunctive naturally follows the pattern of the active except that passive endings are used.

laúder, laudéris (and remember the alternate **-re** ending, Ch. 18), laudētur;
 laudémur, laudéminī, laudéntur
 mónear, moneáris, moneátur; moneámur, moneáminī, moneántur
 ágar, agáris, agáthur; agámur, agáminī, agántur
 áudiar, audiáris, audiáthur; audiámur, audiáminī, audiántur
 cápiar, capiáris, capiáthur; capiámur, capiáminī, capiántur

TRANSLATION

While *may* is sometimes used to translate the present subjunctive (e.g., in purpose clauses), the translation of all subjunctive tenses, in fact, varies with the type of clause, as you will see when each is introduced.

THE JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

As the term “subjunctive” (from **subiungere**, *to subjoin, subordinate*) suggests, the subjunctive was used chiefly in subordinate (or dependent) clauses. However, the subjunctive was also employed in certain types of main, or independent, clauses. The “jussive” subjunctive (from **iubēre**, *to order*) is among the most important of these independent uses, and the only one formally introduced in this book. As the term implies, the jussive expresses a command or exhortation, especially in the first or third person, singular or plural (the imperative is generally used for the second person); **nē** is employed for negative commands. The clause type is easily recognized, since the sentence’s main verb (and often its only verb) is subjunctive; while *may* and *should* can sometimes be employed in translating the jussive subjunctive (particularly with the second person: **semper spērēs**, *you should always hope*), *let* is the English auxiliary most often used, followed by the subject noun or pronoun (in the objective case, i.e., *me, us, him, her, it, them*).

Cōgitem nunc dē hāc rē, et tum nōn errābō, *let me now think about this matter, and then I will not make a mistake.*

Discipulus discat aut discēdat, *let the student either learn or leave.*

Doceāmus magnā cum dēlectātiōne linguam Latīnam, *let us teach the Latin language with great delight.*

Nē id faciāmus, *let us not do this.*

Audeant illī virī et fēminae esse fortēs, *let those men and women dare to be brave.*

PURPOSE CLAUSES

A purpose clause is a subordinate clause indicating the purpose or objective of the action in the main clause; e.g., “we study Latin *so that we may learn more about ancient Rome*” or “we study Latin *to improve our English*.” As seen in this second example, English often employs an infinitive to express purpose, but that use of the infinitive is rare in Latin prose (though not unusual in verse). Instead Latin most commonly employed a subjunctive clause introduced by **ut** or, for a negative purpose, **nē**; the auxiliary *may* (as in the first English example above) is frequently used in translating the present tense in a purpose clause, but often we can translate with an infinitive (if the subject of the purpose clause is the same as that of the main clause). Study carefully the following Latin sentences and the several acceptable translations:

Hoc dīcit **ut** eōs **iuvet**.

He says this to help them.
in order to help them.
that he may help them.
so that he may help them.
in order that he may help them.

The first two translation options given above are more colloquial, the others more formal.

Discēdit **nē** id **audiat**.

He leaves in order not to hear this.
so that he may not hear this.

Cum cūrā docet **ut** discipulī bene **discant**.

He teaches with care so (that) his students may learn well.

Hoc facit **nē** capiātur.

He does this in order not to be captured.

Librōs legimus **ut** multa **discāmus**.

We read books (in order) to learn many things.

Bonōs librōs nōbīs dent **nē** malōs **legāmus**.

Let them give us good books so that we may not read bad ones.

You should have no difficulty recognizing a purpose clause: look for a subordinate clause, introduced by **ut** or **nē**, ending with a subjunctive verb, and answering the question “why?” or “for what purpose?”

VOCABULARY

arma, **-ōrum**, n. pl., *arms, weapons* (armor, army, armament, armada, armature, armistice, armadillo, alarm, disarmament, gendarme)

- cúrsus**, -ūs, m., *running, race; course* (courser, cursor, cursory, cursive, concourse, discourse, recourse, precursor, excursion; cp. **currō**)
- lūna**, -ae, f., *moon* (lunar, lunacy, lunate, lunatic, lunation, interlunar)
- occāsiō**, **occāsiōnis**, f., *occasion, opportunity* (occasional; cp. **occidō**, Ch. 31)
- párēns**, **paréntis**, m./f., *parent* (parentage, parental, parenting; cp. **pariō**, **parere**, to give birth to)
- stēlla**, -ae, f., *star, planet* (stellar, constellation, interstellar)
- vēsper**, **vēsp̄eris** or **vēsp̄erī**, m., *evening; evening star* (vesper, vesperal, vespertine)
- mórtuus**, -a, -um, *dead* (mortuary; cp. **mors**, **mortālis**, **immortālis**, and, Ch. 34, **morior**)
- prīnceps**, gen. **prīncipis**, *chief, foremost*; m./f. noun, *leader, emperor* (prince, principal, principality; cp. **prīmus**, **prīncipium**)
- ut**, conj. + subj., *in order that, so that, that, in order to, so as to, to*; + indic., *as, when*
- nē**, adv. and conj. with subjunctives of command and purpose, *not; in order that . . . not, that . . . not, in order not to*
- cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cēssī**, **cēssum**, *to go, withdraw; yield to, grant, submit* (accede, access, accession, antecedent, ancestor, cede, concede, deceased, exceed, intercede, precede, proceed, recede, secede, succeed; cp. **discēdō**)
- dēdicō** (1), *to dedicate* (dedication, dedicatory, rededication)
- ēgeō**, **egēre**, **ēguī** + abl. or gen., *to need, lack, want* (indigence, indigent; do not confuse with **ēgī**, from **agō**)
- épleō**, -**plēre**, -**plēvī**, -**plētum**, *to fill, fill up, complete* (expletive, expletory, deplete, replete; cp. **plēnus**, **plēō**, *to fill*)
- praéstō**, -**stāre**, -**stitī**, -**stitum**, *to excel; exhibit, show, offer, supply, furnish*
- táceō**, **tacēre**, **tácuī**, **tácitum**, *to be silent, leave unmentioned* (tacit, taciturn, taciturnity, reticence, reticent)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Auctor sapiēns et dīligēns turpia vītet et bona probet.
2. Itaque prō patriā etiam maiōra meliōraque nunc faciāmus.
3. Nepōs tuus ā mēnsā discēdat nē ista verba acerba audiat.
4. Nē imperātor superbus crēdat sē esse fēlīciōrem quam virum humilimum.
5. Quisque petit quam fēlīcissimum et urbānissimum modum vītae.
6. Quīdam dēlectātiōnēs et beneficia aliīs praestant ut beneficia similia recipiant.
7. Multī medicī lūcem sōlis fuisse prīmum remedium putant.
8. Imperium ducī potentiōrī dabunt ut hostēs ācerriōs āvertat.

9. His verbis tristibus nuntiatis, pars hostium duos principes suos reliquit.
10. Maiores putabant deos superos habere corpora humana pulcherrima et fortissima.
11. Uxor pudica eius haec decem utilissima tum probavit.
12. Let him not think that those dissimilar laws are worse than the others (translate with and without **quam**).
13. They will send only twenty men to do this very easy thing in the forum.
14. They said: "Let us call the arrogant emperor a most illustrious man in order not to be expelled from the country."
15. Therefore, let them not order this very wise and very good woman to depart from the dinner.

SENTENTIAE ANTICVAE

1. Ratio ducat, non fortuna. (*Livy.)
2. Arma togae cedant. (Cicero.—**toga, -ae**, the garment of peace and civil, in contrast to military, activity.)
3. Ex urbe nunc discende ne metu et armis opprimar. (Cicero.)
4. Nunc una res mihi protinus est facienda ut maximum otium et solacium habeam. (Terence.)
5. Rapiamus, amici, occasionem de die. (*Horace.)
6. Corpus enim somno et multis aliis rebus eget ut valeat; animus ipse se alit. (Seneca.)
7. Qui beneficium dedit, taceat; narret qui accipit. (*Seneca.)
8. De mortuis nihil nisi bonum dicamus. (Diogenes Laertius.)
9. Parens ipse nec habeat vitia nec toleret. (Quintilian.)
10. In hac re ratio habenda est ut monitio acerbitate careat. (Cicero.—**monitio, -onis**, admonition.—**acerbitas, -tatis**, noun of **acerbus**.)
11. Feminae ad ludos semper veniunt ut videant—et ut ipsae videantur. (Ovid.)
12. Arma virumque cano qui primus a litoribus Troiae ad Italiam venit. (Virgil.—**cano, -ere**, to sing about.)

PLEASE REMOVE MY NAME FROM YOUR MAILING LIST!

Cum non mitto meos tibi, Pontiliane, libellos?
Ne mihi tu mittas, Pontiliane, tuos.

(*Martial 7.3; meter: elegiac couplet. Roman poets, just like American writers, would often exchange copies of their works with one another; but Pontilianus' poems are not Martial's cup of tea!—**mitto**: final **-o** was often shortened in Latin verse.—**Pontilianus, -i**.—**Ne . . . mittas**, not jussive, but purpose, following the implied statement, "I don't send mine to you. . .")

TO HAVE FRIENDS ONE MUST BE FRIENDLY

Ut praestem Pyladē, aliquis mihi praestet Orestē.

Hoc nōn fit verbīs, Mārce; ut amēris, amā.

(*Martial 6.11.9–10; meter: elegiac couplet. Orestes and Pylades were a classic pair of very devoted friends; Martial cannot play the role of Pylades unless someone proves a real Orestes to him.—**Pyladē** and **Orestē** are Greek acc. sg. forms.—**fit**, *is accomplished*.)



Pylades and Orestes Brought as Victims before Iphigenia
Benjamin West, 1766, Tate Gallery, London, Great Britain

THE DAYS OF THE WEEK

Diēs dictī sunt ā deīs quōrum nōmina Rōmānī quibusdam stēllīs dēdicāvērunt. Primum enim diem ā Sōle appellāvērunt, quī prīnceps est omnium stēllārum ut īdem diēs est prae omnibus diēbus aliīs. Secundum diem ā Lūnā appellāvērunt, quae ex Sōle lūcem accēpit. Tertium ab stēllā Mārtis, quae vesper appellātur. Quārtum ab stēllā Mercuriī. Quīntum ab stēllā Iovis. Sextum ā Veneris stēllā, quam Lūciferum appellāvērunt, quae inter omnēs stēllās plūrimum lūcis habet. Septimum ab stēllā Sātūrnī, quae dīcitur cursum suum trīgintā annīs explēre. Apud Hebraeos autem diēs prīmus dīcitur ūnus diēs sabbatī, quī in linguā nostrā diēs dominicus est, quem pāgānī Sōlī dēdicāvērunt. Sabbatum autem septimus diēs ā dominicō est, quem pāgānī Sātūrnō dēdicāvērunt.

(Isidore of Seville, *Orīginēs* 5.30, 7th cen.—**Mārs**, **Mārtis**.—**Mercurius**, **-ī**.—**Iuppiter**, **Iovis**.—**Venus**, **Veneris**.—**Lūciferus**, **-ī**, *Lucifer*, *light-bringer*.—**Sātūrnus**, **-ī**.—**trīgintā**, **30**.—**Hebraeus**, **-ī**, *Hebrew*.—**sabbatum**, **-ī**, *the Sabbath*; **ūnus diēs sabbatī**, i.e., *the first day after the Sabbath*.—**dominicus**, **-a**, **-um**, *of the Lord*, *the Lord's*.—**pāgānus**, **-ī**, *rustic*, *peasant*; here, *pagan*.)

ETYMOLOGY

“Alarm” derives ultimately from It. **all’arme** (*to arms*), which stands for **ad illa arma**.

From **cessō** (1), an intensive form of **cēdō**: cease, cessation, incessant.

The **-ā-** which is consistently found in the present subjunctive of all conjugations except the first in Latin is similarly found in the present subjunctive of all conjugations except the first in both Italian and Spanish. And Spanish even has the characteristic **-ē-** of the Latin in the present subjunctive of the first conjugation.

In the readings

“Days of the Week”: martial.—mercury, mercurial.—Jovian, by Jove! jovial.—Venusian, venereal, venery.—lucifer, luciferase, luciferin, luciferous.—Saturnian, Saturday, saturnine.—Dominic, Dominica, Dominican, dominical; cp. **dominus/domina**.—paganism, paganize.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Here are some nuggets from the new Vocab.: teachers and guardians can serve **in locō parentis; mortuī nōn mordent**, “dead men tell no tales” (lit., *the dead don’t bite!*); **occāsiō fūrem facit**, *opportunity makes a thief*; those who know about Watergate will now recognize the etymology of the “expletives deleted” (four-letter words that “fill out” the sentences of vulgar and illiterate folk!); an **ēditio princeps** is a *first edition*; **tacet**, a musical notation calling for a vocalist or instrumentalist to be silent; related to **cursus** is **curriculum**, *running, course, course of action*, hence a résumé provides your **curriculum vitae**; and the motto of New York University (**filiō meō grātiās!**), a good one for Latin students, is **perstāre et praestāre**, *to persevere and to excel*.

Now let’s focus on jussives: first off, I hope that all my students in Wyoming recognized **arma togae cēdant** as their state motto; another motto, with this new verb **cēdere** and an imperative rather than a jussive, is Virgil’s **nē cēde malis**, *yield not to evils*; Vegetius, an ancient military analyst, has advised us, **quī dēsiderat pācem, praeparet bellum**; and I’m certain all the *Star Wars* fans can decipher this: **sit vīs tēcum!**

Before bidding you farewell, friends, let me point out that the jussive subjunctive, common in the first and third person, is sometimes used in the second as well, in lieu of an imperative, and translated with *should* or *may*; an example is seen in this anonymous proverb, which makes the same point as the Pylades reading above: **ut amicum habeās, sis amicus**, *in order to have a friend, you should be a friend*. By the way, I call first person plural jussives the “salad subjunctives” (remember VENI, VIDI, VEGI?) because they always contain “let us”: GROAN!! On that punny note lettuce juss say goodbye: **amīcī amīcaeque meae, semper valeātis!**

Imperfect Subjunctive; Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of Sum and Possum; Result Clauses

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The imperfect subjunctive is perhaps the easiest of all the subjunctive tenses to recognize and form. For all verbs it is in effect simply the present active infinitive + the present system personal endings, active and passive, with the **-ē-** long (except, as usual, before final **-m**, **-r**, and **-t**, and both final and medial **-nt/-nt-**). Sample forms are given in the following paradigms; for complete conjugations, see the Appendix (p. 453–54).

1. laudāre-m	laudāre-r	ágerer	audírem	cáperem
2. laudārē-s	laudārē-ris	agerérís	audírēs	cáperēs
3. laudāre-t	laudārē-tur	agerétur	audíret	cáperet
1. laudārē-mus	laudārē-mur	agerémur	audírēmus	caperémus
2. laudārē-tis	laudārē-minī	agerēminī	audírētis	caperētis
3. laudāre-nt	laudārē-ntur	ageréntur	audírent	cáperent

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF Sum AND Possum

The present subjunctives of **sum** and **possum** are irregular (though they do follow a consistent pattern) and must be memorized. The imperfect subjunctives, however, follow the rule given above.

Present Subjunctive		Imperfect Subjunctive	
1. sim	póssim	éssem	póssem
2. sīs	póssīs	éssēs	póssēs
3. sit	póssit	éssēt	póssēt
1. sīmus	possīmus	essēmus	possēmus
2. sītis	possītis	essētis	possētis
3. sint	póssint	éssent	póssent

Particular care should be taken to distinguish between the forms of the present and the imperfect subjunctive of **possum**.

USE AND TRANSLATION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The imperfect subjunctive is used in a variety of clause types, including purpose and result clauses, when the main verb is a past tense. As for all subjunctives, the translation depends upon the type of clause, but auxiliaries sometimes used with the imperfect include *were*, *would*, and, in purpose clauses, *might* (vs. *may* for the present tense). Study these sample sentences containing purpose clauses:

Hoc dīcit **ut** eōs **iuvet**.

*He says this (in order) to help them.
so that he **may** help them.*

Hoc dīxit (dīcēbat) **ut** eōs **iuvāret**.

*He said (kept saying) this (in order) to help them.
so that he **might** help them.*

Hoc facit **nē** urbs **capiātur**.

*He does this so that the city **may** not be captured.*

Hoc fēcit (faciēbat) **nē** urbs **caperētur**.

*He did (was doing) this so that the city **might** not be captured.*

Remember that in order to master the subjunctive (notice the purpose clause?!) you must 1) learn a definition for each clause type, 2) know how to recognize each, and 3) know the proper translation for the subjunctive verb in each type. Keep these three points in mind—*definition, recognition,*

translation—as you proceed to the following discussion of result clauses and to the subsequent chapters in this book.

RESULT CLAUSES

A result clause is a subordinate clause that shows the result of the action in the main clause; the purpose clause answers the question “*why* is (was) it being done?”, while the result clause answers the question “*what* is (was) the *outcome*?” Examples in English are: “it is raining so hard *that the streets are flooding*” and “she studied Latin so diligently *that she knew it like a Roman*.” Notice that English introduces such clauses with “*that*” and uses the indicative mood, generally with *no auxiliary* (i.e., neither “*may*” nor “*might*”).

Latin result clauses begin with **ut** and contain (usually at the end) a subjunctive verb. The result clause can be easily recognized, and distinguished from a purpose clause, by the sense and context and also by the fact that the main clause usually contains an adverb (**ita**, **tam**, **sic**, *so*) or adjective (**tantus**, *so much, so great*) indicating degree and signaling that a result clause is to follow. Moreover, if the clause describes a negative result, it will contain some negative word such as **nōn**, **nihil**, **nēmō**, **numquam** or **nūllus** (vs. a negative purpose clause, which is introduced by **nē**). Analyze carefully the following examples, and note that in the result clauses (vs. the purpose clauses) the subjunctive verb is regularly translated *as an indicative*, without an auxiliary (“*may*” or “*might*” are used only in those instances where a potential or ideal result, rather than an actual result, is being described):

Tanta fēcit **ut** urbem servāret, *he did such great things that he saved the city.* (Result)

Haec fēcit **ut** urbem servāret, *he did these things that he might save the city.* (Purpose)

Tam strēnuē labōrat **ut** multa perficiat, *he works so energetically that he accomplishes many things.* (Result)

Strēnuē labōrat **ut** multa perficiat, *he works energetically so that he may accomplish many things.* (Purpose)

Hoc **tantā** benevolentiā dīxit **ut** eōs **nōn** offenderet, *he said this with such great kindness that he did not offend them.* (Result)

Hoc magnā benevolentiā dīxit **nē** eōs offenderet, *he said this with great kindness in order that he might not offend them.* (Purpose)

Saltus erat angustus, **ut** paucī Graecī multōs mīlitēs prohibēre possent, *the pass was narrow, so that a few Greeks were able to stop many soldiers.* (Result)

In this last example you will notice that there is no “signal word” such as **ita** or **tam** in the main clause, but it is clear from the context that the **ut** clause indicates the *result* of the pass’s narrowness (the pass was clearly not designed by nature with the purpose of obstructing Persians, but it was so narrow that the Persians were in fact obstructed by it).

VOCABULARY

fātum, -ī, n., *fate, death* (fatal, fatalism, fatality, fateful, fairy; cp. **fābula**, **fāma**, and **for**, Ch. 40)

ingénium, -īī, n., *nature, innate talent* (ingenuity, genius, genial, congenial; cp. **genus**, **gens**, **gignō**, *to create, give birth to*)

moénia, **moénium**, n. pl., *walls of a city* (munitions, ammunition; cp. **mūniō**, *to fortify*)

nāta, -ae, f., *daughter* (prenatal, postnatal, Natalie; cp. **nātūra**, **nātālis**, *of birth, natal*, **nāscor**, Ch. 34)

ōsculum, -ī, n., *kiss* (osculate, osculation, osculant, oscular, osculatory)

sīdus, **sīderis**, n., *constellation, star* (sidereal, consider, desire)

dīgnus, -a, -um + abl., *worthy, worthy of* (dignify, dignity from **dignitās**, Ch. 38, indignation from **indignātiō**, **deign**, **disdain**, **dainty**)

dūrus, -a, -um, *hard, harsh, rough, stern, unfeeling, hardy, difficult* (dour, durable, duration, during, duress, endure, obdurate)

tāntus, -a, -um, *so large, so great, of such a size* (tantamount)

dēnique, adv., *at last, finally, lastly*

íta, adv. used with adjs., vbs., and advs., *so, thus*

quídem, postpositive adv., *indeed, certainly, at least, even*; **nē . . . quídem**, *not . . . even*

sīc, adv. most commonly with verbs, *so, thus* (sic)

tam, adv. with adjs. and advs., *so, to such a degree*; **tam . . . quam**, *so . . . as*

vērō, adv., *in truth, indeed, to be sure, however* (very, verily, etc.; cp. **vērus**, **vēritās**)

cóndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *to put together or into, store; found, establish* (= **con-** + **dō**, **dare**; **condiment**, **abscond**, **recondite**, **sconce**)

conténdō, -téndere, -téndī, -téntum, *to strive, struggle, contend; hasten* (contender, contentious; cp. **tendō**, *to stretch, extend*)

mólliō, **mollīre**, **mollīvī**, **mollītum**, *to soften; make calm or less hostile* (mollescent, mollify, mollusk, emollient; cp. **mollis**, *soft, mild*)

púgnō (1), *to fight* (pugnacious, impugn, pugilist, pugilism; cp. **oppugnō**, Ch. 39)

respóndeō, -spondēre, -spóndī, -spónsum, *to answer* (respond, response, responsive, responsibility, correspond)

súrgō, **súrgere**, **surréxī**, **surréctum**, *to get up, arise* (surge, resurgent, resurrection, insurgent, insurrection, source, resource)

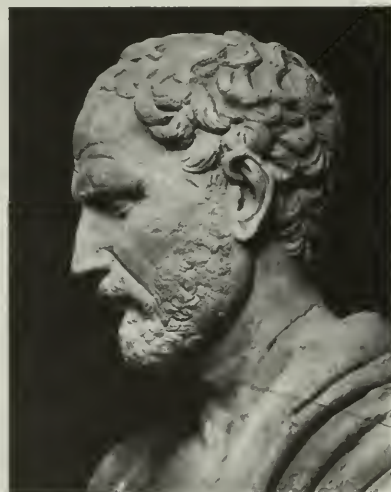
PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Prīnceps arma meliōra in manibus mīlitum posuit, ut hostēs ter-rērent.
2. Hostēs quidem negāvērunt sē arma dissimilia habēre.
3. Pars mīlitum lūcem diēi vītāvit nē hīc vidērentur.
4. Sōlem prīmam lūcem caelī superī, lūnam prīmam lūcem vesperī, et stēllās oculōs noctis appellābant.
5. Illī adulēscētēs sapientiae dēnique cēdant ut fēlīciōrēs hīs sint.
6. Sapientēs putant beneficia esse potentiōra quam verba acerba et turpia.
7. Quīdam magister verba tam dūra discipulīs dīxit ut discēderent.
8. Respondērunt auctōrem hōrum novem remediōrum esse medicam potentissimam.
9. Nihil vērō tam facile est ut sine labōre id facere possīmus.
10. Prō labōre studiōque patria nostra nōbīs plūrimās occāsiōnēs bonās praestat.
11. Parentēs plūrima ōscula dedērunt nātae gracilī, in quā maximam dēlectātiōnem semper inveniēbant.
12. The words of the philosopher were very difficult, so that those listening were unable to learn them.
13. The two women wished to understand these things so that they might not live base lives.
14. Those four wives were so pleasant that they received very many kindnesses.
15. He said that the writer's third poem was so beautiful that it delighted the minds of thousands of citizens.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Omnia vincit Amor; et nōs cēdāmus Amōrī. (Virgil.)
2. Urbem clārissimam condidī; mea moenia vīdī; explēvī cursum quem Fāta dederant. (Virgil.)
3. Ita dūrus erās ut neque amōre neque precibus mollīrī possēs. (Terence.—**prex, precis**, f., *prayer*.)
4. Nēmō quidem tam ferōx est ut nōn mollīrī possit, cultūrā datā. (Horace.—**cultūra**, -ae.)
5. Difficile est saturam nōn scrībere; nam quis est tam patiēns malae urbis ut sē teneat? (Juvenal.—**patiēns**, gen. **patientis**, *tolerant of*.)
6. Fuit quondam in hāc rē públicā tanta virtūs ut virī fortēs civem perniciosum ācriōribus poenīs quam acerbissimum hostem reprime-rent. (Cicero.—**perniciōsus**, -a, -um, *pernicious*.—**re-primō**, cp. **op-primō**.)
7. Ita praeclāra est recuperātiō libertātis ut nē mors quidem in hāc rē sit fugienda. (Cicero.—**recuperātiō**, -ōnis, *recovery*.)

8. Nē ratiōnēs meōrum perīculōrum ūtilitātem reī pūblicae vincant. (Cicero.—**ūtilitās, -tātis, advantage**; cp. **ūtilis**.)
9. Eō tempore Athēniēnsēs tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut decemplex numerum hostium superārent, et hōs sīc perterrūerunt ut in Asiam refugerent. (Nepos.—**Athēniēnsēs, -ium, Athenians**.—**decemplex, -icis, tenfold**.—**per-terreō**.)
10. Ōrātor exemplum dignum petat ab Dēmosthene illō, in quō tantum studium tantusque labor fuisse dīcuntur ut impedīmenta nātūrae dīligentiā industriāque superāret. (Cicero.—**exemplum, -ī, example**.—**Dēmostenēs, -thenis**, a famous Greek orator.—**impedīmentum, -ī**.—**dīligentia, -ae**.—**industria, -ae**.)



Demosthenes
Vatican Museums, Vatican State

11. Praecepta tua sint brevia ut cito mentēs discipulōrum ea discant teneantque memoriā fidēli. (Horace.—**praeceptum, -ī, precept**.)
12. Nihil tam difficile est ut nōn possit studiō invēstīgārī. (Terence.—**invēstīgāre, to track down, investigate**.)
13. Bellum autem ita suscipiātur ut nihil nisi pāx quaesīta esse videātur. (Cicero.)
14. Tanta est vīs prohibitātis ut eam etiam in hoste dīligāmus. (Cicero.)

HOW MANY KISSES ARE ENOUGH?

Quaeris, Lesbia, quot bāsia tua sint mihi satis? Tam multa bāsia quam magnus numerus Libyssae harēnae aut quam sīdera multa quae, cum tacet nox, furtīvōs amōrēs hominum vident—tam bāsia multa (nēmō numerum scīre potest) sunt satis Catullō īnsānō!

(Catullus 7; prose adaptation.—**quot . . . sint, how many . . . are** (an indirect question; see Ch. 30)—**Libyssae, Libyan, African**.—**harēna, -ae, sand**, here = *the grains of sand*.—**furtīvus, -a, -um, stolen, secret**.—**īnsānus, -a, -um**.)

THE NERVOUSNESS OF EVEN A GREAT ORATOR

Ego dēhinc ut respondērem surrēxī. Quā sollicitūdine animī surgēbam—dī immortalēs—et quō timōre! Semper quidem magnō cum metū incipiō dīcere. Quotiēnscumque dīcō, mihi videor in iūdicium venīre nōn solum ingeniī sed etiam virtūtis atque officiī. Tum vērō ita sum perturbātus ut omnia timērem. Dēnique mē collēgī et sic pugnāvī, sic omnī ratiōne contendī ut nēmō mē neglēxisse illam causam putāret.

(Cicero, *Prō Cluentiō* 51.—sollicitūdō, -dinis, f., anxiety.—quotiēnscumque, adv., whenever.—The genitives ingeniī, virtūtis, and officiī all modify iūdicium.—perturbāre, to disturb, confuse.—colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, to gather, collect, control.)

YOU'RE ALL JUST WONDERFUL!

Nē laudet dignōs, laudat Callistratus omnēs:
cui malus est nēmō, quis bonus esse potest?

(*Martial 12.80; meter: elegiac couplet.—dignōs, i.e., only the deserving.—Callistratus, a Greek name, meant to suggest perhaps a former slave.—quis . . . potest, supply eī, antecedent of cui, to a man to whom.)

ETYMOLOGY

The adverbial ending **-mente** or **-ment** which is so characteristic of Romance languages derives from Lat. **mente** (abl. of **mēns**) used originally as an abl. of manner but now reduced to an adverbial suffix. The following examples are based on Latin adjectives which have already appeared in the vocabularies.

Latin Words	It. Adverb	Sp. Adverb	Fr. Adverb
dūrā mente	duramente	duramente	durement
clārā mente	chiaramente	claramente	clairement
sōlā mente	solamente	solamente	seulement
certā mente	certamente	certamente	certainement
dulcī mente	dolcemente	dulcemente	doucement
brevī mente	brevemente	brevemente	bièvement
facilī mente	facilmente	facilmente	facilement

Lat. **sic** is the parent of It. **si**, Sp. **sí**, and Fr. **si** meaning *yes*.

In the readings

3. precatory, precarious, pray, prayer. 5. patient. 10. exemplar, exemplary, exemplify. 12. vestige, vestigial. "Nervousness": solicitous, solicitude.—perturbation.—collection. "Kisses": arena.—furtive.—insanity.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvē! Long-time *Tonight Show* fans will know why I call result clauses "Johnny Carson clauses": during his monologue, Johnny began many an

anecdote with the likes of “I saw this fellow the other night who was *so funny . . .*”. Ed McMahon (or some bloke from the audience) then chimes in, “*How funny was he, Johnny?*” and Johnny replies, always with a result clause, “*Why, he was so funny that . . . !*”

Sunt multae dēlectātiōnēs in novō vocābulārīō nostrō: e.g., there’s Virginia’s state motto, **sic semper tyrannīs**, *thus always to tyrants* (death, i.e.!), and **ingenium**, which really means *something inborn*, like a Roman man’s **genius** (his inborn guardian spirit, counterpart to the woman’s **iūnō**, magnified and deified in the goddess Juno); the connection of **moenia** and **mūnīre** reminds us that fortification walls were the ancients’ best munitions, and there’s the old proverb **praemonitus, praemūnītus**, *forewarned (is) forearmed*; **sic** is an editor’s annotation, meaning *thus (it was written)*, and used to identify an error or peculiarity in a text being quoted.

And here’s a brief “kissertation” on the nicest word in this new list: **ōsculum** was the native word for *kiss* (vs. **bāsium**, which the poet Catullus seems to have introduced into the language from the north); it is actually the diminutive of **ōs**, **ōris** (Ch. 14) and so means literally *little mouth* (which perhaps proves the Romans “puckered up” when they smooched!). Catullus, by the way, loved to invent words, and one was **bāsiātiō**, *kissification* or *smooch-making* (“smooch,” by the way, is not Latinate, alas, but Germanic and related to “smack,” as in “to smack one’s lips,” which one might do before enjoying either a kiss or a slice of toast with “Smucker’s”!). **Rīdēte et valēte!**



Reconstruction of the Roman Forum, Soprintendenza alle Antichità, Rome, Italy

Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive; Indirect Questions; Sequence of Tenses

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

Perfect system subjunctives, like perfect system indicatives, all follow the same basic rules of formation, regardless of the conjugation to which they belong. For the perfect subjunctive active, add **-erī-** + the personal endings to the perfect stem (shortening the **-i-** before **-m**, **-t**, and **-nt**); for the pluperfect active, add **-issē-** + the personal endings to the perfect stem (shortening the **-e-** before **-m**, etc.). For the passives, substitute the subjunctives **sim** and **essem** for the equivalent indicatives **sum** and **eram**.

The forms of **laudō** are shown below; those for the other model verbs (which follow the very same pattern) are provided in the Appendix.

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

Sg.	laudāv-erim, laudāverīs, laudāverit
Pl.	laudāverīmus, laudāverītis, laudāverint

Note that these forms are identical to those of the future perfect indicative except for the first person singular and the long **-ī-** in certain of the subjunctive forms; the identical forms can be distinguished as indicative or subjunctive by sentence context.

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

Sg. laudāv-íssem, laudāvíssēs, laudāvísset

Pl. laudāvissēmus, laudāvissētis, laudāvissent

Note that these forms resemble the perfect active infinitive, **laudāvisse**, + the endings (with the **-ē-** long except before **-m**, etc.; cp. the imperfect subjunctive, which resembles the present active infinitive + endings).

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

Sg. laudātus, -a, -um sim, laudātus sīs, laudātus sit

Pl. laudātī, -ae, -a sīmus, laudātī sītis, laudātī sint

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

Sg. laudātus, -a, -um éssēm, laudātus éssēs, laudātus éssēt

Pl. laudātī, -ae, -a essēmus, laudātī essētis, laudātī éssent

TRANSLATION AND USAGE

As with the present and imperfect subjunctives, the perfect and pluperfect are employed in a variety of clauses (in accordance with the sequence of tenses discussed below) and with a variety of translations. Just as “may” and “might/would” are *sometimes* used in translating the present and imperfect, respectively, so “may have” and “might have/would have” are *sometimes* employed with the perfect and pluperfect; likewise, they are often translated as simple indicatives: the best procedure is to learn the rules for translation of each clause type.

SYNOPSIS

You have now learned to conjugate a verb fully in all of its finite forms; following is a complete third person singular synopsis of **agō**, **agere**, **ēgī**, **āctum** (cp. Ch. 21):

Indicative Mood

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut.Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	ágit	áget	agēbat	ēgit	ēgerit	ēgerat
Pass.	ágitur	agētur	agēbātur	áctus est	áctus érit	áctus érat

Subjunctive Mood

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut.Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	ágat	——	ágeret	ēgerit	——	ēgisset
Pass.	agātur	——	agerētur	áctus sit	——	áctus ésset

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

An indirect question is a subordinate clause which reports some question indirectly, i.e., not via a direct quotation (e.g., "they asked what Gaius was doing" vs. "they asked, 'What is Gaius doing?'"); as such, it is comparable in conception to an indirect statement, which reports indirectly, not a question, but some affirmative statement (see Ch. 25). The indirect question, however, uses a subjunctive verb (not an infinitive) and is easily distinguished from other subjunctive clause types since it is introduced by some interrogative word such as **quis/quid, quī/quae/quod** (i.e., the interrogative adjective), **quam, quandō, cūr, ubi, unde, uter, utrum . . . an** (*whether . . . or*), **-ne** (attached to the clause's first word, = *whether*), etc.; moreover, the verb in the main clause is ordinarily a verb of speech, mental activity, or sense perception (including many of the same verbs that introduce indirect statements: see the list in Ch. 25).

The subjunctive verb in an indirect question is usually translated as though it were an indicative in the same tense (i.e., *without* any auxiliary such as "may" or "might"). Compare the first three examples below, which are direct questions, with the next three, which contain indirect questions:

Quid Gāius facit?	<i>What is Gaius doing?</i>
Quid Gāius fēcit?	<i>What did Gaius do?</i>
Quid Gāius faciet?	<i>What will Gaius do?</i>
Rogant quid Gāius faciat.	<i>They ask what Gaius is doing.</i>
Rogant quid Gāius fēcērit.	<i>They ask what Gaius did.</i>
Rogant quid Gāius factūrus sit.	<i>They ask what Gaius will do</i> <i>(lit., is about to do).</i>

Factūrus sit in this last example is a form sometimes called the "future active periphrastic"; in the absence of an actual future subjunctive, this combination of a form of **sum** + the future active participle (cp. the passive periphrastic, consisting of **sum** + the future passive participle, in Ch. 24) was occasionally employed in order to indicate future time unambiguously in certain types of clauses (including the indirect question). In this last example, if the main verb were a past tense, then (in accordance with the rules for sequence of tenses) the sentence would be **rogāvērunt quid Gaius factūrus esset**, *they asked what Gaius would do (was about to do, was going to do)*.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

As in English, so also in Latin, there is a logical sequence of tenses as the speaker or writer proceeds from a main clause to a subordinate clause.

The rule in Latin is simple: a “primary” tense of the indicative must be followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive, and a “historical” (or “secondary”) indicative tense must be followed by a historical subjunctive tense, as illustrated in the following chart.

It may be helpful to note at this point that the so-called primary tenses of the indicative, the present and future, both indicate *incomplete* actions (i.e., actions now going on, in the present, or only to be begun in the future), while the historical tenses, as the term implies, refer to past actions.

Group	Main Verb	Subordinate Subjunctive
Primary	Pres. or Fut.	{ Present (= action <i>at same time</i> or <i>after</i>) Perfect (= action <i>before</i>)
Historical	Past Tenses	{ Imperfect (= action <i>at same time</i> or <i>after</i>) Pluperfect (= action <i>before</i>)

After a primary main verb the *present* subjunctive indicates action occurring *at the same time* as that of the main verb or *after* that of the main verb. The *perfect* subjunctive indicates action which occurred *before* that of the main verb.

Similarly after a historical main verb the *imperfect* subjunctive indicates action occurring *at the same time* as that of the main verb or *after* that of the main verb. The *pluperfect* subjunctive indicates action which occurred *before* that of the main verb.¹

These rules for the sequence of tenses operate in purpose clauses, result clauses, indirect questions, and similar constructions to be introduced in subsequent chapters; analyze carefully the sequencing in each of the following examples:

Id **facit** (faciet) ut mē iuvet, *he does (will do) it to help me.*

Id **fēcit** (faciēbat) ut mē iuvāret, *he did (kept doing) it to help me.*

Tam dūrus **est** ut eum vītem, *he is so harsh that I avoid him.*

Tam dūrus **fuit** (erat) ut eum vītārem, *he was so harsh that I avoided him.*

Rogant, rogābunt—*They ask, will ask*
quid faciat, *what he is doing or will do.*

¹ There are two common and quite logical exceptions to the rules for sequence of tenses: a historical present main verb (i.e., a present tense used for the vivid narration of past events) will often take a historical sequence subjunctive, and a perfect tense main verb, when focussing on the present consequences of the past action, may be followed by a primary sequence subjunctive (see P.R. 8 below). Note, too, that since purpose and result clauses logically describe actions that *follow* (actually or potentially) the actions of the main verb, they do not ordinarily contain perfect or pluperfect tense verbs, which indicate *prior* action (though the perfect subjunctive was sometimes used as a *historical* tense in a result clause).

quid fēcerit, *what he did.*

quid factūrus sit, *what he will do.*

Rogāvērunt, rogābant—*They asked, kept asking*

quid faceret, *what he was doing or would do.*

quid fēcisset, *what he had done.*

quid factūrus esset, *what he would do.*

VOCABULARY

honor, honōris, m., *honor, esteem; public office* (honorable, honorary, honorific, dishonor, honest)

cēterī, -ae, -a, pl., *the remaining, the rest, the other, all the others*; cp. **alius**, *another, other* (etc. = et cetera)

quāntus, -a, -um, *how large, how great, how much* (quantify, quantity, quantitative, quantum; cp. **tantus**); **tāntus . . . quāntus**, *just as much (many) . . . as*

rīdīculus, -a, -um, *laughable, ridiculous* (ridicule, etc.; cp. **rīdeō, subrīdeō**, Ch. 35)

vīvus, -a, -um, *alive, living* (vivid, vivify, convivial; cp. **vīvō, vīta**)

fūrtim, adv., *stealthily, secretly* (furtively, ferret; cp. **fūrtīvus, -a, -um**, *secret, furtive*; **fūr, fūris**, m./f., *thief*)

mox, adv., *soon*

prīmō, adv., *at first, at the beginning* (cp. **prīmus, -a, -um**)

repēnte, adv., *suddenly*

ūnde, adv., *whence, from what or which place, from which, from whom*

ūt . . . **an**, adv. and conj., *whether . . . or*

bībō, bibere, bībī, *to drink* (bib, bibulous, imbibe, wine-bibber, beverage)

cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, *to become acquainted with, learn, recognize*; in perfect tenses, *know* (cognizance, cognizant, cognition, connoisseur, incognito, reconnaissance, reconnoiter; cp. **nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum**, noble, notice, notify, notion, notorious, and **recognōscō**, Ch. 38)

comprehēndō, -hēndere, -hēndī, -hēnsum, *to grasp, seize, arrest; comprehend, understand* (comprehensive, comprehensible, incomprehensible)

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, *to consume, use up* (consumer, consumption, assume, assumption, presume, presumable, presumption, presumptive, presumptuous, resume, resumption; cp. **sūmō, to take**)

dūbitō (1), *to doubt, hesitate* (dubious, dubitable, dubitative, doubtful, doubtless, indubitable, undoubtedly)

expōnō, -pōnere, -pōsuī, -pōsitum, *to set forth, explain, expose* (exponent, exposition, expository, expound)

minūō, minūere, minūī, minūtum, *to lessen, diminish* (cp. **minor, minus**,

minimus; diminish, diminuendo, diminution, diminutive, minuet, minute, minutiae, menu, mince)

rógō (1), *to ask* (interrogate, abrogate, arrogant, derogatory, prerogative, surrogate)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Rogāvit ubi illae duae discipulae dignae haec didicissent.
2. Vidēbit quanta fuerit vīs illōrum verbōrum fēlicium.
3. Hās īnsidiās repente exposuit nē rēs pūblica opprimerētur.
4. Hī taceant et trēs cēterī expellantur nē occāsiōnem similem habeant.
5. Ita dūrus erat ut beneficia uxōris comprehendere nōn posset.
6. Cēterī quidem nesciēbant quam ācris esset mēns nātae eōrum.
7. Dēnique pīnceps cognōscet cūr potentior pars mīlitum nōs vītet.
8. Iam cognōvī cūr clāra facta vērō nōn sint facillima.
9. Quīdam auctōrēs appellābant arma optimum remedium malōrum.
10. Mortuīs haec arma mox dēdicēmus nē honōre egeant.
11. Fātō duce, Rōmulus Remusque Rōmam condidērunt; et, Remō necātō, moenia urbis novae cito surrēxērunt.
12. Tell me in what lands liberty is found.
13. We did not know where the sword had finally been put.
14. He does not understand the first words of the little book which they wrote about the constellations.
15. They asked why you could not learn what the rest had done.
16. Let all men now seek better things than money or supreme power so that their souls may be happier.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Nunc vidētis quantum scelus contrā rem pūblicam et lēgēs nostrās vōbīs prōnūntiātum sit. (Cicero.)
2. Quam dulcis sit lībertās vōbīs prōtinus dīcam. (Phaedrus.)
3. Rogābat dēnique cūr umquam ex urbe cēdissent. (Horace.)
4. Nunc sciō quid sit amor. (*Virgil.)
5. Videāmus uter hīc in mediō forō plūs scrībere possit. (Horace.)
6. Multī dubitābant quid optimum esset. (*Cicero.)
7. Incipiam expōnere unde nātūra omnēs rēs creet alatque. (Lucretius.)
8. Dulce est vidēre quibus malīs ipse careās. (Lucretius.)
9. Auctōrem Trōiānī bellī relēgī, quī dīcit quid sit pulchrum, quid turpe, quid ūtile, quid nōn. (Horace.—**Trōiānus**, -a, -um, *Trojan*.)
10. Doctōs rogābis quā ratiōne bene agere cursum vītae possīs, utrum virtūtem doctrīna paret an nātūra ingeniumque dent, quid minuat cūrās, quid tē amīcum tibi faciat. (Horace.—**doctrīna**, -ae, *teaching*.)
11. Istī autem rogant tantum quid habeās, nōn cūr et unde. (Seneca.)

12. Errat, quī finem vēsānī quaerit amoris: vērus amor nūllum nōvit habēre modum. (*Propertius.—vēsānus, -a, -um, *insane*.)
13. Sed tempus est iam mē discēdere ut cicūtā bibam, et vōs discēdere ut vītā agātis. Utrum autem sit melius, dī immortālēs sciunt; hominem quidem nēminem scīre crēdō. (Cicero.—Socrates' parting words to the jury which had condemned him to death.—cicūta, -ae, *hemlock*.—nēmō homō, *no human being*.)



*The Death of Socrates, Charles Alphonse Dufresnoy, 17th century
Galleria Palatina, Palazzo Pitti, Florence, Italy*

EVIDENCE AND CONFESSION

Sit dēnique scrīptum in fronte ūnīus cuiusque quid dē rē pūblicā sentiat; nam rem pūblicā labōribus cōsiliīsque meīs ex igne atque ferrō ēreptam esse vidētis. Haec iam expōnam breviter ut scīre possītis quā ratiōne comprehēnsa sint. Semper prōvīdī quō modō in tantīs insidiīs salvī esse possēmus. Omnēs diēs cōnsūmpsī ut vidērem quid coniūrātī āctūrī essent. Dēnique litterās intercipere potuī quae ad Catilinā ā Lentulō aliīsque coniūrātīs missae erant. Tum, coniūrātīs comprehēnsīs et senātū convocātō, contendī in senātum, ostendī litterās Lentulō, quaesivī cognōsceretne signum. Dixit sē cognōscere; sed prīmō dubitāvit et negāvit sē dē hīs rēbus respōnsūrum esse. Mox autem ostendit quanta esset vīs cōnscientiae; nam repente mollītus est

atque omnem rem narrāvit. Tum cēterī coniūrātī sīc fūrtim inter sē aspiciēbant ut nōn ab aliīs indicārī sed indicāre sē ipsī vidērentur.

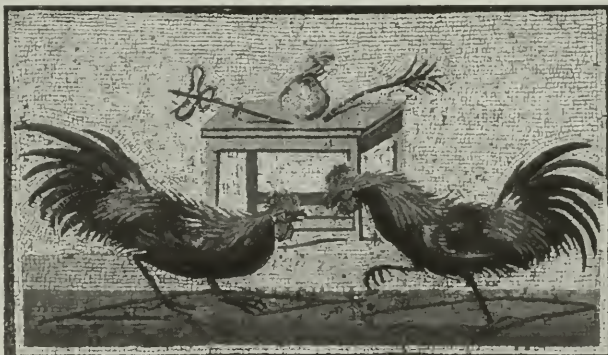
(Cicero, excerpts from the first and third Catilinarian orations—Cicero finally succeeded in forcing Catiline to leave Rome, but his henchmen remained and Cicero still lacked the tangible evidence he needed to convict them in court; in this passage he shows how he finally obtained not only that evidence but even a confession. See the readings in Chs. 11 and 14, “Cicero Urges Catiline’s Departure” in Ch. 20, and the continuation, “Testimony Against the Conspirators,” in Ch. 36.—**frōns**, **frontis**, f., *forehead*.—**breviter**, adv. of **brevis**.—**prō-vidēō**, *to fore-see, give attention to*.—**intercipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.—**cōnscientia**, -ae, *conscience*.—**inter sē aspiciō**, -ere, *to glance at each other*.—**indicāre**, *to accuse*.)

A COVERED DISH DINNER!

Mēnsās, Ōle, bonās pōnis, sed pōnis opertās.

Rīdiculum est: possum sīc ego habēre bonās.

(*Martial 10.54; meter: elegiac couplet.—**Olus**, another of Martial’s “friends.”—**opertus**, -a, -um, *concealed, covered*.—**ego**, i.e., even a poor fellow like me.)



*Cocks fighting in front of a mensa
Mosaic from Pompeii, detail*

Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy

A LEGACY-HUNTER’S WISH

Nīl mihi dās vīvus; dīcis post fāta datūrum:

sī nōn es stultus, scīs, Maro, quid cupiam!

(*Martial 11.59; meter: elegiac couplet.—**nīl** = **nihil**.—**fāta**, poetic pl. for sg. = **mortem**.—**datūrum** = **tē datūrum esse**.—**Maro**, another of Martial’s fictitious [?] addressees.)

NOTE ON A COPY OF CATULLUS’ CARMINA

Tantum magna suō dēbet Vērōna Catullō
quantum parva suō Mantua Vergiliō.

(*Martial 14.195; meter: elegiac couplet. Verona and Mantua were the birthplaces of Catullus and Virgil respectively; see the Introd.—Note the interlocked word order within each verse and the neatly parallel structure between the two verses.)

ETYMOLOGY

The “dubitative” (or “deliberative”) subjunctive is another of the independent subjunctives. On the basis of **dubitō** you should have a good sense of the idea conveyed by this subjunctive; e.g., **quid faciat?** *what is he to do (I wonder)?*

Further derivatives from the basic **prehendō**, *seize*, are: apprehend, apprentice, apprise, imprison, prehensile, prison, prize, reprehend, reprisal, surprise.

In the readings

“Evidence”: front, frontal, affront, confront, effrontery, frontier, frontispiece.—provide, providence, provision, improvident, improvise, improvisation.—interception.—conscientious, conscious, inconscionable.—aspect.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, amīcī! This chapter's **vocābulārium novum** brings a veritable **cēna verbōrum** for your **mēnsa Latīna**; let's start with the main course: the **cursus honōrum**, a familiar phrase in Eng., was the traditional course of political office-holding in Rome; ordinarily one served first as **quaestor** (a treasury official), then as **praetor** (judge), and only later as **cōsul**. The consulship was something like our presidency, but the term was one year, and there were two consuls, each with veto power over the other (Cicero, as you recall, was one of the consuls in 63 B.C., when he uncovered the Catilinarian conspiracy).

Now for the **mēnsa secunda**, Lat. for *dessert*: first, an old proverb that will serve you near as well as **carpe diem: occāsiōnem cognōsce!** And here's another that may save you from temptation to even the slightest of crimes: **nēmō repente fuit turpissimus**, *no one was ever suddenly most vicious* (Juvenal 2.83: the satirist meant that even the worst criminals attained that status through the gradual accumulation of guilty acts). An honorary degree is granted **honōris causā**; **honōrēs mūtant mōrēs** is an ancient truism; from **cēterī**, besides **et cētera/etc.**, is **cētera dēsunt**, *the rest is lacking*, an editorial notation for missing sections of a text; from **quantus** comes a large quantity of phrases, one of which should be sufficient here, **quantum satis**, *as much as suffices* (if you are not satisfied, see Chs. 32 and 35; and when day is done you can shout **mox nox, in rem**, *soon ('twill be) night, (let's get down) to business*. **Valēte!**

Cum Clauses; *Ferō*

Cum CLAUSES

You are already quite familiar with the use of **cum** as a preposition. **Cum** can also serve as a conjunction, meaning *when*, *since*, or *although* and introducing a subordinate clause.

Sometimes the verb in a **cum** clause is indicative, especially when describing the precise time of an action. In these so-called “**cum** temporal clauses,” **cum** is translated *when* (or *while*); **tum** is occasionally found in the main clause, and **cum . . . tum** together may be translated *not only . . . but also*:

Cum eum vidēbis, eum cognōscēs, *when you (will) see him [i.e., at that very moment], you will recognize him.*

Cum vincimus, tum pācem spērās, *when (while) we are winning, you are (at the same time) hoping for peace.*

Cum ad illum locum vēnerant, tum amīcōs contulerant, *when they had come to that place, they had brought their friends or not only had they come to that place, but they had also brought their friends.*

Very often, however, the verb of the **cum** clause is in the subjunctive mood, especially when it describes either the general circumstances (rather than the exact time) when the main action occurred (often called a “**cum** circumstantial clause”), or explains the cause of the main action (“**cum** causal”), or describes an event that might have obstructed the main action (“**cum** adversative”):

Cum hoc fēcisset, ad tē fūgit.

When he had done this, he fled to you. (circumstantial)

Cum hoc scīret, potuit eōs iuvāre.

Since he knew this, he was able to help them. (causal)

Cum hoc scīret, tamen mīlitēs mīsīt.

Although he knew this, nevertheless he sent the soldiers. (adversative)

Cum Gāium dīligerēmus, nōn poterāmus eum iuvāre.

Although we loved Gaius, we could not help him. (adversative)

Remember that when **cum** is followed immediately by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case, you should translate it *with*. When instead it introduces a subordinate clause, translate it *when*, *since*, *although*, etc. You should have little difficulty distinguishing among the four basic types of **cum** clauses: the temporal has its verb in the indicative, and the three subjunctive types can generally be recognized by analyzing the relationship between the actions in the main clause and the subordinate clause (note, too, that in the case of adversative clauses the adverb **tamen** often appears in the main clause).

IRREGULAR Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *to bear, carry*

Ferō is one of a series of irregular verbs to be introduced in the closing chapters of this text (the others being **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō**, **fiō**, and **eō**); they are all very commonly used and should be learned thoroughly.

The English verb “to bear” is cognate with Latin **ferō**, **ferre** and has generally the same basic and metaphorical meanings, *to carry* and *to endure*. In the present system **ferō** is simply a third conjugation verb, formed exactly like **agō** except that the stem vowel does not appear in a few places, including the infinitive **ferre**. The only irregular forms, all of them in the present tense (indicative, imperative, and infinitive), are highlighted below in bold; the imperfect subjunctive, while formed on the irregular infinitive **ferre**, nevertheless follows the usual pattern of present infinitive + endings. Remember that the singular imperative lacks the **-e**, just like **dīc**, **dūc**, and **fac** (Ch. 8).

Although **tulī** (originally **tetulī**) and **lātum** (originally ***tlātum**) derive ultimately from a different verb related to **tollō** (the Eng. hybrid “go, went, gone,” e.g., is similarly composed from two different verbs through a common linguistic phenomenon known as “suppletion”), their conjugation follows the regular pattern and so should cause no difficulty.

Present Indicative**Active**

1. *fērō*
2. ***fers*** (cp. *ágis*)
3. ***fert*** (cp. *ágit*)
1. *férimus*
2. ***fértis*** (cp. *ágitis*)
3. *férunt*

Passive

- féror*
férris (*ágeris*)
fértur (*ágitur*)
férimur
feriminī
ferúntur

Present Imperative**Active**

2. ***fer*** (*áge*), ***ferte*** (*ágit*e)

Infinitives**Active**

- Pres. ***férre*** (*ágere*)
 Perf. *tulisse*
 Fut. *lātúrus esse*

Passive

- férrī*** (*ágī*)
lātus esse
lātum írī

SYNOPSIS

The following third person singular synopsis, showing irregular forms in bold and taken together with the preceding summary, should provide a useful overview of the conjugation of ***ferō***; for the complete conjugation, see the Appendix (p. 459–60)

Indicative Mood

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut.Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	<i>fert</i>	<i>féret</i>	<i>ferēbat</i>	<i>túlit</i>	<i>túlerit</i>	<i>túlerat</i>
Pass.	<i>fértur</i>	<i>ferétur</i>	<i>ferēbátur</i>	<i>lātus</i> <i>est</i>	<i>lātus</i> <i>érit</i>	<i>lātus</i> <i>érat</i>

Subjunctive Mood

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut.Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	<i>férat</i>	—	<i>férret</i>	<i>túlerit</i>	—	<i>tulisset</i>
Pass.	<i>ferátur</i>	—	<i>ferrétur</i>	<i>lātus</i> <i>sit</i>	—	<i>lātus</i> <i>ésset</i>

VOCABULARY

as, ***ássis***, m., *an as* (a small copper coin, roughly equivalent to a penny; ace)

auxílium, -iī, n., *aid, help* (auxiliary; cp. ***augeō***, *to increase, augment*)

dígitus, -ī, m., *finger, toe* (digit, digital, digitalis, digitalize, digitate, digitize, prestidigitation; see ***Latīna Est Gaudium***, Ch. 20)

elephántus, -ī, m. and f., *elephant* (elephantiasis, elephantine)

exsīlium, -iī, n., *exile, banishment* (exilic)

inīdīa, -ac, f., *envy, jealousy, hatred* (invidious, invidiousness, envious; cp. **invidēō** below)

rūmor, rūmōris, m., *rumor, gossip* (rumormonger)

vīnum, -ī, n., *wine* (vine, vinegar, viniculture, viniferous, vintage, vinyl)

mediocris, mediocre, ordinary, moderate, mediocre (mediocrity; cp. **medius**)

cum, conj. + subj., *when, since, although*; **conj. + indic.,** *when*

āpud, prep. + acc., *among, in the presence of, at the house of*

sēmel, adv., *a single time, once, once and for all, simultaneously*

ūsq̄ue, adv., *all the way, up (to), even (to), continuously, always*

dōlēō, dolēre, dōlūī, dōlitūrum, to grieve, suffer; hurt, give pain (doleful, dolor, dolorous, Dolores, condole, condolences, indolent, indolence; cp. **dolor**, Ch. 38)

dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī, dormītum, to sleep (dormitory, dormer, dormancy, dormant, dormouse)

fērō, fēre, tūlī, lātum, to bear, carry, bring; suffer, endure, tolerate; say, report (fertile, circumference, confer, defer, differ, infer, offer, prefer, proffer, refer, suffer, transfer; cp. **bear**)

ādferō, adfēre, āttulī, allātum, to bring to (afferent)

cōnfērō, cōnfēre, cōntulī, collātum, to bring together, compare; confer, bestow; sē cōnfēre, betake oneself, go (conference, collation)

ōfferō, offēre, ōbtulī, oblātum, to offer (offertory, oblation)

rēferō, refēre, rēttulī, relātum, to carry back, bring back; repeat, answer, report (refer, reference, referent, referral, relate, relation, relative)

invidēō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, to be envious; + dat. (see Ch. 35), to look at with envy, envy, be jealous of

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsum, to fall down; die; set (occident, occidental, occasion, occasional; cp. **cadō, occāsiō**)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Iam vērō cognōvimus istās mentēs dūrās ferrum prō pāce offerre.
2. Nē nātae geminae discant verba tam acerba et tam dūra.
3. Cum hī decem virī ex moenibus semel discessissent, alia occāsiō pācis numquam oblāta est.
4. Tantum auxilium nōbīs referet ut nē ācerrimī quidem mīlitēs aut pugnāre aut hīc remanēre possint.
5. Rogābat cūr cēterae tantam fidem apud nōs praestārent et nōbīs tantam spem adferrent.
6. Cum patria nostra tanta beneficia offerat, quīdam tamen sē in īnsidiās fūrtim cōnferunt et contrā bonōs mox pugnābunt.
7. Dēnique audiāmus quantae sint hae īnsidiae ac quot coniūrātī contrā cīvitatē surgant.

8. Haec scelera repente exposuī nē alia et similia ferrētis.
9. Respondērunt plūrima arma ā mīlitibus ad lītus allāta esse et in nāvibus condita esse.
10. Cum parentēs essent vīvī, fēlicēs erant; mortuī quoque sunt beātī.
11. Nesciō utrum trēs coniūrātī maneant an in exsilium contenderint.
12. Nōs cōnferāmus ad cēnam, meī amīcī, bibāmus multum vīnī, cōnsūmāmus noctem, atque omnēs cūrās nostrās minuāmus!
13. When the soldiers had been arrested, they soon offered us money.
14. Although life brings very difficult things, let us endure them all and dedicate ourselves to philosophy.
15. Since you know what help is being brought by our six friends, these evils can be endured with courage.
16. Although his eyes could not see the light of the sun, nevertheless that humble man used to do very many and very difficult things.

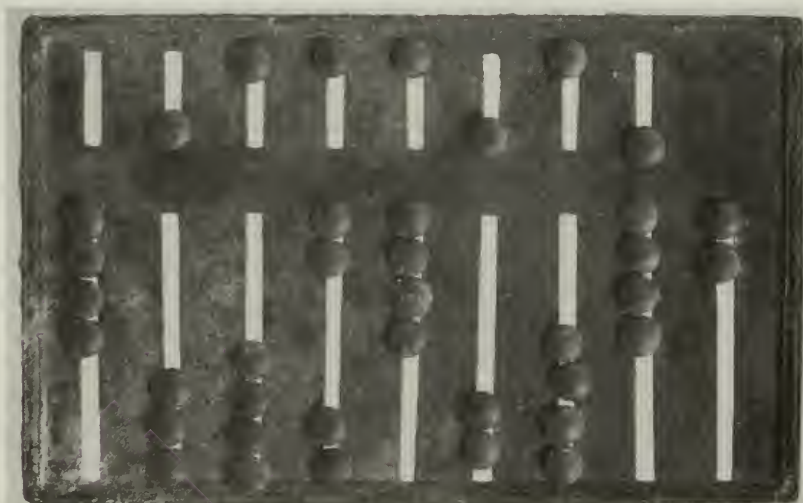
SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Potestne haec lūx esse tibi iūcunda, cum sciās hōs omnēs cōnsilia tua cognōvisse? (Cicero.)
2. Themistoclēs, cum Graeciam servitūte Persicā liberāvisset et propter invidiam in exsilium expulsus esset, ingrātae patriae iniūriam nōn tulit quam ferre dēbuit. (Cicero.—**Persicus**, -a, -um.—**ingrātus**, -a, -um, *ungrateful*.—**iniūria**, -ae, *injury*.)
3. Quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, cōnfer tē in exsilium. (Cicero.—**quae cum** = **et cum haec**.)
4. Ō nāvis, novī flūctūs bellī tē in mare referent! Ō quid agis? Unde erit ūllum perfugium? (Horace.—**nāvis**, *ship [of state]*.—**flūctus**, -ūs, *wave, billow*.)
5. Cum rēs pūblica immortalis esse dēbeat, doleō eam salūtis egēre ac in vitā ūnūs mortālis cōnsistere. (Cicero.—**cōnsistō**, -ere + **in**, *to depend on*.)
6. Cum illum hominem esse servum nōvisset, eum comprehendere nōn dubitāvit. (Cicero.)
7. Ille comprehēnsus, cum prīmō impudenter respondēre coepisset, dēnique tamen nihil negāvit. (Cicero.—**impudenter**, *adv.*)
8. Milō dīcitur per stadium vēnisse cum bovem umerīs ferret. (Cicero.—**Milō**, -lōnis, *m.*, a famous Greek athlete.—**stadium**, -iī.—**bōs**, *bovis*, *m./f.*, *ox*.—**umerus**, -ī, *shoulder*.)
9. Quid vesper et somnus ferant, incertum est. (Livy.)
10. Ferte miserō tantum auxilium quantum potes. (Terence.)
11. Hoc ūnum sciō: quod fāta ferunt, id ferēmus aequō animō. (Terence.)
12. Lēgum dēnique idcirco omnēs servī sumus, ut liberī esse possīmus. (*Cicero.—**idcirco**, *adv.*, *for this reason*.)

GIVE ME A THOUSAND KISSES!

- Vivāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus,
 rūmōrēsque senum sevērīōrum
 omnēs ūnius aestimēmus assis!
 Sōlēs occidere et redire possunt;
 5 nōbīs cum semel occidit brevis lūx,
 nox est perpetua ūna dormienda.
 Dā mī bāsia mīlle, deinde centum;
 dein mīlle altera, dein secunda centum;
 deinde ūsque altera mīlle, deinde centum.
 10 Dein, cum mīlia multa fēcerīmus—
 conturbābimus illa. nē sciāmus,
 aut nē quis malus invidēre possit,
 cum tantum sciat esse bāsīōrum.

(*Catullus 5; an exhortation to love, and to ignore the grumbling of stern old men who envy the young and curse their passion.—**rūmōrēs**, with **omnēs**; adj. and noun were often widely separated in poetry, so it is especially important to take note of the endings.—**sevērus**, -a, -um.—**ūnius** . . . **assis**, gen. of value, *at one penny*.—**aestimāre**, *to value, estimate*.—**redire**, *to return*.—**nōbīs**, dat. of reference [Ch. 38], here = **nostra**, with **brevis lūx**.—**mī** = **mihi**.—**dein** = **deinde**.—**conturbāre**, *to throw into confusion, mix up, jumble*; possibly an allusion to disturbing the counters on an abacus.—**nē sciāmus**, sc. **numerus**; if the number is unknown then, in a sense, it is limitless.—**quis**, here *someone*.—**invidēre**, with **malus**, means both *to envy* and *to cast an evil eye upon*, i.e., to hex.—**tantum**, with **bāsīōrum**, gen. of the whole, = *so many kisses*.)



Small Roman abacus, Museo Nazionale Romano delle Terme, Rome, Italy

RINGO

Sēnōs Charīnus omnibus digitīs gerit
 nec nocte pōnit ānulōs
 nec cum lavātur. Causa quae sit quaeritis?
 Dactylīothēcam nōn habet!

(*Martial 11.59; meter: iambic trimeter and dimeter.—Charinus, an ostentatious chap who liked to show off his rings.—*sēnī*, -ae, -a, *six each, six apiece*, here with *ānulōs*, *rings* [see *Latīna Est Gaudium*, Ch. 20]; what effect might the poet be hoping to achieve by so widely separating noun and adj.?—*pōnit* = *dēpōnit*, *put away*.—*lavāre*, *to bathe*.—*Causa . . . quaeritis*: the usual order would be *quaeritisne quae sit causa*.—*dactylīothēca*, -ae, *a ring-box, jewelry chest*.)



Gold ring
 Kunsthistorisches Museum, Vienna, Austria

FACĒTIAE (WITTICISMS)

Cum Cicerō apud Damasippum cēnāret et ille, mediocrī vīnō in mēnsā positō, dīceret, “Bibe hoc Falernum; hoc est vīnum quadrāgintā annōrum,” Cicerō respondit, “Bene aetātem fert!”

(Macrobius, *Sāturnālia* 2.3.—*Falernum*, -ī, *Falernian wine*, actually a very famous wine, not a “mediocre” one.—*quadrāgintā*, indecl., 40.)

Augustus, cum quīdam rīdiculus eī libellum trepidē adferret, et modo prōferret manum et modo retraheret, “Putās,” inquit, “tē assem elephantō dare?”

(Macrobius, *Sāturnālia* 2.4.—*trepidē*, adv., *in confusion*.—*modo . . . modo*, *now . . . now*.—*re-trahō*.—*elephantō*: one thinks of a child offering a peanut to a circus elephant.)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

2. ingrate, ingratitude.—injurious. 4. fluctuate. 5. consist, consistent. 7. impudent, impudence. 8. bovine.—humerus, humeral. “Kisses”: severe, severity, asseverate.—estimate, estimation, inestimable. “Ringo”: annulus, annular eclipse, annulate, annulet (all spelled with *nn*, perhaps by analogy with *annus*, *year*; despite the classical *ānulus*, which—to get down to “fundamentals”—is actually the diminutive of *ānus*, *ring*, *circle*, *anus*). “*Facētia*”: trepidation.—retract, retraction.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Iterum salvēte, doctae doctique! Having made it this far, you’ve certainly earned that appellation, and, as a further reward, here are more tidbits **ex vocābulāriō novō huius capitis**, all focussed on that villainous Catiline: to start with, there’s that famous **cum** temporal clause from Cicero’s indictment of Catiline: **cum tacent, clāmant**, *when they are silent, they are shouting*, i.e., “by their silence they condemn you.” Poor Catiline, perhaps he had too much to drink, **ūsque ad nauseam**, and spilled the beans, ignoring the warning, **in vīnō vēritās**; if only he had observed Horace’s **aurea mediocritās**, *the golden mean*, he might have received **auxilium ab altō**, *help from on high*, but the gods, it appears, were against him. And so he soon met his end, **semel et simul**, *once and for all*: **valē, miser Catilīna, et vōs omnēs, amīcī vēritātis honōrisque, valeātis!**

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs; Volō, Mālō, Nōlō; Proviso Clauses

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

You are by now familiar with a wide range of Latin adverbs, words employed (as in English) to modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs. Many have their own peculiar forms and endings and must simply be memorized when first introduced in the vocabularies (often without benefit of English derivatives to aid in the memorization): among these are **cūr**, **etiam**, **ita**, **tam**, etc.

POSITIVE DEGREE

A great many adverbs, however, are formed directly from adjectives and are easily recognized. Many first/second declension adjectives form positive degree adverbs by adding **-ē** to the base:

lóng-ē	(<i>far</i> ; longus, -a, -um)
līber-ē	(<i>freely</i> ; līber, lībera, līberum)
púlchr-ē	(<i>beautifully</i> ; pulcher, -chra, -chrum)

From adjectives of the third declension, adverbs are often formed by adding **-iter** to the base; if the base ends in **-nt-** only **-er** is added:

fórt-iter	(bravely; fortis, -e)
celér-iter	(quickly; celer, celeris, celere)
âcr-iter	(keenly; âcer, âcris, âcre)
fêlíc-iter	(happily; fêlîx, gen. fêlîcis)
sapiént-er	(wisely; sapiêns, gen. sapientis)

COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE DEGREE

Many Latin adverbs have comparative and superlative forms, just as they do in English, and their English translations correspond to those of comparative and superlative adjectives; e.g., positive degree “quickly”; comparative “more (rather, too) quickly”; superlative “most (very) quickly,” etc.

The comparative degree of adverbs is with few exceptions the **-ius** form which you have already learned as the neuter of the comparative degree of the adjective.

The superlative degree of adverbs, being normally derived from the superlative degree of adjectives, regularly ends in **-ê** according to the rule given above for converting adjectives of the first and the second declensions into adverbs.

Quam WITH COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADVERBS

Quam is used with adverbs in essentially the same ways as with adjectives: **hic puer celerius cucurrit quam ille**, *this boy ran more quickly than that one*; **illa puella quam celerrimê cucurrit**, *that girl ran as quickly as possible*. The ablative of comparison is not ordinarily employed after comparative adverbs (except in poetry).

COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADVERBS

When the comparison of an adjective is irregular (see Ch. 27), the comparison of the adverb derived from it normally follows the basic irregularities of the adjective but, of course, has adverbial endings. Study carefully the following list of representative adverbs; those that do not follow the standard rules stated above for forming adverbs from adjectives are highlighted in bold (be prepared to point out how they do not conform). Note the alternate superlatives **prîmô**, which usually means *first (in time)* vs. **prîmum**, usually *first (in a series)*; **quam prîmum**, however, has the idiomatic translation *as soon as possible*.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
lóngê (far)	lóngius (farther, too f.)	longíssimê (farthest, very f.)
líberê (freely)	líbérius (more f.)	líberrimê (most, very f.)
púlchrê (beautifully)	púlchrius (more b.)	pulchérrimê (most b.)
fórtiter (bravely)	fórtius (more b.)	fortíssimê (most b.)

<i>celériter</i> (<i>quickly</i>)	<i>celérius</i> (<i>more q.</i>)	<i>celérrimē</i> (<i>most q.</i>)
<i>âcriter</i> (<i>keenly</i>)	<i>âcrius</i> (<i>more k.</i>)	<i>âcèrrimē</i> (<i>most k.</i>)
<i>fêlíciter</i> (<i>happily</i>)	<i>fêlícius</i> (<i>more h.</i>)	<i>fêlícíssimē</i> (<i>most h.</i>)
<i>sapiénter</i> (<i>wisely</i>)	<i>sapiéntius</i> (<i>more w.</i>)	<i>sapiéntíssimē</i> (<i>most w.</i>)
fácilē (<i>easily</i>)	<i>facílius</i> (<i>more e.</i>)	<i>facíllimē</i> (<i>most e.</i>)
béne (<i>well</i>)	<i>mélius</i> (<i>better</i>)	<i>óptimē</i> (<i>best</i>)
mále (<i>badly</i>)	<i>peíus</i> (<i>worse</i>)	<i>péssimē</i> (<i>worst</i>)
múltum (<i>much</i>)	<i>plūs</i> (<i>more, quantity</i>)	plúrimum (<i>most, very much</i>)
magnópere (<i>greatly</i>)	mágis (<i>more, quality</i>)	<i>máximē</i> (<i>most, especially</i>)
párum (<i>little, not very [much]</i>)	<i>mínus</i> (<i>less</i>)	<i>mínimē</i> (<i>least</i>)
(<i>prō</i>)	<i>príus</i> (<i>before, earlier</i>)	{ prímō (<i>first, at first</i>) prímum (<i>in the first place</i>)
diū (<i>for a long time</i>)	diútius (<i>longer</i>)	diútíssimē (<i>very long</i>)

IRREGULAR *Volō, velle, voluī, to wish*

Like *ferō*, introduced in the last chapter, *volō* is another extremely common third conjugation verb which, though regular for the most part, does have several irregular forms, including the present infinitive *velle*. Remember these points:

- volō* has no passive forms at all, no future active infinitive or participle, and no imperatives;
- the perfect system is entirely regular;
- the only irregular forms are in the present indicative (which must be memorized) and the present subjunctive (which is comparable to *sim, sis, sit*);
- the imperfect subjunctive resembles that of *ferō*; while formed from the irregular infinitive *velle*, it nevertheless follows the usual pattern of present infinitive + personal endings;
- vol-* is the base in the present system indicatives, *vel-* in the subjunctives.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Impf. Subj.	Infinitives
1. <i>vólō</i>	<i>vélim</i>	<i>véllem</i>	<i>Pres. velle</i>
2. <i>vīs</i>	<i>vélīs</i>	<i>véllēs</i>	<i>Perf. voluisse</i>
3. <i>vult</i>	<i>vélit</i>	<i>véllet</i>	<i>Fut. ———</i>
1. <i>vólumus</i>	<i>velīmus</i>	<i>vellēmus</i>	Participle
2. <i>vúltis</i>	<i>velītis</i>	<i>vellētis</i>	<i>Pres. volēns</i>
3. <i>vólunt</i>	<i>vélint</i>	<i>vellént</i>	

SYNOPSIS

The following third person singular synopsis, with irregular forms in bold, should provide a useful overview of the conjugation of **volō**; for the complete conjugation, see the Appendix (p. 450–51)

Indicative Mood

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut.Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	vult	vólet	volébat	vóluit	volúerit	volúerat

Subjunctive Mood

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut.Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	vélit	—	véllet	volúerit	—	voluisset

Nōlō AND Mālō

The compounds **nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī** (**nē** + **volō**), *not to wish, to be unwilling*, and **mālō**, **mālle**, **māluī** (**magis** + **volō**), *to want (something) more or instead, prefer*, follow **volō** closely, but have long vowels in their stems (**nō-**, **mā-**) and some other striking peculiarities, especially in the present indicative.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **Nōlō**

Sg. **nōlō**, **nōn vīs**, **nōn vult** Pl. **nōlumus**, **nōn vultis**, **nōlunt**

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **Mālō**

Sg. **mālō**, **māvīs**, **māvult** Pl. **mālumus**, **māvultis**, **mālunt**

The following synopses provide representative forms, again with irregular forms in bold, but you should see the Appendix (p. 458–59) for the full conjugation of these verbs.

Indicative Mood

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut.Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	nōn vult	nólet	nōlébat	nóluit	nólúerit	nólúerat

Subjunctive Mood

Act.	nólit	—	nóllet	nólúerit	—	nólúisset
------	--------------	---	---------------	----------	---	-----------

Indicative Mood

Act.	māvult	málet	mālébat	máluit	mālúerit	mālúerat
------	---------------	-------	---------	--------	----------	----------

Subjunctive Mood

Act.	málit	—	mállet	mālúerit	—	mālúisset
------	--------------	---	---------------	----------	---	-----------

Nōlō AND NEGATIVE COMMANDS

While **volō** and **mālō** lack imperatives, **nōlō** has both singular and plural imperatives that were very commonly employed along with complementary infinitives to express negative commands:

Nōlī manēre, Catilīna, *do not remain, Catiline!*

Nōlīte discēdere, amīcī meī, *do not leave, my friends!*

PROVISO CLAUSES

The subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause introduced by **dummodo**, *provided that, so long as*, and certain other words that express a provisional circumstance or “proviso”; **nē** is used as the negative in such clauses.

Nōn timēbō, dummodo hīc remaneās, *I shall not be afraid, provided that you remain here.*

Erimus fēlicēs, dummodo nē discēdās, *we shall be happy, so long as (provided that) you do not leave.*

VOCABULARY

custōdia, -ae, f., *protection, custody*; pl., *guards* (custodian, custodial)

exércitus, -ūs, m., *army* (exercise)

paupértās, **paupertātis**, f., *poverty, humble circumstances* (cp. **pauper** below)

dīves, gen. **dīvitis** or **dītis**, *rich*, (Dives)

pār, gen. **pāris** + dat. (cp. Ch. 35), *equal, like* (par, pair, parity, peer, peerless, disparage, disparity, umpire, nonpareil)

paúper, gen. **paúperis**, *of small means, poor* (poverty, impoverished; cp. **paupertās**)

dúmmodo, conj. + subj., *provided that, so long as*

All adverbs given in the list above, p. 220–21.

mālō, **málle**, **máluī**, *to want (something) more, instead; prefer*

nólō, **nólle**, **nóluī**, *to not . . . wish, be unwilling* (nolo contendere, nol. pros.)

páteō, **patére**, **pátuī**, *to be open, lie open, be accessible, be evident* (patent, pātent, patency)

praēbeō, -bēre, -buī, -bitum, *to offer, provide*

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīssum, *to send forth; promise* (promissory)

vólō, **vélle**, **vóluī**, *to wish, want, be willing, will* (volition, voluntary, involuntary, volunteer, volitive, voluptuous, benevolent, malevolent, nolens volens)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Prīmō illi tres rīdicolī nē mediocria quidem perīcula fortiter ferre poterant et ūllum auxilium offerre nōlēbant.
2. Maximē rogāvimus quantum auxilium septem fēminae adferrent et utrum dubitārent an nōs mox adiuvārent.
3. Dēnique armīs collātīs, imperātor prōmīsīt decem mīlia mīlitum celerimē discessūra esse, dummodo satis cōpiarum reciperent.
4. Paria beneficia, igitur, in omnēs dignōs cōferre māvultis.
5. Haec mala melius expōnant nē dīvitiās minuant aut honōrēs suōs āmittant.
6. At volumus cognōscere cūr sīc invīderit et cūr verba eius tam dūra fuerint.
7. Cum cēterī hās īnsidiās cognōverint, vult in exsilium fūrtim ac quam celerrimē sē cōferre ut rūmōrēs et invidiam vītet.
8. Multīne discipulī tantum studium ūsque praestant ut hās sententiās facillimē ūnō annō legere possint?
9. Cum dīvitiās āmīssisset et ūnum assem nōn habēret, tamen omnēs cīvēs ingenium mōrēsque eius maximē laudābant.
10. Plūra meliōraque lēgibus aequīs quam ferrō certē faciēmus.
11. Oculī tuī sunt pulchriōrēs sīderibus caelī, mea puella; es gracilis et bella, ac ōscula sunt dulciōra vīnō: amēmus sub lūce lūnae!
12. Iste hostis, in Italiam cum multīs elephantīs veniēns, prīmō pugnāre nōluit et plūrimōs diēs in montibus cōnsūmpsīt.
13. Sī nepōs tē ad cēnam invītābit, mēnsam explēbit et tibi tantum vīnī offeret quantum vīs; nōlī, autem, nimium bibere.
14. Do you wish to live longer and better?
15. He wishes to speak as wisely as possible so that they may yield to him very quickly.
16. When these plans had been learned, we asked why he had been unwilling to prepare the army with the greatest possible care.
17. That man, who used to be very humble, now so keenly wishes to have wealth that he is willing to lose his two best friends.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Occāsiō nōn facile praebētur sed facile ac repente āmittitur. (Publius Syrus.)
2. Nōbīscum vīvere iam diūtius nōn potes; nōlī remanēre; id nōn ferēmus. (Cicero.)
3. Vīs rēctē vīvere? Quis nōn? (*Horace.—**rēctus**, -a, -um, *straight, right*.)
4. Plūs nōvistī quid faciendum sit. (Terence.)
5. Mihi vērē dīxit quid vellet. (Terence.)

6. Parēs cum paribus facillimē congregantur. (*Cicero.—**congregāre**, to gather into a flock.)
7. Tē magis quam oculōs meōs amō. (Terence.)
8. Hominēs libenter id crēdunt quod volunt. (Caesar.—**libēns**, -**entis**, willing.)
9. Multa ēveniunt hominibus quae volunt et quae nōlunt. (Plautus.—**ēvenīre**, to happen.)
10. Cōnsiliō melius contendere atque vincere possumus quam irā. (Publilius Syrus.)
11. Optimus quisque facere māvult quam dīcere. (Sallust.—**māvult quam** = **magis vult quam**.)
12. Omnēs sapientēs fēliciter, perfectē, fortūnātē vīvunt. (Cicero.—**perfectus**, -**a**, -**um**, complete.)
13. Maximē eum laudant quī pecūniā nōn movētur. (Cicero.)
14. Sī vīs scīre quam nihil malī in paupertate sit, cōnfer pauperem et dīvitem: pauper saepius et fidēlius rīdet. (Seneca.)
15. Magistrī puerīs crūstula dant ut prīma elementa discere velint. (Horace.—**crūstulum**, -**ī**, cookie.—**elementum**, -**ī**.)
16. Sī vīs mē flēre, dolendum est prīmum ipsī tibi. (*Horace.—**flēre**, to weep.)

THE CHARACTER OF CIMON

Cimōn celeriter ad summōs honōrēs pervēnit. Habēbat enim satis ēloquentiae, summam liberālītatem, magnam scientiam lēgum et reī mīlītāris, quod cum patre ā puerō in exercitibus fuerat. Itaque hic populum urbānum in suā potestāte facillimē tenuit et apud exercitum valuit plūrimum auctōritāte.

Cum ille occidisset, Athēniēnsēs dē eō diū doluērunt; nōn solum in bellō, autem, sed etiam in pāce eum graviter dēsīderāvērunt. Fuit enim vir tantae liberālītātis ut, cum multōs hortōs habēret, numquam in hīs custōdiās pōneret; nam hortōs liberrimē patēre voluit nē populus ab hīs fructibus prohibērētur. Saepe autem, cum aliquem minus bene vestītum vidēret, eī suum amiculum dedit. Multōs locuplētāvit; multōs pauperēs vīvōs iūvit atque mortuōs suō sūmptū extulit. Sīc minimē mīrum est sī, propter mōrēs Cimōnis, vīta eius fuit sēcūra et mors eius fuit omnibus tam acerba quam mors cuiusdam ex familiā.

(Nepos, *Cimōn*; adapted excerpts.—**per-venīre**.—**ēloquentia**, -**ae**.—**liberālītās**, -**tātis**.—**mīlītāris**, -**e**.—**ā puerō**, from his boyhood.—**potestās**, -**tātis**, power.—**auctōritās**, -**tātis**, authority; the abl. tells in what respect.—**Athēniēnsēs**, Athenians.—**hortus**, -**ī**, garden.—**vestītus**, -**a**, -**um**, clothed.—**amiculum**, -**ī**, cloak.—**locuplētāre**, to enrich.—**sūmptus**, -**ūs**, expense.—**extulit**: ef-ferō, bury.—**mīrus**, -**a**, -**um**, surprising.—**sē-cūrus**, -**a**, -**um**: **sē-** means without.)

A VACATION . . . FROM YOU!

Quid mihi reddat ager quaeris, Line, Nōmentānus?
 Hoc mihi reddit ager: tē, Line, nōn videō!

(*Martial 2.38; meter: elegiac couplet.—**reddō, -ere**, to give back, return (in profit).—**Linus, -ī**, another of Martial's addressees.—**Nōmentānus, -a, -um**, in *Nomentum*, a town of Latium known for its wine industry.)

PLEASE . . . DON'T!

Nīl recitās et vīs, Māmerce, poēta vidērī.
 Quidquid vīs estō, dummodo nīl recitēs!

(*Martial 2.88; meter: elegiac couplet.—**nīl** = *nihil*.—**Mamercus, -ī**.—**estō**, fut. imper. of *esse*, “Be . . . !”)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

3. rectitude, rectify, direct, erect, correct; cp. right. 6. congregate, segregate, gregarious, aggregate. 9. event (=out-come), eventual. 12. perfect (=made or done thoroughly). “Cimon”: vest, vestment, invest, divest.—sumptuous, sumptuary.—miraculous, admire. “Vacation”: render, rendering, rendition.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! The modern Olympic games have as their motto three comparative adverbs, **citius, altius** (from **altus, -a, -um, high**), **fortius**. The new irregular verbs in this chapter, especially **volō** and **nōlō** are extremely common in Lat. and you'll find them, willy-nilly, all through English. You know very well, for example, the legal plea of **nōlō**, short for **nōlō contendere**, *I am unwilling to contest* (the accusation); there's also **nol. pros.** = **nōlle prōsequī**, *to be unwilling to pursue* (the matter), meaning to drop a lawsuit; **nōlēns, volēns, unwilling (or) willing**, i.e., whether or not one wishes, like “willy-nilly” (a contraction of “will ye, nill ye”); the abbreviation “d.v.,” for **deō volante**; also **volō, nōn valeō**, *I am willing but not able*; **nōlī mē tangere**, a warning against tampering as well as Lat. for the jewel-weed flower or “touch-me-not”; **quantum vīs**, *as much as you wish* (which may be more than just **quantum satis**, Ch. 30!); **Deus vult**, the call to arms of the First Crusade; and **mālō morī quam foedārī**, freely “death before dishonor” (lit., *I wish to die rather than to be dishonored*: for the deponent verb **morior**, see Ch. 34). Years ago some pundit wrote (demonstrating the importance of macrons), **mālō malō malō mālō**, *I'd rather be in an apple tree than a bad man in adversity*; the first **mālō** is from **mālum, -ī**, *apple, fruit-tree*, which calls to mind Horace's characterization of a Roman **cēna**, from the hors d'oeuvres to the dessert, as **ab ovō**

(ovum, -ī, egg) ūsque ad mālā, a phrase that became proverbial for “from start to finish.”

Et cētera ex vocābulārīō novō: cēterīs pārībus, *all else being equal*; custōdia is related to custōs, custōdis, *guard*, and custōdīre, *to guard*, hence Juvenal’s satiric query, *sed quis custōdiet ipsōs custōdēs*; exercitus is connected with exercēō, exercēre, *to practice, exercise*, and the noun exercitātīō, which gives us the proverb, most salutary for Latin students: *exercitātīō est optimus magister*. And so, valēte, discipulī/ae, et exercēte, exercēte, exercēte!



*Banqueter with egg, Etruscan fresco
Tomb of the Lionesses, late 6th century B.C.
Tarquinia, Italy*

Conditions

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Conditions are among the most common sentence types, others being “declarative,” “interrogative,” and “exclamatory.” You have encountered numerous conditional sentences in your Latin readings already, and so you are aware that the basic sentence of this type consists of two clauses: 1) the “condition” (or “protasis,” Gk. for *proposition* or *premise*), a subordinate clause usually introduced by *sī*, *if*, or *nisi*, *if not* or *unless*, and stating a hypothetical action or circumstance, and 2) the “conclusion” (or “apodosis,” Gk. for *outcome* or *result*), the main clause, which expresses the anticipated outcome if the premise turns out to be true.

There are six basic conditional types; three have their verbs in the indicative, three in the subjunctive, and the reason is simple. While all conditional sentences, by their very nature, describe actions in the past, present, or future that are to one extent or another hypothetical, the indicative was employed in those where the condition was more likely to be realized, the subjunctive in those where the premise was either less likely to be realized or where both the condition and the conclusion were absolutely contrary to the actual facts of a situation. Study carefully the following summary, learning the names of each of the six conditional types, how to recognize them, and the standard formulae for translation.

INDICATIVE CONDITIONS

1. **Simple fact present:** *Sī id facit, prūdēns est.* *If he is doing this [and it is quite possible that he is], he is wise.* Present indicative in both clauses; translate verbs as present indicatives.

2. **Simple fact past:** *Sī id fēcīt, prūdēns fuit. If he did this [and quite possibly he did], he was wise.* Past tense (perfect or imperfect) indicative in both clauses; translate verbs as past indicatives.
3. **Simple fact future** (sometimes called “future more vivid”): *Sī id faciet, prūdēns erit. If he does (will do) this [and quite possibly he will], he will be wise.* Future indicative in both clauses; translate the verb in the protasis as a *present* tense (here Eng. “if” + the present has a future sense), the verb in the conclusion as a future. (Occasionally the future perfect is used, in either or both clauses, with virtually the same sense as the future: see S.A. 8 and “B.Y.O.B.” line 3, p. 231.)

SUBJUNCTIVE CONDITIONS

The indicative conditions deal with potential facts; the subjunctive conditions are ideal rather than factual, describing circumstances that are either, in the case of the “future less vivid,” somewhat less likely to be realized or less vividly imagined or, in the case of the two “contrary to fact” types, opposite to what actually is happening or has happened in the past.

1. **Contrary to fact present:** *Sī id faceret, prūdēns esset. If he were doing this [but in fact he is not], he would be wise [but he is not].* Imperfect subjunctive in both clauses; translate with auxiliaries “were (. . . ing)” and “would (be).”
2. **Contrary to fact past:** *Sī id fēcisset, prūdēns fuisset. If he had done this [but he did not], he would have been wise [but he was not].* Pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses; translate with auxiliaries “had” and “would have.”
3. **Future less vivid** (sometimes called “should-would”): *Sī id faciat, prūdēns sit. If he should do this [and he may, or he may not], he would be wise.* Present subjunctive in both clauses; translate with auxiliaries “should” and “would.”

There are occasional variants on these six basic types, i.e., use of the imperative in the apodosis, “mixed conditions” with different tenses or moods in the protasis and apodosis, different introductory words (e.g., *dum*), etc., but those are easily dealt with in context.

FURTHER EXAMPLES

Classify each of the following conditions.

1. *Sī hoc dīcet, errābit; if he says this, he will be wrong.*
2. *Sī hoc dīcit, errat; if he says this, he is wrong.*
3. *Sī hoc dīxisset, errāvisset; if he had said this, he would have been wrong.*
4. *Sī hoc dīcat, erret; if he should say this, he would be wrong.*

5. Sī hoc dīxit, errāvit; *if he said this, he was wrong.*
6. Sī hoc dīceret, errāret; *if he were saying this, he would be wrong.*
7. Sī veniat, hoc videat; *if he should come, he would see this.*
8. Sī vēnit, hoc vīdit; *if he came, he saw this.*
9. Sī venīret, hoc vidēret; *if he were coming, he would see this.*
10. Sī veniet, hoc vidēbit; *if he comes, he will see this.*
11. Sī vēnisset, hoc vīdisset; *if he had come, he would have seen this.*

VOCABULARY

- inītiūm, -iī, n.,** *beginning, commencement* (initial, initiate, initiation)
- ops, opis, f.,** *help, aid; opēs, opum, pl.,* *power, resources, wealth* (opulent, opulence; cp. **cōpia**, from **con-** + **ops**)
- philosophus, -ī, m.,** and **philosophā, -ae, f.,** *philosopher* (philosophy, philosophical)
- plēbs, plēbis, f.,** *the common people, populace, plebeians* (plebs, plebe, plebeian, plebiscite)
- sāl, sālīs, m.,** *salt; wit* (salad, salami, salary, salina, saline, salify, salimeter, salinometer, sauce, sausage)
- spēculum, -ī, n.,** *mirror* (speculate, speculation; cp. **spectō**, Ch. 34)
- quis, quid,** after **sī, nisi, nē, num,** indef. pron., *anyone, anything, someone, something* (cp. **quis? quid? quisque, quisquis**)
- cándidus, -a, -um,** *shining, bright, white; beautiful* (candescent, candid, candidate, candor, incandescent, candle, chandelier)
- mērus, -a, -um,** *pure, undiluted* (mere, merely)
- suāvis, suāve,** *sweet* (suave, suaveness, suavity, suasion, dissuade, persuasion; cp. **persuādeō**, Ch. 35)
- ve,** conj. suffixed to a word = **aut** before the word (cp. **-que**), *or*
- heu,** interj., *ah!, alas!* (a sound of grief or pain)
- súbitō,** adv., *suddenly* (sudden, suddenness)
- recúso** (1), *to refuse* (recuse, recusant; cp. **causa**)
- trádō, -dere, -didī, -ditum** (**trāns** + **dō**), *to give over, surrender; hand down, transmit, teach* (tradition, traditional, traitor, treason)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Dummodo exercitus opem mox ferat, moenia urbis celeriter cōnservāre poterimus.
2. Cum cōnsilia hostium ab initiō cognōvissēs, prīmō tamen ūllum auxilium offerre aut etiam centum milītēs prōmittere nōluistī.
3. Sī dīvitiae et invidia nōs ab amōre et honōre ūsque prohibent, dīvitēsne vērē sumus?
4. Pauper quidem nōn erit pār cēterīs nisi scientiam ingeniumve habēbit; sī haec habeat, autem, multī magnopere invidēant.
5. Nisi īnsidiae eius patērent, ferrum eius maximē timērēmus.

6. Sī quis rogābit quid nunc discās, refer tē artem nōn mediocrem sed ūtilissimam ac difficillimam discere.
7. Lēgēs ita scribantur ut dīvitēs et plēbs—etiam pauper sine asse—sint parēs.
8. Sī custōdiae dūriōrēs fortiōrēsque ad casam tuam contendissent, heu, numquam tanta scelera suscēpissēs et hī omnēs nōn occidissent.
9. Cum illa fēmina sapientissima id semel cognōvisset, ad eōs celerrimē sē contulit et omnēs opēs suās praebuit.
10. Dūrum exsilium tam ācrem mentem ūnō annō mollīre nōn poterit.
11. Propter omnēs rūmōrēs pessimōs (quī nōn erant vērī), nātae suāvēs eius magnopere dolēbant et dormīre nōn poterant.
12. If those philosophers should come soon, you would be happier.
13. If you had not answered very wisely, they would have hesitated to offer us peace.
14. If anyone does these three things well, he will live better.
15. If you were willing to read better books, you would most certainly learn more.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Sī vīs pācem, parā bellum. (*Flavius Vegetius.—**parā**, *prepare for*.)
2. Arma sunt parvī pretiī, nisi vērō cōnsilium est in patriā. (Cicero.—**pretium**, **-iī**, *value*.)
3. Salūs omnium ūnā nocte certē āmissa esset, nisi illa sevērītās contrā istōs suscepta esset. (Cicero.—**sevērītās**, **-tātis**.)
4. Sī quid dē mē posse agī putābis, id agēs—sī tū ipse ab istō periculō eris liber. (Cicero.)
5. Sī essem mihi cōnsciūs ūllīus culpaē, aequō animō hoc malum ferrem. (Phaedrus.—**cōnsciūs**, **-a**, **-um**, *conscious*.)
6. Dīcis tē vērē malle fortunam et mōrēs antīquae plēbis; sed sī quis ad illa subitō tē agat, illum modum vītae recūsēs. (Horace.)
7. Minus saepe errēs, sī sciās quid nesciās. (Publilius Syrus.)
8. Dīcēs “heu” sī tē in speculō vīderis. (Horace.)
9. Nīl habet infēlix paupertās dūrius in sē quam quod rīdiculōs hominēs facit. (*Juvenal.—**nīl** = **nihil**.—**quod**, *the fact that*.)

B.Y.O.B., etc., etc.

- Cēnābis bene, mī Fabulle, apud mē
 paucīs (sī tibi dī favent) diēbus—
 sī tēcum attuleris bonam atque magnam
 cēnam, nōn sine candidā puellā
 5 et vīnō et sale et omnibus cachinnīs;
 haec sī, inquam, attuleris, venuste noster,
 cēnābis bene; nam tuī Catullī

- plēnus sacculus est arāneārum.
 Sed contrā accipiēs merōs amōrēs,
 10 seu quid suāviūs ēlegantiusve est:
 nam unguentum dabo, quod meae puellae
 dōnārunt Venerēs Cupīdinēsque;
 quod tū cum olfaciēs, deōs rogābis,
 tōtum ut tē faciant, Fabulle, nāsum.

(*Catullus 13; meter: hendecasyllabic. The poet invites a friend to dinner, but there's a hitch and a BIG surprise.—**favēre** + dat., *to be favorable toward, favor*.—**cachinna**, -ae, *laugh, laughter*.—**venustus**, -a, -um, *charming*.—**sacculus**, -ī, *money-bag, wallet*.—**arānea**, -ae, *spiderweb*.—**contrā**, here adv., *on the other hand, in return*.—**seu**, conj., *or*.—**ēlegāns**, gen. **ēlegantis**.—**unguentum**, -ī, *salve, perfume*.—**dabo**: remember that -ō was often shortened in verse.—**dōnārunt** = **dōnāvērunt**, from **dōnāre**, *to give*.—**Venus**, -neris, f., and **Cupīdō**, -dinis, m.; Venus and Cupid, pl. here to represent all the fostering powers of Love.—**quod . . . olfaciēs** = **cum tū id olfaciēs**.—**olfaciō**, -ere, *to smell*.—For formal discussion of the “jussive noun” clause **deōs rogābis . . . ut . . . faciant**, easily translated here, see Ch. 36.—**tōtum . . . nāsum**, from **nāsus**, -ī, *nose*, objective complement with **tē**; the wide separation of adj. and noun suggests the cartoon-like enormity of the imagined schnoz!)

THE RICH GET RICHER

Semper pauper eris, sī pauper es, Aemiliāne:
 dantur opēs nullī nunc nisi dīvitibus.

(*Martial 5.81.; meter: elegiac couplet.—**Aemiliānus**, -ī.)

ARISTOTLE, TUTOR OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT

An Philippos, rēx Macedonum, voluisset Alexandrō, filiō suō, prīma elementa litterārum trādī ab Aristotele, summō eius aetātis philosophō, aut hic suscepisset illud maximum officium, nisi initia studiōrum pertinēre ad summam sapientissimē crēdidissent?

(Quintilian, *Īnstitūtīōnēs Ōrātōriae* 1.1.23.—**an**, interrog. conj., *or, can it be that*.—**Macedonēs**, -donum, m./f. pl., *Macedonians*.—**Aristotelēs**, -telis.—**pertinēre ad**, *to relate to, affect*.—**summa**, -ae, *highest part, whole*.)

YOUR LOSS, MY GAIN!

Cum Quīntus Fabius Maximus magnō cōnsiliō Tarentum fortissimē recēpisset et Salīnātor (quī in arce fuerat, urbe āmissā) dīxisset, “Meā operā, Quīnte Fabī, Tarentum recēpistī,” Fabius, mē audiente, “Certē,” inquit rīdēns, “nam nisi tū urbem āmīsissēs, numquam eam recēpissem.”

(Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 4.11.—During the second Punic War, Tarentum revolted from the Romans to Hannibal, though the Romans under Marcus Livius

Salinator continued to hold the citadel throughout this period. In 209 B.C. the city was recaptured by Quintus Fabius Maximus.—**Tarentum -ī**, a famous city in southern Italy (which the Romans called Magna Graecia).—**meā operā**, *thanks to me.*)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

2. price, precious, prize, praise, appraise, appreciate, depreciate. 3. severe, persevere, perseverance, asseverate. 5. conscious, unconscious, conscience.

“B.Y.O.B.”: favorite, disfavor.—cachinnate, cachinnation.—sack, satchel.—araneid.—elegance, elegantly.—unguent, unguentary.—donate, donation, donor.—olfaction, olfactory, olfactometer, olfactronics.—nasal, nasalize, nasalization; “nose,” “nostril,” and “nozzle” are cognate. “Aristotle”: pertain, pertinent, pertinacity, pertenance, appertain, appurtenance, impertinent, impertinence.—sum, summary, summation.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Here are some well known conditions: **sī nātūra negat, facit indignātiō versum**, *if nature denies* (i.e., if my talent is lacking), *indignation creates my verse* (so said the satirist Juvenal, who had plenty of both!); **sī fortūna iuvat; sī fēcistī, negā!** (a lawyer’s advice); **sī Deus nōbiscum, quis contrā nōs** (the verbs are left out, but the meaning is clear); **sī post fāta venit glōria, nōn properō**, *if glory comes (only) after death, I’m in no hurry!* (Martial); **sī sīc omnēs**, freely, a wistful “if only everything were like this” (or does it really mean “all on the boat became ill”?!!).

Ex vocābulāriō novō quoque: well, to start “from the beginning,” the phrase **ab initiō** is quite common in Eng.; those running for political office in Rome wore the **toga candida**, *white toga*, hence Eng. “candidate.” The Romans called undiluted wine **merum** (which the bibulous merely imbibed!); **ope et cōsiliō** is a good way to manage life. The expression “with a grain of salt” comes from Lat. **cum grānō salis**; **sāl Atticum** is dry *Athenian wit*; and “salary” is also from **sāl**, a package of which was part of a Roman soldier’s pay (we “bring home the [salty] bacon,” Romans brought home the salt!). Art is a **speculum vītae**. If you remember how to form adverbs from adjectives, then you can decipher the proverb **suāviter in modō, fortiter in rē**, a good mode for the Latin teacher; and if you read music, you may have seen **subitō**, a musical annotation meaning *quickly*.

Hope you enjoy these closing **miscellānea** (from *miscellāneus*, -a, -um, *varied, mixed*), and here’s one reason why: **sī finis bonus est, tōtū bonum erit**, an old proverb, a “mixed condition,” and familiar vocabulary, so I’ll give you the free version, “All’s well that ends well (including this chapter)!”: **et vōs omnēs, quoque valeātis!**

Deponent Verbs; Ablative with Special Deponents

DEPONENT VERBS

Latin has a number of commonly used “deponent verbs,” verbs that have passive endings but with essentially active meanings. There are very few new forms to be learned in this chapter (only the imperatives); the most crucial matter is simply to recall *which verbs are deponent*, so that you remember to translate them in the active voice, and that can be managed through careful vocabulary study. There are a few exceptions to the rule of passive forms/active meanings, and those will also need to be carefully noted.

PRINCIPAL PARTS AND CONJUGATION

As you will see from the following examples, deponents regularly have only three principal parts, the passive equivalents of the first three principal parts of regular verbs (1. first pers. sg. pres. indic., 2. pres. infin., 3. first pers. sg. perf. indic.).

Present Indic.	Present Infin.	Perfect Indic.
hórtor, <i>I urge</i>	hortáři, <i>to urge</i>	hortátus (-a, -um) sum, <i>I urged</i>
fáteor, <i>I confess</i>	fatêři, <i>to confess</i>	fássus (-a, -um) sum, <i>I confessed</i>
séquor, <i>I follow</i>	séquĩ, <i>to follow</i>	secútus (-a, -um) sum, <i>I followed</i>
mólior, <i>I work at</i>	mōlĩři, <i>to work at</i>	mōlĩtus (-a, -um) sum, <i>I worked at</i>
pátior, <i>I suffer</i>	pátĩ, <i>to suffer</i>	pássus (-a, -um) sum, <i>I suffered</i>

SAMPLE FORMS OF Hortor AND Sequor

Again, deponents are conjugated according to precisely the same rules as regular verbs in the passive voice; the following representative forms are provided for review, and full conjugations for each of the five examples given above are included in the Appendix (p. 455–57).

Indicative**PRESENT**

1. hortor, <i>I urge</i>	séquor, <i>I follow</i>
2. hortāris (-re), <i>you urge</i>	séqueris (-re), <i>you follow</i>
3. hortātur, <i>he urges</i>	séquitur, <i>he follows</i>
1. hortāmur, <i>we urge</i>	séquimur, <i>we follow</i>
2. hortāminī, <i>you urge</i>	sequiminī, <i>you follow</i>
3. hortāntur, <i>they urge</i>	sequuntur, <i>they follow</i>

IMPERFECT

1. hortābar, <i>I was urging</i>	sequēbar, <i>I was following</i>
2. hortābāris (-re), <i>you were urging</i>	sequēbāris (-re), <i>you were following,</i>
etc.	etc.

FUTURE

1. hortābor, <i>I shall urge</i>	séquar, <i>I shall follow</i>
2. hortāberis (-re), <i>you will urge</i>	sequēris (-re), <i>you will follow</i>
3. hortābitur, <i>he will urge</i>	sequētur, <i>he will follow</i>
etc.	etc.

PERFECT

hortātus, -a, -um sum, <i>I urged</i>	secūtus, -a, -um sum, <i>I followed</i>
etc.	etc.

PLUPERFECT

hortātus, -a, -um eram, <i>I had urged</i>	secūtus, -a, -um eram, <i>I had followed</i>
etc.	etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

hortātus, -a, -um erō, <i>I shall have urged</i>	secūtus, -a, -um erō, <i>I shall have followed</i>
etc.	etc.

Subjunctive**PRESENT**

horter, hortēris, hortētur	séquar, sequāris, sequātur
etc.	etc.

IMPERFECThortārer, hortārēris, hortārētur
etc.séquerer, sequerēris, sequerētur
etc.**PERFECT**

hortātus, -a, -um sim, sīs, etc.

secūtus, -a, -um sim, sīs, etc.

PLUPERFECT

hortātus, -a, -um essem, etc.

secūtus, -a, -um essem, etc.

SYNOPSIS

The following third person singular synopsis of **fateor, fatēri, fassus sum** should provide a useful overview of the conjugation of deponents; remember that all the English equivalents are active, i.e., *he confesses, he will confess, etc.*

Indicative Mood

Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut. Perf.	Plupf.
fatētur	fatēbitur	fatēbātur	fāssus est	fāssus erit	fāssus erat

Subjunctive Mood

fateātur	—	fatērētur	fāssus sit	—	fāssus ésset
----------	---	-----------	---------------	---	-----------------

PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES

The participles and infinitives of typical deponent verbs are here given in full not because of any actually new forms but because of certain discrepancies in the general rule of passive forms with active meanings.

Participles*Pres. hortāns, urging**Perf. hortātus, -a, -um,
having urged**Fut. hortātūrus, -a, -um,
about to urge**Ger. hortāndus, -a, -um,
to be urged**séquēns, following**secūtus, -a, -um,
having followed**secūtūrus, -a, -um,
about to follow**sequēndus, -a, -um,
to be followed***Infinitives***Pres. hortārī, to urge**Perf. hortātus, -a, -um esse,
to have urged**séquī, to follow**secūtus, -a, -um esse,
to have followed*

<i>Fut. hortātūrus, -a, -um esse,</i> <i>to be about to urge</i>	<i>secūtūrus, -a, -um esse,</i> <i>to be about to follow</i>
---	---

Exceptions: Deponents have the same four participles that regular verbs have, but only three infinitives, one for each tense. Three of the participles and one of the infinitives present exceptions to the basic rule that deponents are passive in form but active in meaning:

1. Present and future participles: active forms with active meanings.
2. Gerundive (future passive participle): passive form with passive meaning.
3. Future infinitive: active form with active meaning.

Imperatives

The present imperative of deponent verbs would naturally have the forms of the present “passive” imperative. These forms have not been given before because they are found only in deponent verbs, but they are easy to learn.

1. The second person singular has the same spelling as that of the *alternate* second person singular of the present *indicative*, e.g., **sequere!** (Note that this is also the same form as the non-existent present active *infinitive*: be especially careful not to mistake this characteristic deponent imperative form for an infinitive.)

2. The second person plural imperative has the same spelling as that of the second person plural of the present *indicative*, e.g., **sequimini!**

Take careful note of the following examples:

2. hortāre, <i>urge!</i>	fatēre, <i>confess!</i>	sēquere	mōlīre	pātere
2. hortāminī, <i>urge!</i>	fatēminī, <i>confess!</i>	sequimini	mōlīminī	patīminī

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

Semi-deponent (“half-deponent”) is the name given to a few verbs which are normal in the present system but are deponent in the perfect system, as is clearly demonstrated by the principal parts. For example:

aúdeō, <i>I dare</i>	audēre, <i>to dare</i>	aúsus sum, <i>I dared</i>
gaúdeō, <i>I rejoice</i>	gaudēre, <i>to rejoice</i>	gāvísus sum, <i>I rejoiced</i>

ABLATIVE WITH SPECIAL DEPONENTS

The ablative of means is used idiomatically with a few deponent verbs, of which **ūtor** (and its compounds) is by far the most common (the others, **fruor**, *to enjoy*, **fungor**, *to perform*, **potior**, *to possess*, and **vēscor**, *to eat*, are

not employed in this book, but you will likely encounter them in your later reading). **Ūtor**, *to use, enjoy*, is in fact a reflexive verb and means literally *to benefit oneself by means of something*.¹

Ūtitur stilō,

he is benefiting himself by means of a pencil (literally).

he is using a pencil (idiomatically).

Nōn audent ūtī nāvibus, *they do not dare to use the ships.*

Nōn ausī sunt ūtī nāvibus, *they did not dare to use the ships.*

FURTHER EXAMPLES OF DEPONENT FORMS IN SENTENCES

1. Eum patientem haec mala hortātī sunt,
they encouraged him (as he was) suffering these evils.
2. Eum passūrum haec mala hortātī sunt,
they encouraged him (as he was) about to suffer these evils.
3. Is, haec mala passus, hortandus est,
this man, having suffered these evils, ought to be encouraged.
4. Is haec mala fortiter patiētur,
he will suffer these evils bravely.
5. Eum sequere et haec mōlīre,
follow him and work at these things.
6. Eum sequī et haec mōlīrī nōn ausus es,
you did not dare to follow him and work at these things.
7. Eum sequeris/sequēris,
you are following/will follow him.
8. Eum hortēmur et sequāmur,
let us encourage and follow him.
9. Cicerō Graecīs litterīs ūtēbātur,
Cicero used to enjoy Greek literature.

VOCABULARY

ánima, -ae, f., *soul, spirit* (anima, animism, animatism, animation, animated, inanimate, etc.; cp. **animal**, **animus**)

remissió, **remissiónis**, f., *letting go, release; relaxation* (remiss, remission; from **re** + **mittō**)

vōx, **vōcis**, f., *voice, word* (vocal, vocalic, vocalize, vociferous, vowel; vox angelica, vox humana, vox populi; cp. **vocō**)

advērsus, -a, -um, *opposite, adverse* (adversary, adversative, adversely, adversity; cp. **vertō**)

tālis, **tāle**, *such, of such a sort* (cp. **quālis**, *of what sort, what kind of*)

vae, interj., often + dat., *alas, woe to*

¹ Cp. Fr. **se servir de**, "to use," orig. "to serve oneself with."

- árbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum**, *to judge, think* (arbiter, arbitress, arbitration, arbitrator, arbitrary, arbitrarily)
- cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum**, *to try, attempt* (conation, conative)
- crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum**, *to increase* (crescent, crescendo, cresce, concrescence, concrete, decrease, excrescence, increment, accretion, accrue, crew, recruit)
- ēgrēdior, ēgredī, ēgrēssus sum**, *to go out* (aggression, congress, degrade, digress, egress, grade, gradient, gradual, graduate, ingredient, ingress, progress, regress, retrogress, transgress)
- fāteor, fatērī, fāssus sum**, *to confess, admit* (confess, confession, profess, profession, professor; cp. **fābula, fāma, fātum**, also **for, fārī, fātus sum**, Ch. 40)
- hórtor, hortārī, hortātus sum**, *to encourage, urge* (hortatory, exhort, exhortation)
- lóquor, lóquī, locūtus sum**, *to say, speak, tell* (loquacious, circumlocution, colloquial, elocution, eloquent, obloquy, soliloquy, ventriloquist)
- mólior, mōlīrī, mōlītus sum**, *to work at, build, undertake, plan* (demolish, demolition; cp. **mōlēs**, *a large mass, massive structure*)
- mórior, mórī, mórtuus sum**, fut. act. part. **moritūrus**, *to die* (moribund, mortuary; cp. **mors, mortālis, immortalis**)
- nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum**, *to be born; spring forth, arise* (agnate, cognate, innate, nascent, natal, nation, nature, naïve; cp. **nāta, nātūra**)
- pátior, pátī, pássus sum**, *to suffer, endure, permit* (passion, passive, patient, compassion, compatible, incompatibility, impatient, impassioned, impassive, dispassionate)
- proficīscor, -ficīscī, -fēctus sum**, *to set out, start* (profit and proficient from the related verb **prōficiō**, *to make headway, gain results*)
- rústicor, rústicārī, rústicātus sum**, *to live in the country* (rusticate, rustic, rural, cp. **rústicus**, *rural*, **rūs**, Ch. 37)
- sédeō, sedēre, sēdī, séssum**, *to sit* (sedan, sedate, sedentary, sediment, sessile, session, assess, assiduous, president, siege, subsidy)
- séquor, séquī, secūtus sum**, *to follow* (consequent, consecutive, sequence, sequel, subsequent; see Etymology below)
- spéctō** (1), *to look at, see* (spectate, spectator, spectacle, speculate, aspect, circumspect, inspect, prospect, respect, suspect; cp. **speculum**)
- útor, útī, úsus sum** + abl., *to use; enjoy, experience* (abuse, disuse, peruse, usual, usurp, usury, utensil, utilize, utility, utilitarian; cp. **útilis**)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Nisi quis plēbī opem celeriter referet auxiliumve prōmissum praebēbit, mīlia virōrum morientur.
2. Cum urbs plēna custōdiārum esset, nōn ausī estis suscipere scelera tam gravia quam voluerātis.

3. Dīc nunc cūr velīs tē ad istam dīvitē et candidam cōferre. Vērē ac liberē loquere; nōlī recūsāre!
4. Dīvitīs trādītīs, heu, illī philosophī eādem nocte subitō profectī sunt in exsilium, unde numquam ēgredī potuerunt.
5. Nē patiāmur hanc antīquissimam scientiam āmittī.
6. Fateor mē vīnō merō apud mē ūsūrum esse.
7. Ab initiō nōn comprehendistī quantus exercitus nōs sequerētur et quot elephantōs istī mīlitēs sēcum dūcerent.
8. Prīmō respondit sē nōlle sequī ducem mediocris virtūtis sapientiae, cum civitās in līmine bellī stāret.
9. Ex urbe subitō ēgressus, ferrō suō morī semel cōnātus est.
10. Cum Aristotelēs hortārētur hominēs ad virtūtem, tamen arbitrābatur virtūtem in hominibus nōn nāscī.
11. Māter paterque nunc rūsticantur ut ā labōribus remissiōne suāvī ūtantur.
12. Dā mihi, amābō tē, multum salis et vīnum aquamve, ut cēnā maxime ūtar.
13. They did not permit me to speak with him at that time.
14. We kept thinking (**arbitror**) that he would use the office more wisely.
15. If any one should use this water even once, he would die.
16. If those four soldiers had followed us, we would not have dared to put the weapons on the ships.
17. This dinner will be good, provided that you use salt.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

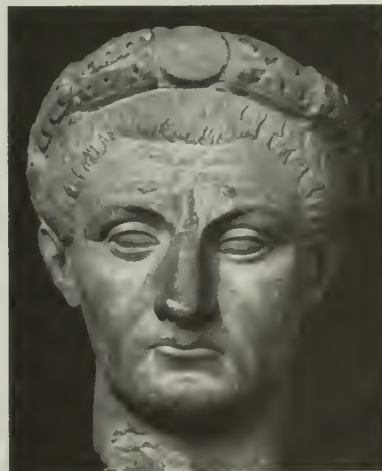
1. Cēdāmus Phoebō et, monitī, meliōra sequāmur. (*Virgil.—Phoebus Apollo was god of prophecy.)
2. Nam nēmō sine vitiīs nāscitur; optimus ille est quī minima habet. (Horace.)
3. Mundus est commūnis urbs deōrum atque hominum; hī enim sōlī ratiōne ūtentēs, iūre ac lēge vīvunt. (Cicero.)
4. Tardē sed graviter vir sapiēns īrāscitur. (*Publilius Syrus.—**tardus**, -a, -um, *slow, late*.—**īrāscor**, **īrāscī**, **īrātus sum**, *to become angry*.)
5. Quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, ēgredere ex urbe; patent portae; proficiscere; nōbīscum versārī iam diūtius nōn potes; id nōn feram, nōn patiar. (Cicero.—**Quae cum** = **Cum haec**.—**versor**, **versārī**, **versātus sum**, *to stay*.)
6. Cūra pecūniam crēscēntem sequitur et dīves male dormit. (Horace.)
7. Sī in Britanniam profectus essēs, nēmō in illā tantā īnsulā iūre peritior fuisset. (Cicero.—**Britannia**, -ae, Britain.—**perītus**, -a, -um + abl., *skilled in*.)
8. Nisi laus nova nāscitur etiam vetus laus in incertō iacet ac saepe āmittitur. (Publilius Syrus).—**vetus**, gen. **veteris**, *old*.)

9. Spērō autem mē secūtum esse in libellīs meīs tālem temperantiam ut nēmō bonus dē illīs querī possit. (Martial.—**temperantia, -ae.—queror, querī, questus sum, to complain.**)
10. Hōrae quidem et diēs et annī discēdunt; nec praeteritum tempus umquam revertitur, nec quid sequātur potest scīrī. (Cicero.—**praeteritus, -a, -um, past.—revertor, revertī, reversus sum, to return.**)
11. Nōvistī mōrēs mulierum: dum mōliuntur, dum cōnantur, dum in speculum spectant, annus lābitur. (Terence.—**mulier, -eris, woman.—labor, labī, lapsus sun, to slip, glide.**)
12. Amīcitia rēs plūrimās continet; nōn aquā, nōn igne in plūribus locīs ūtimur quam amīcitīā. (Cicero.)
13. Homō stultus! Postquam dīvitias habēre coepit, mortuus est! (Cicero.—**postquam, conj., after.**)
14. Ō passī graviōra, dabit deus hīs quoque fīnem. (*Virgil.—**Ō passī, voc. pl., O you who have . . . —hīs = hīs rēbus gravibus.**)

CLAUDIUS' EXCREMENTAL EXPIRATION

Et ille quidem animam ēbulliit, et ex eō dēsiit vīvere vidērī. Exspīrāvit autem dum comoedōs audit, ut sciās mē nōn sine causā illōs timēre. Ultima vōx eius haec inter hominēs audīta est, cum maiōrem sonitum ēmisisset illā parte quā facilius loquēbātur: “Vae mē, putō, concacāvī.” Quod an fēcerit, nesciō—omnia certē concacāvī!

(*Seneca, *Apocolocyntōsis* 4; a satirical farce on the emperor Claudius' death and deification.—**ēbulliō, -īre, ēbullī, to bubble out, + animam, comic for he died.—ex eō, sc. tempore.—dēsinō, -sinere, -siī, -sītum, to cease.—exspīrāre, to breathe out, die.—comoedus, -ī, comic actor.—sonitus, -ūs, sound.—ē + mittere.—illā parte, sc. ex, i.e., his bottom.—concacāre, to defecate upon.—quod = id.—an, whether, introducing an ind. quest.**)



*The emperor Claudius
Louvre, Paris, France*

AND VICE IS NOT NICE!

Mentītur quī tē vitiōsum, Zōile, dīcit:
nōn vitiōsus homō es, Zōile, sed vitium!

(*Martial 11.92; meter: elegiac couplet.—**mentior**, **mentīrī**, **mentītus sum**, *to lie, deceive*.—**vitiōsus**, adj. from **vitium**.—**tē vitiōsum**, sc. *esse*, and remember that the verb **sum**, *esse* is often omitted in both prose and verse when it is readily understood from the context.—**Zōilus**, a Greek name.)

PRETTY IS AS PRETTY DOES

Bella es, nōvimus, et puella, vērum est,
et dīves—quis enim potest negāre?
Sed cum tē nimium, Fabulla, laudās,
nec dīves neque bella nec puella es!

(*Martial 1.64; meter: hendecasyllabic.)

ON LESBIA'S HUSBAND

- Ille mī pār esse deō vidētur,
ille, sī fās est, superāre dīvōs,
quī, sedēns adversus, identidem tē
spectat et audit
5 dulce rīdentem, miserō quod omnīs
ēripit sēnsūs mihi: nam simul tē,
Lesbia, aspexī, nihil est super mī,
[Lesbia, vōcis,]
lingua sed torpet, tenuis sub artūs
10 flamma dēmānat, sonitū suōpte
tintinant aurēs, geminā teguntur
lūmina nocte.
Ōtium, Catulle, tibi molestum est;
ōtiō exsultās nimiumque gestīs;
15 ōtium et rēgēs prius et beātās
perdidit urbēs.

(*Catullus 51; meter: Sapphic stanza.—**mī** = **mihi**.—**fās est**, *it is right*.—**dīvōs** = **deōs**.—**identidem**, adv., *again and again*.—**dulce**, adv. of **dulcis**.—**miserō . . . mihi**, dat. of separation; the prose order would be **quod omnīs** (= **omnēs**) **sēnsūs mihi miserō ēripit**.—**quod**, *a circumstance which*; the entire preceding clause is the antecedent.—**simul**, adv., *as soon as*.—**aspexī** = **spectāvī**.—**nihil**, with **vōcis**, gen. of the whole, *no voice*; **est super** = **superest**, *remains*.—**Lesbia**, **vōcis** is an editorial suggestion for a verse missing in the manuscripts.—**torpēre**, *to grow numb*.—**tenuis**, with **flamma**, from **tenuis**, **-e**, *thin, slender*.—**artus**, **-ūs**, *joint, limb* (of the body).—**flamma**, **-ae**, *flame*.—**dēmānāre**, *to flow through*.—**suōpte**, inten-

sive for **suō**.—**tintināre**, to ring.—**tegō, -ere**, to cover.—**lūmen, -minis**, n., light; eye.—**molestus, -a, -um**, troublesome.—**exultāre**, to celebrate, exult (in), + **ōtiō**.—**gestīre**, to act without restraint, be elated or triumphant.—**perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditum**, to destroy.)

ETYMOLOGY

“Sympathy” derives from Gk. **syn** (with) + **pathos** (suffering). What Latin-rooted word is the exact equivalent of “sympathy”?

Further words associated with **sequor**: execute, executive, executor, obsequious, prosecute, persecute, pursue, ensue, sue, suit, suite, sect, second. Related to **sequor**, besides **secundus**, is **socius** (a follower, ally), whence: social, society, associate, dissociate.

In the readings

4. irate, irascible, irascibility. 5. **Versārī** literally means to turn (oneself) around: versatile, converse, conversant, conversation. 8. veteran, inveterate. 9. intemperance.—querulous, quarrel. 10. preterit, preterition, praeteritio.—revert, reverse, reversible, reversion. “Claudius”: ebullient.—expire, expiration, expiratory, expiry.—cp. **sonus, -ī**, sound: sonic, sonar, resonate. “Lesbia”: divine.—aspect.—tenuous, tenuity.—flammable, inflame, inflammatory, inflammation.—tintinnabulation.—lunary, lumination, illuminate.—molest, molestation.—exultant, exultation.—perdition.

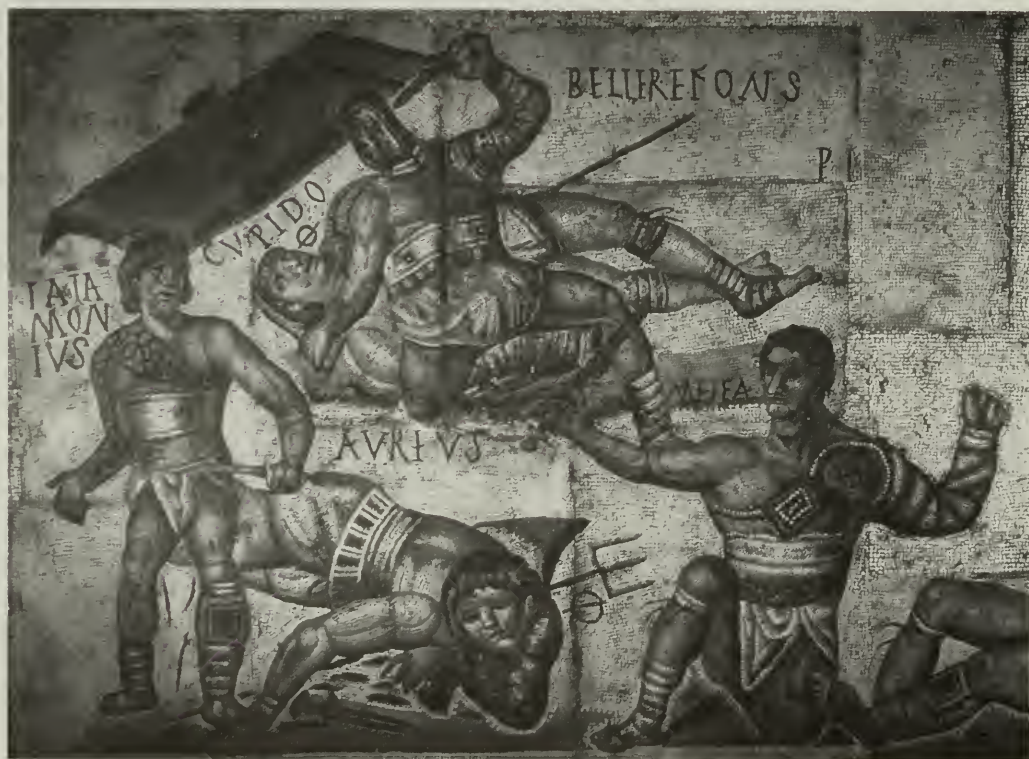
LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, mēī discipulī discipulaeque! Quid agitis? (Spērō vōs valēre.) Now that you’ve begun to read more real, unadapted Latin literature (like the above selections from Martial, Seneca, and Catullus), you might appreciate the following remark: “Looking back on school, I really liked Latin. In my case, a little bit stuck: I ended up with a feeling for literature.”—Paul McCartney. So, how much Latin is enough?—**quantum placeat**, as much as gives one pleasure (close to **quantum vīs**, Ch. 32, and more, one hopes, than **quantum satis**, Ch. 30!).

Here are some Latin phrases that are by no means moribund: first, an unfortunate (and fortunately overstated!) old proverb, **quem dī dīligunt, adulēscēns moritur**; a reminder of one’s mortality is a **mementō morī**, freely “remember that you must die” (the **-tō** form is a relatively rare future imperative not formally introduced in this book but used not infrequently in ancient legal and religious texts); on sacrificing one’s life for one’s country, Horace wrote **dulce et decōrum** (from **decōrus, -a, -um**, fitting, proper) **est prō patriā morī**; another bleak proverb (but essential here, as it offers two deponents!) is the astronomer Manilius’ dictum, **nascentēs morimur** (even as we are) being born, we (begin to) die; and then there is Seneca’s version of “eat, drink, and be merry,” complete with a passive periphrastic, **bibāmus, moriendum est**, and the words addressed to the emperor by gladiators enter-

ing the arena, *avē, Caesar: moritūri tē salutāmus*, *hail, Caesar: we (who are) about to die salute you!* To any who have suffered, not death, but defeat, one might proclaim *vae, victis*, *woe to the conquered*, a famous line from Livy's account of the Gallic sack of Rome in 390 B.C.

Well, enough morbidity. *Hic sunt alia miscellanea ex vocabulārīō novō: vōx populī; vōx clamantis in dēsertō*, *the voice of one calling out in the wilderness* (from the gospel of Matthew); *crēscit amor nummī quantum ipsa pecūnia crēvit*, *love of the coin grows as much as one's wealth itself has grown* (Juvenal 14.139); *sedente animō*, *with a calm mind*. And here are some other depONENTS: Maryland's state motto is *crēscite et multiplicāmini* (can you figure that one out?); *loquitur* is a note in a dramatic text; and the legal phrase *rēs ipsa loquitur*, *the matter speaks for itself*, we have seen before, but now you understand the verb form. And how about this sequence: *seq.* is an abbreviation for *sequēns/sequentēs*, *the following*, once common in footnotes; a *nōn sequitur* is a remark that *does not follow* logically from a prior statement (a *sequitur*, of course, does!); *sequor nōn inferior*, *I follow (but am) not inferior*. Will this exciting chapter have a sequel in the subsequent chapter? And, if not, what will be the consequences? Stay tuned . . . *et valēte!*



*Gladiators in combat, detail of mosaic from Torrenova, 4th century A.D.
Galleria Borghese, Rome, Italy*

Dative with Adjectives; Dative with Special Verbs; Dative with Compounds

The dative case is in general employed to indicate a person or thing that some act or circumstance applies to or refers to “indirectly,” as opposed to the accusative, which indicates the more immediate recipient or object of an action. The indirect object, e.g., is the person/thing toward which a direct object is “referred” by the subject + verb: “I am giving the book [direct object] to you [indirect object]” = “I am giving the book, not just to anyone anywhere, but in your direction, i.e., to you.” Even in the passive periphrastic construction, the dative of agent indicates the person for whom a certain action is obligatory. A number of other dative case usages are distinguished by grammarians, but most are simply variants on this basic notion of reference or direction.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

The dative with adjectives construction is one example which you have already encountered in your readings, though it has not yet been formally introduced. Simply stated, a noun in the dative case is employed with many Latin adjectives—particularly those indicating attitude, quality, or relation—to indicate the direction (literally or metaphorically) in which the ad-

jective applies; such adjectives are normally followed by “to,” “toward,” or “for” in English (e.g., “friendly to/toward,” “hostile to/toward,” “suitable to/for,” “useful to,” “similar to,” “equal to,” etc.).

Mors est similis **somnō**, *death is similar to sleep.*

Sciēbam tē **mihi** fidēlem esse, *I knew that you were loyal to me.*

Nōbīs est vir amīcus, *he is a man friendly toward us.*

Quisque **sibi** cārus est, *each one is dear to himself.*

Ille vidētur pār esse **deō**, *that man seems to be equal to a god.*

DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS

Conceptually similar is the dative with special verbs construction. Many of these verbs (the most important of which are listed below) are actually intransitive and, like the adjectives that take the dative, indicate attitude or relationship, e.g., **nocēre**, *to be injurious to*, **parcō**, *to be lenient toward*, etc. Although these verbs are often translated into English as though they were transitive and the dative nouns they govern as though they were direct objects (e.g., **tibi** **parcit**, *he spares you*; lit., *he is lenient toward you*), the datives again indicate the person (or thing) toward whom the attitude or quality applies.

Although a common rule for the dative with special verbs lists those meaning *to favor, help, harm, please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare*, the list is cumbersome and involves some important exceptions (including **iuvō**, *to help*, and **iubeō**, *to command, order*, which take accusative objects). The best procedure at this point in your study of the language is simply to understand the concept and then to learn some of the commonest Latin verbs that take this construction.

In memorizing the following list, note carefully that the more literal translation, given first for each verb, includes English *to* and thus reminds you of the required dative; note as well that each verb conveys some notion of *attitude toward* a person or thing, again suggesting a dative, as discussed above.

crēdō + dat., *entrust to; trust, believe* (**crēdō tibi**, *I believe you*)

ignōscō + dat., *grant pardon to; pardon, forgive* (**ignōscō virīs**, *I forgive the men*)

imperō + dat., *give orders to; command* (**imperō mīlitibus**, *I command the soldiers*)

noceō + dat., *do harm to; harm* (**noceō hostibus**, *I harm the enemy*)

nūbō + dat., *be married to; marry* (**nūbō illī virō**, *I am marrying that man*)

parcō + dat., *be lenient to; spare* (**parcō vōbīs**, *I spare you*)

pāreō + dat., *be obedient to; obey* (**pāreō ducī**, *I obey the leader*)

persuādeō + dat., *make sweet to; persuade* (**persuādeō mihi**, *I persuade myself*)

placeō + dat., *be pleasing to; please* (**placeō patrī**, *I please my father*)

serviō + dat., *be a slave to; serve* (**serviō patriae**, *I serve my country*)

studeō + dat., *direct one's zeal to; study* (**studeō litterīs**, *I study literature*)

Crēde amīcīs, believe (trust) your friends.

Ignōsce mihi, pardon me (forgive me).

Magistra discipulīs parcīt, the teacher spares (is lenient toward) her pupils.

Hoc eīs nōn placet, this does not please them.

Nōn possum eī persuādēre, I cannot persuade him.

Variae rēs hominibus nocent, various things harm men.

Cicerō philosophiae studēbat, Cicero used to study philosophy.

Philosophiae servīre est libertās, to serve philosophy is liberty.

Some of these verbs, it should be noted, can also take a direct object (e.g., **crēdō** takes a dative for a person believed, **mātrī crēdit**, *he believes his mother*, but an accusative for a thing, **id crēdit**, *he believes it*); and some, like **imperō** and **persuādeo**, take a noun clause as an object, as we shall see in the next chapter.

DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS

A very similar dative usage occurs with certain verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con-** (= **cum**), **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, **super**, and sometimes **circum** and **re-** (in the sense of *against*). The dative is especially common when the meaning of a compound verb is significantly different from its simple form, whether transitive or intransitive; conversely, if the meaning of the compound is not essentially different from that of the simple verb, then the dative is ordinarily not employed:

Sequor eum, I follow him.

Obsequor eī, I obey him.

Sum amīcus eius, I am his friend.

Adsum amīcō, I support my friend (lit., *I am next to my friend, i.e., at his side*).

Vēnit ad nōs, he came to us.

Advēnit ad nōs, he came to us.

Often the dative appears to function essentially as a kind of object of the prepositional prefix, though the preposition would take another case if separate from the verb; thus **adsum amīcō** above and the following examples:

*Aliīs praestant, they surpass the others (lit., they stand before the others).
Praeerat exercituī, he was in charge of the army (lit., he was in front of before the army).*

If the simple verb is transitive, then the compound sometimes takes an accusative as object of the root verb as well as a dative:

*Praeposui eum exercituī, I put him in charge of the army (lit., I put him [posui eum] in front of the army [prae- + exercituī]).
Praeposui pecūniam amicitiae, I preferred money to friendship (lit., I put money [posui pecūniam] before friendship [prae- + amicitiae]).*

Since there is such variability in the rules for dative with special verbs and with compounds, the best procedure is to *understand the concepts involved* and then, when encountering a dative in a sentence, to be aware of these possible functions; just as with the other cases, you should be maintaining a list of the dative uses you have learned (there have been five thus far) in your notebook or computer file, including definitions and representative examples.

VOCABULARY

aéstās, aestātis, f., *summer* (estival, estivate, estivation; cp. **aestus**, -ūs, *heat*, **aestuāre**, *to be hot, seethe, boil*)
iānua, -ae, f., *door* (janitor, Janus, January)
pēctus, pēctoris, n., *breast, heart* (pectoral, expectorate, parapet)
praēmium, -iī, n. *reward, prize* (premium)
īrātus, -a, -um, *angry* (irate; cp. **īra**, **īrāscor**, *to be angry*)
antepōnō, -pōnere, -pōsuī, -pōsitum, *to put before, prefer*
fōveō, fōvēre, fōvī, fōtum, *to comfort, nurture, cherish* (foment)
ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum + dat., *to grant pardon to, forgive*
īperō (1) + dat., *to give orders to, command* (imperative, emperor; cp. **īperātor, īperium**)
mīrōr, mīrārī, mīrātus sum, *to marvel at, admire, wonder* (admire, marvel, miracle, mirage, mirror; cp. **mīrābilis**, Ch. 38, **mīrāculum**, *a marvel*)
nóceō, nocēre, nócuī, nócitum + dat., *to do harm to, harm, injure* (innocent, innocuous, noxious, nuisance, obnoxious; cp. **innocēns**, *blameless*)
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, *to cover, veil*; + dat. (of a bride) *to be married to, marry* (nubile, connubial, nuptials; cp. **nūptiae**, *marriage*)
pārcō, párcere, pepércī, parsúrum + dat., *to be lenient to, spare* (parsimonious, parsimony)

- pāreō, pārēre, páruī** + dat., *to be obedient to, obey* (apparent, appear)
persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum + dat., *to make sweet to, persuade*
 (assuage, dissuade, suasion, suave; cp. **suāvis**)
pláceō, placēre, plácuī, plácitum + dat., *to be pleasing to, please* (complacent, placable, implacable, placate, placid, plea, plead, pleasure, displease; cp. **placidus**, *kindly, agreeable, calm*)
sápiō, sápere, sapívī, sapiētum + dat., *to have good taste; have good sense, be wise* (sapient, sapid, insipid, sage, savor; cp. **sapiēns, sapientia**)
sérviō, servīre, servívī, servítum + dat., *to be a slave to, serve* (service, disservice, subserve, subservient, servile, servility, deserve, desert = reward, dessert; cp. **servus, servítus**; distinguish from **servāre**)
stúdeō, studēre, stúduī + dat., *to direct one's zeal to, be eager for, study* (student; cp. **studium, studiōsus**, *eager, diligent, scholarly*)
subrídeō, -rīdēre, -rísī, -rísus, *to smile (down) upon* (cp. **rīdeō, rīdiculus**)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Minerva, filia Iovis, nāta est plēna scientiae et ingenī.
2. Custōdiae sī cum duce nostrō līberē loquantur et huic tyrannum trādere cōnentur, sine perīculō ex moeniīs urbis prōtinus ēgredi possint.
3. Pārēre lēgibus aequīs melius est quam tyrannō servīre.
4. Cum optimē honōribus ūsus esset et sibi cīvitatē semper antepōneret, etiam plēbs eī crēdēbat et nōn invidēbant.
5. Diū passa, māter vestra fēliciter, sedēns apud amīcōs, mortua est.
6. Philosophī cōnsilium spectāvērunt et recūsāvērunt tālem rem suscipere mōlīrīve.
7. Cum dīves sīs atque dīvitiae crēscant, tamen opibus tuīs parcere vīs et nēminī assem offerēs.
8. Ab illā īsulā repente profectus, eādem nocte ad patriam nāve advēnit; tum, quaerēns remissiōnem animae, diū rūsticābātur.
9. Cum hic mīles imperātōrī vestrō nōn placēret, heu, illa praemia prōmissa āmīsīt.
10. Nisi mōrēs parēs scientiae sunt—id nōbīs fatendum est—scientia nōbīs magnopere nocēre potest.
11. Magistra tum rogāvit duōs parvōs puerōs quot digitōs habērent.
12. Māter candida nātae cārissimae subrīdet, quam maximē fovet, et eī plūrima ōscula suāvia dat.
13. Why does he now wish to hurt his two friends?
14. If he does not spare the plebeians, alas, we shall never trust him.
15. Since you are studying Roman literature, you are serving a very difficult but a very great master.
16. If they were truly willing to please us, they would not be using their wealth thus against the state.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Nēmō liber est quī corporī servit. (Seneca.)
2. Imperium habēre vīs magnum? Imperā tibi! (Publilius Syrus.)
3. Bonīs nocet quisquis pepercit malīs. (*Id.)
4. Cum tū omnia pecūniae postpōnās, mīrārīs sī nēmō tibi amōrem praestat? (Horace.—**post-pōnō**.)
5. Frūstrā aut pecūniae aut imperiīs aut opibus aut glōriae student; potius studeant virtūtī et honōrī et scientiae et alicui artī. (Cicero.—**frūstrā**, adv., *in vain*.—**potius**, adv., *rather*.)
6. Virtūtī melius quam Fortūnae crēdāmus; virtūs nōn nōvit calamitātī cēdere. (Publilius Syrus.—**calamitās**, -tātis.)
7. Et Deus ait: “Faciāmus hominem ad imāginem nostram et praesit piscibus maris bēstiisque terrae.” (*Genesis*.—**imāgō**, -ginis, f.—**prae-sum**.—**piscis**, **piscis**, m., *fish*.—**bēstia**, -ae, *beast*.)
8. Omnēs arbitrātī sunt tē dēbēre mihi parcere. (Cicero.)
9. Quid facere vellet, ostendit, et illī servō spē libertātis magnisque praemiis persuāsit. (Caesar.)
10. Sī cui librī Cicerōnis placent, ille sciat sē prōfēcisse. (Quintilian.—**prōficiō** = **prō** + **faciō**, *to progress, benefit*.)
11. In urbe nostrā mihi contigit docērī quantum īrātus Achillēs Graecīs nocuisset. (Horace.—**contingō**, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum, *to touch closely, fall to the lot of*.)
12. Alicui rogantī melius quam iubentī pārēmus. (Publilius Syrus.)
13. Vivite fortiter fortiaque pectora rēbus adversīs oppōnite. (Horace.—**oppōnō** = **ob** + **pōnō**, *to set against*.)
14. Nōn ignāra malī, miserīs succurrere discō. (*Virgil.—**ignārus**, -a, -um, *ignorant*; **ignāra** is fem. because it agrees with Dido, exiled queen, who speaks these words to shipwrecked Aeneas.—**succurrō** = **sub** + **currō**, *to help*.)
15. Ignōsce saepe alterī, numquam tibi. (Publilius Syrus.)
16. Quandō tē, deum meum, quaerō, vītā beātā quaerō; quaeram tē ut vivat anima mea. (St. Augustine.)

OVID ASKS THE GODS TO INSPIRE HIS WORK

In nova fert animus mūtātās dīcere fōrmās
 corpora: dī, coeptīs—nam vōs mūtāstis et illās—
 adspīrāte meīs prīmāque ab orīgine mundī
 ad mea perpetuum dēdūcite tempora carmen!

(*Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* 1.1–4; meter: dactylic hexameter. Ovid's *Metamorphōsēs* was an epic that recounted hundreds of stories of miraculous transformations, from the creation of the universe right down into his own times; the chal-

lenge in translating this brief excerpt, as with much of Latin verse, is to connect the adjectives with the nouns they modify, so watch the endings!—**nova**, with **corpora**.—**fert**, *compels (me)*.—**coeptīs . . . meīs**, dat. with the compound **adspīrāte**, *my beginnings*, i.e., *the inception of my work*.—**mūtāstis** = **mūtāvistis**; such contractions, with *v* and the following vowel dropped, are common in certain perfect tense forms.—**et** = **etiam**.—**illās**, sc. **fōrmās**.—**adspīrāre**, *to breathe upon, inspire*.—**orīgō**, **-ginis**, f.—Note the interlocked word order of **mea . . . tempora** and **perpetuum . . . carmen**.—**dē + dūcō**.)

SORRY, NOBODY'S HOME!

Nāsīca ad poētā Ennium vēnit. Cum ad iānuam Ennium quaesīvisset et serva respondisset eum in casā nōn esse, sēnsit illam dominī iussū id dīxisse et Ennium vērō esse in casā. Post paucōs diēs, cum Ennius ad Nāsīcam vēnisset et eum ad iānuam quaereret, Nāsīca ipse exclāmāvit sē in casā nōn esse. Tum Ennius “Quid?” inquit, “Ego nōn cognōscō vōcem tuam?” Nāsīca merō cum sale respondit: “Vae, homō es impudēns! Cum ego tē quaererem, servae tuae crēdidī tē nōn in casā esse; nōnne tū mihi ipsī nunc crēdēs?”

(Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* 2.276.—Publius Cornelius Scipio Nasica was a celebrated jurist.—Quintus Ennius, a famous early Roman poet.—**iussū**, *at the command of*.—**exclāmāre**, *to shout out*.—**impudēns**, gen. **impudentis**.)

“I DO.” “I DON’T!”

Nūbere vīs Prīscō. Nōn mīror, Paula; sapīstī.

Dūcere tē nōn vult Prīscus; et ille sapit!

(*Martial 9.10; meter: elegiac couplet.—Priscus was an eligible bachelor, and probably a rich one; Paula was apparently not his type!—**sapīstī** = **sapīvistī**; see on **mūtāstis** above.—**dūcere**, i.e., **in mātīmōnium**.—**et** here, as often, = **etiam**.)

MARONILLA HAS A COUGH

Petit Gemellus nūptiās Marōnillae

et cupit et īnstāt et precātur et dōnat.

Adeōne pulchra est? Immō, foedius nīl est.

Quid ergō in illā petitur et placet? Tussit!

(*Martial 1.10; meter: choliambic. Gemellus is a legacy-hunter, and Maronilla a rich old hag whose estate he hopes to inherit.—**nūptiāe**, **-ārum**, f. pl., *marriage*.—**īnstāre**, *to press, insist*.—**precor**, **precārī**, **precātus sum**, *to beg, entreat*.—**dōnat** = **dat**.—**adeō** = **tam**.—**immō**, adv., *on the contrary*.—**foedius** = **turpius**.—**nīl** = **nihil**.—**ergō** = **igitur**.—**tussīre**, *to cough*.)

SUMMER VACATION

Ludī magister, parce simplicī turbæ:

...

aestāte puerī sī valent, satis discunt.

(*Martial 10.62.1, 12; meter: choliambic.—**simplex**, gen. **simplicis**, here *youthful*.)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

4. postponement. 5. frustrate, frustration. 6. calamitous. 7. imagine, imagery.—Pisces, piscatory, piscatology, piscary.—bestial, bestiality, bestialize, beast, beastly. 10. proficient, proficiency. 11. contingent, contingency, contiguous, contiguity, contact, contagion, contagious. 13. opponent, opposite, opposition. 14. succor. "Ovid": aspire, aspiration, aspiratory.—original, originate. "Sorry": exclamation, exclamatory.—impudence. "Maronilla": nuptials; cp. **nūbō**.—instant, instance, instantly.—imprecation.—donate, donation.—tussive, pertussis. "Summer": simple, simpleton, simplex, simplicity, simplistic.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulī discipulaeque! Or perhaps now that you have learned the meaning of **studēre** you should be termed **studentēs**, since it is clearly your zeal for learning that has brought you this far in your study of Latin! So, **studentēs**, here is your **praemium**, more delectables for your **cēna Latīna**, once more **ex novā grammaticā** (*grammar*) **atque vocābulāriō**: if you remember that verbs signifying "favor . . . etc." govern the dative, you can understand this first, fortuitously alliterative motto, **fortūna favet fortibus; favēte linguīs**, lit. *be favorable with your tongues*, was an expression used in Roman religious rituals meaning "to avoid any ill-omened words, keep silent"; **imperō** obviously gives us "imperative," but also the expression **divide** (from **dīvidere**, *to separate, divide*) **et imperā**; a **placet** is an affirmative vote, a **placitum** a judicial decision, and a "placebo" is an unmedicated preparation meant to humor a patient (what, literally, does the "medicine" promise to do?); secret meetings are held **iānuīs clausīs** (from **claudō**, **claudere**, **clausī**, **clausum**, *to close*, as in "recluse," "closet," etc.), but **iānuae mentis** are the ones studying Latin will help you to open (**aperiō**, **aperīre**, **aperuī**, **apertum** is *to open*, as in "aperture"). **Studēte Latīnae, aperīte mentēs, et semper valēte, studentēs!**

Jussive Noun Clauses; Fīō

JUSSIVE NOUN CLAUSES

The “jussive noun clause” may be regarded as a kind of indirect command. As in the case of indirect statements (Ch. 25) and indirect questions (Ch. 30), the actual command (or request, or entreaty, etc.) is not quoted verbatim, via an imperative or a jussive subjunctive (Ch. 28) in a main clause, but is reported indirectly in a subordinate clause, i.e., not “he ordered them, ‘Do this!’” but “he ordered them to do this.” In Latin such clauses are usually introduced by either **ut** or **nē** and employ a subjunctive verb (usually present or imperfect tense), whereas in English, and therefore in translation, we ordinarily employ a present infinitive with no introductory word:

1. Hoc facite, *do this* (imperative). Direct command.
2. Hoc faciant, *let them do this* (jussive subj.). Direct command.
3. Imperat vōbīs ut hoc faciātis, *he commands you to do this*.
4. Imperāvit eīs ut hoc facerent, *he commanded them to do this*.
5. Persuādet eīs ut hoc faciant, *he persuades them to do this*.
6. Petīvit ab eīs nē hoc facerent, *he begged (from) them not to do this*.
7. Monuit eōs nē hoc facerent, *he warned them not to do this*.
8. Hortātus est eōs ut hoc facerent, *he urged them to do this*.

These clauses are often confused with purpose clauses because in appearance they are identical, but a study of the examples given above reveals their essentially jussive nature. In contrast to purpose clauses, which function adverbially (answering the question “why?”), the jussive clauses under discussion function as noun objects of the main verbs which introduce them (answering the question “what . . . was ordered, requested, advised, etc.?”). The

following list includes some of the more common verbs that can introduce jussive noun clauses and also indicates the case (dative, accusative, etc.) employed for the person being ordered or requested to act:

hortor eum ut, *I urge him to . . .*
 imperō eī ut, *I order him to . . .*
 moneō eum ut, *I advise him to . . .*
 ōrō eum ut, *I beg him to . . .*
 persuādeō eī ut, *I persuade him to . . . (or I persuade him that . . .)*
 petō ab eō ut, *I beg (from) him to . . .*
 quaerō ab eō ut, *I request (from/of) him to . . .*
 rogō eum ut, *I ask him to . . .*

Volō, nōlō, and mālō (Ch. 32) sometimes introduce such clauses (e.g., **mālō ut, I prefer that . . .**), although they also commonly are followed by infinitives; **iubeō** nearly always takes the infinitive construction.

IRREGULAR Fīō, fierī, factus sum, to occur, happen; be done, be made

The common irregular verb **fīō, fierī**, meaning *to occur, happen*, was used by the Romans in place of the passive of the present system of **faciō** and so, although active in form, also has the passive meanings *to be done, be made*.¹ Conversely, its own perfect system was supplied by the perfect passive system of **faciō**.

In effect, then, we have a composite verb with the principal parts **fīō, fierī, factus sum** and with the range of related meanings *occur, happen, become, be made, be done*. In translating, when you see the active present system forms of **fīō** remember the passive force options *be done, be made*, and when you see the passive perfect system forms **factus est, factus erat, factus sit**, etc., remember the options *has become, had occurred*, etc.

The only new forms to be learned are those listed below; note that: the stem vowel **-ī-** is long in all places except **fit, fierī**, and the imperfect subjunctive; otherwise, the forms of the present, future, and imperfect indicative and the present subjunctive follow the pattern of **audiō**; the imperfect subjunctive follows a predictable pattern, given the infinitive **fieri**.

¹ This is true of the basic verb **faciō** (e.g., **fit** was used instead of **facitur** for *it is done, is made*); the practice with compounds varied, e.g., **perficitur**, *is completed*, but **calefit** instead of **calefacitur** for *is heated*.

Indicative			Subjunctive	
Pres.	Impf.	Fut.	Pres.	Impf.
1. <i>fīō</i>	<i>fīēbam</i>	<i>fīam</i>	<i>fīam</i>	<i>fīerem</i>
2. <i>fīs</i>	<i>fīēbās</i>	<i>fīēs</i>	<i>fīās</i>	<i>fīerēs</i>
3. <i>fit</i>	<i>fīēbat</i>	<i>fīet</i>	<i>fīat</i>	<i>fīeret</i>
1. <i>fīmus</i>	<i>fīēbāmus</i>	<i>fīēmus</i>	<i>fīāmus</i>	<i>fīerēmus</i>
2. <i>fītis</i>	<i>fīēbātis</i>	<i>fīētis</i>	<i>fīātis</i>	<i>fīerētis</i>
3. <i>fīunt</i>	<i>fīēbant</i>	<i>fīent</i>	<i>fīant</i>	<i>fīerent</i>
Infinitive		Imperatives		
<i>fīerī</i>		Sg. <i>fī</i>	Pl. <i>fīte</i>	

Study carefully the following examples

Hoc facit (faciet), he is doing or making this (will do or make).

Hoc fit (fiet), this is done or made (will be done or made).

Hoc faciat, let him do or make this.

Hoc fiat, let this be done or made.

Dīcunt eum hoc facere, they say that he is doing this.

Dīcunt hoc fierī, they say that this is being done.

Perīculum fit gravius, the danger is becoming graver.

Mox factī sunt fēlīces, they soon became happy.

VOCABULARY

cupīdō, cupīdinis, f., *desire, passion* (cupidity, Cupid; cp. **cupiō, cupiditās, cupidus**, Ch. 39)

lēctor, lēctōris, m., **lēctrīx, lēctrīcis**, f., *reader* (lector; cp. **legō, lectern, lection, lectionary, lecture**)

vīculum, -ī, n., *bond, chain, fetter* (vinculum; cp. **vinciō, to bind**)

cōtīdiē, adv., *daily, every day* (quot + **diēs**; cotidian)

fortāsse, adv., *perhaps* (cp. **fortūna**)

accēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *to come (to), approach* (accede, access, accessible, accession, accessory; cp. **cēdō, discēdō**)

cārpō, cārpere, cārpsī, cārptum, *to harvest, pluck, seize* (carp at, excerpt, carpet, scarce; **carpe diem**: see **Latīna Est Gaudium**, Ch. 22)

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum (cum + **agō**), *to drive or bring together, force, compel* (cogent, coaction, coactive, coagulate; cp. **cōgitō**)

contēmnō, -tēmnere, -tēmpsī, -tēmptum, *to despise, scorn* (contemn, contempt, contemptible, contemptuous)

contūdō, -tūdere, -tudī, -tūsum, *to beat, crush, bruise, destroy* (contuse, contusion; obtuse, from **obtundō, to beat, make blunt**)

cūrō (1), *to care for, attend to; heal, cure; take care* (cure, curator, procure, proctor, accurate; cp. **cūra**)

dēcérnō, **-cérnere**, **-crévī**, **-crétum**, *to decide, settle, decree* (decretal, decretory)

éxigō, **-igere**, **-égī**, **-áctum** (ex + agō), *to drive out, force out, exact; drive through, complete, perfect* (exactitude, exigent, exigency, exigible)

fiō, **fieri**, **fáctus sum**, *to occur, happen, become; be made, be done* (fiat)

obléctō (1), *to please, amuse, delight; pass time pleasantly* (cp. **dēlectō**, **dēlectātiō**)

ōrō (1), *to speak, plead; beg, beseech, entreat* (orator, oration, oracle, orison, adore, inexorable, peroration; cp. **ōrātor**, **ōrātiō**, Ch. 38)

récrcō (1), *to restore, revive; refresh, cheer* (recreate, recreation)

requirō, **-quiere**, **-quīsivī**, **-quīsītum**, *to seek, ask for, miss, need, require* (requirement, requisite, requisition, prerequisite, request)

serénō (1), *to make clear, brighten; cheer up, soothe* (serene, serenity, serenade)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Poterāsne etiam centum virīs persuādēre ut viam virtūtis sine praemiīs sequerentur?
2. Haec fēmina vult ex urbe ēgredī et ad illam īnsulam proficīscī ut sine morā illī agricolae nūbat et semper rūsticētur.
3. Petēbant ā nōbīs ut etiam in adversīs rēbus huic ducī pārērēmus et servīrēmus.
4. Haec ab fēminīs facta sunt nē tantam occāsiōnem āmitterent.
5. Rogāmus tē ut honōre et opibus sapientius ūtāris et hōs quīnque amīcōs semper foveās.
6. Nisi quis hoc suscipere audēbit, nōlent nōbīs crēdere et fient īrātī.
7. Rogāvit nōs cūr neque dīvitibus neque pauperibus placēre cōnātī es-sēmus.
8. Arbitrābātur tālem vītam nōn ex dīvitiīs sed ex animō plēnō virtūtis nāscī.
9. Scientiam et ingenium magis quam magnās dīvitiās mīrēmur.
10. Senātus ducī imperāvit nē hostibus victīs nocēret sed eīs parceret et remissiōnem poenae daret.
11. Ille ōrātor vulgum īrātissimum voce potentī serēnāvit atque, ut omnibus subrīs, eōs oblectāvit.
12. Ut parva puella per iānuam currēbat, subitō occidit et genua male contudit.
13. Dummodo sīs aequus hīs virīs, fient tibi fidēlēs.
14. That summer they urged that this be done better.

15. Provided that this is done, they will beg us to spare him.
16. That teacher wants to persuade her twenty pupils to study more good literature.
17. Since his hope is becoming very small, let him confess that he commanded (use **imperō**) those two men not to do it.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Dīxitque Deus: "Fīat lūx." Et facta est lūx. (*Genesis.)
2. Fatendum est nihil dē nihilō posse fierī. (Lucretius.—**nihilō**, abl. of **nihilum**, -ī, = **nihil**.)
3. Magnae rēs nōn fiunt sine periculō. (Terence.)
4. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, ille suōs hortātus est nē timērent. (Caesar.)
5. Omnia fiēt quae fierī aequum est. (Terence.)
6. "Pater, ōrō tē ut mihi ignōscās." "Fīat." (Terence.)
7. Dum loquimur, fūgerit invida aetās: carpe diem! (*Horace.—**invidus**, -a, -um, *envious*.)
8. Carpāmus dulcia; post enim mortem cinis et fābula fīēs. (Persius.—**cinis**, -neris, m., *ashes*.)
9. Ante senectūtem cūrāvī ut bene vīverem; in senectūte cūrō ut bene moriar. (Seneca.)
10. Solōn dīxit sē senem fierī cotīdiē aliquid addiscentem. (Cicero.—**Solōn**, -lōnis.—**ad-discō**, -ere.)
11. Caret pectus tuum inānī ambitīōne? Caret īrā et timōre mortis? Ignōscis amīcīs? Fīs lēnior et melior, accēdente senectūte? (Horace.—**inānis**, -e, *empty, vain*.—**ambitiō**, -ōnis.—**lēnis**, -e, *gentle, kind*.)
12. Hoc dūrum est; sed levius fit patientiā quidquid corrigere est nefās. (Horace.—**patientia**, -ae.—**corrigō**, -ere.—**est nefās**, *it is wrong, contrary to divine law*.)
13. Sapiāmus et cēdāmus! Leve fit onus quod bene fertur. (Ovid.—**onus**, **oneris**, n., *burden*.)
14. Ego vōs hortor ut amīcitiam omnibus rēbus hūmānīs antepōnātis—vae illīs quī nūllōs amīcōs habent! (Cicero.)
15. Petō ā vōbīs ut patiāminī mē dē studiīs hūmānitātis ac litterārū loquī. (Cicero.—**hūmānitās**, -tātis, *culture*.)

THE QUALITY OF MARTIAL'S BOOK

Sunt bona, sunt quaedam mediocria, sunt mala plūra
quae legis hīc; aliter nōn fit, Avīte, liber.

(*Martial 1.16; meter, elegiac couplet.—**aliter**, adv., *otherwise*.—**Avītus**, -ī, a friend of the poet.)

I DON'T COOK FOR COOKS!

Lēctor et audītor nostrōs probat, Aule, libellōs,
 sed quīdam exāctōs esse poēta negat.
 Nōn nimium cūrō, nam cēnae fercula nostrae
 mālīm convīvīs quam placuisse cocīs!

(*Martial 9.81; meter: elegiac couplet.—**quīdam**, with **poēta**.—sc. **eōs**, = **libellōs**, as subject of the infin. in the indir. statement.—**ferculum**, **-ī**, *course [of a meal]*.—**mālīm**, potential subj., *I would prefer that*.—The prose order would be: **mālīm fercula cēnae nostrae placuisse convīvīs quam cocīs**.—**quam**, i.e., *magis quam*.—**convīva**, **-ae**, m., dinner-guest.—**cocus**, **-ī**, *cook*.)

I LOVE HER . . . I LOVE HER NOT

Ōdī et amō! Quārē id faciam fortasse requīris.
 Nescio, sed fierī sentiō et excrucior.

(*Catullus 85; meter: elegiac couplet.—**excruciāre**, *to crucify, torment*.)

OH, I'D LOVE TO READ YOU MY POEMS . . . NOT!

Ut recitem tibi nostra rogās epigrammata. Nōlō—
 nōn audīre, Celer, sed recitāre cupīs!

(*Martial 1.63; meter: elegiac couplet.—**epigramma**, **-matis**, n.)

WHO IS TRULY FREE?

Quis igitur vērō liber est? Tantum vir sapiēns, quī sibi imperat, quem neque fortūna adversa neque paupertās neque mors neque vincula terrent, quī potest cupīdinibus fortiter respondēre honōrēsque contemnere, cuius virtūs cōtīdiē crēscit, quī in sē ipsō tōtus est.

(Horace, *Sermōnēs* 2.7.83ff; prose adaptation.)

TESTIMONY AGAINST THE CONSPIRATORS

Senātum coēgī. Intrōdūxī Volturcium sine Gallīs. Fidem pūblicam eī dedī. Hortātus sum ut ea quae scīret sine timōre nūntiāret. Tum ille, cum sē ex magnō timōre recreāvisset, dīxit sē ab Lentulō habēre ad Catilīnam mandāta ut auxiliō servōrum ūterētur et ad urbem quam prīmum cum exercitū accēderet. Intrōductī autem Gallī dīxērunt sibi litterās ad suam gentem ab Lentulō datās esse et hunc imperāvisse ut equitātum in Italiam quam prīmum mitterent. Dēnique, omnibus rēbus expositīs, senātus dēcrēvit ut coniūrātī, quī hās īnsidiās mōlītī essent, in custōdiam trāderentur.

(Cicero; in this adaptation from his third oration against Catiline, Cicero informs the Roman citizenry of the evidence against Catiline and the actions of the senate. See the earlier readings on Catiline in Chs. 11, 14, 20, and 30.—

intrō-dūcō, -ere.—Vulturcius was a conspirator in Catiline's band.—**Gallus, -ī,** *a Gaul*; Lentulus, the leading conspirator at Rome in Catiline's absence, had been seeking to stir into rebellion against the Roman state the Gallic Allobroges, who had a delegation at Rome.—**scīret:** a subordinate clause that would ordinarily have an indicative verb often has instead a subjunctive when the clause occurs either within an indirect statement or, as here, within another subjunctive clause; in this latter instance the verb is often termed a "subjunctive by attraction."—**mandātum, -ī, order.**—**quam primum,** see Ch. 32.—**equitātus, -ūs,** *cavalry.*)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

8. cinerary, incinerator, incinerate. 11. inane, inanity.—ambition; **ambitiō** literally meant *a going around* by a candidate to individual citizens in quest of political support.—lenient, leniency, lenity. 12. correct, incorrigible. 13. onerous. 15. humanity, the humanities; cp. **homō, hūmānus.** "I Love Her": excruciate; cp. **crux, crucis,** f., *cross.* "I'd Love to Read": epigrammatic. "Testimony":—mandate, mandatory, command, countermand, demand, remand.—equitation.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, studentēs! Here are some **fiō** items: if you've found it easier to write a speech than a poem, you'll believe the old saying **nāscimur poētae, fimus ōrātōrēs**; a **fiat** (*not* the car) is a magisterial command, *let it be done!* From Publilius Syrus (the source of many of this book's **sententiae**) comes **repente dīvēs nēmō factus est bonus** (like Juvenal's **nēmō repente fuit turpissimus**, Ch. 30); also the legal expression regarding "consenting adults," **volentī nōn fit iniūria**, *injury is not done to a willing person*, and **fiat ut petitur**, *let it be done as requested*, the phrase used for granting a legal petition.

Et cētera ex hōc vocābulāriō: an **accessit** (lit., *helshe approached, came close*) is a recognition for second place or honorable mention in a competition; **vinculum mātrimōnīi** is *the bond of matrimony*, and **ā vinculō mātrimōnīi** is legal Lat. for an annulment; **dē minimīs nōn cūrat lēx**, *the law does not concern itself with trivialities*, is another familiar legal maxim; there are numerous mottoes and familiar sayings from **ōrāre**, including **ōrāre et spērāre** and **ōrā et labōrā**; besides **carpe diem**, there is **carpent tua pōma nepōtēs**, *your descendants will harvest your fruits.* **Carpāmus omnēs diēs, lēctōrēs et lēctricēs!**

Conjugation of *Eō*; Constructions of Place and Time

IRREGULAR *Eō, īre, iī, itum, to go*

The irregular fourth conjugation verb *eō, īre, iī, itum, to go*, is fully conjugated below; the verb is as common in Latin as “go” is in English, and so the conjugation should be learned thoroughly.

INDICATIVE

Pres.	Impf.	Fut.	Perf.	Plupf.	Fut. Perf.
1. <i>éō</i>	<i>ībam</i>	<i>ībō</i>	<i>īī</i>	<i>íeram</i>	<i>íerō</i>
2. <i>īs</i>	<i>ībās</i>	<i>ībis</i>	<i>īstī</i>	<i>íerās</i>	<i>íeris</i>
3. <i>it</i>	<i>ībat</i>	<i>ībit</i>	<i>īit</i>	<i>íerat</i>	<i>íerit</i>
1. <i>īmus</i>	<i>ībāmus</i>	<i>ībimus</i>	<i>īimus</i>	<i>ierāmus</i>	<i>íerimus</i>
2. <i>ītis</i>	<i>ībātis</i>	<i>ībitis</i>	<i>īstis</i>	<i>ierātis</i>	<i>íeritis</i>
3. <i>éunt</i>	<i>ībant</i>	<i>ībunt</i>	<i>ierunt</i>	<i>íerant</i>	<i>íerint</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	Impf.	Perf.	Plupf.
1. <i>éam</i>	<i>īrem</i>	<i>íerim</i>	<i>īssem</i>
2. <i>éās</i>	<i>īrēs</i>	<i>íerīs</i>	<i>īssēs</i>
3. <i>éat</i>	<i>īret</i>	<i>íerit</i>	<i>īssēt</i>

1. eāmus	īrēmus	ierīmus	īssēmus
2. eātis	īrētis	ierītis	īssētis
3. éant	īrent	ierint	īssent

IMPERATIVES

Sg. ī Pl. īte

PARTICIPLES (in common use)

Pres. iēns (eúntis, eúntī, etc.) Fut. itūrus, -a, -um

INFINITIVES

GERUND: eúndī

Pres. īre

Fut. itūrus ésse

Perf. īsse

OBSERVATIONS ON Eō

In the present system of **eō** there are two major difficulties:

(1) The normal stem, **ī-**, as derived from the present infinitive, becomes **e-** before **a**, **o**, and **u**; e.g., **eō**, **eunt**, **eam**. Give particular attention to the present indicative and the present subjunctive above. A similar change from **ī-** to **e-** is seen in all forms of the present participle, except the nominative singular, and in the gerund (a form whose use is explained in Ch. 39).

(2) The future of this fourth conjugation verb has the tense sign and endings of a first or second conjugation verb.

The perfect system is formed regularly except that **ii-** before **s** usually contracts to **ī-**; e.g., **īstī**, **īsse**. Forms with **-v-**, such as **īvī**, are rare and do not appear in this book.

Only the active forms are here presented; the rare impersonal passive (e.g., **itur**, **ībātur**) and the future and perfect passive participles (**eundum**, **itum**) do not appear in this book. Transitive compounds such as **adeō**, *to approach*, commonly have passive endings (e.g., **adeor**, **adībātur**, etc.), but those forms likewise are not employed in this book.

PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

You have already learned how to use the proper prepositions and cases in the regular place constructions, but they are repeated here for review and for contrast with the special rules for the *names* of cities, towns, and small islands and for **domus**, **humus**, and **rūs**.

I. Regular constructions: prepositions + proper case.

- (1) Place
- where*
- :
- in**
- or
- sub**
- + ablative.

In illā urbe vīsus est, *he was seen in that city.*Nihil sub sōle est novum, *there is nothing new under the sun.*

- (2) Place
- to which*
- :
- in**
- ,
- ad**
- , or
- sub**
- + accusative.

In illam urbem ībit, *he will go into that city.*Sub hastam hostis occidit, *he fell under the enemy's spear.*

- (3) Place
- from which*
- :
- ab**
- ,
- dē**
- , or
- ex**
- + ablative.

Ex illā urbe iit, *he went out of that city.*II. With the actual names of cities, towns, and small islands, as well as the three nouns **domus**, **humus**, and **rūs**, no prepositions were employed in Latin, though they usually must be supplied in English translation (cp., however, Eng. "he ran home" for "he ran *to his* home").

- (1) For place
- where*
- with these particular words a special case was used in Latin, the "locative." The locative is identical to the
- genitive*
- for the singular of first and second declension nouns; elsewhere the locative is usually identical to the
- ablative*
- .

Vīsus est Rōmae, Ephesī, Athēnīs, et Carthāgine.

He was seen at Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.

- (2) Place
- to which*
- : accusative without a preposition.

Ībit Rōmam, Ephesum, Athēnās, et Carthāginem.

He will go to Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.

- (3) Place
- from which*
- : ablative without a preposition.

Iit Rōmā, Ephesō, Athēnīs, et Carthāgine.

He went from Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.

Domus, as seen in the vocabulary below, is a slightly irregular feminine noun, having some second declension endings and some fourth. In place constructions the commonest forms are as follows:

domī (locative), <i>at home</i>	Domī vīsus est, <i>he was seen at home.</i>
domum (acc.), <i>home (= to home)</i>	Domum ībit, <i>he will go home.</i>
domō (abl.), <i>from home</i>	Domō iit, <i>he went from home.</i>

The locative of **humus**, a feminine second declension noun, follows the rule: **humī**, *on the ground*. The locative of **rūs** is either **rūrī** or **rūre**, *in the country*.

TIME CONSTRUCTIONS

- (1) You are already familiar with the ablative of time *when* or *within which* (Ch. 15); no preposition is used in Latin, but in English translation you must supply *in, within, at, on, etc.*, depending on the particular noun:

Eōdem diē iit, *he went on the same day.*

Paucīs hōrīs domum ībit, *he will go home in a few hours.*

- (2) Newly introduced here is the accusative of *duration of time*, which indicates, not the time at or within which an action occurs, but *for how long a period of time* the action occurs. No preposition is employed in Latin; in English translation, the preposition *for* is sometimes used, sometimes omitted. The construction also commonly occurs with **nātus** to indicate a person's age.

Multōs annōs vīxit, *he lived (for) many years.*

Paucās hōrās domī manēbit, *he will stay at home (for) a few hours.*

Quīnque et vīgintī annōs nātus, imperātor factus est, *At the age of 25 (lit., having been born for 25 years), he became commander.*

VOCABULARY

Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., *Athens* (cp. athenaeum)

dómus, -ūs (-ī), f., *house, home; dómī, at home; dómum, (to) home; dómō, from home* (domain, domicile, domestic, domesticate, dome, major-domo; cp. **dominus, domina**, Ch. 40)

hūmus, -ī, f., *ground, earth, soil* (humus, exhume, inhume, inhumation, posthumous; cp. humiliate, humility, from **humilis, -e, on the earth, down-to-earth, humble**)

īter, itīneris, n., *road, route, journey* (itinerant, itinerary; cp. **eō** below)

rūs, rūris, n., *the country, countryside* (rustic, rusticity; cp. **rūsticor, rūsticus, rural**)

Syrācūsae, -ārum, f. pl., *Syracuse*

ābsēns, gen. **abséntis**, *absent, away* (absence, absentee, absenteeism, in absentia; from **absum, abesse**)

grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing, agreeable; grateful* (grace, gracious, grateful, gratitude, gratify, gratis, gratuitous, gratuity, ingrate, ingratiolate, agree, congratulate; cp. **grātiās agō**)

idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable, fit, appropriate*

immōtus, -a, -um, *unmoved, unchanged, unrelenting* (immotile; cp. **moveō**)

fōrīs, adv., *out of doors, outside* (foreclose, foreign, forest, forfeit)

ēō, īre, īī, itum, *to go* (ambition, circuit, concomitant, exit, initial, initiate, initiative, obituary, perish, preterit, sedition, transient, transit,

transition, transitive, transitory: many of these derive from the several compounds of **eō**, including the seven listed below)

ābeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, to go away, depart

ādeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, to go to, approach

ēxeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, to go out, exit

īneō, -īre, -iī, -itum, to go in, enter

ōbeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, to go up against, meet; die

pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, to pass away, be destroyed, perish

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, to go back, return

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fēctum, to kill, murder

licet, licēre, licuit, impersonal,¹ it is permitted, one may; commonly with an infinitive as subject and a dative for the person permitted to act, e.g., **licet tibi abīre**, you may leave, lit., it is permitted for you to leave (license, licentious, illicit, leisure, viz. = **vidēlicet**, sc. = **scīlicet**)

peregrīnor, peregrīnārī, peregrīnātus sum, to travel abroad, wander (peregrine, peregrinate, pilgrim, pilgrimage; from **per** + **ager**)

requiēscō, -quiēscere, -quiēvī, -quiētum, to rest (requiescat, requiem)

sōleō, solēre, sōlitus sum, to be accustomed (insolent, obsolete)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Dēhinc petet ā frātre meō et sorōre ut occasiōnem carpant et in urbem quam celerrimē ineant.
2. Nisi domum hāc aestāte redīssēs, in longō itinere Athēnās fortasse peregrīnātī essēmus, et nōs ibi oblectāvissēmus.
3. Nē levēs quidem timōrēs ferre poterātis; rūrī, igitur, nōn in urbe semper vīvēbās.
4. Haec locūtī, lēctōribus et lēctrīcibus persuādēbunt nē opēs cupidīnēsque praemiīs bonae vītae antepōnant.
5. Multōs annōs eōs civitātī servīre coēgit, sed animōs numquam contudit.
6. At nōs, ipsī multa mala passī, cōnātī sumus eīs īrātīs persuādēre ut servōs vinculis liberārent et nē cui nocērent.
7. Sī quis vult aliōs iuvāre, cūret ut ad eōs adeat plēnus sapientiae.
8. Philosophī cōtīdiē requirēbant utrum illī discipulī nātūrae pārērent.
9. Contemnāmus omnia perīcula, ea ex pectoribus exigāmus, et fateāmur haec difficillima Rōmae suscipienda esse.
10. Omnēs solent mīrārī ea pulcherrima quae Athēnīs vident.
11. Nisi māvīs morī, exī Syrācūsīs, sequere alium ducem, et accēde Athēnās.

¹ Impersonal verbs have only third person (and infinitive) forms because they have as their subject, not a person, but an infinitive phrase or a clause or an indefinite "it" or "one"; e.g., **licet abīre** lit. means *to leave is permitted*, though the idiomatic translation is *it is permissible to leave* or *one may leave*.

12. Fēmina candida ante speculum immōta stetit, sed sē spectāre recū-sāvit et animōs recreāre nōn potuit.
13. Paucās hōras duodecim puerī puellaeque humī sedēbant, ut ma-gistra, subrīdēns et eōs serēnāns, plūrimās fābulās narrābat.
14. Sī sapiēs et tibi imperāre poteris, fīēs grātor iūstiorque, parcēs mi-serīs ac amīcōs fovēbis.
15. They commanded that this be done in Rome for three days.
16. Unless he goes to Syracuse within five days, his father's fear will become greater.
17. He thought that his brother would perhaps not go away from home that summer.
18. Nobody may speak freely in that country, as we all know.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Mortālia facta perībunt. (*Horace.)
2. Noctēs atque diēs patet iānua Plūtōnis. (Virgil.—**Plūtō**, -tōnis, the god of the dead.)
3. Annī eunt mōre modōque fluentis aquae. Numquam hōra quae praeteriit potest redīre; ūtāmur aetāte. (Ovid.—**praeterīre**, to go by, pass.)
4. Heu, obiī! Quid ego ēgī! Fīlius nōn rediit ā cēnā hāc nocte. (Terence.)
5. Frāter meus ōrat nē abeās domō. (Terence.)
6. Dīcit patrem ab urbe abīsse sed frātre esse domī. (Terence.)
7. Tertiā hōrā forīs ībam Sacrā Viā, ut meus mōs est. (Horace.—**Sacrā Viā**, abl. of means or way by which; the Sacred Way was the main street through the Roman Forum.)



*The Roman Forum with remains of the temple of Castor and Pollux in the foreground and beyond it the Sacra Via
Rome, Italy*

8. Dēnique Dāmoclēs, cum sīc beātus esse nōn posset, ōrāvit Dionysium tyrannum ut abīre ā cēnā liceret. (Cicero.)
9. Eō tempore, Syrācūsīs captīs, Mārcellus multa Rōmam mīsīt; Syrācūsīs autem multa atque pulcherrima reliquit. (Cicero.)
10. Diēs multōs in eā nāve fuī; ita adversā tempestāte ūs sumus. (Terence.)
11. Īram populī ferre nōn poterō, sī in exsilium ieris. (Cicero.)
12. Caesare interfectō, Brūtus Rōmā Athēnās fūgit. (Cicero.)
13. Ipse Rōmam redīrem, sī satis cōnsilium dē hāc rē habērem. (Cicero.)
14. Nēmō est tam senex ut nōn putet sē ūnum annum posse vīvere. (Cicero.)
15. Dum nōs fāta sinunt, oculōs satiēmus amōre; nox tibi longa venit, nec reditūra diēs. (*Propertius.—**sinō**, **-ere**, to allow.—**reditūra**, sc. **est**, fut. act. periphrastic for **redibit**; **diēs** is sometimes fem.)

THANKS . . . BUT NO THANKS!

Candidius nihil est tē, Caeciliāne. Notāvī:
sī quandō ex nostrīs disticha pauca legō,
prōtinus aut Mārsī recitās aut scrīpta Catullī.

- Hoc mihi dās, tamquam dēteriōra legās,
5 ut collāta magis placeant mea? Crēdimus istud:
mālo tamen recitēs, Caeciliāne, tua!

(*Martial 2.71; meter: elegiac couplet.—**notāre**, to note, notice.—with **nostrīs**, sc. **libellis**.—**disticha** (a Gk. acc. ending), *couplets, verses*.—Domitius Marsus, like Catullus, was a popular Latin poet.—**scrīptum**, **-ī**, *writing, written works*.—**hoc . . . dās**, i.e., as a favor.—**tamquam** here introduces an imagined comparison, something like a condition, hence the verb is subj.—**dēteriōra**, sc. **scrīpta**, *worse poetry*.—**collāta**, with **mea**, *compared, in comparison*.—**mālo [ut] recitēs**; the conj. is often omitted in a jussive noun clause.)

TRIMALCHIO'S EPITAPH

“Īnscrīptiō quoque vidē dīligerter sī haec satis idōnea tibi vidētur: ‘C. Pompeius Trimalchiō Maecēnātiānus hīc requiēscit. Huic sēvirātus absenti dēcrētus est. Cum posset in omnibus decuriīs Rōmae esse, tamen nōluit. Pius, fortis, fidēlis, ex parvō crēvit; sestertium reliquit trecentiēs, nec umquam philosophum audīvit. Valē. Et tū.’” Haec ut dīxit Trimalchiō, flēre coepit ūbertim. Flēbat et Fortūnāta; flēbat et Habinnas; tōta dēnique familia, tamquam in fūnus rogāta, lāmentātiōne triclīnium implēvit.

(*Petronius, *Satyricon* 71–72; the boorish, nouveau-riche host Trimalchio asks his dinner-guests their opinion of his proposed epitaph.—**īnscrīptiō**, **-ōnis**; the more usual order would be **quoque vidē dīligerter sī haec īnscrīptiō**. . . —**C.** = **Gaius**.—**Maecēnātiānus**: Trimalchio, an ex-slave, takes this name to associate

himself with the famous Maecenas, a powerful and wealthy associate of Augustus.—**Huic** . . . **absentī**, i.e., in absentia from Rome.—**sēvirātus**, **-ūs**, *the post of sēvir Augustālis*, a member of the six-man commission that supervised the cult of the emperor.—**decūria**, **-ae**, *club*; these were groups of ten men organized for both business and social purposes.—**pius**, **-a**, **-um**, *devoted, dedicated*.—**ex parvō**, i.e., from humble beginnings.—**sestertium** . . . **trecentiēs**, *30 million sesterces*, a VERY hefty sum!—**nec** . . . **audīvīt**, i.e., he “never even went to college!”—**Et tū**, sc. **valē**; epitaphs typically represented such “conversations”: the deceased wishes the passerby “Farewell,” and the passerby, reading the inscription, replies, “And you (likewise farewell).”—**Haec ut** = **Ut haec**.—**flēre**, *to weep*.—**ūbertim**, *adv., profusely*.—**et** = **etiam**.—Fortunata (“Lucky”) and Habinnas were Trimalchio’s wife and a guest.—**fūnus**, **-neris**, n., *funeral*.—**lamentātiō**, **-ōnis**.—**triclinium**, **-iī**, *dining room*.—**impleō**, **-plēre**, **-plēvī**, **-plētum**, *to fill*.)

MĀRCUS QUĪNTŌ FRĀTRĪ S.

Licinius, servus Aesōpī nostrī, Rōmā Athēnās fūgit. Is Athēnīs apud Patrōnem prō līberō virō fuit. Deinde in Asiam abiit. Postea Platō, quīdam quī Athēnīs solet esse multum et quī tum Athēnīs fuerat cum Licinius Athēnās vēnisset, litterīs Aesōpī dē Liciniō acceptīs, hunc Ephesī comprehendit et in custōdiam trādīdit. Petō ā tē, frāter, ut Ephesō exiēns servum Rōmam tēcum redūcās. Aesōpus enim ita īrāscitur propter servī scelus ut nihil eī grātius possit esse quam recuperātiō fugitīvī. Valē.

(Cicero, *Epistulae ad Quīntum Frātre*m 1.2.14; Marcus Cicero wrote this letter to his brother Quintus, who was at the time governor of Asia.—**S.** = **salūtem dīcit**, *says greetings*.—**Aesōpus**, **-ī**, the leading tragic actor of Rome.—**Patrō**, **-trōnis**.—**prō**, *as a*.—**Plato**, an Epicurean from Sardis.—**multum**, *adv.*—**Ephesus**, **-ī**, a city in Asia Minor.—**re-dūcō**.—**īrāscor**, **īrāscī**, **īrātus sum**, *to be angry*; cp. **īra** and **īrātus**.—**recuperātiō**, **-ōnis**, *recovery*.—**fugitīvus**, **-ī**.)

ETYMOLOGY

Vidēlicet, *namely*, derives from **vidēre licet**, lit., *it is permitted to see*, i.e., *it is plain to see*. In medieval manuscripts this long word was often contracted to **vi-et**, and one abbreviation for **et** resembled a **z**; hence the abbreviation **viz**. From another compound of **licet** is the much more common abbreviation **sc.** for **scīlicet**, *namely, clearly* (from **scīre licet**, *you may understand*), which we use as an instruction to supply some word or idea that has been omitted from a text but is readily understood (see the example above in the notes on “Trimalchio”).

In the readings

7. Another famous street in Rome was **Via Lāta**. On the analogy of **Sacra Via** how is **Via Lāta** (**lātus**, -a, -um, *broad*) to be translated? “Thanks”: note, notation, notary.—script; from the fourth principal part of **scrībō**.—deteriorate, deterioration.—collate, collation. “Trimalchio”: funereal.—lament, lamentable. “**Mārcus**”: irascible.—“Recover” and “recuperate” are cognates, both derived from **recuperāre**, *to regain*.)

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! These familiar words and phrases from **eō** are certainly *going to* interest you (notice how colloquial Eng. employs “go” as an auxiliary verb to indicate futurity, and cp. Latin’s use of **irī** in those rare future passive infinitive forms): **exit** and **exeunt omnēs** are stage directions; to “perish” is to be “thoroughly gone” (from **per** + **eō**), i.e., to make one’s final “exit” from life’s stage, an exodus often marked by **obiit** on old tombstones or by the abbreviation **O.S.P.** for **obiit sine prōle** (*helshe died without offspring*, from **prōlēs**, **prōlis**, f., the source of “proletariate”); **pereant quī ante nōs nostra dīxērunt** is a proverbial curse on folks who had all our best ideas before we had them ourselves (!); **iter** (lit. *a going*) is related to **eō** and also to the adv. **obiter**, which gives us **obiter dictum**, something *said along the way* (or “in passing”), and likewise **obiter scrīptum**; Monty Python fans will recall the **Rōmānī, īte domum** routine from the “Life of Brian”; and finally **aut bibat aut abeat**, *let him either drink or go away*, is an old Roman toast and the motto of our local tavern!

Et cētera: **grātus** is related to **grātia**, *favor, kindness, gratitude, thanks*, as in **grātiās agere**, *to give thanks*, **Deī grātiā**, *by the grace of God*, and also Eng. “gratis,” something done “for thanks” (**grātīs**), i.e., without a fee. **R.I.P.**, also found on tombstones (though not Trimalchio’s!), stands for **requiēscat in pāce** (remember the jussive subj.?); **rūs in urbe**, a phrase from Martial, refers to a city park or garden or some other rustic setting or view that reminds one of the countryside. Well, enough for today: **nunc domum eāmus!**

Relative Clauses of Characteristic; Dative of Reference; Supines

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

The type of relative clause you have encountered thus far provides some factual description of its antecedent, an actual person or thing, and thus has an indicative verb (Ch. 17); e.g., **hic est discipulus quī Latīnam amat**, *this is the student who loves Latin*. The “relative clause of characteristic,” by contrast, describes some general quality of an antecedent that is itself either general, indefinite, interrogative, or negative, and accordingly has its verb in the subjunctive; e.g., *hic est discipulus quī Latīnam amet*, *this is a student (or the sort of student) who would love Latin*.

The relative clause of characteristic is easily recognized, since its verb is subjunctive and its antecedent is often obviously general, negative, etc. (typical examples are **sunt quī**, *there are people who*; **quis est quī**, *who is there who*; **nēmō est quī**, *there is no one who*); in translating to English the auxiliary “would” is sometimes used and sometimes a phrase like “the sort of” or “the kind of” is employed to make it clear that the antecedent is indefinite:

Quis est quī huic crēdat, who is there who trusts this man (of such a sort that he would trust this man)?

Nēmō erat quī hoc scīret, there was no one who knew this.

Sunt quī hoc faciant, there are some who do this (of such a sort as to do this).

Is nōn est quī hoc faciat, *he is not a person who does (would do) this.*
 Hic est liber quem omnēs legant, *this is the kind of book which all read*
(a book which all would read).
 Hic est liber quem omnēs legunt, *this is the book which all are reading*
(= a fact, hence the indicative).

Some relative clauses have the force of result (e.g., S.A. 4 below), purpose (see “Give Me a Figgy Sprig!” below), causal, or adversative clauses (i.e., clauses otherwise generally introduced by **ut**, **cum**, etc.) and so also have their verbs in the subjunctive.

DATIVE OF REFERENCE OR INTEREST

The dative case is often used to indicate a person (or a thing) to whom some statement refers, or from whose perspective it is true, or to whom it is of special interest. This “dative of reference or interest” (which should be compared to the dative uses discussed in Ch. 35) can sometimes be translated with “to” or “for,” but often some more elaborate phrase is required, depending upon the context, as you will see from the following examples; occasionally the function seems to be simply possessive (as in the second example below), but the intended force is generally more emotional.

Sī quis metuēns vīvet, līber **mihi** nōn erit umquam.

If anyone lives in fear, he will not ever be free—as I see it (mihi) or to my way of thinking.

Caret **tibi** pectus inānī ambiōne?

Is your breast free from vain ambition—are you sure (tibi)?

Nūllūs culpae **mihi** cōnsciū sum.

In my own heart (mihi), I am conscious of no fault.

Claudia est sapiēns **multīs**, *to many people Claudia is wise.*

Remember to add the dative of reference or interest to your list of other dative case constructions (indirect object, dative of agent, dative with adjectives, dative with special verbs and compounds).

SUPINES

The “supine” is a defective fourth declension verbal noun, formed on the same stem as the perfect passive participle; only two forms were in common use, the accusative and ablative singular. The supines for our model

verbs are: acc. **laudátum**, abl. **laudátū**; **mónitum**, **mónitū**; **áctum**, **áctū**; **audítum**, **audítū**; **cáptum**, **cáptū**.

The ablative is used with the neuter of certain adjectives to indicate in what respect a particular quality is applicable: e.g., **mīrābile dictū**, *amazing to say* (lit., *amazing in respect to saying*); **facile factū**, *easy to do*. The accusative (which must be carefully distinguished from the perfect passive participle) is used with verbs of motion to indicate purpose: e.g., **ībant Rōmam rogātum pecūniam**, *they were going to Rome to ask for money*; **persuāsum amicīs vēnērunt**, *they came to persuade their friends* (note that the supine can take a direct object, a dative, or any other construction the basic verb can govern).

VOCABULARY

árbor, **árboris**, f., *tree* (arbor, Arbor Day, arboraceous, arboreal, arboretum, arboriculture)

dignitās, **dignitātis**, f., *merit, prestige, dignity* (indignity; cp. **dignus**, *deign*, dignify, indignant, indignation)

dólor, **dolōris**, m., *pain, grief* (doleful, dolorous, condole, condolences, indolent, indolence; cp. **doleō**)

ódium, **-iī**, n., *hatred* (odium, odious, annoy, ennui, noisome; cp. **odī**)

ópus, **óperis**, n., *a work, task; deed, accomplishment* (opus, opera, operate, operative, inoperative, operand, operose, co-operate, uncooperative, inure, hors d'oeuvre, maneuver, manure)

ōrātiō, **ōrātiōnis**, f., *speech* (oration; cp. **ōrō**, **ōrātor**)

pēs, **pédis**, m., *lower leg, foot* (pedal, pedate, pedestal, pedestrian, pedicel, pedigree, piedmont, pawn, peon, pioneer, biped, quadruped, impede, impediment, expedite, expedition, expeditious; cp. **impediō** below)

sátor, **satōris**, m., *sower, planter; begetter, father; founder* (cp. **serō**, *to plant, sow*; serial, series, assert, desert, exert, insert)

fīrmus, **-a**, **-um**, *firm, strong, reliable* (firmament, affirm, affirmation, affirmative, confirm, confirmation, farm, farmer)

īnfīrmus, **-a**, **-um**, *not strong, weak, feeble* (infirm, infirmary, infirmity)

mīrābilis, **mīrābile**, *amazing, wondrous, remarkable* (mirabilia, admirable, marvel; cp. **mīror**, miracle, mirador, mirage, mirror)

prístinus, **-a**, **-um**, *ancient; former, previous* (pristine)

sublīmis, **sublīme**, *elevated, lofty; heroic, noble* (sublimate, sublime, sublimity; not subliminal)

étsī, conj. with ind. or subj. according to rules for **sī**, *even if (et -sī), although*

érgā, prep. + acc., *toward*

libēter, adv., *with pleasure, gladly* (cp. the impersonal verb **libet**, *it pleases, is pleasing; cognate with love*)

impédiō, -pedīre, -pedīvī, -peditum, to impede, hinder, prevent (impediment, impedimenta, impedance, impeach; see **Lātina Est Gaudium**)
métuō, metúere, métuī, to fear, dread (cp. **metus**, meticulous)
quéror, quéri, quéstus sum, to complain, lament (querulous; cp. quarrel, from **querēla, -ae, complaint**)
recognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, to recognize, recollect (recognition, recognizance, reconnaissance, reconnoitre; cp. **nōscō, cognōscō**)
suspéndō, -péndere, -péndī, -pēsum, to hang up, suspend; interrupt (suspense, suspension; cp. **pendere, to hang**, pendant, pendulum, expend)
véndō, vëndere, vëndidī, vënditum, to sell (vend, vendor)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Rēgī persuāsī ut sorōrī frātrīque tuō grātiōra praemia libenter daret.
2. Deinde, ab eā īnsulā nāve profecta, vīsum amīcōs Athēnās iniit.
3. Eum hortātī sumus ut ad Caesarem sine timōre accēdere cōnārētur.
4. Solitī sunt eī crēdere quī philosophiae servīret, virtūtem sequerētur, et cupīdinēs superāret.
5. Sapiēns nōs ōrat nē virīs sententiārum adversārum noceāmus.
6. In illīs terrīs nōn licet litterīs bonīs vērīque studēre, ut sub tyrannō saepe fit; dēbēs, igitur, exīre et peregrīnārī.
7. Cūrēmus nē cīvitatē eīs trādāmus quī sē patriae antepōnant.
8. Sunt īfirmī quī levia opera mīrentur et semper sibi ignōscant.
9. Iste dux, diū absēns, tam stultīs cōnsiliīs cīvitatī ūtēbātur ut mīlia cīvium adversa patī cōgerentur atque multī bonī perīrent.
10. Haec locūtus, fassus est illōs, quī odium immōtum ergā cīvitatē multōs annōs habēbant, Rōmae interfectōs esse.
11. Initium operis nōs saepe impedit.
12. Sator sublīmis hominum atque animālium omnibus nōbīs animās dedit; cum corpora obeant, animae numquam moriuntur.
13. Cum rūs rediimus, tum domī invēnimus—mīrābile vīsū!—plūrimōs amīcōs.
14. Cicero, who was the greatest Roman orator, was a consul who would obey the senate.
15. I shall persuade him to become better and to return to Rome, I assure you.
16. We begged them not to trust a man whom a tyrant pleased.
17. Wherefore, let that man who hesitates to defend our country depart to another land.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Sē omnēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt. (Caesar.—**prō-iaciō.**)
2. Hīc in nostrō numerō sunt quī lēgēs contemnunt ac dē exitiō huius urbis cōtīdiē cōgitent. (Cicero.)

3. Quis est cui haec rēs pūblica atque possessiō lībertātis nōn sint cārae et dulcēs? (Id.—**possessiō, -ōnis.**)
4. Quae domus tam stabilis est, quae cīvītās tam fīrma est quae nōn odiīs, invidiā, atque īnsidiīs possit contundī? (Id.—**stabilis, -e.**—**quae . . . contundī**; here the characteristic clause has the force of result.)
5. Quārē, quid est quod tibi iam in hāc urbe placēre possit, in quā nēmō est quī tē nōn metuat? (Id.)
6. Quis enim aut eum dīligere potest quem metuat aut eum ā quō sē metuī putet? (Id.)
7. Tibi sōlī necēs multōrum cīvium impūnītae ac līberae fuērunt. (Id.—**nex, necis, f., murder.**—**impūnītus, -a, -um, unpunished.**)
8. Habētis autem eum cōsulem quī exigere officium et pārēre vestrīs dēcrētīs nōn dubitet atque vōs dēfendere possit. (Id.—**dēcrētum, -ī, decree.**)
9. Ille mihi semper deus erit. (Virgil.)
10. Nūllus dolor est quem nōn longinquitās temporis minuat ac molliat. (*Cicero.—**longinquitās, -tātis, length.**)
11. Parāvisse dīvitiās fuit multīs hominibus nōn fīnis sed mūtātiō malōrum. (Epicurus quoted by Seneca.—**mūtātiō, -ōnis, change.**)
12. Nihil est opere et manū factum quod tempus nōn cōnsūmat. (Cicero.)
13. Vīribus corporis dēficiētibz, vigor tamen animī dūrāvit illī ad vītāe fīnem. (Pliny.—**dēficiō, -ere, to fail.**—**vigor, -gōris.**—**dūrāre, to last.**)
14. Nunc est bibendum; nunc pede līberō pulsanda tellus. (*Horace; from his ode celebrating the death of the Egyptian queen Cleopatra.—sc. **nōbīs** as dat. of agent with both pass. periphrastics.—**pulsāre, to strike, beat**; with **pulsanda**, sc. **est, should be struck**, i.e., **danced upon.**—**tellūs, -lūris, f., = terra.**)

NOTE ON A BOOK BY LUCAN

Sunt quīdam quī mē dīcant nōn esse poētā;
sed quī mē vēndit bibliopōla putat.

(*Martial 14.194; meter: elegiac couplet. In this note from a gift copy of Lucan's poetry, the author is himself imagined as speaking.—**bibliopōla, -ae, m., book-dealer**, antecedent of **quī**.)

TWO EXAMPLES OF ROMAN WIT

Oh, Give Me a Figgy Sprig!

Cum quīdam, querēns, dīxisset uxōrem suam dē fīcū suspendisse sē, amīcus illīus "Amābō tē," inquit, "dā mihi ex istā arbore surculōs quōs seram!"

(Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* 2.278.—**fīcus, -ūs, f., fig tree**; nouns for trees are usually feminine.—**surculus, -ī, shoot, sprig.**—**quōs = ut eōs**, rel. clause of purpose.—**serō, -ere, to plant, sow.**)

The Most Pitiful Speech I've Ever Heard!

Cum quīdam ōrātor sē misericordiam ōrātiōne fortasse mōvisse putāret, rogāvit Catulum vidēretur misericordiam mōvisse. "Ac magnam quidem, mihi," inquit, "putō enim nēminem esse tam dūrum cui ōrātiō tua nōn vīsa sit digna misericordiā!"

(Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* 2.278.—**misericordia**, -ae, *pity*; an important objective for the ancient orator, and one for which he was trained, was to arouse the audience's emotions.—**Catulus**, -ī.—**vidēretur**: the -ne, *whether*, signals an ind. quest.—**magnam**, sc. **misericordiam mōvistī!**—**cui** = **ut eī**, rel. clause of result.)

TWO LETTERS TO CICERO

Gn. Magnus Prōcōnsul Salūtem Dīcit Cicerōnī Imperātōrī

Sī valēs, bene est. Tuās litterās libenter lēgī; recognōvī enim tuam pristinam virtūtem etiam in salūte commūnī. Cōsulēs ad eum exercitum vēnērunt quem in Āpūliā habuī. Magnopere tē hortor ut occāsiōnem carpās et tē ad nōs cōferās, ut commūnī cōsiliō reī publicae miserae opem atque auxilium ferāmus. Moneō ut Rōmā exeās, viā Appiā iter faciās, et quam celerrimē Brundisium veniās.

Caesar Imperātōr Salūtem Dīcit Cicerōnī Imperātōrī

Cum Brundisium celerius adeam atque sim in itinere, exercitū iam prae-missō, dēbeō tamen ad tē scribere et grātiās idōneās tibi agere, etsī hoc fēcī saepe et saepius factūrus videor; ita dignus es. Imprīmīs, quoniam crēdō mē celeriter ad urbem ventūrum esse, ā tē petō ut tē ibi videam ut tuō cōsiliō, dignitāte, ope ūtī possim. Festīnātiōnī meae brevitatīque litterārum ignōscēs; cētera ex Furniō cognōscēs.

(Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum* 8.11 and 9.6; in these letters, two of hundreds that survive from Cicero's correspondence, both Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, "Pompey the Great," and Julius Caesar bid for the statesman's support in the civil war that followed Caesar's crossing of the Rubicon in 49 B.C.—Apulia was a district in south Italy.—**viā Appiā**, abl. of route, a common construction; the Via Appia, built in the 4th century B.C., was the highway leading south from Rome and, ultimately, to Brundisium, the port of departure for Greece.—**prae-mittō**, -ere.—**imprīmīs**, adv., *especially*.—**festīnātiō**, -ōnis, *haste, rush*.—**brevitās**, -tātis.—**Furnius**, the name of an associate.)

ASK ME IF I CARE

Nīl nimium studeō, Caesar, tibi velle placēre,
nec scīre utrum sīs albus an āter homō!

(*Catullus 93; meter: elegiac couplet.—**nīl** = **nōn**.—**albus**, -a, -um, *white*.—**āter**, ātra, ātrum, *black*.)

ETYMOLOGY

The use of **opus** in the titles of musical works is well known; e.g., Beethoven's "Symphony No. 5 in C Minor, Opus 67." "Opera," on the other hand, comes to us through Italian from **opera**, **-ae**, *effort, pains, work*, which clearly has the same root as **opus**. Finally, we have the term **magnum opus**, which is most commonly used in the literary field.

A few Romance derivatives follow:

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French
dolor	dolore	dolor	douleur
odium	odio	odio	odieux (odiōsus)
pēs, pedis	piede	pie	pied

In the readings

1. project, projection. 4. stable (adj.), stability, stabilize. 7. internecine; cp. **necāre**.—impunity, punitive. 13. deficient, deficiency, defect, defective, defection. 14. pulse, pulsate, pulsar. "Note": bibliopole, bibliopolist; cp. bibliography, bibliophile (all Gk. in origin). "Hang Her": ficus.—surgulose. "Pity": misericord; cp. **miser**. "Two Letters": festinate, festination.—brevity; cp. **brevis**. "Ask Me": alb, alba, Alba Longa, Alban, albedo, albescent, albinism, albino, albugeneous, album, albumen, albumin.—atrabilious.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Have you noticed that we like to **ad lib.** in this section of each chapter? **Ad libitum**, *at one's pleasure*, is connected with **libenter**, which is how Latin should be both taught and learned: *gladly!* So, **libenter carpite diem et hās rēs novās**: first, note that **impediō** is from **in** + **pēs**; when you're "impeded," you've got something *on your feet* (like "fetters," from the same base as "foot"), so perhaps you should consult a podiatrist (**pod-** is the Gk. cognate of Lat. **ped-**) and ask him to "expedite" your treatment (**expedire** is essentially "to de-fetter," the opposite of **impedire**; cp. "implicate" and "explicate" from **implicāre/explicāre**); otherwise, just give up your pedestrian ways and start pedaling. **Odium** means *rivalry* as well as *hatred*; guess who the rivals are in **odium medicum**, **odium scholasticum**, and **odium theologicum**? And speaking of odious types, the emperor Tiberius (A.D. 14–37) is said to have remarked of his subjects, **oderint dum metuant**, *let them hate (me), so long as they fear me!* The abbreviation **op. cit.** is from **opere citātō**, *in the work cited*; and **opera omnia** are an author's *complete works*. An old legal prescript provides that **vendēns eandem rem duōbus est falsārius** (*fraudulent*); such a swindle would be **īnfra dignitātem**, *beneath one's dignity*, so remember the familiar admonition **caveat emptor**, *let the buyer beware!* **Iterum tempus fūgit: valeātis, amīcī et amīcae!**

Gerund and Gerundive

THE GERUNDIVE

You are already familiar with the gerundive, or future passive participle, a verbal adjective formed with the endings **-ndus, -nda, -ndum** (Ch. 23). Besides functioning occasionally as a simple adjective (**liber legendus**, *a book to be read*), the gerundive is commonly employed in the passive periphrastic conjugation (Ch. 24: **hic liber legendus est**, *this book should be read*); some further uses are examined in this chapter.

THE GERUND

The “gerund” is a verbal *noun* formed like the gerundive, except that it has only four forms, the neuter singular of the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative. These forms are identical to the corresponding cases of the gerundive, but are *active* in meaning and correspond to the English gerund in “-ing” (**legendī**, *of reading*, as in **magnum amōrem legendī habet**, *he has a great love of reading*).

DECLENSION OF THE GERUND

Following are the complete gerund declensions for some representative Latin verbs:

<i>Gen.</i>	laudándī	dūcéndī	sequéndī	audiéndī
	(of praising, leading, following, hearing)			

<i>Dat.</i>	laudándō (<i>to/for praising, etc.</i>)	dūcéndō	sequéndō	audiéndō
<i>Acc.</i>	laudándum (<i>praising, etc.</i>)	dūcéndum	sequéndum	audiéndum
<i>Abl.</i>	laudándō (<i>by praising, etc.</i>)	dūcéndō	sequéndō	audiéndō

Since the gerund is a verbal noun, it can be modified as a verb and used as a noun in the various cases. Having no nominative case, however, the gerund was not used as a subject, a function performed instead by the infinitive, another of Latin's verbal nouns (i.e., Latin could say **errāre est humanum**, *to err is human*, but not *erring is human*); likewise the accusative was ordinarily employed as an object of **ad** and certain other prepositions, not as a direct object (a function again performed by the infinitive, e.g., **iussit eōs venīre**, *he ordered them to come*: see Appendix, p. 445). The following sentences illustrate typical uses of the gerund in its four cases:

studium **vīvendī** cum amīcīs, *fondness of (for) living with friends.*

Operam dat **vīvendō** bene, *he gives attention to living well.*

Athēnās iit ad **vīvendum** bene, *he went to Athens to live well.*

Fēliciōrēs fīmus **vīvendō** bene, *we become happier by living well.*

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

Remember these distinctions between gerund and gerundive: 1) the gerundive is a verbal adjective (**liber legendus**, *a book to be read*), the gerund a verbal noun (**amor legendī**, *love of reading*); 2) as an adjective, the gerundive has a full set of masculine, feminine, and neuter endings, both singular and plural, for all cases, whereas the gerund has only neuter singular forms and only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative, i.e., a total of only four forms altogether; 3) the gerundive is passive in meaning, the gerund active.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PHRASES

As a verbal noun, the gerund may take the case construction required by its verb:

studium legendī librōs, *fondness of reading books.*

Discimus legendō librōs, *we learn by reading books.*

In actual practice, however, when the gerund would be followed by a noun in the accusative as a direct object, the Romans preferred to put this noun in the case in which the gerund would otherwise appear and to use the gerundive in agreement with the noun. The translation is the same no matter which construction is used, since English idiom requires the gerund construction rather than the unidiomatic gerundive. In the examples which fol-

low, those marked A are what we should expect on the basis of English idiom; those marked B are the regular gerundive phrases which the Romans actually preferred:

- A. studium legendī librōs (acceptable)
- B. studium librōrum legendōrum (preferred)
fondness of reading books (not *fondness of books to be read*, which is unidiomatic)
- A. Operam dat legendō librōs.
- B. Operam dat librīs legendīs.
He gives attention to reading books.
- A. Discimus legendō librōs.
- B. Discimus librīs legendīs.
We learn by reading books.
- A. Hoc locūtus est dē legendō librōs.
- B. Hoc locūtus est dē librīs legendīs.
He said this about reading books.

Quite common was the use of **ad** + an accusative gerundive (or gerund) phrase and postpositive **causā** + a genitive phrase to indicate *purpose*:

- A. Vēnit ad legendum librōs.
- B. Vēnit ad librōs legendōs.
He came to read books.
- A. Ōtium petit legendī librōs causā.
- B. Ōtium petit librōrum legendōrum causā.
He seeks leisure for the sake of reading books.

Remember that purpose can be expressed in Latin, not only with gerundive/gerund phrases, but also with **ut/nē** + the subjunctive and, after a main verb of motion, the accusative supine: **venit ut hōs librōs legat** and **venit hōs librōs lēctum** both mean *he is coming to read these books*.

VOCABULARY

- aedificium**, -iī, n., *building, structure* (edification, edifice, edify, aedile)
- iniūria**, -ae, f., *injustice, injury, wrong* (injurious; cp. **iūdex**, **iūdicium**, **iūs**, **iūstus**, Ch. 40)
- mūlier**, **mulieris**, f., *woman* (muliebrity)
- trānsitus**, -ūs, m., *passing over, transit, transition* (cp. **trānseō** below)
- vēntus**, -ī, m., *wind* (vent, ventilate, ventilation, ventilator)
- cūpidus**, -a, -um, *desirous, eager, fond*; + gen., *desirous of, eager for* (cp. **cupiō**, **cupiditās**, **cupīdō**)

- liberālis, liberāle**, *of, relating to a free person; worthy of a free man, decent, liberal; generous* (liberal arts, liberality; cp. **liber, liberō**)
- necesse**, indecl. adj. used as nom. or acc., *necessary, inevitable* (necessitate, necessitous, unnecessary; cp. **cēdō**)
- vētus**, gen. **véteris** *old* (veteran, inveterate, veterinary, veterinarian)
- quāsi**, adv. or conj., *as if, as it were* (quasi; = **quam** + **sī**)
- āmbulō** (1), *to walk* (amble, ambulance, ambulate, ambulatory, perambulate, preamble, somnambulist)
- expērior, -perīrī, -pértus sum**, *to try, test, experience* (experiment, expert, inexperienced, inexperience; cp. **perīculum**)
- lībō** (1), *to pour a libation of, on; to pour ritually; to sip, touch gently* (libation)
- opórtet, oportēre, opórtuit**, impers., *it is proper, right, necessary*
- oppúgnō** (1), *to fight against, attack, assault, assail* (oppugn; cp. **pugnō**)
- órnō** (1), *to equip, furnish, adorn* (adornment, ornate, ornament, ornamental, ornamentation, suborn, subornation)
- pernóctō** (1), *to spend or occupy the night* (nocturnal, nocturne; cp. **nox**)
- trānseō, -īre, -īī, -itum**, *to go across, cross; pass over, ignore* (transit, transition, transitive, intransitive, transitory, trance)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Caesar eōs cōtīdiē ōrābat nē fāta adversa metuerent.
2. Etsī hoc fiat, illī mīlitēs urbem oppugnātum fortasse accēdant et multī cīvēs obeant.
3. Sī licēbit, septem diēbus domum ībimus ad nostrōs amīcōs videndōs.
4. Hospes liberālisissimus noster, quōcum pernóctābāmus, deīs vīnum ante cēnam lībāvit, et deinde mēnsam ōrnāvit.
5. Cōsul, vir maximae dignitātis, ōtium cōsūmpsit in operibus sublīmibus scrībendīs.
6. Sunt autem quī dolōrum vītandōrum causā, ut āiunt, semper levia opera faciant, labōrem contemnant, et dē officiīs querantur.
7. In rē públicā gerendā istī nōn dubitant praemia grāta sibi requīrere, officia suspendere, atque honōrem suum vēndere.
8. Lēctrīx doctissima mox surget ad tria carmina recitanda, quae omnēs audītōrēs oblectābunt atque animōs serēnābunt.
9. Nēmō est cui iniūria placeat, ut nōs omnēs recognōscimus.
10. Nisi vīcula patī ac sub pedibus tyrannōrum humī contundī volumus, lībertatī semper studeāmus et eam numquam impediāmus.
11. Pauca opera mihi sedendō fiunt, multa agendō et experiendō.
12. Illa mulier mīrābilis frūctūs amōris libenter carpsit et virō grātissimō nūpsit.

13. They are going to Rome to talk about conquering the Greeks.
14. By remaining at Rome he persuaded them to become braver.
15. Who is there who has hope of doing great works without pain?
16. We urged the consul to serve the state and preserve our dignity by attacking these injustices.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Coniūrātiōnem nāscētem nōn crēdendō corrōborāvērunt. (*Cicero.—**coniūrātiō**, -ōnis, *conspiracy*.—**corrōborāre**, *to strengthen*.)
2. Malī dēsīnant īnsidiās reī pūblicae cōsulīque parāre et ignēs ad īnflammandam urbem. (Cicero.—**dēsīnō**, -ere, *to cease*.—**īnflam-māre**, *to set on fire*.)
3. Multī autem propter glōriae cupiditātem sunt cupidī bellōrum gerendōrum. (Cicero.)
4. Veterem iniūriam ferendō invītāmus novam. (Publilius Syrus.)
5. Cūrēmus nē poena maior sit quam culpa; prohibenda autem maximē est ira in pūniendō. (Cicero.—**pūnīre**, *to punish*.)
6. Syrācūsīs captīs, Mārcellus aedificiīs omnibus sīc pepercit—mīrā-bile dictū—quasi ad ea dēfendenda, nōn oppugnanda vēnisset. (Cicero.)
7. Rēgulus laudandus est in cōservandō iūre iūrاندō. (*Cicero.—Regulus, prisoner of the Carthaginians, swore to them that he would return to Carthage after a mission to Rome.—**iūs iūrاندum**, **iūris iūrاندī**, n., *oath*.)
8. In ōrātiōne meā dīcam dē mōribus fīrmīs Sēstiī et dē studiō cōser-vandae salūtis commūnis. (Cicero.—**Sēstius**, -ī.)
9. Trānsitus ad senectūtem nōs āvocat ā rēbus gerendis et corpus facit īnfīrmus. (Cicero.)
10. Cum recreandae vōcis īnfīrmāe causā necesse esset mihi ambulāre, hās litterās dictāvī forīs ambulāns. (Cicero.—**dictāre**, *to dictate*.)
11. Semper metuendō sapiēns vītāt malum. (Publilius Syrus.)
12. Haec virtūs ex prōvidendō est appellāta prūdētia. (Cicero.—**prōvi-dēre**.—**prūdētia** = **prō-vidētia**.)
13. Fāma vīrēs acquirit eundō. (Virgil.—**acquīrō**, from **ad-quaerō**, *to acquire*.)
14. Hae vicissitudinēs fortūnae, etsī nōbīs iūcundae in experiendō nōn fuērunt, in legendō tamen erunt iūcundae. Recordātiō enim praeteritī dolōris dēlectātiōnem nōbīs habet. (Cicero.—**vicissitūdō**, -dinis.—**recordātiō**, -ōnis, *recollection*.—**praeteritus**, -a, -um, *past*.)

PROMISES, PROMISES!

Nūllī sē dīcit mulier mea nūbere mälle
 quam mihi, nōn sī sē Iuppiter ipse petat.
 Dīcit: sed mulier cupidō quod dīcit amantī,
 in ventō et rapidā scribere oportet aquā.

(*Catullus 70; meter: elegiac couplet.—Nūllī and mihi are both dat. with nūbere, and quam = magis quam; the prose order would be mulier mea dīcit sē nūllī quam mihi nūbere mälle.—amantī, lover.—Note the separation of adj. from noun in cupidō . . . amantī and rapidā . . . aquā, a common feature of Latin verse used here to emphasize the nouns that are delayed; the prose order: sed quod mulier amantī cupidō dīcit.—rapidus, -a, -um.)

PAETE, NŌN DOLET

Casta suō gladium cum trāderet Arria Paetō,
 quem dē vīsceribus strīnxerat ipsa suīs,
 “Sī qua fidēs, vulnus quod fēcī nōn dolet,” inquit,
 “sed quod tū faciēs, hoc mihi, Paete, dolet.”

(*Martial 1.13; meter: elegiac couplet.—Caecina Paetus was compelled to commit suicide in 42 A.D., because of the role he had played in a conspiracy against the emperor Claudius; his courageous and devoted wife Arria, choosing to die with him, stabbed herself before passing the sword to her husband and assuring him that the pain of the wound itself would be slight. See below, L.I. 39.—The prose order of the first verse would be: Cum Arria casta Paetō suō gladium trāderet.—castus, -a, -um, loyal, chaste.—gladius, -ī, sword.—vīscera, -cerum, n. pl., vital organs, abdomen.—stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictum, to draw tight, tie; pull, draw out.—sī qua [=quae, indef.] fidēs, i.e., if you have any faith in me, if you will trust me.)

HANNIBAL AND THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

Hannibal, fīlius Hamilcaris, Carthāgine nātus est. In adulēscentiā pristinū odium patris ergā Rōmānōs sīc fīrmē cōservāvit ut numquam id dēpōneret. Cum patre exiit Carthāgine et in Hispāniā longō itinere prōfectus est; et post multōs annōs, Hamilcare interfectō, exercitus eī imperium trādidit. Sīc Hannibal, quīnque et vīgintī annōs nātus, imperātor factus est. Tribus annīs nōn requiēvit, sed omnēs gentēs Hispāniae superāvit et trēs exercitūs maximōs parāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricā mīsīt, alterum cum frātre in Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Italiā sēcum dūxit.

Ad Alpēs adiit, quās nēmō umquam ante eum cum exercitū trānsierat. Populōs cōnantēs prohibēre eum trānsitū necāvit; loca patefēcīt; et cum multīs elephantīs mīlitibusque in Italiā iniit. In hōc itinere tam gravī morbo oculōrum adfectus est ut postea numquam dextrō oculō bene ūtī

posset. Multōs ducēs, tamen, exercitūque Rōmānōs vīcit, et propter illum imperātōrem mīlia mīlitum Rōmānōrum periērunt.

(Nepos, *Hannibal*, excerpts; see L.A. 8.—Hannibal, general who led the Carthaginians against the Romans in the Second Punic War, 218–02 B.C.—**Hamilcar**, -caris.—**dē + pōnō**.—Hispānia, -ae, *Spain*.—**Āfrica**, -ae.—**Alpēs**, **Alpium**, f. pl., *the Alps*.—**adficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *to affect, afflict, weaken*.)



*The Oath of Hannibal, Johann Heinrich Schoenfeld, 17th century
Germanisches Nationalmuseum, Nuremberg, Germany*

ETYMOLOGY

The terms “gerund” and “gerundive” derive ultimately from the stem **gerund-** (= **gerend-**) of **gerō**. The gerund indicates “doing” (action); the gerundive indicates what is “to be done.”

In late Latin the ablative of the gerund was used with increasing frequency as the equivalent of a present participle. From this usage derive the Italian and the Spanish present participles, which end in **-ndo** and are invariable.

Latin Gerund	It. Participle	Sp. Participle
dandō	dando	dando
faciendō	facendo	haciendo
dīcendō	dicendo	diciendo
pōnendō	ponendo	poniendo
scrībendō	scrivendo	escribiendo

In the readings

1. conjuration; cp. **coniūrātī**.—corroborate, corroborate; cp. **rōbur, rōboris**, n., *hard wood, oak*. 2. inflammation, inflammatory. 5. punitive, impunity; cp. **poena**. 10. dictator. 14. In **re-cord-ātiō** you see the stem of **cor, cordis**, *heart*. This shows that formerly the heart was regarded not only as the seat of the emotions but also as the mind and the seat of the memory, a belief reflected in our own phrase “learn by heart.” Cp. record, accord, concord, discord, cordial, cordate, courage. Eng. “heart” is cognate with Lat. **cord-**. “Promises”: rapid, rapids, rapidity; cp. **rapīō**. “Paete”: chaste, chasten, chastity, chastise.—gladiator, gladiatorial, gladiola, gladiolus.—viscera, visceral, eviscerate.—stringency, stringendo, stringent, astringent, strict, constrict, restrict. “Hannibal”: deponent, depose, deposit, deposition.—affect, affection.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulī discipulaeque; haec sunt discenda: Cato’s definition of an orator, as quoted by the 1st cen. A.D. educator Quintilian (*Īnstitūtiōnēs Ōrātōriae* 12.1.1), is quite well known, and you can easily translate it now that you’ve studied gerunds (and with the explanation that **perītus, -a, -um** + gen. = *experienced in*): **ōrātor est vir bonus dīcendī perītus**. Here are some more familiar items with gerunds and gerundives: New Mexico’s state motto, **crēscit eundō** (review Ch. 37, if you have trouble with that one!); **docendō discimus**; **spectēmur agendō**, *let us be judged by what we do* (lit., *by our doing*); **modus vīvendī** and **modus operandī** (“m.o.” to you detective show buffs!); **onus probandī**, *the burden of proof* (lit., *of proving*); then, of course, there are these many “things to be done”: **agenda, addenda, corrigenda, referendum**.

Et duo cētera ex vocābulārīō novō: iniūria nōn excūsāt iniūriam, (*one*) *injury does not excuse (another) injury*, is an old legal tenet, and **expertō crēdite** is still good advice. **Habēte fēlicem modum vīvendī, studentēs, et valēte!**

-Ne, Num, and Nōnne in Direct Questions; Fear Clauses; Genitive and Ablative of Description

-Ne, Num, AND Nōnne IN DIRECT QUESTIONS

As we have already seen, a Roman could ask a direct question in a variety of ways, by beginning a sentence with an interrogative pronoun (**quis**, **quid**) or such other interrogatives as **ubi** or **cūr**, or by suffixing **-ne** to the first word of the sentence (often the verb, or some other word on which the question hinged). But “leading questions” can also be asked in Latin: if the speaker expected “yes” as an answer, the question was introduced with **nōnne** (a construction already encountered, though not formally discussed); if a negative reply was anticipated, **num** was the introductory word.

Quis venit? Who is coming?

Cūr venit? Why is he coming?

Venitne? Is he coming?

Nōnne venit? He is coming, isn't he? or Isn't he coming?

Num venit? He isn't coming, is he?

Scrīpsistīne illās litterās? Did you write that letter?

Nōnne illās litterās scrīpsistī? *You wrote that letter, didn't you? or Didn't you write that letter?*

Num illās litterās scrīpsistī? *You didn't write that letter, did you?*

FEAR CLAUSES

Verbs denoting fear or apprehension often take subjunctive noun clauses introduced by **nē** (*that*) or **ut** (*that . . . not*); the conjunctions are just the opposite of what might be expected, because in origin the clauses they introduced were essentially independent jussive clauses (i.e., **timeō nē abeās**, *I fear that you may go away*, = **Timeō. Nē abeās!**, *I'm afraid—Don't go away!*). Auxiliaries commonly employed in translating include *will* or *may* (in primary sequence) and *would* or *might* (in secondary sequence), as indicated in the following examples:

Timeō nē id crēdant, *I fear that they will (may) believe this.*

Vereor ut id crēdant, *I am afraid that they will (may) not believe this.*

Timuērunt nē amīcōs amitterent, *they feared that they might (would) lose their friends.*

Metuistī ut mulierēs ex casā exīssent, *you were afraid that the women had not left the house.*

GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

A noun in either the ablative or genitive case plus a modifying adjective may be employed to modify another noun; both the ablative of description and the genitive of description (already encountered in the readings) might describe a noun by indicating its character, quality, or size, although the ablative usage was especially common in describing physical traits. Like adjectives, these descriptive phrases usually follow the nouns they modify.

fēmina **magnae sapientiae**, *a woman of great intellect*

pāx in hominibus **bonae voluntātis**, *peace among men of good will*

cōnsilium **eius modī**, *a plan of this kind*

Diligō hominem **antīquā virtūte**, *I esteem a man of old-fashioned morality.*

mīles **fīrmā manū**, *the soldier with the strong hand*

Es **mōribus bonīs**, *you are a person of good character.*

VOCABULARY

- aes, aëris, n.**, *bronze* (era; cp. **aerārium, -ī**, *treasury*; **aereus, -a, -um**, *made of bronze*)
- dóminus, -ī, m.**, *master (of a household), lord*, and **dómina, -ae, f.**, *mistress, lady* (dominate, dominant, domineer, dominion, domain, domino, domine, don, dungeon, belladonna, madonna, dame, damsel, danger; cp. **domus**)
- lácrima, -ae, f.**, *tear* (lacrimal, lacrimation)
- méta, -ae, f.**, *turning post, goal; limit*
- monumentum, -ī, n.**, *monument* (monumental, monumentalize; cp. **moneō**)
- nāsus, -ī, m.**, *nose* (nasal, nasalize, nasogastric; cp. nostril, nozzle)
- sáxum, -ī, n.**, *rock, stone* (saxatile, saxifrage, saxicolous; cp. **secō**, *to cut*, saw, saxon)
- vultus, -ūs, m.**, *countenance, face*
- iūstus, -a, -um**, *just, right* (justice, injustice, unjust, justify, justification, adjust, adjustment, readjust; cp. **iūs, iūdex, iniūria**)
- tot**, indecl. adj., *so many* (cp. **quot; totidem**, indecl. adj., *the same number*; **totiēns**, adv., *that number of times, so often*)
- praeter**, prep. + acc., *besides, except; beyond, past* (preterit, preterition, premit, preternatural; cp. **prae**)
- nōnne**, interrog. adv. which introduces questions expecting the answer "yes."
- num**, interrog. adv.: (1) introduces direct questions which expect the answer "no"; (2) introduces indirect questions and means *whether*.
- omnīnō**, adv., *wholly, entirely, altogether* (cp. **omnis**)
- postrēmum**, adv., *after all, finally; for the last time* (cp. **post**)
- quīn**, adv., *indeed, in fact*
- éxplicō** (1), *to unfold, explain; spread out, deploy* (explicate, inexplicable; implicate, implication, from **implicō**, *to enfold, interweave*)
- fatīgō** (1), *to weary, tire out* (fatigue, indefatigable)
- for, fārī, fātus sum**, *to speak (prophetically), talk, foretell* (affable, ineffable, infant, infantry, preface; cp. **fābula, fāma, fātum**)
- opīnor, opīnārī, opīnātus sum**, *to suppose* (opine, opinion)
- repériō, reperire, répperī, repértum**, *to find, discover, learn, get* (repertoire, repertory; cp. **parēns** and **pariō**, *to give birth to*)
- véreor, verēri, véritus sum**, *to show reverence for, respect; be afraid of, fear* (revere, reverend, reverent, reverential, irreverent)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Nōnne Rōmulus, sator huius urbis, fuit vir mīrābilis virtūtis et fideī pristinae?

2. At postrēmum vereor, heu, ut ā virīs parvae sapientiae hoc studium vetus intellegī possit.
3. Nōn oportet nōs trānsīre haec līberālia hūmānae studia, nam praemia eōrum certē sunt maxima.
4. Dignitās illius orātiōnis fuit omnīnō idōnea occāsionī.
5. Cum equī eius fatīgātī essent et ventus esset eis adversus, ad mētā tamen quam celerrimē currēbant.
6. Vir corpore infirmō id nōn facere poterat.
7. Etsī trēs filiī sunt cupidī magnōrum operum faciendōrum, eis nōn licet domō abīre.
8. Domina fīrma acerbē querēbātur plūrimōs servōs fuisse absentēs—vae illīs miserīs!
9. Mīrābile rogātū, num istam mulierem amās, mī amīce?
10. Nōnne timent nē et Rōmae et rūrī magnī tumultūs sint?
11. Num opīnāris tot hominēs iūstōs omnīnō errāre?
12. Recognōvistīne, ut illa aedificia vīsum ambulābās, mulierem sub arbore humī requiēscentem?
13. I am afraid, in my heart, that few things can be accomplished now even by trying.
14. You do not hesitate to say this, do you?
15. They supposed that, after all, he was a man of very little faith.
16. You do recognize how great the danger is, do you not?

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Quattuor causās reperiō cūr senectūs misera videātur. Videāmus quam iūsta quaeque eārum sit. (Cicero.)
2. Verērī videntur ut habeam satis praesidī. (*Cicero.—**praesidium**, -ī, *guard*).
3. Necesse est enim sit alterum dē duōbus: aut mors sēnsūs omnīnō aufert aut animus in alium locum morte abit. Sī mors somnō similis est sēnsūsque exstinguuntur, dī bonī, quid lucrī est morī! (Cicero.—**necesse est** may be followed by the subjunctive.—**aufert** = **ab-fert**.—**exstinguō**, -ere.—**lucrum**, -ī, *gain, profit*.)
4. Aetās semper trānsitum et aliquid novī adfert. (Terence.)
5. Nōnne ūnum exemplum luxuriae aut cupiditātis multum malī facit? (Seneca.—**luxuria**, -ae.)
6. Mīror tot mīlia virōrum tam puerīliter identidem cupere currentēs equōs vidēre. (Pliny.—**puerīliter**, adv., based on **puer**, *childishly*.—**identidem**, adv., *again and again*.—**currentēs**, i.e., in the races.)
7. Nōnne vidēs etiam guttās, in saxa cadendō, pertundere illa saxa? (Lucretius.—**gutta**, -ae, *drop [of water]*.—**pertundō**, -ere, *to bore a hole through, erode*.)

8. Metuō nē id cōsilī cēperīmus quod nōn facile explicāre possīmus.
(*Cicero.—**cōsilī**, gen. of the whole with **id**.)
9. Antōnius, ūnus ex inimīcīs et vir minimae clēmēntiae, iussit Cicerō-
nem interficī et caput eius inter duās manūs in Rōstrīs pōnī. (Livy.—
inimīcus, -ī, from **in** + **amīcus**, *personal enemy*.—**Rōstra**, -ōrum, *the*
Rostra, the speaker's stand in the Roman Forum.)
10. Omnēs quī habent aliquid nōn solum sapientiae sed etiam sānitātis
volunt hanc rem pūblicam salvam esse. (*Cicero.—**sānitās**, -tātis.)
11. Salvē, nec minimō puella nāsō nec bellō pede nec nigrīs ocellīs nec
longīs digitīs nec ōre siccō! (*Catullus.—**niger**, **nigra**, **nigrum**, *black*,
dark.—**ocellus**, diminutive of **oculus**.—**siccus**, -a, -um, *dry*.)
12. Homō sum; nihil hūmānī aliēnum ā mē putō. (Terence.—**aliēnus**, -a,
-um + **ab** = *foreign to*.)
13. Amīcus animum amīcī ita cum suō miscet quasi facit ūnum ex duō-
bus. (Cicero.)
14. Sex diēbus fēcit Dominus caelum et terram et mare et omnia quae
in eīs sunt, et requiēvit diē septimō. (Exodus.)
15. Mīsīt legātum Valerium Procillum, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte ad-
ulēscētem. (Caesar.—**legātus**, -ī, *ambassador*.—Valerius Procil-
lus.—**hūmānitās**, -tātis.)
16. Num negāre audēs? Quid tacēs? Convincam, sī negās; videō enim
esse hīc in senātū quōsdam quī tēcum ūnā fuērunt. Ō dī immortālēs!
(*Cicero.—**quid**, here = *why*?—**con** + **vincō**, *to prove wrong, convict*;
sc. **tē**.—**ūnā**, adv., *together, in concert*.)
17. Nunc timeō nē nihil tibi praeter lacrimās queam reddere. (*Cicero—
queam = **possim**.—**reddō**, -dere, *to give back, return*.)

JUPITER PROPHECIES TO VENUS THE FUTURE GLORY OF ROME

- Ollī subrīdēns hominum sator atque deōrum
 255 vultū, quō caelum tempestātēque serēnat,
 ōscula lībāvit nātae, dēhinc tālia fātur:
 “Parce metū, Cytherēā; manent immōta tuōrum
 fāta tibi. Cernēs urbem et prōmissa Lavīnī
 moenia sublīmemque ferēs ad sīdera caelī
 260 magnanimum Aenēan; neque mē sententia vertit.
 . . .
 263 Bellum ingēns geret Ītaliā populōsque ferōcīs
 contundet mōrēsque virīs et moenia pōnet.
 . . .
 Rōmulus excipiet gentem et Māvortia condet
 moenia Rōmānōsque suō dē nōmine dīcet.
 Hīs ego nec mētās rērum nec tempora pōnō:
 imperium sine fine dedī. Quīn aspera Iūnō,

280 quae mare nunc terrāsque metū caelumque fatīgat,
cōnsilia in melius referet, mēcumque fovēbit
Rōmānōs, rērum dominōs gentemque togātam.”

(*Virgil, *Aeneid* 1.254ff; meter: dactylic hexameter.—**Ollī** = **illī**, here Venus, who has come to her father Jupiter to ask whether his intentions have changed toward her son, the Trojan prince Aeneas, or if he is still destined to found a new Trojan nation in Italy.—**vultū**, abl. of means with **subrīdēns**.—**ōscula libāvit**, i.e., he kissed her in ritual fashion.—**nātae**, ind. obj.—**dēhinc**, scanned here as a monosyllable.—**metū**, an alternate form of the dat. **metuī**.—**Cytherēa**, -ae, the *Cytherean*, i.e., Venus, so-called for the Aegean island of Cythera, which was sacred to her.—**immōta**, pred. adj., after **manent**.—**tuōrum**, i.e., Aeneas and his Trojan followers.—**Lavīnium**, -ī, *Lavinium*, the town Aeneas was destined to found in Latium, near the future city of Rome.—**sublīmēm**, in the predicate with **Aenēan** (a Gk. acc. form), *you will carry Aeneas on high*.—**neque . . . vertit**, i.e., *I have not changed my mind*; but what is the literal translation?—**geret . . . pōnet**: Aeneas is subject of all three verbs.—**Ītaliā**, sc. **in**; prepositions usual in prose were commonly omitted in verse.—**ferōcīs** = **ferōcēs**, acc. pl.—Through a device known as *zeugma*, **pōnet** has different senses with its two objects, *institute* with **mōrēs** and *build* with **moenia**.—**Māvortius**, -a, -um, of *Mars*, so-called because of the legend that Mars was father of Romulus, Rome’s first king.—**rērum**, of *their affairs*, i.e., *for their empire*.—**cōnsilia . . . referet**, i.e., *will change her attitude for the better*; Juno had sided with the Greeks in the Trojan war and had continued to resist Aeneas’ mission.—**togātus**, -a, -um, *togaed*, *toga-clad*.)



Virgil between two Muses
Mosaic, early 3rd century A.D.
Musée National du Bardo
Tunis, Tunisia

THE VALUE OF LITERATURE

Sī ex hīs studiīs dēlectātiō sōla peterētur, tamen, ut opīnor, hanc animī remissiōnem hūmānissimam ac liberālissimam iūdicārētis. Nam cēterae neque temporum sunt neque aetātum omnium neque locōrum; at haec studia adulēscēntiam alunt, senectūtem oblectant, rēs secundās ōrnant, adversīs perfugium ac sōlācium praebent, dēlectant domī, nōn impediunt forīs, pernoctant nōbīscum, peregrīnantur, rūsticantur.

(*Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 7.16.—**hanc**, sc. **esse**.—**iūdicāre**, to judge, consider.—**cēterae**, sc. **remissiōnēs**.—take **omnium** with all three descriptive genitives, **temporum**, **aetātum**, and **locōrum**.)

A MONUMENT MORE LASTING THAN BRONZE

Exēgī monumentum aere perennius.

...

Nōn omnis moriar, multaque pars meī
vītābit Libitīnam.

(*Horace, *Odes* 3.30.1, 6–7; meter: first Asclepiadean. See L.I. 28.—**perennis**, -e, lasting [throughout the years].—**Libitīna**, -ae, goddess of funerals; death.)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

2. presidium, preside, president, presidency. 3. extinguish, extinct.—**lucre**, lucrative. 6. puerile, puerility. 7. “gtt.,” medical abbreviation for “drops.” 9. inimical, enemy. 11. denigrate, desiccate. 12. **Aliēnus** literally means *belonging to another* (**alius**): alien, alienate, alienation, inalienable. 15. legate, legation, delegate.—humanity, humanities, humanitarian; cp. **hūmānus**, **homō**. 16. convince, convict, conviction. “Jupiter”: Connected with **for**, **fārī**, **fātus sum** is the noun **fātum**; what Jupiter has prophesied is one’s “fate.” “Value of Literature”: adjudicate. “A Monument”: “perennials” are outdoor plants that survive *through the years*, i.e., from one year to the next; and Latin, dear friends, is a perennial language!

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte postrēmum, discipulī et discipulae! Here are some **rēs novae ex hōc capite ultimō**: **dominus illūminātiō mea**, *the Lord is my light*, is the motto of Oxford University; **lacrima Christī** is a well known Lat. phrase for *the tear of Christ* (and also the name of a sweet Italian wine). An oft quoted line from Virgil’s *Aeneid* comes as the hero Aeneas, shipwrecked in North Africa, gazes upon a Carthaginian mural that depicts the suffering of both his own people and the Greeks in the Trojan war: **hīc etiam . . . sunt lacrimae rerum et mentem mortālīa tangunt**. The Latin works better than a literal English translation (which you can now easily provide for yourself), but a free

rendering would be: *even here there are tears for the ways of the world, and man's mortality touches the heart.*

Not to be so lacrimose (or “lachrymose,” an alternate spelling), let's move to some more upbeat items: remember how to make masculine agent nouns from verbs?—e.g., from **reperiō** is **repertor**, *discover*. Well, the feminine agentive suffix is **-trīx**, **-trīcis** (cp. Eng. “aviator” and “aviatrix,” and **lēctor/lēctrīx**, which we've seen before), hence this proverb: **paupertās omnium artium repertrīx**, something like our “necessity is the mother of invention” (but what is the literal meaning?). **Vultus est index animī**, *the face is an indication of the soul*, it has often been said. And speaking of faces, to “stick your nose up in the air” and to “look down your nose” on someone are not wholly modern idioms for viewing others critically or with disdain; the Neronian satirist Persius says of his predecessor Horace, in a brilliant and not wholly complimentary metaphor, that he *hung the people from his well-blown nose* (**excussō populum suspendere nāsō**). **Nāsō**, by the way, was the “nickname” or **cognōmen** of the Augustan poet Ovid: the Romans often gave their children names that focussed on physical or mental traits and they were frequently passed on from generation to generation (our friend Marcus Tullius, **mīrābile dictū**, was stuck with the name **Cicerō**, *garbanzo bean*, because of a peculiar growth on an ancestor's nose!).

May your love of Latin be **aere perennius**: **rīdēte, gaudēte, carpite omnēs diēs vestrōs, atque postrēmum, lēctōrēs et lēctrīcēs dulcēs, valēte!**

Locī Antīquī

Although these passages chosen from ancient authors have been adapted to meet the linguistic experience of first-year students, they have been edited as little as possible; the language and the thoughts are those of the ancient writers. In the case of poetry, one or more verses have been omitted from each excerpt but the verses actually presented here have not been altered. In the case of a prose passage, some words or sentences may have been omitted or the wording has been somewhat simplified at one point or another.

Students should find the perusal of these varied **Locī Antīquī** interesting per se and should also find satisfaction and a sense of accomplishment in being able to translate passages of such maturity at their stage of Latin study. Words appearing here that have not been introduced in the 40 chapter vocabularies are glossed at their first one or two occurrences, and especially important words are listed in the "Vocabulary" following the glosses to each passage; most are also included in the Latin-English Vocabulary at the end of the book for easy reference.

1. DISILLUSIONMENT

Miser Catulle, dēsinās¹ ineptīre,²
et quod vidēs perīsse perditum³ dūcās.
Fulsēre⁴ quondam candidī tibi sōlēs,
cum ventitābās⁵ quō⁶ puella dūcēbat,

1

METER: choliambic.

¹ dēsinō, -ere, -sī, -situm, cease (dēsinās = juss. subj. for dēsine)

² ineptiō (4), play the fool

³ perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditum, destroy, lose

⁴ fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, shine (fulsēre = fulsērunt)

⁵ ventitō (1), frequentative form of veniō, come often

⁶ quō, adv., whither, where

- 5 amāta nōbīs quantum amābitur nūlla.
Fulsēre vērē candidī tibī sōlēs.
Nunc iam illa nōn vult; tū quoque, impotēns,⁷ nōlī;
nec quae fugit sectāre⁸ nec miser vīve,
sed obstinātā⁹ mente perfer,¹⁰ obdūrā.¹¹
- 10 Valē, puella, iam Catullus obdūrat,
nec tē requīret nec rogābit invītam¹²;
at tū dolēbis, cum rogāberis nūlla.
Scelestā, vae tē! Quae tibī manet vīta!¹³
Quis nunc tē adībit? Cui vidēberis bella?
- 15 Quem nunc amābis? Cuius esse dīcēris?
At tū, Catulle, dēstinātus obdūrā. (Catullus 8)

2. HOW DEMOSTHENES OVERCAME HIS HANDICAPS

- Ōrātor imitētur¹ illum cui summa vīs dīcendī concēditur,² Dē-
mosthenem, in quō tantum studium fuisse dīcitur ut impedīmenta³ nātūrae
dīligentiā⁴ industriāque⁵ superāret. Nam cum ita balbus⁶ esset ut illīus ipsīus
artis⁷ cui studēret prīmam litteram nōn posset dīcere, perfēcīt⁸ meditandō⁹
- 5 ut nēmō plānius¹⁰ loquerētur. Deinde, cum spīritus eius esset angustior,¹¹
spīritū continendō multum perfēcīt in dīcendō; et coniectīs¹² in ōs calculīs,¹³
summā vōce versūs multōs ūnō spīritū prōnūntiāre cōnsuēscēbat¹⁴; neque id
faciēbat stāns ūnō in locō sed ambulāns. (Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* 1.61.260–61)

3. THE TYRANT CAN TRUST NO ONE

- Multōs annōs tyrannus Syrācūsānōrum¹ fuit Dionysius. Pulcherrimam
urbem servitūte oppressam tenuit. At ā bonīs auctōribus cognōvimus eum
fuisse hominem summae temperantiae² in vīctū³ et in rēbus gerendīs ācrem
et industriū,⁴ eundem tamen malum et iniūstum.⁵ Quārē, omnibus virīs
- 5 bene vēritātem quaerentibus hunc vidērī miserrimum necesse est, nam

⁷ im-potēns, weak, hopelessly in love

⁸ sectāre, imper. of sector, -ārī, sectātus sum, follow eagerly, pursue; word order: sectāre (eam) quae fugit

⁹ obstinātus, -a, -um, firm

¹⁰ per-ferō, endure

¹¹ obdūrō (1), vb. of adj. dūrus

¹² invītus, -a, -um, unwilling

¹³ See notes on excerpt in Ch. 19.

VOCABULARY: perdō, quō, invītus.

2

¹ imitor, -ārī, -ātus sum

² con-cēdō

³ impedīmentum, -ī

⁴ dīligentia, -ae

⁵ industria, -ae

⁶ balbus, -a, -um, stuttering

⁷ illīus . . . artis, i.e., rhetoric

⁸ perficiō, do thoroughly, bring about, accomplish

⁹ meditor, -ārī, -ātus sum, practice

¹⁰ plānius, compar. of adv. plānē

¹¹ angustus, -a, -um, narrow, short

¹² con-iciō (iaciō)

¹³ calculus, -ī, pebble

¹⁴ cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, become accustomed

VOCABULARY: concēdō, perficiō, angustus, coniciō, cōnsuēscō.

3

¹ Syrācūsānī, -ōrum, Syracusans

² temperantia, -ae

³ vīctus, -ūs, mode of life

⁴ industrius, -a, -um

⁵ in-iūstus, -a, -um

nēminī crēdere audēbat. Itaque propter iniūstam cupiditātem dominātūs⁶ quasi in carcerem⁷ ipse sē inclūserat.⁸ Quīn etiam,⁹ nē tōnsōrī¹⁰ collum¹¹ committeret, filiās suās artem tōnsōriam docuit.¹² Ita hae virginēs tondēbant¹³ barbā¹⁴ et capillum¹⁵ patris. Et tamen ab hīs ipsīs, cum iam essent
10 adultae,¹⁶ ferrum remōvit, eisque imperāvit ut carbōnibus¹⁷ barbā et capillum sibi adūrerent.¹⁸ (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.20.57–58)

4. THE SWORD OF DAMOCLES

Hic tyrannus ipse dēmōnstrāvit quam beātus esset. Nam cum quīdam ex eius assentātōribus,¹ Dāmoclēs,² commemorāret³ cōpiās eius, maiestātem⁴ dominātūs, rērum abundantiam,⁵ negāretque quemquam⁶ umquam beātiorē fuisse, Dionysius “Vīsne igitur,” inquit, “Ō Dāmocle, ipse hanc vītā
5 dēgustāre⁷ et fortūnam meam experīrī?” Cum ille sē cupere dīxisset, hominem in aureō⁸ lectō⁹ collocārī¹⁰ iussit mēnsāsque ōrnāvit argentō¹¹ aurōque.¹² Tum puerōs bellōs iussit cēnam exquisītissimā¹³ īferre. Fortūnātus sibi Dāmoclēs vidēbātur. Eōdem autem tempore Dionysius gladium suprā¹⁴ caput eius saetā equinā¹⁵ dēmīttī¹⁶ iussit. Dāmoclēs, cum gladium vīdisset, timēns
10 ōrāvit tyrannum ut eī abire liceret, quod iam “beātus” nōllet esse. Satisne Dionysius videtur dēmōnstrāvisse nihil esse eī beātum cui semper aliquī¹⁷ metus impendeat?¹⁸ (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.20.61–62)

5. DERIVATION OF “PHILOSOPHUS” AND SUBJECTS OF PHILOSOPHY

Eī quī studia in contemplātiōne¹ rērum pōnēbant “sapientēs” appellābantur, et id nōmen ūsque ad Pŷthagorae² aetātem mānāvit.³ Hunc aiunt doctē et cōpiōsē⁴ quaedam cum Leonte⁵ disputāvisse⁶; et Leōn, cum illiūs

⁶ dominātus, -ūs, absolute rule or power

⁷ carcer, -eris, *m.*, prison

⁸ inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut in

⁹ quīn etiam, moreover

¹⁰ tōnsor, -ōris, barber

¹¹ collum, -ī, neck

¹² doceō may take two objects.

¹³ tondēō, -ēre, totondī, tōnsum, shear, clip

¹⁴ barba, -ae, beard

¹⁵ capillus, -ī, hair

¹⁶ adultus, -a, -um

¹⁷ carbō, -ōnis, *m.*, glowing coal

¹⁸ adūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, singe

VOCABULARY: temperantia, iniūstus, inclūdō, removēō.

4

¹ assentātōr, -ōris, flatterer, “yes-man”

² Dāmoclēs, -is

³ commemorō (1), mention, recount

⁴ maiestās, -tātis, greatness

⁵ abundantia, -ae

⁶ quisquam, quidquam, anyone, anything

⁷ dēgustō (1), taste, try

⁸ aureus, -a, -um, golden

⁹ lectus, -ī, couch

¹⁰ col-locō, place

¹¹ argentum, -ī, silver

¹² aurum, -ī, gold

¹³ exquisītus, -a, -um: ex-quaesītus

¹⁴ suprā, adv. and prep. + acc., above

¹⁵ saetā equinā, by a horsehair

¹⁶ dēmīttō, let down

¹⁷ aliquī, -qua, -quod, adj. of aliquis

¹⁸ impendēō, -ēre, hang over, threaten

VOCABULARY: quisquam, collocō, aurum, suprā.

5

¹ contemplātiō, -ōnis

² Pŷthagorās, -ae, *m.*

³ mānō (1), flow, extend

⁴ cōpiōsē, fully

⁵ Leōn, -ontis, ruler of Phlius

⁶ disputō (1), discuss

- ingenium et ēloquentiam⁷ admīrātus esset,⁸ quaesīvit ex eō quā arte maximē
 5 ūterētur. At ille dīxit sē artem nūllam scīre sed esse philosophum. Tum Leōn,
 admīrātus novum nōmen, quaesīvit quī essent philosophī. Pŷthagorās re-
 spondit multōs hominēs glōriāe aut pecūniae servīre sed paucōs quōsdam
 esse quī cētera prō nihilō⁹ habērent sed nātūram rērum cognōscere cuperent;
 hōs sē appellāre “studiōsōs¹⁰ sapientiae,” id est enim “philosophōs.”¹¹ Sīc
 10 Pŷthagorās huius nōminis inventor¹² fuit.

Ab antīquā philosophiā ūsque ad Sōcratem¹³ philosophī numerōs et
 sīdera tractābant¹⁴ et unde omnia orīrentur¹⁵ et quō discēderent. Sōcratēs
 autem prīmus philosophiam dēvocāvit ē caelō et in urbibus hominibusque
 collocāvit et coēgit eam dē vītā et mōribus rēbusque bonīs et malīs quaerere.
 (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.3.8–9; 5.4.10)

6. CICERO ON THE VALUE AND THE NATURE OF FRIENDSHIP

- Ego vōs hortor ut amīcitiam omnibus rēbus hūmānīs antepōnātis. Sen-
 tiō equidem,¹ exceptā² sapientiā, nihil melius hominī ā deīs immortālibus
 datum esse. Dīvitias alīi antepōnunt; alīi, salūtem; alīi, potestātem³; alīi,
 honōrēs; multī, etiam voluptātēs. Illa autem incerta sunt, posita nōn tam
 5 in cōsiliīs nostrīs quam in fortūnae vicissitudinibus.⁴ Quī autem in virtūte
 summum bonum pōnunt, bene illī quidem faciunt; sed ex ipsā virtūte amī-
 citia nāscitur nec sine virtūte amīcitia esse potest.

- Dēnique cēterae rēs, quae petuntur, opportūnae⁵ sunt rēbus singulīs⁶:
 dīvitiae, ut eīs ūtāris; honōrēs, ut laudēris; salūs, ut dolōre careās et rēbus
 10 corporis ūtāris. Amīcitia rēs plūrimās continet; nūllō locō excluditur⁷; num-
 quam intempestīva,⁸ numquam molesta⁹ est. Itaque nōn aquā, nōn igne in
 locīs plūribus ūtimur quam amīcitīā; nam amīcitia secundās rēs clārīorēs
 facit et adversās rēs leviōrēs.

- Quis est quī velit in omnium rērum abundantīā ita¹⁰ vīvere ut neque dīligat
 15 quemquam¹¹ neque ipse ab ūllō dīligatur? Haec enim est tyrannōrum vītā,
 in quā nūlla fidēs, nūlla cārītās,¹² nūlla benevolentia¹³ potest esse; omnia
 semper metuuntur, nūllus locus est amīcitiae. Quis enim aut eum dīligat¹⁴
 quem metuat aut eum ā quō sē metuī putet? Multī autem sī cecidērunt, ut

⁷ ēloquentia, -ae

⁸ admīror (1), wonder at, admire

⁹ nihilum, -ī, = nihil

¹⁰ studiōsus, -a, -um, fond of

¹¹ philosophus: *Greek* philos, fond of, + sophia, wisdom

¹² inventor, -ōris, *cp.* inveniō

¹³ Sōcratēs, -is

¹⁴ tractō (1), handle, investigate, treat

¹⁵ orior, -īrī, ortus sum, arise, proceed, originate

VOCABULARY: admīror, orior, quō, collocō.

² excipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, except

³ potestās, -tātis, power

⁴ vicissitudō, -inis

⁵ opportūnus, -a, -um, suitable

⁶ singulus, -a, -um, single, separate

⁷ excludō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum

⁸ intempestīvus, -a, -um, unseasonable

⁹ molestus, -a, -um, troublesome

¹⁰ abundantia, -ae

¹¹ quemquam, *L. A.* 4, n. 6

¹² cārītās, -tātis, affection

¹³ bene-volentia, -ae, goodwill

¹⁴ deliberative subjunctive, would esteem

¹ equidem, indeed

saepe fit, tum intellegunt quam inopēs¹⁵ amīcōrum fuerint. Quid vērō stultius quam cētera parāre quae parantur pecūniā sed amīcōs nōn parāre, optimam et pulcherrimam quasi supellectilem¹⁶ vītae?

Quisque ipse sē dīligit nōn ut aliam mercēdem¹⁷ ā sē ipse petat sed quod per sē quisque sibi cārus est. Nisi idem in amīcitiā trānsferētur,¹⁸ vērus amīcus numquam reperiētur. Amīcus enim est is quī est tamquam alter īdem.

Ipse sē dīligit et alterum quaerit cuius animum ita cum suō misceat ut faciat ūnum ex duōbus. Quid enim dulcius quam habēre quīcum¹⁹ audeās sīc loquī ut tēcum? (Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā*, excerpts from Chs. 5, 6, 15, 21)

7. CICERO ON WAR

Quaedam officia sunt servanda etiam adversus¹ eōs ā quibus iniūriam accēpimus. Atque in rē pūblicā maximē cōnservanda sunt iūra bellī. Nam sunt duo genera dēcertandī²: ūnum per disputātiōnem,³ alterum per vim. Illud est proprium⁴ hominis, hoc bēluārum⁵; sed bellum vī gerendum est sī disputātiōne ūtī nōn licet. Quārē suscipienda quidem bella sunt ut sine iniūriā in pāce vīvāmus; post autem victōriam eī cōnservandī sunt quī nōn crūdēlēs,⁶ nōn dūrī in bellō fuērunt, ut maiōrēs nostrī Sabīnōs⁷ in cīvitatē etiam accēpērunt. At Carthāginem omnīnō sustulērunt; etiam Corinthum sustulērunt—quod nōn approbō⁸; sed crēdō eōs hoc fēcisse nē locus ipse ad bellum faciendum hortārī posset. Meā quidem sententiā,⁹ pāx quae nihil īnsidiārum habeat semper quaerenda est. Ac aequitās¹⁰ bellī fētiālī¹¹ iūre populī Rōmānī perscrīpta est.¹² Quārē potest intellegī nūllum bellum esse iūstum nisi quod aut rēbus repetītīs¹³ gerātur aut ante dēnūtiātum sit.¹⁴

Nūllum bellum dēbet suscipī ā cīvitate optimā nisi aut prō fidē aut prō salūte. Illa bella sunt iniūsta quae sine causā sunt suscepta. Nam extrā¹⁵ ulcīscendī¹⁶ aut prōpulsandōrum¹⁷ hostium causam nūllum bellum cum aequitāte¹⁸ gerī potest. Noster autem populus sociīs¹⁹ dēfendēdis terrārum²⁰

¹⁵ inops, -opis, *adj.*, bereft of

¹⁶ supellex, -lectilis, *f.*, furniture

¹⁷ mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*, pay, reward

¹⁸ trāns-ferō, transfer, direct

¹⁹ habēre quīcum = habēre eum cum quō

VOCABULARY: equidem, potestās, quisquam, trānsferō.

⁷ Sabīnī, -ōrum

⁸ approbō (1), approve

⁹ sententiā: *abl. here expressing accordance*

¹⁰ aequitās, -tātis, fairness, justice

¹¹ fētiālīs, -e, fetial, referring to a college of priests who were concerned with treaties and the ritual of declaring war

¹² per-scrībō, write out, place on record

¹³ re-petō, seek again

¹⁴ dēnūtiō (1), declare officially

¹⁵ extrā, *prep. + acc.*, beyond

¹⁶ ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum, avenge, punish

¹⁷ prōpulsō (1), repel

¹⁸ aequitās, -tātis, fairness

¹⁹ socius, -iī, ally

²⁰ terrārum: *depends on potius est*

¹ adversus, *prep. + acc.*, toward

² dēcertō (1), fight (to a decision)

³ disputātiō, -ōnis, discussion

⁴ proprius, -a, -um, characteristic of

⁵ bēlua, -ae, wild beast

⁶ crūdēlis, -e, cruel

omnium potītus est.²¹ (Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* 1.11.34–36 and *Dē Rē Publicā* 3.23.34–35)

8. HANNIBAL; THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

Hannibal,¹ fīlius Hamilcaris,² Carthāgine nātus est. Odium patris ergā Rōmānōs sīc cōservāvit ut numquam id dēpōneret.³ Nam post bellum Pūnicum,⁴ cum ex patriā in exsilium expulsus esset, nōn relīquit studium bellī Rōmānīs īnferendī.⁵ Quārē, cum in Syriam⁶ vēnisset, Antiochō⁷ rēgī haec
5 locūtus est ut hunc quoque ad bellum cum Rōmānīs indūcere⁸ posset:

“Mē novem annōs nātō, pater meus Hamilcar, in Hispāniam⁹ imperātor proficīscēns Carthāgine, sacrificium¹⁰ dīs fēcīt. Eōdem tempore quaesīvīt ā mē vellemne sēcum proficīscī. Cum id libenter audīvissem et ab eō petere coepissem nē dubitāret mē dūcere, tum ille ‘Faciam,’ inquit, ‘sī mihi fidem
10 quam quaerō dederis.’ Tum mē ad āram¹¹ dūxit et mē iūrāre¹² iussit mē numquam in amīcitiā cum Rōmānīs futūrum esse. Id iūs iūrandum¹³ patrī datum ūsque ad hanc aetātem ita cōservāvī ut nēmō sit quī plūs odiī ergā Rōmānōs habeat.”

Hāc igitur aetāte Hannibal cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est. Post
15 multōs annōs, Hamilcare et Hasdrubale¹⁴ interfectīs, exercitus eī imperium trādīdit. Sīc Hannibal, quīnque et vīgintī annōs nātus, imperātor factus est. Tribus annīs omnēs gentēs Hispāniae superāvīt et trēs exercitūs maximōs parāvīt. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam¹⁵ mīsīt, alterum cum frātre in Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Italiam sēcum dūxit.

20 Ad Alpēs¹⁶ vēnit, quās nēmō umquam ante eum cum exercitū trānsierat. Alpīcōs¹⁷ cōnantēs prohibēre eum trānsitū occīdit¹⁸; loca patefēcīt; itinera mūnīvit¹⁹; effēcīt²⁰ ut²¹ elephantus īre posset quā²² anteā²³ ūnus homō vix²⁴ poterat rēpere.²⁵ Sīc in Italiam pervēnit et, Scīpiōne²⁶ superātō, Etrūriam²⁷

²¹ potior, -irī, potītus sum, + gen. (or abl.), get possession of

VOCABULARY: dēcertō, proprius, crūdēlis, iniūstus, potior.

8

¹ Hannibal, -alis, illustrious general who led the Carthaginian forces against the Romans in the Second Punic (= Carthaginian) War, 218–202 B.C.

² Hamilcar, -aris

³ dē-pōnō

⁴ Pūnicus, -a, -um

⁵ bellum īn-ferō, make war on

⁶ Syria, -ae

⁷ Antiochus, -ī

⁸ in-dūcō

⁹ Hispānia, -ae, Spain

¹⁰ sacrificium, -ī

¹¹ āra, -ae, altar

¹² iūrō (1), swear

¹³ iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n., oath

¹⁴ Hasdrubal, -alis, next in command after Hamilcar

¹⁵ Āfrica, -ae

¹⁶ Alpēs, -ium, f., the Alps

¹⁷ Alpīcī, -ōrum, men of the Alps

¹⁸ occīdō, -ere, occīdī, occīsum, cut down

¹⁹ mūnīō (4), fortify, build

²⁰ efficiō, bring it about, cause

²¹ ut . . . posset: noun cl. of result, obj. of effēcīt

²² quā, adv., where

²³ anteā, adv., before, formerly

²⁴ vix, adv., scarcely

²⁵ rēpō, -ere, rēpsī, rēptum, crawl

²⁶ Scīpiō, -ōnis, father of the Scipio mentioned below

²⁷ Etrūria, -ae, district N. of Rome, Tuscany

petiuit. Hōc in itinere tam gravī morbō²⁸ oculōrum adfectus est²⁹ ut postea
25 numquam dextrō oculō bene ūteretur.

Multōs ducēs exercitūsque Rōmānōs superāvit; longum est omnia proe-
lia³⁰ ēnumerāre.³¹ Post Cannēnsem³² autem pugnam nēmō eī in aciē³³ in
Italiā restitit.³⁴ Cum autem P. Scīpiō tandem³⁵ in Āfricā invāsisset,³⁶ Han-
nibal, ad patriam dēfendendam revocātus, Zamae³⁷ victus est. Sic post tot
30 annōs Rōmānī sē periculō Pūnicō liberāvērunt. (Nepos, *Hannibal*, excerpts)

9. AUTOBIOGRAPHICAL NOTES BY HORACE

Nūlla fors¹ mihi tē, Maecēnās,² obtulit: optimus Vergilius et post hunc
Varius³ dīxērunt quid essem. Ut ad tē vērī, singultim⁴ pauca locūtus (nam
pudor⁵ prohibēbat plūra profārī⁶), ego nōn dīxī mē clārō patre nātum esse
sed narrāvī quod eram. Respondēs,⁷ ut tuus mōs est, pauca. Abeō et post
5 nōnum mēsem⁸ mē revocās iubēsque esse in amīcōrum numerō. Hoc mag-
num esse dūcō, quod⁹ placuī tibi, quī bonōs ā turpibus sēcernis¹⁰ nōn patre
clārō sed vitā et pectore pūrō.¹¹

Atquī¹² sī mea nātūra est mendōsa¹³ vitiis mediocribus ac paucīs sed
aliōquī¹⁴ rēcta,¹⁵ sī neque avāritiam neque sordēs¹⁶ quisquam¹⁷ mihi obiciet,¹⁸
10 sī pūrus sum et īnsōns¹⁹ (ut mē laudem!) et vīvō cārus amīcīs, causa fuit
pater meus. Hic enim, cum pauper in parvō agrō esset, tamen nōluit mē
puerum in lūdum Flāvī²⁰ mittere sed ausus est mē Rōmam ferre ad artēs
discendās quās senātōrēs²¹ suōs filiōs docent. Ipse mihi paedagōgus²² incor-
ruptissimus²³ erat. Mē līberum servāvit nōn solum ab omnī factō sed etiam
15 ab turpī opprobriō.²⁴ Quārē laus illī ā mē dēbētur et grātia²⁵ magna.

²⁸ morbus, -ī, disease

²⁹ adficiō, afflict

³⁰ proelium, -iī, battle

³¹ ēnumerō (1)

³² Cannēnsis pugna, battle at Cannae, where in 216 B.C.
Hannibal cut the Roman army to shreds

³³ aciēs, -ēī, f., battle line

³⁴ resistō, -ere, restitī, + dat., resist

³⁵ tandem, adv., at last, finally

³⁶ invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, go into, invade

³⁷ Zama, -ae, city S. of Carthage in N. Africa

VOCABULARY: occidō, efficiō, quā, antea, vix, proe-
lium, tandem.

9

¹ fors, fortis, f., chance, accident

² Maecēnās, -ātis, Augustus' unofficial prime minister
and Horace's patron

³ Varius, -iī, an epic poet

⁴ singultim, adv., stammeringly

⁵ pudor, -ōris, m., bashfulness, modesty

⁶ profor, -ārī, -ātus sum, speak out

⁷ respondēs, abeō, revocās, iubēs: in vivid narration the
present tense was often used by the Romans with
the force of the perfect. This is called the histori-
cal present.

⁸ mēnsis, -is, m., month

⁹ quod, the fact that

¹⁰ sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, separate

¹¹ pūrus, -a, -um

¹² atquī, conj., and yet

¹³ mendōsus, -a, -um, faulty

¹⁴ aliōquī, adv., otherwise

¹⁵ rēctus, -a, -um, straight, right

¹⁶ sordēs, -ium, f., filth

¹⁷ quisquam, anyone

¹⁸ ob-iciō, cast in one's teeth

¹⁹ īnsōns, -ntis, guiltless

²⁰ Flāvius, -iī, teacher in Horace's small home town of
Venusia

²¹ senātor, -ōris

²² paedagōgus, -ī, slave who attended a boy at school

²³ in-corruptus, -a, -um, uncorrupted

²⁴ opprobrium, -iī, reproach

²⁵ grātia, -ae, gratitude

Sīc Rōmae nūtrītus sum²⁶ atque doctus sum quantum²⁷ īrātus Achillēs Graecīs nocuisset. Deinde bonae Athēnae mihi plūs artis adiēcērunt,²⁸ scīlicet²⁹ ut vellem rēctum ā curvō³⁰ distinguere³¹ atque inter silvās³² Acadēmī³³ quaerere vērītātem. Sed dūra tempora mē illō locō grātō ēmōvērunt et aestus³⁴ cīvīlis³⁵ bellī mē tulit in arma Brūtī.³⁶ Tum post bellum Philippēnsē³⁷ dīmīssus sum³⁸ et audāx³⁹ paupertās mē humilem et pauperem coēgit versūs facere. (Horace, *Saturae* 1.6 and *Epistulae* 2.2; excerpts in prose form)

10. HORACE LONGS FOR THE SIMPLE, PEACEFUL COUNTRY LIFE ON HIS SABINE FARM

Ō rūs, quandō tē aspiciam?¹ Quandō mihi licēbit nunc librīs veterum auctōrum, nunc somnō et ōtiō ūtī sine cūrīs sollicitae² vītāe? Ō noctēs cēnaeque deōrum! Sermō³ oritur⁴ nōn dē villīs⁵ et domibus aliēnis⁶; sed id quaerimus quod magis ad nōs pertinet⁷ et nescīre malum est: utrum dīvitiīs
5 an virtūte hominēs fīant beātī; quid nōs ad amīcitiam trahat, ūsus⁸ an rēctum⁹; et quae sit nātūra bonī¹⁰ et quid sit summum bonum.

Inter haec Cervius¹¹ fābulam narrat. Mūs¹² rūsticus,¹³ impulsus¹⁴ ab urbānō mūre, domō rūsticā ad urbem abiit ut, dūrā vītā relictā, in rēbus iūcundīs cum illō vīveret beātus. Mox, autem, multa perīcula urbāna expertus,
10 rūsticus “Haec vītā,” inquit, “nōn est mihi necessāria.¹⁵ Valē; mihi silva¹⁶ cavusque¹⁷ tūtus¹⁸ ab īnsidiīs placēbit.” (Horace, *Saturae* 2.6, excerpts in prose form)

²⁶ nūtrīō (4), nourish, bring up

²⁷ quantum, acc. as adv.

²⁸ ad-iciō, add

²⁹ scīlicet (scīre-licet), naturally, of course, clearly, namely

³⁰ curvus, -a, -um, curved, wrong

³¹ distinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, distinguish

³² silva, -ae, wood, forest

³³ Acadēmus, -ī; Plato used to teach in the grove of Acadēmus.

³⁴ aestus, -ūs, tide

³⁵ cīvīlis, -e; after the assassination of Julius Caesar on the Ides of March, 44 B.C., civil war ensued between the Caesarians, led by Antony and Octavian, and the “Republicans,” led by Brutus and Cassius.

³⁶ Brūtus, -ī

³⁷ Philippēnsis, -e, adj., at Philippi, where in 42 B.C. Brutus was defeated

³⁸ dī-mittō, discharge

³⁹ audāx, -ācis, daring, bold

VOCABULARY: scērnō, quisquam, grātia, silva, audāx.

10

¹ aspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectrum, look at, see

² sollicitus, -a, -um, troubled, anxious

³ sermō, -ōnis, m., conversation

⁴ orior, L.A. 5 n. 15

⁵ villa, -ae

⁶ aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another

⁷ per-tineō, pertain

⁸ ūsus, -ūs, advantage

⁹ rēctum, -ī, the right

¹⁰ bonum, -ī, the good

¹¹ Cervius, -ī, a rustic friend

¹² mūs, mūris, mlf., mouse

¹³ rūsticus, -a, -um, rustic, country

¹⁴ im-pellō, urge, persuade

¹⁵ necessārius, -a, -um

¹⁶ silva, -ae, forest

¹⁷ cavus, -ī, hole

¹⁸ tūtus, -a, -um, safe

VOCABULARY: aspiciō, orior, silva, tūtus.

11. WHY NO LETTERS?

C.¹ Plīnius Fabiō² Suō S.³

Mihi nullās epistulās⁴ mittis. “Nihil est,” inquis, “quod scrībam.” At hoc ipsum scrībe: nihil esse quod scrībās; vel⁵ illa verba sōla ā quibus maiōrēs nostrī incipere solēbant: “Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō.” Hoc mihi sufficit⁶; est enim maximum. Mē lūdere⁷ putās? Sēriō⁸ petō. Fac ut sciam quid agās.

5 Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 1.11)

12. WHAT PLINY THINKS OF THE RACES

C. Plīnius Calvisiō¹ Suō S.

Hoc omne tempus inter tabellās² ac libellōs iūcundissimā quiēte³ cōn-sūmpsī. “Quemadmodum,⁴” inquis, “in urbe potuisti?” Circēnsēs⁵ erant quō genere spectāculū⁶ nē levissimē quidem teneor. Nihil novum, nihil varium,⁷ nihil quod semel spectāvisse nōn sufficiat.⁸ Quārē mīror tot mīlia virōrum

5 tam puerīliter⁹ identidem¹⁰ cupere currentēs equōs vidēre. Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 9.6)

13. PLINY ENDOWS A SCHOOL

Nūper cum Cōmī¹ fuī, vēnit ad mē salūtandum² fīlius amīcī cuiusdam. Huic ego “Studēs?” inquam. Respondit: “Etiam.” “Ubi?” “Mediolānī.” “Cūr nōn hīc?” Et pater eius, quī ipse puerum ad mē addūxerat, respondit: “Quod nullōs magistrōs hīc habēmus.” Huic aliīsque patribus quī audiēbant

5 ego: “Quārē nullōs?” inquam. “Nam ubi iūcundius liberī⁴ vestrī discere pos-sunt quam hīc in urbe vestrā et sub oculīs patrum? Atque ego, quī nōndum⁵ liberōs habēō, prō rē publicā nostrā quasi prō parente tertiam partem eius pecūniae dabō quam cōnferre vōbīs placēbit. Nihil enim melius praestāre liberīs vestrīs, nihil grātius patriae potestis.” (Pliny, *Epistulae* 4.13)

11

¹ C. = Gāius² Fabius, -ī³ S. = salūtem (dīcit)⁴ epistula, -ae, letter⁵ vel, or, an optional alternative; aut means or without any option⁶ sufficiō, be sufficient⁷ lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum, play, jest⁸ sēriō, adv., seriously

VOCABULARY: vel.

12

¹ Calvisius, -ī² tabella, -ae, writing pad³ quiēs, -ētis, f., quiet⁴ quem-ad-modum, adv., how⁵ Circēnsēs (lūdī), games, races in the Circus Maximus⁶ spectāculum, -ī⁷ varius, -a, -um, different⁸ sufficiō, suffice⁹ puerīliter, adv., based on puer¹⁰ identidem, repeatedly

VOCABULARY: quiēs, quemadmodum, varius.

13

¹ Cōmum, -ī, Como, Pliny's birthplace in N. Italy² salūtō (1), greet³ Mediolānum, -ī, Milan⁴ liberī, -ōrum, children⁵ nōndum, adv., not yet

VOCABULARY: nūper, liberī, nōndum.

14. LARGE GIFTS—YES, BUT ONLY BAIT

“Mūnera¹ magna tamen mīsīt.” Sed mīsīt in hāmō²;
et piscātōrem³ piscis⁴ amāre potest? (Martial 6.63.5–6)

15. THE LORD’S PRAYER

Et cum ōrātis nōn eritis sicut¹ hypocritae,² quī amant in synagōgīs³ et in angulīs⁴ plateārum⁵ stantēs ōrāre ut videantur ab hominibus: āmēn⁶ dīcō vōbīs, recēpērunt mercēdem⁷ suam. Tū autem cum ōrābis, intrā⁸ in cubiculum⁹ tuum et, clausō¹⁰ ōstiō¹¹ tuō, ōrā Patrem tuum in absconditō¹²; et Pater tuus quī videt in absconditō reddet¹³ tibi. . . . Sic ergō¹⁴ vōs ōrābitis: Pater noster quī es in caelīs, sānctificētur¹⁵ nōmen tuum; adveniat rēgnum¹⁶ tuum; fīat voluntās¹⁷ tua sicut in caelō et¹⁸ in terrā. Pānem¹⁹ nostrum supersubstantiālem²⁰ dā nōbis hodiē, et dimitte²¹ nōbīs dēbita²² nostra, sicut et nōs dimittimus dēbitōribus²³ nostrīs; et nē inducās nōs in temptātiōnem²⁴; sed liberā nōs ā malō. (*Vulgate, Matthew 6.5–6, 9–13*)

16. CAEDMON’S ANGLO-SAXON VERSES
AND THE DIFFICULTIES OF TRANSLATION

Cum Caedmon¹ corpus somnō dedisset, angelus² Dominī ēī dormienti “Caedmon,” inquit, “cantā³ mihi prīncipium creatūrārum.”⁴ Et statim⁵ coepit cantāre in laudem Deī creatōris⁶ versūs quōs numquam audīverat, quōrum hic est sēnsus: “Nunc laudāre dēbēmus auctōrem rēgni⁷ caelestis,⁸ po-

14

METER: elegiac couplet.

¹ mūnus, mūneris, *n.*, gift² hāmus, -ī, hook³ piscātor, -ōris, fisherman⁴ piscis, -is, *m.*, fish

VOCABULARY: mūnus.

15

¹ sicut, just as² hypocrita, -ae, *m.*, hypocrite³ synagōga, -ae, synagogue⁴ angulus, -ī, corner⁵ platea, -ae, street⁶ āmēn, *adv.*, truly, verily⁷ mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*, wages, reward⁸ intrō (1), enter⁹ cubiculum, -ī, bedroom, room¹⁰ claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, close¹¹ ōstium, -īī, door¹² in absconditō, in (a) secret (place)¹³ red-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, give back, answer, re-
quite¹⁴ ergō, *adv.*, therefore¹⁵ sānctificiō (1), treat as holy¹⁶ rēgnum, -ī, kingdom¹⁷ voluntās, -tātis, will, wish¹⁸ et, also¹⁹ pānis, -is, *m.*, bread²⁰ supersubstantiālis, -e, necessary to the support of
life²¹ dī-mittō, send away, dismiss²² dēbitum, -ī, *n.*, that which is owing, debt (*figura-*
tively) = sin²³ dēbitor, -ōris, one who lit. or fig. owes something,
and so one who has not yet fulfilled his duty²⁴ temptātiō, -ōnisVOCABULARY: sicut, claudō, reddō, ergō, rēgnum,
voluntās.

16

¹ Caedmon, Anglo-Saxon poet of the 7th cen.² angelus, -ī, angel³ cantō (1), sing⁴ creatūra, -ae, creature⁵ statim, immediately⁶ creatōr, -ōris⁷ rēgnum, -ī, kingdom⁸ caelestis, -e, *adj.* of caelum

- 5 testātem⁹ creatōris et cōnsilium illius, facta Patris glōriae, quī, omnipotēns¹⁰ custōs¹¹ hūmānī generis, fīliis hominum caelum et terram creāvit.” Hic est sēnsus, nōn autem ōrdō¹² ipse verbōrum quae dormiēns ille cantāvit; neque enim possunt carmina, quamvīs¹³ optimē composita,¹⁴ ex aliā in aliam linguam ad verbum¹⁵ sine dētrīmentō¹⁶ suī decōris¹⁷ ac dignitātis trānsferri.¹⁸ (Bede, *Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglōrum* 4.24; 8th cen.)

17. WHO WILL PUT THE BELL ON THE CAT'S NECK?

- Mūrēs¹ iniērunt cōnsilium quō modō sē ā cattō² dēfendere possent et quaedam sapientior quam cēterae ait: “Ligētur³ campāna⁴ in collō⁵ cattī. Sīc poterimus eum eiusque īnsidiās vītāre.” Placuit omnibus hoc cōnsilium, sed alia mūs “Quis igitur,” inquit, “est inter nōs tam audāx⁶ ut campānam in collō cattī ligāre audeat?” Respondit ūna mūs: “Certē nōn ego.” Respondit alia: “Certē nōn ego audeō prō tōtō mundō cattō ipsī appropinquāre.” Et idem cēterae dīxērunt.

- Sīc saepe hominēs, cum quendam āmovendum esse arbitrantur et contrā eum insurgere⁸ volunt, inter sē dīcunt: “Quis appōnet sē contrā eum? Quis accūsābit⁹ eum?” Tum omnēs, sibi timentēs, dīcunt: “Nōn ego certē! Nec ego!” Sīc illum vīvere patiuntur. (Odo de Cerinton, *Narratiōnēs*, 12th cen.)

18. THE DEVIL AND A THIRTEENTH-CENTURY SCHOOLBOY

- In illā ecclēsīā¹ erat scholāris² parvus. Cum hic diē quādam³ versūs compōnere ex eā māteriā⁴ ā magistrō datā nōn posset et trīstis sedēret, diabolus⁵ in fōrmā hominis vēnit. Cum dīxisset: “Quid est, puer? Cūr sīc trīstis sedēs?” respondit puer: “Magistrum meum timeō quod versūs compōnere nōn possum dē themate⁶ quod ab eō recēpī.” Et ille: “Vīsne mihi servīre sī ego versūs tibi compōnam?” Puer, nōn intelligēns quod⁷ ille esset diabolus, respondit: “Etiam, domine, parātus sum facere quidquid iusseris—dummodo versūs

⁹ potestās, -tātis, power

¹⁰ omni-potēns

¹¹ custōs, -tōdis, guardian

¹² ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, order

¹³ quamvīs, although

¹⁴ com-pōnō, put together, compose

¹⁵ ad verbum, to a word, literally

¹⁶ dētrīmentum, -ī, loss

¹⁷ decor, -ōris, *m.*, beauty

¹⁸ trāns-ferō

VOCABULARY: statim, rēgnum, potestās, custōs, ōrdō, compōnō.

17

¹ mūs, mūrīs, *m.f.*, mouse

² cattus, -ī (late Lat. for fēles, -is), cat

³ ligō (1), bind

⁴ campāna, -ae (late Lat. for tintinnābulum), bell

⁵ collum, -ī, neck

⁶ audāx, -ācis, *adj.* of audeō

⁷ appropinquō (1), + dat., approach

⁸ īnsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, rise up

⁹ accūsō (1)

VOCABULARY: audāx, appropinquō.

18

¹ ecclēsīa, -ae, church

² scholāris, -is, scholar

³ diē quādam: diēs is sometimes *f.*, especially when referring to a specific day.

⁴ māteria, -ae, material

⁵ diabolus, -ī, devil

⁶ thema, -atis, *n.*, theme, subject

⁷ quod, that, introducing an indirect statement, common in Medieval Lat.

habeam et verbera⁸ vitem.” Tum, versibus statim⁹ dictātis,¹⁰ diabolus abiit. Cum puer autem hōs versūs magistrō suō dedisset, hic, excellentiam¹¹ versuum mīrātus, timuit, dūcēns scientiam in illīs dīvinam,¹² nōn hūmānam. Et
 10 ait: “Dīc mihi, quis tibi hōs versūs dictāvit?” Prīmum puer respondit: “Ego, magister!” Magistrō autem nōn crēdente et verbum interrogātiōnis¹³ saepius repetente, puer omnia tandem¹⁴ cōfessus est.¹⁵ Tum magister “Fīlī,” inquit, “ille versificātor¹⁶ fuit diabolus. Cārissime, semper illum sēductōrem¹⁷ et eius
 15 opera cavē.¹⁸” Et puer diabolū eiusque opera relīquit. (Caesar of Heisterbach, *Mīrācula* 2.14; 13th cen.)

⁸ verbera, -um, *n.*, blows, a beating

⁹ statim, immediately

¹⁰ dictō (1), dictate

¹¹ excellentia, -ae

¹² dīvinus, -a, -um; dīvinam *is pred. acc.*

¹³ interrogātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

¹⁴ tandem, at last

¹⁵ cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum

¹⁶ versificātor, -ōris, versifier

¹⁷ sēductor, -ōris, seducer

¹⁸ caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, beware, avoid

VOCABULARY: statim, tandem, cōnfiteor, caveō.

Locī Immūtātī

The *Locī Immūtātī* are offered for those who may finish all the *Locī Antīquī* and wish to try their wits on some unaltered classical Latin.

These passages are straight Latin, unchanged except for omissions, which have been regularly indicated by three dots. Naturally this genuinely literary material had to be rather heavily annotated, but more in the matter of vocabulary than in other respects. As in the case of the *Locī Antīquī*, words appearing here that have not been introduced in the regular chapter vocabularies are glossed at their first one or two occurrences, and most are also included in the Latin-English Vocabulary at the end of the book for easy reference. New grammatical principles have been treated as they occur, either by a brief statement in the notes or by reference to the Appendix.

1. A DEDICATION

Cui dōnō¹ lepidum² novum libellum

āridō³ modo⁴ pūmice⁵ expolītum⁶?

Cornēlī,⁷ tibi, namque⁸ tū solēbās

meās esse aliquid putāre nūgās,⁹

5 iam tum cum ausus es ūnus Italōrum¹⁰

1

METER: Phalaecean, or hendecasyllabic.

¹ dōnō (1), (= dō), present, dedicate

² lepidus, -a, -um, pleasant, neat

³ āridus, -a, -um, dry, arid

⁴ modo, adv., just now

⁵ pūmex, -icis, m., pumice stone. *The ends of a volume were smoothed with pumice.*

⁶ expoliō (4), smooth, polish

⁷ Cornelius Nepos, biographer and historian; see Introd.

⁸ strong form of nam = for (indeed, surely)

⁹ nūgae, -ārum, trifles, nonsense

¹⁰ Itali, -ōrum, the Italians; initial i- long here for meter. *This work, now lost, was apparently less annalistic than most histories by Romans.*

omne aevum¹¹ tribus explicāre¹² chartīs,¹³
 doctīs, Iuppiter, et labōriōsīs.¹⁴
 Quārē habē tibi quidquid hoc libellī¹⁵
 quālecumque,¹⁵ quod, Ō patrōna¹⁶ virgō,
 10 plūs ūnō maneat¹⁷ perenne¹⁸ saeculō.¹⁹
 (Catullus 1)

2. HOW MANY KISSES¹

Quaeris quot mihi bāsiātiōnēs²
 tuae, Lesbia, sint satis superque.³
 Quam magnus numerus Libyssae⁴ harēnae⁵
 laserpīciferīs⁶ iacet Cyrēnīs,⁷
 . . .
 5 aut quam sīdera multa, cum tacet nox,
 fūrtīvōs⁸ hominum vident amōrēs,
 tam tē⁹ bāsia multa bāsiāre¹⁰
 vēsānō¹¹ satis et super Catullō est.
 (Catullus 7.1–4, 7–10)

3. DEATH OF A PET SPARROW

Lūgēte,¹ Ō Venerēs² Cupīdinēsque³
 et quantum est hominum⁴ venustīōrum⁵!
 Passer⁶ mortuus est meae puellae,
 passer, dēliciae⁷ meae puellae,

¹¹ aevum, -ī, time

¹² explicō (1), unfold, explain

¹³ charta, -ae, leaf of (papyrus) paper; here = volume

¹⁴ labōriōsus, -a, -um, laborious

¹⁵ libellī, gen. of whole; lit. whatever kind of book this is of whatsoever sort; i.e., this book such as it is.
 quālescūque, quālecūque, of whatever sort or kind

¹⁶ patrōna, -ae, protectress; protectress maiden (virgō) = Muse

¹⁷ let or may it remain

¹⁸ perennis, -e, lasting, perennial

¹⁹ saeculum, syncopated form of saeculum, -ī, age, century

2

METER: Phalaecean.

¹ This poem is obviously a companion piece to Catullus 5 (see ch. 31).

² bāsiātiō, -ōnis, f., kiss

³ and to spare, and more

⁴ Libyssus, -a, -um, Libyan

⁵ harēna, -ae, sand (cp. arena)

⁶ laserpīcifer, -a, -um, bearing laserpicium, a medicinal plant

⁷ Cŷrēnae, -ārum, Cyrene, city of North Africa; short y here for meter.

⁸ fūrtīvus, -a, -um, stealthy, furtive (fūr, thief)

⁹ subject of bāsiāre

¹⁰ bāsiō (1), to kiss kisses = to give kisses; bāsiāre is subject of est satis.

¹¹ vēsānus, -a, -um, mad, insane

3

METER: Phalaecean.

¹ lūgēō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctum, mourn, grieve

² Venus, -eris, f., Venus; here pl. as Cupīdinēs is.

³ Cupīdō, -inis, m., Cupid, often in the pl. as is Greek Eros and as we see in art.

⁴ gen. of whole with quantum: how much of people there is = all the people there are

⁵ venustus, -a, -um, charming, graceful; venustīōrum = more charming than ordinary men

⁶ passer, -eris, m., sparrow (a bird which, incidentally, was sacred to Venus)

⁷ dēliciae, -ārum, f. pl., delight, darling, pet

- 5 quem plūs illa oculīs suīs amābat.
 Nam mellītus⁸ erat, suamque nōrat⁹
 ipsam¹⁰ tam bene quam puella mātrem;
 nec sēsē¹¹ ā gremiō¹² illius movēbat,
 sed circumsiliēns¹³ modo hūc¹⁴ modo illūc¹⁵
 10 ad sōlam dominam ūsque pīpiābat.¹⁶
 Quī¹⁷ nunc it per iter tenebricōsum¹⁸
 illūc unde negant redīre quemquam.¹⁹
 At vōbīs male sit, malae tenebrae²⁰
 Orcī,²¹ quae omnia bella dēvorātis;²²
 15 tam bellum mihi²³ passerem abstulistis.²⁴
 Ō factum male! Iō²⁵ miselle²⁶ passer!
 Tuā nunc operā²⁷ meae puellae
 flendō²⁸ turgidulī²⁹ rubent³⁰ ocellī.³¹

(Catullus 3)

4. FRĀTER AVĒ, ATQUE VALĒ¹

Multās per gentēs et multa per aequora² vectus³
 adveniō hās miserās, frāter, ad īferiās,⁴
 ut tē postrēmō⁵ dōnārem⁶ mūnere⁷ mortis
 et mūtā⁸ nēquīquam⁹ adloquerer¹⁰ cinerem,¹¹

⁸ mellītus, -a, -um, sweet as honey⁹ contracted form = nōverat (from nōscō)¹⁰ suam . . . ipsam, its very own (mistress)¹¹ sēsē = sē (acc.)¹² gremium, -ī, lap¹³ circumsiliō (4), jump around¹⁴ hūc, adv., hither, to this place¹⁵ illūc, adv., thither, to that place¹⁶ pīpiō (1), chirp¹⁷ quī = et hic, conjunctive use of the relative at the beginning of a sentence¹⁸ tenebricōsus, -a, -um, dark, gloomy¹⁹ L. A. 4 n. 6.²⁰ tenebrae, -ārum, f., darkness²¹ Orcus, -ī, m., Orcus, the underworld²² dēvorō (1), devour, consume²³ dative of separation²⁴ auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, take away²⁵ iō, exclamation of pain, oh!, or of joy, hurrah!²⁶ misellus, -a, -um, diminutive of miser, wretched, poor, unhappy; a colloquial word²⁷ tuā operā, thanks to you: opera, -ae, work, pains, effort²⁸ fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum, weep²⁹ turgidulus, -a, -um, (somewhat) swollen³⁰ rubeō, -ēre, be red³¹ ocellus, -ī, diminutive of oculus

4

METER: elegiac couplet.

¹ Catullus journeyed to Bithynia on the staff of Memmius, the governor, apparently for two prime reasons. He undoubtedly wanted to get away from Rome in order to regain his equilibrium and fortitude after his final break with the notorious Lesbia. The present poem shows that he also deeply desired to carry out the final funeral rites for his dearly beloved brother, who had died in a foreign land far from his loved ones.

² aequor, -oris, n., flat surface, the sea³ vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, carry⁴ īferiae, -ārum, f., offerings in honor of the dead⁵ postrēmus, -a, -um, last⁶ dōnō (1), present you with; cp. the idiom in L. I. 1 line 1.⁷ mūnus, -eris, n., service, gift⁸ mūtus, -a, -um, mute, silent⁹ adv., in vain¹⁰ ad-loquor, address¹¹ cinis, cineris, m. but occasionally f. as here, ashes (cp. incinerator)

- 5 quandoquidem¹² fortūna mihī¹³ tētē¹⁴ abstulit¹⁵ ipsum,
 heu miser indignē¹⁶ frāter adempte¹⁷ mihī.
 Nunc tamen intereā¹⁸ haec,¹⁹ prīscō²⁰ quae mōre parentum
 trādita sunt trīstī mūnere ad īferiās,
 accipe frāternō²¹ multum²² mānantia²³ flētū,²⁴
 10 atque in perpetuum,²⁵ frāter, avē²⁶ atque valē.
 (Catullus 101)

5. VITRIOLIC DENUNCIATION¹ OF THE LEADER OF A CONSPIRACY AGAINST THE ROMAN STATE

- Quō ūsque² tandem abūtēre,³ Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? Quam diū etiam
 furor⁴ iste tuus nōs ēlūdet⁵? Quem ad finem sēsē⁶ effrēnāta⁷ iactābit⁸ au-
 dācia⁹? Nihilne¹⁰ tē nocturnum¹¹ praesidium¹² Palātī,¹³ nihil urbis vigiliae,¹⁴
 5 nihil timor populī, nihil concursus¹⁵ bonōrum omnium, nihil hic mūnītissi-
 mus¹⁶ habendī senātūs locus, nihil hōrum ōra¹⁷ vultūsque mōvērunt? Patēre
 tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs? Cōnstrictam¹⁸ iam omnium hōrum scientiā tenērī
 coniūrātiōnem¹⁹ tuam nōn vidēs? Quid proximā,²⁰ quid superiōre²¹ nocte ēge-
 rīs, ubi fuerīs, quōs convocāverīs,²² quid cōsilī cēperīs, quem nostrum²³ ig-
 nōrāre²⁴ arbitrāris?

¹² conj., since

¹³ Dative of separation. Final -ī is long here because of meter.

¹⁴ = tē

¹⁵ L.I. 3 n. 24

¹⁶ adv., undeservedly

¹⁷ adimō, -ere, adēmī, adēptum, take away; adēpte, voc. agreeing with frāter

¹⁸ adv., meanwhile

¹⁹ neut. acc. pl., obj. of accipe

²⁰ prīscus, -a, -um, ancient

²¹ frāternus, -a, -um, fraternal, of a brother, a brother's

²² adv. with mānantia

²³ mānō (1), flow, drip with; mānantia modifies haec in line 7.

²⁴ flētus, -ūs, m., weeping, tears

²⁵ forever

²⁶ avē = salvē

sole near Florence.

² how far

³ = abūtēris; ab-ūtōr + abl., abuse

⁴ furor, -ōris, m., madness

⁵ ēlūdō, -ere, ēlūsī, ēlūsum, mock, elude

⁶ quem ad finem = ad quem finem; sēsē = sē

⁷ effrēnātus, -a, -um, unbridled; cp. frēnum, bridle, and the frenum of the upper lip

⁸ iactō (1), frequentative form of iaciō, toss about, vaunt

⁹ audācia, -ae, boldness, audacity

¹⁰ nihil = strong nōn; not at all

¹¹ nocturnus, -a, -um, adj. of nox

¹² praesidium, -iī, n., guard

¹³ Palātium, -ī, n., the Palatine hill. From the sumptuous dwellings on the Palatine comes our word "palace."

¹⁴ vigilia, -ae, f., watch; pl., watchmen, sentinels

¹⁵ concursus, -ūs, m., gathering

¹⁶ mūnītus, -a, -um, fortified

¹⁷ here = expression

¹⁸ cōnstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, bind, curb

¹⁹ coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., conspiracy (a swearing together)

²⁰ proximus, -a, -um, nearest, last (sc. nocte)

²¹ the night before (that)

²² con-vocō

²³ gen. of nōs (Ch. 11)

²⁴ ignōrō (1), be ignorant, not know

¹ For the general situation of this speech see the introductory note to the reading passage in Ch. 30. Since Cicero as yet lacked evidence that would stand in court, this speech is a magnificent example of bluff; but it worked to the extent of forcing Catiline (though not the other leaders of the conspiracy) to leave Rome for his army encamped at Fie-

- 5 quem plūs illa oculīs suīs amābat.
 Nam mellītus⁸ erat, suamque nōrat⁹
 ipsam¹⁰ tam bene quam puella mātrem;
 nec sēsē¹¹ ā gremiō¹² illius movēbat,
 sed circumsiliēns¹³ modo hūc¹⁴ modo illūc¹⁵
 10 ad sōlam dominam ūsque pīpiābat.¹⁶
 Quī¹⁷ nunc it per iter tenebricōsum¹⁸
 illūc unde negant redīre quemquam.¹⁹
 At vōbīs male sit, malae tenebrae²⁰
 Orcī,²¹ quae omnia bella dēvorātis;²²
 15 tam bellum mihi²³ passerem abstulistis.²⁴
 Ō factum male! Iō²⁵ miselle²⁶ passer!
 Tuā nunc operā²⁷ meae puellae
 flendō²⁸ turgidulī²⁹ rubent³⁰ ocellī.³¹

(Catullus 3)

4. FRĀTER AVĒ, ATQUE VALĒ¹

Multās per gentēs et multa per aequora² vectus³
 adveniō hās miserās, frāter, ad īnferiās,⁴
 ut tē postrēmō⁵ dōnārem⁶ mūnere⁷ mortis
 et mūtā⁸ nēquīquam⁹ adloquerer¹⁰ cinerem,¹¹

⁸ mellītus, -a, -um, sweet as honey⁹ contracted form = nōverat (from nōscō)¹⁰ suam . . . ipsam, its very own (mistress)¹¹ sēsē = sē (acc.)¹² gremium, -ī, lap¹³ circumsiliō (4), jump around¹⁴ hūc, adv., hither, to this place¹⁵ illūc, adv., thither, to that place¹⁶ pīpiō (1), chirp¹⁷ quī = et hic, conjunctive use of the relative at the beginning of a sentence¹⁸ tenebricōsus, -a, -um, dark, gloomy¹⁹ L.A. 4 n. 6.²⁰ tenebrae, -ārum, f., darkness²¹ Orcus, -ī, m., Orcus, the underworld²² dēvorō (1), devour, consume²³ dative of separation²⁴ auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, take away²⁵ iō, exclamation of pain, oh!, or of joy, hurrah!²⁶ misellus, -a, -um, diminutive of miser, wretched, poor, unhappy; a colloquial word²⁷ tuā operā, thanks to you: opera, -ae, work, pains, effort²⁸ fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum, weep²⁹ turgidulus, -a, -um, (somewhat) swollen³⁰ rubeō, -ēre, be red³¹ ocellus, -ī, diminutive of oculus

4

METER: elegiac couplet.

¹ Catullus journeyed to Bithynia on the staff of Memmius, the governor, apparently for two prime reasons. He undoubtedly wanted to get away from Rome in order to regain his equilibrium and fortitude after his final break with the notorious Lesbia. The present poem shows that he also deeply desired to carry out the final funeral rites for his dearly beloved brother, who had died in a foreign land far from his loved ones.

² aequor, -oris, n., flat surface, the sea³ vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, carry⁴ īnferiae, -ārum, f., offerings in honor of the dead⁵ postrēmus, -a, -um, last⁶ dōnō (1), present you with; cp. the idiom in L.I. 1 line 1.⁷ mūnus, -eris, n., service, gift⁸ mūtus, -a, -um, mute, silent⁹ adv., in vain¹⁰ ad-loquer, address¹¹ cinis, cineris, m. but occasionally f. as here, ashes (cp. incinerator)

- 5 quandoquidem¹² fortūna mihī¹³ tētē¹⁴ abstulit¹⁵ ipsum,
 heu miser indignē¹⁶ frāter adempte¹⁷ mihī.
 Nunc tamen intereā¹⁸ haec,¹⁹ prīscō²⁰ quae mōre parentum
 trāditā sunt trīstī mūnere ad īferiās,
 accipe frāternō²¹ multum²² mānantia²³ flētū,²⁴
 10 atque in perpetuum,²⁵ frāter, avē²⁶ atque valē.
 (Catullus 101)

5. VITRIOLIC DENUNCIATION¹ OF THE LEADER OF A CONSPIRACY AGAINST THE ROMAN STATE

- Quō ūsque² tandem abūtēre,³ Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? Quam diū etiam
 furor⁴ iste tuus nōs ēlūdet⁵? Quem ad finem sēsē⁶ effrēnāta⁷ iactābit⁸ au-
 dācia⁹? Nihilne¹⁰ tē nocturnum¹¹ praesidium¹² Palātī,¹³ nihil urbis vigiliae,¹⁴
 nihil timor populī, nihil concursus¹⁵ bonōrum omnium, nihil hic mūnītissi-
 5 mus¹⁶ habendī senātūs locus, nihil hōrum ōra¹⁷ vultūque mōvērunt? Patēre
 tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs? Cōnstrictam¹⁸ iam omnium hōrum scientiā tenērī
 coniūrātiōnem¹⁹ tuam nōn vidēs? Quid proximā,²⁰ quid superiōre²¹ nocte ēge-
 rīs, ubi fuerīs, quōs convocāverīs,²² quid cōsilī cēperīs, quem nostrum²³ ig-
 nōrāre²⁴ arbitrāris?

¹² conj., since

¹³ Dative of separation. Final -ī is long here because of meter.

¹⁴ = tē

¹⁵ L.I. 3 n. 24

¹⁶ adv., undeservedly

¹⁷ adimō, -ere, adēmī, adēptum, take away; adēpte, voc. agreeing with frāter

¹⁸ adv., meanwhile

¹⁹ neut. acc. pl., obj. of accipe

²⁰ prīscus, -a, -um, ancient

²¹ frāternus, -a, -um, fraternal, of a brother, a brother's

²² adv. with mānantia

²³ mātō (1), flow, drip with; mānantia modifies haec in line 7.

²⁴ flētus, -ūs, m., weeping, tears

²⁵ forever

²⁶ avē = salvē

sole near Florence.

² how far

³ = abūtēris; ab-ūtor + abl., abuse

⁴ furor, -ōris, m., madness

⁵ ēlūdō, -ere, ēlūsī, ēlūsum, mock, elude

⁶ quem ad finem = ad quem finem; sēsē = sē

⁷ effrēnātus, -a, -um, unbridled; cp. frēnum, bridle, and the frenum of the upper lip

⁸ iactō (1), frequentative form of iaciō, toss about, vaunt

⁹ audācia, -ae, boldness, audacity

¹⁰ nihil = strong nōn; not at all

¹¹ nocturnus, -a, -um, adj. of nox

¹² praesidium, -iī, n., guard

¹³ Palātium, -ī, n., the Palatine hill. From the sumptuous dwellings on the Palatine comes our word "palace."

¹⁴ vigilia, -ae, f., watch; pl., watchmen, sentinels

¹⁵ concursus, -ūs, m., gathering

¹⁶ mūnītus, -a, -um, fortified

¹⁷ here = expression

¹⁸ cōnstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, bind, curb

¹⁹ coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., conspiracy (a swearing together)

²⁰ proximus, -a, -um, nearest, last (sc. nocte)

²¹ the night before (that)

²² con-vocō

²³ gen. of nōs (Ch. 11)

²⁴ ignōrō (1), be ignorant, not know

¹ For the general situation of this speech see the introductory note to the reading passage in Ch. 30. Since Cicero as yet lacked evidence that would stand in court, this speech is a magnificent example of bluff; but it worked to the extent of forcing Catiline (though not the other leaders of the conspiracy) to leave Rome for his army encamped at Fie-

Quārē sēcēdant¹¹⁹ improbī; sēcernant¹²⁰ sē ā bonīs; ūnum in locum congregentur¹²¹; mūrō dēnique (id quod saepe iam dīxī) sēcernantur ā nōbīs; dēsīnant¹²² īnsidiārī¹²³ domī suae¹²⁴ cōsulī, circumstāre¹²⁵ tribūnal¹²⁶ praetoris urbānī, ¹²⁷ obsidēre¹²⁸ cum gladiīs cūriam, ¹²⁹ malleolōs¹³⁰ et facēs¹³¹ ad
 55 īnflammandam¹³² urbem comparāre¹³³; sit dēnique īnscrīptum¹³⁴ in fronte¹³⁵ ūnīus cuiusque quid dē rē pūblicā sentiat. Polliceor¹³⁶ hoc vōbīs, patrēs cōnscrīptī,¹³⁷ tantam in nōbīs cōsulibus fore¹³⁸ dīligentiam, tantam in vōbīs auctōritātem,¹³⁹ tantam in equitibus¹³⁸ Rōmānīs virtūtem, tantam in omnibus
 60 bonīs cōnsēnsiōnem,¹³⁹ ut Catilīnae profectiōne¹⁴⁰ omnia patefacta, illūstrāta,¹⁴¹ oppressa, vindicāta¹⁴² esse videātis.

Hīsce¹⁴³ ōminibus,¹⁴⁴ Catilīna, cum summā reī pūblicae salūte,¹⁴⁵ cum tuā peste ac perniciē,¹⁴⁶ cumque eōrum exitiō quī sē tēcum omnī scelere parricidiōque¹⁴⁷ iūnxērunt, proficīscere ad impium¹⁴⁸ bellum ac nefārium.¹⁴⁹
 65 Tū, Iuppiter, quī eīsdem¹⁵⁰ quibus haec urbs auspiciīs ā Rōmulō¹⁵¹ es cōnstitūtus,¹⁵² quem Statōrem¹⁵³ huius urbis atque imperiī vērē nōmināmus,¹⁵⁴ hunc et huius sociōs ā tuīs cēterisque templīs,¹⁵⁵ ā tēctīs¹⁵⁶ urbis ac moenibus, ā vītā fortūnisque cīvium arcēbis¹⁵⁷, et hominēs bonōrum inimicōs,¹⁵⁸ hostēs patriae, latrōnēs¹⁵⁹ Italiae, scelerum foedere¹⁶⁰ inter sē ac ne-

¹¹⁹ sē-cēdō (sē = apart, away). *Why subjunctive?*

¹²⁰ sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -cretum, separate

¹²¹ congregō (1), gather together

¹²² dēsīnō, -ere, -sīvī, -situm, cease

¹²³ īnsidior, -ārī, -ātus sum, plot against + *dat.*

¹²⁴ domī suae, *locative*. Catiline had tried to have Cicero assassinated.

¹²⁵ circum-stō, -āre, -stetī, stand around, surround

¹²⁶ tribūnal, -ālis, *n.*

¹²⁷ praetor urbānus, *judicial magistrate who had charge of civil cases between Roman citizens*

¹²⁸ obsideō, -ere, -sēdī, -sēssum, besiege, beset

¹²⁹ cūria, -ae, senate house

¹³⁰ malleolus, -ī, firebrand

¹³¹ fax, facis, *f.*, torch

¹³² īnflamō (1), set on fire

¹³³ = parāre

¹³⁴ in-scrībō

¹³⁵ frōns, frontis, *f.*, forehead

¹³⁶ polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum, promise

¹³⁷ dīligentia, -ae

¹³⁸ eques, equitis, *m.*, horseman, knight. *Here the equitēs are the wealthy business class in Rome.*

¹³⁹ cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, agreement, harmony

¹⁴⁰ profectiō, -ōnis, *f.*, departure; *cp.* proficīscor

¹⁴¹ illūstrō (1), bring to light

¹⁴² vindicō (1), avenge, punish

¹⁴³ hīs-ce = hīs + *intensive enclitic -ce*; *abl. case with ōminibus*

¹⁴⁴ ōmen, ōminis, *n.*, omen: "with these omens" or "with these words which I have uttered as omens," *abl. of attendant circumstance without cum.*

¹⁴⁵ cum . . . salūte (peste, exitiō) *abl. of attendant circumstance with cum, here indicating the result*: "to the safety of state, to your own destruction, . . ."

¹⁴⁶ perniciēs, -ēī, *f.*, disaster, calamity

¹⁴⁷ parricidium, -iī, murder

¹⁴⁸ impius, -a, -um, wicked, disloyal

¹⁴⁹ nefārius, -a, -um, infamous, nefarious

¹⁵⁰ eīsdem auspiciīs quibus haec urbs (cōnstitūta est); auspicia, -ōrum, auspices

¹⁵¹ Rōmulus, -ī, the founder of Rome

¹⁵² cōstituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtum, establish

¹⁵³ Stator, -ōris, *m.*, the Stayer (of flight), the Supporter, Jupiter Stator

¹⁵⁴ nōminō (1), name, call (*cp.* nōmen)

¹⁵⁵ templum, -ī, temple

¹⁵⁶ tēctum, -ī, roof, house

¹⁵⁷ arceō, -ēre, -uī, ward off

¹⁵⁸ inimīcus, -ī, personal enemy; inimicōs, hostēs, *etc.* are in apposition with hominēs.

¹⁵⁹ latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, robber, bandit

¹⁶⁰ foedus, -eris, *n.*, treaty, bond

70 fāriā societāte¹⁶¹ coniūctōs,¹⁶² aeternīs¹⁶³ suppliciīs¹⁶⁴ vīvōs mortuōsque mactābis.¹⁶⁵

(Cicero, *In Catilīnam Ōrātiō I*, excerpts)

6. THE ARREST AND TRIAL OF THE CONSPIRATORS¹

Rem pūblicam, Quirītēs,² vītamque³ omnium vestrum, bona,⁴ fortūnās, coniugēs⁵ liberōsque⁶ vestrōs, atque hoc domicilium⁷ clārissimī imperī, fortūnātissimam pulcherrimamque urbem, hodiernō⁸ diē deōrum immortālium summō ergā vōs amōre, labōribus, cōnsiliīs, periculīs meīs, ē flammā⁹ atque
5 ferrō ac paene¹⁰ ex faucibus¹¹ fātī ēreptam et vōbīs cōservātam ac restitū-
tam¹² vidētis¹³. . . Quae¹⁴ quoniam in senātū illūstrāta, patefacta, comperta¹⁵
sunt per mē, vōbīs iam expōnam breviter, Quirītēs, ut¹⁶ et¹⁷ quanta¹⁸ et quā
ratiōne investigāta¹⁹ et comprehēnsa sint, vōs, quī ignōrātis et exspectātis,
scīre possītis.

10 Prīncipiō, ut²⁰ Catilīna paucīs ante diēbus²¹ ērūpit²² ex urbe, cum sceleris
suī sociōs, huiusce²³ nefāriī bellī ācerrimōs ducēs, Rōmae reliquisset, semper
vigilāvī²⁴ et prōvīdī,²⁵ Quirītēs, quem ad modum²⁶ in tantīs et tam ab-
sconditīs²⁷ insidiīs salvī esse possēmus. Nam tum cum ex urbe Catilīnam
ēiciēbam (nōn enim iam vereor huius verbī invidiam, cum illa²⁸ magis²⁹ sit

¹⁶¹ societās, -tātis, fellowship, alliance (*cp. socius*)

¹⁶² con (together) + iungō: coniūctōs modifies la-
trōnēs, etc.

¹⁶³ aeternus, -a, -um, eternal

¹⁶⁴ supplicium, -iī, punishment

¹⁶⁵ mactō (1), punish, pursue. The basic structure of the
sentence is this: Tū (quī . . . es cōstitūtus, quem
. . . nōmināmus) hunc et sociōs ā templīs . . . for-
tūnīsque cīvium arcebis; et hominēs (inimīcōs . . .
coniūctōs) suppliciīs vīvōs mortuōsque mac-
tābis.

6

¹ Cicero here tells how, shortly after his first speech
against Catiline, he secured the written evidence
necessary for the trial and conviction of the con-
spirators.

² fellow-citizens, an old word of uncertain origin

³ The Romans regularly used the singular even when re-
ferring to a number of people; we use the plural,
"lives."

⁴ neut. pl., good things = goods

⁵ coniūnx, -iugis, f., wife (*cp. coniungō*)

⁶ liberī, -ōrum, m. pl., children

⁷ domicilium, -iī, home (*cp. domus*)

⁸ hodiernus diēs, this day, today (*cp. hodiē*)

⁹ flamma, -ae, flame

¹⁰ adv., almost

¹¹ faucēs, -ium, f. pl., jaws; a narrow passage

¹² restituō, -ere, -stitui-, -stitūtum, restore

¹³ The outline of the sentence is this: Rem pūblicam
(. . . urbem) amōre deōrum(. . . periculīs meīs) ē
flammā (. . . faucibus fātī) ēreptam (. . . restitū-
tam) vidētis.

¹⁴ conjunctive use of the relative; neut. nom. pl.

¹⁵ comperiō, -īre, -perī, compertum, find out

¹⁶ introduces possītis

¹⁷ et . . . et

¹⁸ nom. neut. pl., subj. of comprehēnsa sint

¹⁹ investigō (1), track out, investigate

²⁰ ut + ind., here = ever since

²¹ before by a few days (*abl. of degree of difference, see
S.S.*) = a few days ago; actually some three
weeks before

²² ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, burst forth

²³ huius + ce, an intensifying suffix

²⁴ vigilō (1), watch, be vigilant

²⁵ prō-videō, foresee, make provision

²⁶ quem ad modum, how

²⁷ absconditus, -a, -um, hidden

²⁸ illa (invidia)

²⁹ comparative of magnopere

- 15 timenda, quod³⁰ vīvus exierit) — sed tum cum³¹ illum exterminārī³² volēbam, aut³³ reliquam³⁴ coniūrātōrum manum simul³⁵ exitūram³⁶ aut eōs quī restitis-
sent³⁷ infirmōs sine illō ac debilēs³⁸ fore³⁹ putābam. Atque ego, ut vidī, quōs
maximō furōre et scelere esse inflammātōs sciēbam, eōs nobīscum esse et
20 quid mōlīrentur, sentīrem ac vidērem . . . Itaque, ut comperī lēgātōs⁴¹ Al-
lobrogum⁴² bellī Trānsalpīnī⁴³ et tumultūs⁴⁴ Gallicī⁴⁵ excitandī⁴⁶ causā, ā
P. Lentulō⁴⁷ esse sollicitātōs,⁴⁸ eōsque in Galliam⁴⁹ ad suōs cīvēs eōdemque
itinere cum litterīs mandātisque⁵⁰ ad Catilīnam esse missōs, comitemque⁵¹
eīs adiūctum esse⁵² T. Volturcium,⁵³ atque huic esse ad Catilīnam datās
25 litterās, facultātem⁵⁴ mihi oblātā putāvī ut — quod⁵⁵ erat difficillimum
quodque ego semper optābam⁵⁶ ab dīs immortalibus — tōta rēs nōn solum ā
mē sed etiam ā senātū et ā vōbīs manifestō⁵⁷ dēprehenderētur.⁵⁸

- Itaque hesternō⁵⁹ diē L. Flaccum et C. Pompitūnum praetōrēs,⁶⁰ fortissi-
mōs atque amantissimōs⁶¹ reī publicae⁶² virōs, ad mē vocāvī, rem exposuī,
30 quid fierī⁶³ placēret ostendī. Illī autem, quī omnia dē rē publicā praeclāra⁶⁴
atque ēgregia⁶⁵ sentīrent,⁶⁶ sine recūsatiōne⁶⁷ ac sine ūllā morā negōtium⁶⁸
suscēpērunt et, cum advesperāsceret,⁶⁹ occultē⁷⁰ ad pontem⁷¹ Mulvium per-

³⁰ This clause is a noun clause in apposition with *illa* (*in-vidia*). The perfect subjunctive (*exierit*) is used in informal indirect statement indicating what people may say: "he went out alive (*vīvus*)."

³¹ *tum cum*, mere repetition of *tum cum* above as Cicero starts the sentence over again.

³² *exterminō* (1), banish (*ex* + *terminus*, boundary)

³³ *aut* . . . *exitūram* (*esse*) *aut* . . . *fore putābam*

³⁴ *reliquus*, -a, -um, remaining, the rest of

³⁵ *adv.*, at the same time

³⁶ *ex-eō*; *exitūram* (*esse*)

³⁷ *restō*, -āre, -stitī, stay behind, remain

³⁸ *debilis*, -e, helpless, weak

³⁹ = *futūrōs esse*

⁴⁰ *in eō ut sentīrem et vidērem quid . . . mōlīrentur*: in this that I might see . . . ; the *ut*-clause of purpose is in apposition with *eō*.

⁴¹ *lēgātus*, -ī, ambassador

⁴² *Allobrogēs*, -um, *m.*, the Allobroges, a Gallic tribe whose ambassadors had come to Rome to make complaints about certain Roman magistrates.

⁴³ *Trānsalpīnus*, -a, -um, Transalpine

⁴⁴ *tumultus*, -ūs, *m.*, uprising

⁴⁵ *Gallicus*, -a, -um, Gallic

⁴⁶ *excitō* (1), excite, arouse

⁴⁷ *Publius Lentulus* after having been consul in 71 B.C. was removed from the Senate on grounds of moral turpitude. He was now one of the leading conspirators and at the same time he was holding the office of praetor.

⁴⁸ *sollicitō* (1), stir up

⁴⁹ *Gallia*, -ae, Gaul

⁵⁰ *mandātum*, -ī, order, instruction

⁵¹ *comes*, -itis, *m.*, companion

⁵² *ad-iungō*

⁵³ *Titus Volturcius*, an errand-boy for Lentulus

⁵⁴ *facultās*, -tātis, *f.*, opportunity

⁵⁵ *quod*, a thing which. The antecedent of *quod* is the general idea in the *ut*-clause.

⁵⁶ *optō* (1), desire

⁵⁷ *adv.*, clearly

⁵⁸ *dēprehendō* (cp. *comprehendō*), detect, comprehend

⁵⁹ *hesternō diē*, yesterday

⁶⁰ Though praetors were judicial magistrates, they did possess the imperium by which they could command troops.

⁶¹ most loving of the state = very patriotic

⁶² objective genitive; see App.

⁶³ *fieri*, subject of *placēret* (it was pleasing) used impersonally

⁶⁴ *praeclārus*, -a, -um, noble

⁶⁵ *ēgregius*, -a, -um, excellent, distinguished

⁶⁶ subjunctive in a characteristic clause

⁶⁷ *recūsatiō*, -ōnis, *f.*, refusal

⁶⁸ *negōtium*, -ī, business, matter

⁶⁹ *advesperāscit*, -ere, -perāvīt, impersonal inceptive, it is approaching evening (cp. *vespers*)

⁷⁰ *adv.*, secretly

⁷¹ *pōns*, *pontis*, *m.*, bridge; the Mulvian bridge across the Tiber near Rome

vēnerunt atque ibi in proximīs villīs⁷² ita bipertītō⁷³ fuērunt ut Tiberis⁷⁴ inter
eōs et pōns interesset.⁷⁵ Eōdem⁷⁶ autem et ipsī sine cuiusquam suspiciōne⁷⁷
35 multōs fortēs virōs ēdūxerant, et ego ex praefectūrā⁷⁸ Reātīnā⁷⁹ complūrēs⁸⁰
dēlēctōs⁸¹ adulēscētēs, quōrum operā⁸² ūtor assiduē⁸³ in rē publicā, prae-
sidiō cum gladiīs mīseram. Interim,⁸⁴ tertiā ferē⁸⁵ vigiliā⁸⁶ exāctā, cum iam
pontem Mulvium magnō comitātū⁸⁷ lēgātī Allobrogum ingredit⁸⁸ inciperent
ūnāque⁸⁹ Volturcius, fit in eōs impetus⁹⁰; ēdūcuntur⁹¹ et ab illīs gladiī et ā
40 nostrīs.⁹² Rēs praetōribus erat nōta sōlīs, ignōrābātur ā cēterīs. Tum in-
terventū⁹³ Pomptīnī atque Flaccī pugna⁹⁴ sēdātur.⁹⁵ Litterae, quaecumque⁹⁶
erant in eō comitātū, integrīs⁹⁷ signīs praetōribus trāduntur; ipsī, com-
prehēnsī, ad mē, cum iam dīlūcēsceret,⁹⁸ dēdūcuntur. Atque hōrum om-
nium scelerum improbissimum⁹⁹ māchinātōrem,¹⁰⁰ Cimbrum Gabīnium,¹⁰¹
45 statim¹⁰² ad mē nihildum¹⁰³ suspicantem,¹⁰⁴ vocāvī. Deinde item¹⁰⁵ arcessītus
est¹⁰⁶ L. Statilius, et post eum C. Cethēgus. Tardissimē¹⁰⁷ autem Lentulus
vēnit . . .

Senātum frequentem¹⁰⁸ celeriter, ut vīdistis, coēgī. Atque intereā¹⁰⁹
statim admonitū¹¹⁰ Allobrogum C. Sulpiciū praetōrem, fortem virum, mīsi
50 quī ex aedibus¹¹¹ Cethēgī, sī quid tēlōrum¹¹² esset, efferret¹¹³; ex quibus¹¹⁴ ille
maximum sīcārum¹¹⁵ numerum et gladiōrum extulit.¹¹⁶

Intrōdūxī¹¹⁷ Volturcium sine Gallīs; fidem publicā¹¹⁸ iussū¹¹⁹ senātūs

⁷² villa, -ae, country house

⁷³ adv., in two divisions

⁷⁴ Tiberis, -is, m., the Tiber

⁷⁵ inter-sum, be between

⁷⁶ adv., to the same place

⁷⁷ suspiciō, -ōnis, f., suspicion

⁷⁸ praefectūra, -ae, prefecture, a city of the Roman al-
lies governed by a Roman prefect

⁷⁹ Reātīnus, -a, -um, of Reate, A Sabine town about
forty miles from Rome.

⁸⁰ complūrēs, -a, plural adj., very many

⁸¹ dēlēgō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, choose, select

⁸² opera, -ae, help; why abl.?

⁸³ adv., constantly

⁸⁴ adv., meanwhile

⁸⁵ ferē, adv., about, almost; usually follows the word it
modifies

⁸⁶ vigilia, -ae, watch. The night was divided into four
watches.

⁸⁷ comitātus, -ūs, company, retinue. The ablative of ac-
companiment may be used without cum in mili-
tary expressions.

⁸⁸ ingredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, enter on

⁸⁹ and together with (them)

⁹⁰ impetus, -ūs, attack

⁹¹ ēdūcuntur . . . gladiī, swords were drawn

⁹² nostrīs (virīs)

⁹³ interventus, -ūs, intervention

⁹⁴ pugna, -ae, fight

⁹⁵ sēdō (1), settle, stop (not to be confused with sedeō,
sit)

⁹⁶ quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever,
whatever

⁹⁷ integer, -gra, -grum, untouched, whole

⁹⁸ dīlūcēscit, -ere, -lūxit, it grows light, dawn comes

⁹⁹ improbus, -a, -um, wicked

¹⁰⁰ māchinātōr, -ōris, m., contriver, plotter

¹⁰¹ Cimber Gabīnius

¹⁰² adv., immediately

¹⁰³ nihil-dum, nothing yet

¹⁰⁴ suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, suspect

¹⁰⁵ adv., likewise

¹⁰⁶ arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, summon

¹⁰⁷ tardē, adv., slowly

¹⁰⁸ frequēns, gen. -entis, adj., crowded, full

¹⁰⁹ adv., meanwhile

¹¹⁰ admonitus, -ūs, warning, suggestion

¹¹¹ aedēs, -ium, f., house

¹¹² tēlum, -ī, weapon; tēlōrum is gen. of whole with quid:
anything of weapons = any weapons

¹¹³ relative clause of purpose: quī = ut is

¹¹⁴ Antecedent is aedibus.

¹¹⁵ sīca, -ae, dagger

¹¹⁶ efferō: ex-ferō

¹¹⁷ intrō-dūcō = Eng. introduce

¹¹⁸ promise of protection in the name of the state

¹¹⁹ iussus, -ūs, command

dedi; hortatus sum ut ea quae sciret sine timore indicaret.¹²⁰ Tum ille dixit, cum vix¹²¹ se ex magno timore recreasset,¹²² a P. Lentulo se habere ad Catilinam mandata et litteras ut servorum praesidio uteretur,¹²³ ut ad urbem quam primum¹²⁴ cum exercitu accederet; id¹²⁵ autem eo consilio ut,¹²⁶ cum urbem ex¹²⁷ omnibus partibus, quem ad modum¹²⁸ descriptum distributumque erat,¹²⁹ incendissent¹³⁰ caedemque¹³¹ infinitam¹³² civium fecissent, praesto¹³³ esset ille¹³⁴ qui et fugientes exciperet¹³⁵ et se cum his urbanis ducibus coniungeret.¹³⁶

Intrducti autem Galli ius iurandum¹³⁷ sibi et litteras ab Lentulo, Cethego, Statilio ad suam gentem datas esse dixerunt atque ita sibi ab his et a L. Cassio esse praescriptum¹³⁸ ut equitatum¹³⁹ in Italiam quam primum mitterent¹⁴⁰ . . .

Ac ne longum sit,¹⁴¹ Quirites, tabellas¹⁴² proferri¹⁴³ iussimus quae a quoque dicebantur datae.¹⁴⁴ Primum ostendimus Cethego signum; cognovit. Nos linum¹⁴⁵ incidimus¹⁴⁶, legimus. Erat scriptum ipsius¹⁴⁷ manu Allobrogum senatus et populo sese¹⁴⁸ quae eorum legatis confirmasset¹⁴⁹ facturum esse; orare ut item illi facerent quae sibi eorum legatis recepissent. Tum Cethegus (qui paulo¹⁵⁰ ante aliquid tamen de gladiis ac sicis, quae apud ipsum erant

¹²⁰ *indicō* (1), indicate, make known

¹²¹ *adv.*, hardly

¹²² *The perfect endings in -āvi-, -ēvi-, -ōvi- often contract to -ā-, -ē-, -ō-, respectively. So here recreāvisset has contracted to recreasset. Perfects in -īvi- may lose the v but the two resultant vowels rarely contract to ī except before ss and st: audīverat, audierat; audīvisse, audisse; quaesissent*

¹²³ *indirect command with mandata et litteras*

¹²⁴ *quam primum*, as soon as possible

¹²⁵ (that he should do) this (*id*) with this plan (in mind) that . . .

¹²⁶ *The rest of the sentence can be outlined thus: ut (cum . . . partibus [quem ad modum . . . distributum erat] incendissent et . . . fecissent) praesto esset ille (qui et . . . exciperet et . . . coniungeret)*

¹²⁷ *in*

¹²⁸ *quem ad modum*, as

¹²⁹ *impersonal passive verbs: as had been marked out and assigned*

¹³⁰ *incendō, -ere, -cendī, -censum*, set fire to

¹³¹ *caedēs, -is, f.*, slaughter

¹³² *infinitus, -a, -um*, unlimited

¹³³ *adv.*, on hand, ready

¹³⁴ *ille* = Catiline

¹³⁵ *ex-cipiō*, pick up, capture

¹³⁶ *con + iungō. Why are exciperet and coniungeret in the subjunctive?*

¹³⁷ *iūs, iurandum, iūris iurandi, n.*, oath

¹³⁸ *prae-scribō*, order, direct; *esse praescriptum*, *impersonal passive* (it had been commanded to themselves, *sibi*) but translate as *personal*: they had been directed.

¹³⁹ *equitatus, -ūs*, cavalry

¹⁴⁰ *jussive noun clause depending on esse praescriptum*

¹⁴¹ *to be brief*

¹⁴² *tabella, -ae*, tablet: very shallow trays, not unlike the modern slate, filled with wax on which writing was done with a sharp-pointed stylus. Two of these closed face to face, tied together with a string, and sealed with wax and the impression of a signet ring, were the equivalent of a modern letter in an envelope.

¹⁴³ *prō-ferō*

¹⁴⁴ *datae (esse); datae is nom. fem. pl. to agree with quae (tabellae), the subject of dicebantur.*

¹⁴⁵ *linum, -i*, string

¹⁴⁶ *incidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum*, cut

¹⁴⁷ (*Cethegi*) *ipsius*: *emphatic because letters were often written by an amanuensis, a slave to whom the letter was dictated.*

¹⁴⁸ *sēsē = sē (i.e., Cethegus), subject of facturum esse and also of orare*

¹⁴⁹ *confirmō* (1), assert, declare; *subjunctive in indirect discourse* (see S.S.)

¹⁵⁰ *a little before (before by a little), abl. of degree of difference* (see S.S.)

dēprehēnsa,¹⁵¹ respondisset dīxissetque¹⁵² sē semper bonōrum ferrāmentōrum¹⁵³ studiōsum¹⁵⁴ fuisse) recitātīs litterīs dēbilitātus¹⁵⁵ atque abiectus¹⁵⁶ cōscientiā,¹⁵⁷ repente conticuit.¹⁵⁸

Intrōductus est Statilius; cognōvit et signum et manum suam. Recitātae
75 sunt tabellae in eandem ferē sententiam; cōfessus est.

Tum ostendī tabellās Lentulō, et quaesīvī cognōsceretne signum. Ad-
nuit¹⁵⁹ . . . Leguntur eādē ratiōne ad senātum Allobrogum populumque
litterae. Sī quid dē hīs rēbus dīcere vellet,¹⁶⁰ fēcī potestātem.¹⁶¹ Atque ille
prīmō quidem negāvit. Post¹⁶² autem aliquantō,¹⁶³ tōtō iam indicio¹⁶⁴
80 expositō atque ēditō,¹⁶⁵ surrēxit; quaesīvīt ā Gallīs quid sibi esset cum eīs,
quam ob rem¹⁶⁶ domum suam vēnissent, itemque ā Volturciō. Quī cum illī
breviter cōstanterque¹⁶⁷ respondissent per quem ad eum quotiēnsque¹⁶⁸
vēnissent, quaesissentque¹⁶⁹ ab eō nihilne sēcum¹⁷⁰ esset dē fātīs Sibyllīnīs¹⁷¹
locūtus, tum ille subitō, scelere dēmēns,¹⁷² quanta cōscientiae vīs esset os-
85 tendit. Nam cum id posset īnfitiārī,¹⁷³ repente praeter opīniōnem¹⁷⁴ omnium
cōfessus est . . .

Gabīnius deinde intrōductus, cum prīmō impudenter¹⁷⁵ respondēre coe-
pisset, ad extrēmum¹⁷⁶ nihil ex eīs¹⁷⁷ quae Gallī īnsimulābant¹⁷⁸ negāvit.

Ac mihi¹⁷⁹ quidem, Quirītēs, cum¹⁸⁰ illa¹⁸¹ certissima vīsa sunt argūmenta
90 atque indicia sceleris, tabellae, signa, manūs, dēnique ūnūs cuiusque cōn-
fessio,¹⁸² tum multō¹⁸³ certiōra illa, color,¹⁸⁴ oculī, vultūs, taciturnitās.¹⁸⁵ Sic

¹⁵¹ dēprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsūm, seize

¹⁵² respondisset dīxissetque, subjunctives in relative clauses of characteristic, which have the force of concessive clauses (= although)

¹⁵³ ferrāmentum, -ī, weapon

¹⁵⁴ studiōsus, -a, -um, fond of (i.e., he was a collector.)

¹⁵⁵ dēbilitō (1), weaken

¹⁵⁶ abiectus, -a, -um, downcast

¹⁵⁷ cōscientia, -ae, knowledge, conscience

¹⁵⁸ conticēscō, -ticēscere, -ticuī, become silent

¹⁵⁹ adnuō, -ere, -nuī, nod assent

¹⁶⁰ vellet, subjunctive because it is a subordinate clause in an implied indirect statement for Cicero's original words: "sī quid . . . dīcere vīs"

¹⁶¹ potestās, -tātis, f., power, opportunity

¹⁶² = postea

¹⁶³ aliquantō, abl. of degree of difference (by somewhat) equivalent to an adverb: somewhat, a little

¹⁶⁴ indicium, -iī, evidence, information

¹⁶⁵ ē-dō, -ere, ēdidī, ēditum, give forth, publish

¹⁶⁶ quam ob rem = quārē

¹⁶⁷ constanter, adv., consistently, steadily

¹⁶⁸ quotiēns, adv., how often

¹⁶⁹ contracted form, n. 122 above

¹⁷⁰ sēcum: an indirect reflexive referring to the subject of

quaesissent; translate to them.

¹⁷¹ fāta Sibyllīna, a collection of ancient prophecies for which the Romans had very high respect. By these Lentulus had sought to prove to the Allobroges that he was destined to hold the regnum and imperium at Rome.

¹⁷² dē-mēns, gen. -mentis, out of one's mind

¹⁷³ īnfitiōr, -tiārī, -tiātus sum, deny

¹⁷⁴ opīniō, -ōnis, f., expectation

¹⁷⁵ adv., impudently

¹⁷⁶ ad extrēmum, at the last, finally

¹⁷⁷ eīs = neut. pl., those things

¹⁷⁸ īnsimulō (1), charge

¹⁷⁹ depends on vīsa sunt

¹⁸⁰ cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also (cp. nōn solum . . . sed etiam)

¹⁸¹ illa argūmenta atque indicia (i.e., tabellae . . . confessio) certissima vīsa sunt

¹⁸² cōfessio, -ōnis, f. = Eng.

¹⁸³ lit. more certain by much. What kind of abl. is multō? (see S.S.)

¹⁸⁴ color . . . taciturnitās, in apposition with illa, which is nom. neut. pl. color, -ōris, m., = Eng.

¹⁸⁵ taciturnitās, -tātis, f., silence (cp. taciturn)

enim obstupuerant,¹⁸⁶ sic terram intuēbantur,¹⁸⁷ sic fūrtim nōn numquam inter sēsē aspiciēbant ut nōn iam ab aliīs indicārī¹⁸⁸ sed indicāre sē ipsī viderentur.

95 Indiciīs expositīs atque ēditīs, Quirītēs, senātum cōnsulū¹⁸⁹ dē summā rē pūblica¹⁹⁰ quid fierī placēret. Dictae sunt ā prīncipibus ācerrimae ac fortissimae sententiae, quās senātus sine ūllā varietātē¹⁹¹ est secūtus . . .

Quibus prō tantīs rēbus, Quirītēs, nūllum ego ā vōbīs praemium virtūtis, nūllum īnsigne¹⁹² honōris, nūllum monumentum laudis postulō¹⁹³ praeterquam¹⁹⁴ huius diēi memoriam sempiternam¹⁹⁵ . . .

Vōs, Quirītēs, quoniam iam est nox, venerātī¹⁹⁶ Iovem illum custōdem huius urbis ac vestrum, in vestra tēcta discēdite; et ea, quamquam¹⁹⁷ iam est perīculum dēpulsum,¹⁹⁸ tamen aequē ac¹⁹⁹ priōre nocte custōdiīs vigiliisque dēfendite. Id nē vōbīs diūtius faciendum sit atque ut in perpetuā pāce esse
105 possītis prōvidēbō. (Cicero, *In Catilinam Ōrātiō III*, excerpts)

DĒ VĪTĀ ET MORTE 7-9

7. A. SOCRATES' "EITHER-OR" BELIEF¹

Quae est igitur eius ōrātiō quā² facit eum Platō ūsum apud iūdicēs iam morte multātum³?

"Magna mē," inquit "spēs tenet iūdicēs, bene mihi ēvenīre⁴ quod mittar⁵ ad mortem. Necesse⁶ est enim sit⁷ alterum dē duōbus, ut aut⁸ sēnsūs omnīnō
5 omnēs mors auferat aut in alium quendam locum ex hīs locīs morte migrētur.⁹ Quam ob rem,¹⁰ sīve¹¹ sēnsūs exstinguitur morsque eī somnō similis est quī nōn numquam etiam sine vīsīs¹² somniōrum¹³ plācātissimam¹⁴ quīē-

¹⁸⁶ **obstupēscō**, -ere, -stupuī, become stupefied, be thunderstruck

¹⁸⁷ **intueor**, -ērī, -tuitus sum, look at

¹⁸⁸ **indicō** (1), accuse (*cp.* **indiciūm**, *n.* 164 above)

¹⁸⁹ **cōsulō**, -ere, -suluī, -sultum, consult, ask advice of highest interest of the state

¹⁹¹ **varietās**, -tātis, *f.*, variation

¹⁹² **īnsigne**, -is, *n.*, sign, symbol

¹⁹³ **postulō** (1), request, demand

¹⁹⁴ except

¹⁹⁵ **sempiternus**, -a, -um, eternal

¹⁹⁶ **veneror**, -ārī, -ātus sum, worship

¹⁹⁷ **quamquam**, *conj.*, although

¹⁹⁸ **dēpellō**, drive off, avert

¹⁹⁹ equally as = just as

7

"Apology," Socrates' defense of his life before the jury that finally condemned him to death.

² **quā** . . . **ūsum**, which Plato represents him as using; **quā**, *abl.* with the participle **ūsum**

³ **multō**, (1), punish, sentence

⁴ **ē-veniō**, turn out; *impersonal inf. in indirect statement*

⁵ *subordinate clause in indirect statement*

⁶ **necesse**, *indecl. adj.*, (it is) necessary

⁷ Supply **ut** before **sit**; that there be one of two possibilities, with the **ut** . . . **migrētur** clause in opposition with **duōbus**

⁸ **aut** . . . **aut**

⁹ **migrō** (1), depart, migrate; **migrātur** as *impersonal passive*, one departs

¹⁰ = **quārē**

¹¹ = **sī**

¹² **vīsum**, -ī, vision

¹³ **somnium**, -ī, dream

¹⁴ **plācātus**, -a, -um, peaceful

¹ As part of his demonstration that death is not an evil, Cicero cites Socrates' views as given in Plato's

tem adfert, dī bonī, quid lucrī est ēmorī¹⁵! Aut quam multī diēs reperīrī pos-
sunt quī tālī noctī antepōnantur? Cui sī similis futūra est¹⁶ perpetuitās¹⁷
10 omnis cōnsequentis¹⁸ temporis, quis¹⁹ mē beātor?

“Sin²⁰ vēra²¹ sunt quae dīcuntur, migrātiōnem²² esse mortem in eās ōrās²³
quās quī²⁴ ē vītā excessērunt²⁵ incolunt,²⁶ id multō²⁷ iam beātius est . . . Haec
peregrinātiō²⁸ mediocris vōbīs vidērī potest? Ut vērō colloquī²⁹ cum Orpheō,
Mūsaeō,³⁰ Homērō, Hēsiodō³¹ liceat, quantī³² tandem aestimātis³³? . . . Nec
15 enim cuiquam³⁴ bonō malī³⁵ quicquam ēvenīre potest nec vīvō nec mor-
tuō³⁶ . . .

“Sed tempus est iam hinc³⁷ abire mē, ut moriar, vōs, ut vītā agātis.
Utrum autem sit melius, dī immortalēs sciunt; hominem quidem scīre ar-
bitror nēminem.”³⁸ (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 1.40.97–1.41.99, ex-
cerpts)

8. B. A MORE POSITIVE VIEW ABOUT IMMORTALITY¹

Artior² quam solēbat³ somnus (mē) complexus est⁴ . . . (et) Āfricānus sē
ostendit eā fōrmā⁵ quae mihi ex imāgine⁶ eius quam ex ipsō erat nōtior.⁷
Quem ubi agnōvī,⁸ equidem cohorrui⁹, . . . quae sīvī tamen vīveretne ipse et
Paulus¹⁰ pater et alī quōs nōs exstīctōs¹¹ arbitrāremur.

5 “Immō vērō,” inquit, “hī vīvunt quī ē corporum vīclīs tamquam ē car-

¹⁵ ē-morior, die (off)

¹⁶ futūra est, is going to be

¹⁷ perpetuitās, -tātis, f., perpetuity

¹⁸ cōn-sequor

¹⁹ quis (est)

²⁰ sīn, conj., but if

²¹ (ea) sunt vēra

²² migrātiō, -ōnis, f., the noun of migrō, n. 9 above

²³ ōra, -ae, shore, region

²⁴ (et) quī

²⁵ ex-cēdō = discēdō

²⁶ incolō, -ere, -uī, inhabit

²⁷ abl. of degree of difference (S.S.)

²⁸ peregrinātiō, -ōnis, f., travel abroad

²⁹ col-loquor, talk with, converse (cp. colloquial)

³⁰ Orpheus and Musaeus were famous poets and musi-
cians before the time of Homer

³¹ Hesiod, a Greek epic poet chronologically next after
Homer.

³² quantī (pretiū), of how much (value), gen. of indefi-
nite value. quantī . . . aestimātis, how valuable,
pray, do you estimate this is?

³³ aestimō (1), estimate, value

³⁴ quisquam, quidquam (quicquam), anyone, anything;
cuiquam modified by bonō: to any good man

³⁵ malī (gen.) depends on quicquam: anything of evil =

any evil

³⁶ vīvō and mortuō modify cuiquam bonō.

³⁷ adv., from this place

³⁸ hominem . . . nēminem, no man

8

¹ In these excerpts Scipio Africanus Minor (the
Younger, hero of the Third Punic War in 146 B.C.)
tells how the deceased Scipio Africanus Maior (the
Elder, hero of the Second Punic War who defeated
Hannibal in 202 B.C.) appeared to him in a dream
and discoursed on the nature of life here and here-
after.

² artus, -a, -um, deep (sleep); narrow

³ solēbat (esse)

⁴ complector, -ī, -plexus sum, embrace

⁵ abl. of description

⁶ imāgō, -inis, f., image; here = portrait mask of an
ancestor. The imāginēs of a Roman patrician's an-
cestors were displayed in the atrium of the house.

⁷ nōtus, -a, -um, known, familiar

⁸ agnōscō (cp. cognōscō), recognize

⁹ cohorrēscō, -ere, -horruī, shudder

¹⁰ L. Aemilius Paulus, father of Africanus Minor

¹¹ exstīctōs (esse): exstinguō

cere¹² evolāvērunt¹³; vestra vērō quae dīcitur vīta mors est. Quīn¹⁴ tū aspicias ad tē venientem Paulum patrem?"

Quem ut vīdī, equidem vim¹⁵ lacrimārum prōfūdī. Ille autem mē complexus⁴ atque ōsculāns¹⁶ flēre¹⁷ prohibēbat. Atque ego ut prīmum¹⁸ flētū¹⁹
10 repressō²⁰ loquī posse coepī, "Quaesō,²¹" inquam, "pater sānctissime²² atque optime, quoniam haec est vīta, ut Āfricānum audiō dīcere, quid moror²³ in terrīs? Quīn²⁴ hūc²⁵ ad vōs venīre properō²⁶?"

"Nōn est ita,²⁷" inquit ille. "Nisi enim deus is,²⁸ cuius hoc templum²⁹ est omne quod cōspicis,³⁰ istīs tē corporis custōdiīs liberāverit, hūc tibi aditus³¹
15 patēre nōn potest. Hominēs enim sunt hāc lēge³² generātī,³³ quī tuērentur³⁴ illum globum³⁵ quem in hōc templō medium vidēs, quae terra dīcitur, iīsque³⁶ animus datus est ex illīs sempiternīs ignibus quae sīdera et stēllās vocātis . . . Quārē et tibi, Pūblī,³⁷ et piīs omnibus retinendus³⁸ est animus in custōdiā corporis, nec iniussū³⁹ eius ā quō ille⁴⁰ est vōbīs datus ex hominum vītā mīgrandum est, nē mūnus⁴¹ hūmānum adsignātum⁴² ā deō dēfūgissee⁴³ videāminī . . . Iūstitiam⁴⁴ cole⁴⁵ et pietātem,⁴⁶ quae cum sit magna⁴⁷ in parentibus et propinquīs,⁴⁸ tum⁴⁹ in patriā maxima est. Ea vīta via est in caelum et in hunc coetum⁵⁰ eōrum quī iam vīxērunt et corpore laxātī⁵¹ illum incolunt locum . . . quem vōs, ut ā Graīs accēpistis, orbem lacteum,⁵² nuncupātis.⁵³"

...

¹² carcer, -eris, *n.*, prison

¹³ ē-volō (1), fly away; *not to be confused with volō, velle*

¹⁴ quīn aspicias: why, don't you see?

¹⁵ vim = cōpiam

¹⁶ ōsculor, -ārī, -ātus sum, kiss

¹⁷ flēō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum, weep

¹⁸ ut prīmum, as soon as

¹⁹ flētus, -ūs, *noun of flēō, n. 17 above*

²⁰ re-primō (premō)

²¹ quaesō, -ere, *commonly exclamatory: I beg you!, pray tell!, please*

²² sānctus, -a, -um, holy

²³ moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, delay, wait

²⁴ why not?

²⁵ hūc, *adv.*, to this place, here

²⁶ properō (1), hasten

²⁷ = that is not the way

²⁸ order = is deus

²⁹ templum, -ī, sacred area, temple

³⁰ cuius . . . cōspicis: whose this temple is or to whom belongs this temple—everything which you behold. Apparently, as he says hoc templum, he makes a sweeping gesture with his arm to indicate the universe and then adds omne quod cōspicis to make this even clearer. cōspiciō = aspiciō

³¹ aditus, -ūs, approach, entrance

³² abl. of accordance: in accordance with this law, on this condition

³³ generō (1), create

³⁴ tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum, watch, protect. *Why subjunctive?*

³⁵ globus, -ī, sphere, globe

³⁶ i.e., hominibus

³⁷ Pūblius, praenomen (first name) of Africanus Minor

³⁸ re-tineō, retain, preserve

³⁹ iniussū, *abl. as adverb, without the command (of); cp. iussū*

⁴⁰ ille (animus)

⁴¹ mūnus, mūneris, *n.*, duty, service

⁴² adsignō (1), assign

⁴³ dē-fugiō, flee from, avoid

⁴⁴ iūstitia, -ae, justice (*cp. iūstus*)

⁴⁵ colō, -ere, -uī, cultum, cultivate, cherish

⁴⁶ pietās, -tātis, *f.*, loyalty, devotion

⁴⁷ important

⁴⁸ propinquus, -ī, relative

⁴⁹ surely

⁵⁰ coetus, -ūs, gathering, company

⁵¹ laxō (1), set free

⁵² orbis (-is) lacteus (-ī), *m.*, the Milky Way (orb), which Cicero here says is a term received from the Greeks (ut ā Graīs, i.e. Graecis, accēpistis), who called it galaxias kyklos (= lacteus orbis); *cp. our word galaxy.*

⁵³ nuncupō (1) = appellō

- 25 Et ille, "Tū vērō . . . sīc habētō⁵⁴ nōn esse tē mortālem, sed corpus hoc⁵⁵; nec enim tuīs⁵⁶ es quem fōrma ista dēclārat,⁵⁷ sed mēns cuiusque is est quisque, nōn ea figūra⁵⁸ quae digitō dēmōnstrārī potest. Deum tē igitur scītō⁵⁹ esse; sīquidem⁶⁰ deus est quī viget,⁶¹ quī sentit, quī meminit,⁶² quī prōvidet, quī tam regit et moderātur⁶³ et movet id corpus cui praepositus
30 est⁶⁴ quam⁶⁵ hunc mundum ille prīnceps deus."⁶⁶ (Cicero, excerpts from *Somnium Scīpiōnis* 2ff. = *Dē Rē Pūblicā* 6.10 ff.)

9. C. ON CONTEMPT OF DEATH¹

Sed quid² ducēs et prīncipēs nōminem³ cum legiōnēs⁴ scribat Catō⁵ saepe alacrēs⁶ in eum locum profectās⁷ unde reditūrās sē nōn arbitrārentur? Parī animō Lacedaemoniī⁸ in Thermopylīs⁹ occidērunt, in quōs¹⁰ Simōnidēs:

Dīc, hospes,¹¹ Spartae¹² nōs tē¹³ hīc vīdisse iacentīs,¹⁴

- 5 dum sānctīs patriae lēgibus obsequimur.¹⁵

Virōs commemorō.¹⁶ Quālis¹⁷ tandem Lacaena? Quae, cum fīlium in proelium mīsisset et interfectum¹⁸ audīssset, "Idcircō,¹⁹" inquit, "genueram²⁰ ut esset quī²¹ prō patriā mortem nōn dubitāret occumbere.²²"

- . . . Admoneor²³ ut aliquid etiam dē humātiōne²⁴ et sepultūrā²⁵ dīcendum²⁶ exīstimem²⁷ . . . Sōcratēs, rogātus ā Critōne²⁸ quem ad modum sepe-lirī²⁹ vellet, "Multam vērō," inquit, "operam,³⁰ amīcī, frūstrā³¹ cōnsūmpsī.

⁵⁴ habētō, future imperative, you shall consider; consider

⁵⁵ sc. esse mortāle

⁵⁶ tuīs, to your (friends), dat. depending on dēclārat

⁵⁷ dēclārō (1) = Eng.

⁵⁸ = fōrma

⁵⁹ scītō another future imperative, you shall know; know

⁶⁰ conj., since

⁶¹ vigeō -ēre, vīgū be strong, be active

⁶² meminī, meminisse, defective, found only in perf. system, remember

⁶³ moderor, -ārī, -ātus sum, control

⁶⁴ prae-pōnō, put in charge of

⁶⁵ as

⁶⁶ From the preceding clause supply regit, etc. as verbs.

9

¹ If death is such a great evil, how can the following attitudes be explained?

² quid, as adv., why? (= cūr?)

³ nōminō (1), name, mention (cp. nōmen)

⁴ legiō, -ōnis, f., legion

⁵ Catō, -ōnis, m., Cato, the famous censor, who wrote a now-lost history of Rome called the *Origines*.

⁶ alacer, -cris, -cre, eager, happy. We should use an adv. instead of a predicate adj.: eagerly

⁷ profectās (esse); reditūrās (esse)

⁸ Lacedaemoniī, -ōrum, m., Spartans

⁹ Thermopylae, -ārum; 480 B.C.

¹⁰ on whom Simonides (wrote); Simonides a sixth-century Greek poet famous especially for his poems and epigrams in the elegiac couplet.

¹¹ hospes, -itis, m., stranger

¹² Sparta, -ae, f., Spartae, dat. depending on dīc

¹³ tē vīdisse nōs

¹⁴ = iacentēs

¹⁵ ob-sequor + dat., obey

¹⁶ commemorō (1), call to mind mention (cp. memoria)

¹⁷ What kind of person, then, was the Spartan woman? quālis, -e, what kind of

¹⁸ (eum) interfectum (esse)

¹⁹ adv., for that reason

²⁰ gignō, -ere, genuī, genitum, beget (cp. generate), bear
²¹ (the kind of person) who

²² occumbō, -ere, -cubūī, -cubitum, meet

²³ ad-moneō = moneō, remind

²⁴ humātiō, -ōnis, f. burial (cp. humus, earth)

²⁵ sepultūra, -ae, funeral (cp. sepulchre)

²⁶ dīcendum (esse)

²⁷ exīstimō (1), think

²⁸ Critō, -ōnis, m., Crito, a friend of Socrates

²⁹ sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, -pultum, bury

³⁰ opera, -ae, effort, pains

³¹ frūstrā, adv., in vain (cp. frustrate)

Critōnī enim nostrō nōn persuāsī mē hinc āvolātūrum,³² neque meī³³ quicquam relictūrum³⁴ . . . Sed, mihi crēde, (Critō), nēmō mē vestrum,³⁵ cum hinc excesserō,³⁶ cōnsequētur.³⁷ . . .

- 15 Dūrior Diogenēs³⁸ Cynicus prōici³⁹ sē iussit inhumātum.⁴⁰ Tum amīcī, “Volucris⁴¹ne et ferīs⁴²?” “Minimē⁴³ vērō,” inquit; “sed bacillum⁴⁴ propter⁴⁵ mē, quō abigam,⁴⁶ pōnitōte.” “Quī⁴⁸ poteris?” illī; “nōn enim sentiēs.” “Quid igitur mihi ferārum laniātus⁴⁹ oberit⁵⁰ nihil sentientī⁵¹?” (Cicero, *Tusculanae Disputatiōnēs* 1.42.101–43.104, excerpts)

10. LITERATURE: ITS VALUE AND DELIGHT¹

- Quaerēs ā nobīs, Grattī, cūr tantō opere² hōc homine dēlectēmur.³ Quia⁴ suppeditat⁵ nobīs ubi⁶ et animus ex hōc forēnsī⁷ strepitū⁸ reficiātur⁹ et aurēs convīciō¹⁰ dēfessae¹¹ conquiēscant¹² . . . Quārē quis tandem mē reprehendat,¹³ aut quis mihi iūrē¹⁴ suscēnsat,¹⁵ sī¹⁶ quantum¹⁷ cēterīs ad suās rēs obeundās¹⁸ quantum ad fēstōs¹⁹ diēs lūdōrum celebrandōs,²⁰ quantum ad

³² ā-volō (1); avolātūrum (esse), *inf. in ind. state. with persuāsī*

³³ meī, *gen. of ego, depending on quicquam.*

³⁴ relictūrum (esse)

³⁵ *gen. of vōs*

³⁶ ex-cēdō, *cp. discēdō*

³⁷ cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, overtake, catch

³⁸ Diogenes, the Cynic philosopher, famed for his asceticism and independence

³⁹ prō-iciō (iaciō), throw out

⁴⁰ inhumātus, -a, -um, unburied

⁴¹ volucris, -is, *f.*, bird

⁴² fera, -ae, *f.*, wild beast; *dat. with prōici* understood

⁴³ minimē, no, not at all

⁴⁴ bacillum, -ī, staff (*cp. bacillus, a New Latin form*)

⁴⁵ *here = near*

⁴⁶ abigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, drive away; *sc. volucrēs et ferās. Why subjunctive?*

⁴⁷ *fut. imperative = you shall put*

⁴⁸ quī, *adv.*, how?

⁴⁹ laniātus, -ūs, lacerating

⁵⁰ obsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be against, hurt. *Why does oberit have the dative mihi?*

⁵¹ sentientī modifies mihi and has nihil as its object.

10

¹ In the course of a speech defending the citizenship of the poet Archias against the charges of a certain Grattius, Cicero pronounced one of the world's finest encomiums on the inestimable value and delight of literature.

² tantō opere, so greatly (*cp. magnopere*)

³ homine, the poet Archias.

⁴ quia, because

⁵ suppeditō (1), supply

⁶ the means by which

⁷ forēnsis, -e, *adj.*, of the forum. By Cicero's time the Forum was primarily the political and legal center of Rome.

⁸ strepitus, -ūs, din

⁹ re-ficiō, refresh, revive

¹⁰ convīcium, -iī, wrangling

¹¹ dēfessus, -a, -um, exhausted

¹² conquiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum, find rest

¹³ reprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsū, censure; reprehendat, *deliberative, or dubitative, subjunctive. The deliberative subjunctive is used in questions implying doubt, indignation, or impossibility. Quis mē reprehendat: who is to blame me (I wonder)?*

¹⁴ iūrē = cum iūre, *abl. of manner that has virtually become an adverb: rightly*

¹⁵ suscēnsō, -ēre, -uī, be incensed, + *dat.*

¹⁶ sī introduces sūmpserō. The only real difficulty with this complex clause is the involvement of the quantum clauses. Although these clauses should be read and understood in the order in which they stand, the following outline may prove a welcome guide. Quis mē reprehendat . . . sī ego tantum temporum ad haec studia sūmpserō quantum temporum cēterīs ad suās rēs (fēstōs diēs, voluptātēs, etc.) concēditur, quantum temporum aliī tribunt convīviīs (alveolō pilae)?

¹⁷ quantum (temporum)

¹⁸ ob-eō, attend to

¹⁹ fēstus, -a, -um, festive

²⁰ celebrō (1), celebrate

aliās voluptātēs et ad ipsam requiem²¹ animī et corporis concēditur²² temporum, quantum aliī tribuunt²³ tempestīvīs²⁴ convīviīs,²⁵ quantum dēnique alveolō,²⁶ quantum pilae,²⁷ tantum²⁸ mihi egomet²⁹ ad haec studia recolenda³⁰ sūmpserō³¹? Atque hoc ideō³² mihi concēdendum est magis quod ex
10 hīs studiīs haec quoque crēscit orātiō et facultās,³³ quae, quantacumque³⁴ est in mē, numquam amīcōrum periculīs dēfuit³⁵ . . .

Plēnī omnēs sunt librī, plēnae sapientium vōcēs, plēna exemplōrum³⁶ vetustās³⁷; quae iacērent in tenebrīs³⁸ omnia, nisi litterārum lūmen³⁹ accēderet. Quam multās nōbīs imāginēs⁴⁰—nōn solum ad intueundum,⁴¹
15 vērūm⁴² etiam ad imitandum⁴³—fortissimōrum virōrum expressās⁴⁴ scrīptōrēs et Graecī et Latīnī reliquērunt! Quās ego mihi semper in adminis-
trandā⁴⁵ rē publicā prōpōnēs⁴⁶ animum et mentem meam ipsā cōgitātiōne⁴⁷
hominum excellentium⁴⁸ cōnfōrmābam.⁴⁹

Quaeret quispiam,⁵⁰ “Quid? illī ipsī summī virī quōrum virtūtēs litterīs
20 prōditae sunt,⁵¹ istāne doctrīnā⁵² quam tū effers⁵³ laudibus ērudītī fuērunt⁵⁴?”
Difficile est hoc dē omnibus cōnfīrmāre,⁵⁵ sed tamen est certum quid respon-
deam . . . : saepius ad laudem atque virtutem nātūrā sine doctrīnā quam
sine nātūrā valuisse⁵⁶ doctrīnam. Atque idem⁵⁷ ego contendō,⁵⁸ cum ad nātū-
ram eximiam⁵⁹ et illūstrem⁶⁰ accesserit⁶¹ ratiō quaedam cōnfōrmātiōque⁶²
25 doctrīnae, tum illud nesciō quid⁶³ praeclārū ac singulāre⁶⁴ solēre exsis-
tere⁶⁵ . . .

²¹ requiēs, -ētis, *acc.* requiētem or requiem, rest

²² concēdō, grant, concede

²³ tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, allot

²⁴ tempestīvus, -a, -um, timely; here = early, *beginning in the afternoon so as to be conveniently prolonged.*

²⁵ convīvium, -iī, banquet

²⁶ alveolus, -ī, gaming board

²⁷ pila, -ae, ball (*cp.* pill)

²⁸ tantum (temporum) . . . quantum, as much . . . as

²⁹ ego-met, an emphatic form of ego

³⁰ re-colō, -ere, -uī, -cultum, renew

³¹ sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptum, take

³² adv., for this reason, therefore

³³ facultās, -tātis, *f.*, skill. Combine with orātiō and translate: this oratorical skill.

³⁴ quantuscumque, -acumque, -umcumque, however great

³⁵ dē-sum, be lacking

³⁶ exemplum, -ī, example; exemplōrum also goes with plēnī and plēnae.

³⁷ vetustās, -tātis, *f.*, antiquity

³⁸ tenebrae, -arum, darkness

³⁹ lūmen, -inis, *n.*, light

⁴⁰ imāgō, -ginis, *f.*, portrait, picture

⁴¹ intueor, gaze on, contemplate

⁴² but

⁴³ imitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, imitate

⁴⁴ ex-primō (premō), describe, portray

⁴⁵ administrō (1), manage

⁴⁶ prō-pōnō, put forward, set before; prōpōnēs has quās as direct obj. and mihi as indirect obj.

⁴⁷ cōgitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, thought; *cp.* cōgitō

⁴⁸ excellēs, *gen.* -ntis, superior, remarkable

⁴⁹ cōnfōrmō (1), mold

⁵⁰ quispiam, quae-, quid-, someone

⁵¹ prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, transmit, reveal

⁵² doctrīna, -ae, instruction

⁵³ efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, lift up, extol

⁵⁴ ērudīō (4), educate, train

⁵⁵ cōnfīrmō (1), assert

⁵⁶ valuisse ad laudem, to be powerful toward praise = to have led to praise; *inf. in indirect discourse*

⁵⁷ idem ego, I the same person = I also

⁵⁸ maintain

⁵⁹ eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary

⁶⁰ illustris, -e, noble, brilliant

⁶¹ accēdō here = be added

⁶² cōnfōrmātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, molding, shaping

⁶³ nesciō quis, nesciō quid, *indef. prn., lit.* I know not who/what = some (uncertain) person or thing; the nesciō remains unchanged in this phrase.

⁶⁴ singulāris, -e, unique, extraordinary

⁶⁵ existō, -ere, exstīti, arise, appear, exist

Quod sī nōn hic tantus fructus ostenderetur, et sī ex hīs studiīs dēlectātiō
sōla peteretur, tamen, ut opīnor, hanc animī remissiōnem hūmānissimam ac
liberālissimam iūdicārētis. Nam cēterae⁶⁶ neque temporum⁶⁷ sunt neque
30 aetātum omnium neque locōrum; at haec studia adulēscēntiam alunt, senec-
tūtem oblectant, rēs secundās ōnant, adversīs perfrugium ac sōlācium
praebent, dēlectant domī, nōn impediunt forīs, pernoctant nōbiscum, per-
egrīnantur, rūsticantur. (Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 6.12–7.16, excerpts).

ANECDOTES FROM CICERO (11–15)

11. A. DEATH OF A PUPPY (EXAMPLE OF AN OMEN)

L. Paulus¹ cōsul iterum, cum eī² bellum³ ut cum rēge Perse⁴ gereret⁵
obtigisset,⁶ ut eā ipsā diē domum ad vesperum rediit, fīliolam⁷ suam Ter-
tiam,⁸ quae tum erat admodum⁹ parva, ōsculāns¹⁰ animadvertit¹¹ trīsticu-
lam.¹² “Quid est,¹³” inquit, “mea Tertia? Quid¹⁴ trīstis es?” “Mī pater,” in-
5 quit, “Persa¹⁵ periit.” Tum ille artius¹⁶ puellam complexus,¹⁷ “Accipiō,” in-
quit, “mea fīlia, ōmen.”¹⁸ Erat autem mortuus catellus¹⁹ eō nōmine. (Cicero,
Dē Dīvmātiōne 1.46.103)

12. B. TOO CONSCIENTIOUS (AN EXAMPLE OF IRONY)

Est huic fīnitimum¹ dissimulātiōnē² cum honestō³ verbō vitiōsa⁴ rēs ap-
pellātur: ut cum Āfricānus cēnsor⁵ tribū⁶ movēbat eum centuriōnem⁷ quī in

⁶⁶ cēterae (remissiōnēs or dēlectātiōnēs)

⁶⁷ gen. of possession used in predicate = predicate genitive; supply **omnium** with each gen.: the other delights do not belong to all times . . .

11

¹ L. Aemilius Paulus Macedonicus was the father of Scipio Africanus Minor. As consul in 168 B.C. he brought the war with Macedonia to a successful conclusion by the defeat of the Macedonian King, Perseus. This explains why, before setting out against Perseus, he interpreted the chance words **Persa periit** as a favorable omen. The Romans believed seriously in the importance of omens.

² dat. with obtigisset

³ obj. of gereret

⁴ Perseus, -eī; Perse abl.

⁵ ut . . . gereret, noun clause subject of obtigisset

⁶ obtingō, -ere, obtingī, touch, fall to one's lot

⁷ fīli (a) with the diminutive ending -ola, little daughter

⁸ Tertia, a name meaning third. The Romans often used ordinal numerals as names, though commonly without strict regard to the number of children they had; e.g., Secundus, Quīntus, Sextus, Decimus.

⁹ adv., very

¹⁰ ōsculor, -ārī, -ātus sum, kiss

¹¹ anim-ad-vertō, turn the mind to, notice, observe

¹² trīsticulus, -a, -um, rather sad, diminutive of tristis

¹³ What is it? What is the matter?

¹⁴ quid = cūr

¹⁵ Persa, the name of her pet

¹⁶ adv., closely

¹⁷ complexor, -ī, -plexus sum, embrace

¹⁸ ōmen, -inis, n., omen, sign; i.e., the omen of his victory over Perseus

¹⁹ catellus, -ī, puppy

12

¹ fīnitimus, -a, -um, neighboring; akin to: est fīnitimum, it is akin to

² dissimulātiō, -ōnis, f., irony

³ honestus, -a, -um, honorable, fine

⁴ vitiōsus, -a, -um, faulty, bad

⁵ cēnsor, -ōris, m., censor, Roman magistrate among whose duties was the assigning of citizens to their proper rank according to their property and service and the removal of names from the census rolls when citizens proved unworthy of citizenship.

⁶ tribus, -ūs, f., tribe, a political division of the Roman people

⁷ centuriō, -ōnis, m., centurion

- Paulī pugnā⁸ nōn adfuerat,⁹ cum ille sē custōdiae causā dīceret in castrīs¹⁰ remānsisse quaereretque cūr ab eō notārētur¹¹: “Nōn amō,” inquit, “nimium dīligentēs.” (Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* 2.67.272)

13. C. QUAM MULTA NŌN DĒSĪDERŌ!

Sōcratēs, in pompā¹ cum magna vīs² aurī³ argentīque⁴ ferrētur, “Quam multa nōn dēsīderō!” inquit.

- Xenocratēs,⁵ cum lēgātī ab Alexandrō⁶ quīnquāgintā⁷ eī talenta⁸ attulissent (quae erat pecūnia temporibus illīs, Athēnīs praesertim,⁹ maxima), abdūxit lēgātōs ad cēnam in Acadēmīā¹⁰; iīs apposuit¹¹ tantum quod satis esset, nūllō apparātū.¹² Cum postrīdiē¹³ rogārent eum cui numerārī¹⁴ iubēret, “Quid? Vōs hesternā,¹⁵” inquit, “cēnulā¹⁶ nōn intellēxistis mē pecūniā nōn egēre?” Quōs cum trīstīōrēs vīdisset, trīgintā¹⁷ minās¹⁸ accēpit nē aspernārī¹⁹ rēgis līberālītatem²⁰ vidērētur.

- At vērō Diogenēs²¹ liberius,²² ut²³ Cynicus, Alexandrō rogantī ut dīceret sī quid opus²⁴ esset: “Nunc quidem paululum,²⁵” inquit, “ā sōle.²⁶” Offēcerat²⁷ vidēlicet²⁸ aprīcantī.²⁹ (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.32.91–92)

14. D. WHAT MAKES A GOOD APPETITE

Dārēus¹ in fugā² cum aquam turbidam³ et cadāveribus⁴ inquinātam⁵ bibisset, negāvit umquam sē bibisse iūcundius. Numquam vidēlicet sitiēns⁶

⁸ pugna, -ae, battle

⁹ ad-sum, be present

¹⁰ castra, -ōrum, n. pl., camp

¹¹ notō (1), mark, here with the nota cēnsōria placed opposite a citizen's name to indicate his removal from the citizen list in disgrace.

13

¹ pompa, -ae, parade

² vīs here = quantity (cp. cōpia)

³ aurum, -ī, gold

⁴ argentum, -ī, silver

⁵ Xenocratēs, -is, pupil of Plato and later head of the Academy

⁶ Alexander, -drī

⁷ indecl. adj., fifty

⁸ talentum, -ī, a talent, a large sum of money

⁹ adv., especially

¹⁰ Acadēmīa, -ae, f., the Academy, a gymnasium in a grove just outside of Athens. Here Plato established his school, which might be called the first European university.

¹¹ ap-pōnō, place near, serve

¹² apparātus, -ūs, equipment, splendor

¹³ adv., on the next day

¹⁴ numerō (1), count, pay out; sc. pecūniam as subject of numerārī

¹⁵ hesternus, -a, -um, of yesterday

¹⁶ cēnula, -ae, diminutive of cēna

¹⁷ indecl. adj., thirty

¹⁸ mina, -ae, a Greek coin

¹⁹ aspernor, -ārī, -ātus sum, spurn, despise

²⁰ līberālītās, -tātis, f., generosity

²¹ L.I. 9 n. 38

²² adv., freely, boldly

²³ as a Cynic, being a Cynic

²⁴ opus (indecl.) est, is necessary: if he needed anything

²⁵ adv., a little

²⁶ i.e., you are blocking my sunlight

²⁷ officiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum + dat., be in the way, obstruct

²⁸ vidē-licet, adv. (you may see), clearly, evidently

²⁹ aprīcor, -ārī, -ātus sum, sun oneself

14

¹ Darius III, defeated by Alexander the Great in 331 B.C. The spelling Dārīus reflects later Greek pronunciation.

² fuga, -ae, flight

³ turbidus, -a, -um, turbid, roiled

⁴ cadāver, -eris, n., corpse (cp. cadaverous)

⁵ inquinātus, -a, -um, polluted

⁶ sitiō (4), be thirsty

biberat. Nec ēsuriēns⁷ Ptolemaeus⁸ ēderat,⁹ cui cum peragrantī¹⁰ Aegyptum,¹¹ comitibus¹² nōn cōnsecūtīs¹³ cibārius¹⁴ in casā pānis datus esset, nihil
 5 vīsum est illō pāne iūcundius. Sōcratem ferunt,¹⁵ cum ūsque ad vesperum contentius¹⁶ ambulāret quaesītumque esset¹⁷ ex eō quārē id faceret, respondisse sē, quō¹⁸ melius cēnāret, obsōnāre¹⁹ ambulandō famem.²⁰

Quid? Vīctum²¹ Lacedaemoniōrum in philitiīs²² nōnne vidēmus? Ubi²³ cum tyrannus cēnāvisset Dionysius, negāvit sē iūre²⁴ illō nigrō quod cēnae²⁵
 10 caput erat dēlectātum.²⁶ Tum is quī illa coxerat,²⁷ “Minimē mīrum²⁸; condīmenta²⁹ enim dēfuērunt.³⁰” “Quae tandem?” inquit ille. “Labor in vēnātū,³¹ sūdor,³² cursus ad Eurōtam,³³ famēs, sitis.³⁴ Hīs enim rēbus Lacedaemoniōrum epulae³⁵ condiuntur.³⁶”

Cōnfer sūdantēs,³⁷ ructantēs,³⁸ refertōs³⁹ epulīs tamquam⁴⁰ opīmōs
 15 bovēs.⁴¹ Tum intellegēs quī voluptātem maximē sequantur, eōs minimē cōnsequi⁴²; iūcunditātemque⁴³ vīctūs⁴⁴ esse in dēsideriō,⁴⁵ nōn in satietāte.⁴⁶ (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.34.97–98 and 100, excerpts)

15. E. THEMISTOCLES; FAME AND EXPEDIENCY

Themistoclēs fertur¹ Serīphiō² cuidam in iūrgiō³ respondisse, cum ille dīxisset nōn eum suā sed patriae glōriā splendōrem⁴ assecūtum⁵: “Nec her-

⁷ ēsuriō (4), be hungry

⁸ Which Egyptian king of this name is unknown.

⁹ edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum, eat (cp. edible)

¹⁰ per-agrō (1), wander through

¹¹ Aegyptus, -ī, f., Egypt

¹² comes, -itis, m., companion

¹³ cōn-sequor

¹⁴ cibārius . . . pānis, ordinary (coarse) bread; pānis, -is, m.

¹⁵ ferō here = report, say

¹⁶ contentē, strenuously, adv. from contendō, struggle

¹⁷ it had been asked of him, he had been asked

¹⁸ quō, regularly used instead of ut to introduce a purpose containing a comparative

¹⁹ obsōnō (1), buy provisions, here = provide (an appetite)

²⁰ famēs, -is, f., hunger

²¹ vīctus, -ūs, living, mode of living, food

²² philitia, -ōrum, n., public meals (for Spartan citizens of military age)

²³ ubi = among the Lacedaemonians

²⁴ iūs, iūris, n., soup

²⁵ dat. of purpose (S.S.)

²⁶ dēlectātum (esse)

²⁷ coquō, -ere, coxī, coctum, cook (cp. concoct)

²⁸ mīrus, -a, -um, wonderful, surprising

²⁹ condīmentum, -ī, n., seasoning, condiment

³⁰ dē-sum, be lacking

³¹ vēnātus, -ūs, m., hunting

³² sūdor, -ōris, m., sweat

³³ at the Eurotas (Eurōtās, -ae, m., river on which Sparta was located)

³⁴ sitis, -is, f., thirst

³⁵ epulae, -ārum, f. pl., banquet

³⁶ condiō (4), season, spice

³⁷ sūdō (1), sweat

³⁸ ructō (1), belch

³⁹ refertus, -a, -um, stuffed, crammed, + abl.

⁴⁰ adv., as if, so to speak

⁴¹ opīmus, -a, -um, fertile, fat; bōs, bovis, m., ox

⁴² cōn-sequor, follow up, gain

⁴³ iūcunditās, -tātis, f., pleasure, charm

⁴⁴ n. 21 above; here = food

⁴⁵ dēsiderium, -ī, desire

⁴⁶ satietās, -tātis, f., abundance, satisfy

15

(For more about Themistocles and Aristides see selections 19 and 20 below.)

¹ is said, is reported

² Serīphius, -ī, inhabitant of Seriphos, a small island in the Aegean Sea.

³ iūrgium, -ī, quarrel

⁴ splendor, -ōris, m., distinction, honor

⁵ as-sequor = ad-sequor, gain, attain

cule,⁶” inquit, “sī ego Serīphius essem, nec tū, sī Athēniēnsis⁷ essēs, clārus umquam fuissēs.” (Cicero, *Dē Senectūte*, 3.8)

- 5 Themistoclēs, post victōriam eius bellī quod cum Persīs⁸ fuit, dīxit in cōtiōne⁹ sē habēre cōsiliū reī pūblicae salūtāre,¹⁰ sed id scīrī nōn opus esse.¹¹ Postulāvit¹² ut aliquem populus daret quīcum¹³ commūnicāret.¹⁴ Datus est Aristīdēs. Huic¹⁵ ille (dixit) classem¹⁶ Lacedaemoniōrum, quae subducta esset¹⁷ ad Gythēum,¹⁸ clam¹⁹ incendi²⁰ posse, quō factō frangī²¹ Lacedaemoniōrum opēs necesse esset.²² Quod Aristīdēs cum audisset, in cōtiōnem magnā expectātiōne²³ vēnit dīxitque perūtīle²⁴ esse cōsiliū quod Themistoclēs adferret, sed minimē honestum. Itaque Athēniēnsēs, quod honestum nōn esset, id nē ūtile quidem putāvērunt, tōtamque eam rem, quam nē audierant quidem, auctōre Aristīde²⁵ repudiāvērunt.²⁶ (Cicero, *Dē Officiis* 3.11.48–49)

16. GET THE TUSCULAN COUNTRY HOUSE READY¹

Tullius² S.D.³ Terentiae⁴ Suae

- In Tusculānum⁵ nōs ventūrōs⁶ putāmus aut Nōnīs⁷ aut postrīdiē.⁸ Ibi ut⁹ sint omnia parāta. Plūrēs¹⁰ enim fortasse¹¹ nōbīscum erunt et, ut arbitror, diūtius ibi commorābimur.¹² Lābrum¹³ sī in balneō¹⁴ nōn est, ut¹⁵ sit; item¹⁶
5 cētera quae sunt ad vīctum et ad valētūdinem¹⁷ necessariā.¹⁸ Valē. Kal. Oct.¹⁹ dē Venusīnō.²⁰ (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiārēs* 14.20)

16

¹ A homely little letter which serves as an antidote to Cicero's usually lofty concerns.

² (Mārcus) Tullius (Cicerō)

³ salūtē dīcit

⁴ Terentia, -ae, wife of Cicero

⁵ Tusculānum, -ī, n., Tusculan estate (praedium) south-east of Rome in Latium

⁶ ventūrōs (esse)

⁷ Nōnae, -arum, the Nones were the seventh day in March, May, July, October; the fifth day in other months.

⁸ adv., the day after

⁹ (curā) ut, take care that

¹⁰ plūrēs, several people

¹¹ adv., perhaps

¹² com-moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, remain

¹³ lābrum, -ī, a wash basin or a bath

¹⁴ balneum, -ī, bathroom

¹⁵ (cūrā) ut

¹⁶ adv., likewise

¹⁷ valētūdō, -inis, f., health

¹⁸ necessariū, -a, -um = Eng.

¹⁹ Kalendīs Octōbribus, on the Kalends of October = October 1st

²⁰ Sent from his estate at Venusia, in Apulia. The year is said to be 47 B.C.

⁶ hercule, a mild oath, by Hercules

⁷ Athēniēnsis, -e, Athenian

⁸ Persae, -arum, m., the Persians

⁹ cōtiō, -ōnis, f., assembly

¹⁰ salūtāris, -e, salutary, advantageous; modifies cōsiliū

¹¹ opus est, it is necessary

¹² postulō (1), demand, request

¹³ quīcum, quī = old abl. form + cum, with whom

¹⁴ commūnicō (1), communicate, share

¹⁵ huic = the last mentioned, Aristides

¹⁶ classis, -is, f., fleet

¹⁷ sub-dūcō, beach; subj. because subord. clause in indirect statement (see S.S.). Because of their shallow draft and small size, ancient ships were more often beached than anchored.

¹⁸ Gythēum, -ī, the port of Sparta

¹⁹ adv., secretly

²⁰ incendiō, -ere, -cendi, -censum, set on fire, burn

²¹ frangō, -ere, -frēgī, -fractum, break, crush

²² necesse (indecl. adj.) est, it is necessary

²³ expectātiō, -ōnis, f., expectation, abl. of attendant circumstance

²⁴ per-ūtīlis, -e, very useful, advantageous

²⁵ auctōre Aristīde, abl. abs.

²⁶ repudiō (1), reject

17. LIVY ON THE DEATH OF CICERO¹

M. Cicerō sub adventum² triumvirōrum³ cesserat urbe . . . Prīmō in Tusculānum⁴ fūgit; inde transversīs⁵ itineribus in Formiānum,⁶ ut ab Caiētā⁷ nāvem cōnscēnsūrus,⁸ proficiscitur. Unde aliquotiēns⁹ in altum¹⁰ pro-
 5 vinctum,¹¹ cum modo ventī adversī rettulissent, modo ipse iactātiōnem¹² nā-
 vis . . . patī nōn posset, taedium¹³ tandem eum et fugae¹⁴ et vītāe cēpit,
 regressusque¹⁵ ad superiōrem villam . . . "Moriar," inquit, "in patriā saepe
 servātā." Satis cōnstat¹⁶ servōs fortiter fidēliterque parātōs fuisse ad dīmican-
 dum,¹⁷ ipsum dēpōnī lectīcam¹⁸ et quiētōs¹⁹ patī quod sors²⁰ inīqua²¹ cōgeret
 iussisse. Prōminentī²² ex lectīcā praebentīque immōtam cervīcem²³ caput
 10 praecīsum est.²⁴

Manūs quoque, scrīpsisse in Antōnium aliquid exprobrantēs,²⁵ praecīdē-
 runt. Ita relātum caput ad Antōnium, iussūque eius inter duās manūs in
 Rōstrīs positum,²⁶ ubi ille cōsul, ubi saepe cōsulāris,²⁷ ubi eō ipsō annō
 adversus²⁸ Antōnium . . . (quanta nūlla umquam hūmāna vōx²⁹!) cum ad-
 15 mīrātiōne³⁰ ēloquentiae³¹ audītus fuerat. Vix attollentēs³² prae lacrimīs
 oculōs, hominēs intuērī³³ trucīdātā³⁴ membra³⁵ eius poterant. Vixit trēs et
 sexāgintā³⁶ annōs . . . Vir magnus, ācer, memorābilis³⁷ fuit, et in cuius laudēs
 persequendās³⁸ Cicerōne laudātōre opus³⁹ fuerit.⁴⁰ (Livy 120.50)

17

¹ In 43 B.C.² adventus, -ūs, arrival³ triumvirī, -ōrum, *m.*, commission of three men, the second triumvirate composed of Antony, Octavian, and Lepidus⁴ his Tusculan villa⁵ transversus, -a, -um, transverse, crosswise⁶ Formiānum, -ī, *n.*, estate near Formiae, which was nearly 100 miles south of Rome on the Appian Way near the sea⁷ Caiēta, -ae, *f.*, a sea-coast town not far from Formiae⁸ as he was going to board ship (cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum, ascend)⁹ adv., several times¹⁰ altum, -ī, *n.*, the deep, the sea¹¹ prō-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, carry forward; provectum (having sailed out) goes with eum below¹² iactātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, tossing¹³ taedium, -iī, weariness, disgust¹⁴ fuga, -ae, flight; fugae depends on taedium¹⁵ regredior, -ī, -gressus sum, go back¹⁶ cōnstat, it is agreed¹⁷ dīmīcō (1), fight (to the finish)¹⁸ lectīca, -ae, litter¹⁹ (eōs) quiētōs, them quiet, *subj. of patī; but we say:* them quietly. (quiētus, -a, -um)²⁰ sors, sortis, *f.*, lot²¹ inīquus, -a, -um, unfavorable, unjust (in-aequus)²² prōmineō, -ēre, -uī, jut out, step forth: (eī) prōminentī, for him stepping forth = as he stepped forth, *dat. of reference or interest*²³ cervīx, -vīcis, *f.*, neck²⁴ praecīdō, -ere, -cīdī, cīsum (prae-caedō, cut), cut off—by the soldiers whom Antony had sent to execute Cicero in reprisal for Cicero's "Philippics" denouncing Antony. Such were the horrors of the proscriptions.²⁵ exprobrō (1), reproach, charge: (militēs), exprobrantēs (manūs) scrīpsisse aliquid, manūs praecīdērunt²⁶ positum, *sc. est*²⁷ cōsulāris, -is, *m.*, ex-consul²⁸ adversus, *prep. + acc.*, against²⁹ quanta . . . vōx (fuerat), how great no voice had been = greater than any voice had been³⁰ admirātiō, -ōnis, *f.* = Eng.³¹ ēloquentia, -ae, *f.*; ēloquentiae, *obj. gen.* (S.S.)³² attollō, -ere, raise, lift³³ intueor, -ērī, -tuitus sum, look at³⁴ trucīdō (1), cut to pieces, butcher³⁵ membrum, -ī, member (of the body), limb³⁶ indecl. *adj.*, sixty³⁷ memorābilis, -e, remarkable, memorable³⁸ per-sequor, follow up, set forth³⁹ opus est + *abl.* = there is need of (Cicero)⁴⁰ fuerit, *perf. subj.*, potential *subj.*, there would be need of

18. MILTIADES AND THE BATTLE OF MARATHON¹

Eīsdem temporibus Persārum rēx Dārēus, ex Asiā in Eurōpam² exercitū trāiectō,³ Scythīs⁴ bellum īferre⁵ dēcrēvit. Pontem fēcīt in Histrō⁶ flūmine, quā⁷ cōpiās trādūceret.⁸ Eius pontis, dum ipse abesset,⁹ custōdēs¹⁰ relīquit prīncipēs quōs sēcum ex Iōniā et Aeolide¹¹ dūxerat; quibus singulārum¹² urbium perpetua dederat imperia. Sīc enim facillimē putāvit sē¹³ Graecā linguā loquentēs¹⁴ quī Asiā incolerent¹⁵ sub suā retentūrum¹⁶ potestāte, sī amīcīs suīs oppida¹⁷ tuenda¹⁸ trādidisset.¹⁹ In hōc²⁰ fuit tum numerō Miltiadēs.²¹ Hic, cum crēbrī²² adferrent nūntiū²³ male rem gerere Dārēum premīque ā Scythīs, hortātus est pontis custōdēs nē ā Fortūnā²⁴ datam occāsiōnem liberandae Graeciae dīmitterent.²⁵

Nam sī cum eīs cōpiīs, quās sēcum trānsportārat,²⁶ interīssset Dārēus, nōn solum Eurōpam fore²⁷ tūtā,²⁸ sed etiam eōs quī Asiā incolerent Graecī genere²⁹ liberōs ā Persārum futūrōs dominātiōne³⁰ et periculō. Id facile effīcī³¹ posse³²; ponte enim rescissō³³ rēgem vel³⁴ hostium ferrō vel inopiā³⁵ paucīs diēbus interitūrum. Ad hoc cōnsilium cum plērīque³⁶ ac-

18

¹ 490 B.C., the first major battle of the Persian wars and one of the most illustrious victories in the apparently unending conflict between democracies and autocracies (despotisms): the relatively few Athenians, practically alone, against the hordes of the Persian autocracy.

² Eurōpa, -ae, Europe

³ trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, transfer

⁴ Scythae, -ārum, m., the Scythians, a nomadic people of southeastern Europe; Scythīs, dat. with compound verbs

⁵ bellum īn-ferō (-ferre, -tulī, -lātus), make war upon, + dat.

⁶ Hister, -trī, m., the Danube

⁷ quā, rel. adv. instead of rel. prn., where, by which, referring to pontem

⁸ trā (= trāns)-dūcō. Why the subj. in the rel. clause?

⁹ ab-sum, be away, be absent; abesset, subj. of implied indirect statement, the thought in his mind being: "while I shall be away"

¹⁰ as guards

¹¹ Ionia and Aeolis, Greek sections of Asia Minor

¹² singulī, -ae, -a (pl.), separate, one each

¹³ sē, acc., subj. of retentūrum (esse)

¹⁴ the Greek-speaking peoples, obj. of retentūrum

¹⁵ incolō, -ere, -uī, inhabit

¹⁶ retentūrum (esse); re-tineō

¹⁷ oppidum, -ī, town; occasionally city

¹⁸ tuenda, (the towns) to be protected = the protection of the towns (tueor, -ēri, tūtus sum, look at, protect)

¹⁹ future more vivid condition in indirect statement: eōs

retinēbō sī amīcīs oppida trādiderō.

²⁰ hōc modifies numerō. Note carefully that a characteristic of Nepos' style is the fondness for separating modifiers from the words which they modify. Be sure to match up such separated words accurately according to the canons of agreement.

²¹ Miltiadēs, -is, m., Miltiades, Athenian general, hero of Marathon, who many years before the Battle of Marathon had been sent by the Athenians to rule over the Thracian Chersonesus, a peninsula west of the Hellespont.

²² crēber, -bra, -brum, numerous

²³ nūntius, -iī, messenger

²⁴ Fortūna is here regarded as a person (deity). Why is ā used?

²⁵ dī-mittō, let go, lose

²⁶ trānsportō (1), transport, take across; trānsportārat = trānsportāverat

²⁷ Indirect statement depending on the idea of saying in hortātus est of the preceding sentence; direct form: sī Dārēus interierit, Eurōpa erit tūta. inter-eō, perish

²⁸ tūtus, -a, -um

²⁹ abl. of specification (S.S.), Greek in race or by race

³⁰ dominātiō, -ōnis, f. = Eng.

³¹ ef-ficiō, accomplish

³² still indirect statement

³³ rescindō, -ere, rescidī, rescissum, cut down

³⁴ vel . . . vel, either . . . or

³⁵ inopia, -ae, need, privation

³⁶ plērīque, -ōrumque, m., most people, very many (plērusque, -aque, -umque, the greater part, very many)

cēderent, Histiaeus³⁷ Mīlēsius . . . [dixit] adeō³⁸ sē abhorrēre³⁹ ā cēterōrum cōnsiliō ut nihil putet ipsīs ūtilius quam cōfirmārī⁴⁰ rēgnū⁴¹ Persārum. Huius cum sententiam plūrimī essent secūtī, Miltiadēs . . . Chersonēsum relīquit ac rūsus⁴² Athēnās dēmigrāvīt.⁴³ Cuius⁴⁴ ratiō etsī nōn valuit, tamen
 20 magnopere est laudanda cum amīcior omnium libertātī quam suae fuerit dominātiōnī.

Dārēus autem, cum ex Eurōpā in Asiam redīsset, hortantibus amicīs ut Graeciam redigeret⁴⁵ in suam potestātem, classem quīngentārum⁴⁶ nāvium comparāvīt⁴⁷ eīque⁴⁸ Dātim praefēcīt⁴⁹ et Artaphernem,⁵⁰ eīsque ducenta⁵¹
 25 (mīlia) peditum,⁵² decem equitum⁵³ mīlia dedit—causam interserēns⁵⁴ sē hostem esse Athēniēnsibus quod eōrum auxiliō Iōnes⁵⁵ Sardīs⁵⁶ expugnās-sent⁵⁷ suaque⁵⁸ praesidia interfēcissent. Illī praefectī⁵⁹ rēgiī,⁶⁰ classe ad Euboeam⁶¹ appulsā⁶² celeriter Eretriam⁶³ cēpērunt, omnēsque eius gentis cīvēs abreptōs⁶⁴ in Asiam ad rēgem mīsērunt. Inde⁶⁵ ad Atticam⁶⁶ accessērunt ac
 30 suās cōpiās in campum⁶⁷ Marathōna⁶⁸ dēdūxērunt. Is abest ab oppidō circiter⁶⁹ mīlia passuum⁷⁰ decem.

Hōc tumultū⁷¹ Athēniēnsēs tam propinquō⁷² tamque magnō permōtī⁷³ auxilium nūsquam⁷⁴ nisi ā Lacedaemoniīs petīvērunt Phīdippumque,⁷⁵ cursōrem eius generis quī hēmerodromoe⁷⁶ vocantur, Lacedaemonem⁷⁷ mīsē-

³⁷ Histiaeus, -ī, m., tyrant of Miletus in Asia Minor

³⁸ adv., so, to such a degree

³⁹ ab-horreō, -ēre, -uī, shrink from, be averse to

⁴⁰ cōfirmō (1), strengthen

⁴¹ subject of cōfirmārī

⁴² adv., again

⁴³ dēmigrō (1), depart (cp. migrate)

⁴⁴ conjunctive use of relative

⁴⁵ redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, reduce

⁴⁶ quīngentī, -ae, -a, 500

⁴⁷ comparāvīt here = strong form of parāvīt

⁴⁸ eī (= classī), dat. with compounds

⁴⁹ prae-ficio, + dat., put in charge or command of

⁵⁰ Dātis, -tidis, acc. Dātim, Datis, a general; Artaphernēs, -is, Artaphernes, nephew of Darius

⁵¹ ducentī, -ae, -a, 200

⁵² pedes, -itis, m., foot-soldier

⁵³ eques, equitis, m., horseman

⁵⁴ interserō, -ere, allege

⁵⁵ Iōnes, -um, m., the Ionians, a Greek people inhabiting the central western coast of Asia Minor; -es, Greek ending

⁵⁶ Sardēs, -ium, acc. Sardīs, Sardis, capital of the Persian province of Lydia in western Asia Minor

⁵⁷ expugnō (1), take by storm

⁵⁸ sua, refers to Sardis

⁵⁹ praefectus, -ī, commander, deputy

⁶⁰ rēgius, -a, -um, royal

⁶¹ Euboea, -ae, Euboea, a large island off the eastern

shore of central Greece

⁶² appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive, bring to land

⁶³ Eretria, -ae, Eretria, a city of the western central coast of Euboea

⁶⁴ ab-ripiō = ēripiō; abreptōs . . . misērunt, they carried away and sent to

⁶⁵ inde, adv., from that place

⁶⁶ Attica, -ae, Attica, district in central Greece of which the capital was Athens (somewhat unusually called an oppidum in the next sentence)

⁶⁷ campus, -ī, field, plain

⁶⁸ Marathōn, -ōnis, acc. -ōna, f., Marathon

⁶⁹ adv., about

⁷⁰ passus, -ūs, pace (ca. 5'); mīlia passuum, thousands of paces = miles

⁷¹ tumultus, -ūs, disturbance, uprising

⁷² propinquus, -a, -um, near, neighboring

⁷³ per-moveō, move thoroughly, trouble

⁷⁴ adv., nowhere

⁷⁵ Phīdippus, -ī, m., Phidippus, an Athenian courier (cursor, -ōris, m., runner)

⁷⁶ hēmerodromus, -ī, m. (-dromoe, Gk. nom. pl.), day runner (Gk. word), professional runner. Herodotus says that Phidippus (or Phidippides) covered the 140 miles between Athens and Sparta in two days. Quī agrees with hēmerodromoe rather than generis since a rel. pron. agrees with a pred. noun rather than with the antecedent.

⁷⁷ Lacedaemōn, -onis, f., Lacedaemonia, Sparta

35 runt ut nūntiāret quam celerrimō opus esse⁷⁸ auxiliō. Domī autem creant⁷⁹ decem praetōrēs,⁸⁰ quī exercituī praeessent,⁸¹ in eīs Miltiadem; inter quōs magna fuit contentiō⁸² utrum moenibus sē dēfenderent an obviam⁸³ irent hostibus aciēque⁸⁴ dēcernerent. Ūnus⁸⁵ Miltiadēs maximē nītēbātur⁸⁶ ut prīmō tempore castra fierent⁸⁷ . . .

40 Hōc tempore nūlla cīvitas Athēniēnsibus auxiliō⁸⁸ fuit praeter Plataeēnsēs⁸⁹; ea mīlle mīsīt mīlitum.⁹⁰ Itaque hōrum adventū⁹¹ decem mīlia armātōrum⁹² complēta sunt,⁹³ quae manus mīrābilī⁹⁴ flagrabat⁹⁵ pugnandī cupiditāte; quō⁹⁶ factum est⁹⁷ ut plūs quam collēgae⁹⁸ Miltiadēs valēret.⁹⁹

Eius ergō auctōritāte impulsī¹⁰⁰ Athēniēnsēs cōpiās ex urbe ēdūxerunt
45 locōque¹⁰¹ idōneō castra fēcērunt. Dein¹⁰² posterō¹⁰³ diē sub montis rādīcibus¹⁰⁴ aciē regiōne¹⁰⁵ instrūctā¹⁰⁶ nōn apertissimā¹⁰⁷—namque¹⁰⁸ arborēs multīs locīs erant rārae¹⁰⁹—proelium commīsērunt¹¹⁰ hōc cōnsiliō ut et montium altitūdine¹¹¹ tegerentur¹¹² et arborum tractū¹¹³ equitātus¹¹⁴ hostium impedīrētur, nē multitudīne¹¹⁵ clauderentur.¹¹⁶ Dātis, etsī nōn aequum locum¹¹⁷
50 vidēbat suīs, tamen frētus¹¹⁸ numerō cōpiārum suārum cōnflīgere¹¹⁹ cupiēbat, eōque¹²⁰ magis quod, priusquam¹²¹ Lacedaemonī subsidīō¹²² venīrent, dīmīcāre ūtile arbitrābātur.

⁷⁸ opus est + abl. (of means), there is need of, an impersonal construction in which opus remains indeclinable; opus esse, inf. in ind. statement with auxiliō in abl.

⁷⁹ creant, historical present

⁸⁰ praetor, -ōris, called stratēgoi, generals, by the Athenians

⁸¹ prae-sum + dat., be in charge of; why subj.?

⁸² contentiō, -ōnis, f., controversy

⁸³ obviam (adv.) ire + dat., go to meet

⁸⁴ aciēs, -ēi, f., line of battle

⁸⁵ alone, i.e., of the ten generals

⁸⁶ nītor, nītī, nīxus sum, strive labor

⁸⁷ that a camp should be made = to take the field

⁸⁸ dat. of purpose (S.S.)

⁸⁹ Plataeēnsēs, -ium, m., the men of Plataea, a city in Boeotia just over the border from Attica

⁹⁰ mīlle here = a noun with gen. of whole mīlitum. This is regular with mīlia but uncommon with mīlle.

⁹¹ adventus, -ūs, approach

⁹² armātī, -ōrum, armed men

⁹³ compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill out, complete

⁹⁴ mīrābilis, -e, wonderful, extraordinary; modifies cupiditāte

⁹⁵ flagrō (1), burn, be excited

⁹⁶ because of which = and because of this

⁹⁷ it happened that

⁹⁸ collēga, -ae, m., colleague

⁹⁹ plūs . . . valēret, he had power more than = he had

more power or influence than, he prevailed over. valēret, why subj.?

¹⁰⁰ impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, impel

¹⁰¹ locō, place where, no prep. necessary with locō

¹⁰² dein = deinde

¹⁰³ posterus, -a, -um, next following

¹⁰⁴ rādīx, -īcis, f., root, base

¹⁰⁵ regiō, -ōnis, f., region

¹⁰⁶ instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, draw up (battle line)

¹⁰⁷ interlocked word order: aciē instrūctā (in) regiōne nōn apertissimā; apertus, -a, -um, open

¹⁰⁸ namque, conj., more emphatic form of nam

¹⁰⁹ rārus, -a, -um, scattered: there were scattered trees

¹¹⁰ proelium committere, join battle

¹¹¹ altitūdō, -inis, f., height

¹¹² tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover, protect

¹¹³ tractus, -ūs, dragging

¹¹⁴ equitātus, -ūs, cavalry

¹¹⁵ multitudō, -inis, f., large number

¹¹⁶ claudō, here enclose, surround

¹¹⁷ locum (esse) nōn aequum suīs

¹¹⁸ frētus, -a, -um, + abl., relying on

¹¹⁹ cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, fight (cp. conflict)

¹²⁰ eō, adv., on that account

¹²¹ priusquam and antequam, before, + indicative denote an actual fact; + subjunctive denote anticipation as here: before they could come

¹²² dat.

Itaque in aciem peditum centum (mīlia), equitum decem mīlia prōdūxit proeliumque commisit. In quō¹²³ tantō¹²⁴ plūs¹²⁵ virtūte valuērunt Athēni-
 55 ēnsēs ut decemplex¹²⁶ numerum hostium prōfligārint,¹²⁷ adeōque eōs per-
 terruērunt ut Persae nōn castra sed nāvēs petierint. Quā pugnā nihil adhūc¹²⁸
 exsistit¹²⁹ nōbilis¹³⁰; nūlla enim umquam tam exigua¹³¹ manus tantās opēs
 prōstrāvit.¹³² (Nepos, *Miltiadēs* 3–5, excerpts)

19. THEMISTOCLES AND THE BATTLE OF SALAMIS¹

Themistoclēs² ad (bellum Corcȳraeum³) gerendum praetor ā populō fac-
 tus. nōn solum praesentī⁴ bellō sed etiam reliquō⁵ tempore ferōciōrem red-
 didit civitātem. Nam cum pecūnia pūblica, quae ex metallīs⁶ redībat, largīti-
 5 ōne⁷ magistrātuum⁸ quotannīs⁹ interīret,¹⁰ ille persuāsit populō ut eā
 pecūniā classis centum nāvium aedificārētur.¹¹ Quā¹² celeriter effectā,
 prīmum Corcȳraeōs frēgit,¹³ deinde maritimōs praedōnēs¹⁴ cōnsectandō¹⁵
 mare tūtum reddidit. In quō¹⁶ . . . perītissimōs¹⁷ bellī nāvālis¹⁸ fēcit Athēni-
 ēnsēs. Id quantae salūtī¹⁹ fuerit ūniversae²⁰ Graeciae, bellō cognitum est Per-
 sicō.²¹ Nam cum Xerxēs²² et marī et terrā²³ bellum ūniversae īnferret Eurō-
 10 pae, cum tantīs cōpiīs eam invāsīt²⁴ quantās neque ante nec postea habuit
 quisquam. Huius enim classis mille et ducentārum nāvium longārum²⁵ fuit,

¹²³ in quō (proeliō)

¹²⁴ abl. of degree of difference (S.S.)

¹²⁵ they were strong by so much more (strength) in re-
 spect to courage = they were so much more pow-
 erful in the matter of courage

¹²⁶ decemplex, gen. -plicis, adj., tenfold

¹²⁷ prōfligō (1), overthrow; prōfligārint = -gāverint.
Why subj.?

¹²⁸ adhūc, adv., thus far, hitherto

¹²⁹ exsistō, -ere, exstitī, arise, exist, be

¹³⁰ nōbilis, -e, famous

¹³¹ exiguus, -a, -um, small, scanty. "Never did so many
 owe so much to so few."

¹³² prōsternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātum, overthrow, throw
 down

19

¹ 480 B.C. The Battle of Salamis was the naval counter-
 part of Marathon, except that this time Athens had
 the help of Sparta.

² Themistoclēs, -is, or -ī, Themistocles, a talented
 Athenian.

³ Corcȳraeus, -a, -um, Corcyraen; Corcyra, a large is-
 land off the northwest coast of Greece. Actually
 Nepos is in error about Themistocles' command in
 the Corcyraean affair but he is correct about the
 tremendous importance of Themistocles' big-navy
 policy.

⁴ praesēns, gen. -ntis, adj., present

⁵ reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest of

⁶ metallum, -ī, a mine, silver mines at Laurium in
 Attica south of Athens

⁷ largītiō, -ōnis, f., generosity, liberality

⁸ magistrātus, -ūs, civil office; civil officer, magistrate
⁹ adv., annually

¹⁰ inter-eō, be lost, perish (cp. pereō): interīret, subjunc-
 tive introduced by cum; the subject is pecūnia.

¹¹ aedificō (1), build (cp. edifice)

¹² quā (classe)

¹³ frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, break, overcome

¹⁴ maritimus (-a, -um = Eng.; cp. mare) praedō (-ōnis,
 m., robber) = pirate; obj. of cōnsectandō

¹⁵ cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus sum, pursue, hound (cp. cōn-
 sequor)

¹⁶ in (doing) which

¹⁷ perītus, -a, -um, + gen., skilled in; obj. complement

¹⁸ nāvālis, -e, adj.; cp. nāvis

¹⁹ quantae salūtī, dat. of purpose with a dat. of reference,
 Graeciae (S.S.)

²⁰ ūniversus, -a, -um, entire, whole, as a whole

²¹ Persicus, -a, -um, Persian; the Second Persian War

²² Xerxēs, -is or -ī, m., Xerxes, son of Darius and king
 of the Persians, 485–465 B.C.

²³ marī et terrā (or terrā marīque) abl. of place where,
 without a prep., regular in this formula

²⁴ invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, move against, invade

²⁵ nāvium longārum, of 1,200 men-of-war; his fleet was
 of 1,200 ships = his fleet consisted of . . .

quam duo mīlia onerāriārum²⁶ sequēbantur. Terrestris²⁷ autem exercitus septingenta²⁸ (mīlia) peditum, equitum quadringenta²⁹ mīlia fuērunt.³⁰

- Cuius dē adventū³¹ cum fāma in Graeciam esset perlāta³² et maximē
 15 Athēniēnsēs petī dīcerentur propter pugnam Marathōniam, mīsērunt Delphōs³³ cōnsultum³⁴ quidnam³⁵ facerent³⁶ dē rēbus suīs. Dēliberantibus³⁷ Pŷthia³⁸ respondit ut moenibus līgneis³⁹ sē mūnīrent.⁴⁰ Id respōnsum⁴¹ quō⁴² valēret cum intellegeret nēmō, Themistoclēs persuāsit cōnsilium esse⁴³ Apollinis ut in nāvēs sē suaque⁴⁴ cōnferrent: eum⁴⁵ enim ā deō significārī⁴⁶ mūrum
 20 ligneum. Tālī cōnsiliō probātō, addunt⁴⁷ ad superiōrēs (nāvēs) totidem⁴⁸ nāvēs trirēmēs,⁴⁹ suaque omnia quae moverī poterant partim⁵⁰ Salamīna,⁵¹ partim Troezēna⁵² dēportant.⁵³ Arcem⁵⁴ sacerdotibus paucisque maiōribus nātū⁵⁵ ad sacra⁵⁶ prōcūranda⁵⁷ trādunt; reliquum⁵ oppidum relinquunt.

- Huius⁵⁸ cōnsilium plērisque cīvitatibus⁵⁹ displicēbat⁶⁰ et in terrā dīmīcārī⁶¹ magis placēbat. Itaque missī sunt dēlēctī⁶² cum Leōnidā,⁶³ Lacedaemoniōrum rēge, quī Thermopylās⁶⁴ occupārent⁶⁵ longiusque barbarōs⁶⁶ prō-

²⁶ onerāria, -ae (nāvis), transport

²⁷ terrestris exercitus, land army

²⁸ septingenti, -ae, -a, seven hundred

²⁹ quadringenti, -ae, -a, four hundred

³⁰ Though the subject, exercitus, is singular, fuērunt is plural according to the idea of plurality which precedes it.

³¹ adventus, -ūs, approach, arrival

³² per-ferō

³³ acc. of place to which. At Delphi was the famous oracle of Apollo.

³⁴ acc. supine of cōnsulō to express purpose = to consult

³⁵ quisnam, quidnam, who or what in the world

³⁶ both indirect question and deliberative subjunctive

³⁷ dēliberō (1), deliberate; (eīs) dēliberantibus, dat.

³⁸ Pŷthia, -ae, the Pythian priestess, who gave the response of Apollo

³⁹ ligneus, -a, -um, wooden

⁴⁰ mūniō (4), fortify, defend

⁴¹ respōnsum, -ī, n., the noun of respondeō, subject of valēret

⁴² quō (adv.) valēret, lit. in what direction this was strong or valid = in what way this applied or what this meant

⁴³ esse. The inf. shows that this is ind. state. with persuādeō and not the more common indirect command introduced by ut: he persuaded (them) that it was the advice of Apollo that they should be take . . .

⁴⁴ sua, their things = their possessions

⁴⁵ eum mūrum ligneum, that wooden wall (= the ships)

⁴⁶ significō (1), signify, mean; significārī, ind. state, depending on a verb of saying understood

⁴⁷ ad-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, add

⁴⁸ totidem, indecl. adj., just as many

⁴⁹ trirēmīs, -e, having three banks of oars

⁵⁰ partim, adv., partly

⁵¹ Salamīs, -inīs, acc. Salamīna, f., Salamis, island on west coast of Attica; acc. of place to which (islands as well as cities and towns)

⁵² Troezēn, -ēnis, f., Troezēna = Gk. acc. form, Troezen, southeastern part of Argolis, across the Saronic Gulf from Athens.

⁵³ dēportō (1), carry off

⁵⁴ the acropolis of the city of Athens.

⁵⁵ maiōrēs nātū, those greater in respect to birth = old men, elders

⁵⁶ sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred; sacra, n. pl. sacred vessels, or rites

⁵⁷ prōcūrō (1), take care of

⁵⁸ i.e., Themistocles'

⁵⁹ plērisque cīvitatibus, i.e., the allies of the Athenians; dat. with displicēbat

⁶⁰ dis-placeō

⁶¹ dīmīcārī, impers. pass., lit. that it be fought, but translate that the war be fought. The infinitive dīmīcārī is subject of placēbat.

⁶² dēlēctus, -a, -um, chosen, picked; chosen men

⁶³ Leōnidās, -ae, m., Leonidas

⁶⁴ Thermopylae, -ārum, f., Thermopylae, a mountain pass near the southern border of Thessaly

⁶⁵ occupō (1), seize

⁶⁶ barbarus, -a, -um, foreign, uncivilized, barbarian (commonly applied by a kind of ethnocentrism to those not of the Greek and Roman civilization)

gredī nōn paterentur. Iī vim hostium nōn sustinuērunt,⁶⁷ eōque locō omnēs interiērunt.¹⁰

At classis commūnis Graeciae trecentārum⁶⁸ nāvium, in quā ducentae⁶⁸
 30 erant Athēniēnsium,⁶⁹ primum apud Artemīsium⁷⁰ inter Euboeam continen-
 temque⁷¹ terram cum classiāriis⁷² rēgiis⁷³ cōflīxit.⁷⁴ Angustiās⁷⁵ enim The-
 mistoclēs quaerēbat, nē multitudīne⁷⁶ circumīrētur.⁷⁷ Hinc etsī parī proeliō⁷⁸
 discesserant, tamen eōdem locō nōn sunt ausī manēre, quod erat perīculum
 nē,⁷⁹ sī pars nāvium adversāriōrum⁸⁰ Euboeam superāset,⁸¹ ancipitē⁸² pre-
 35 merentur perīculō. Quō⁸³ factum est ut⁸⁴ ab Artemisiō discēderent et exad-
 versum⁸⁵ Athēnās apud Salamīna classem suam cōstituerent.⁸⁶

At Xerxēs, Thermopylīs expugnātis, prōtinus accessit astū,⁸⁷ idque,
 nūllis dēfendentibus, interfectis sacerdotibus quōs in arce invēnerat, incen-
 diō⁸⁸ dēlēvit. Cuius flammā perterriti⁸⁹ classiārīi cum manēre nōn audērent
 40 et plūrimī hortārentur ut domōs⁹⁰ suās discēderent moenibusque sē dēfen-
 derent, Themistoclēs ūnus restitit⁹¹ et ūniversōs⁹² parēs esse posse aiēbat,⁹³
 dispersōs⁹⁴ testābatur⁹⁵ peritūrōs; idque Eurybiadē,⁹⁶ rēgī Lacedaemoni-
 ōrum, quī tum summae⁹⁷ imperiī praeerat,⁹⁸ fore⁹⁹ adfirmābat.¹⁰⁰

Quem cum minus quam vellet movēret, noctū¹⁰¹ dē servīs suīs¹⁰² quem
 45 habuit¹⁰³ fidēlissimum ad rēgem mīsīt ut eī nūntiāret suīs verbīs¹⁰⁴ adversā-

⁶⁷ *sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum*, sustain; the subject is *īī* (= *eī*).

⁶⁸ See App. under Numerals (cardinals 200 and 300); *ducentae* (*nāvēs*)

⁶⁹ *predicate gen. of possession*: were of the Athenians = belonged to the Athenians

⁷⁰ *apud Artemīsium*, near Artemisium, promontory at northern tip of Euboea

⁷¹ *continēns terra, continentis terrae*, the mainland

⁷² *classiārius, -iī*, a marine (*lit.* a soldier of the fleet)

⁷³ *rēgius, -a, -um*, royal

⁷⁴ *confligō, -ere, -flīxī, -flictum*, to fight

⁷⁵ *angustiae, -ārum, f. pl.*, narrow place

⁷⁶ *multitūdō, -inis, f.*, large number, multitude

⁷⁷ *circum-eō*, surround

⁷⁸ *parī proeliō*, the battle was a draw

⁷⁹ *nē* = lest, similar to the construction after verbs of fearing

⁸⁰ *adversārius, -a, -um*, hostile; *adversārius, -iī, m.*, opponent, enemy

⁸¹ a simple fut. condition in a *nē*-clause. The original thought was *sī pars superāverit*, . . . *premēmur*; the fut. perf. indic. *superāverit* becomes plupf. subj. *superāset*.

⁸² *anceps, gen. ancipitis, adj.*, two-headed, double

⁸³ *quō* = *quārē*

⁸⁴ *result clause, subject of factum est*: = the result was that

⁸⁵ *exadversum, prep. + acc.*, opposite

⁸⁶ *cōstituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtum*, draw up, establish

⁸⁷ *astū, n. indecl.*, the city (= Athens), *obj. of accessit*

⁸⁸ *incendium, -iī*, burning, fire. The marks of this fire can still be seen on some of the marble pieces later built into the wall of the Acropolis.

⁸⁹ *per-terreō*

⁹⁰ *place to which without a preposition as in the singular domum*

⁹¹ *resistō, -ere, restitī*, make a stand, resist

⁹² all together (united) they could be equal (to the Persians)

⁹³ *imperf. of ait*

⁹⁴ *di-spergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersum*, scatter

⁹⁵ *testor, -ārī, -ātus sum*, testify, declare

⁹⁶ *Eurybiadēs, -is, m.*, Eurybiades; *Eurybiadē* depends on *adfirmābat*.

⁹⁷ *summa, -ae*, highest place

⁹⁸ *summae imperiī* (*gen. of whole*) *praeerat*, he was in charge of the highest part of the command = he was commander-in-chief

⁹⁹ *Subject of fore* (= *futūrum esse*) is *id*.

¹⁰⁰ *adfirmō* (1), assert, declare

¹⁰¹ *adv.*, at night

¹⁰² (*illum*) *dē servīs suīs*, that one of his slaves

¹⁰³ consider

¹⁰⁴ in his (Themistocles') own words, *i.e.*, in his own name

riōs eius¹⁰⁵ in fugā¹⁰⁶ esse; quī¹⁰⁷ sī discessissent,¹⁰⁸ maiōre cum labōre . . . (eum) bellum cōfectūrum, cum singulōs¹⁰⁹ cōsectārī cōgerētur; quōs sī statim aggredērētur,¹¹⁰ brevī (tempore) ūniversōs oppressūrum . . . Hāc rē audītā barbarus, nihil dolī¹¹¹ subesse¹¹² crēdēns, postrīdiē aliēnissimō¹¹³ sibi
 50 locō, contrā¹¹⁴ opportūnissimō¹¹⁵ hostibus, adeō angusto marī¹¹⁶ cōflīxit ut eius multītūdō nāvium explicārī nōn potuerit¹¹⁷ . . . Victus ergō est magis etiam cōsiliō Themistoclī quam armīs Graeciae . . . Sic ūnūs virī prū-
 dentīā¹¹⁸ Graecia liberāta est Eurōpaeque succubuit¹¹⁹ Asia.

Haec (est) altera victōria quae cum Marathōniō possit comparārī tro-
 55 paeō.¹²⁰ Nam parī modō apud Salamīna parvō numerō nāvium maxima post hominum memoriā classis est dēvicta.¹²¹ (Nepos, Themistoclēs 2–4, excerpts)

20. ARISTIDES THE JUST

Aristīdēs,¹ Lysimachī² fīlius, Athēniēnsis, aequālis³ ferē fuit Themistoclī⁴ atque cum eō dē prīncipātū⁵ contendit . . . In hīs autem cognitum est quantō⁶ antistāret⁷ ēloquentia innocentiae.⁸ Quamquam enim adeō excellēbat⁹ Aristīdēs abstinentiā¹⁰ ut ūnus post hominum memoriā . . . cog-
 5 nōmine¹¹ “Iūstus” sit appellātus, tamen ā Themistocle collabefactus¹² tes-
 tulā¹³ illā¹⁴ exsiliō¹⁵ decem annōrum¹⁶ multātus est.¹⁷

¹⁰⁵ adversāriōs (= hostēs) eius (= rēgis)

¹⁰⁶ fuga, -ae, flight

¹⁰⁷ quī = et eī

¹⁰⁸ sī discessissent . . . (eum) bellum cōfectūrum (esse), another simple fut. condition in ind. state.: sī discesserint (fut. perf.), tū bellum cōficiēs . . . ; cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, finish, accomplish.

¹⁰⁹ one at a time

¹¹⁰ aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, attack

¹¹¹ dolus, -ī, deceit, trick. What kind of gen. is dolī?

¹¹² sub-sum, be under, be concealed

¹¹³ aliēnus, -a, -um, foreign, unfavorable

¹¹⁴ adv., on the contrary

¹¹⁵ opportūnus, -a, -um, advantageous, referring to locō

¹¹⁶ abl. of place where without a preposition

¹¹⁷ The perf. subj. is not uncommon in result clauses in historical sequence.

¹¹⁸ prūdentia, -ae, foresight, discretion

¹¹⁹ succumbō, -ere, -cubui, submit, succumb

¹²⁰ Marathōniō tropaeō, trophy or victory at Marathon

¹²¹ dē-vincō, conquer completely

³ aequālis, -is, m., an equal in age, a contemporary

⁴ Themistoclī, here gen. of possession

⁵ prīncipātus, -ūs, first place, leadership

⁶ abl. of degree of difference (S.S.) depending on the idea of comparison in antistāret: how much

⁷ anti-stō, -āre, -stetī, stand before = excel

⁸ innocentia, -ae, harmlessness; integrity. Why dative?

⁹ excellō, -ere, -uī, -celsum, excel; excellēbat: note that quamquam (although) is used with the indic.

¹⁰ abstinentia, -ae, self-restraint, especially in matters involving public funds, uprightness; abstinentiā, abl. of specification (S.S.).

¹¹ cognōmen, -minis, n., here = epithet, appellative. Of the three regular Roman names (praenōmen, nōmen, cognōmen) the cognōmen (cp. cognōscō) seems to have originated as a kind of nickname.

¹² collabefiō, -fierī, -factus sum, be overthrown, be ruined

¹³ testula, -ae, (little potsherd), ostracism; testulā abl. of accordance or perhaps means. Look up the interesting history of ostracism, a political safety valve against tyranny.

¹⁴ illā, in the unusual position of following its noun = that famous

¹⁵ exsiliō, abl. of penalty (= a form of abl. of means)

¹⁶ decem annōrum, gen. of description

¹⁷ multō (1), punish

¹ Aristīdēs, -is, m., Aristides, Athenian statesman and general

² Lysimachus, -ī, Lysimachus

- Quī quidem cum intellegeret reprimi¹⁸ concitātam¹⁹ multitudinem nōn posse, cōdēnsque animadvertisset quendam scrībentem ut patriā pellerētur,²⁰ quaeſſe ab eō²¹ dīcitur quārē id faceret aut quid Aristīdēs commīſſet cūr²²
- 10 tantā poenā dignus dūcerētur. Cui ille respondit sē ignōrāre²³ Aristīdēn, sed sibi nōn placēre²⁴ quod tam cupidē labōrāſſet ut praeter cēterōs “Iūstus” appellārētur. Hic decem annōrum lēgitimam²⁵ poenam nōn pertulit. Nam postquam²⁶ Xerxēs in Graeciam dēſcendit,²⁷ ſextō ferē annō quam²⁸ erat expulsus, populī ſcītō²⁹ in patriam reſtitūtus est.³⁰
- 15 Interfuit³¹ autem pugnae nāvālī apud Salamīna quae facta est priusquam³² poenā liberārētur. Īdem³³ praetor fuit Athēniēſium apud Plataeās³⁴ in proeliō quō fūsus³⁵ (est) barbarōrum exercitus Mardoniusque³⁶ interfectus est . . . Huius aequitāte³⁷ factum est,³⁸ cum in commūnī classe eſſet Graeciae ſimul cum Pausaniā³⁹ (quō duce⁴⁰ Mardonius erat fugātus⁴¹), ut ſumma imperiū⁴² maritimī ab Lacedaemoniīs trāſſerrētur ad Athēniēſēs; namque ante id tempus et marī et terrā ducēs erant Lacedaemoniī. Tum autem et intemperantiā⁴³ Pausaniae et iūſtitiā factum est Aristīdis ut omnēs ferē cīvītātēs Graeciae ad Athēniēſium ſocietātem⁴⁴ ſē applicārent⁴⁵ et adverſus barbarōs hōs ducēs dēligerent⁴⁶ ſibi.
- 25 Quōs⁴⁷ quō⁴⁸ facilius repellerent,⁴⁹ ſī forte⁵⁰ bellum renovāre⁵¹ cōnarentur, ad clāſſēs aedificandās exercitūſque comparandōs⁵² quantum pecūniae quaeque⁵³ cīvītās daret, Aristīdēs dēlēctus est quī cōſtitueret,⁵⁴ eiſque

¹⁸ re-primō, -ere, -preſſī, -preſſum, press back, check

¹⁹ concitō (1), arouse, excite

²⁰ indirect command: writing that he should be driven out

²¹ eō, i.e., the quendam above

²² (what he had committed) that

²³ ignōrō (1), not know, be unacquainted with

²⁴ sibi nōn placēre (impersonal), it was not pleasing to him = he was displeased (because . . .)

²⁵ lēgitimus, -a, -um, fixed by law, legal

²⁶ postquam, conj. + perf. ind., after

²⁷ dēſcendō, -ere, -ſcendī, -ſcēſum, descend, march on

²⁸ quam = postquam; post sometimes omitted after an ordinal number in the abl. of time construction

²⁹ ſcītum, -ī, decree (cp. plebiscite)

³⁰ reſtituō, -ere, -ſtituī, -ſtitūtum, restore

³¹ inter-sum + dat., be present at, take part in

³² priusquam + subj.

³³ the same man = he also

³⁴ Plataeae, -ārum, Plataea

³⁵ fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, pour out, rout

³⁶ Mardonius, -ī, Mardonius, Persian general under Xerxes in command of the “barbarians”

³⁷ aequitās, -tātis, f., equity, fairness; aequitāte, abl. of cause (S.S.)

³⁸ factum est . . . ut ſumma imperiū trāſſerrētur, it happened that the chief command was transferred; ut

. . . trāſſerrētur, noun clause of result used as subject of factum est

³⁹ Pausaniās, -ae, m., Pausanias, a Spartan, victor over the Persians at Plataea in 479 B.C. but a person whose selfish ambition was too great to permit his continuing long as commander-in-chief of the united Greek forces.

⁴⁰ abl. abs.

⁴¹ fugō (1), put to flight, rout; not to be confused with fugiō

⁴² L.I. 19 n. 97

⁴³ intemperantia, -ae, intemperance, arrogance

⁴⁴ ſocietās, -tātis, f., confederacy, alliance

⁴⁵ applicō (1), attach

⁴⁶ dēlīgō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctum = legō

⁴⁷ = barbarōs

⁴⁸ L.I. 14 n. 18

⁴⁹ re-pellō

⁵⁰ adv., by chance

⁵¹ If novus is new, what must the verb re-novō (1) mean?

⁵² Both gerundive phrases belong in the quantum clause.

⁵³ quaeque cīvītās: quaeque, fem. adjectival form of quisque

⁵⁴ cōſtituō, -ere, -ſtituī, -ſtitūtum, establish, decide; quī cōſtitueret, rel. cl. of purpose, which has as its object the quantum . . . daret clause.

arbitriō⁵⁵ quadringēna⁵⁶ et sexāgēna talenta quotannis Dēlum⁵⁷ sunt conlāta; id enim commūne aerārium⁵⁸ esse voluerunt. Quae omnis pecūnia posterō⁵⁹
 30 tempore Athēnās trāslāta est. Hic quā⁶⁰ fuerit⁶¹ abstinentiā, nūllum est certius indicium⁶² quam quod,⁶³ cum tantīs rēbus praefuisset,⁶⁴ in tantā paupertate dēcessit,⁶⁵ ut quī⁶⁶ efferrētur vix reliquerit. Quō⁶⁷ factum est ut filiāe eius publicē⁶⁸ alerentur et dē commūnī aerārīo dōtibus⁶⁹ datīs collocarentur.⁷⁰ (Nepos, *Aristīdēs*, excerpts)

21. TIMOLEON¹

Diōne² Syracūsīs interfectō, Dionysius³ rūsus Syracūsārum potītus est.⁴ Cuius adversariī opem ā Corinthiīs⁵ petiērunt ducemque, quō in bellō ūterentur, postulārunt. Hūc Timoleōn⁶ missus incredibilī⁷ felicitate⁸ Dionysium tōtā Siciliā dēpulit.⁹ Cum (eum) interficere posset, nōluit, tūtōque¹⁰ ut Corinthum¹¹ perveniret effēcit,¹² quod utrōrumque¹³ Dionysiōrum opibus Corinthiī saepe adiūtī fuerant . . . eamque praeclāram victōriam dūcēbat in quā plūs esset clēmēntiae quam crūdēlītātis¹⁴ . . .

Quibus rēbus cōfectīs,¹⁵ cum propter diūturnitatem¹⁶ bellī nōn solum regiōnēs¹⁷ sed etiam urbēs dēsertās¹⁸ vidēret, conquīsivī¹⁹ . . . colōnōs.²⁰
 10 Cīvibus veteribus sua²¹ restituit, novīs²² bellō vacuēfactās²³ possēssiōnēs²⁴

⁵⁵ arbitrium, -ī, judgment, decision; arbitriō, what kind of abl.?

⁵⁶ quadringēna et sexāgēna (distributive numerals) talenta quotannis, 460 talents each year

⁵⁷ Dēlos, -ī, f., Delos, small island in the center of the Cyclades in the Aegean

⁵⁸ aerārium, -ī, treasury

⁵⁹ posterus, -a, -um, coming after (post), later

⁶⁰ quā abstinentiā, abl. of description, of what integrity he was = how great was his integrity

⁶¹ perf. subj., ind. quest. depending on indicium

⁶² indicium, -ī, indication, proof

⁶³ the fact that

⁶⁴ prae-sum + dat., be in charge of

⁶⁵ dē-cēdō, depart, die (cp. the deceased)

⁶⁶ quī = old form of abl.: by which he might be buried = enough to bury him

⁶⁷ adv., wherefore

⁶⁸ adv., at public expense

⁶⁹ dōs, dōtis, f., dowry

⁷⁰ collocō (1), place, settle in marriage

21

¹ Timoleon, who came from a noble family at Corinth, was a great champion of liberty against tyranny. By 334 B.C. he was in Sicily fighting the Carthaginians, expelling tyrants, and establishing democracies.

² Diōn, Diōnis, m., Dion, relative and friend of the tyrant Dionysius the Elder. With the aid of Plato he

tried—but in vain—to give a noble pattern to the life of Dionysius the Younger, who followed his father in tyranny. After finally exiling Dionysius the Younger from Syracuse, he himself ruled tyrannically and was assassinated in 353 B.C.

³ Dionysius, -ī, Dionysius the Younger

⁴ potior + gen. or abl.

⁵ Corinthiī, -ōrum, m., Corinthians

⁶ Timoleōn, -ontis, m., Timoleon

⁷ incredibilis, -e, incredible

⁸ felicitās, -tātis, f., happiness, good fortune

⁹ dē-pellō

¹⁰ tūtō, adv., safely

¹¹ Corinthus, -ī, f., Corinth, on the Isthmus of Corinth

¹² L. A. 8 n. 20–21

¹³ uterque, utraque, utrumque, each; here = both

¹⁴ crūdēlītās, -tātis, f., cruelty

¹⁵ These words refer not only to the expulsion of Dionysius, but also to a great victory over the Carthaginians in Sicily as recounted in the omitted passages.

¹⁶ diūturnitās, -tātis, f., long duration

¹⁷ regiō, -ōnis, f., region; here = country districts

¹⁸ dēsertus, -a, -um, deserted

¹⁹ con-quīrō, -ere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum (quaerō), seek out, gather together

²⁰ colōnus, -ī, settler, colonist

²¹ sua, neut. pl.

²² novīs (colōnīs)

²³ vacuē-faciō, make empty

²⁴ possēssiō, -ōnis, f., possession, property

- dīvīsīt²⁵; urbium moenia disiecta²⁶ fānaque²⁷ dētēcta²⁸ refēcīt²⁹; cīvitatibus lēgēs libertātemque reddidit . . . Cum tantīs esset opibus³⁰ ut etiam invītīs³¹ imperāre posset, tantum³² autem amōrem haberet omnium Siculōrum³³ ut nullō recūsante rēgnum obtinēre³⁴ licēret, māluit sē dīligī quam metuī.
- 15 Itaque, cum prīmum³⁵ potuit, imperium dēposuit ac prīvātus³⁶ Syrācūsīs . . . vīxit. Neque vērō id imperitē³⁷ fēcīt, nam quod cēterī rēgēs imperiō potuērunt, hic benevolentia³⁸ tenuit . . .

- Hic cum aetāte iam prōvectus esset,³⁹ sine ūllō morbō lūmina⁴⁰ oculōrum amīsīt. Quam calamitātem⁴¹ ita moderātē⁴² tulit ut . . . (nēmō) eum querentem audierit⁴³ . . . Nihil umquam neque īsolēns⁴⁴ neque glōriōsum⁴⁵ ex ōre eius exiit. Quī quidem, cum suās laudēs audīret praedicārī,⁴⁶ numquam aliud dīxit quam⁴⁷ sē in eā rē maximē dīs agere grātiās . . . quod, cum Siciliam recreāre cōstituissent, tum sē potissimum⁴⁸ ducem esse voluissent. Nihil enim rērum hūmānarum sine deōrum nūmine⁴⁹ gerī putābat . . .

- 25 Proelia maxima nātālī⁵⁰ suō diē fēcīt omnia; quō factum est ut⁵¹ eius diem nātālem fēstum⁵² habēret ūniversa Sicilia . . .

- Cum quīdam Dēmaenetus⁵³ in cōntiōne⁵⁴ populī dē rēbus gestīs⁵⁵ eius dētrahere⁵⁶ coepisset ac nōnnūlla inveherētur⁵⁷ in Timoleonta, dīxit nunc dē-mum⁵⁸ sē vōtī esse damnātum⁵⁹; namque hoc ā dīs immortalibus semper precātum⁶⁰ ut tālem libertātem restitueret Syrācūsānīs in quā cuivīs⁶¹ licēret dē quō vellet impūne⁶² dīcere.⁶³

²⁵ dīvīdō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, divide, distribute

²⁶ dis-iciō, throw apart, scatter

²⁷ fānum, -ī, shrine, temple (*cp.* profane, fanatic, fan = devotee)

²⁸ dē-tegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, unroof, uncover (*cp.* detect)

²⁹ re-ficiō

³⁰ although he was tantīs opibus: *abl. of description*

³¹ (Siculīs) etiam invītīs, (the Sicilians) even against their will

³² tantum . . . licēret: cum, although, introduces this clause as well as the preceding one.

³³ Siculī, -ōrum, the Sicilians

³⁴ obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, occupy, hold

³⁵ cum prīmum, as soon as

³⁶ prīvātus, -ī, private citizen; as a private citizen, he . . .

³⁷ adv., unskillfully, ignorantly

³⁸ benevolentia, -ae, good-will, kindness

³⁹ prō-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, carry forward

⁴⁰ lūmen, -inis, *n.*, light; sight

⁴¹ calamitās, -tātis, *f.*, misfortune

⁴² adv., with moderation

⁴³ perf. subj. in historical sequence

⁴⁴ insolēns, *gen. -entis, adj.*, arrogant, insolent

⁴⁵ gloriōsus, -a, -um, here = boastful

⁴⁶ praedicō (1), declare, relate

⁴⁷ aliud quam, other than

⁴⁸ adv., especially, above all

⁴⁹ nūmen, -inis, *n.*, divine power, command

⁵⁰ nātālis diēs, nātālis diēi, *m.*, birthday

⁵¹ quō . . . ut, *L.I. 20 n. 38, 67*

⁵² fēstus, -a, -um, festive

⁵³ Dēmaenetus, -ī, *m.*, Demaenetus, an enemy of Timoleon

⁵⁴ cōntiō, -ōnis, *f.*, assembly

⁵⁵ rēs gestae, rērum gestārum, *f. pl.* (*lit.* things done), exploits, deeds

⁵⁶ dē-trahō, detract, disparage

⁵⁷ nōnnūlla is *neut. acc. pl.*—invehor, -ī, invecus sum (*deponent form of in-vehō*), + *in* + *acc.*, make an attack on, inveigh against: nōnnūlla inveherētur in, he made some attacks on

⁵⁸ adv., at last

⁵⁹ damnō (1) + *gen.*, condemn on the charge of; vōtī damnārī, to be condemned to pay a vow = to have a vow or prayer granted

⁶⁰ precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, beseech

⁶¹ *dat. case of quī-vīs, quae-vīs, quid-vīs (quod-vīs), indef.*, anyone at all, anything at all

⁶² adv., with impunity

⁶³ dīcere, subject of licēret

Hic cum diem suprēmum obīset, pūblicē⁶⁴ ā Syrācūsānīs in gymnasiō,⁶⁵
quod Tīmoleontēum⁶⁶ appellātur, tōtā celebrante⁶⁷ Siciliā, sepultus est.⁶⁸
(Nepos, Tīmoleōn 2–5, excerpts)

22. HORACE'S "CARPE DIEM"

Tū nē quaesierīs¹—scīre nefās²—quem mihi, quem³ tibi
fīnem dī dederint, Leuconoē,⁴ nec Babylōniōs
temptārīs⁵ numerōs.⁶ Ut melius,⁷ quidquid erit, patī.

...

Spem longam⁸ resecēs.⁹ Dum loquimur, fūgerit invida¹⁰
5 aetās. Carpe diem, quam minimum¹¹ crēdula¹² posterō.¹³
(Horace, Odes 1.11, excerpts)

23. INTEGER VITAE

Integer¹ vitae scelerisque pūrus²
nōn eget Maurīs³ iaculīs⁴ neque arcū⁵
nec venēnātīs⁶ gravidā⁷ sagittīs,⁸
Fusce,⁹ pharetrā.¹⁰

...

⁶⁴ pūblicē, *adv. of pūblicus*

⁶⁵ gymnasiū, -iī, *n.*, gymnasium, which in Greek had a much broader meaning than it does in English

⁶⁶ Tīmoleonteum (gymnasium)

⁶⁷ celebrō (1), celebrate

⁶⁸ sepeliō, -ire, sepelivī, sepultum, bury

22

METER: Greater Asclepiad.

¹ nē quaesierīs (= quaesiverīs): nē + *perf. subj.* = a colloquial prohibition (negative command), do not seek

² nefās, *n.*, *indecl.*, wrong, sin; nefās (est), it is wrong

³ quem . . . quem, *modifies fīnem*

⁴ Leuconoē, -es, *f.*, Leuconoē, a Greek name

⁵ temptō (1), try; temptārīs = temptāverīs, another *neg. command*

⁶ numerōs, calculations employed by astrologers in casting horoscopes; "Babylonian" because astrology was associated with the East. With the decay of belief in the old-time religion in Rome during the first century B.C., astrology and superstitions prospered. Apparently Leuconoē had visited a fortune teller.

⁷ ut melius (est), how (much) better it is

⁸ i.e., projected too far into the future

⁹ resecō, -āre, -secuī, -sectum, cut off, prune back; resecēs, *poetic use of the pres. subj. (jussive) for the pres. imper.*

¹⁰ invidus, -a, -um, envious

¹¹ minimum, *adv.* = minimē

¹² crēdulus, -a, -um, believing in, trusting + *dat.*; crēdula, *nom. fem. sg. agreeing with the subject of carpe, i.e. Leuconoē*

¹³ posterō (diēt)

23

METER: Sapphic stanza.

¹ integer, -gra, -grum, untouched, blameless; (vir) integer vitae (*poetic gen. of specification*), the person blameless in his life

² pūrus, -a, -um, pure, free from; sceleris, *poetic gen. of separation or specification*

³ Maurus, -a, -um, Moorish (= Mauritanian)

⁴ iaculum, -ī, missile, javelin (*cp. iaciō*)

⁵ arcus, -ūs, bow

⁶ venēnātus, -a, -um, poisonous, dipped in poison

⁷ gravidus, -a, -um, laden (with); *cp. gravis*

⁸ sagitta, -ae, arrow (*cp. sagittate leaf*)

⁹ Fuscus, -ī, *m.*, Fuscus, a literary man and a close, sometimes waggish, friend of Horace

¹⁰ pharetra, -ae, quiver

- 5 Namque mē silvā lupus¹¹ in Sabīnā¹²
dum meam cantō¹³ Lalagēn¹⁴ et ultrā
terminum¹⁵ cūrīs vagor¹⁶ expeditīs¹⁷
fūgit¹⁸ inermem.¹⁹

...

- Pōne mē pigrīs²⁰ ubi nūlla campīs
10 arbor aestīvā²¹ recreātur aurā,²²
quod²³ latus mundī nebulae²⁴ malusque²⁵
Iuppiter urget²⁶;
pōne sub currū²⁷ nimium propinquī
sōlis in terrā domibus negāta:
15 dulce²⁸ rīdentem Lalagēn amābō
dulce loquentem.

(Horace, *Odes* 1.22.1–4, 9–12, 17–24)

24. AUREA MEDIOCRITĀS—THE GOLDEN MEAN

Rēctius¹ vīvēs, Licinī,² neque altum³
semper urgendō⁴ neque, dum procellās⁵
cautus⁶ horrēscis,⁷ nimium premendō
lītus⁸ inīquum.⁹

¹¹ lupus, -ī, wolf

¹² Sabīnus, -a, -um, Sabine; *cp.* *L. A.* 10

¹³ cantō (1), sing about; dum + *historical present* to denote continued action in past time: while I was singing about

¹⁴ Lalagē, -ēs, *acc.* Lalagēn (*Gk. noun*), *f.*, Lalage, name of a girl—a most mellifluous name!

¹⁵ terminus, -ī, boundary (*cp.* terminus, term, terminate)

¹⁶ vagor, -arī, -ātus sum, wander, ramble (*cp.* vagary, vagabond)

¹⁷ expeditō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, disentangle, set free; cūrīs expeditīs, *abl. abs.*

¹⁸ Note the interlocked word order of this stanza, which is so characteristic of Latin poetry: mē (*obj.* of fūgit) at the beginning modified by inermem at the end; silvā in Sabīnā, place where phrase interrupted by lupus subject of fūgit; all this separated from the main verb by a double dum clause.

¹⁹ inermis, -e, unarmed; *cp.* integer vītae . . . nōn eget iaculis.

²⁰ piger, -gra, -grum, lazy, sluggish, torpid (*because frozen*), modifying campīs (campus, -ī, field) in a place-where phrase without a preposition (*the omission of a preposition is common in poetry*). The order of the thought is: pōne mē (in) pigrīs campīs ubi . . .

²¹ aestīvus, -a, -um, summer (*cp.* aestās)

²² aura, -ae, breeze

²³ = (or put me) in eō latere mundī quod . . . ; latus, -eris, *n.*, side, region

²⁴ nebula, -ae, mist, fog

²⁵ malus = inclement, because Jupiter is here god of the weather

²⁶ urgeō, -ēre, ursī, urge, press, oppress

²⁷ currus, -ūs, chariot

²⁸ dulce, poetic for dulciter. These exquisitely mellifluous last lines somewhat onomatopoeically suggest the dulcet timbre of Lalage's voice and laugh.

24

METER: Sapphic stanza.

¹ adv., rightly, well, suitably

² Licinī, *voc.* of Licinius, a person who seems to have been wanting in the virtue of moderation

³ the deep (sea)

⁴ i.e., heading out to the deep

⁵ procella, -ae, storm, gale

⁶ cautus, -a, -um, cautious, circumspect: while you in your caution

⁷ horrēscō, -ere, horruī, begin to shudder at, begin to dread

⁸ altum and lītus = extremes

⁹ inīquus, -a, -um, unequal; here = treacherous

- 5 Auream¹⁰ quisquis mediocritātem¹¹
dīligit, tūtus¹² caret obsolētī¹³
sordibus¹⁴ tēctī, caret invidendā¹⁵
sōbrius¹⁶ aulā.¹⁷
Saepius ventīs agitātur¹⁸ ingēns
10 pīnus¹⁹ et celsae²⁰ graviōre cāsū²¹
dēcidunt²² turrēs²³ feriuntque²⁴ summōs
fulgura²⁵ montēs.
Spērat²⁶ īnfestīs,²⁷ metuit secundīs²⁸
alteram²⁹ sortem³⁰ bene prae-parātum³¹
15 pectus.³² Īnfōrmēs³³ hiemēs³⁴ redūcit
Iuppiter³⁵; īdem³⁶
summovet.³⁷ Nōn, sī male³⁸ nunc, et ōlim³⁹
sīc erit: quondam⁴⁰ citharā⁴¹ tacentem
suscitat⁴² Mūsam,⁴³ neque semper arcum
20 tendit⁴⁴ Apollō.⁴⁵
Rēbus angustīs⁴⁶ animōsus⁴⁷ atque

¹⁰ aureus, -a, -um, golden

¹¹ mediocritās, -tātis, *f.*, moderation, the mean between extremes. Note that Horace does not say that "mediocrity" is golden! The idea of (aurea) mediocritās was common in Greek ethical thought, and Aristotle made it a cardinal virtue in his "Ethics."

¹² tūtus, secure (in his philosophy of the "golden mean") he is free from . . .

¹³ obsolētus, -a, -um, worn out, dilapidated

¹⁴ sordēs, -ium, *f., pl.*, dirt, filth; sordibus, what kind of *abl.*?

¹⁵ invidendā, sure to be envied

¹⁶ sōbrius, -a, -um, sober-minded, moderate, in his sobriety

¹⁷ aula, -ae, palace

¹⁸ agitō (1), agitate, toss

¹⁹ pīnus, -ī, *f.*, pine

²⁰ celsus, -a, -um, high, lofty

²¹ cāsus, -ūs, fall, destruction

²² dēcidō, -ere, -cidī, fall down (*cp.* cadō)

²³ turris, -is, *f.*, tower

²⁴ feriō (4), strike

²⁵ fulgur, -uris, *n.*, lightning, thunderbolt

²⁶ anticipate, expect

²⁷ īnfestus, -a, -um, unsafe, dangerous, adverse; īnfestīs (rēbus) *dat., lit.:* for his adverse circumstances (= in adversity) he anticipates the other (= the opposite) fortune (sortem)

²⁸ secundīs (rēbus) balances īnfestīs: for his favorable

circumstances (= in prosperity) he apprehends the opposite fortune.

²⁹ alter, the other of two; here = the opposite

³⁰ sors, sortis, *f.*, lot, fortune; sortem, *obj.* of spērat and metuit

³¹ prae-parō (1), make ready in advance, prepare: well prepared (*by the philosophy of life which Horace is here enunciating*)

³² subject of spērat and metuit

³³ īnfōrmis, -e, shapeless, hideous, horrid

³⁴ hiems, hiemis, *f.*, stormy weather, winter

³⁵ Jupiter as god of sky and weather

³⁶ īdem, the same god = he also

³⁷ sum-moveō, remove, drive away, *sc.* hiemēs

³⁸ male (est), it is bad, things are bad

³⁹ et ōlim, also in the future

⁴⁰ *adv.*, here sometimes

⁴¹ cithara, -ae, lyre

⁴² suscitō (1), arouse; suscitāt, *subj.* is Apollō

⁴³ Mūsa, -ae, *f.*, a Muse

⁴⁴ tendō, -ere, tetendī, tēsum, stretch

⁴⁵ Apollō, -inis, *m.*, Apollo, god of the sun, prophecy, poetry, and music; also god of archery, pestilence, and medicine. Apollo has two aspects: happy and constructive (Mūsam); unhappy and destructive (arcum).

⁴⁶ rēbus angustīs, *abl. abs.*, when things are narrow (= difficult), *i.e.*, in adversity

⁴⁷ anim-ōsus, -a, -um (-ōsus, *suffix* = full of), spirited

fortis appārē⁴⁸; sapienter⁴⁹ īdem⁵⁰
 contrahēs⁵¹ ventō nimium secundō
 turgida⁵² vēla.⁵³

(Horace, *Odes* 2.10)

25. LĀBUNTUR ANNĪ

Eheu!¹ fugācēs,² Postume, Postume,
 lābuntur³ annī; nec pietās⁴ moram
 rūgīs⁵ et īstantī⁶ senectae⁷
 adferet indomitaque⁸ mortī.

- 5 Frūstrā⁹ cruentō¹⁰ Mārte¹¹ carēbimus
 frāctīsque¹² raucī¹³ flūctibus¹⁴ Hadriae¹⁵;
 frūstrā⁹ per autumnōs¹⁶ nocentem
 corporibus¹⁷ metuēmus Austrum.¹⁸
 Vīsendus¹⁹ āter²⁰ flūmine languidō²¹
 10 Cōcȳtos²² errāns et Danaī genus²³
 īnfāme²⁴ damnātusque²⁵ longī
 Sīsypus²⁶ Aeolidēs²⁷ labōris.²⁸

⁴⁸ appārēō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, show one's self; appārē, *analyze the form carefully*.

⁴⁹ adv., wisely = if you are wise

⁵⁰ see n. 36 above

⁵¹ con-trahō, draw in, shorten

⁵² turgidus, -a, -um, swollen

⁵³ vēlum, -ī, sail

25

METER: Alcaic stanza.

¹ eheu, cp. heu. This sigh is emphasized by the repetition of Postumus' name.

² fugāx, gen. -ācis, adj., fleeting

³ lābor, -ī, lāpsus sum, slip, glide

⁴ pietās, -tātis, f., loyalty, devotion, piety

⁵ rūga, -ae, wrinkle (cp. corrugated)

⁶ īstāns, gen. -antis, pressing, urgent

⁷ senecta, -ae = senectūs

⁸ indomitus, -a, -um, untamable, invincible

⁹ adv., in vain. What is the significance of its emphatic position?

¹⁰ cruentus, -a, -um, bloody

¹¹ Mārs, Mārtis, m., Mars, god of war; Mārte, what abl.?

¹² frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, break

¹³ raucus, -a, -um, hoarse, noisy

¹⁴ flūctus, -ūs, m., wave; frāctīs flūctibus, broken waves = breakers

¹⁵ Hadria, -ae, m., Adriatic Sea

¹⁶ autumnus, -ī, autumn, unhealthy part of the year because of the Sirocco

¹⁷ depends on nocentem

¹⁸ auster, -trī, m., the south wind, the Sirocco blowing from the Sahara

¹⁹ vīsō, -ere, vīsī, vīsum, visit; vīsendus (est)

²⁰ āter, ātra, ātrum, dark, modifying Cōcȳtos

²¹ languidus, -a, -um, sluggish, weak

²² Cōcȳtos, -ī, m., Cocytus, the river of wailing, one of the rivers surrounding Hades; Cōcȳtos, Gk. nom.

²³ Danaī genus (genus, -eris, n.), the offspring of Danaūs, whose 49 daughters murdered their husbands and in Hades were punished by having to pour water eternally into a sieve

²⁴ īnfāmis, -e, infamous

²⁵ damnō (1) condemn

²⁶ Sīsypus, -ī, m., Sisyphus, who was condemned eternally to roll up a hill a stone which rolled down again—an exquisite nightmare

²⁷ Aeolidēs, -ae, m., son of Aeolus

²⁸ After verbs of accusing, condemning, and acquitting the genitive can be used to express the charge or the penalty involved

- Linguenda²⁹ tellūs³⁰ et domus et placēns
 uxor, neque hārum, quās colis, arborum
 15 tē praeter invīsās³¹ cupressōs³²
 ūlla³³ brevem dominum³⁴ sequētur.
 (Horace, Odes 2.14.1–4, 13–24)

26. A SENSE OF BALANCE IN LIFE

- Vīvitur¹ parvō bene cui² paternum³
 splendet⁴ in mēnsā tenuī⁵ salīnum,
 nec levēs⁶ somnōs timor aut cupīdō
 sordidus⁷ aufert.⁸
 5 Quid⁹ brevī fortēs¹⁰ iaculāmur¹¹ aevō
 multa? Quid¹² terrās aliō calentēs
 sōle mūtāmus? Patriae quis exsul¹³
 sē quoque fūgit?¹⁴
 Scandit¹⁵ aerātās¹⁶ vitiōsa nāvēs
 10 cūra nec turmās¹⁷ equitum relinquit,
 ōcior¹⁸ cervīs¹⁹ et agente nimbōs²⁰
 ōcior Eurō.²¹

²⁹ *linguenda* (est), balancing *vīsendus* in contrast; *lin-quō* = *relinquō*

³⁰ *tellūs*, -ūris, *f.*, earth, land

³¹ *invīsus*, -a, -um, hated, hateful

³² *cupressus*, -ī, *f.*, cypress (tree); *invīsās* because they were used at funerals and were planted near tombs

³³ *neque ūlla hārum arborum*, nor any = and none

³⁴ *brevem dominum*, in appos. with *tē*; *brevem*, implying that life is brief

26

METER: Sapphic stanza.

¹ *vīvitur parvō bene* (ab eō) cui, it is lived on little well by him for whom: *vīvitur*, impersonal passive = he lives well on little (*i.e.*, not in abject poverty and not in the lap of luxury).

² *cui*, dat. of reference but most easily translated by whose

³ *paternum salīnum* (*salīnum*, -ī), paternal salt-cellar; the long list of words derived from *sāl* provides some idea of the importance of salt and the salt-cellar.

⁴ *splendeō*, -ēre, shine

⁵ *tenuis*, -e, plain, simple

⁶ *levis*, -e, here = gentle

⁷ *sordidus*, -a, -um, sordid (cp. *sordēs* L.I. 25 n. 14);

cupīdō is masculine in Horace.

⁸ *aufferō* (ab-ferō)

⁹ = *cūr*

¹⁰ *fortēs* (*virī*) *brevī aevō* (*aevum*, -ī, time, life)

¹¹ *iaculor*, -ārī, -ātus sum, aim at

¹² *Quid . . . mūtāmus*, lit. why do we exchange lands warmed by another sun? The expression is poetic and in part illogical but the sense is clear: why do we exchange our lands for those warmed by another sun? "The pasture is always greener . . ."

¹³ *exsul*, *exsulis*, *m.*, exile: who an exile of (from) his native land

¹⁴ *fūgit*, *perf.*, has ever fled

¹⁵ *scandō*, -ere, *scandī*, *scāsum*, climb up

¹⁶ *aerātus*, -a, -um, fitted with bronze, probably referring to the bronze beaks of the men-of-war (*longae nāvēs*), which were faster than the ordinary ships—though even these cannot outstrip anxiety.

¹⁷ *turma*, -ae, a troop of cavalry (*equitum*, L.I. 18 n. 53). A person cannot ride fast enough to escape care.

¹⁸ *ōcior*, -ius, adj. in comparative degree, swifter, agreeing with *cūra*

¹⁹ *cervus*, -ī, stag

²⁰ *nimbus*, -ī, rain cloud

²¹ *Eurus*, -ī wind (from the southeast)

- Laetus²² in praesēns²³ animus quod ultrā est
 ōderit²⁴ cūrāre et amāra²⁵ lentō²⁶
 15 temperet²⁷ rīsū²⁸: nihil est ab omnī
 parte²⁹ beātum.

(Horace, *Odes* 2.16.13–28)

27. DIĒS FĒSTUS

- Hic diēs¹ vērē mihi fēstus ātrās
 eximet² cūrās: ego nec tumultum
 nec morī per vim metuam tenente
 Caesare³ terrās.
 5 Ī, pete unguentum,⁴ puer,⁵ et corōnās,⁶
 et cadum⁷ Mārsi⁸ memorem⁹ duellī,
 Spartacum¹⁰ sī quā¹¹ potuit vagantem
 fallere¹² testa.¹³

(Horace, *Odes* 3.14.13–20)

28. A MONUMENT MORE LASTING THAN BRONZE

- Exēgī monumentum aere perennius¹
 rēgālīque² sitū³ pŷramidum⁴ altius,⁵
 quod nōn imber⁶ edāx,⁷ nōn Aquilō⁸ impotēns⁹
 possit dīruere¹⁰ aut innumerābilis¹¹

²² laetus, -a, -um, happy, joyful

²³ praesēns, gen. -entis, adj., present; in praesēns (tem-
 pus) for the present (cp. the *carpe diem* philosophy)

²⁴ ōderit, perf. subj., jussive, let (the laetus animus) re-
 fuse to (hate to) be anxious about (cūrāre)

²⁵ amārus, -a, -um, bitter, disagreeable; amāra, n. pl.

²⁶ lentus, -a, -um, pliant, tenacious, slow, lingering;
 here = tolerant, quiet

²⁷ temperō (1), control, temper

²⁸ rīsus, -ūs, laughter (cp. rīdeō)

²⁹ ab omnī parte, from every part = in every respect,
 completely

27

METER: Sapphic stanza.

¹ Hic diēs, referring to Augustus' return from the cam-
 paign of 27–25 B.C. in Spain

² eximō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, take away

³ Caesar = Augustus. When C. Octavius was adopted
 by his great-uncle, C. Iulius Caesar, his name be-
 came C. Iulius Caesar Octavianus, to which the
 senate added the title of Augustus in 27 B.C.

⁴ unguentum, -ī, ointment, perfume

⁵ puer = slave; cp. French garçon

⁶ corōna, -ae, crown, wreath

⁷ cadus, -ī, wine jar

⁸ Mārsus, -a, -um, Marsian; duellum = old form of bel-
 lum: Mārsi duellī, of the Marsian, or Social, War
 of 91–88 B.C., by which the sociī (allies) of Rome
 in Italy gained full citizenship; i.e., a 65-year-old
 wine.

⁹ memor, gen. -oris, adj., mindful

¹⁰ Spartacus, -ī, Spartacus, the gladiator who led the
 slaves in revolt against Rome, 73–71 B.C.

¹¹ anywhere or in any way

¹² fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum, deceive, escape the notice
 of

¹³ testa, -ae, jug

28

METER: Lesser Asclepiad.

¹ perennis, -e, lasting (throughout the year)

² rēgālis, -e, royal

³ situs, -ūs, site, situation; here = structure

⁴ pŷramis, -idis, f., pyramid

⁵ altus, -a, -um, high; altius agrees with monumentum.

⁶ imber, -bris, m., storm

⁷ edāx, gen. edacis, adj., greedy, destructive

⁸ aquilō, -ōnis, m., north wind

⁹ impotēns, gen. -ntis, adj., powerless (to injure my
 monument)

¹⁰ dīruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, raze, destroy

¹¹ in-numerābilis, -e = Eng.

- 5 annōrum seriēs¹² et fuga temporum.
Nōn omnis moriar, multaque pars meī
vītābit Libitīnam¹³ . . .
(Horace, *Odes* 3.30.1–7)

29. THE OTHER PERSON'S FAULTS AND OUR OWN

- Pērās¹ imposuit² Iuppiter nōbīs duās:
propriīs³ replētam⁴ vitīīs post tergum⁵ dedit,⁶
aliēnīs⁷ ante pectus⁸ suspendit⁹ gravem.
Hāc rē vidēre nostra mala nōn possumus;
5 aliī simul¹⁰ dēlinquunt,¹¹ cēnsōrēs¹² sumus.
(Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 4.10)

30. SOUR GRAPES

- Famē¹ coācta vulpēs² altā in vīneā³
ūvam⁴ appetēbat,⁵ summīs saliēns⁶ vīribus.
Quam⁷ tangere ut nōn potuit, discēdēns ait:
“Nōndum mātūra⁸ est; nōlō acerbam sūmere.”⁹
5 Quī facere¹⁰ quae nōn possunt verbīs ēlevant,¹¹
adscrībēre¹² hoc dēbēbunt exemplum sibī.
(Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 4.3)

31. THE FOX AND THE TRAGIC MASK

- Persōnam¹ tragicam² forte³ vulpēs vīderat.
“Ō quanta speciēs,⁴” inquit, “cerebrum⁵ nōn habet!”

¹² seriēs, -ēī, *f.*, succession

¹³ Libitīna, -ae, Libitina, goddess of funerals; death

29

METER: Iambic trimeter.

Phaedrus: freedman of Augustus, who made extensive use of Aesop's fables.

¹ pēra, -ae, wallet

² im-pōnō, + *dat.*, put on

³ proprius, -a, -um, one's own, *here* = our own

⁴ replēō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill; (pēram) replētam

⁵ tergum, -ī, back

⁶ dedit, *here* = put

⁷ aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another; aliēnīs (vitīīs),
abl. with gravem

⁸ *sc.* nostrum

⁹ (alteram pēram) gravem . . . suspendit

¹⁰ simul = simul ac, as soon as

¹¹ dēlinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum, fail, commit a crime

¹² cēnsor, -ōris, *m.*, censor; censurer, severe judge

30

METER: Iambic trimeter.

¹ famēs (not fāma); *abl. sg. always has -ē of 5th decl.*

² vulpēs, -is, *f.*, fox

³ vīnea, -ae, vineyard

⁴ ūva, -ae, bunch of grapes

⁵ ap-petō (= ad-petō), reach toward, desire (*cp.* appetite); appetēbat, bring out the force of the imperfect ending.

⁶ saliō, -īre, -uī, saltum, jump

⁷ quam = ūvam

⁸ mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe

⁹ sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take

¹⁰ *compl. inf. with* possunt

¹¹ ēlevō (1), disparage, weaken

¹² ad-scrībō, assign

31

METER: Iambic trimeter.

¹ persōna, -ae, mask worn by actors

² tragicus, -a, -um, tragic

³ adv., by chance

⁴ speciēs, -ēī, *f.*, appearance, form

⁵ cerebrum, -ī, brain

Hoc illis dictum est quibus honorem et gloriam
Fortuna tribuit,⁶ sensum communem abstulit.

(Phaedrus, *Fabulae* 1.7)

32. THE STAG AT THE SPRING

Ad fontem¹ cervus, cum bibisset, restitit,²
et in liquore³ vīdit effigiem⁴ suam.
Ibi dum rāmōsa⁵ mīrāns⁶ laudat cornua,
crūrumque⁷ nimiam⁸ tenuitatem⁹ vituperat,¹⁰
5 vēnantum¹¹ subitō vōcibus conterritus,¹²
per campum fugere coepit, et cursū levī
canēs¹³ elūsit.¹⁴ Silva tum excēpit ferum,¹⁵
in quā retentis¹⁶ impedītus cornibus,
lacerārī¹⁷ coepit morsibus¹⁸ saevīs¹⁹ canum.
10 Tunc moriēns vōcem hanc ēdidisse²⁰ dīcitur:
“Ō mē infēlicem²¹ quī nunc dēmum²² intellegō
ūtilia mihi quam²³ fuerint quae²⁴ dēspexeram,²⁵
et quae laudāram,²⁶ quantum lūctūs²⁷ habuerint.”

(Phaedrus, *Fabulae* 1.12)

33. THE FOX GETS THE RAVEN'S CHEESE

Quī sē laudārī gaudet verbīs subdolis,¹
ferē dat poenās turpī paenitentia.²
Cum dē fenestrā corvus³ raptum cāseum⁴
comēsse⁵ vellet, celsā residēns⁶ arbore,

⁶ tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, allot, assign, give

32

METER: Iambic trimeter.

¹ fōns, fontis, *m.*, spring

² restō, -āre, restitī, remain (standing)

³ liquor, -ōris, *m.*, liquid

⁴ effigiēs, -ēī, image, likeness

⁵ rāmōsus, -a, -um, branching

⁶ mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, marvel at, wonder

⁷ crūs, crūris, *n.*, leg

⁸ nimius, -a, -um, excessive

⁹ tenuitās, -tātis, *f.*, thinness

¹⁰ vituperō (1), blame, find fault with

¹¹ vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, hunt; vēnantum, *gen. pl. of pres. part.*

¹² con-territus

¹³ canis, -is, *m./f.*, dog

¹⁴ elūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum, evade

¹⁵ ferus, -ī, wild animal

¹⁶ re-tentus, -a, -um, held back, held fast

¹⁷ lacerō (1), tear to pieces (*cp.* lacerate)

¹⁸ morsus, -ūs, bite

¹⁹ saevus, -a, -um, fierce, savage

²⁰ ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, give out, utter

²¹ mē infēlicem, *acc. of exclamation.*

²² dēmum, at last

²³ quam ūtilia

²⁴ (ea, those things) quae

²⁵ dēspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, look down on, despise

²⁶ = laudāveram

²⁷ lūctus, -ūs, *m.*, grief, sorrow

33

METER: Iambic trimeter.

¹ subdolus, -a, -um, deceitful

² paenitentia, -ae, repentance

³ corvus, -ī, raven

⁴ cāseus, -ī, cheese

⁵ comedō, comedere or comēsse, -edī, -ēsum, eat up

⁶ resideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, sit, be sitting

- 5 hunc vīdit vulpēs; deinde sīc coepit loquī:
 “Ō quī tuārum, corve, pennārum⁷ est nitor⁸!
 Quantum decōris⁹ corpore et vultū geris!¹⁰
 Sī vōcem habērēs, nūlla prior¹¹ āles¹² foret.”¹³
 At ille stultus, dum vult vōcem ostendere,
 10 ēmīsit¹⁴ ōre cāseum, quem celeriter
 dolōsa¹⁵ vulpēs avidīs¹⁶ rapuit dentibus.¹⁷
 (Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 1.13.1–10)

34. THE ASS AND THE OLD SHEPHERD

- In prīncipātū¹ commūtandō² cīvium
 nīl praeter dominī nōmen mūtant pauperēs.
 Id esse vērū parva haec fābella³ indicat.
 Asellum⁴ in prātō⁵ timidus⁶ pāscēbat⁷ senex.
 5 Is, hostium clamōre⁸ subitō⁹ territus,
 suādēbat¹⁰ asinō fugere nē possent capī.
 At ille lentus:¹¹ “Quaesō,¹² num bīnās¹³ mihī
 clītellās¹⁴ impositūrum¹⁵ victōrem¹⁶ putās?”
 Senex negāvit. “Ergō quid rēfert meā¹⁷
 10 cui serviam clītellās dum¹⁸ portem¹⁹ meās?”
 (Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 1.15)

35. THE TWO MULES AND THE ROBBERS

Mūlī¹ gravātī² sarcinīs³ ībant duō.
 Ūnus ferēbat fiscōs⁴ cum pecūniā;

⁷ penna, -ae, feather

⁸ nitor, -ōris, *m.*, brightness, beauty; quī est nitor, what (= how great) is the beauty

⁹ decor, decōris, *m.*, grace, beauty

¹⁰ you bear, *i.e.*, have in your body and face; (in) corpore, prepositions often omitted in poetry

¹¹ prior, *pred. adj.* after foret, better, finer

¹² āles, ālitis, *f.*, bird

¹³ foret = esset

¹⁴ ē-mittō

¹⁵ dolōsus, -a, -um, crafty, cunning

¹⁶ avidus, -a, -um, greedy, eager

¹⁷ dēns, dentis, *m.*, tooth

34

METER: Iambic trimeter.

¹ prīncipātus, -ūs, rule, dominion

² com-mūtō (1), change

³ fābella, -ae, fable

⁴ asellus, -ī, a little ass, diminutive of asinus, -ī, an ass (verse 6)

⁵ prātum, -ī, meadow

⁶ timidus, -a, -um, timid

⁷ pāscō, -ere, pāvī, pāstum, pasture

⁸ clāmōr, -ōris, *m.*, shouting

⁹ subitus, -a, -um, sudden

¹⁰ suādēō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum, urge

¹¹ lentus, -a, -um, slow, motionless, apathetic

¹² quaesō, -ere, beg, beseech, = quaerō

¹³ bīnās clītellās, two pairs of panniers (*i.e.*, instead of the present single pair); bīnī, -ae, -a, distributive numeral used with a regularly plural noun

¹⁴ clītellae, -ārum, a pair of panniers, baskets

¹⁵ im-pōnō = in + pōnō

¹⁶ victor, -ōris = Eng.

¹⁷ what difference does it make to me, highly idiomatic

¹⁸ dum (modo) + subj. here = provided

¹⁹ portō (1), bear, carry

35

METER: Iambic trimeter.

¹ mūlus, -ī, mule

² gravō (1), load, burden

³ sarcina, -ae, bundle, pack

⁴ fiscus, -ī, basket

- alter tumentēs⁵ multō saccōs⁶ hordeō.⁷
 Ille onere⁸ dīves, celsā cervīce⁹ ēminēns¹⁰
 5 clārumque collō¹¹ iactāns¹² tintinnābulum¹³;
 comes¹⁴ quiētō¹⁵ sequitur et placidō¹⁶ gradū.¹⁷
 Subitō latrōnēs¹⁸ ex īnsidiīs advolant,¹⁹
 interque caedem ferrō mūlum lancinant²⁰;
 dīripiunt²¹ nummōs,²² neglegunt vīle²³ hordeum.
 10 Spoliātus²⁴ igitur cāsūs²⁵ cum flēret suōs,
 “Equidem,” inquit alter, “mē contemptum gaudeō.
 Nam nihil āmīsi, nec sum laesus²⁶ vulnere.”
 Hōc argūmentō tūta est hominum tenuitās²⁷;
 magnae perīclō²⁸ sunt opēs obnoxiae.²⁹
 (Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 2.7)

36. DELIGHTS OF THE COUNTRY

C.¹ PLĪNIUS CALPURNIŌ MACRŌ² SUŌ S.¹

Bene est³ mihi quia⁴ tibi est bene. Habēs uxōrem tēcum, habēs fīlium;
 frueris⁵ marī,⁶ fontibus, viridibus,⁷ agrō, villā amoenissimā.⁸ Neque enim
 dubitō esse amoenissimam,⁹ in quā sē composuerat¹⁰ homō¹¹ fēlicior ante-
 quam¹² “fēlicissimus” fieret. Ego in Tuscīs¹³ et vēnor¹⁴ et studeō, quae¹⁵ inter-

⁵ tumeō, -ēre, swell, be swollen⁶ saccus, -ī, sack⁷ hordeum, -ī, barley⁸ onus, -eris, *n.*, burden, load⁹ cervīx, -vīcis, *f.*, neck¹⁰ ēmineō, -ēre, -minuī, stand out, be conspicuous¹¹ collum, -ī, neck¹² iactō (1), toss¹³ tintinnābulum, -ī, bell, a delightfully onomatopoeic word¹⁴ comes, comitis, *m. f.*, companion¹⁵ quiētus, -a, -um, quiet¹⁶ placidus, -a, -um, placid, gentle¹⁷ gradus, -ūs, step¹⁸ latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, bandit, robber¹⁹ advolō (1), fly, hasten²⁰ lancinō (1), mangle²¹ dīripiō, -ere, -ripiū, -reptum, plunder²² nummus, -ī, currency, money²³ vīlis, -e, cheap²⁴ spoliō (1), rob²⁵ cāsus, -ūs, accident²⁶ laedō, -ere, laesī, laesum, injure²⁷ tenuitās, -tātis, *f.*, poverty²⁸ perīclum, -ī, Early Latin form, used instead of perīculum in Classical Latin poetry whenever it was metrically convenient²⁹ obnoxius, -a, -um, subject to, exposed to

36

¹ L.A. 11 n. 1 and 3² Calpurnius Macer³ it is⁴ quia, conj., because⁵ fruor, -ī, fructus sum, + abl., enjoy (cp. fructus, -ūs)⁶ What case? (Ch. 34)⁷ viridis, -e, green; viridia, gen. viridium, *n. pl.* as a noun, green things, greenery⁸ amoenus, -a, -um, pleasant⁹ amoenissimam, agreeing with villam understood as subj. of esse¹⁰ sē compōnere, to compose oneself, to rest¹¹ the man, apparently referring to a former owner who had been happier (fēlicior) on this estate as an ordinary person (homō) before he could realize his ambition of becoming “most happy” (fēlicissimus), i.e., before he could achieve some very high position which did not give him supreme happiness after all.¹² antequam + subjunctive¹³ lit. in the Tuscans = on my Tuscan estate¹⁴ vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, hunt¹⁵ quae, neut. pl. referring to vēnor and studeō as antecedents

- 5 dum¹⁶ alternīs, ¹⁷ interdum simul¹⁸ faciō; nec tamen adhuc¹⁹ possum prōnūnti-
āre utrum sit difficilīus capere aliquid an scrībere. Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 5.18)

37. C. PLĪNIUS CANĪNIŌ¹ SUŌ S.

- Studēs an² piscāris³ an vēnāris an simul omnia? Possunt enim omnia
simul fierī ad Lārium⁴ nostrum. Nam lacus⁵ piscem,⁶ ferās⁷ silvae quibus
lacus cingitur,⁸ studia altissimus iste sēcessus⁹ adfatim¹⁰ suggerunt.¹¹ Sed
sīve¹² omnia simul sīve aliquid facis, nōn possum dīcere “invideō”; angor¹³
5 tamen . . . Numquamne hōs artissimōs laqueōs¹⁴ . . . abrumpam?¹⁵ Num-
quam, putō. Nam veteribus negōtiīs¹⁶ nova accrēscunt,¹⁷ nec tamen priōra
peraguntur¹⁸; tot nexibus,¹⁹ tot quasi catēnīs²⁰ maius in diēs²¹ occupā-
tiōnum²² agmen²³ extenditur.²⁴ Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 2.8, excerpts)

38. HAPPY MARRIED LIFE

C. PLĪNIUS GEMINŌ SUŌ S.

- Grave vulnus Macrinus noster accēpit: āmīsīt¹ uxōrem singulāris² ex-
emplī . . . Vixit cum hāc trīgintā novem annīs³ sine iūrgiō,⁴ sine offēnsā.⁵
Quam illa reverentiam⁶ marītō⁷ suō praestitit, cum ipsa summam merērē-
tur!⁸ Quot quantāsque virtūtēs ex dīversīs⁹ aetātibus sūmptās collēgit et mis-
5 cuit! Habet quidem Macrinus grande¹⁰ sōlācium, quod tantum bonum tam
diū tenuit; sed hinc¹¹ magis exacerbātur¹² quod āmīsīt. Nam fruendīs volup-

¹⁶ *adv.*, sometimes, at times

¹⁷ *adv.*, alternately, by turns

¹⁸ *adv.*, at the same time, simultaneously. *In another letter (1.6), Pliny tells how he combined hunting and studying in one operation.*

¹⁹ *adv.*, thus far, till now

37

¹ *Pliny and Caninius were fellow townsmen from Comum (Como) at the south end of beautiful Lake Larius (Como) in northern Italy.*

² *an in questions, or*

³ *piscor (1), to fish*

⁴ *Lārius, -iī, m., Lake Larius (now Lake Como)*

⁵ *lacus, -ūs, lake*

⁶ *piscis, -is, m., fish*

⁷ *fera (sc. bēstia), -ae, f., wild animal*

⁸ *cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctum, surround, gird*

⁹ *sēcessus, -ūs, retreat, summer place*

¹⁰ *adv.*, sufficiently, abundantly

¹¹ *sug-gerō, -ere, -gessī, -gestum, furnish, afford, supply*

¹² *sīve . . . sīve, (sī-ve), if . . . or if, whether . . . or*

¹³ *angō, -ere, torment*

¹⁴ *artus, -a, -um, close, narrow; laqueus, -ī, noose, cord*

¹⁵ *ab-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break off, sever. Pliny is tied up in Rome.*

¹⁶ *negōtium, -iī, business; duty*

¹⁷ *accrēscō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, increase; nova (negōtia) accrēscunt (veteribus negōtiīs) new duties increase by . . . or are added to . . .*

¹⁸ *per-agō, complete*

¹⁹ *nexus, -ūs, coils, obligations*

²⁰ *catēna, -ae, chain*

²¹ *in diēs, from day to day*

²² *occupātiō, -ōnis, f., occupation, employment*

²³ *agmen, -minis, n., line of march, column*

²⁴ *ex-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, extend, increase*

38

¹ *he lost (not sent away)*

² *singulāris, -e, extraordinary*

³ *The abl. is sometimes used instead of the acc. to express the idea of extent of time.*

⁴ *iūrgium, -iī, quarrel*

⁵ *offēnsa, -ae, hatred, affront*

⁶ *reverentia, -ae, respect*

⁷ *marītus, -ī, husband*

⁸ *mereor, -ērī, meritis sum, deserve*

⁹ *dīversus, -a, -um, diverse, different*

¹⁰ *grandis, -e, great*

¹¹ *hinc here = from this cause*

¹² *exacerbō (1), exasperate; embitter*

tātibus crēscit carendī dolor. Erō ergō suspēsus¹³ prō homine amīcissimō dum¹⁴mittere¹⁵ āvocāmenta¹⁶ et cicātricem¹⁷ patī possit, quam nihil aequē ac¹⁸ necessitās¹⁹ ipsa et diēs²⁰ longa et satietās²¹ dolōris inducit.²² Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 8.5, excerpts)

39. FAITHFUL IN SICKNESS AND IN DEATH

C. PLĪNIUS NEPŌTĪ SUŌ S.

(. . . Fannia¹) neptis² Arriae³ illūs⁴ quae marītō⁵ et sōlācium mortis et exemplum fuit. Multa referēbat⁶ aviae⁷ suae nōn minōra hōc,⁸ sed obscūriōra,⁹ quae tibi exīstimō tam mīrābilia legentī¹⁰ fore¹¹ quam mihi audientī fuērunt.

- 5 Aegrōtābat¹² Caecīna Paetus, marītus eius, aegrōtābat et fīlius, uterque mortiferē,¹³ ut vidēbātur. Fīlius dēcessit¹⁴ eximiā¹⁵ pulchritūdine,¹⁶ parī verēcundiā,¹⁷ et parentibus nōn minus ob¹⁸ alia cārus quam quod fīlius erat. Huic illa ita fūnus¹⁹ parāvit . . . ut ignōrāret marītus. Quīn immō,²⁰ quotiēns²¹ cubiculum²² eius intrāret,²³ vīvere fīlium atque etiam commodiōrem²⁴
- 10 esse simulābat²⁵; ac persaepe²⁶ interrogantī²⁷ quid ageret puer respondēbat, “Bene quīēvit,²⁸ libenter cibum²⁹ sūmpsit.” Deinde, cum diū cohibita³⁰ lacri-

¹³ suspēsus, -a, -um, in suspense, anxious

¹⁴ dum, until, used with the subjunctive to imply intention or expectancy

¹⁵ ad-mittō, admit, receive

¹⁶ āvocāmentum, -ī, diversion

¹⁷ cicātrīx, -trīcis, f., scar, which implies healing

¹⁸ aequē ac, equally as, quite so well as

¹⁹ necessitās (-tātis, f.), ipsa, necessity itself, sheer necessity

²⁰ here = time

²¹ satietās, -tātis, f., satiety

²² in-dūcō, bring on, induce

39

¹ Fannia (est)

² neptis, -is, granddaughter

³ Arria, -ae, Arria (Maior), brave wife of Caecina Paetus. When, because of his part in a conspiracy against the emperor Claudius, he had to commit suicide in 42 A.D., Arria committed suicide with him, actually setting him an example as indicated at the end of the letter. (Cp. “Paete, Nōn Dolet,” ch. 39).

⁴ ille, the famous, when immediately following its noun

⁵ marītō, dat.

⁶ referēbat, subject = Fannia, who related these episodes during a conversation with Pliny on the preceding day.

⁷ avia, -ae, grandmother; aviae, gen. case

⁸ hōc, abl. of comparison, referring to the relative clause of the preceding sentence

⁹ obscūrus, -a, -um, obscure, unknown

¹⁰ legentī, to be construed with tibi

¹¹ fore = futūra esse, fut. inf. in ind. state. depending on exīstimō (1), think

¹² aegrōtō (1), be sick

¹³ mortiferē, adv. (mors-ferō), fatally

¹⁴ dē-cēdō, go away, die (cp. deceased)

¹⁵ eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary

¹⁶ pulchritūdō, -dinis, f., beauty; eximiā pulchritūdine, abl. describing fīlius but more easily translated if we supply a word like puer: fīlius dēcessit—(puer) eximiā pulchritūdine, etc.

¹⁷ verēcundia, -ae, modesty

¹⁸ ob, prep. + acc., on account of; toward

¹⁹ fūnus, -eris, n., funeral

²⁰ quīn immō, why, on the contrary

²¹ adv., as often as

²² cubiculum, -ī, bedroom

²³ intrō (1), enter; intrāret: in Silver Latin the impf. subj. of customary action is often found in place of the indic.

²⁴ commodus, -a, -um, suitable, satisfactory; here = better

²⁵ simulō (1) pretend

²⁶ per-saepe, adv., very often

²⁷ interrogō (1), ask, inquire (cp. rogō); (marītō) interrogantī

²⁸ quīēscō, -ere, quīēvī, quīētus, rest, be quiet

²⁹ cibus, -ī, food

³⁰ cohibeō, -ere, -uī, -itum, hold together, hold back, restrain

mae vincerent prōrumperentque,³¹ ēgrediēbātur; tunc sē dolōrī dabat. Sati-
 āta, siccīs³² oculīs, compositō vultū redībat, tamquam orbitātem³³ forīs re-
 liquisset.³⁴ Praeclārum quidem illud³⁵ eiusdem: ferrum stringere,³⁶
 15 perfodere³⁷ pectus, extrahere³⁸ pugiōnem,³⁹ porrigere⁴⁰ marītō, addere⁴¹ vō-
 cem immortālem ac paene⁴² dīvinam,⁴³ “Paete, nōn dolet.” . . . Valē. (Pliny,
Epistulae 3.16, excerpts)

40. A SWEET, BRAVE GIRL

C. PLĪNIUS MARCELLĪNŌ SUŌ S.

Trīstissimus haec tibi scrībō, Fundānī nostrī fīliā minōre defūctā,¹ quā
 puellā² nihil umquam fēstīvius,³ amābilis,⁴ nec longiōre vītā . . . dignius
 vīdī. Nōndum annōs trēdecim implēverat,⁵ et iam illī⁶ anīlis⁷ prūdētia, mā-
 trōnālis⁸ gravitās⁹ erat, et tamen suāvītās¹⁰ puellāris¹¹ . . . Ut¹² illa patris cer-
 5 vīcibus¹³ inhaerēbat!¹⁴ Ut nōs, amīcōs paternōs,¹⁵ et amanter¹⁶ et modestē¹⁷
 complectēbātur! Ut nūtrīcēs,¹⁸ ut paedagōgōs,¹⁹ ut praeceptōrēs²⁰ prō suō
 quemque officiō dīligēbat! Quam studiōsē,²¹ quam intelligenter²² lēctitā-
 bat²³! . . .

Quā illa temperantiā,²⁴ quā patientiā, quā etiam cōstantiā²⁵ novissi-
 10 mam valētūdinem²⁶ tulit! Medicīs obsequēbātur;²⁷ sorōrem, patrem adhortā-
 bātur²⁸; ipsamque sē dēstitūtā²⁹ corporis vīribus vigōre³⁰ animī susti-

³¹ prōrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, burst forth

³² siccus, -a, -um, dry; siccīs oculīs *abl. abs.*

³³ orbitās, -tātis, *f.*, bereavement, loss

³⁴ What kind of condition in the *tamquam* clause?

³⁵ that deed; *sc. fuit*

³⁶ stringō, -ere, -strīnxī, strictus, draw; stringere, *inf. in apposition with illud*

³⁷ perfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus, pierce (*lit. dig through*)
³⁸ ex-trahō

³⁹ pugiō, -ōnis, *m.*, dagger

⁴⁰ porrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, hold out, extend

⁴¹ ad-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, add

⁴² *adv.*, almost

⁴³ dīvinus, -a, -um = *Eng.*

40

¹ dēfungor, -ī, -fūctus sum, finish or complete life, die.
 The family tomb was discovered near Rome in 1880
 and in it a cinerary urn with the inscription: *Dīs*
mānibus Miniciae Marcellae, Fundānī fīliae. Vixit
annis XII, mēnsibus XI, diēbus VII: To the divine
 shades of Minicia Marcella . . . (The abbrevia-
 tions in the inscription have been expanded.)

² puellā, *abl. of comparison*

³ fēstīvus, -a, -um, pleasant, agreeable

⁴ amābilis, -e, lovable, lovely

⁵ impleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill up, complete

⁶ *dat. of possession* (S.S.)

⁷ anīlis, -e, *adj.*, of an old woman

⁸ māttrōnālis, -e, *adj.*, of a matron, matronly

⁹ gravitās, -tātis, *f.*, seriousness, dignity

¹⁰ suāvītās, -tātis, *f.*, sweetness

¹¹ puellāris, -e, *adj.*, girlish

¹² how

¹³ cervīx, -īcis, *f., usu. pl. (cervīcēs)* as here, neck

¹⁴ inhaereō, -ēre, -haesi, -haesum, cling

¹⁵ paternus, -a, -um, paternal, of a father

¹⁶ *adv. of amāns*

¹⁷ *adv.*, modestly

¹⁸ nūtrīx, -īcis, *f.*, nurse

¹⁹ paedagōgus, -ī, tutor, slave who escorted children

²⁰ praeceptor, -ōris, *m.*, teacher (in a school); *not a pri-
 vate tutor*

²¹ *adv. of studiōsus*, full of studium

²² *adv. of intelligēs*

²³ lēctitō (1), read (eagerly)

²⁴ temperantia, -ae, self-control

²⁵ cōstantia, -ae, firmness

²⁶ valētūdō, -dinis, *f.*, here = bad health, illness

²⁷ ob + sequor, obey

²⁸ adhortor = hortor

²⁹ dēstitūō, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtum, desert, abandon

³⁰ vigor, -ōris, *m.*, vigor; vigōre, *abl. of means with susti-
 nēbat*

nēbat.³¹ Dūrāvit³² hic³³ illi ūsque ad extrēmum,³⁴ nec aut spatiō³⁵ valētūdinis aut metū mortis īnfractus est³⁶ . . . Ō trīste plānē³⁷ acerbūque fūnus³⁸ . . . iam dēstināta erat³⁹ ēgregiō⁴⁰ iuvenī,⁴¹ iam ēlēctus⁴² nūptiārum⁴³ diēs, iam
15 nōs vocātī. Quod gaudium quō maerōre⁴⁴ mūtātum est!

Nōn possum exprimere⁴⁵ verbīs quantum animō vulnus accēperim cum audīvī Fundānum ipsum praecipientem,⁴⁶ quod⁴⁷ in vestēs,⁴⁸ margarīta,⁴⁹ gemmās⁵⁰ fuerat ērogātūrus,⁵¹ hoc in tūs⁵² et unguenta et odōrēs⁵³ impenderētur⁵⁴ . . . Sī quās ad eum dē dolōre tam iūstō litterās mittēs, mementō⁵⁵
20 adhibēre⁵⁶ sōlācium . . . mollem⁵⁷ et hūmānum. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 5.16, excerpts)

41. PLINY'S CONCERN ABOUT A SICK FREEDMAN

C. PLINIUS VALERIO PAULINO SUO S.

Videō quam molliter¹ tuōs² habeās³; quō simpliciū⁴ tibi cōnfītēbor quā indulgentiā⁵ meōs tractem.⁶ Quod sī essem nātūrā asperior et dūrior, frangeret mē tamen īnfirmitās⁷ liberti⁸ mei Zōsimi,⁹ cui tantō maior hūmānitās¹⁰ exhibenda¹¹ est, quantō nunc illā magis eget. Homō probus,¹² officiōsus,¹³
5 litterātus¹⁴; et ars quidem eius et quasi īnscriptiō¹⁵—cōmoedus . . . Ūtitur et

³¹ (puella) sustinēbat sē ipsam

³² dūrō (1), endure

³³ hic (vigor animi)

³⁴ extrēmum, -ī, *n.*, = finis

³⁵ spatium, -iī, space, duration

³⁶ īnfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum, break

³⁷ adv., clearly

³⁸ here = mors

³⁹ dēstinō (1), bind, engage

⁴⁰ ēgregius, -a, -um, excellent, distinguished

⁴¹ iuvenis, -is, *m.*, young man

⁴² ē-ligō = legō

⁴³ nūptiae, -ārum, *pl.*, wedding

⁴⁴ maeror, -ōris, *m.*, grief

⁴⁵ ex-primō (= premō), express

⁴⁶ praecipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, direct

⁴⁷ The antecedent is hoc in the following line.

⁴⁸ vestis, -is, *f.*, garment, clothes

⁴⁹ margaritum, -ī, pearl

⁵⁰ gemma, -ae, jewel

⁵¹ ērogō (1), pay out, spend; fuerat ērogātūrus (*act. periphrastic*), he had been about to spend, had intended to spend (on clothes, jewels, etc., for the wedding)

⁵² tūs, tūris, *n.*, incense

⁵³ odor, -ōris, *m.*, perfume

⁵⁴ impendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēsum, expend; impenderētur, subj. in a jussive noun clause

⁵⁵ meminī, meminisse, defective verb, remember; mementō, (*fut.*) imperative, remember

⁵⁶ adhibeō, -ere, -hibuī, -hibitum, use, furnish

⁵⁷ mollis, -e, soft, gentle

41

¹ molliter, adv. of mollis

² tuōs (servōs et libertōs); so meōs below

³ treat

⁴ simpliciter, adv., frankly, candidly; quō simpliciū by which (degree of difference) more frankly = the more frankly

⁵ indulgentia, -ae, kindness

⁶ tractō (1), handle, treat

⁷ īnfirmitās, -tātis, *f.*, illness, weakness

⁸ libertus, -ī, freedman (a slave who had somehow secured his freedom) in contrast to a liber vir (one who was born free). A freedman commonly remained closely attached to his former master.

⁹ Zōsimus, -ī, Zosimus, apparently a Greek

¹⁰ hūmānitās, -tātis, *f.*, kindness

¹¹ ex-hibeō, show, exhibit

¹² probus, -a, -um, honorable, fine

¹³ officiōsus, -a, -um, obliging, courteous

¹⁴ litterātus, -a, -um, well-educated; Greek slaves especially were often well educated.

¹⁵ īnscriptiō, -ōnis, *f.*, here = label, a placard hung around a slave's neck in the slave market to indicate his special abilities. —cōmoedus, -ī, comic actor or a slave trained to read at dinners scenes from famous comedies. Although this was Zosimus' specialty, we find him in the next two sentences surprisingly versatile and talented.

citharā perītē.¹⁶ Īdem tam commodē¹⁷ ōrātiōnēs et historiās¹⁸ et carmina legit ut hoc solum didicisse videātur.

Haec tibi sēdulō¹⁹ exposuī quō magis scīrēs quam multa ūnus mihi et quam iūcunda ministeria²⁰ praestāret. Accēdit longa iam cāritās²¹ hominis, quam ipsa perīcula auxērunt²² . . . Ante aliquot²³ annōs,²⁴ dum intentē instanterque²⁵ prōnūtiat, sanguinem²⁶ reiēcīt²⁷; atque ob hoc in Aegyptum²⁸ missus ā mē, post longam peregrīnātiōnem²⁹ cōnfirātus³⁰ rediit nūper. Deinde . . . veteris infirmitātis³¹ tussiculā³² admonitus,³³ rūsus sanguinem reddidit.³⁴

Quā ex causā dēstināvi³⁵ eum mittere in praedia³⁶ tua quae Forō Iūliū³⁷ possidēs.³⁸ Audīvī enim tē referentem esse ibi aera³⁹ salūbrem⁴⁰ et lac⁴¹ eius modī cūrātiōnibus⁴² accommodātissimum.⁴³ Rogō ergō scrībās⁴⁴ tuīs⁴⁵ ut illī villā, ut domus⁴⁶ pateat . . . Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 5.19, excerpts)

ON BEHALF OF A PENITENT FREEDMAN 43–44

42. C. PLĪNIUS SABĪNIĀNŌ SUŌ S.

Libertus tuus, cui suscēnsēre¹ tē dīxērās, vēnit ad mē . . . Flēvit multum, multum rogāvit, multum etiam tacuit; in summā,² fēcīt mihi fidem paenitentiae.³ Vērē crēdō ēmendātum⁴ quia dēlīquissē⁵ sē sentit. Īrāsceris, sciō; et īrāsceris meritō,⁶ id quoque sciō; sed tunc praecipua⁷ mānsuētūdīnis⁸ laus cum īrae causa iūstissima est. Amāstī⁹ hominem et, spērō, amābis; interim¹⁰

¹⁶ *adv.*, skillfully

¹⁷ *commodē*, fitly, satisfactorily

¹⁸ *historia*, -ae = *Eng*

¹⁹ *adv.*, carefully

²⁰ *ministerium*, -iī, service

²¹ *cāritās*, -tātis, *f.*, dearness, affection (*cp.* *cārus*)

²² *augeō*, -ēre, *auxī*, *auctum*, increase

²³ *aliquot*, *indecl. adj.*, several, some

²⁴ *ante* . . . *annōs*, several years ago

²⁵ earnestly and emphatically

²⁶ *sanguis*, -inis, *m.*, blood

²⁷ *re-iciō*, reject, spit out

²⁸ *Aegyptus*, -ī, *f.*, Egypt

²⁹ *peregrīnātiō*, -ōnis, *f.*, travel or sojourn abroad

³⁰ *cōnfirō* (1), strengthen

³¹ *infirmitās*, -tātis, *f.*, weakness, sickness

³² *tussicula*, -ae, slight cough

³³ *ad-monitus* = *monitus*

³⁴ *reddidit* = *reiēcīt*

³⁵ *dēstinō* (1), intend, resolve

³⁶ *praedium*, -iī, country seat

³⁷ *Forum Iūliū*, *Forī Iūliū*, Forum of Julius, modern Fréjus, a coastal town of southern France; *Forō*, place where

³⁸ *possideō*, -ēre, *possēdī*, *possessum*, possess, own

³⁹ *āer*, *āeris*, *m.*, air; *āera* = *Gk. acc. sg.*

⁴⁰ *salūbris*, -e, healthful; *still so regarded*

⁴¹ *lac*, *lactis*, *n.*, milk; *i.e.*, for the milk cure

⁴² *cūrātiō*, -ōnis, *f.*, cure

⁴³ *accommodātus*, -a, -um, suited

⁴⁴ (ut) *scrībās*: *ut* is sometimes omitted in such clauses.

⁴⁵ *tuīs*, your servants

⁴⁶ *ut villa* (*pateat*), *ut domus pateat*: *i.e.*, he is to have access to the great house itself as well as to the estate.

42

¹ *suscēnsēō*, -ēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsūm, + *dat.*, be angry with

² *summa*, -ae, *f.*, sum

³ *paenitentia*, -ae, repentance

⁴ *ēmendō* (1), correct; (*eum*) *ēmendātum* (*esse*)

⁵ *dēlinquō*, -ere, -līquī, -līctum, fail (in duty), commit a crime

⁶ *adv.*, rightly (with merit)

⁷ *praecipuus*, -a, -um, special; *sc. est*

⁸ *mānsuētūdō*, -inis, *f.*, gentleness, mildness

⁹ *contracted form* = *amāvisti*

¹⁰ *adv.*, meanwhile (*cp.* *intereā*)

sufficit¹¹ ut exōrārī¹² tē sinās . . . Nē torserīs¹³ illum, nē torserīs etiam tē; torquēris¹⁴ enim, cum tam lēnis¹⁵ irāsceris. Vereor nē videar nōn rogāre sed cōgere, sī precibus¹⁶ eius meās iūxerō. Iungam tamen tantō plēnius¹⁷ et effūsus,¹⁸ quantō¹⁹ ipsum²⁰ ācrius sevēriusque²¹ corripuī²² . . . Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 9.21, excerpts)

43. C. PLINIUS SABINIĀNŌ SUŌ S.

Bene fēcistī¹ quod lībertum² aliquandō³ tibi cārum redūcentibus⁴ epistulīs⁵ meis in domum,⁶ in animum recēpistī. Iuvābit hoc tē, mē certē iuvat; prīmum,⁷ quod tē tam tractābilem⁸ videō ut in irā regī possīs; deinde, quod tantum mihi tribuis⁹ ut vel¹⁰ auctōritātī meae pāreās vel precibus indulgeās.¹¹

5 Igitur laudō et grātiās agō . . . Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 9.24, excerpts)

44. SELECTION OF A TEACHER

C. PLINIUS MAURICŌ SUŌ S.

Quid ā tē mihi iūcundius potuit iniungī¹ quam ut praeceptōrem frātris tuī līberīs quaererem? Nam beneficiō² tuō in scholam³ redeō et illam dulcissimam aetātem quasi resūmō.⁴ Sedeō inter iuvenēs, ut solēbam, atque etiam experior quantum apud illōs auctōritātis⁵ ex studiīs habeam. Nam prox-

5 imē⁶ frequentī⁷ audītōriō⁸ inter sē cōram⁹ multīs ōrdinis¹⁰ nostrī clārē¹¹

¹¹ *sufficit*, subject = *ut*-clause

¹² *ex-ōrō*, stronger form of *ōrō*

¹³ *torqueō*, -ēre, *torsī*, *tortum*, twist, torture; *nē torserīs*, *L.I. 22 n. 1*

¹⁴ *torquēris*, you are tormented = you torment yourself (reflexive use of the passive)

¹⁵ *lēnis*, -e, gentle, kind; agreeing with *subj. of irāsceris*: you, such a gentle person

¹⁶ *prex*, *precis*, *f.*, prayer

¹⁷ *plēnē*, *adv. of plēnus*

¹⁸ *effūsē*, *adv.*, profusely, unrestrainedly

¹⁹ *tantō . . . quantō*, the more . . . the more, *abl. of degree of difference* (S.S.)

²⁰ (*lībertum*) *ipsum*

²¹ *sevērē*, *adv.*, seriously, severely

²² *cor-ripiō*, -ere, -*ripiū*, -*reptum*, seize, accuse, blame

43

¹ you did well because = thank you for

² *lībertum*, in thought, the object of both *redūcentibus* and *recēpistī*

³ *adv.*, once

⁴ *re-dūcō*

⁵ *epistulīs*, here *pl. of a single letter* (the preceding one) on the analogy of *litterae*, -*ārum*

⁶ Both prepositional phrases, connected by *et* understood, depend on *recēpistī*

⁷ *prīmum*, *adv.*, first

⁸ *tractābilis*, -ē, tractable, compliant

⁹ *tribuō*, -ere, *tribuī*, *tribūtum*, attribute, ascribe

¹⁰ *vel . . . vel*, either . . . or

¹¹ *indulgeō*, -ēre, -*dulsī*, -*dultum*, yield to, gratify

44

¹ *in-iungō*, enjoin, impose

² *beneficiō tuō*, thanks to you

³ *schola*, -ae, school

⁴ *re-sūmō*, -ere, -*sūmpsī*, -*sūmptum*, resume

⁵ *gen. with quantum*

⁶ *adv.*, very recently

⁷ *frequēns*, *gen. -entis*, *adj.*, crowded

⁸ *audītōrium*, -iī, lecture room, school; *audītōriō*, place where without a preposition

⁹ *cōram*, *prep. + abl.*, in the presence of

¹⁰ *i.e.*, the senatorial order

¹¹ *clārē* (*adv. of clārius*), here = loudly

loquēbantur: intrāvī, conticuērunt¹²; quod¹³ nōn referrem, nisi ad illōrum magis laudem quam ad meam pertinēret¹⁴ . . . Cum omnēs quī profiten-
tur¹⁵ audierō, quid dē quōque sentiam scrībam efficiamque,¹⁶ quantum ta-
men epistulā cōnsequī¹⁷ poterō, ut ipse omnēs audisse videāris. Dēbeō enim
10 tibi, dēbeō memoriae frātris tuī hanc fidem, hoc studium, praesertim¹⁸ su-
per¹⁹ tantā rē. Nam quid magis interest vestrā²⁰ quam ut līberī . . . dignī illō
patre, tē patruō²¹ reperiantur? . . . Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 2.8 excerpts)

45. THE OLD BOY DYED HIS HAIR

Mentīris¹ iuvenem tīnctīs,² Laetīne,³ capillīs,⁴
tam subitō corvus quī modo cycnus⁵ erās.
Nōn omnēs fallis⁶; scit tē Prōserpina⁷ cānum⁸:
persōnam capitī dētrahet⁹ illa¹⁰ tuō.
(Martial 3.43)

46. WHAT'S IN A NAME?

Cinnam,¹ Cinname,² tē iubēs vocārī.
Nōn est hic, rogo, Cinna, barbarismus³?
Tū sī Fūrius⁴ ante dictus essēs,
Fūr⁵ istā ratiōne dīcerēris.
(Martial 6.17)

¹² conticēscō, -ere, -ticuī, become silent

¹³ quod, having as antecedent the whole preceding idea

¹⁴ pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, pertain to

¹⁵ profiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, teach, a late meaning of
the word

¹⁶ efficiō . . . ut, *L.A.* 8 n. 20–21

¹⁷ cōn-sequor, accomplish

¹⁸ adv., especially

¹⁹ super, prep. + abl., about

²⁰ interest vestrā, interests you (*highly idiomatic*)

²¹ patruus, -ī, (paternal) uncle; tē patruō is in the same
construction as illō patre.

45

METER: Elegiac couplet.

¹ mentior, -īrī, -ītus sum, lie, declare falsely, here = im-
itate

² tīngō, -ere, -tīnxī, tīnctus, wet, dye

³ Laetīnus, -ī, Laetinus

⁴ capillī, -ōrum, hair

⁵ cycnus, -ī, swan

⁶ nōn ōmnēs (fallis) seems to imply that the hair dyes
were good enough to deceive at least some people.

⁷ Prōserpina, -ae, Proserpina, goddess of the under-
world, and so of death

⁸ cānus, -a, -um, gray; tē (esse) cānum

⁹ dē-trahō

¹⁰ illa = Proserpina

46

METER: Hendecasyllabic.

¹ Cinna, -ae, m., Cinna, a famous Roman name

² Cinnamus, -ī, m., Cinnamus, a slave name meaning
"cinnamon." The Romans often gave such names
to slaves. Cinnamus, now a freedman, wanted to
change his name to a Roman one for obvious
reasons.

³ barbarismus, -ī, m., a barbarism, an impropriety of
speech

⁴ Fūrius, -ī, m., Furius, an old Roman name

⁵ Fūr, from fūr, fūris, m., thief; cp. fūrtivus

47. FAKE TEARS

Āmissum¹ nōn flet cum sōla est Gellia² patrem;
 sī quis adest, iussae³ prōsiliunt⁴ lacrimae.
 Nōn lūget⁵ quisquis laudārī, Gellia, quaerit;
 ille dolet vērē quī sine teste⁶ dolet.
 (Martial 1.33)

48. EVEN THOUGH YOU DO INVITE ME—I'LL COME!

Quod convīvāris¹ sine mē tam saepe, Luperce,²
 invēnī noceam quā ratiōne tibi.
 Irāscor: licet³ ūsque vocēs mittāsque⁴ rogēsque—
 “Quid faciēs?” inquis. Quid faciam? Veniam!
 (Martial 6.51)

49. PRO-CRAS-TINATION

Crās tē vīctūrum,¹ crās dīcis, Postume,² semper.
 Dīc mihi, crās istud,³ Postume, quando venīt?
 Quam longē est crās istud? ubi est? aut unde petendum⁴?
 Numquid⁵ apud Parthōs Armeniōsque⁶ latet?
 5 Iam crās istud habet Priamī⁸ vel Nestoris⁹ annōs.
 Crās istud quantī¹⁰ dīc mihi possit emī¹¹?
 Crās vīvēs? Hodiē iam vīvere, Postume, sērum¹² est.
 Ille sapit quisquis, Postume, vīxit herī.
 (Martial 5.58)

47

METER: Elegiac couplet.

¹ āmissum patrem² Gellia, -ae, Gellia³ at her bidding; how literally?⁴ prōsiliō (4), leap forth⁵ lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctum, mourn⁶ testis, -is, m., witness

48

METER: Elegiac couplet.

¹ convīvor, -ārī, -ātus sum, to feast² Lupercus, -ī, m., Lupercus³ licet ūsque (ut) vocēs (it is even permitted that you call), you may even invite me, or even though you invite me⁴ send a slave as a special messenger

49

METER: Elegiac couplet.

¹ vīctūrum, sc. esse² No doubt Martial intended to have us think of Horace's Postumus in L.I. 25 above.³ crās istud, that “tomorrow” of yours, subj. of venīt⁴ petendum (est)⁵ numquid latet, it does not lie hidden, does it?⁶ among the Parthians and Armenians, i.e., at land's

end in the East

⁷ lateō, -ēre, -uī, lie hidden⁸ Priamus, -ī, Priam, aged king of Troy⁹ Nestōr, -oris, Nestor, Greek leader famed for his years and wisdom¹⁰ quantī, gen. of indefinite value: at what price, for how much can that tomorrow be bought¹¹ emō, -ere, emī, emptum, buy¹² sērus, -a, -um, late; sērum, pred. adj. in neut. to agree with hodiē vīvere which is subj. of est

50. ISSA

Issa¹ est passere² nēquior³ Catullī:

Issa est pūrior ōsculō columbae;⁴

Issa est blandior⁵ omnibus puellīs;

Issa est cārrior Indicīs⁶ lapillīs⁷;

5 Issa est dēliciae⁸ catella⁹ Pūblī.¹⁰

Hanc tū, sī queritur,¹¹ loquī putābis.

Sentit trīstitiamque¹² gaudiumque.

...

Hanc nē lūx rapiat suprēma¹³ tōtam,

pictā¹⁴ Pūblius exprimit¹⁵ tabellā

10 in quā tam similem vidēbis Issam¹⁶

ut sit tam similis sibī nec¹⁷ ipsa.

Issam dēnique pōne cum tabellā:

aut utramque putābis esse vērā

aut utramque putābis esse pictā.

(Martial 1.109)

METER: Hendecasyllabic.

¹ Issa, colloquial and affectionate form for Ipsa and here used as the name of a pet dog

² passer Catullī, see L.I. 3

³ nēquam, indecl. adj.; compar. nēquior, -ius, worthless, good for nothing, mischievous

⁴ columba, -ae, dove

⁵ blandus, -a, -um, flattering, caressing, coaxing

⁶ Indicus, -a, -um, of India

⁷ lapillus, -ī, precious stone, gem

⁸ see L.I. 3

⁹ catella, -ae, little dog

¹⁰ Pūblī = Pūblī, gen. sg. of Pūblius

¹¹ here = whimper

¹² trīstitia, -ae, sadness

¹³ lūx (diēs) suprēma = mors

¹⁴ pingō, -ere, pīnxī, pictum, paint; pictā tabellā, by a painted tablet = in a painting

¹⁵ exprimō, -ere, -pressī, pressum, express, portray

¹⁶ tam similem . . . Issam: an Issa (of the painting) so similar (to the real Issa)

¹⁷ nec here = not even

Optional Self-Tutorial Exercises

These optional exercises have been included in the hope of enriching the potential of this book for its various types of users.

1. **Repetitio māter memoriae.** In language study the value of repetition is indisputable. To the already large amount of repetition achieved in the regular chapters these exercises add even more of this practice. The phrases and sentences have deliberately been made simple so that the immediate points in forms and syntax may stand out strikingly. The words are purposely limited to those of the formal lesson vocabularies, which obviously should be memorized before turning to these tutorial exercises. As a result of their very nature and purpose, such sentences can make no claim to inspiration. Some hints of the worthwhile reading matter for which one studies Latin are to be found in the *Sententiae Antiquae* and the reading passages from the ancient authors, which are the heart of this book; but if one wants additional repetitious drill by which to establish linguistic reflexes, one can find it here in these self-tutorial exercises. As has been suggested elsewhere, be sure always to read aloud every Latin word and sentence—carefully, for such a practice enables one to learn through the ear as well as the eye and can provide many of the benefits of a language laboratory.

2. To students enrolled in a regular Latin course these exercises with their keys can prove valuable for review and self-testing and can be helpful in preparation for examinations.

3. Also to the private individual who wishes to learn or review Latin independently, these exercises are certain to be valuable, since they can be used as self-tests which can be corrected via the key. Likewise, completing

these practice exercises with benefit of key will provide greater confidence in tackling the regular exercises of the book.

4. All students can test themselves in simple Latin composition by translating the English sentences of the key back into Latin and checking this work via the corresponding Latin sentences of the exercises.

5. In the translations ordinarily only one of the various meanings of a word given in the vocabulary will be used in any specific instance. If at times the translations are somewhat formal, the reason is that they can in this way follow the Latin more closely; and certainly these particular sentences are intended to provide practice in understanding Latin rather than practice in literary expression. Polished literary expression in translation is most desirable and should be practiced in connection with the other exercises in this book.

6. The answer keys have been placed by themselves after the exercises to facilitate self-testing and so that the exercises may be used for practice in class when the instructor wishes. It hardly need be added that the surest way to test oneself is to write out the answers before turning to the key.

7. Finally, let it be emphasized once again that for maximum value you must say aloud all the Latin words, phrases, and sentences, and that you must have studied the text of each lesson carefully through the vocabulary before turning to these exercises.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 1

1. Give the English pronouns equivalent to each of the following Latin personal endings: (1) -t, (2) -mus, (3) -ō, (4) -nt, (5) -s, (6) -tis.
2. Name the following forms and translate each: (1) *monēre*, (2) *vidēre*, (3) *valēre*, (4) *dēbēre*.
3. Name the following forms and translate each: (1) *vocāre*, (2) *servāre*, (3) *dare*, (4) *cōgitāre*, (5) *laudāre*, (6) *amāre*, (7) *errāre*.
4. Name the following forms and translate each: (1) *vocā*, (2) *servā*, (3) *dā*, (4) *cōgitā*, (5) *laudā*, (6) *amā*, (7) *monē*, (8) *vidē*, (9) *valē*.
5. Name the following forms and translate each: (1) *vocāte*, (2) *servāte*, (3) *date*, (4) *cōgitāte*, (5) *laudāte*, (6) *amāte*, (7) *monēte*, (8) *vidēte*, (9) *valēte*.
6. Translate the following words: (1) *vocat*, (2) *cōgitāmus*, (3) *amant*, (4) *dēbēs*, (5) *videt*, (6) *vident*, (7) *dēbēmus*, (8) *valēs*, (9) *errātis*, (10) *vidēmus*, (11) *amat*, (12) *vidētis*, (13) *errās*, (14) *dant*, (15) *servāmus*, (16) *dat*, (17) *amant*, (18) *vidēs*.
7. *Monent mē sī errō.* 8. *Monet mē sī errant.* 9. *Monēte mē sī errat.*
10. *Dēbēs monēre mē.* 11. *Dēbētis servāre mē.* 12. *Nōn dēbent laudāre mē.* 13. "Quid dat?" "Saepe nihil dat." 14. *Mē saepe vocant et (and) monent.* 15. *Nihil videō. Quid vidēs?* 16. *Mē laudā sī nōn errō, amābō tē.*

17. Sī valētis, valēmus. 18. Sī valet, valeō. 19. Sī mē amat, dēbet mē laudāre. 20. Cōservāte mē. 21. Nōn dēbeō errāre. 22. Quid dēbēmus laudāre? 23. Videt; cōgitat; monet.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 2

1. Give the Latin for the definite article "the" and the indefinite article "a."
2. Name the Latin case for each of the following constructions or ideas:
(1) direct object of a verb; (2) possession; (3) subject of a verb;
(4) means; (5) direct address; (6) indirect object of a verb.
3. Name the case, number, and syntactical usage indicated by each of the following endings of the first declension: (1) -ās; (2) -a; (3) -am; (4) -ae (pl.).
4. Name the case(s) and number indicated by the following endings, and wherever possible name the English preposition(s) which can be associated with them: (1) -ārum; (2) -ā; (3) -ae; (4) -īs.
5. Translate the following nouns and state the syntactical usage of each as indicated by its ending: (1) puellam; (2) puella; (3) puellās; (4) puellae (plural form); (5) patriās; (6) patriam; (7) patria; (8) patriae (pl.); (9) pecūniam; (10) pecūnia; (11) poenās; (12) poenam.
6. Translate the following nouns in accordance with their case endings:
(1) puellae (sg.); (2) puellārum; (3) Ō patria; (4) patriae (sg.); (5) pecūniā; (6) pecūniae (sg.); (7) poenīs; (8) poenā; (9) poenārum.
7. Given the following nominative singular forms, write the Latin forms requested in each instance: (1) **multa pecūnia** in the genitive and the accusative singular; (2) **magna fāma** in dat. and abl. sg.; (3) **vīta mea** in gen. sg. and nom. pl.; (4) **fortūna tua** in acc. sg. and pl.; (5) **magna patria** in gen. sg. and pl.; (6) **fortūna mea** in abl. sg. and pl.; (7) **magna poena** in dat. sg. and pl.; (8) **multa philosophia** in dat. and abl. pl.
8. Translate each of the following phrases into Latin according to the case either named or indicated by the English preposition in each instance:
(1) by much money; (2) of many girls; (3) to/for my country; (4) great life (as direct object of a verb); (5) by your penalties; (6) many countries (subject of a verb); (7) to/for many girls; (8) of my life; (9) O fortune; (10) girl's; (11) girls'; (12) girls (direct address); (13) the girls (direct object of a verb); (14) the girls (subject of a verb).
9. Valē, patria mea. 10. Fortūna puellae est magna. 11. Puella fortūnam patriae tuae laudat. 12. Ō puella, patriam tuam servā. 13. Multae puellae pecūniam amant. 14. Puellae nihil datis. 15. Pecūniam puellae videt. 16. Pecūniam puellārum nōn vidēs. 17. Monēre puellās dēbēmus. 18. Laudāre puellam dēbent. 19. Vīta multīs puellīs fortūnam dat. 20. Vītam meam pecūniā tuā cōservās. 21. Fāma est nihil sine fortūnā.

22. Vītam sine pecūniā nōn amātis. 23. Sine fāmā et fortūnā patria nōn valet. 24. Īram puellārum laudāre nōn dēbēs. 25. Vītam sine poenīs amāmus. 26. Sine philosophiā nōn valēmus. 27. Quid est vīta sine philosophiā?

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 3

- Name the case, number, and syntactical usage indicated by each of the following endings of masculines of the 2nd declension: (1) -um; (2) -ī (pl.); (3) -us; (4) -ōs; (5) -e.
- Name the case(s) and number of the following endings, and name the English preposition which can be associated with each: (1) -ō; (2) -ōrum; (3) -ī (sg.); (4) -īs.
- Translate the following nouns and state the syntactical usage of each as indicated by its ending: (1) fīliōs; (2) fīliī (pl.); (3) fīlium; (4) populum; (5) popule; (6) populus; (7) vir; (8) virōs; (9) virī (pl.); (10) virum; (11) amīce; (12) amīcī (pl.); (13) amīcōs; (14) amīcum.
- Translate the following in accordance with their case endings: (1) fīliōrum meōrum; (2) fīliō meō; (3) populī Rōmānī (sg.); (4) populō Rōmānō; (5) virīs; (6) virī (sg.); (7) virōrum; (8) amīcōrum paucōrum; (9) amīcīs paucīs; (10) amīcō meō; (11) amīcī meī (sg.); (12) multīs puerīs.
- Given the following nom. sg. forms, write the Latin forms requested in each instance: (1) **populus Rōmānus** in gen. and abl. sg.; (2) **magnus vir** in acc. and abl. pl.; (3) **puer meus** in dat. and abl. pl.; (4) **magnus numerus** in dat. and abl. sg.; (5) **magnus vir** in voc. sg. and pl.; (6) **filius meus** in gen. sg. and pl.
- Translate the following phrases into Latin according to the case named or indicated by the English preposition in each instance: (1) of many boys; (2) to/for the Roman people; (3) my sons (object of verb); (4) O my sons; (5) a great number (obj. of verb); (6) by the great number; (7) O great man; (8) to/for many boys; (9) the great man (subj. of verb); (10) of the Roman people.
- Valē, mī amīce. 8. Populus Rōmānus sapientiam fīliī tuī laudat. 9. Ō vir magne, populum Rōmānum servā. 10. Numerus populī Rōmānī est magnus. 11. Multī puerī puellās amant. 12. Fīliō meō nihil datis. 13. Virōs in agrō videō. 14. Amīcum fīliī meī vidēs. 15. Amīcum fīliōrum tuōrum nōn videt. 16. Dēbēmus fīliōs meōs monēre. 17. Dēbent fīlium tuum laudāre. 18. Vīta paucīs virīs fāmam dat. 19. Mē in numerō amīcōrum tuōrum habēs. 20. Virī magnī paucōs amīcōs saepe habent. 21. Amīcus meus semper cōgitat. 22. Fīlius magnī virī nōn semper est magnus vir. 23. Sapientiam magnōrum virōrum nōn semper vidēmus. 24. Philosophiam, sapientiam magnōrum virōrum, laudāre dēbētis.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 4

1. A 2nd-declension neuter has the same forms as the regular 2nd-declension masculine except in three instances. Name these three instances and give their neuter endings.
2. Name the case(s), number, and syntactical usage indicated by each of the following endings of the 2nd-declension neuter nouns: (1) -a; (2) -um.
3. Name the case(s) and number of the following 2nd-declension neuter endings and name the English preposition(s) which can be associated with each: (1) -ō; (2) -ōrum; (3) -ī; (4) -īs.
4. Translate the following neuter nouns and state the syntactical usage of each as indicated by its ending: (1) *bella*; (2) *bellum*; (3) *officium*; (4) *officia*; (5) *perīcula*.
5. Translate the following phrases in accordance with their case endings: (1) *bellōrum malōrum*; (2) *bellō malō*; (3) *bellī malī*; (4) *bellīs malīs*; (5) *officiī magnī*; (6) *officiīs magnīs*; (7) *perīculō parvō*.
6. Given the following nom. sg. forms, write the Latin forms requested in each instance: (1) **bellum parvum** in nom. and acc. pl.; (2) **ōtium bonum** in acc. sg. and pl.; (3) **perīculum magnum** in gen. sg. and pl.; (4) **officium vērum** in acc. and abl. sg.
7. Translate the following phrases into Latin in accordance with the case named or indicated by the English preposition in each instance: (1) O evil war; (2) to/for great duty; (3) by the great danger; (4) good leisure (object of verb); (5) by many wars; (6) of good leisure; (7) by the dangers of many wars; (8) small wars (subject of verb); (9) small wars (obj. of verb); (10) O foolish wars; (11) the small war (subj.)
8. *Ōtium est bonum.* 9. *Multa bella ōtium nōn cōservant.* 10. *Perīculum est magnum.* 11. *In magnō perīculō sumus.* 12. *Et ōtium perīcula saepe habet.* 13. *Vīta nōn est sine multīs perīculīs.* 14. *Bonī virī ōtium amant.* 15. *Stultus vir perīcula bellī laudat.* 16. *Ōtium bellō saepe nōn cōservāmus.* 17. *Populus Rōmānus ōtium bonum nōn semper habet.* 18. *Patriam et ōtium bellīs parvīs saepe servant.* 19. *Multae puellae sunt bellae.* 20. *Vērī amīcī sunt paucī.* 21. *Amīcus meus est vir magnī officiī.* 22. *Officia magistrī sunt multa et magna.* 23. *Vir parvī ōtīi es.* 24. *Virī magnae cūrae estis.* 25. *Sine morā cūram officiō dare dēbēmus.* 26. *Sine oculīs vīta est nihil.*

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 5

1. Identify the *personal* endings of the future and imperfect tenses of the first two conjugations.
2. Are these the same as the endings of the present tense? If not, point out the differences.

3. Identify the future and imperfect tense signs in the first two conjugations.
 4. How, in effect, can the following verb endings be translated: (1) -bāmus; (2) -bit; (3) -bitis; (4) -bō; (5) -bunt; (6) -bat?
 5. When an adjective of the 1st and 2nd declensions has the masculine ending in -er, how can you tell whether the *e* survives in the other forms or is lost?
 6. How do English words like *liberty*, *pulchritude*, and *nostrum* help with the declension of Latin adjectives?
 7. Translate the following forms: (1) manēbant; (2) manēbit; (3) manēbimus; (4) dabam; (5) dabit; (6) dabit; (7) vidēbis; (8) vidēbimus; (9) vocābant; (10) vocābis; (11) habēbis; (12) habēbant.
 8. Translate into Latin: (1) we shall give; (2) you (sg.) were remaining; (3) they will see; (4) we shall call; (5) he was calling; (6) you (pl.) will see; (7) I shall see; (8) they were saving; (9) we shall have; (10) we were having; (11) he will have; (12) he has.
9. Magister noster mē laudat et tē crās laudābit. 10. Līberī virī perīcula nostra superābant. 11. Fīlī nostrī puellās pulchrās amant. 12. Amīcus noster in numerō stultōrum nōn remanēbit. 13. Culpās multās habēbāmus et semper habēbimus. 14. Perīcula magna animōs nostrōs nōn superant. 15. Pulchra patria nostra est lībera. 16. Līberī virī estis; patriam pulchram habēbitis. 17. Magistrī līberī officiō cūram dabant. 18. Malōs igitur in patriā nostrā superābimus. 19. Sī iram tuam superābis, tē superābis. 20. Propter nostrōs animōs multī sunt līberī. 21. Tē, Ō patria lībera, semper amābāmus et semper amābimus. 22. Sapientiam pecūniā nōn cōservābitis. 23. Habetne animus tuus satis sapientiae?

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 6

1. What connection can be traced between the spelling of *complementary* in the term *complementary infinitive* and the syntactical principle?
2. In the verb **sum** and its compounds what do the following personal endings mean: (1) -mus; (2) -nt; (3) -s; (4) -t; (5) -ō; (6) -m; (7) -tis?
3. If the verb **possum** is composed of **pot** + **sum**, where among the various forms is the **t** changed to **s** and where does it remain unchanged?
4. Translate the following random forms: (1) erat; (2) poterat; (3) erit; (4) poterit; (5) sumus; (6) possumus; (7) poterāmus; (8) poterimus; (9) poteram; (10) eram; (11) erō; (12) poterō; (13) erunt; (14) poterunt; (15) poterant; (16) esse; (17) posse.
5. Translate into Latin: (1) we are; (2) we were; (3) we shall be; (4) we shall be able; (5) he is able; (6) he will be able; (7) he was able; (8) to be able; (9) they were able; (10) they are able; (11) they will be able; (12) they are; (13) to be; (14) I was able.

6. Patria vestra erat libera. 7. Poteram esse tyrannus. 8. Amicus vester erit tyrannus. 9. Ubi tyrannus est, ibi viri non possunt esse liberi. 10. In patriā nostrā heri non poterat remanere. 11. Tyranni multa vitia semper habebunt. 12. Tyrannos superare non poteramus. 13. Tyrannum nostrum superare debemus. 14. Tyrannus bonos superare poterat; sed ibi remanere non poterit. 15. Poteritis pericula tyranni videre. 16. Vitia tyrannorum tolerare non possumus. 17. Insidias tyranni non tolerabās. 18. Otium in patriā vestrā non potest esse perpetuum. 19. Debēs virōs liberōs dē tyrannīs monere. 20. Magister vester librōs pulchrōs semper amābat. 21. Librī bonī vērīque poterant patriam cōservare. 22. Librīs bonīs patriam vestram cōservare poteritis. 23. Tyrannī sapientiam bonōrum librōrum superare non poterunt. 24. Malī librōs bonōs non possunt tolerare.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 7

1. In the 3rd declension do the case endings of feminine nouns differ from those of masculine nouns as they do in the 1st and 2nd declensions already learned?
2. Do neuter nouns of the 3rd declension have any case endings which are identical with those of neuter nouns of the 2nd declension? If so, name them.
3. Name the gender(s) and case(s) indicated by each of the following endings in the 3rd declension: (1) -ēs; (2) -a; (3) -em.
4. Name the case(s) and number of the following 3rd-declensional endings: (1) -ibus; (2) -ī; (3) -e; (4) -em; (5) -um; (6) -is; (7) -ēs.
5. To indicate the gender of the following nouns give the proper nominative singular form of **magnus, -a, -um** with each: (1) tempus; (2) virtūs; (3) labor; (4) civitās; (5) mōs; (6) pāx; (7) rēx; (8) corpus; (9) vērītās; (10) amor.
6. Translate the following phrases in accordance with their case endings wherever possible; where they are nominative or accusative so state: (1) labōre multō; (2) labōrī multō; (3) labōris multī; (4) labōrēs multī; (5) pācis perpetuae; (6) pāce perpetuā; (7) pācī perpetuae; (8) civitātum parvārum; (9) civitātem parvam; (10) civitātēs parvās; (11) civitātēs parvae; (12) civitāte parvā; (13) tempora mala; (14) tempus malum; (15) temporī malō; (16) temporum malōrum; (17) temporis malī; (18) mōrī tuō; (19) mōre tuō; (20) mōris tuī; (21) mōrēs tuī; (22) mōrēs tuōs; (23) mōrum tuōrum.
7. Translate the following phrases into Latin in accordance with the case named or indicated by the English preposition: (1) to/for great virtue; (2) great virtue (subject); (3) great virtues (object of verb); (4) of great virtues; (5) with great courage; (6) our time (obj. of verb); (7) our times (subj.); (8) our times (obj.); (9) to/for our times; (10) to/for our time; (11) of our time; (12) of our times; (13) my love (obj.); (14) my loves

(obj.); (15) to/for my love; (16) by my love; (17) of my love; (18) of my loves.

8. Meum tempus ōtiō est parvum. 9. Virtūs tua est magna. 10. Pecūnia est nihil sine mōribus bonīs. 11. Virtūtēs hominum multōrum sunt magnae. 12. Mōrēs hominis bonī erunt bonī. 13. Hominī litterās dabunt. 14. Hominēs multōs in cīvitate magnā vidēre poterāmus. 15. Magnum amōrem pecūniae in multīs hominibus vidēbāmus. 16. Paucī hominēs virtūtī cūram dant. 17. Cīvitās nostra pācem hominibus multīs dabit. 18. Pāx nōn potest esse perpetua. 19. Sine bonā pāce cīvitātēs temporum nostrōrum nōn valēbunt. 20. Post multa bella tempora sunt mala. 21. In multīs cīvitātibus terrisque pāx nōn poterat valēre. 22. Sine magnō labōre homō nihil habēbit. 23. Virgō pulchra amīcōs mōrum bonōrum amat. 24. Hominēs magnae virtūtis tyrannōs superāre audēbant. 25. Amor patriae in cīvitate nostrā valēbat.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 8

1. (1) In the 3d conjugation what tense is indicated by the stem vowel *e*?
(2) Can you think of some mnemonic device to help you remember this important point?
2. (1) In the 3d conjugation what tense is indicated by the vowels *i*, *ō*, *u*?
(2) What mnemonic device may help here?
3. State the person, number, and tense indicated by the following 3d conjugation endings: (1) -imus; (2) -ēs; (3) -unt; (4) -et; (5) -itis; (6) -ēmus; (7) -ō; (8) -ent; (9) -it; (10) -ētis; (11) -is; (12) -am; (13) -ēbant.
4. What form of the verb does each of the following endings indicate: (1) -e; (2) -ere; (3) -ite?
5. Given the verbs **mittō**, **mittere**, *send*; **agō**, **agere**, *do*; **scrībō**, **scrībere**, *write*, translate each of the following forms according to its ending:
(1) mittēbant; (2) mittit; (3) mittunt; (4) mittam; (5) mitte; (6) mittimus; (7) mittēbātis; (8) mittis; (9) mittite; (10) mittitis; (11) mittet; (12) mittēmus; (13) agit; (14) agent; (15) agunt; (16) agētis; (17) agēbāmus; (18) agam; (19) agēmus; (20) agis; (21) agitis; (22) scrībet; (23) scrībunt; (24) scrībam; (25) scrībēbam; (26) scrībēbitis; (27) scrībēmus; (28) scrībit; (29) scrībīs; (30) scrībent; (31) scrībe.
6. Given **pōnō**, **pōnere**, *put*, translate the following phrases into Latin:
(1) they were putting; (2) we shall put; (3) put (imperative sg.); (4) he puts; (5) they will put; (6) I shall put; (7) you (sg.) were putting; (8) you (pl.) will put; (9) put (imper. pl.); (10) we put; (11) you (pl.) are putting; (12) he will put.
7. Quid agunt? Quid agētis? 8. Hominem ad mē dūcēbant. 9. Dūc hominem ad mē, et hominī grātiās agam. 10. Dum tyrannus cōpiās dūcit, possumus nihil agere. 11. Litterās ad virginem scrībīt. 12. Librum magnum

scrībēbās. 13. Librōs bonōs scrībēs. 14. Librōs dē pāce scrībēmus. 15. Cōpiamne librōrum bonōrum habētis? 16. Magister multōs puerōs docet. 17. Puerī magistrō grātiās nōn agunt. 18. Paucī cīvitatī nostrae grātiās agēbant. 19. Tyrannus magnās cōpiās ex cīvitate nostrā dūcet. 20. Magna cōpia pecūniae hominēs ad sapientiam nōn dūcit. 21. Librīne bonī multōs ad ratiōnem dūcent? 22. Dūcimusne saepe hominēs ad ratiōnem? 23. Ratiō hominēs ad bonam vītam dūcere potest. 24. Agitisne bonam vītam? 25. Amīcō bonō grātiās semper agite.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 9

1. Explain the term *demonstrative* pronoun and adjective.
2. Translate each of the following according to case(s) and number, indicating also the gender(s) in each instance:

(1) illī	(10) illīs	(19) huius	(28) ūnā
(2) illa	(11) illō	(20) hunc	(29) tōtī
(3) illīus	(12) illārum	(21) hōs	(30) tōtīus
(4) ille	(13) hōc	(22) huic	(31) tōta
(5) illā	(14) hoc	(23) hōrum	(32) tōtum
(6) illud	(15) haec	(24) hās	(33) nūllīus
(7) illōrum	(16) hae	(25) hīs	(34) nūllī
(8) illae	(17) hāc	(26) ūnīus	(35) nūlla
(9) illōs	(18) hanc	(27) ūnī	(36) nūllōs

3. How can the presence of a noun be helpful in determining the form of a modifying demonstrative?
4. Translate the following phrases into Latin in the declensional forms indicated:

(1) this girl (nom.)	(16) to/for that boy alone
(2) these girls (nom.)	(17) to/for that girl alone
(3) these times (acc. pl.)	(18) of that girl alone
(4) to/for this time	(19) of tyrants alone
(5) to/for this boy	(20) the whole state (acc.)
(6) of this time	(21) of the whole country
(7) of that time	(22) to/for the whole country
(8) by this book	(23) of no reason
(9) by that book	(24) no reason (acc.)
(10) that girl (nom.)	(25) no girls (nom.)
(11) those times (nom.)	(26) to/for no book
(12) those times (acc.)	(27) no books (acc.)
(13) that time (nom.)	(28) to/for one state
(14) to/for this state alone	(29) to/for one girl
(15) of this state alone	(30) of one time

(31) of one war

(33) by another book

(32) to/for the other book

5. Hī tōtam cīvitātem dūcent (dūcunt, dūcēbant). 6. Ille haec in illā terrā vidēbit (videt, vidēbat). 7. In illō librō illa dē hōc homine scrībet (scrībam, scrībēbam). 8. Ūnus vir istās cōpiās in hanc terram dūcit (dūcet). 9. Magister haec alterī puerō dat. 10. Hunc librum dē aliō bellō scrībimus (scrībēmus). 11. Tōta patria huic sōlī grātiās agit (aget, agēbat). 12. Tōtam cūram illī cōnsiliō nunc dant. 13. Amīcus huius hanc cīvitātem illō cōnsiliō cōnservābit. 14. Alter amīcus tōtam vītā in aliā terrā aget. 15. Hic vir sōlus mē dē vitiīs huius tyrannī monēre poterat. 16. Nūllās cōpiās in alterā terrā habēbātis. 17. Illī sōlī nūlla perīcula in hōc cōnsiliō vident. 18. Nōn solum mōrēs sed etiam īnsidiās illīus laudāre audēs. 19. Propter īnsidiās enim ūnīus hominis haec cīvitās nōn valēbat.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 10

- Name the conjugation indicated by each of the following endings:
(1) -ere; (2) -ēre; (3) -īre; (4) -āre.
- State the person, number, and tense indicated by the following endings from the 4th conjugation and the -iō 3d: (1) -iunt; (2) -iēs; (3) -īs; (4) -iēbāmus; (5) -īmus; (6) -ī; (7) -iētis; (8) -īte; (9) -ītis; (10) -iō; (11) -it; (12) -e; (13) -iēbās.
- State three points at which -iō verbs of the 3d conjugation differ from verbs of the 4th conjugation.
- Translate the following in accordance with their specific forms:

(1) veniet	(6) audiētis	(11) venīre	(16) faciunt
(2) venit	(7) audītis	(12) facit	(17) facis
(3) veniunt	(8) venīte	(13) faciet	(18) faciam
(4) venient	(9) veniēs	(14) faciēmus	(19) faciēs
(5) audīs	(10) venī	(15) facimus	(20) facere

- Given **sentīō**, **sentīre**, *feel*, and **iaciō**, **iacere**, *throw*, translate the following phrases into Latin:

(1) I shall feel	(8) feel (imper. sg.)	(15) throw (imper. sg.)
(2) we shall feel	(9) he will feel	(16) you (pl.) are throwing
(3) he feels	(10) we feel	(17) we shall throw
(4) you (pl.) feel	(11) he is throwing	(18) throw (imper. pl.)
(5) they will feel	(12) he will throw	(19) to throw
(6) they do feel	(13) I shall throw	(20) you (sg.) are throwing
(7) to feel	(14) we are throwing	

6. Ex hāc terrā fugiēbāmus. 7. Cum fīliā tuā fuge. 8. In illum locum fugient. 9. Tempus fugit; hōrae fugiunt; senectūs venit. 10. Venīte cum

amīcīs vestrīs. 11. In patriam vestram veniēbant. 12. Ō vir magne, in cīvitātem nostram venī. 13. Fīliam tuam in illā cīvitāte inveniēs. 14. Parvam pecūniam in viīs invenīre possunt. 15. Tyrannus viam in hanc cīvitātem invenit. 16. Illōs cum amīcīs ibi capiētis. 17. Ad tē cum magnīs cōpiīs venīmus. 18. Invenietne multam fāmam glōriamque ibi? 19. Iste bellum semper faciēbat. 20. Istī hominēs pācem nōn facient. 21. Multī hominēs illa faciunt sed haec nōn faciunt. 22. Officium nostrum facimus et faciēmus. 23. Magnam cōpiam librōrum faciam. 24. Puerī cum illō virō bonō vīvēbant. 25. In librīs virōrum antīquōrum multam philosophiam et sapientiam inveniētis.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 11

- Name the nominative singular and plural of the following:
(1) 3d personal pronoun; (2) 1st per. pron.; (3) 2nd per. pron.
- Translate the following pronouns in accordance with case(s) and number; where a form is nom. or acc. so specify.
(1) vōbīs; (2) nōbīs; (3) nōs; (4) vōs; (5) tuī; (6) meī; (7) mihi; (8) tibi; (9) tē; (10) mē.
- Translate the following third-person pronouns in accordance with their gender(s), number(s), and case(s): (1) eōs; (2) eās; (3) eōrum; (4) eārum; (5) eius; (6) eā; (7) ea; (8) eō; (9) eī; (10) eīs; (11) eae; (12) id.
- Give the Latin for the following:

(1) his	(10) to her	(19) it (neut. acc.)
(2) her (possess.)	(11) by/w./fr. her	(20) you (emphatic nom. pl.)
(3) their (masc.)	(12) by/w./fr. him	(21) you (emphatic nom. sg.)
(4) their (fem.)	(13) to/for you (pl.)	(22) you (acc. pl.)
(5) them (fem.)	(14) to/for you (sg.)	(23) us
(6) them (masc.)	(15) they (masc.)	(24) we
(7) them (neut.)	(16) they (neut.)	(25) to/for us
(8) its	(17) they (fem.)	(26) I (emphatic form)
(9) to him	(18) to/for it	(27) to/for me
- Hī tibi id dabunt. 6. Ego vōbīs id dabam. 7. Vōs eīs id dōnum dabit. 8. Eī idem dabō. 9. Nōs eī ea dabimus. 10. Ille mihi id dabit. 11. Vōbīs librōs eius dabimus. 12. Nōbīs librōs eōrum dabis. 13. Pecūniam eōrum tibi dabimus. 14. Pecūniam eius mihi dabunt. 15. Eōs librōs ad eam mittēmus. 16. Librum eius ad tē mittam. 17. Ille autem pecūniam eōrum ad nōs mittēbat. 18. Eās cum eā mittimus. 19. Eum cum eīs mittō. 20. Eōs cum amīcīs eius mittēmus. 21. Tū mē cum amīcō eōrum mittēs. 22. Vōs mēcum ad amīcum eius mittēbant. 23. Nōs tēcum in terram eōrum mittit. 24. Eās nōbīscum ad amīcōs eōrum mittent. 25. Eum vōbīscum ad amīcōs eōrum mittam. 26. Tē cum eō ad mē mittent.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 12

1. Name the principal parts of a Latin verb in their regular sequence.
2. Give the principal parts of **mittō**, labeling and translating each one.
3. What is the major difference between the perfect and imperfect tenses?
4. You must be able to tell from what verb any specific verb form comes. Practice on the following list by naming the first principal part of each of the verbs in the list.

(1) mīsērunt	(6) āctum	(11) remānserant	(16) dīxērunt
(2) laudāveram	(7) est	(12) scrīpsimus	(17) erat
(3) vincēbāmus	(8) dedimus	(13) fuit	(18) vīxī
(4) dictum	(9) futūrus	(14) fēcīt	(19) faciēbās
(5) fēcistī	(10) ēgimus	(15) fugere	(20) vīsum

5. Translate the following endings of the perfect system according to person, number, and tense in each instance, using these conventions: **-ī** = I (perfect) . . . ; **-eram** = I had . . . ; **-erō** = I shall have . . . ; (1) -istis; (2) -it; (3) -ērunt; (4) -istī; (5) -imus; (6) -erat; (7) -erimus; (8) -erāmus; (9) -erās; (10) -erint; (11) -erant; (12) -erit; (13) -erātis.
6. Translate the following in accordance with the person, number, and tense of each:

(1) vidēbant	(10) vīxistī	(19) fugit	(28) remānsimus
(2) viderant	(11) vīxērunt	(20) fūgit	(29) remānserāmus
(3) vīdistī	(12) vincet	(21) fugiunt	(30) vēnit
(4) fēcīt	(13) vīcit	(22) fūgērunt	(31) venit
(5) faciebat	(14) vīcimus	(23) servāvit	(32) veniēbātis
(6) fēcērāmus	(15) vincimus	(24) servāvērunt	(33) vēnistis
(7) fēcimus	(16) dedistī	(25) servāvistis	(34) vēnērunt
(8) faciēmus	(17) dederātis	(26) servāverat	(35) veniunt
(9) fēcērunt	(18) dedimus	(27) servāverit	(36) vēnerant

7. Illī fūgerant (fugient; fugiunt; fugiēbant; fūgērunt).
8. Hī remānsērunt (remanent; remanēbunt; remanēbant; remānserant).
9. Rēx Asiā vīcerat (vincit; vīcit; vincet).
10. Rēgēs Asiā vīcērunt (vincent; vincunt; vīcerant).
11. Rēgēs Asiā habuērunt (habent; habēbunt; habuerant).
12. Caesar in eandem terram vēnerat (vēnit; venit; veniet).
13. Caesar eadem dīxit (dīcit; dīxerat; dīcet).
14. Vōs nōbīs pācem dedistis (dabitis; dabātis; dederātis).
15. Tū litterās ad eam mīsistī (mittēs; mittis; mīserās).
16. Eōs in eādem viā vīdimus (vidēmus; vīderāmus).
17. Diū vīxerat (vīxit; vīvet).
18. Id bene fēcērās (faciēs; fēcistī; facis).
19. Cīvitātem eōrum (eius) servāvī (servābō; servābam; servāveram).
20. Eum in eōdem locō invēnērunt (invēnerant; invenient).
21. Deus hominibus lībertātem dederat (dedit; dat; dabit).
22. Mihi grātiās ēgērunt (agent; agēbant; ēgerant; agunt).
23. Vōs fuistis (erātis; estis; eritis; fuerātis) virī līberī.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 13

1. State the essential nature of reflexive pronouns, showing how, as a logical consequence, they differ from other pronouns.
2. Explain why the declension of reflexive pronouns begins with the genitive rather than with the nominative.
3. In what reflexive pronouns is the spelling the same as that of the corresponding simple pronoun?
4. Translate the following reflexive forms in accordance with their case(s) and number(s): (1) *mihi*; (2) *tē*; (3) *nōbīs*; (4) *sibi*; (5) *vōs*; (6) *sē*; (7) *vōbīs*.
5. Explain why the singular of **suus** can mean *their own* as well as *his own*, and the plural can mean *his own* as well as *their own*.
6. Explain why **eōrum** always means *their* and **eius** always means *his (her, its)* regardless of whether the nouns on which they depend are singular or plural.
7. Although **sē** and **ipse** can both be translated into English by *himself*, explain the basic difference between the Latin words.
8. Caesar eōs servāvit. 9. Caesar eum servābat. 10. Caesar sē servāvit.
11. Rōmānī sē servāverunt. 12. Rōmānī eōs servāverunt. 13. Rōmānī eum servāverunt. 14. Caesar amīcum suum servāvit. 15. Caesar amīcōs suōs servāvit. 16. Caesar amīcum eius servāvit. 17. Caesar amīcōs eius servāvit. 18. Caesar amīcum eōrum servāvit. 19. Caesar amīcōs eōrum servāvit. 20. Rōmānī amīcum suum servāverunt. 21. Rōmānī amīcōs suōs servāverunt. 22. Rōmānī amīcum eōrum servāverunt. 23. Rōmānī amīcōs eōrum servāverunt. 24. Rōmānī amīcum eius servāverunt. 25. Rōmānī amīcōs eius servāverunt. 26. Caesar ipse eum servāvit. 27. Caesar ipse sē servāvit. 28. Caesarem ipsum servāverunt. 29. Amīcum Caesaris ipsīus servābant. 30. Amīcum Rōmānōrum ipsōrum servāverunt. 31. Amīcus Caesaris ipsīus sē servāvit. 32. Amīcī Caesaris ipsīus sē servāverunt. 33. Amīcus Caesaris ipsīus eum servāvit. 34. Ipsī amīcī Caesaris eum servāverunt. 35. Nōs nōn servāverunt. 36. Nōs servāvimus. 37. Rōmānōs ipsōs servāvimus. 38. Rōmānī ipsī tē nōn servāverunt. 39. Tū tē servāvistī. 40. Tū Rōmānōs ipsōs servāvistī. 41. Mihi nihil dabat. 42. Mihi nihil dedī. 43. Sibi nihil dedit. 44. Sibi nihil dedērun. 45. Eīs nihil dedērun. 46. Eī nihil dedērun. 47. Mē vīcī. 48. Mē vīcērun. 49. Īram eōrum vīcērun. 50. Īram suam vīcērun. 51. Īram suam vīcit. 52. Fīliōs suōs vīcit. 53. Fīliōs suōs vīcērun.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 14

1. In what specific case ending of all i-stem nouns does the characteristic *i* appear?
2. What are the other i-stem peculiarities of neuters in **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar**?

3. Translate each of the following according to its case(s) and number; when a form is nom. or acc. label it as such.

(1) arte	(9) corporum	(17) rēgum	(25) virōs
(2) artium	(10) partis	(18) rēgī	(26) virī
(3) artēs	(11) partibus	(19) nōmina	(27) vīrēs
(4) marī	(12) partium	(20) animālia	(28) virīs
(5) maribus	(13) urbe	(21) animālī	(29) vīs
(6) mare	(14) urbī	(22) animālis	(30) vim
(7) maria	(15) urbium	(23) animālium	(31) vīribus
(8) corpora	(16) urbēs	(24) vīrium	(32) vī

4. Of the forms in #3 above, list those which are *i*-stem forms.

5. Translate the following phrases into Latin:

(1) by/w./fr. great force	(8) many seas (nom.)
(2) great man (acc.)	(9) by/w./fr. a great sea
(3) of great strength	(10) a great sea (acc.)
(4) to/for great force	(11) great force (acc.)
(5) of many citizens	(12) of many men (vir)
(6) by/w./fr. a good citizen	(13) by/w./fr. great strength
(7) to/for many citizens	(14) great strength (acc.)

6. What kind of idea is expressed by each of the following ablatives?

(1) cum rēge; (2) oculīs meīs; (3) cum cūrā; (4) labōre meō.

7. Translate each of the following verb forms and name the verb from which each comes: (1) cucurrerunt; (2) currēbāmus; (3) cucurristī; (4) trāxerāmus; (5) trahet; (6) trahunt; (7) gerēbat; (8) gerit; (9) gerunt; (10) gerēmus; (11) tenent; (12) tenēbunt; (13) tenuerunt; (14) tenuimus.

8. Multa bella cum Rōmānīs gessit. 9. Cīvitātem magnā cum sapientiā gerēbant. 10. Ipse cīvitātem vī cōpiarum tenuit. 11. Illa animālia multōs hominēs in mare trāxērunt. 12. Hoc magnā cum arte dīxistī. 13. Cum cūrā trāns urbem cucurrimus. 14. Magnā cum parte cīvium ad nōs veniēbat. 15. Iūra cīvium vī vincet. 16. Eum ad mortem trāns terram eius trāxistis. 17. Nōs cum cīvibus multarum urbium iungēmus. 18. Rēgī ipsī hās litterās cum virtūte scrīpsit. 19. Vīs illōrum marium erat magna. 20. Artem Graecōrum oculīs meīs vīdī. 21. Sententiās multās pulchrāsque ex virīs antiquīs trāximus.

22. Name the type of ablative found in each of the following sentences above: 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 20.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 15

1. State the difference between cardinal and ordinal numerals.
2. What cardinals are declined?
3. What ordinals are declined?

4. State the form or possible forms of each of the following: (1) *duobus*; (2) *mille*; (3) *tria*; (4) *duo*; (5) *quinque*; (6) *milia*; (7) *decem*; (8) *duabus*; (9) *centum*; (10) *trium*; (11) *viginti*; (12) *octo*.
5. Why is the genitive of the whole so called?
6. What construction did the Romans use after cardinal numerals?
7. Translate each of the following phrases.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) <i>unus civis</i> | (9) <i>centum ex civibus</i> |
| (2) <i>decem civēs</i> | (10) <i>mille civēs</i> |
| (3) <i>pars civium</i> | (11) <i>tria milia civium</i> |
| (4) <i>trēs civēs</i> | (12) <i>quid novī</i> |
| (5) <i>trēs ex sex civibus</i> | (13) <i>multum laudis</i> |
| (6) <i>quinque ex civibus</i> | (14) <i>satis pecūniae</i> |
| (7) <i>quinque civēs</i> | (15) <i>nihil aquae</i> |
| (8) <i>centum civēs</i> | |

8. When the Romans put a word of time in the ablative case without a preposition, what kind of ideas did they express?
9. Study the ablatives in the following sentences. Then translate the sentences and name the type of ablative found in each one.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| (1) <i>Cum amicis veniebat.</i> | (4) <i>Paucis horis librum scripsit.</i> |
| (2) <i>Una hora veniet.</i> | (5) <i>Illo tempore librum scripsit.</i> |
| (3) <i>Eodem tempore venit.</i> | (6) <i>Cum cura librum scribebat.</i> |

10. *Illo tempore solo illa tria pericula timuit; sed mortem semper timebat.*
11. *Isti duo reges pecuniam inter milia civium iaciebant.* 12. *Iste unus tyrannus se semper laudabat.* 13. *Cives illarum quinque urbium libertatem expectabant.* 14. *Urbem duobus horis sapientia sua conservaverunt.* 15. *In urbem cum tribus ex amicis meis veniebam.* 16. *Bella magna cum virtute gerebatis.* 17. *Itaque centum Romani mille Graecos vicerunt.* 18. *Pater filios suos saepe timebant—et nunc multum timoris habent.* 19. *Vidistine duos patres nostros eo tempore?* 20. *Ubi satis libertatis inveneristis?* 21. *Tribus horis venerunt, et idem nobis dicebat.* 22. *Parvum argumentum intellegebam.* 23. *Nullam partem vitarum nostrarum mutavimus.* 24. *Civitas nostra libertatem et iura civium conservabat.* 25. *Romani morem temporum antiquorum laudabant.* 26. *Duo patres quattuor ex filiis miserunt.* 27. *Decem viri satis sapientiae et multum virtutis habuerunt.* 28. *Quid novi, mi amice?*

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 16

1. If one has carefully learned the declension of *civis* and *mare* one can easily decline the 3d-declension adjective **fortis**, **forte** with the exception of one form. What is that form?

2. (1) Adjectives of the 3d declension may be classified as adjectives of 3 endings, 2 endings, or 1 ending. Which type is by far the most common?
(2) In what one case do adjectives of 1 and 3 endings differ from those of 2 endings?
3. Cite and label three endings in which adjectives of the 3d declension show themselves to be *i*-stems.
4. Of the endings of the 3d-declension adjectives none is likely to cause recognition difficulty except perhaps the ablative singular. What is the normal ending of the ablative singular in all genders?
5. Can 3d-declension adjectives be used with nouns of the 1st or the 2nd declension?
6. Translate the following phrases in accordance with their case(s) and number. When they are nom. or acc., so indicate.

(1) dulcī puellae	(8) omnia nōmina	(15) beātō hominī
(2) dulcī puellā	(9) omnia maria	(16) omnī marī
(3) dulcī māt̄re	(10) omnī parte	(17) omnī bonae artī
(4) dulcī māt̄rī	(11) omnium partium	(18) omnī bonā arte
(5) beātae māt̄rī	(12) omnium rēgum	(19) omnis bonae artis
(6) beātā māt̄re	(13) omnium bellōrum	(20) vī celerī
(7) omnia bella	(14) beātō homine	

7. Aetās longa saepe est difficilis. 8. Aetās difficilis potest esse beāta.
9. Quam brevis erat dulcis vīta eius! 10. Memoria dulcis aetātis mīlia hominum adiuvat. 11. Librum brevem centum hōrīs scrīpsistī. 12. In omnī marī haec duo animālia potentia inveniēbāmus. 13. In omnī terrā multa mīlia virōrum fortium vidēbitis. 14. Celer rūmor (celeric fāma) per omnem terram cucurrit. 15. Illud bellum breve erat difficile. 16. Omnia perīcula sex hōrīs superāvimus. 17. Tyrannus potēns patriam eōrum vī celerī vincet. 18. Brevī tempore omnia iūra cīvium mūtābit. 19. Difficilem artem liber-tātis dulcis nōn intellēxērunt, nam parvum sapientiae habuērunt. 20. Hominēs officia difficilia in omnibus terrīs timent.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 17

1. Define the terms “antecedent” and “relative pronoun.”
2. (1) What determines the *case* of the Latin relative pronoun?
(2) What determines the *gender* and the *number* of the relative pronoun?
3. State in what ways a relative agrees with its antecedent.
4. Name (1) the English relative pronoun which refers to persons and
(2) the one which refers to anything else. (3) Since in Latin the one relative pronoun serves both purposes, what two English meanings does it have?
5. Translate the following in accordance with their case(s) and number(s).

When a form is nom. or acc., so indicate if the translation does not make the point clear.

(1) cui	(4) cuius	(7) quā	(10) quās
(2) quōs	(5) quibus	(8) quī	(11) quōrum
(3) quae	(6) quod	(9) quem	(12) quam

6. Cīvem laudāvērunt quem mīserātis. 7. Decem cīvēs laudāvērunt quōs mīserātis. 8. Cīvem laudāvērunt quī patriam servāverat. 9. Centum cīvēs laudāvērunt quī patriam servāverant. 10. Cīvem laudāvērunt cuius fīlius patriam servāverat. 11. Cīvēs laudāvērunt quōrum septem fīliī patriam servāverant. 12. Cīvem laudāvērunt cui patriam commīserant. 13. Multōs ex cīvibus laudāvērunt quibus patriam commīserant. 14. Cīvem laudāvērunt quōcum vēnerant. 15. Cīvēs laudāvērunt quibuscum vēnerant. 16. Cum cīve vēnit cui vītā suā commīserat. 17. Tyrannī iūra cīvium dēlent quōs capiunt. 18. Tyrannus urbem dēlēvit ex quā mīlia cīvium fūgerant. 19. Tyrannus urbem dēlēvit in quam illī novem cīvēs fūgerant. 20. Tyrannus urbēs dēlēvit ex quibus cīvēs fūgerant. 21. Tyrannus urbēs dēlēvit in quās cīvēs fūgerant. 22. Perīculum superāvit quod timuimus. 23. Perīcula superāvit quae timuimus. 24. Puellīs quās laudābat librōs dedit. 25. Vir cuius fīliam amās in urbem veniēbat. 26. Virō cuius fīliam amās vītā suā commīsīt. 27. Mātrē adiuvābat, quae multum virtūtis habuit. 28. Mātribus quae multōs fīliōs habuērunt rēx pecūniā dabat.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 18

1. Define the term "passive voice" by explaining the etymology of "passive."
2. What is the difference between the ablative of means and the ablative of agent in both meaning and construction?
3. (1) What one letter occurs in 5 of the 6 passive personal endings and can thus be regarded as the peculiar sign of the passive?
(2) Does this characteristically passive letter occur in any of the corresponding active personal endings?
4. Give the English pronoun by which each of the following passive endings can be translated: (1) -mur; (2) -tur; (3) -r; (4) -ntur; (5) -ris; (6) -minī.
5. (1) Name the tense signs of the imperfect and the future in the passive voice of the 1st and 2nd conjugations.
(2) Are these the same as the tense signs in the active voice?
6. If **-bar** can be translated "I was being . . ." and **-bor**, "I shall be . . .," translate each of the following: (1) -bīmur; (2) -bāminī; (3) -bātur; (4) -beris; (5) -buntur; (6) -bāmur; (7) -bitur; (8) -bāris; (9) -biminī; (10) -bantur.
7. Mē terrent; ab eīs terreor; vī eōrum terreor. 8. Tyrannus hanc urbem dē-

lēbat. 9. Haec urbs ā tyrannō dēlēbātur; īnsidiīs dēlēbitur. 10. Ab amīcīs movēbātur; cōnsiliīs eōrum movēbātur. 11. Vīribus hominum nōn dēlēmur, sed possumus īnsidiīs dēlērī. 12. Nōn bellō dēlēbiminī, sed amōre ōtī et cōnsiliīs hominum malōrum. 13. Tū ipse nōn mūtāris, sed nōmen tuum mūtātur. 14. Mīlia hominum amōre pecūniae tenentur. 15. Aliī ab tyrannīs tenēbantur. 16. Paucī amōre vērītātis amīcītaeque tenēbuntur. 17. Puer ab amīcīs cōnservābitur. 18. Librī huius generis puerīs ā magistrō dabantur. 19. Lībertās populō ab rēge tertiō brevī tempore dabitur. 20. Patria nostra ā cīvibus fortibus etiam nunc servārī potest. 21. Fortunā aliōrum monērī dēbēmus. 22. Cōnsiliīs istīus tyrannī quī trāns mare vīvit terrēmur; sed lībertātem amāmus et bellum magnā cum virtūte gerēmus. 23. Ab amīcīs potentibus adiuvābimur. 24. Omnēs virōs nostrōs laudāmus, quī virtūte et vērītate moventur, nōn amōre suī.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 19

- Name the two basic verbal elements (1) of which the perfect passive indicative of all verbs is composed, and (2) of which the pluperfect passive indicative is composed.
- In translation how does (1) **vir laudātus est** differ from **vir laudātur**, and (2) **vir laudātus erat**, from **vir laudābātur**?
- What is the use of the interrogative pronoun?
- In what forms does the interrogative pronoun differ conspicuously in spelling from the relative?
- By what two syntactical criteria can the interrogative pronoun be distinguished from the relative even when both have the same spelling?
- Translate the following in accordance with their forms:

(1) movētur	(6) dēlēbantur	(11) tenēbāmur
(2) mōtus est	(7) dēlētī sunt	(12) mūtātus erat
(3) mōtum erat	(8) tenēmur	(13) mūtātus est
(4) movēbātur	(9) tentī sumus	(14) mūtātur
(5) dēlētī erant	(10) tentī erāmus	(15) mūtābātur
- Translate the following forms of the interrogative pronoun: (1) cuius?; (2) quem?; (3) quī?; (4) quid?; (5) quōrum?; (6) cui?; (7) quās?; (8) quis?; (9) quae?
8. Ā quō liber parātus est (parātus erat, parābātur)? 9. Magister ā quō liber parātus est labōre superātur. 10. Cui liber datus est (dabātur, datus erat)? 11. Quī puer servātus est? 12. Puerum quī servātus est ego ipse vīdī. 13. Cuius duo fīliī servātī sunt? 14. Senem cuius fīliī servātī sunt numquam vīdī. 15. Quis missus est? 16. Ā cīve quī missus erat pāx et lībertās laudātae sunt. 17. Quī missī sunt? 18. Ā decem cīvibus quī missī erant amīcītia laudāta est. 19. Quōs in urbe vīdistī? 20. Ubi sunt trēs novī amīcī quōs in

urbe vīdistī? 21. Quae ā tē ibi inventa sunt? 22. Ubi sunt tria corpora quae ā tē ibi inventa sunt? 23. Ā quibus hoc dictum est? 24. Quibus hoc dictum est? 25. Octō hominēs miserī quibus haec dicta sunt ex urbe fūgērunt. 26. Quōrum filiī ab eō laudātī sunt? 27. Patrēs quōrum filiī laudātī sunt eī grātiās agent. 28. Quid vōs terret? 29. Quod perīculum vōs terret? 30. At perīculum quod vōs terret ā cīvibus fortibus victum est.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 20

1. Indicate the force of the following masculine and feminine endings of the 4th declension: (1) -um; (2) -uum; (3) -ū; (4) -us; (5) -ūs; (6) -uī.
2. Translate the following nouns in accordance with their case forms:

(1) manuī	(6) frūctibus	(11) senātūs (sg.)
(2) manus	(7) frūctum	(12) senātuī
(3) manuum	(8) frūctūs	(13) senātus
(4) manū	(9) frūctuum	(14) senātū
(5) manūs	(10) frūctū	

3. (1) What gender predominates in the 4th declension?
(2) Name the noun which is the most common exception to this rule.
4. (1) Explain the difference of idea between the ablative of place from which and the ablative of separation.
(2) Which of the two is regular with verbs of freeing, lacking, and depriving?
(3) Which of the two is regular with verbs of motion?
5. State any differences of construction between them.
6. Quis ad nōs eō tempore vēnit? 7. Senex magnae fāmae ex patriā suā ad senātum nostrum fūgit. 8. Quid novī ab eō dictum est? 9. Hoc ab illō virō dictum est: "Libertāte carēmus." 10. Nōs servitūte et gravī metū liberāte. 11. Cōpiaē nostrae bellum longum contrā ācrēs manūs tyrannī gessērunt. 12. Illae manūs ācrēs quās tyrannus contrā nōs illā ex terrā mīsīt ā nōbīs victae sunt. 13. Post haec cīvēs quī tyrannum timuērunt ex patriā suā in civitātem nostram ductī sunt. 14. Eōs sceleribus istīus tyrannī liberāvimus. 15. Nunc omnī metū carent. 16. Filiī eōrum bonōs librōs in lūdīs nostrīs cum studiō legunt. 17. Itaque mille versūs manibus suīs scrīpsērunt. 18. Hī centum versūs nōbīs grātiās magnās agunt. 19. In hīs versibus senātus populusque Rōmānus laudantur. 20. Nam illī miserī nunc frūctūs pācis et multum libertātis sine metū habent. 21. Quoniam aliōs adiūvimus, etiam nōs ipsī frūctum magnum habēmus. 22. Virī bonī cōpiā hōrum frūctuum numquam carēbunt. 23. Aetāte nostrā multī hominēs vītā in metū et servitūte agunt. 24. Dēbēmus illōs miserōs metū liberāre. 25. Nam quis potest beātus esse sī aliī hominēs frūctibus pācis libertātisque carent?

26. What idea is expressed by each of the following ablatives, respectively? tempore (6), patriā (7), eō (8), virō (9), metū (10), nōbīs (12), patriā (13), sceleribus (14), metū (15), studiō (16), manibus (17), cōpiā (22), aetāte (23), metū (24).

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 21

1. Give the passive personal endings of the present and future tenses.
2. Repeat *aloud* the present and future passive of the model verbs **agō**, **audiō**, and **capiō**.
3. How can the present passive infinitive be distinguished from the active in the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations? Illustrate by changing the following active infinitives into passive ones: (1) sentīre; (2) movēre; (3) servāre; (4) scīre; (5) tenēre. Translate each.
4. What is exceptional about the form of the present passive infinitive of the 3d conjugation? Illustrate by changing the following active infinitives into passive ones: (1) mittere; (2) iacere; (3) tangere; (4) trahere. Translate each.
5. Translate each of the following in accordance with its form:

(1) mittar	(7) rapitur	(13) raperis	(19) tangēminī
(2) mitteris	(8) rapiētur	(14) rapiēris	(20) sciēris
(3) mittēris	(9) rapī	(15) tanguntur	(21) scīris
(4) mittī	(10) rapimur	(16) tangentur	(22) sciētur
(5) mittuntur	(11) rapientur	(17) tangī	(23) scītur
(6) mittor	(12) rapiuntur	(18) tangeris	(24) scīrī

6. Quis mittitur (mittētur, mittēbātur, missus est)? 7. Ā quō hae litterae mittentur (missae sunt, mittuntur)? 8. Cuius manū illae litterae scrīptae sunt (scrībentur)? 9. Quid dictum est (dīcēbātur, dīcētur, dīcitur)? 10. "Quis rapiētur?" "Tū rapiēris." 11. "Quī rapientur?" "Vōs rapiēminī." 12. Diū neglegēris/neglegēminī (neglēctus es/neglēctī estis). 13. Post multās hōrās līberātī sumus (līberābimur). 14. Cīvitātis causā eum rapī iussērunt. 15. Lībertātis causā cīvitās nostra ab alterō virō gerī dēbet. 16. Animus eius pecūniā tangī nōn poterat. 17. Amor patriae in omnī animō sentiēbātur (sentiētur, sentītur, sēnsus est). 18. Amōre patriae cum aliīs cīvibus iungimur (iungēbāmur, iungēmur). 19. Amīcitia nōn semper intellegitur, sed sentītur. 20. Sapientia et vēritās in illīs duōbus hominibus nōn inveniuntur (inveniuntur, inventae sunt). 21. Sapientia etiam multā pecūniā nōn parātur (parābitur, parāta est). 22. Vēritās saepe nōn scītur (sciētur, scīta est), quod studium eius est difficile. 23. Nōn sine magnō labōre vēritās inveniētur (inventae sunt, potest invenīrī). 24. Aliī studiō pecūniae atque laudis trahuntur; nōs dēbēmus amōre vēritātis sapientiaeque trahī.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 22

1. As **u** is characteristic of the 4th declension, what vowel is characteristic of the 5th declension?
2. List the case endings of the 5th declension which are enough like the corresponding endings of the 3rd declension that they can be immediately recognized without difficulty.
3. (1) What is the gender of most nouns of the 5th declension?
(2) Name the chief exception.
4. Translate each of the following in accordance with its case(s) and number(s). Where a form is nom. or acc., so state.

(1) <i>speī</i>	(6) <i>fidē</i>	(11) <i>diēbus</i>	(16) <i>reī</i>
(2) <i>spērum</i>	(7) <i>fidem</i>	(12) <i>rem</i>	(17) <i>ignium</i>
(3) <i>spem</i>	(8) <i>fideī</i>	(13) <i>rērum</i>	(18) <i>ignem</i>
(4) <i>spēbus</i>	(9) <i>diērum</i>	(14) <i>rē</i>	(19) <i>ignibus</i>
(5) <i>spēs</i>	(10) <i>diēs</i>	(15) <i>rēbus</i>	(20) <i>ignēs</i>

5. Name the type of adverbial idea in each of the following, and then translate the sentence.

(1) <i>In urbe remānsit.</i>	(4) <i>Cum eīs vēnit.</i>	(7) <i>Illud igne factum est.</i>
(2) <i>Ūnā hōrā veniet.</i>	(5) <i>Ex urbe vēnit.</i>	(8) <i>Id ab eīs factum est.</i>
(3) <i>Eō tempore vēnit.</i>	(6) <i>Ignē carent.</i>	(9) <i>Id cum fidē factum est.</i>

6. Concerning each of the following adverbial ideas, state whether in Latin the ablative alone expresses the idea, or whether the Romans used a preposition with the ablative, or whether a preposition was sometimes used and sometimes not. Base your answers on the rules learned thus far.

(1) personal agent	(5) means
(2) accompaniment	(6) manner
(3) separation	(7) place from which
(4) place where	(8) time when or within when

7. *Eō tempore libertātem illōrum decem cīvium cum fidē cōservāvit.*
8. *Rem pūblicam magnā cum cūrā gessit.*
9. *Rēs pūblica magnā cūrā ab eō gesta est.*
10. *Multae rēs bonae in mediā urbe vīsae sunt.*
11. *Eō diē multās rēs cum spē parāvērunt.*
12. *Ignem ex manibus puerī ēripiimus.*
13. *Quīnque diēbus Cicerō rem pūblicam ē periculō ēripiet.*
14. *Duās rēs pūblicās metū liberāvistī.*
15. *Terra hominēs fructibus bonīs alit.*
16. *Incertās spēs eōrum virtūte suā aluit.*
17. *Hāc aetāte spēs nostrae ā hīs tribus tyrannīs tolluntur.*
18. *Septem ex amīcīs nostrīs ex illā rē pūblicā magnō cum metū vēnērunt.*
19. *Tōta gēns in fīnēs huius reī pūblīcae magnā cum manū amīcōrum ūnō diē vēnit.*
20. *Nōn omnēs virī līberī audent sē cum hāc rē pūblicā iungere.*
21. *Sī illī fidē carent, nūlla spēs est amīcitiae et pācis.*

22. Bona fidēs et amor huius rei pūblicae possunt nōs cōservāre. 23. Tōtam vītam huic rei pūblicae dedistī.
24. What idea is expressed by each of the following ablatives? (The numbers refer to the sentences.) (7) tempore, fidē; (8) cūrā; (9) cūrā; (10) urbe; (11) diē, spē; (13) diēbus, periculō; (14) metū; (15) fructibus; (16) virtūte; (17) aetate, tyrannīs; (18) rē pūblicā, metū; (19) manū, diē; (21) fidē.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 23

- State what Latin participle is indicated by each of the following endings and give the English suffix or phrase which can be used as an approximate equivalent in each instance: (1) -tus; (2) -ns; (3) -sūrus; (4) -ntem; (5) -tūrus; (6) -ndus; (7) -sus; (8) -ntēs; (9) -sī; (10) -tīs. Such forms should be practiced aloud until you have an immediate linguistic reflex to each one. These reflexes can be tested in the following exercise.
- Translate the following participles in accordance with their tense and voice.

(1) futūrus	(7) versus	(13) faciendus	(19) datī
(2) pressūrus	(8) versūrus	(14) rapientēs	(20) datūrōs
(3) premēns	(9) dictus	(15) raptūrōs	(21) dantem
(4) pressus	(10) dīcēns	(16) cupīta	(22) mōtus
(5) premendus	(11) dictūrus	(17) cupientēs	(23) moventem
(6) vertēns	(12) factus	(18) dandum	(24) mōtūrī

- Translate the following participles or participial phrases into Latin in their nom. sg. masc. form.

(1) (having been) seen	(10) (having been) conquered
(2) seeing	(11) about to conquer
(3) about to see	(12) conquering
(4) to be written	(13) about to join
(5) about to write	(14) joining
(6) (having been) written	(15) (having been) dragged
(7) sending	(16) dragging
(8) (having been) sent	(17) about to throw
(9) about to send	(18) (having been) thrown

4. Captus nihil dīxit. 5. Servitūte līberātus, vītam iūcundam aget. 6. Dōna dantibus grātiās ēgit. 7. Aliquem dōna petentem nōn amō. 8. Homīni multam pecūniam cupientī pauca dōna sōla dabat. 9. Ad lūdum tuum fīlium meum docendum mīsī. 10. Iste, aliam gentem victūrus, magistrōs librōsque dēlēre cupiēbat. 11. Hīs īnsidiīs territī, vītam miseram vīvemus. 12. Diū oppressī, sē contrā opprimentem tyrannum vertere coepērunt.

13. Illī quattuor virī miserī, ā tyrannō vīsī, trāns fīnem cucurrērunt. 14. Ōrātor, tyrannum timēns, iūcunda semper dīcēbat. 15. Aliquem nōs timentem timēmus. 16. Hī vincentēs omnia iūra cīvium victōrum tollent. 17. Ille miser fugitūrus cōsiliū trium amīcōrum petēbat. 18. Senex, ab duōbus ex amīcīs monitus, ad nōs fūgit. 19. Ipse, ā sene secundō adiūtus, pecūniā carentibus multās rēs dabat. 20. Quis, hīs periculīs liberātus, deīs grātiās nōn dabit? 21. Iūctī vōbīscum, rem pūblicā cōservābimus. 22. Fidem habentibus nihil est incertum.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 24

1. (1) What are the two essential parts of a regular ablative absolute in Latin?
(2) Can the noun or pronoun of an ablative absolute also appear as the subject or the object of the verb?
2. (1) Explain the term "absolute."
(2) Guided by the examples in Chapter 24, p. 156, tell what punctuation usually indicates an ablative absolute, and show how this harmonizes with the term "absolute."
3. Should the ablative absolute always be translated literally? Explain.
4. Name five subordinating conjunctions in English which may be used to translate the ablative absolute depending on the requirements of the context.
5. State whether the Romans would have regarded any or all of the following sentences as incorrect, and explain why. (Examples in Chapter 24 will help you.)
 - (1) Urbe captā, Caesar eam dēlēvit.
 - (2) Caesar, urbem captus, eam dēlēvit.
 - (3) Caesar urbem captam dēlēvit.
 - (4) Urbe captā, Caesar multās gentēs dēlēvit.
6. (1) What idea is expressed by the **-ndus** participle (gerundive) + **sum**?
(2) Explain the agreement of the **-ndus**, **-nda**, **-ndum** participle.
(3) What Latin verb + the infinitive expresses a similar idea?
7. (1) Explain the syntax of **mihi** in the following sentence: Cīvitās mihi cōservanda est.
(2) Fill out the blank in the following sentence with the Latin for "by me" and explain the construction: Cīvitās—cōservāta est.
8. Hīs duōbus virīs imperium tenentibus, rēs pūblica valēbit. 9. Hāc fāmā narrātā, dux urbem sine morā relīquit. 10. Omnī cupiditāte pecūniae glōriaeque ex animō expulsā, ille dux sē vīcit. 11. Omnis cupiditās rērum malārū nōbīs vincenda est sī bonam vītam agere cupimus. 12. Cīvibus patriam amantibus, possumus habēre magnās spēs. 13. Omnēs cīvēs istum tyrannum timēbant, quī expellendus erat. 14. Tyrannō superātō, cīvēs

libertātem et iūra recēpērunt. 15. At tyrannō expulsō, alius tyrannus imperium saepe accipit. 16. Quis imperium accipiēns adiuvāre cīvitatē sōlam, nōn sē, cupit? 17. Multīs gentibus victīs, tōtum mundum tenēre cupīvistī. 18. Servitūs omnis generis per tōtum mundum opprimenda est. 19. Sī rēs pūblica nostra valet, nihil tibi timendum est. 20. Patria nostra cuique adiuvanda est quī nostrum modum vītae amat. 21. Omnia igitur iūra cīvibus magnā cūrā cōservanda sunt. 22. Officiīs ā cīvibus relictīs, rēs pūblica in magnō periculō erit. 23. Hīs rēbus gravibus dictīs, ōrātor ā nōbīs laudātus est. 24. Vērītās et virtūs omnibus virīs semper quaerendae sunt. 25. Vērītate et virtūte quaesītis, rēs pūblica cōservāta est.

26. From the above sentences list:

- A. 10 instances of the ablative absolute.
- B. 7 instances of the **-ndus sum** construction (passive periphrastic).
- C. 5 instances of the dative of agent.
- D. 2 instances of the ablative of agent.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 25

1. Review the present active and passive infinitives of all four conjugations.
2. If **-tūrus (-sūrus)** marks the future active participle, what form logically is **-tūrus (-sūrus) esse**?
3. If **-tus (-sus)** marks the perfect passive participle, what form logically is **-tus (-sus) esse**?
4. With what do the participial elements of the above infinitives (the **-tūrus, -tūra, -tūrum** and the **-tus, -a, -um**) agree?
5. To what English verb phrase is the Latin ending **-isse** equivalent? Repeat this sufficiently so that when you see **-isse** your linguistic reflex automatically and instantly gives you the proper tense and voice of the infinitive.
6. Now try your reflexes by translating the following forms in accordance with their tense and voice.

(1) mōvisse	(11) sustulisse	(21) quaesītum esse
(2) mōtus esse	(12) trāxisse	(22) expulsum esse
(3) mōtūrus esse	(13) tetigisse	(23) relictōs esse
(4) movērī	(14) amāvisse	(24) data esse
(5) dīcī	(15) vīcisē	(25) datūra esse
(6) scīrī	(16) vīxisse	(26) versūrum esse
(7) servārī	(17) trāctōs esse	(27) pressūrōs esse
(8) rapī	(18) vīsam esse	(28) raptūrōs esse
(9) mittī	(19) raptum esse	(29) iussūrum esse
(10) crēdidisse	(20) missōs esse	(30) tāctūrōs esse

7. Explain the difference between a direct and an indirect statement.
8. Indicate what verbs in the following list may introduce an indirect statement and give their meanings.

(1) mittō	(7) videō	(13) audiō	(19) ostendō
(2) nūntiō	(8) nesciō	(14) sentiō	(20) spērō
(3) rīdeō	(9) parō	(15) agō	(21) iungō
(4) intellegō	(10) crēdō	(16) scribō	(22) putō
(5) accipiō	(11) terreō	(17) audeō	(23) amō
(6) cupiō	(12) neglegō	(18) gerō	(24) negō

9. In what four main categories can we list most verbs which introduce indirect statements?
10. In English the indirect statement most often appears as a "that" clause, though an infinitive with subject accusative is sometimes used ("I believe that he is brave"; "I believe him to be brave"). What is the form of the indirect statement in classical Latin?
11. In what case did the Romans put the subject of an infinitive?
12. In Latin indirect statement does the tense of the infinitive depend on the tense of the verb of saying? In other words, must a present infinitive be used only with a present main verb, a perfect only with a perfect main verb, etc.?
13. What time relative to that of the main verb does each of the following infinitive tenses indicate: (1) perfect; (2) future; (3) present?
14. Sciō tē hoc fēcisse (factūrum esse, facere). 15. Scīvī tē hoc fēcisse (factūrum esse, facere). 16. Crēdidimus eōs ventūrōs esse (vēnisse, venīre). 17. Crēdimus eōs ventūrōs esse (vēnisse, venīre). 18. Crās audiet (A) eōs venīre (i.e., crās); (B) eōs vēnisse (e.g., herī); (C) eōs ventūrōs esse (e.g., paucīs diēbus). 19. Hodiē audit (A) eōs venīre (hodiē); (B) eōs vēnisse (herī); (C) eōs ventūrōs esse (mox, soon). 20. Herī audīvīt (A) eōs venīre (herī); (B) eōs vēnisse (e.g., prīdiē, the day before yesterday); (C) eōs ventūrōs (paucīs diēbus). 21. Spērant vōs eum vīsūrōs esse. 22. Sciō hoc ā tē factum esse. 23. Nescīvī illa ab eō facta esse. 24. Negāvērunt urbem ab hostibus capī (captam esse). 25. Scītis illōs esse (futūrōs esse, fuisse) semper fidēlēs. 26. Scīvistis illōs esse (futūrōs esse, fuisse) semper fidēlēs. 27. Putābant tyrannum sibi expellendum esse. 28. Crēdimus pācem omnibus ducibus quaerendam esse. 29. Dīcit pācem ab decem ducibus quaerī (quaesītam esse). 30. Dīxit duōs ducēs pācem quaesītūrōs esse (quaerere, quaesīvisse). 31. Hostēs spērant sē omnēs rēs pūblicās victūrōs esse. 32. Bene sciō mē multa nescīre; nēmō enim potest omnia scīre.
33. All infinitives except one in the above sentences are infinitives in indirect statement. Name that one exception.
34. Explain the syntax of the following words by stating in each instance (A) the form and (B) the reason for the form: (14) tē; fēcisse; (16) eōs; (17) ventūrōs esse; (21) eum; (22) hoc; (23) eō; (24) hostibus; (25) fidēlēs; (27) sibi; (28) pācem; ducibus; (29) ducibus; (30) pācem; (31) rēs pūblicās.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 26

1. (1) In the comparison of adjectives, to what English ending does the Latin **-ior** correspond?
(2) What mnemonic aid can be found in their superficial similarity?
2. (1) To what English adjectival ending does **-issimus** correspond?
(2) Can any mnemonic device be found here?
3. (1) To what part of an adjective are **-ior** and **-issimus** normally added?
(2) Illustrate by adding these endings to the following adjectives: **turpis**; **vēlōx**, gen. **vēlōcis**, *swift*; **prūdēns**, gen. **prūdētis**, *prudent*.
4. If **acerbus** means *harsh* give (1) three possible forces of the comparative **acerbior** and (2) two possible forces of the superlative **acerbissimus**.
5. Give the meaning of **quam** (1) with the comparative degree (e.g., *hic erat acerbior quam ille*) and (2) with the superlative (e.g., *hic erat quam acerbissimus*).
6. What case follows **quam**, *than*?
7. (1) Do most adjectives of the third declension have consonant stems or **i**-stems?
(2) Do comparatives have consonant stems or **i**-stems?

8. Nūtiāvērunt ducem quam fortissimum vēnisse. 9. Lūce clārissimā ab quattuor virīs vīsā, cōpiae fortissimae contrā hostēs missae sunt. 10. Istō homine turpissimō expulsō, senātus cīvibus fideliōribus dōna dedit. 11. Beātiōrēs cīvēs prō cīvibus miseriōribus haec dulcia faciēbant. 12. Hic auctor est clārior quam ille. 13. Quīdam dīxērunt hunc auctōrem esse clāriōrem quam illum. 14. Librōs sapientiōrum auctōrum legite, sī vītā sapientissimā agere cupitis. 15. Sex auctōrēs quōrum librōs lēgī sunt acerbiōrēs. 16. Quibusdam librīs sapientissimīs lēctīs, illa vitia turpiōra vītāvimus. 17. Hic vir, quī turpia vitia sua superāvit, fortior est quam dux fortissimus. 18. Quis est vir fēlicissimus? Is quī vītā sapientissimā agit fēlicior est quam tyrannus potentissimus. 19. Remedium vitiōrum vestrōrum vidētur difficilior. 20. Ille dux putāvit patriam esse sibi cāriōrem quam vītā. 21. Manus adulēscēntium quam fideliōrū senātuī quae-renda est.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 27

1. (1) What is peculiar about the comparison of adjectives in which the masculine of the positive degree ends in **-er**?
(2) Does this hold for adjectives of any declension or only for those of the 1st and 2nd declension?
2. (1) What is peculiar about the comparison of **facilis**?
(2) Do all adjectives in **-lis** follow this rule? Be specific.
3. Some of the most common adjectives are the most irregular in their comparison. To illustrate how helpful English can be in learning these

irregular forms, write each of the following Latin words on a separate line:

parvus, malus, bonus, (prō), magnus, superus, multus;

and then, choosing from the following list, write opposite each of them the English words which suggest the comparative and the superlative respectively:

pessimist, prime, minus, ameliorate, summit, maximum, supreme,
optimist, plus, superior, pejorative, prior, major, minimum.

4. Translate the following:

(1) bellum minus	(13) fidēs minima	(25) plūrēs labōrēs
(2) bellum pessimum	(14) mare minus	(26) ducēs optimī
(3) bellum maius	(15) in marī minōre	(27) ducēs maiōrēs
(4) bella priōra	(16) maria maiōra	(28) ducēs meliōrēs
(5) liber simillimus	(17) fructūs optimī	(29) dōna minima
(6) liber difficilior	(18) fructus peior	(30) dōna plūra
(7) puer minimus	(19) hominēs ācerimī	(31) dōna prīma
(8) puer melior	(20) hominēs ācriōrēs	(32) plūs laudis
(9) puella pulcherrima	(21) hominēs plūrēs	(33) plūrēs laudēs
(10) puella pulchrior	(22) labor difficillimus	(34) cīvēs pessimī
(11) puellae plūrimae	(23) labor suprēmus	(35) cīvēs meliōrēs
(12) fidēs maior	(24) plūs labōris	(36) cīvēs liberrimī

5. Facillima saepe nōn sunt optima. 6. Difficilia saepe sunt maxima. 7. Meliōra studia sunt difficiliōra. 8. Pessimī auctōrēs librōs plūrimōs scribunt. 9. Hī librī peiōrēs sunt quam librī auctōrum meliōrum. 10. Puer minor maius dōnum accēpit. 11. Illa rēs pūblica minima maximās spēs habuit. 12. Plūrēs virī crēdunt hoc bellum esse peius quam prīmum bellum. 13. Dux melior cum cōpiīs maiōribus veniet. 14. Ācrēs ducēs ācriōrēs cōpiās ācerimōrum hostium saepe laudābant. 15. Tyrannō pessimō expulsō, cīvēs ducem meliōrem et sapientiōrem quaesivērunt. 16. Meliōrī ducī maius imperium et plūs pecūniae dedērunt. 17. Cīvēs urbium minōrum nōn sunt meliōrēs quam eī urbium maximārum. 18. Nōs nōn meliōrēs sumus quam plūrimī virī priōrum aetātum. 19. Maiōrēs nostrī Apollinem (Apollō, acc.) deum sōlis appellābant.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 28

1. What does the subjunctive usually indicate in Latin—a fact or something other than a fact?
2. Is the subjunctive more or less common in Latin than it is in English?
3. What vowel is the sign of the present subjunctive (1) in the first conjugation and (2) in the other conjugations?
4. When the verb of the *main clause* is in the subjunctive, what is the force of this subjunctive?

5. What idea is expressed by the subjunctive in a *subordinate clause* introduced by **ut** or **nē**?
6. In this chapter when **nē** is used with a *main verb* in the subjunctive, what kind of subjunctive is it?
7. Did the Roman prose-writers of the classical period use the infinitive to express purpose as we do in English?
8. Whenever in the following list a form is subjunctive, so label it, indicating also its person and number. The indicative forms are to be translated in accordance with their person, number, and tense.

(1) mittet	(11) audiēmur	(21) līberēminī
(2) mittat	(12) audiāmur	(22) līberābiminī
(3) mittit	(13) audīmur	(23) dēlentur
(4) det	(14) ēripiās	(24) dēleantur
(5) dat	(15) ēripis	(25) vincēris
(6) crēdant	(16) ēripiēs	(26) vinceris
(7) crēdunt	(17) sciuntur	(27) vincāris
(8) crēdent	(18) scientur	(28) dīcimus
(9) movent	(19) sciantur	(29) dīcēmus
(10) moveant	(20) līberāminī	(30) dīcāmus

9. Ille dux veniat. Eum exspectāmus. 10. Cīvēs turpēs ex rē publicā discēdant ut in pāce vīvāmus. 11. Sī illī duo amīcōs cupiunt, vērā beneficia faciant. 12. Beneficia aliīs praestat ut amētur. 13. Haec verba fēlicia vōbīs dīcō nē discēdātis. 14. Patriae causā haec difficillima faciāmus. 15. Illīs miserīs plūs pecūniae date nē armīs contrā hostēs careant. 16. Putat eōs id factūrōs esse ut īram meam vītent. 17. Arma parēmus nē lībertās nostra tollātur. 18. Armīsne sōlīs lībertās nostra ē perīculō ēripiētur? 19. Nē sapientēs librōs difficiliōrēs scrībant. 20. Satis sapientiae enim ā librīs difficiliōribus nōn accipiēmus. 21. Meliōra et maiōra faciat nē vītā miserrimā agat. 22. Haec illī auctōrī clārissimō nārrā ut in librō eius scrībantur. 23. Vēritātem semper quaerāmus, sine quā maximī animī nōn possunt esse fēlicēs.

24. Explain the syntax of the following words (i.e., copy the words each on a new line, state the form, and give the reason for that form): (9) veniat; (10) discēdant, vīvāmus; (11) faciant; (12) praestat, amētur; (13) discēdātis; (14) faciāmus; (15) date, armīs, careant; (16) eōs, factūrōs esse, vītent; (17) parēmus, tollātur; (18) armīs, ēripiētur; (19) scrībant; (20) accipiēmus; (21) faciat, agat; (22) nārrā, scrībantur; (23) quaerāmus.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 29

1. What is the easy rule for the recognition and the formation of the imperfect subjunctive active and passive?

2. Does this rule apply to such irregular verbs as **sum** and **possum**?
3. The indicatives in the following list are to be translated according to their forms. The subjunctives are to be so labeled, with indication also of their tense, person, and number.

(1) vocāret	(11) dīcat	(21) possīmus
(2) invenīrent	(12) dīcet	(22) essent
(3) vidērēmus	(13) dīcit	(23) accipiās
(4) dīcerem	(14) sint	(24) accipiēs
(5) ēriperēs	(15) posset	(25) acciperēs
(6) servet	(16) possit	(26) expellēminī
(7) servārētis	(17) discēderent	(27) expellerēminī
(8) videat	(18) discēdent	(28) expellāminī
(9) inveniēs	(19) discēdant	(29) movērentur
(10) inveniās	(20) dēmus	(30) moventur

4. How can the idea of result be expressed in Latin?
5. How can result clauses be distinguished from purpose clauses?
6. When and where is the imperfect subjunctive used?
7. Optimōs librōs tantā cum cūrā lēgērunt ut multum sapientiae discerent.
8. Bonōs librōs cum cūrā legēbāmus ut sapientiam discerēmus.
9. Optimī librī discipulīs legendī sunt ut vērītatem et mōrēs bonōs discant.
10. Sapientissimī auctōrēs plūrēs librōs scrībant ut omnēs gentēs adiuvāre possint.
11. Animī plūrimōrum hominum tam stultī sunt ut discere nōn cupiant.
12. At multae mentēs ita ācrēs sunt ut bene discere possint.
13. Quīdam magistrī discipulōs tantā cum arte docēbant ut ipsī discipulī quidem discere cuperent.
14. Imperium istīus tyrannī tantum erat ut senātus eum expellere nōn posset.
15. Omnēs cīvēs sē patriae dent nē hostēs lībertātem tollant.
16. Caesar tam ācer dux erat ut hostēs mīlitēs Rōmānōs nōn vincerent.
17. Dūcimusne aliās gentēs tantā cum sapientiā et virtūte ut lībertās cōnservētur?
18. Tanta beneficia faciēbātis ut omnēs vōs amārent.
19. Tam dūrus erat ut nēmō eum amāret.
20. Mīlia cīvium ex eā terrā fugiēbant nē ā tyrannō opprimerentur.
21. Lībertātem sīc amāvērunt ut numquam ab hostibus vincerentur.
22. Explain the syntax of the following words: (7) discerent; (8) discerēmus; (9) discant; (10) scrībant, possint; (11) cupiant; (12) possint; (13) cupe-
rent; (14) posset; (15) dent, tollant; (16) vincerent; (17) cōnservētur;
(18) amārent; (19) amāret; (20) opprimerentur; (21) vincerentur.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 30

1. As the form of the imperfect subjunctive active is the present active infinitive plus personal endings, how can the pluperfect subjunctive active be easily recognized?

2. As the pluperfect indicative passive is the perfect passive particle + **eram** (i.e., the imperfect indicative of **sum**), what parallel rule holds for the pluperfect subjunctive passive?
3. If **positus est** is the perfect indicative passive, what most naturally is **positus sit**?
4. What forms of the active indicative do the forms of the perfect subjunctive active resemble in most instances?
5. State the tense, voice, person, and number of each of the following subjunctives:

(1) poneretur	(5) posuerint	(9) darent	(13) dedissēs
(2) posuissem	(6) poneremus	(10) datī essēmus	(14) darētur
(3) positī sint	(7) posuissētis	(11) det	(15) dederīmus
(4) ponāmur	(8) positus esset	(12) datus sīs	(16) dedissent

6. (1) Name the primary tenses of the indicative.
 (2) Name the primary tenses of the subjunctive.
 (3) Name the historical tenses of the indicative.
 (4) Name the historical tenses of the subjunctive.
7. (1) What time does the present subjunctive indicate relative to that of a primary main verb?
 (2) What time does the imperfect subjunctive indicate relative to that of a historical main verb?
 (3) What time does the perfect subjunctive indicate relative to that of a primary main verb?
 (4) What time does the pluperfect subjunctive indicate relative to that of a secondary main verb?
8. Ubi dux est (fuit)? 9. Rogant ubi dux sit (fuerit). 10. Rogābant ubi dux esset (fuisset). 11. Rogābunt ubi dux sit (fuerit). 12. Nesciō ubi pecūnia posita sit. 13. Scīsne ubi pecūnia ponātur? 14. Scīvērunt ubi pecūnia poneretur. 15. Nescīvit ubi pecūnia posita esset. 16. Vōbīs dīcēmus cūr mīles hoc fēcērit (faciat). 17. Mihi dīxērunt cūr mīles hoc fēcisset (faceret). 18. Dīc mihi quis vēnerit (veniat). 19. Ōrātor rogāvit cūr cēterī cīvēs haec cōnsilia nōn cognōvissent. 20. Ducī nūntiāvimus cēterōs mīlitēs in illam terram fugere (fūgissee). 21. Ducī nūntiāvimus in quam terram cēterī mīlitēs fugerent (fūgissent). 22. Audīvimus cīvēs tam fidēlēs esse ut rem pūblicam cōservārent. 23. Audīvimus quid cīvēs fēcissent ut rem pūblicam cōservārent. 24. Quaerēbant quōrum in rē pūblicā pāx invenīrī posset. 25. Cognōvimus pācem in patriā eōrum nōn inventam esse. 26. Illī stultī semper rogant quid sit melius quam imperium aut pecūnia. 27. Nōs quidem putāmus pecūniam ipsam nōn esse malam; sed crēdimus vērītatem et libertātem et amīcitiā esse meliōrēs et maiōrēs. 28. Haec cupimus ut vītā pulchriōrem agāmus; nam pecūnia sōla et imperium possunt hominēs dūrōs facere,

ut fēlicēs nōn sint. 29. Dēnique omnia expōnat ut iam comprehendātis quanta scelera contrā rem pūblicam commissa sint.

30. Explain the syntax of the following: (15) posita esset; (16) fēcerit; (17) fēcisset; (18) vēnerit; (20) fugere; (21) fugerent; (22) esse, cōservārent; (23) fēcissent, cōservārent; (24) posset; (25) inventam esse; (26) sit; (27) esse; (28) agāmus, sint; (29) expōnat, comprehendātis, commissa sint.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 31

1. Name the three possible meanings of **cum** + the subjunctive.
2. When **tamen** follows a **cum**-clause, what does **cum** regularly mean?
3. (1) To what conjugation does **ferō** belong?
(2) State the irregularity which the following forms of **ferō** have in common: ferre, fers, fert, fertis, ferris, fertur.
4. In the following list label the subjunctives and translate the rest according to their forms.

(1) ferat	(6) ferunt	(11) fertis	(16) tulisse
(2) fert	(7) ferent	(12) ferēris	(17) lātūrus esse
(3) ferret	(8) ferant	(13) ferris	(18) ferendus
(4) feret	(9) fertur	(14) fer	(19) lātus esse
(5) ferre	(10) ferte	(15) ferrī	(20) tulisset

5. Cum hoc dīxissēmus, illī vīgintī respondērunt sē pācem aequam oblātūrōs esse. 6. Cum sē in aliam terram contulisset, tamen amīcōs novōs invēnit. 7. Cum amīcitiam nōbīs offerant, eīs auxilium offerēmus. 8. Cum perīculum magnum esset, omnēs cōpiās et arma brevī tempore contulērunt. 9. Quid tū fers? Quid ille fert? Dīc mihi cūr haec dōna offerantur. 10. Cum exposuisset quid peteret, negāvistī tantum auxilium posse offerri. 11. Cum dōna iūcunda tulissent, potuī tamen īnsidiās eōrum cognōscere. 12. Cum cōsilia tua nunc comprehendāmus, īnsidiās tuās nōn ferēmus. 13. Tanta mala nōn ferenda sunt. Cōnfer tē in exsilium. 14. Dēnique hī centum cīvēs reī pūblīcae auxilium ferant. 15. Putābam eōs vīnum nāvibus lātūrōs esse. 16. Cum mīlitēs nostrī hostēs vicissent, tamen eīs multa beneficia obtulērunt. 17. Cum cognōvisset quanta beneficia cēterī trēs offerent, ipse aequa beneficia obtulit. 18. Cīvibus miserīs gentium parvārum satis auxiliī dēbēmus offerre. 19. Cum cōsul haec verba dīxisset, senātus respondit pecūniam ad hanc rem collātam esse.

20. Explain the syntax of the following words: (5) dīxissēmus, oblātūrōs esse; (6) contulisset; (7) offerant; (8) esset; (9) offerantur; (10) exposuisset, peteret; (11) tulissent; (12) comprehendāmus; (13) cōnfer; (14) ferant; (15) nāvibus, lātūrōs esse; (16) vicissent; (17) offerent; (19) dīxisset.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 32

1. What is the regular positive ending (1) of adverbs made from adjectives of the first and the second declensions and (2) of adverbs made from adjectives of the third declension?
2. In English what adverbial ending is equivalent to the Latin adverbial *-ē* or *-iter*?
3. Do all Latin adverbs of the positive degree end in *-ē* or *-iter*?
4. (1) What is the ending of the comparative degree of an adverb in Latin?
(2) With what form of the adjective is this identical?
(3) In English how is the comparative degree of the adverb usually formed?
5. How does the base of the superlative degree of a Latin adverb compare with that of the corresponding adjective?
6. Translate each of the following adverbs in two ways: (1) *liberius*; (2) *liberrimē*.
7. Translate each of the following adverbs in accordance with its form.

(1) <i>iūcundē</i>	(6) <i>breviter</i>	(11) <i>minimē</i>	(16) <i>minus</i>
(2) <i>iūcundius</i>	(7) <i>celerrimē</i>	(12) <i>magis</i>	(17) <i>facile</i>
(3) <i>iūcundissimē</i>	(8) <i>peius</i>	(13) <i>diūtius</i>	(18) <i>maximē</i>
(4) <i>melius</i>	(9) <i>fidēlius</i>	(14) <i>male</i>	(19) <i>gravissimē</i>
(5) <i>fidēlissimē</i>	(10) <i>facilius</i>	(15) <i>miserius</i>	(20) <i>celerius</i>
8. (1) What is the stem of *volō* in the indicative?
(2) What is the stem of *volō* in the present and the imperfect subjunctive?
9. To what other irregular verb is *volō* similar in the present subjunctive?
10. Label the subjunctives in the following list and translate the other forms.

(1) <i>volēs</i>	(7) <i>māllēmus</i>	(13) <i>voluisse</i>	(19) <i>voluistī</i>
(2) <i>velīs</i>	(8) <i>voluissēs</i>	(14) <i>volunt</i>	(20) <i>vellet</i>
(3) <i>vīs</i>	(9) <i>volam</i>	(15) <i>voluimus</i>	(21) <i>nōlunt</i>
(4) <i>vellēs</i>	(10) <i>volēbant</i>	(16) <i>velle</i>	(22) <i>nōllet</i>
(5) <i>māvult</i>	(11) <i>volet</i>	(17) <i>voluerat</i>	(23) <i>mālit</i>
(6) <i>velīmus</i>	(12) <i>vultis</i>	(18) <i>voluērunt</i>	(24) <i>nōlet</i>
11. *Quīdam mālunt crēdere omnēs esse pārēs.* 12. *Quīdam negant mentēs quidem omnium hominum esse pārēs.* 13. *Hī dīvitiās celerrimē invēnērunt; illī diūtissimē erunt pauperēs.* 14. *Hic plūrimōs honōrēs quam facillimē accipere vult.* 15. *Nōlite hanc scientiam āmittere.* 16. *Cīvēs ipsī rem publicam melius gessērunt quam ille dux.* 17. *Ibi terra est aequior et plūs patet.* 18. *Nōs ā scientiā prohibēre nōlent virī liberī; sed tyrannī maximē sic volunt.* 19. *Tyrannus cīvēs suōs ita male opprimēbat ut semper liberī esse vellent.* 20. *Plūrima dōna liberrimē offeret ut exercitus istum tyrannum adiuvāre velit.* 21. *Cum auxilium offerre minimē vellent, nōluimus eīs beneficia*

multa praestāre. 22. Cum hostēs contrā nōs celeriter veniant, volumus nostrōs ad arma quam celerrimē vocāre. 23. Cum libertātem lēgēsque cōn-servāre vērē vellent, tamen scelera tyrannī diūtissimē ferenda erant. 24. Māvult haec sapientius facere nē hanc quidem occasiōnem āmittat. 25. Nōlī discēdere, mī amīce.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 33

1. (1) What form of the verb is found in both clauses of a future less vivid condition?
(2) Explain why this construction is called “less vivid” as compared with the simple future (or “future more vivid”)
 2. (1) Name the specific type of condition (A) that has the imperfect subjunctive in both clauses and (B) that has the pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses.
(2) In each of these conditions which part of the sentence is essentially the same in both Latin and English?
 3. What is the regular negative of the conditional clause in Latin?
 4. What type of Latin condition is translated by “should . . . would” and hence can be called a “should-would condition”?
 5. What is the meaning of **quis**, **quid** after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, and **num**?
6. Sī ratiō dūcit, fēlix es. 7. Sī ratiō dūcet, fēlix eris. 8. Sī ratiō dūcat, fēlix sīs. 9. Sī ratiō dūceret, fēlix essēs. 10. Sī ratiō dūxisset, fēlix fuissēs. 11. Sī pecūniam amās, sapientiā carēs. 12. Sī pecūniam amābis, sapientiā carēbis. 13. Sī pecūniam amēs, sapientiā carēas. 14. Sī pecūniam amārēs, sapientiā carērēs. 15. Sī pecūniam amāvissēs, sapientiā caruissēs. 16. Sī vērītātem quaerimus, scientiam invenīmus. 17. Sī vērītātem quaerēmus, scientiam invenīēmus. 18. Sī vērītātem quaerāmus, scientiam invenīāmus. 19. Sī vērītātem quaererēmus, scientiam invenīrēmus. 20. Sī vērītātem quaesīvis-sēmus, scientiam invēnissēmus. 21. Nisi īram vītābitis, duōs amīcōs āmittētis. 22. Nisi īram vītāvissētis, quīnque amīcōs āmīssissētis. 23. Nisi īram vītētis, multōs amīcōs āmittātis. 24. Nisi īram vītārētis, multōs amīcōs āmitterētis. 25. Nisi īram vītātis, multōs amīcōs āmittitis. 26. Nisi īram vītāvistis, multōs amīcōs āmīssistis. 27. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habet, eum lau-dāmus. 28. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habuisset, eum laudāvissēmus. 29. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habeat, eum laudēmus. 30. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habuit, eum laudāvimus (laudābāmus). 31. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habēret, eum laudārē-mus. 32. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habēbit, eum laudābimus. 33. Sī istī vincent, discēdēmus. 34. Sī istī vincant, discēdāmus. 35. Sī istī vīcissent, discessis-sēmus. 36. Sī librōs bene lēgissēs, melius scrīpsissēs. 37. Sī librōs bene legēs, melius scrībēs. 38. Sī librōs bene legās, melius scrībās.
39. Name in sequence the types of conditions found in sentences 6–10 and 21–26.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 34

1. State the chief peculiarity of deponent verbs.
2. Write a synopsis of the following verbs in the 6 tenses of the indicative and the 4 tenses of the subjunctive as indicated:
 - (1) **cōnor** in the 1st person plural.
 - (2) **loquor** in the 3d person singular.
3. (1) Write, label, and translate all the participles of **patior**.
 (2) Write, label, and translate all the infinitives of **patior**.
4. Using the proper form of **illud cōsilium** fill in the following blanks to complete the idea suggested by the English sentence in each instance.
 - (1) He will not follow that plan: nōn sequētur _____.
 - (2) He will not use that plan: nōn utētur _____.
 - (3) He will not permit that plan: nōn patiētur _____.
5. Explain the proper form of **illud cōsilium** in #4 (2) above.
6. Name the *active forms* found in deponent verbs.
7. Give the imperative forms of (1) **cōnor** and (2) **loquor**, and translate each one.
8. Translate the following participles: (1) locūtus; (2) mortuus; (3) cōnātus; (4) passus; (5) secūtus; (6) ēgressus; (7) profectus.
9. In the following list label any subjunctive forms and translate the rest:

(1) ūtētur	(6) ūsus esset	(11) patī	(16) patitur
(2) ūtātur	(7) ūsūrum esse	(12) passī sunt	(17) patiēmur
(3) ūtitur	(8) patiēris	(13) passum esse	(18) arbitrētur
(4) ūterētur	(9) pateris	(14) patientēs	(19) arbitrārētur
(5) ūsus	(10) patere	(15) patiātur	(20) patiendum est
10. Arbitrātur haec mala patiēda esse.
11. Cōnābimur haec mala patī.
12. Nisi morī vīs, patere haec mala.
13. Maxima mala passus, homō miser mortuus est.
14. Tyrannus arbitrātus est eōs duōs haec mala diū passūrōs esse.
15. Cum tria bella passī essent, istum tyrannum in exilium expellere ausī sunt.
16. Sī hunc ducem novum sequēminī, libertāte et ōtiō ūtēminī.
17. Hīs verbīs dictīs, eum sequī ausī sumus.
18. Haec verba locūtī, profectī sumus nē in eō locō miserō morerēmur.
19. Cum vōs cōsiliō malō ūsōs esse arbitrārētur, tamen vōbīscum liberē locūtus est.
20. Sī quis vīnō eius generis ūtī audeat, celeriter moriātur.
21. Eōdem diē fīlius eius nātus est et mortuus est.
22. Omnibus opibus nostrīs ūtāmur ut patria nostra servētur.
23. Cum in aliam terram proficīscī cōnārētur, ā mīlitibus captus est.
24. Arbitrābar eum ex urbe cum decem amīcīs ēgressūrum esse.
25. Eā nocte profectus, Caesar ad quandam īnsulam clārissimam vēnit.
26. Sī meliōribus librīs ūsī essent, plūra didicissent.
27. Sī multōs amīcōs habēre vīs, nōlī esse superbus.
28. Name the type of condition found above in each of the following sentences: 12, 16, 20, 26.

29. Explain the syntax of the following: (14) *passūrōs esse*; (17) *verbīs*; (18) *locūtī, morerēmur*; (19) *cōnsiliō, arbitrārētur*; (21) *diē*; (22) *ūtāmur*; (25) *nocte*; (26) *librīs*.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 35

1. A certain number of verbs, which in English apparently take a direct object, in Latin take a dative. In lieu of a good rule to cover such verbs, what procedures can prove helpful?
2. Some other verbs also, when compounded with certain prepositions, may take a dative.
 - (1) What is the concept that underlies this?
 - (2) Do all compound verbs take the dative?
3. Copy each of the following verbs on a new line; after it write that one of the three forms **eī, eum, eō** which is in the case required by the verb; and then translate the whole expression, using the pronoun to mean "him" generally and "it" where necessary.

(1) <i>cognōscunt</i>	(7) <i>patiuntur</i>	(13) <i>superant</i>	(19) <i>persuādent</i>
(2) <i>ignōscunt</i>	(8) <i>invenient</i>	(14) <i>crēdunt</i>	(20) <i>ūtuntur</i>
(3) <i>serviunt</i>	(9) <i>nocent</i>	(15) <i>carent</i>	(21) <i>pellunt</i>
(4) <i>servant</i>	(10) <i>iuvant</i>	(16) <i>student</i>	(22) <i>parcunt</i>
(5) <i>parāvī</i>	(11) <i>placent</i>	(17) <i>hortantur</i>	(23) <i>imperant</i>
(6) <i>pāruī</i>	(12) <i>iaciunt</i>	(18) <i>sequuntur</i>	(24) <i>iubent</i>

4. *Ducem servāvit.* 5. *Ducī servīvit.* 6. *Servī aliīs hominibus serviunt.*
7. *Virī fortēs aliōs servant.* 8. *Ille servus filiō meō servīvit et eum servāvit.*
9. *Sī quis sibi sōlī serviet, rem publicam numquam servābit.* 10. *Sī quis hunc labōrem suscepisset, mille virōs servāvisset.* 11. *Deī mihi ignōscunt; vōs, ō cīvēs, tōtī exercituī ignōscite.* 12. *Sī Deum nōbīs ignōscere volumus, nōs dēbēmus aliīs hominibus ignōscere.* 13. *Mihi nunc nōn crēdunt, neque umquam duōbus filiīs meis crēdere volent.* 14. *Illī amīcī sunt mihi cārisimī.* 15. *Cum bonā fidē carērēs, tibi crēdere nōn poterant.* 16. *Huic ducī pārēāmus ut nōbīs parcat et urbem servet.* 17. *Nisi Caesar cīvibus placēbit, vītae eius nōn parcent.* 18. *Litterīs Latīnīs studeō, quae mihi placent etiam sī amīcīs meis persuadere nōn possum.* 19. *Vēritātī et sapientiae semper studeāmus et pārēāmus.* 20. *Optimīs rēbus semper studēte sī vērē esse fēlicēs vultis.* 21. *Hīs rēbus studentēs, et librīs et vītā ūtāmur.* 22. *Vir bonus nēminī nocere vult: omnibus parcit, omnēs iuvat.* 23. *Praemia mea sunt simillima tuīs.*

24. Explain the syntax of the following: (5) *ducī*; (8) *eum*; (9) *sibi*; (11) *exercituī*; (12) *hominibus*; (13) *filiīs*; (14) *mihi*; (15) *fidē*; (16) *ducī, pārēāmus, servet*; (17) *cīvibus, vītae*; (18) *litterīs, amīcīs*; (21) *rēbus, librīs, ūtāmur*; (22) *omnibus*; (23) *tuīs*.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 36

1. We have already learned how the Romans expressed indirect statements (Chapter 25) and indirect questions (Chapter 30). Now after a verb having the connotation of command, how did the Romans express an indirect command?
2. List some common Latin verbs which can take an indirect command.
3. In the following list label the subjunctives and translate the other forms.

(1) <i>fīet</i>	(6) <i>fīunt</i>	(10) <i>fierent</i>	(14) <i>fierem</i>
(2) <i>fit</i>	(7) <i>fīēbant</i>	(11) <i>fīmus</i>	(15) <i>fīant</i>
(3) <i>fīat</i>	(8) <i>fīēs</i>	(12) <i>fīent</i>	(16) <i>faciendus</i>
(4) <i>fieret</i>	(9) <i>factus esse</i>	(13) <i>fīs</i>	(17) <i>fīāmus</i>
(5) <i>fieri</i>			

4. *Dixit eōs litterīs Latīnīs studēre.* 5. *Dixit cūr litterīs Latīnīs studērent.*
6. *Dixit ut litterīs Latīnīs studērent.* 7. *Ab eīs quaesivimus cūr philosophiae Graecae studērent.* 8. *Quaerisne ut nātūrā omnium rērum cognōscāmus?*
9. *Tē moneō ut hīs sapientibus parcās.* 10. *Militēs monuit nē eīs pācem petentibus nocērent.* 11. *Nōbīs imperābit nē hostibus crēdāmus.* 12. *Tibi imperāvit ut ducī pārērēs.* 13. *Tē rogō cūr hoc fēcērīs.* 14. *Tē rogō ut hoc faciās.* 15. *Ā tē petō ut pāx fīat.* 16. *Ā mē petēbant nē bellum facerem.* 17. *Eum ōrāvī nē rēgī turpī pārēret.* 18. *Vōs ōrāmus ut discipulī ācerimī fīatis.* 19. *Nōlī esse similis istī tyrannō dūrō.* 20. *Caesar cūrāvit ut imperium suum maximum in cīvitate fieret.* 21. *Ōrātor nōs hortātus est ut liberāe patriae nostrae cum studiō servīrēmus.* 22. *Nōbīs persuāsit ut aequīs lēgibus semper ūterēmur.* 23. *Cōnāmur ducī persuādēre nē artibus et lēgibus patriae noceat.* 24. *Tyrannus imperat ut pecūnia fīat; et pecūnia fit.* *At ille stultus nōn sentit hanc pecūniā sine bonā fidē futūrā esse nihil.* 25. *Plūrēs quidem discipulōs hortēmur ut linguae Latīnae studeant.*

26. Explain the syntax of the following: (4) *studēre*; (5) *studērent*; (6) *studērent*; (7) *studērent*; (8) *cognōscāmus*; (9) *parcās*; (10) *eīs*, *pācem*; (11) *hostibus*; (13) *fēcērīs*; (14) *faciās*; (16) *facerem*; (18) *fīatis*; (22) *lēgibus*; (23) *lēgibus*; (24) *futūrā esse*; (25) *hortēmur*.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 37

1. (1) Name the tenses and moods in which the stem of *ire* is changed to *e* before *a*, *o*, and *u*.
(2) Otherwise, what is the stem of *eō* in the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, and infinitives?
2. State the nominative singular and the nominative plural of the present participle of *eō*.

3. Write a synopsis of *eō* in the 2nd singular and the 3d plural indicative and subjunctive active.
4. In the following list label the subjunctives and translate the other forms.

(1) <i>iimus</i>	(7) <i>itūrus esse</i>	(13) <i>ī</i>	(19) <i>euntēs</i>
(2) <i>īmus</i>	(8) <i>euntem</i>	(14) <i>ībat</i>	(20) <i>ībō</i>
(3) <i>īrēmus</i>	(9) <i>īerunt</i>	(15) <i>ierant</i>	(21) <i>iit</i>
(4) <i>ībimus</i>	(10) <i>eunt</i>	(16) <i>ierim</i>	(22) <i>ībāmus</i>
(5) <i>īssēmus</i>	(11) <i>eant</i>	(17) <i>īret</i>	(23) <i>īssēt</i>
(6) <i>eāmus</i>	(12) <i>ībunt</i>	(18) <i>īsse</i>	(24) <i>eat</i>
5. State how the Romans regularly expressed the following place concepts and translate the English example into Latin:
 - (1) place from which: from (out of) that land.
 - (2) place where: in that land; on that island.
 - (3) place to which: into (to) that land.
6. State the general rules for these place constructions when the name of a city is involved.
7. Define the locative case, and state the nature of the locative forms.
8. State how the Romans expressed each of the following time concepts and translate the English example:
 - (1) time when: on the same day.
 - (2) time how long: for many days.
 - (3) time within which: in one day.
9. What is peculiar about the principal parts of *licet*? Explain. Translate into Latin "You may go."
10. Translate each of the following words or phrases in accordance with the principles of this chapter.

(1) <i>ūnum diem</i>	(7) <i>paucīs diēbus</i>	(13) <i>domum</i>
(2) <i>ūnō diē</i>	(8) <i>eādem nocte</i>	(14) <i>Athēnīs</i>
(3) <i>illō diē</i>	(9) <i>multōs diēs</i>	(15) <i>domī</i>
(4) <i>Rōmā</i>	(10) <i>in nāvem</i>	(16) <i>Athēnās</i>
(5) <i>Rōmae</i>	(11) <i>in nāve</i>	(17) <i>domō</i>
(6) <i>Rōmam</i>	(12) <i>ex nāve</i>	(18) <i>paucās hōrās</i>
11. *Paucīs hōrīs Rōmam ībimus.* 12. *Nōs ad urbem īmus; illī domum eunt.*
13. *Ut saepe fassī sumus, tibi nōn licet Rōmā Athēnās īre.* 14. *Cūr domō tam celeriter abīstī?* 15. *Rōmam veniunt ut cum frātre meō Athēnās eant.*
16. *Nōlīte abīre Rōmā.* 17. *Frātre tuō Rōmae interfectō, hortābāmur tē ut Athēnās redīrēs.* 18. *Sī in fīnēs hostium hōc tempore eat, paucīs hōrīs pereat.* 19. *Negāvit sē velle in istā terrā multōs diēs remanēre.* 20. *Dīxistī tē domum Athēnīs unā hōrā reditūrum esse.* 21. *Ā tē petō ut ex nāve ad īnsulam brevī tempore redeās.* 22. *Eīs diēbus solitī sumus Athēnīs esse.* 23. *Sī amīcīs eius Rōmae nocuissent, Rōmam brevissimō tempore redīssēt.*

24. Cum frāter meus domī remanēret, ego tamen in novās terrās domō abiī.
 25. Rōmānī, sī quid malī loquī volebant, saepe dīcēbant: “Abī in malam rem.” 26. Eīs persuādet ut Latīnae studeant.
27. Explain the syntax of the following words: (11) hōrīs, Rōmam; (12) domum; (13) Rōmā, Athēnās, īre; (14) domō; (15) Rōmam; (17) frātre; (18) tempore, eat, hōrīs; (19) velle, diēs; (20) domum, Athēnīs, hōrā, reditūrum esse; (21) tempore, redeās; (22) diēbus, Athēnīs; (23) amīcīs, Rōmae, redisset; (24) domī, terrās, domō; (26) studeant.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 38

- What does a relative clause with the indicative tell about the antecedent?
 - What does a relative clause with the subjunctive tell about its antecedent, and what is the nature of the antecedent?
 - What is the basic difference between the dative of indirect object and the dative of reference?
 - How are supines formed and what are their functions?
5. Amīcus meus quī cōnsulem dēfendit ipse erat vir clārissimus. 6. At nēmō erat quī istum hominem turpem dēfenderet. 7. Quid est quod virī plūs metuant quam tyrannum? 8. Quis est quī inter lībertātem et imperium tyrannī dubitet? 9. Rōmae antiquae erant quī pecūniam plūs quam rem pūblicam amārent. 10. Abeat ā patriā iste homō malus quī odium omnium cīvium bonōrum passus est. 11. Catilīna (= Catiline), quī tantās īnsidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcerat, ex urbe ā Cicerōne expulsus est. 12. Istī ducī in exsiliū abeuntī quae vīta potest esse iūcunda? 13. Quis est quī tantum dōlōrem ferre possit? 14. Nisi quis iūcundus bonusque erit, vītam vērē fēlicem mihi nōn vīvet. 15. Cōsulī nōn crēdent quī opera turpia faciat. 16. Nōlī crēdere eī quī sit acerbus amīcīs. 17. Cicerō erat cōnsul quī rem pūblicam salūtī suae antepōneret. 18. Scīvērunt quārē cōnsulem tam fortem sequī vellēmus. 19. Nihil sciō quod mihi facilius esse possit. 20. Ducem quaerō quem omnēs laudent. 21. Rōmam ībant rogātum lībertātem. 22. Rōmānī, quī decem rēs pūblicās Graecās exercitibus suis cēperant, ipsī—mīrābile dictū—Graecīs artibus captī sunt! 23. Virīs antiquīs nihil erat quod melius esset quam virtūs et sapientia. 24. Nihil metuendum est quod animō nocēre nōn possit.
- Analyze the relative clauses in the following pair of sentences, showing how they differ in their force: 5 and 6.
 - Explain the syntax of the following words: (7) metuant; (8) dubitet; (9) Rōmae, amārent; (10) abeat, passus est; (11) fēcerat; (12) ducī, potest; (13) possit; (14) erit, mihi; (15) cōsulī; (16) amīcīs; (17) salūtī, antepōneret; (18) vellēmus; (19) mihi, possit; (21) rogātum; (22) cēperant, dictū; (23) virīs; (24) animō, possit.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 39

1. (1) Define the term *gerund*.
 (2) What is the ending of the gerund in English?
 (3) How is the gerund declined in Latin?
 (4) As a noun, what is the syntax of the gerund in Latin?
 (5) What serves in place of the nominative of the gerund in Latin?
2. (1) What part of speech is the Latin gerundive?
 (2) What mnemonic device may help you to remember this?
 (3) As an adjective, what is the syntax of the gerundive?
 (4) How is the gerundive declined?
 (5) How can the gerundive be distinguished from the gerund in Latin usage (though not in English translation)?
3. (1) How is the Latin gerund to be translated?
 (2) How is the gerundive in agreement with its noun to be translated?
 (3) For example, translate:
 (A) *Discimus legendō cum cūrā* (gerund).
 (B) *Discimus librīs legendīs cum cūrā* (gerundive).
4. *Experiendō discimus.* 5. *Ad discendum vēnērunt.* 6. *Sē discendō dedit.*
 7. *Discendī causā ad lūdum tuum vēnērunt.* 8. *Puer cupidus discendī ad lūdum iit.* 9. *Metus moriendī eum terrēbat.* 10. *Spēs vivendī post mortem multōs hortātur.* 11. *Cōgitandō eōs superāvit.* 12. *Sē dedit—*

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| (1) <i>glōriae quaerendae.</i> | (9) <i>iniūriīs oppugnandīs.</i> |
| (2) <i>bellō gerendō.</i> | (10) <i>librīs scrībendīs.</i> |
| (3) <i>pecūniae faciendae.</i> | (11) <i>librīs legendīs.</i> |
| (4) <i>imperīō accipiendō.</i> | (12) <i>philosophiae discendae.</i> |
| (5) <i>cīvitātibus delendīs.</i> | (13) <i>litterīs Latīnīs discendīs.</i> |
| (6) <i>huic ducī sequendō.</i> | (14) <i>vērītātī intellegendae.</i> |
| (7) <i>patriae servandae.</i> | (15) <i>sapientiae quaerendae.</i> |
| (8) <i>pācī petendae.</i> | (16) <i>hominibus adiuvandīs.</i> |

13. *Rōmam vēnit—*

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) <i>ad hoc opus suscipiendum.</i> | (5) <i>huius operis suscipiendī causā.</i> |
| (2) <i>ad lūdōs Rōmānōs videndōs.</i> | (6) <i>philosophiae discendae causā.</i> |
| (3) <i>ad aedificia vetera videnda.</i> | (7) <i>novōrum librōrum legendōrum causā.</i> |
| (4) <i>ad pācem petendam.</i> | (8) <i>lūdōs vīsum.</i> |

14. *Librum scrīpsit—*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (1) <i>dē dolōre ferendō.</i> | (5) <i>dē bellō gerendō.</i> |
| (2) <i>dē metū superandō.</i> | (6) <i>dē lībertāte dēfendendā.</i> |
| (3) <i>dē bonā vītā vīvendā.</i> | (7) <i>dē hostibus vincendīs.</i> |
| (4) <i>dē rē pūblicā gerendā.</i> | (8) <i>dē dōnīs dandīs.</i> |

15. Sapientiōrēs fīmus—

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| (1) Latīnīs litterīs legendīs. | (4) metū vincendō. |
| (2) philosophiā discendā. | (5) vērītātē sequendā. |
| (3) vītā experiendā. | |

16. Nōs ipsōs adiuvāmus—

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| (1) bonīs librīs semper legendīs. | (3) auxiliō offerendō. |
| (2) virīs miserīs metū liberandīs. | (4) aliīs adiuvandīs. |

17. Multum tempus cōnsūmpsīt—

- | | |
|--|--------------------------|
| (1) in cōgitandō (loquendō, currendō). | (4) in exercitū parandō. |
| (2) in hīs operibus faciendīs. | (5) in cōpiīs parandīs. |
| (3) in viā inveniendā. | |

18. Tempus huic librō sōlī scrībendō habuit.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 40

1. Explain the essential differences involved in introducing questions with **-ne**, **nōne**, and **num**.
2. What word is used to introduce a positive fear clause? a negative fear clause? Can you explain why this is the opposite of what one might expect?
3. In order for a noun to function as either a descriptive genitive or a descriptive ablative, what condition must be met?
4. Magnopere vereor ut imperātor nōbīs satis auxiliī mittat. 5. Fuit fēmina maximā virtūte et fidē atque simillima mātērī. 6. Nōlī timēre nē omnēs virī et fēminae magnōrum animōrum Rōmā discēdant. 7. Id quidem est facile dictū sed difficile factū! 8. Parentibus placitum domum vērunt. 9. Nōne vīs audīre aliquid bonī? 10. Vīsne habēre multum sapientiae? Studē Latīnae! 11. Imperāvit tribus milītibz ut pācem petītum Rōmam adīrent. 12. Num dubitās hoc dīcere, mī amīce? 13. Tū mē hortāris ut sim animō magnō et spem salūtis habeam, sed timeō nē sim infīrmior. 14. Ego dīvitīas sapientiae antepōnō. Nōn enim arbitror hominēs vītā fēlicem sine cōpiā pecūniae reperīre posse. 15. Plūrimī autem virī dīvitēs multum metūs sentiunt. 16. Pauperēs saepe sunt fēliciōrēs et minus metūs habent. 17. Pecūnia ipsa nōn est mala: sed rēs mentis animīque plūs opis ad fēliciter vīvendū offerunt. 18. Novem ex ducibus nōs hortātī sunt ut plūs auxiliī prae-stārēmus. 19. Quīnque ex custōdiīs interfectīs, pater meus cum duobz ex filiīs et cum magnō numerō amīcōrum in illam terram liberam fūgit. 20. Numquam satis ōtīi habēbit; at aliquid ōtīi melius est quam nihil. 21. Nostrīs temporibus omnēs plūs metūs et minus spēi habēmus. 22. Magna fidēs et virtūs omnibus virīs reperīendae sunt.

Key to Exercises

KEY FOR CHAPTER 1

1. (1) he, she, it; (2) we; (3) I; (4) they; (5) you (sg.); (6) you (pl.)
2. The forms are present active infinitives of the 2nd conjugation. (1) to advise/warn; (2) to see; (3) to be strong; (4) to owe.
3. The forms are present active infinitives of the 1st conjugation. (1) to call; (2) to save; (3) to give; (4) to think; (5) to praise; (6) to love; (7) to err.
4. The forms are present active imperatives 2nd person singular of the 1st or the 2nd conjugations. (1) call; (2) save; (3) give; (4) think; (5) praise; (6) love; (7) advise/warn; (8) see; (9) be strong/good-bye.
5. The forms are present active imperatives 2nd person plural of the 1st or the 2nd conjugations. (1) call; (2) save; (3) give; (4) think; (5) praise; (6) love; (7) advise/warn; (8) see; (9) be strong/good-bye.
6. (1) he/she/it calls, is calling, does call; (2) we think; (3) they love; (4) you (sg.) owe/ought; (5) he sees; (6) they see; (7) we owe/ought; (8) you (sg.) are strong; (9) you (pl.) err/are mistaken; (10) we see; (11) he/she/it loves; (12) you (pl.) see; (13) you (sg.) err; (14) they give; (15) we save; (16) he gives; (17) they love; (18) you (sg.) see.
7. They warn me if I err. 8. He warns me if they err. 9. Warn me if he errs.
10. You (sg.) ought to warn me. 11. You (pl.) ought to save me. 12. They ought not to praise me. 13. "What does he give?" "He often gives nothing." 14. They often call me and advise me. 15. I see nothing. What do you see? 16. Praise me, please, if I do not make a mistake. 17. If you (pl.) are well, we are well. 18. If he is well, I am well. 19. If he (she) loves me, he (she) ought to praise me. 20. Save me. 21. I ought not to err. 22. What ought we to praise? 23. He sees; he ponders; he advises.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 2

1. In classical Latin there was no regular definite or indefinite article. The words *the* and *a* have to be added in the English translation according to the sense of

a Latin passage. Thus **puella** may mean *the girl* or *a girl*, and **puellae** may mean *the girls* or *girls* according to the Latin context. Often in an isolated sentence *the* and *a* can be used interchangeably, or perhaps no article at all need be used.

2. (1) accusative case; (2) gen. case; (3) nom. case; (4) abl.; (5) voc.; (6) dat.
3. (1) acc. pl. as direct object of a verb; (2) nom. sg. as subject of a verb or voc. sg. for direct address; (3) acc. sg. as direct object; (4) nom. pl. subject, or voc. for direct address.
4. (1) gen. pl., of; (2) abl. sg., by/with/from, etc.; (3) gen. sg., of; dat. sg., to/for; nom. pl.; voc. pl.; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with/from, etc.
5. (1) girl, direct obj. of verb; (2) girl, subject or vocative; (3) girls, object; (4) girls, subj. or voc.; (5) countries, obj.; (6) country, obj.; (7) country, subj. or voc.; (8) countries, subj. or voc.; (9) money, obj.; (10) money, subj. or voc.; (11) penalties, obj.; (12) penalty, obj.
6. (1) of the girl, girl's, or to/for the girl; (2) of the girls, girls'; (3) O fatherland; (4) of or to/for the fatherland; (5) by/with, etc., money; (6) of or to/for money; (7) to/for or by/with, etc., penalties; (8) by/with etc., a penalty; (9) of penalties.
7. (1) *multae pecūniae*, *multam pecūniam*; (2) *magnae fāmae*, *magnā fāmā*; (3) *vītae meae*, *vītae meae*; (4) *fortūnam tuam*, *fortūnās tuās*; (5) *magnae patriae*, *magnārum patriārum*; (6) *fortūnā meā*, *fortūnīs meīs*; (7) *magnae poenae*, *magnīs poenīs*; (8) *multīs philosophiīs*, *multīs philosophiīs*.
8. (1) *multā pecūniā*; (2) *multārum puellārum*; (3) *meae patriae*; (4) *magnam vītam*; (5) *tuīs poenīs*; (6) *multae patriae*; (7) *multīs puellīs*; (8) *meae vītae*; (9) *Ō fortūna*; (10) *puellae*; (11) *puellārum*; (12) *puellae*; (13) *puellās*; (14) *puellae*.

9. Farewell (goodbye), my native land. 10. The fortune of the girl (the girl's fortune) is great. 11. The girl is praising the fortune of your (sg.) country. 12. O girl, save your country. 13. Many girls love money. 14. You (pl.) are giving nothing to the girl, *or* you give nothing to a girl. 15. He sees the money of the girl, *or* the girl's money. 16. You (sg.) do not see the girls' money. 17. We ought to warn the girls. 18. They ought to praise the girl. 19. Life gives (good) fortune to many girls. 20. You (sg.) are saving my life by *or* with your money. 21. Fame is nothing without fortune. 22. You (pl.) do not like life without money. 23. A country is not strong without fame and fortune. 24. You (sg.) ought not to praise the anger of the girls. 25. We like a life without punishments. 26. We are not strong without philosophy. 27. What is life without philosophy?

KEY FOR CHAPTER 3

1. (1) acc. sg., obj.; (2) nom. pl. as subj., voc. pl. for direct address; (3) nom. sg., subj.; (4) acc. pl. obj.; (5) voc. sg., direct address.
2. (1) dat. sg., to/for; abl. sg., by/with, etc.; (2) gen. pl., of; (3) gen. sg., of; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with, etc.
3. (1) sons, obj.; (2) sons, subj. or direct address; (3) son, obj.; (4) people, obj.; (5) people, direct address; (6) people, subj.; (7) man, subj. or direct address; (8) men, obj.; (9) men, subj. or direct address; (10) man, obj.; (11) friend, direct address; (12) friends, subj. or direct address; (13) friends, obj.; (14) friend, obj.
4. (1) of my sons; (2) to/for my son, by/with, etc., my son; (3) of the Roman people; (4) to/for the Roman people, by/with, etc., the Roman people; (5) to/for the men,

by/with, etc., the men; (6) of the man; (7) of the men; (8) of a few friends; (9) to/for or by/with, etc., a few friends; (10) to/for or by/with, etc., my friend; (11) of my friend; (12) to/for or by/with, etc., many boys.

5. (1) *populī Rōmānī*, *populō Rōmānō*; (2) *magnōs virōs*, *magnīs virīs*; (3) *puerīs meīs*, *puerīs meīs*; (4) *magnō numerō*, *magnō numerō*; (5) *magne vir*, *magnī virī*; (6) *fīliī meī*, *fīliōrum meōrum*.
6. (1) *multōrum puerōrum*; (2) *populō Rōmānō*; (3) *fīliōs meōs*; (4) *Ō fīliī meī*; (5) *magnum numerum*; (6) *magnō numerō*; (7) *Ō vir magne*; (8) *multīs puerīs*; (9) *vir magnus*; (10) *populī Rōmānī*.

7. Good-bye, my friend. 8. The Roman people praise your (sg.) son's wisdom. 9. O great man, save the Roman people. 10. The number of the Roman people is great. 11. Many boys love girls. 12. You (pl.) are giving nothing to my son. 13. I see men in the field. 14. You (sg.) see the friend of my son. 15. He does not see your (sg.) sons' friend. 16. We ought to warn my sons. 17. They ought to praise your (sg.) son. 18. Life gives fame to few men. 19. You (sg.) consider me in the number (circle) of your friends. 20. Great men often have few friends. 21. My friend is always thinking. 22. The son of a great man is not always a great man. 23. We do not always see (understand) the wisdom of great men. 24. You (pl.) ought to praise philosophy, the wisdom of great men.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 4

1. Nom. sg. in **-um**; nom. and acc. pl. in **-a**. Actually the vocative should also be added here; but henceforth, since aside from the singular of 2nd-declension masculines in **-us** the vocatives follow the rule of having the same form as the nominative, little specific mention is made of the vocative.
2. (1) nom. pl. as subject; acc. pl. as obj.; (2) nom. sg. as subj.; acc. sg. as obj.
3. (1) dat. sg., to/for; abl. sg., by/with, etc.; (2) gen. pl., of; (3) gen. sg., of; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with, etc.
4. (1) wars, subj. or obj.; (2) war, subj. or obj.; (3) duty, subj. or obj.; (4) duties, subj. or obj.; (5) dangers, subj. or obj. Of course any of these forms could also be vocative.
5. (1) of evil wars; (2) to/for evil war, by/with, etc., evil war; (3) of evil war; (4) to/for evil wars, by/with, etc., evil wars; (5) of great duty or service; (6) to/for great duties, by/with, etc., great duties; (7) to/for small danger, by/with, etc., small danger.
6. (1) *bella parva*, *bella parva*; (2) *ōtium bonum*, *ōtia bona*; (3) *periculī magnī*, *periculōrum magnōrum*; (4) *officium vērum*, *officiō vērō*.
7. (1) *Ō bellum malum*; (2) *officiō magnō*; (3) *periculō magnō*; (4) *ōtium bonum*; (5) *multīs bellīs*; (6) *ōtiī bonī*; (7) *periculīs multōrum bellōrum*; (8) *bella parva*; (9) *bella parva*; (10) *Ō bella stulta*; (11) *bellum parvum*.

8. Peace (leisure) is good. 9. Many wars do not preserve peace. 10. The danger is great. 11. We are in great danger. 12. And leisure often has dangers. 13. Life is not without many dangers. 14. Good men love peace. 15. The foolish man praises the dangers of war. 16. Often we do not preserve the peace by war. 17. The Roman people do not always have good peace. 18. They often save the fatherland and

peace by small wars. 19. Many girls are pretty. 20. True friends are few. 21. My friend is a man of great service. 22. The duties of a teacher are many and great. 23. You (sg.) are a man of little leisure. 24. You (pl.) are men of great care. 25. We ought to give attention to duty without delay. 26. Life is nothing without eyes.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 5

1. future: **-ō, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt**; imperfect: **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt**.
2. They are the same in the future, but the imperfect has **-m** instead of **-ō** in the first pers. sg.
3. future: **-bi-** (**-b-** in 1st pers. sg.; **-bu-** in 3d pers. pl.); imperfect: **-bā-** (with the **-a-** shortened before **-m, -t, and -nt**).
4. (1) we were; (2) he will; (3) you (pl.) will; (4) I shall; (5) they will; (6) he was.
5. By learning the vocabulary form of the adjective: **liber, libera, liberum, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**; and often by learning English derivatives.
6. They show whether the **e** of a masculine in **-er** survives throughout the rest of the paradigm; liberty, **liber, libera, liberum**; pulchritude, **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**.
7. (1) they were remaining, remained; (2) he will remain; (3) we shall remain; (4) I was giving, I gave; (5) you (pl.) will give; (6) he will give; (7) you (sg.) will see; (8) we shall see; (9) they were calling, called; (10) you (sg.) will call; (11) you (sg.) will have; (12) they were having, had.
8. (1) dabimus; (2) manēbās; (3) vidēbunt; (4) vocābimus; (5) vocābat; (6) vidēbitis; (7) vidēbō; (8) servābant; (9) habēbimus; (10) habēbāmus; (11) habēbit; (12) habet.
9. Our teacher praises me and he will praise you tomorrow (sg.). 10. Free men were overcoming our dangers. 11. Our sons love pretty girls. 12. Our friend will not stay in the company (number) of fools. 13. We used to have many faults and always shall have. 14. Great dangers do not overcome our courage. 15. Our beautiful country is free. 16. You (pl.) are free men; you will have a beautiful country. 17. Free teachers were giving attention to duty. 18. Therefore, we shall overcome evil men in our country. 19. If you (sg.) overcome (lit., will overcome) your anger, you will overcome yourself. 20. Because of our courage many men are free. 21. Free fatherland, we always used to love you and we always shall love (you). 22. You (pl.) will not preserve wisdom by means of money. 23. Does your (sg.) soul possess enough wisdom?

KEY FOR CHAPTER 6

1. See Ch. 6, p. 38, s.v. "Complementary Infinitive."
2. (1) we; (2) they; (3) you (sg.); (4) he, she, it; (5) I; (6) I; (7) you (pl.).
3. See p. 38.
4. (1) he, she, it was; (2) he, etc., was able; (3) he will be; (4) he will be able; (5) we are; (6) we are able; (7) we were able; (8) we shall be able; (9) I was able; (10) I was; (11) I shall be; (12) I shall be able; (13) they will be; (14) they will be able; (15) they were able; (16) to be; (17) to be able.
5. (1) sumus; (2) erāmus; (3) erimus; (4) poterimus; (5) potest; (6) poterit; (7) poterat; (8) posse; (9) poterant; (10) possunt; (11) poterunt; (12) sunt; (13) esse; (14) poteram.

6. Your (pl.) country was free. 7. I was able to be a tyrant. 8. Your friend will be a tyrant. 9. Where (there) is a tyrant, there men cannot be free. 10. He could not remain in our country yesterday. 11. Tyrants will always have many faults. 12. We were not able to overcome the tyrants. 13. We ought to overcome our tyrant. 14. The tyrant was able to overcome (the) good men; but he will not be able to remain there. 15. You (pl.) will be able to see the dangers of a tyrant. 16. We cannot tolerate the faults of tyrants. 17. You (sg.) were not tolerating (did not tolerate) the treachery of the tyrant. 18. The peace in your (pl.) country cannot be perpetual. 19. You (sg.) ought to warn free men about tyrants. 20. Your (pl.) teacher always used to like (liked) fine books. 21. Good and true books were able to save the country. 22. You (pl.) will be able to save your country with good books. 23. Tyrants will not be able to overcome the wisdom of good books. 24. Bad men cannot tolerate good books.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 7

1. No.
2. Yes: nom. and acc. pl.
3. (1) nom. and acc. pl. of masc. and fem.; (2) nom. and acc. pl. neut.; (3) acc. sg. masc. and fem.
4. (1) dat. and abl. pl.; (2) dat. sg.; (3) abl. sg.; (4) acc. sg. masc. and fem.; (5) gen. pl.; (6) gen. sg.; (7) nom. and acc. pl. masc. and fem.
5. (1) *magnum tempus*; (2) *magna virtūs*; (3) *magnus labor*; (4) *magna cīvitas*; (5) *magnus mōs*; (6) *magna pāx*; (7) *magnus rēx*; (8) *magnum corpus*; (9) *magna vērītās*; (10) *magnus amor*.
6. (1) by/with much labor; (2) to/for much labor; (3) of much labor; (4) many labors (nom.); (5) of perpetual peace; (6) by/with perpetual peace; (7) to/for perpetual peace; (8) of small states; (9) a small state (acc.); (10) small states (acc.); (11) small states (nom.); (12) by a small state; (13) bad times (nom. or acc. pl.); (14) bad time (nom. or acc. sg.); (15) to/for a bad time; (16) of bad times; (17) of a bad time; (18) to/for your habit; (19) by your habit; (20) of your habit; (21) your character (nom.); (22) your character (acc.); (23) of your character.
7. (1) *magnae virtūtī*; (2) *magna virtūs*; (3) *magnās virtūtēs*; (4) *magnārum virtūtum*; (5) *magnā virtūte*; (6) *tempus nostrum*; (7) *tempora nostra*; (8) *tempora nostra*; (9) *temporibus nostrīs*; (10) *temporī nostrō*; (11) *temporis nostrī*; (12) *temporum nostrōrum*; (13) *amōrem meum*; (14) *amōrēs meōs*; (15) *amōrī meō*; (16) *amōre meō*; (17) *amōris meī*; (18) *amōrum meōrum*.
8. My time for leisure is small. 9. Your (sg.) courage is great. 10. Money is nothing without good character. 11. The virtues of many human beings are great. 12. The character of a good man will be good. 13. They will give a letter to the man. 14. We were able to see many men in the great state. 15. We used to see (saw, were seeing) a great love of money in many men. 16. Few men give attention to excellence. 17. Our state will give peace to many men. 18. Peace cannot be perpetual. 19. Without good peace the states of our times will not be strong. 20. Times are bad after many wars. 21. In many states and lands peace could not be strong. 22. Without great labor the man will have nothing. 23. The beautiful

maiden loves friends of good character. 24. Men of great courage were daring to overcome tyrants. 25. Love of country was strong in our state.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 8

1. (1) Future. (2) See Ch. 8. Perhaps a better device is found in the fact that our word "future" ends in *-e*: *futur/e*. The *-a-* in *dūcam* is the only exception among six forms.
2. (1) Present. (2) See Ch. 8.
3. (1) 1st pers. pl. pres.; (2) 2nd sg. fut.; (3) 3d pl. pres.; (4) 3d sg. fut.; (5) 2nd pl. pres.; (6) 1st pl. fut.; (7) 1st sg. pres.; (8) 3d pl. fut.; (9) 3d sg. pres.; (10) 2nd pl. fut.; (11) 2nd sg. pres.; (12) 1st sg. fut.; (13) 3d pl. impf.
4. (1) imper. sg.; (2) pres. inf.; (3) imper. pl.
5. (1) they were sending; (2) he is sending; (3) they are sending; (4) I shall send; (5) send (sg.); (6) we are sending; (7) you (pl.) were sending; (8) you (sg.) are sending; (9) send (pl.); (10) you (pl.) send; (11) he will send; (12) we shall send; (13) he does; (14) they will do; (15) they are doing; (16) you (pl.) will do; (17) we were doing; (18) I shall do; (19) we shall do; (20) you (sg.) are doing; (21) you (pl.) are doing; (22) he will write; (23) they are writing; (24) I shall write; (25) I was writing; (26) you (pl.) are writing; (27) we shall write; (28) he is writing; (29) you (sg.) are writing; (30) they will write; (31) write!
6. (1) *pōnēbant*; (2) *pōnēmus*; (3) *pōne*; (4) *pōnit*; (5) *pōnent*; (6) *pōnam*; (7) *pōnēbās*; (8) *pōnētis*; (9) *pōnite*; (10) *pōnimus*; (11) *pōnitis*; (12) *pōnet*.
7. What are they doing? What will you (pl.) do? 8. They were leading the man to me. 9. Lead (sg.) the man to me, and I shall thank the man. 10. While the tyrant leads the troops, we can do nothing. 11. He is writing a letter to the maiden. 12. You (sg.) were writing a great book. 13. You (sg.) will write good books. 14. We shall write books about peace. 15. Do you (pl.) have an abundance of good books? 16. The teacher teaches many boys. 17. The boys do not thank the teacher. 18. Few men were thanking our state. 19. The tyrant will lead great forces out of our state. 20. A great abundance of money does not lead men to wisdom. 21. Will good books lead many men to reason? 22. Do we often lead men to reason? 23. Reason can lead men to a good life. 24. Are you (pl.) leading a good life? 25. Always thank (pl.) a good friend.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 9

1. See p. 55.
2. (1) to/for that (m., f., n.);
those (nom. m.)
(2) that (nom. f.); those (nom./acc. n.)
(3) of that (m., f., n.)
(4) that (nom. m.)
(5) by that (f.)
(6) that (nom./acc. n.)
(7) of those (m., n.)
(8) those (nom. f.)
(9) those (acc. m.)
(10) to/for by/w./fr. those (m., f., n.)
(11) by that (m., n.)
(12) of those (f.)
(13) by this (m., n.)
(14) this (nom./acc. n.)
(15) this (nom. f.); these (nom./acc. n.)
(16) these (nom. f.)
(17) by this (f.)

- | | |
|--|---|
| (18) this (acc. f.) | (29) to/for the whole (m., f., n.); |
| (19) of this (m., f., n.) | whole (nom. pl. m.) |
| (20) this (acc. m.) | (30) of the whole (m., f., n.) |
| (21) these (acc. m.) | (31) the whole (nom. f.); |
| (22) to this (m., f., n.) | whole (nom./acc. pl. n.) |
| (23) of these (m., n.) | (32) the whole (acc. m.; nom./acc. n.) |
| (24) these (acc. f.) | (33) of no (sg. m., f., n.) |
| (25) to/for these; by these (m., f., n.) | (34) to/for no (sg. m., f., n.); no (nom. |
| (26) of one (m., f., n.) | pl. m.) |
| (27) to/for one (m., f., n.) | (35) no (nom. sg. f.; nom./acc. pl. n.) |
| (28) by one (f.) | (36) no (acc. pl. m.) |

3. See text and examples on p. 56.

- | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 4. (1) haec puella | (12) illa tempora | (23) nullius ratiōnis |
| (2) hae puellae | (13) illud tempus | (24) nullam ratiōnem |
| (3) haec tempora | (14) huic cīvitātī sōlī | (25) nullae puellae |
| (4) huic temporī | (15) huius cīvitātis sōlius | (26) nullī librō |
| (5) huic puerō | (16) illī puerō sōlī | (27) nullōs librōs |
| (6) huius temporis | (17) illī puellae sōlī | (28) ūnī cīvitātī |
| (7) illius temporis | (18) illius puellae sōlius | (29) ūnī puellae |
| (8) hōc librō | (19) tyrannōrum sōlōrum | (30) ūnius temporis |
| (9) illō librō | (20) tōtam cīvitātem | (31) ūnius bellī |
| (10) illa puella | (21) tōtius patriae | (32) alterī librō |
| (11) illa tempora | (22) tōtī patriae | (33) aliō librō |

5. These men will lead (lead, were leading) the whole state. 6. That man will see (sees, was seeing/saw) these things in that land. 7. In that book he will write (I shall write, I was writing) those things about this man. 8. One man is leading (will lead) those forces into this land. 9. The teacher gives these things to the other boy. 10. We are writing (shall write) this book about another war. 11. The whole country thanks (will thank, was thanking) this man alone. 12. They are now giving their entire attention to that plan. 13. This man's friend will save this state by that plan. 14. The other friend will lead (his) entire life in another land. 15. This man alone was able to warn me about the faults of this tyrant. 16. You (pl.) had no forces in the other land. 17. Those men alone see no dangers in this plan. 18. You (sg.) dare to praise not only the character but also the treachery of that man. 19. In fact, on account of the treachery of one man this state was not strong.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 10

- (1) 3d; (2) 2nd; (3) 4th; (4) 1st.
- (1) 3d pl. pres.; (2) 2nd sg. fut.; (3) 2nd sg. pres.; (4) 1st pl. impf.; (5) 1st pl. pres.; (6) imper. sg.; (7) 2nd pl. fut.; (8) imper. pl.; (9) 2nd pl. pres.; (10) 1st sg. pres.; (11) 3d sg. pres.; (12) imper. sg. (13) 2nd sg. impf. Note: nos. 3, 5, 6, 8, 9 are 4th only; 12 is 3d only. The chief difference is the *-ī-* of the 4th and the *-i-* of the 3d. See p. 64.
- (1) pres. inf.; (2) imper. sg.; (3) short stem vowels in 2nd sg. and 1st and 2nd pl. of pres. ind. and in the imper. pl.

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 4. (1) he will come | (11) to come |
| (2) he is coming | (12) he makes/does |
| (3) they are coming | (13) he will make/do |
| (4) they will come | (14) we shall make |
| (5) you (sg.) hear | (15) we are making |
| (6) you (pl.) will hear | (16) they make |
| (7) you (pl.) hear | (17) you (sg.) make |
| (8) come (pl.) | (18) I shall make |
| (9) you (sg.) will come | (19) you (sg.) will make |
| (10) come (sg.) | (20) to make |
-
- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| 5. (1) sentiam | (6) sentiunt | (11) iacit | (16) iacitis |
| (2) sentiēmus | (7) sentīre | (12) iaciet | (17) iaciēmus |
| (3) sentit | (8) sentī | (13) iaciam | (18) iacite |
| (4) sentītis | (9) sentiet | (14) iacimus | (19) iacere |
| (5) sentient | (10) sentīmus | (15) iace | (20) iacis |

6. We were fleeing from this land. 7. Flee (sg.) with your daughter. 8. They will flee into that place. 9. Time flees; the hours flee; old age is coming. 10. Come (pl.) with your friends. 11. They were coming into your country. 12. O great man, come into our state. 13. You (sg.) will find your daughter in that state. 14. They can find little money in the streets. 15. The tyrant is finding a way into this state. 16. You (pl.) will capture those men there with (their) friends. 17. We are coming to you with great forces. 18. Will he find much fame and glory there? 19. That man was always making war. 20. Those men (of yours *or* such men) will not make peace. 21. Many men do those things but do not do these things. 22. We are doing and will do our duty. 23. I shall make a great supply of books. 24. The boys were living with that good man. 25. In the books of ancient men you (pl.) will find much philosophy and wisdom.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 11

- (1) **is, ea, id** and **eī, eae, ea**; (2) **ego** and **nōs**; (3) **tū** and **vōs**.
 - (1) to/for you (pl.); by/w./fr. you; (2) to/for us; by/w./fr. us; (3) we (nom.); us (acc.); (4) you (nom. pl.); you (acc. pl.); (5) of you (sg.); (6) of me; (7) to/for me; (8) to/for you (sg.); (9) you (acc. sg.); by/w./fr. you; (10) me (acc.); by/w./fr. me.
 - (1) them (masc.); (2) them (fem.); (3) their (masc., neut.); (4) their (fem.); (5) his, her, its; (6) by/w./fr. her; (7) she (nom.); they (nom. and acc. pl. neut.); (8) by/w./fr. him, it; (9) to/for him, her, it; they (masc. nom.); (10) to/for them (masc., fem., neut.); by/w./fr. them; (11) they (nom. fem.); (12) it (nom. or acc. sg.). N.B. in the sg. any one of the three Latin genders of **is, ea, id** may be translated by *it* when the antecedent of the pronoun is a word which in English is neuter. For instance, suppose that in a preceding sentence the word **pāx** appears. Then we read: **Sine eā nūlla cīvītās valet**. The Latin feminine **eā** becomes English *it* because in English *peace* is regarded as neuter.
- | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|----------|---------|
| 4. (1) eius | (4) eārum | (7) ea | (10) eī |
| (2) eius | (5) eās | (8) eius | (11) eā |
| (3) eōrum | (6) eōs | (9) eī | (12) eō |

(13) vōbīs	(17) eae	(21) tū	(25) nōbīs
(14) tibi	(18) eī	(22) vōs	(26) ego
(15) eī	(19) id	(23) nōs	(27) mihi
(16) ea	(20) vōs	(24) nōs	

5. These men will give it to you (sg.). 6. *I* was giving it to you (pl.). 7. *You* (pl.) will give this gift to them. 8. I shall give the same thing to him (her, it). 9. *We* shall give them (= those things) to him (her). 10. That man will give it to me. 11. We shall give you (pl.) his books. 12. You (sg.) will give us their (masc.) books. 13. We shall give their money to you (sg.). 14. They will give his (her) money to me. 15. We shall send these/those books to her. 16. I shall send his (her) book to you (sg.). 17. That man, however, was sending their money to us. 18. We are sending them (fem.) with her. 19. I am sending him with them. 20. We shall send them with his (her) friends. 21. *You* (sg.) will send me with their friend. 22. They were sending you (pl.) with me to his friend. 23. He is sending us with you (sg.) into their land. 24. They will send them (fem.) with us to their friends. 25. I shall send him with you (pl.) to their friends. 26. They will send you (sg.) with him to me.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 12

1. (1) pres. act. ind.; (2) pres. act. inf.; (3) perf. act. ind.; (4) perf. pass. partic.
2. (1) **mittō**, pres. act. ind., *I send*
 (2) **mittere**, pres. act. inf., *to send*
 (3) **mīsi**, perf. act. ind., *I sent*
 (4) **missum**, perf. pass. partic., *having been sent, sent*
3. The perfect is like a "snapshot" of a past, completed action; the imperfect looks at continuing or progressive past action, like a video.
4. (1) mittō (6) agō (11) remaneō (16) dīcō
 (2) laudō (7) sum (12) scrībō (17) sum
 (3) vincō (8) dō (13) sum (18) vīvō
 (4) dīcō (9) sum (14) faciō (19) faciō
 (5) faciō (10) agō (15) fugiō (20) videō
5. (1) you (pl. perf.) . . . ; (2) he (perf.) . . . ; (3) they (perf.) . . . ; (4) you (sg. perf.) . . . ; (5) we (perf.) . . . ; (6) he had . . . ; (7) we shall have . . . ; (8) we had . . . ; (9) you (sg.) had . . . ; (10) they will have . . . ; (11) they had . . . ; (12) he will have . . . ; (13) you (pl.) had. . . .
6. (1) they saw, were seeing (12) he will conquer
 (2) they had seen (13) he conquered
 (3) you (sg.) saw (14) we conquered
 (4) he did (15) we conquer
 (5) he was doing (16) you (sg.) gave
 (6) we had done (17) you (pl.) had given
 (7) we did (18) we gave
 (8) we shall do (19) he flees
 (9) they did (20) he fled
 (10) you (sg.) lived (21) they flee
 (11) they lived (22) they fled

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| (23) he saved | (30) he came |
| (24) they saved | (31) he comes |
| (25) you (pl.) saved | (32) you (pl.) were coming |
| (26) he had saved | (33) you (pl.) came |
| (27) he will have saved | (34) they came |
| (28) we remained | (35) they come |
| (29) we had remained | (36) they had come |

7. Those men had fled (will flee; are fleeing; were fleeing; fled). 8. These men remained (remain; will remain; were remaining; had remained). 9. The king had conquered (is conquering; conquered; will conquer) Asia. 10. The kings conquered (will conquer; are conquering; had conquered) Asia. 11. Kings possessed (possess; will possess; had possessed) Asia. 12. Caesar had come (came; is coming; will come) into the same land. 13. Caesar said (says; had said; will say) the same things. 14. *You* (pl.) gave (will give; were giving; had given) us peace. 15. *You* (sg.) sent (will send; are sending; had sent) a letter to her. 16. We saw (see; had seen) them in the same street. 17. He had lived (lived; will live) a long time. 18. *You* (sg.) had done (will do; did; are doing) it well. 19. I saved (shall save; was saving; had saved) their (his) state. 20. They found (had found; will find) him in the same place. 21. God had given (gave; gives; will give) liberty to men. 22. They thanked (will thank; were thanking; had thanked; thank) me. 23. *You* (pl.) were (were; are; will be; had been) free men.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 13

1. See p. 82, s.v. "Reflexive Pronouns."
2. See p. 82, s.v. "Declension of Reflexive Pronouns."
3. In pronouns of the first and the second persons.
4. (1) to/for myself.
(2) yourself (sg. acc.); by/w./fr. yourself.
(3) to/for ourselves; by/w./fr. ourselves.
(4) to/for himself (herself, itself); to/for themselves.
(5) yourselves (acc.).
(6) himself (acc.); by/w./fr. himself; themselves (acc.); by/w./fr. themselves.
(7) to/for yourselves; by/w./fr. yourselves.
5. Since **suus**, -a, -um is an adjective, it must agree in number with the noun which it modifies. Since **suus** is a reflexive, it means *his own* or *their own* according to whether the subject of the verb is singular or plural. See, for example, sentences 15 and 20 below.
6. **Eōrum** and **eius** are fixed genitives of possession; and therefore, they do not, like **suus**, agree with the nouns on which they depend. See, for example, sentences 16–19 below.
7. See p. 85, s.v. "The Intensive Pronoun." **Sē**, being reflexive, is used in the predicate and refers to the subject. **Ipse** can be used to emphasize a noun or pronoun in any part of a sentence. See, for example, sentences 27, 28, and 31 below.
8. Caesar saved them. 9. Caesar was saving him (= another person). 10. Caesar saved himself. 11. The Romans saved themselves. 12. The Romans saved them (=

others). 13. The Romans saved him. 14. Caesar saved his own friend. 15. Caesar saved his own friends. 16. Caesar saved his (= another's) friend. 17. Caesar saved his (= another's) friends. 18. Caesar saved their friend. 19. Caesar saved their friends. 20. The Romans saved their (own) friend. 21. The Romans saved their (own) friends. 22. The Romans saved their (= others') friend. 23. The Romans saved their (= others') friends. 24. The Romans saved his friend. 25. The Romans saved his friends. 26. Caesar himself saved him. 27. Caesar himself saved himself. 28. They saved Caesar himself. 29. They were saving the friend of Caesar himself. 30. They saved the friend of the Romans themselves. 31. The friend of Caesar himself saved himself. 32. The friends of Caesar himself saved themselves. 33. The friend of Caesar himself saved him. 34. Caesar's friends themselves saved him. 35. They did not save us. 36. We saved ourselves. 37. We saved the Romans themselves. 38. The Romans themselves did not save you. 39. *You* (sg.) saved yourself. 40. *You* (sg.) saved the Romans themselves. 41. He was giving nothing to me. 42. I gave nothing to myself. 43. He gave nothing to himself. 44. They gave nothing to themselves. 45. They gave nothing to them (= others). 46. They gave nothing to him. 47. I conquered myself. 48. They conquered me. 49. They conquered their (= others') anger. 50. They conquered their own anger. 51. He conquered his own anger. 52. He conquered his own sons. 53. They conquered their own sons.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 14

1. In the gen. pl.
2. -ī in abl. sg.; -ia in nom. and acc. pl.
3. (1) by/w./fr. art (17) of the kings
 (2) of the arts (18) to/for the king
 (3) arts (nom. or acc.) (19) names (nom. or acc.)
 (4) to/for the sea; by/w./fr. the sea (20) animals (nom. or acc.)
 (5) to/for the seas; by/w./fr. the seas (21) to/for an animal; by/w./fr. an animal
 (6) the sea (nom. or acc.) (22) of an animal
 (7) the seas (nom. or acc.) (23) of animals
 (8) bodies (nom. or acc.) (24) of strength
 (9) of bodies (25) men (acc.)
 (10) of a part (26) of the man; men (nom.)
 (11) to/for parts; by/w./fr. parts (27) strength (nom. or acc. pl.)
 (12) of parts (28) to/for men; by/w./fr. men
 (13) by/w./fr./the city (29) force (nom.); of force
 (14) to/for the city (30) force (acc.)
 (15) of cities (31) to/for strength; by/w./fr. strength
 (16) cities (nom. or acc.) (32) to/for force; by/w./fr. force
4. (2); (4) as abl.; (7); (12); (15); (20); (21) as abl; (23); (24); (30); (32) as abl.
5. (1) *vī magnā* (6) *cīve bonō* (11) *vim magnam*
 (2) *virum magnum* (7) *cīvibus multīs* (12) *virōrum multōrum*
 (3) *vīrium magnārum* (8) *maria multa* (13) *vīribus magnīs*
 (4) *vī magnae* (9) *marī magnō* (14) *vīrēs magnās*
 (5) *cīvium multōrum* (10) *mare magnum*

6. (1) accompaniment; (2) means; (3) manner; (4) means
 7. (1) they ran (*currō*); (2) we were running (*currō*); (3) you (sg.) ran (*currō*); (4) we had dragged (*trahō*); (5) he will drag (*trahō*); (6) they are dragging (*trahō*); (7) he was managing (*gerō*); (8) he manages (*gerō*); (9) they manage (*gerō*); (10) we shall manage (*gerō*); (11) they hold (*teneō*); (12) they will hold (*teneō*); (13) they held (*teneō*); (14) we held (*teneō*).

8. He waged many wars with the Romans. 9. They were managing the state with great wisdom. 10. He himself held the state by the power of troops. 11. Those animals dragged many men into the sea. 12. You (sg.) said this with great skill. 13. We ran with care (carefully) across the city. 14. He was coming to us with a large part of the citizens. 15. He will conquer the rights of the citizens by force. 16. You (pl.) dragged him to death across his land. 17. We shall join ourselves with the citizens of many cities. 18. He wrote this letter to the king himself with courage (courageously). 19. The violence of those seas was great. 20. I have seen the art of the Greeks with my own eyes. 21. We have drawn many beautiful thoughts from the ancients.

22. 8, accompaniment; 9, manner; 10, means; 12, manner; 13, manner; 14, accompaniment; 15, means; 17, accompaniment; 18, manner; 20, means.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 15

1. See p. 97.
2. See p. 97–98.
3. See p. 98.
4. (1) dat./abl. pl. m. and n.; (2) indecl. adj. agreeing with noun in any case; (3) nom./acc. pl. n.; (4) nom. pl. m. and n., acc. pl. n.; (5) any form in pl.; (6) nom./acc. pl. n.; (7) any form in pl.; (8) dat./abl. pl. f.; (9) any form in pl.; (10) gen. pl. any gender; (11) any form in pl.; (12) any form in pl.
5. The word which indicates the whole number or amount out of which a part is taken is normally put in the genitive case. See p. 99 s.v. “Genitive of the Whole.”
6. **Ex** or **dē** + abl.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 7. (1) one citizen | (6) 5 of the citizens | (11) 3000 citizens |
| (2) ten citizens | (7) 5 citizens | (12) what (is) new? |
| (3) part of the citizens | (8) 100 citizens | (13) much praise |
| (4) three citizens | (9) 100 of the citizens | (14) enough money |
| (5) 3 of the 6 citizens | (10) 1000 citizens | (15) no water |

8. Time when, at which, within which.
9. (1) He used to come (was coming, kept coming) with his friends. Ablative of accompaniment.
 (2) He will come in one hour. Abl. of time within which.
 (3) He came at the same time. Abl. of time when.
 (4) He wrote the book in a few hours. Time within which.
 (5) At that time he wrote a book. Time when.
 (6) He was writing the book with care. Manner.

10. At that time alone he feared those three dangers; but he always used to fear (was afraid of) death. 11. Those two kings used to throw money among the thousands of citizens. 12. That one tyrant (of yours) always used to praise himself. 13. The citizens of those five cities kept expecting liberty. 14. They saved the city in two hours by their own wisdom. 15. I used to come into the city with three of my friends. 16. You (pl.) used to wage great wars with courage (= courageously). 17. Therefore a hundred Romans conquered a thousand Greeks. 18. Fathers often used to fear their own sons—and now they have much (of) fear. 19. Did you (sg.) see our two fathers at that time? 20. Where did you (pl.) find enough freedom? 21. They came in three hours, and he kept saying the same thing to us. 22. I understood little of the argument. 23. We have changed no part of our lives. 24. Our state used to preserve the liberty and rights of the citizens. 25. The Romans used to praise the customs of ancient times. 26. The two fathers sent four of their sons. 27. The ten men had enough wisdom and much virtue. 28. What's new, my friend?

KEY FOR CHAPTER 16

1. Abl. sg. masc. and fem.: **fortī** as compared with **cīve**.
2. (1) The adjective of 2 endings.
(2) Nom. sg. masc. and fem.: **fortis**, **fortis**; **ācer**, **ācris**; **potēns**, **potēns**.
3. **-ī**, abl. sg. of all genders; **-ium**, gen. pl. of all genders; **-ia**, nom. and acc. neut. pl.; but see p. 105 n. 2.
4. **-ī**; but see p. 105 n. 2.
5. Yes.
6. (1) to/for a sweet girl (11) of all parts
(2) by/w./fr. a sweet girl (12) of all kings
(3) by/w./fr. a sweet mother (13) of all wars
(4) to/for a sweet mother (14) by/w./fr. a happy man
(5) to/for a happy mother (15) to/for a happy man
(6) by/w./fr. a happy mother (16) to/for or by/w./fr. every sea
(7) all wars, nom. or acc. pl. (17) to/for every good art
(8) all names, nom. or acc. pl. (18) by/w./fr. every good art
(9) all seas, nom. or acc. pl. (19) of every good art
(10) by/w./fr. every part (20) to/for, by/w./fr. swift force

7. A long life is often difficult. 8. A difficult life can be happy. 9. How brief was his sweet life! 10. The memory of a sweet period of life helps thousands of men. 11. You (sg.) wrote a short book in a hundred hours. 12. In every sea we kept finding these two powerful animals. 13. In every land you (pl.) will see many thousands of brave men. 14. Swift rumor ran through every land. 15. That short war was difficult. 16. We overcame all dangers in six hours. 17. The powerful tyrant will conquer their country with swift violence. 18. In a short time he will change all the rights of the citizens. 19. They did not understand the difficult art of sweet liberty, for they had little wisdom. 20. Men fear difficult duties in all lands.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 17

1. See Ch. 17, p. 110–11, s.v. "Usage and Agreement."
2. (1) Its use in its own clause. (2) The antecedent.

3. In gender and number.
4. (1) who. (2) which. (3) who, which.
5. (1) to/for whom or which, masc. sg.
 (2) whom or which, masc. pl.
 (3) who/which, nom. sg. fem.
 who/which, nom. pl. fem.
 which, nom. or acc. pl. neut.
 (4) of whom/which, whose, sg.
 (5) to/for or by/w./fr. whom/which, pl.
 (6) which, nom. or acc. neut. sg.
 (7) by/w./fr. whom/which, fem. sg.
 (8) who/which, masc. sg. and pl.
 (9) whom/which, masc. sg.
 (10) whom/which, fem. pl.
 (11) of whom/which, whose, masc. pl.
 (12) whom/which, fem. sg.
6. They praised the citizen whom you (pl.) had sent. 7. They praised the ten citizens whom you (pl.) had sent. 8. They praised the citizen who had saved the country. 9. They praised the hundred citizens who had saved the country. 10. They praised the citizen whose son had saved the country. 11. They praised the citizens whose seven sons had saved the country. 12. They praised the citizen to whom they had entrusted the country. 13. They praised many of the citizens to whom they had entrusted the country. 14. They praised the citizen with whom they had come. 15. They praised the citizens with whom they had come. 16. He came with the citizen to whom he had entrusted his own life. 17. Tyrants destroy the rights of the citizens whom they capture. 18. The tyrant destroyed the city from which thousands of citizens had fled. 19. The tyrant destroyed the city into which those nine citizens had fled. 20. The tyrant destroyed the cities from which the citizens had fled. 21. The tyrant destroyed the cities into which the citizens had fled. 22. He overcame the danger which we feared. 23. He overcame the dangers which we feared. 24. He gave books to the girls whom he was praising. 25. The man whose daughter you (sg.) love kept coming into the city. 26. He entrusted his own life to the man whose daughter you (sg.) love. 27. He used to help the mother, who had much courage. 28. The king used to give money to the mothers who had many sons.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 18

1. See p. 118 s.v. "The Passive Voice."
2. See p. 118 s.v. "Ablative of Personal Agent." Note that "agent" is a person; "means" is something other than a person.
3. (1) The letter **r**.
 (2) No.
4. (1) we; (2) he; (3) I; (4) they; (5) you (sg.); (6) you (pl.).
5. (1) **-bā-**, imperf.; **-bi-** (**-bō-**, **-be-**, **-bu-**), fut.
 (2) Yes, with the minor exception of **-be-** in the 2nd pers. sg.
6. (1) we shall be . . . ; (2) you (pl.) were being . . . ; (3) he was being . . . ; (4) you

(sg.) will be . . . ; (5) they will be . . . ; (6) we were being . . . ; (7) he will be . . . ;
 (8) you (sg.) were being . . . ; (9) you (pl.) will be . . . ; (10) they were being . . .

7. They terrify me; I am terrified by them; I am terrified by their violence. 8. The tyrant was destroying this city. 9. This city was being destroyed by the tyrant; it will be destroyed by a plot. 10. He used to be aroused (moved) by his friends; he used to be aroused by their plans. 11. We are not being destroyed by the strength of men, but we can be destroyed by a plot. 12. You (pl.) will be destroyed not by war but by love of leisure and by the plans of evil men. 13. You yourself (sg.) are not being changed, but your name is being changed. 14. Thousands of men are possessed by the love of money. 15. Others used to be held by tyrants. 16. A few will be possessed by love of truth and friendship. 17. The boy will be saved by his friends. 18. Books of this sort used to be given to the boys by the teacher. 19. Liberty will be given to the people by the third king in a short time. 20. Our country can even now be saved by brave citizens. 21. We ought to be warned by the fortune of other men (others). 22. We are terrified by the plans of that tyrant who lives across the sea; but we love liberty, and we shall wage war with great courage. 23. We shall be helped by powerful friends. 24. We praise all our men, who are moved by courage and truth, not by love of themselves.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 19

1. (1) The perfect passive participle plus the present of **sum**.

(2) The perfect passive participle plus the imperfect of **sum**.

2. (1) **Vir missus est** = *a man was (has been) sent*; **vir mittitur** = *a man is (is being) sent*.

(2) **Vir missus erat** = *a man had been sent*; **vir mittēbātur** = *a man was being (used to be) sent*.

3. An interrogative pronoun introduces a question.

4. **quis** (nom. sg. m. and f.); **quid** (nom. and acc. sg. n.).

5. See p. 124.

6. (1) he is (is being) moved

(2) he was (has been) moved

(3) it had been moved

(4) he was being moved

(5) they had been destroyed

(6) they were being destroyed

(7) they were destroyed

(8) we are held

(9) we were held

(10) we had been held

(11) we were being held

(12) he had been changed

(13) he was (has been) changed

(14) he is (is being) changed

(15) he was being changed

7. (1) whose (sg.)?

(2) whom (sg.)?

(3) who (pl.)?

(4) what (nom. and acc. sg.)?

(5) whose (pl.)?

(6) to whom (sg.)?

(7) whom (fem. pl.)?

(8) who (sg.)?

(9) who (fem. pl.)?

what (neut. nom. and acc. pl.)?

8. By whom was the book prepared (had been prepared; was being prepared)?

9. The teacher by whom the book was prepared is overcome with work. 10. To

whom was the book given (was being given, had been given)? 11. What boy was saved? 12. I myself saw the boy who was saved. 13. Whose (sg.) two sons were saved? 14. I never saw the old man whose sons were saved. 15. Who (sg.) was sent? 16. Peace and liberty were praised by the citizen who had been sent. 17. Who (pl.) were sent? 18. Friendship was praised by the ten citizens who had been sent. 19. Whom (pl.) did you (sg.) see in the city? 20. Where are the three new friends whom you (sg.) saw in the city? 21. What things were found by you (sg.) there? 22. Where are the three bodies which were found there by you (sg.)? 23. By whom was this (thing) said? 24. To whom was this said? 25. The eight wretched men to whom these things were said fled from the city. 26. Whose sons were praised by him? 27. The fathers whose sons were praised will thank him. 28. What terrifies you? 29. What danger terrifies you? 30. But the danger which terrifies you has been conquered by brave citizens.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 20

1. (1) object, acc. sg.; (2) of, pl.; (3) by/w./fr., sg.; (4) subject, sg.; (5) of (sg.); subject or object (pl.); (6) to/for, sg.
2. (1) to/for a hand (band) (8) of fruit; fruits (subj./obj.)
 (2) a hand (subj.) (9) of fruits
 (3) of hands (10) by/w./fr. fruit
 (4) by/w./fr. a hand (11) of the senate
 (5) of a hand; hands (subj./obj.) (12) to/for the senate
 (6) to/for or by/w./fr. fruits (13) the senate (subj.)
 (7) fruit (obj.) (14) by/w./fr. the senate
3. (1) Masculine; (2) **manus**.
4. (1) The ablative of place from which = motion apart; the ablative of separation = distance apart.
 (2) The ablative of separation.
 (3) The ablative of place from which.
5. Place from which regularly has a preposition (**ab**, **dē**, **ex**); for separation, see p. 130.
6. Who came to us at that time? 7. An old man of great fame fled from his country to our senate. 8. What new was said by him? 9. This (thing) was said by that man: "We lack liberty." 10. Free us from slavery and heavy fear. 11. Our forces waged long war against the tyrant's fierce bands. 12. Those fierce bands which the tyrant sent against us from that land were conquered by us. 13. After this (*lit.* these things) the citizens who feared the tyrant were led from their own country into our state. 14. We freed them from the crimes of that tyrant. 15. Now they lack (are free from) every fear (anxiety). 16. Their sons eagerly (with zeal) read good books in our schools. 17. And so they have written a thousand verses with their own hands. 18. These one hundred verses give great thanks to us. 19. In these verses the senate and the Roman people are praised. 20. For those unfortunate men now have the fruits of peace and much liberty without fear. 21. Since we have helped others, even we ourselves have great enjoyment. 22. Good men will never lack an

abundance of these fruits. 23. In our age many human beings pass their life in fear and slavery. 24. We ought to free those unfortunate men from fear. 25. For who can be happy if other human beings lack the enjoyments of peace and liberty?

26. (6) time when; (7) place from which; (8) agent; (9) agent; (10) separation; (12) agent; (13) place from which; (14) separation; (15) separation; (16) manner; (17) means; (22) separation; (23) time when; (24) separation.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 21

1. See p. 116–17.
2. Check with paradigms on p. 135–36 and repeat them until you can say them without hesitation.
3. In the passive infinitive the final *-e* of the active infinitive has been changed to *-ī*: (1) *sentīrī*, *to be felt*; (2) *movērī*, *to be moved*; (3) *servārī*, *to be saved*; (4) *scīrī*, *to be known*; (5) *tenērī*, *to be held*.
4. The whole active ending *-ere* is changed to *-ī*: (1) *mittī*, *to be sent*; (2) *iacī*, *to be thrown*; (3) *tangī*, *to be touched*; *trahī*, *to be drawn*.
5.

(1) I shall be sent	(13) you (sg.) are seized
(2) you (sg.) are sent	(14) you (sg.) will be seized
(3) you (sg.) will be sent	(15) they are touched
(4) to be sent	(16) they will be touched
(5) they are sent	(17) to be touched
(6) I am sent	(18) you (sg.) are touched
(7) he is seized	(19) you (pl.) will be touched
(8) he will be seized	(20) you (sg.) will be known
(9) to be seized	(21) you (sg.) are known
(10) we are seized	(22) he will be known
(11) they will be seized	(23) he is known
(12) they are seized	(24) to be known
6. Who is being sent (will be sent, used to be sent, was sent)? 7. By whom will this letter be sent (was sent, is sent)? 8. By whose hand was that letter written (will be written)? 9. What was said (was being said, will be said, is said)? 10. “Who (sg.) will be seized?” “You (sg.) will be seized.” 11. “Who (pl.) will be seized?” “You (pl.) will be seized.” 12. For a long time you (sg./pl.) will be neglected (were neglected). 13. After many hours we were freed (shall be freed). 14. For the sake of the state they ordered him to be seized. 15. For the sake of liberty our state ought to be managed by the other man. 16. His soul could not be touched by money. 17. In every soul the love of country used to be felt (will be felt, is felt, was felt). 18. We are joined (used to be joined, will be joined) to (*lit.*, with) other citizens by love of country. 19. Friendship is not always understood, but it is felt. 20. Wisdom and truth will not be found (are not found, were not found) in those two men. 21. Wisdom is not obtained (will not be obtained, was not obtained) by even a great deal of (= much) money. 22. Truth often is not known (will not be known, was not known), because the study of it is difficult. 23. Not without great labor will truth be found (was found, can be found). 24. Others are drawn by eagerness for (*lit.*, of) money and fame; we ought to be drawn by love of truth and wisdom.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 22

1. *ē*.
2. *-em, -ē; -ēs, -ēbus, -ēs, -ēbus* (also *-eī*, dat., and *-ērum*, gen.)
3. (1) Feminine. (2) *Diēs*.
4.

(1) of hope; to/for hope	(11) to/for or by/w./fr. days
(2) of hopes	(12) thing (acc.)
(3) hope (acc.)	(13) of things
(4) to/for or by/w./fr. hopes	(14) by/w./fr. a thing
(5) hope (nom.); hopes (nom., acc.)	(15) to/for or by/w./fr. things
(6) by/w./fr. faith	(16) of or to/for a thing
(7) faith (acc.)	(17) of fires
(8) of or to/for faith	(18) fire (acc.)
(9) of days	(19) to/for or by/w./fr. fires
(10) day (nom.); days (nom., acc.)	(20) fires (nom., acc.)
5. (1) place where; he remained in the city.
 (2) time within which; he will come in one hour.
 (3) time when; he came at that time.
 (4) accompaniment; he came with them.
 (5) place from which; he came from the city.
 (6) separation; they lack fire.
 (7) means; that was done by fire.
 (8) agent; it was done by them.
 (9) manner; it was done faithfully (with faith).
6. (1) *ab* + abl.
 (2) *cum* + abl.
 (3) abl. alone after verbs of freeing, lacking, and depriving; with other verbs *ab*, *dē*, *ex* is often used.
 (4) *in* + abl.
 (5) abl. alone
 (6) *cum* + abl.; *cum* may be omitted when the noun is modified by an adj.
 (7) *ab, dē, ex* + abl.
 (8) abl. alone.
7. At that time he faithfully preserved the liberty of those ten citizens. 8. He managed the state with great care (= very carefully). 9. The state was managed by him with great care. 10. Many good things were seen in the middle of the city. 11. On that day they prepared many things hopefully. 12. We snatched the fire from the hands of the boy. 13. In five days Cicero will rescue the republic from danger. 14. You (sg.) freed the two republics from fear. 15. The earth nourishes human beings with good fruits. 16. He nourished their uncertain hopes by his own courage. 17. In this age our hopes are being destroyed by these three tyrants. 18. Seven of our friends came from that state with great fear. 19. The whole clan came into the territory of this state with a large band of friends in one day. 20. Not all free men dare to join themselves with this republic. 21. If those men lack faith, there is no hope of friendship and peace. 22. Good faith and the love of this republic can save us. 23. You (sg.) have given (your) whole life to this state.

24. (7) time when; manner; (8) manner; (9) manner; (10) place where; (11) time when; manner; (13) time within which; separation; (14) separation; (15) means; (16) means; (17) time when; agent; (18) place from which; manner; (19) accompaniment; time within which; (21) separation.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 23

1. (1) perf. pass. = having been . . . or Eng. perf. partic.
 (2) pres. act. = -ing
 (3) fut. act. = about to . . .
 (4) pres. act. = -ing
 (5) fut. act. = about to . . .
 (6) fut. pass. = (about) to be . . .
 (7) perf. pass. = having been . . .
 (8) pres. act. = -ing.
 (9) perf. pass. = having been (e.g., nom. pl.)
 (10) perf. pass. = having been (dat. or abl. pl.)
2. (1) about to be (13) (about) to be done
 (2) about to press (14) seizing
 (3) pressing (15) about to seize
 (4) (having been) pressed (16) (having been) desired
 (5) (about) to be pressed (17) desiring
 (6) turning (18) (about) to be given
 (7) (having been) turned (19) (having been) given
 (8) about to turn (20) about to give
 (9) (having been) said (21) giving
 (10) saying (22) (having been) moved
 (11) about to say (23) moving
 (12) (having been) done (24) about to move
3. (1) *vīsus* (6) *scrīptus* (11) *victūrus* (15) *tractus*
 (2) *vidēns* (7) *mittēns* (12) *vincēns* (16) *trahēns*
 (3) *vīsūrus* (8) *missus* (13) *iūntūrus* (17) *iactūrus*
 (4) *scrībendus* (9) *missūrus* (14) *iungēns* (18) *iactus*
 (5) *scrīptūrus* (10) *victus*

4. When captured (*lit.*, having been captured) he said nothing. 5. Freed from slavery he will lead a pleasant life. 6. He thanked those giving the gifts. 7. I do not like someone seeking gifts. 8. To a man desiring much money he used to give only a few gifts. 9. I sent my son to your school to be taught. 10. That man, when about to conquer another people, kept wishing to destroy (their) teachers and books. 11. Terrified by this plot we shall live a wretched life. 12. Long oppressed, they began to turn themselves against the oppressing tyrant. 13. Those four unfortunate men, when seen by the tyrant, ran across the border. 14. The orator, because he feared the tyrant, always used to say pleasing things. 15. We fear someone fearing us. (= who fears us). 16. These men, if they conquer, will take away all the rights of the conquered citizens. 17. That wretched man on the point of fleeing kept seek-

ing the advice of his three friends. 18. The old man, warned by two of his friends, fled to us. 19. Having himself been helped by the second old man, he kept giving many things to those lacking money. 20. Who, when freed from these dangers, will not thank the gods? 21. Joined with you (pl.), we shall save the republic. 22. To those having faith nothing is uncertain.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 24

1. (1) A noun (pronoun) + participle in abl.
(2) No. (See p. 155.)
2. (1) See p. 155.
(2) As a rule commas separate an abl. abs. from the rest of the sentence. This makes it appear somewhat apart from the rest of the sentence.
3. No. Since this "absolute" construction is not too commonly favored in English, the literal translation if regularly adhered to would make rather clumsy English.
4. When, since, after, although, if. (See p. 156.)
5. (1) Incorrect because the noun (**urbe**) of the abl. abs. is used (through its pronoun **eam**) as the object.
(2) Incorrect because **captus** means *having been* captured, not *having* captured.
(3) Correct because **urbem captam** (*the captured city*) stands as the natural object of **dēlēvit**.
(4) Correct because **urbe captā** is a normal abl. abs., the noun of which is not used elsewhere as subject or object.
6. (1) Obligation or necessity.
(2) It is really a predicate adjective; and so it naturally agrees with the subject of **sum**.
(3) **Dēbeō** + inf., though **dēbeō** more often expresses the idea of moral obligation.
7. (1) **Mihi** is dat. of agent.
(2) **Ā mē**; abl. of agent.
8. If (since, etc.) these two men hold the power, the republic will be strong. 9. When (since, etc.) this rumor had been reported, the leader left the city without delay. 10. When every desire for (*lit.*, of) money and glory had been banished from his soul, that leader conquered himself. 11. Every desire for evil things ought to be conquered by us (= we ought to conquer . . .) if we wish to lead a good life. 12. If (since, etc.) the citizens love (their) country, we can have great hopes. 13. All citizens kept fearing that tyrant (of yours), who had to be banished. 14. When the tyrant had been overcome, the citizens regained their liberty and rights. 15. But after a tyrant has been expelled, another tyrant often gets the power. 16. Who in taking the power desires to help the state alone, not himself? 17. When many peoples had been conquered, you (sg.) desired to possess the whole world. 18. Slavery of every sort must be checked throughout the whole world. 19. If our republic is strong, nothing is to be feared by you (sg.). 20. Our country ought to be helped by each one who likes our mode of life. 21. All rights, therefore, ought to be preserved by the citizens with great care. 22. When duties have been deserted by the citizens, the state will be in great danger. 23. When these important things had

been said, the orator was praised by us. 24. Truth and virtue ought always to be sought by all men. 25. When (since) truth and virtue had been sought, the republic was saved.

26. A. (8) virīs tenentibus; (9) fāmā narrātā; (10) cupiditāte expulsā; (12) cīvibus amantibus; (14) tyrannō superātō; (15) tyrannō expulsō; (17) gentibus victīs; (22) officiīs relictīs; (23) rēbus dictīs; (25) vērītate . . . quaesītīs.

B. (11) vincenda est; (13) expellendus erat; (18) opprimenda est; (19) timendum est; (20) adiuvanda est; (21) cōservanda sunt; (24) quaerendae sunt.

C. (11) nōbīs; (19) tibi; (20) cuique; (21) cīvibus; (24) virīs.

D. (22) ā cīvibus; (23) ā nōbīs.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 25

1. See p. 117, 136, 162.
2. Future active infinitive.
3. Perfect passive infinitive.
4. They agree with the subject of the infinitive. See p. 163, n. 4.
5. Since it is the ending of the perfect active infinitive, *-isse* in effect means "to have. . . ."
6.

(1) to have moved	(16) to have lived
(2) to have been moved	(17) to have been drawn
(3) to be about to move	(18) to have been seen
(4) to be moved	(19) to have been seized
(5) to be said	(20) to have been sent
(6) to be known	(21) to have been sought
(7) to be saved	(22) to have been expelled
(8) to be seized	(23) to have been left
(9) to be sent	(24) to have been given
(10) to have believed	(25) to be about to give
(11) to have destroyed	(26) to be about to turn
(12) to have drawn	(27) to be about to press
(13) to have touched	(28) to be about to seize
(14) to have loved	(29) to be about to order
(15) to have conquered	(30) to be about to touch
7. See p. 164.
8.

(2) nūntiō, I announce	(14) sentiō, I feel, think
(4) intellegō, I understand	(16) scrībō, I write
(7) videō, I see	(19) ostendō, I show
(8) nesciō, I do not know	(20) spērō, I hope
(10) crēdō, I believe	(22) putō, I think
(13) audiō, I hear	(24) negō, I say that . . . not, deny
9. Saying, knowing, thinking, perceiving. See p. 167.
10. The infinitive with subject accusative; not a "that" clause.
11. The accusative.
12. No.
13. (1) The perfect infinitive = time *before* that of the main verb.

(2) The future infinitive = time *after* that of the main verb.

(3) The present infinitive = the *same time* as that of the main verb. See p. 165.

14. I know that you did (will do, are doing) this (thing). 15. I knew that you had done (would do, were doing) this. 16. We believed that they would come (had come, were coming). 17. We believe that they will come (came, are coming). 18. Tomorrow he will hear (A) that they are coming (i.e., tomorrow); (B) that they came (e.g., yesterday) *or* that they have come; (C) that they will come (e.g., in a few days). 19. Today he hears (A) that they are coming (today); (B) that they came (yesterday); (C) that they will come (soon). 20. Yesterday he heard (A) that they were coming (yesterday); (B) that they had come (e.g., the day before yesterday); (C) that they would come (in a few days). 21. They hope that you (pl.) will see him. 22. I know that this was done by you. 23. I did not know that those things had been done by him. 24. They said that the city was not being captured by the enemy (had not been captured). 25. You (pl.) know that those men are (will be, were/have been) always faithful. 26. You (pl.) knew that those men were (would be, had been) always faithful. 27. They kept thinking that the tyrant ought to be driven out by them (by themselves). 28. We believe that peace ought to be sought by all leaders. 29. He says that peace is being sought (was sought) by the ten leaders. 30. He said that the two leaders would seek (were seeking, had sought) peace. 31. The enemy hope that they will conquer all states. 32. I well know that I do not know many things, for no one can know all things.

33. *Scīre* (sentence 32) is a complementary infinitive depending on *potest*.

34.	<i>Word</i>	<i>Form</i>	<i>Reason</i>
	(14) <i>tē</i>	acc.	subj. of inf. (<i>fēcisse</i>)
	(14) <i>fēcisse</i>	perf. act. inf.	indir. statement
	(16) <i>eōs</i>	acc.	subj. of inf. (<i>ventūrōs esse</i>)
	(17) <i>ventūrōs esse</i>	fut. act. inf.	indir. state
	(21) <i>eum</i>	acc.	obj. of inf. (<i>vīsūrōs esse</i>)
	(22) <i>hoc</i>	acc.	subj. of inf. (<i>factum esse</i>)
	(23) <i>eō</i>	abl.	agent
	(24) <i>hostibus</i>	abl.	agent
	(25) <i>fidēlēs</i>	acc.	pred. adj. agreeing with <i>illōs</i>
	(27) <i>sibi</i>	dat.	agent w. pass. periphrastic
	(28) <i>pācem</i>	acc.	subj. of inf. (<i>quaerendam esse</i>)
	(28) <i>ducibus</i>	dat.	agent w. pass. periphr.
	(29) <i>ducibus</i>	abl.	agent
	(30) <i>pācem</i>	acc.	obj. of inf. (<i>quaesitūrōs esse</i>)
	(31) <i>rēs publicās</i>	acc.	obj. of inf.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 26

- (1) Latin *-ior* corresponds to English *-er*.
(2) They have a slight similarity in sound and they both have a final *-r* as a sign of the comparative.
- (1) Latin *-issimus* corresponds to English *-est*.
(2) The *s*'s which they have in common suggest *s* as a sign of the superlative.

3. (1) They are added to the *base* of the adjective. (See p. 171–72.)
 (2) *turpior, turpissimus; vēlōcior, vēlocissimus; prūdētiōr, prūdētissimus*
4. (1) **Acerbior** = harsher, rather harsh, too harsh.
 (2) **Acerbissimus** = harshest, very harsh.
5. (1) **Quam** with the comparative = *than* (this man was harsher than that one).
 (2) **Quam** with the superlative = *as . . . as possible, -st possible* (this man was as harsh as possible, the harshest possible).
6. There is no fixed case after **quam**, which is an adverb or conjunction of comparison. The second word of a comparison, which comes after **quam**, is put in the same case as that of the first of the two words compared. (See p. 173.)
7. (1) Most have *i*-stems.
 (2) Comparatives have consonant stems. (Note, incidentally, that *comparative* and *consonant* both begin with the same sound.)
8. They announced that the bravest possible leader had come.
9. After a very clear light had been seen by the four men, the bravest troops were sent against the enemy.
10. When that very base man had been banished, the senate gave gifts to the more faithful citizens.
11. The more fortunate citizens used to do these pleasant things on behalf of the more unfortunate citizens.
12. This author is more famous than that one.
13. Certain men said that this author was more famous than that one.
14. Read the books of wiser authors if you wish to lead the wisest (a very wise) life.
15. The six authors whose books I have read are too (rather) harsh.
16. After certain very wise books had been read, we avoided those baser faults.
17. This man, who has overcome his base faults, is braver than the very brave leader.
18. Who is the happiest man? He who leads the wisest life is happier than the most powerful tyrant.
19. The cure of your vices seems rather (too) difficult.
20. That leader thought that his country was dearer to him than life.
21. A band of the most faithful young men possible ought to be sought by the senate.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 27

1. (1) and (2)—see p. 179 item II.

2. (1) and (2)—see p. 179 item I.

3. <i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
parvus	minus (minor, minus)	minimum (minimus)
malus	pejorative (peior)	pessimist (pessimus)
bonus	ameliorate (melior)	optimist (optimus)
(prō)	prior (prior)	prime (prīmus)
magnus	major (maior)	maximum (maximus)
superus	superior (superior)	supreme (suprēmus)
multus	plus (plūs)	summit (summus)

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 4. (1) a smaller war | (7) the smallest boy |
| (2) the worst (very bad) war | (8) the better boy |
| (3) a greater war | (9) a very (most) beautiful girl |
| (4) former wars | (10) a more beautiful girl |
| (5) a very similar book | (11) very many girls |
| (6) a more difficult book | (12) greater faith |

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| (13) very small faith | (25) more labors |
| (14) a smaller sea | (26) the best leaders |
| (15) in a smaller sea | (27) greater leaders |
| (16) larger seas | (28) better leaders |
| (17) the best fruits | (29) the smallest gifts |
| (18) worse fruit | (30) more gifts |
| (19) the fiercest (very fierce) men | (31) the first gifts |
| (20) fiercer men | (32) more praise |
| (21) more men | (33) more praises |
| (22) most (very) difficult labor | (34) the worst citizens |
| (23) the last (supreme) labor | (35) better citizens |
| (24) more labor | (36) very free citizens |

5. The easiest things often are not the best. 6. The difficult things are often the greatest. 7. The better pursuits are more (rather) difficult. 8. The worst authors write very many books. 9. These books are worse than the books of better authors. 10. The smaller boy received a larger gift. 11. That very small republic had the greatest hopes. 12. More men believe that this war is worse than the first war. 13. A better leader will come with greater forces. 14. Fierce leaders often used to praise the fiercer forces of the fiercest enemy. 15. When the very evil tyrant had been banished, the citizens sought a better and a wiser leader. 16. They gave the better leader greater power and more money. 17. Citizens of the smaller cities are not better than those of the largest cities. 18. We are not better than very many men of former ages. 19. Our ancestors used to call Apollo the god of the sun.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 28

1. Something other than a fact; e.g., the command and purpose clauses learned in this chapter. See p. 186.
2. See p. 186.
3. (1) *ē*; (2) *ā* (except that in the 3rd and 4th conjugations the forms **dūcam** and **audiam** are identical in the future indicative and the present subjunctive).
4. Command, called “jussive.”
5. Purpose.
6. Jussive.
7. No. (See p. 189.)
8. (1) he will send (12) subj., 1st pl. pass.
- (2) subj., 3rd sg. (13) we are heard
- (3) he is sending (14) subj., 2nd sg.
- (4) subj., 3rd sg. (15) you (sg.) are seizing
- (5) he gives (16) you (sg.) will seize
- (6) subj., 3rd pl. (17) they are known
- (7) they believe (18) they will be known
- (8) they will believe (19) subj., 3rd pl. pass.
- (9) they move (20) you (pl.) are freed
- (10) subj., 3rd pl. (21) subj., 2d. pl. pass.
- (11) we shall be heard (22) you (pl.) will be freed

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|
| (23) they are destroyed | (27) subj., 2nd sg. |
| (24) subj., 3rd pl. pass. | (28) we say |
| (25) you (sg.) will be conquered | (29) we shall say |
| (26) you (sg.) are conquered | (30) subj., 1st pl. |

9. Let that leader come. We are awaiting him. 10. Let the base citizens depart from (our) republic so that we may live in peace. 11. If those two men desire friends, let them do real kindnesses. 12. He shows kindnesses to others in order to be loved (so that he may be loved). 13. I say these happy words to you so that you may not depart. 14. Let us do these very difficult things for the sake of our country. 15. Give more money to those unfortunate people so that they may not lack arms against the enemy. 16. He thinks that they will do it to avoid my anger. 17. Let us prepare arms so that our liberty may not be taken away. 18. Will our freedom be rescued from danger by arms alone? 19. Let philosophers not write too difficult books. 20. For (= the truth is) we shall not receive enough wisdom from too difficult books. 21. Let him do better and greater things so that he may not lead a most wretched life. 22. Tell these things to that very famous author so that they may be written in his book. 23. Let us always seek the truth, without which the greatest souls cannot be happy.

24.	<i>Word</i>	<i>Form</i>	<i>Reason</i>
	(9) <i>veniat</i>	pres. subj.	command (jussive)
	(10) <i>discēdant</i>	pres. subj.	command
	<i>vīvāmus</i>	pres. subj.	purpose
	(11) <i>faciant</i>	pres. subj.	command
	(12) <i>praestat</i>	pres. ind.	statement of fact
	<i>amētur</i>	pres. subj.	purpose
	(13) <i>discēdātis</i>	pres. subj.	purpose
	(14) <i>faciāmus</i>	pres. subj.	command
	(15) <i>date</i>	imper.	command in 2nd per.
	<i>armīs</i>	abl.	separation
	<i>careant</i>	pres. subj.	purpose
	(16) <i>eōs</i>	acc.	subj. of inf.
	<i>factūrōs esse</i>	fut. act. inf.	indirect statement
	<i>vītent</i>	pres. subj.	purpose
	(17) <i>parēmus</i>	pres. subj.	command
	<i>tollātur</i>	pres. subj.	purpose
	(18) <i>armīs</i>	abl.	means
	<i>ēripiētur</i>	fut. ind.	fact
	(19) <i>scribant</i>	pres. subj.	command
	(20) <i>accipiēmus</i>	fut. ind.	fact
	(21) <i>faciat</i>	pres. subj.	command
	<i>agat</i>	pres. subj.	purpose
	(22) <i>nārrā</i>	imper.	command in 2nd per.
	<i>scribantur</i>	pres. subj.	purpose
	(23) <i>quaerāmus</i>	pres. subj.	command

KEY FOR CHAPTER 29

1. Present active infinitive + personal endings. See p. 194.

2. Yes.

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 3. (1) impf. subj., 3 sg. | (16) pres. subj., 3 sg. |
| (2) impf. subj., 3 pl. | (17) impf. subj., 3 pl. |
| (3) impf. subj., 1 pl. | (18) they will depart |
| (4) impf. subj., 1 sg. | (19) pres. subj., 3 pl. |
| (5) impf. subj., 2 sg. | (20) pres. subj., 1 pl. |
| (6) pres. subj., 3 sg. | (21) pres. subj., 1 pl. |
| (7) impf. subj., 2 pl. | (22) impf. subj., 3 pl. |
| (8) pres. subj., 3 sg. | (23) pres. subj., 2 sg. |
| (9) you (sg.) will find | (24) you will receive |
| (10) pres. subj., 2 sg. | (25) impf. subj., 2 sg. |
| (11) pres. subj., 3 sg. | (26) you (pl.) will be banished |
| (12) he will say | (27) impf. subj., 2 pl. |
| (13) he says | (28) pres. subj., 2 pl. |
| (14) pres. subj., 3 pl. | (29) impf. subj., 3 pl. |
| (15) impf. subj., 3 sg. | (30) they are moved |

4. Ut or **ut nōn** + subjunctive.

5. See p. 196.

6. See p. 196.

7. They read the best books with such great care that they learned much wisdom. 8. We used to read good books with care so that we might learn wisdom. 9. The best books ought to be read by students in order that they may learn the truth and good character. 10. Let the wisest authors write more books so that they may be able to help all peoples. 11. The souls of very many men are so foolish that they do not wish to learn. 12. But many minds are so keen that they can learn well. 13. Some teachers used to teach their pupils so skillfully (with such great skill) that even the pupils themselves wanted to learn. 14. The power of that tyrant was so great that the senate could not drive him out. 15. Let all citizens dedicate (give) themselves to the country so that the enemy may not take away their liberty. 16. Caesar was such a keen leader that the enemy did not conquer the Roman soldiers. 17. Are we leading other peoples with such great wisdom and courage that liberty is being preserved? 18. You (pl.) used to do such great kindnesses that all loved you. 19. He was so harsh that no one loved him. 20. Thousands of citizens kept fleeing from that land in order not to be oppressed by the tyrant. 21. They so loved liberty that they were never conquered by the enemy.

22.	Word	Form	Reason
	(7) <i>discerent</i>	impf. subj.	result
	(8) <i>discerēmus</i>	impf. subj.	purpose
	(9) <i>discant</i>	pres. subj.	purpose
	(10) <i>scrībant</i>	pres. subj.	command
	<i>possint</i>	pres. subj.	purpose
	(11) <i>cupiant</i>	pres. subj.	result

(12) possint	pres. subj.	result
(13) cuperent	impf. subj.	result
(14) posset	impf. subj.	result
(15) dent	pres. subj.	command
tollant	pres. subj.	purpose
(16) vincerent	impf. subj.	result
(17) cōservētur	pres. subj.	result
(18) amārent	impf. subj.	result
(19) amāret	impf. subj.	result
(20) opprimerentur	impf. subj.	purpose
(21) vincerentur	impf. subj.	result

KEY FOR CHAPTER 30

1. It is the perfect active infinitive (-isse) + personal endings; e.g., **pōnere-m** and **posuisse-m**.
2. It is the perfect passive participle + **essem** (the imperfect subjunctive of **sum**); e.g., **positus eram** and **positus essem**.
3. **Positus sit** is perfect subjunctive passive.
4. The future perfect indicative.
 5. (1) impf. pass., 3 sg. (9) impf. act., 3 pl.
 - (2) plupf. act., 1 sg. (10) plupf. pass., 1 pl.
 - (3) perf. pass., 3 pl. (11) pres. act., 3 sg.
 - (4) pres. pass., 1 pl. (12) perf. pass., 2 sg.
 - (5) perf. act., 3 pl. (13) plupf. act., 2 sg.
 - (6) impf. act., 1 pl. (14) impf. pass., 3 sg.
 - (7) plupf. act., 2 pl. (15) perf. act., 1 pl.
 - (8) plupf. pass., 3 sg. (16) plupf. act., 3 pl.
6. (1) Present and future. See p. 205.
 - (2) Present and perfect.
 - (3) The past tenses.
 - (4) Imperfect and pluperfect.
7. (1) The same time or time after (contemporaneous or subsequent). See p. 205.
 - (2) The same time or time after.
 - (3) Time before (prior).
 - (4) Time before (prior).
8. Where is (was) the leader? 9. They ask where the leader is (was). 10. They kept asking where the leader was (had been). 11. They will ask where the leader is (was). 12. I do not know where the money was put. 13. Do you (sg.) know where the money is being put? 14. They knew where the money was being put. 15. He did not know where the money had been put. 16. We shall tell you (pl.) why the soldier did (does) this. 17. They told me why the soldier had done (was doing) this. 18. Tell me who came (is coming). 19. The orator asked why the other citizens had not learned these plans. 20. We announced to the leader that the other soldiers were fleeing (had fled) into that land. 21. We announced to the leader into what

land the other soldiers were fleeing (had fled). 22. We heard that the citizens were so faithful that they preserved the state. 23. We heard what the citizens had done to preserve the state. 24. They kept inquiring in whose state peace could be found. 25. We learned that peace had not been found in their country. 26. Those foolish men always ask what is better than power or money. 27. We certainly think that money itself is not bad; but we believe that truth and liberty and friendship are better and greater. 28. These things we desire so that we may live a finer life; for money alone and power can make men harsh, so that they are not happy. 29. Finally, let him explain all things so that you (pl.) may now understand what great crimes have been committed against the republic.

30.	Word	Form	Reason
	(15) posita esset	plupf. subj.	indirect question
	(16) fēcerit	perf. subj.	ind. quest.
	(17) fēcisset	plupf. subj.	ind. quest.
	(18) vēnerit	perf. subj.	ind. quest.
	(20) fugere	pres. inf.	ind. statement
	(21) fugerent	impf. subj.	ind. quest.
	(22) esse	pres. inf.	ind. state.
	cōservārent	impf. subj.	result
	(23) fēcissent	plupf. subj.	ind. quest
	cōservārent	impf. subj.	purpose
	(24) posset	impf. subj.	ind. quest.
	(25) inventam esse	perf. inf.	ind. state.
	(26) sit	pres. subj.	ind. quest.
	(27) esse	pres. inf.	ind. state.
	(28) agāmus	pres. subj.	purpose
	sint	pres. subj.	result
	(29) expōnat	pres. subj.	jussive
	comprehendātis	pres. subj.	purpose
	commissa sint	pres. subj.	ind. quest.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 31

- When (circumstantial, which is to be distinguished from **cum** temporal), since, although.
- Although.
- (1) The 3rd conjugation.
(2) They lack the connecting vowel **e/i**, which is seen in the corresponding forms of **dūcō**. (See p. 212.)
- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| (1) pres. subj. act., 3 sg. | (8) pres. subj. act., 3 pl. |
| (2) he bears | (9) he is borne |
| (3) impf. subj. act., 3 sg. | (10) bear (2 pl.) |
| (4) he will bear | (11) you (pl.) bear |
| (5) to bear | (12) you (sg.) will be borne |
| (6) they bear | (13) you (sg.) are borne |
| (7) they will bear | (14) bear (2 sg.) |

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (15) to be borne | (18) to be borne (gerundive) |
| (16) to have borne | (19) to have been borne |
| (17) to be about to bear | (20) plupf. subj. act., 3 sg. |

5. When we had said this, those twenty men replied that they would offer a just peace. 6. Although he had gone into another country, nevertheless he found new friends. 7. Since they offer us friendship, we shall offer them aid. 8. Since the danger was great, they brought all their troops and arms together in a short time. 9. What do *you* (sg.) bring? What does he bring? Tell me why these gifts are offered. 10. When he had explained what he was seeking, you (sg.) said that such great aid could not be offered. 11. Although they had brought pleasing gifts, I was able nevertheless to recognize their treachery. 12. Since we now understand your plans, we will not endure your treachery. 13. Such great evils are not to be endured. Go (be-take yourself) into exile. 14. Finally, let these hundred citizens bear aid to the republic. 15. I kept thinking that they would bring the wine in ships (*lit.*, by ships). 16. Although our soldiers had conquered the enemy, nevertheless they offered them many kindnesses. 17. When he had learned what great benefits the other three men were offering, he himself offered equal benefits. 18. We ought to offer sufficient aid to the unfortunate citizens of small nations. 19. When the consul had spoken these words, the senate replied that money had been brought together for this purpose.

20.	Word	Form	Reason
	(5) dīxissēmus	plupf. subj.	cum circumstantial
	oblātūrōs esse	fut. inf.	ind. state.
	(6) contulisset	plupf. subj.	cum <i>although</i>
	(7) offerant	pres. subj.	cum <i>since</i>
	(8) esset	impf. subj.	cum <i>since</i>
	(9) offerantur	pres. subj.	ind. quest.
	(10) exposuisset	plupf. subj.	cum circumstantial
	peteret	impf. subj.	ind. quest.
	(11) tulissent	plupf. subj.	cum <i>although</i>
	(12) comprehendāmus	pres. subj.	cum <i>since</i>
	(13) cōnfer	imper. 2 sg.	command
	(14) ferant	pres. subj.	jussive (command)
	(15) nāvibus	abl. pl.	means
	lātūrōs esse	fut. inf.	ind. state.
	(16) vīcissent	plupf. subj.	cum <i>although</i>
	(17) offerrent	impf. subj.	ind. quest.
	(19) dīxisset	plupf. subj.	cum circumstantial

KEY FOR CHAPTER 32

- (1) **-ē**; (2) **-iter** (e.g., *līberē*, *celeriter*).
- The ending **-ly** (e.g., *freely*, *quickly*).
- No. For example, see the list on p. 221.
- (1) **-ius** (e.g., *līberius*, *celerius*).
- (2) It is identical with the nom. and acc. neut. sg.

- (3) It is usually formed by using *more* (*too*, *rather*) with the positive degree of the adverb (e.g., more/too freely, more quickly).
5. The base is the same in both instances.
6. (1) **liberius** = more/too/rather freely.
 (2) **liberrimē** = most/very freely.
7. (1) pleasantly (11) very little, least of all
 (2) more/too pleasantly (12) more, rather
 (3) most/very pleasantly (13) longer
 (4) better (14) badly
 (5) very faithfully (15) more wretchedly
 (6) briefly (16) less
 (7) very quickly (17) easily
 (8) worse (18) especially, most of all
 (9) more faithfully (19) very seriously
 (10) more easily (20) more swiftly
8. (1) **vol-**; (2) **vel-**. See p. 221.
9. It is similar to **sum**. See p. 221.
10. (1) you (sg.) will wish (13) to have wished
 (2) pres. subj., 2 sg. (14) they wish
 (3) you (sg.) wish (15) we wished
 (4) impf. subj., 2 sg. (16) to wish
 (5) he prefers (17) he had wished
 (6) pres. subj., 1 pl. (18) they wished
 (7) impf. subj., 1 pl. (19) you (pl.) wished
 (8) plupf. subj., 2 sg. (20) impf. subj., 3 sg.
 (9) I shall wish (21) they do not wish
 (10) they kept wishing (22) impf. subj., 3 sg.
 (11) he will wish (23) pres. subj., 3 sg.
 (12) you (pl.) wish (24) he will not wish
11. Certain men prefer to believe that all men are equal. 12. Certain men say that all men's minds at least are not equal. 13. These men obtained wealth very quickly; those will be poor for a very long time. 14. This man wishes to get very many honors as easily as possible. 15. Do not lose this knowledge. 16. The citizens themselves managed the state better than the leader. 17. There the land is more level and is more open. 18. Free men will not wish to keep us from knowledge; but tyrants especially so wish. 19. The tyrant used to oppress his citizens so badly that they always wished to be free. 20. He will offer very many gifts very freely so that the army may be willing to help that tyrant. 21. Since they had very little wish to offer aid, we were unwilling to show them many favors. 22. Since the enemy are coming swiftly against us, we want to call our men to arms as quickly as possible. 23. Although they truly wanted to preserve their liberty and laws, nevertheless the crimes of the tyrant had to be endured very long. 24. He prefers to do these things more wisely so that he may not lose this occasion at least. 25. Do not leave, my friend.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 33

1. (1) The present subjunctive. (2) See p. 229.
2. (1) (A) Present contrary to fact; (B) past contrary to fact.
(2) The conditional clause. See p. 229.
3. Nisi.
4. The future less vivid condition.
5. See vocabulary p. 230.
6. If reason leads, you (sg.) are happy. 7. If reason leads, you will be happy. 8. If reason should lead, you would be happy. 9. If reason were leading, you would be happy. 10. If reason had led, you would have been happy. 11. If you (sg.) love money, you lack wisdom. 12. If you love money, you will lack wisdom. 13. If you should love money, you would lack wisdom. 14. If you were in love with money, you would lack wisdom. 15. If you had loved money, you would have lacked wisdom. 16. If we seek the truth, we find knowledge. 17. If we seek the truth, we shall find knowledge. 18. If we should seek the truth, we should find knowledge. 19. If we were seeking the truth, we should find knowledge. 20. If we had sought the truth, we would have found knowledge. 21. If you do not avoid anger, you will lose your two friends. 22. If you had not avoided anger, you would have lost your five friends. 23. If you should not avoid anger (if you should fail to avoid anger), you would lose many friends. 24. If you were not avoiding anger, you would be losing many friends. 25. If you do not avoid anger, you are losing many friends. 26. If you did not avoid anger, you lost many friends. 27. If anyone has a good character, we praise him. 28. If anyone had had a good character, we would have praised him. 29. If anyone should have a good character, we would praise him. 30. If anyone had a good character, we praised (used to praise) him. 31. If anyone were in possession of a good character, we would praise him. 32. If anyone has a good character, we shall praise him. 33. If those men win, we shall depart. 34. If those men should win, we would depart. 35. If those men had won, we would have departed. 36. If you had read books well, you would have written better. 37. If you read books well, you will write better. 38. If you were to read books well, you would write better.
39. (6) simple present
(7) simple fut.
(8) fut. less vivid
(9) pres. contr. to fact
(10) past contr. to fact
- (21) simple fut.
(22) past contr. to fact
(23) fut. less vivid
(24) pres. contr. to fact
(25) simple present
(26) simple past

KEY FOR CHAPTER 34

1. See p. 234.

- 2.

	Indicative	
<i>Pres.</i>	cōnāmur	loquitur
<i>Impf.</i>	cōnābāmur	loquēbātur
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnābimur	loquētur

<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātī sumus	locūtus est
<i>Plupf.</i>	cōnātī erāmus	locūtus erat
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	cōnātī erimus	locūtus erit

Subjunctive

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnēmur	loquātur
<i>Impf.</i>	cōnārēmur	loquerētur
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātī sīmus	locūtus sit
<i>Plupf.</i>	cōnātī essēmus	locūtus esset

3. (1) Participles

<i>Pres.</i>	patiēns, <i>suffering</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	passus, <i>having suffered</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	passūrus, <i>about to suffer</i>
<i>Ger.</i>	patiendus, <i>to be endured</i>

(2) Infinitives

<i>Pres.</i>	patī, <i>to suffer</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	passus esse, <i>to have suffered</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	passūrus esse, <i>to be about to suffer</i>

4. (1) illud cōnsilium; (2) illō cōnsiliō; (3) illud cōnsilium

5. Ablative (of means) with special deponent verbs. See p. 237–38.

6. Pres. partic.; fut. partic.; fut. inf.; e.g., **patiēns, passūrus, passūrus esse** in 3 above.

7. (1) cōnor

- 2 sg. cōnāre, *try*
2 pl. cōnāminī, *try*

(2) loquor

- loquere, *speak*
loquiminī, *speak*

8. (1) locūtus, *having said*(2) mortuus, *having died*(3) cōnātus, *having tried*(4) passus, *having suffered*(5) secūtus, *having followed*(6) ēgressus, *having gone out*(7) profectus, *having set out*

9. (1) he will use

(2) pres. subj., 3 sg.

(3) he uses

(4) impf. subj., 3 sg.

(5) having used

(6) plupf. subj., 3 sg.

(7) to be about to use

(8) you (sg.) will endure

(9) you (sg.) are enduring

(10) endure (imper.)

(11) to endure

(12) they endured

(13) to have endured

(14) enduring

(15) pres. subj., 3 sg.

(16) he endures

(17) we shall endure

(18) pres. subj., 3 sg.

(19) impf. subj., 3 sg.

(20) it must be endured

10. He thinks that these evils ought to be endured. 11. We shall try to endure these evils. 12. If you do not wish to die, endure these evils. 13. Having endured the greatest evils, the poor man died. 14. The tyrant thought that those two men would endure these evils a long time. 15. When they had endured three wars, they dared to force that tyrant into exile. 16. If you follow this new leader, you will enjoy liberty and leisure. 17. When these words had been said, we dared to follow him.

18. Having spoken these words, we set out so that we might not die in that miserable place. 19. Although he thought that you had used a bad plan, nevertheless he spoke with you freely. 20. If anyone should dare to use wine of that sort, he would quickly die. 21. His son was born and died on the same day. 22. Let us use all our resources so that our country may be saved. 23. When he tried to set out into another land, he was captured by soldiers. 24. I kept thinking that he would go out of the city with his ten friends. 25. Having set out that night, Caesar came to a certain very famous island. 26. If they had used better books, they would have learned more. 27. If you wish to have many friends, do not be arrogant.

28. (12) simple pres.; (16) simple fut.; (20) fut. less vivid; (26) past contrary to fact.

29.	Word	Form	Reason
	(14) <i>passūrōs esse</i>	fut. inf.	ind. state.
	(17) <i>verbīs</i>	abl.	abl. abs.
	(18) <i>locūtī</i>	nom. pl. of perf. partic.	agrees w. subject of verb
	<i>morerēmur</i>	impf. subj.	purpose
	(19) <i>cōsiliō</i>	abl.	special deponents
	<i>arbitrārētur</i>	impf. subj.	cum <i>although</i>
	(21) <i>diē</i>	abl.	time when
	(22) <i>ūtāmur</i>	pres. subj.	jussive
	(25) <i>nocte</i>	abl.	time when
	(26) <i>librīs</i>	abl.	spec. deponents

KEY FOR CHAPTER 35

1. See p. 246.
2. See p. 247–48.
3. (1) eum; they recognize him. (13) eum; they overcome him.
- (2) eī; they forgive him. (14) eī; they trust him.
- (3) eī; they serve him. (15) eō; they lack it.
- (4) eum; they save him. (16) eī; they study it.
- (5) eum; I prepared him. (17) eum; they urge him.
- (6) eī; I obeyed him. (18) eum; they follow him.
- (7) eum; they endure him. (19) eī; they persuade him.
- (8) eum; they will find him. (20) eō; they use it (him).
- (9) eī; they injure him. (21) eum; they strike him.
- (10) eum; they help him. (22) eī; they spare him.
- (11) eī; they please him. (23) eī; they command him.
- (12) eum; they throw him. (24) eum; they order him.

4. He saved the leader. 5. He served the leader. 6. Slaves serve other men. 7. Brave men save others. 8. That slave served my son and saved him. 9. If anyone serves himself alone, he will never save the republic. 10. If someone had undertaken this work, he would have saved a thousand men. 11. The gods will pardon me; you, O citizens, pardon the whole army. 12. If we want God to forgive us, we ought to forgive other men. 13. They do not trust me now, and they will never be willing to trust my two sons. 14. Those friends are very dear to me. 15. Since you lacked good faith, they could not trust you. 16. Let us obey this leader so that he

may spare us and save the city. 17. If Caesar does not please the citizens, they will not spare his life. 18. I am studying Latin literature, which I like (pleases me) even if I cannot persuade my friends. 19. Let us always study and obey truth and wisdom. 20. Always study the best subjects if you wish to be truly happy. 21. As we study these subjects, let us enjoy both books and life. 22. A good man wishes to harm nobody; he spares all, he helps all. 23. My rewards are very similar to yours.

24.	<i>Word</i>	<i>Form</i>	<i>Reason</i>
	(5) ducī	dat.	special vbs.
	(8) eum	acc.	obj. of <i>servāvit</i>
	(9) sibi	dat.	spec. vbs.
	(11) exercituī	dat.	spec. vbs.
	(12) hominibus	dat.	spec. vbs.
	(13) filiīs	dat.	spec. vbs.
	(14) mihi	dat.	dat. w. adjs.
	(15) fidē	abl.	separation
	(16) ducī	dat.	spec. vbs.
	pāreāmus	pres. subj.	jussive
	servet	pres. subj.	purpose
	(17) cīvibus	dat.	spec. vbs.
	vītae	dat.	spec. vbs.
	(18) litterīs	dat.	spec. vbs.
	amīcīs	dat.	spec. vbs.
	(21) rēbus	dat.	spec. vbs.
	librīs	abl.	spec. depon. vbs.
	ūtāmur	pres. subj.	jussive
	(22) omnibus	dat.	spec. vbs.
	(23) tuīs	dat.	dat. w. adjs.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 36

- Indirect command = **ut** (**nē**) + subjunctive. See p. 253.
- E.g., imperō, dīcō, cūrō, moneō, hortor, persuādeō, petō, quaerō, ōrō, rogō. See p. 254.
- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| (1) it will be made/done, | (9) to have been made/done, become |
| he will become | (10) impf. subj., 3 pl. |
| (2) it is made/done, he becomes | (11) we are made, become |
| (3) pres. subj., 3 sg. | (12) they will be made, become |
| (4) impf. subj., 3 sg. | (13) you (sg.) are made, become |
| (5) to be made/done, to become | (14) impf. subj., 1 sg. |
| (6) they are made/done, they become | (15) pres. subj., 3 pl. |
| (7) they were being made/
done, they were becoming | (16) gerundive, to be made/done |
| (8) you (sg.) will be made, become | (17) pres. subj., 1 pl. |

4. He said that they were studying Latin literature. 5. He told why they were studying Latin literature. 6. He said that they should study Latin literature (he told them to study . . .). 7. We asked them why they were studying Greek philosophy. 8. Do

you ask that we learn (= ask us to learn) the nature of all things? 9. I warn you to spare these wise men. 10. He warned the soldiers not to injure those seeking peace. 11. He will command us not to trust the enemy. 12. He commanded you to obey the leader. 13. I ask you why you did this. 14. I ask you to do this. 15. I beg of you that peace be made. 16. They kept begging me not to make war. 17. I begged him not to obey the disgraceful king. 18. We beg you to become very keen pupils. 19. Do not be like that harsh tyrant. 20. Caesar took care that his power be made greatest in the state. 21. The speaker urged us to serve our free country eagerly. 22. He persuaded us that we should always use just laws. 23. We are trying to persuade the leader not to harm the arts and laws of the country. 24. A tyrant commands that money be made; and money is made. But that fool does not perceive that this money will be nothing without good faith. 25. Let us urge more students certainly to study the Latin language.

26.	<i>Word</i>	<i>Form</i>	<i>Reason</i>
(4)	studēre	pres. inf.	ind. state.
(5)	studērent	impf. subj.	ind. quest.
(6)	studērent	impf. subj.	jussive noun
(7)	studērent	impf. subj.	ind. quest.
(8)	cognōscāmus	pres. subj.	jussive noun
(9)	parcās	pres. subj.	jussive noun
(10)	eīs	dat.	spec. vbs.
	pācem	acc.	obj. petentibus
(11)	hostibus	dat.	spec. vbs.
(13)	fēcerīs	perf. subj.	ind. quest.
(14)	faciās	pres. subj.	jussive noun
(16)	facerem	impf. subj.	jussive noun
(18)	fiātis	pres. subj.	jussive noun
(22)	lēgibus	abl.	spec. dep. vbs.
(23)	lēgibus	dat.	spec. vbs.
(24)	futūram esse	fut. inf.	ind. state.
(25)	hortēmur	pres. subj.	jussive

KEY FOR CHAPTER 37

- (1) Present indicative and present subjunctive.
(2) It is **ī-**.
- Nom. sg. = **iēns**; nom. pl. = **euntēs**.
- In writing the synopsis of a verb one should follow the sequence of tenses in the indicative and the subjunctive as given above in #2 of the Key of Chapter 34. If this is done there is no need to label the tenses.
Eō 2nd sg.: Indicative—**īs, ībās, ībis, īstī, ierās, ieris**.
Subjunctive—**eās, īrēs, ierīs, īssēs**.
Eō 3d pl.: Indicative—**eunt, ībant, ībunt, ierunt, ierant, ierint**.
Subjunctive—**eant, īrent, ierint, īssent**.
- (1) we went (3) impf. subj., 1 pl.
(2) we are going (4) we shall go

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| (5) plupf. subj., 1 pl. | (15) they had gone |
| (6) pres. subj., 1 pl. | (16) perf. subj., 1 sg. |
| (7) to be about to go | (17) impf. subj., 3 sg. |
| (8) going (acc. sg.) | (18) to have gone |
| (9) they went | (19) going (nom./acc. pl.) |
| (10) they are going | (20) I shall go |
| (11) pres. subj., 3 pl. | (21) he went |
| (12) they will go | (22) we were going |
| (13) I went | (23) plupf. subj., 3 sg. |
| (14) he was going | (24) pres. subj., 3 sg. |

5. (1) **ab, dē, ex** + abl.; ab (ex) eā terrā.
 (2) **in** + abl.: in eā terrā; in eā īnsulā.
 (3) **in** or **ad** + acc.: in (ad) eam terram.
6. (1) Place from which = abl. without a preposition.
 (2) Place where = locative without a preposition.
 (3) Place to which = accusative without a preposition.
7. The locative is the case which expresses the idea of "place where" when **domus** or the name of a city is used. See p. 262.
8. (1) Time when = abl. without a prep.: eōdem diē.
 (2) Time how long = acc. usually without a prep.: multōs diēs.
 (3) Time within which = abl. without a prep.: ūnō diē.
9. Since an impersonal verb lacks the 1st and the 2nd persons sg. and pl., the 1st and the 3rd principal parts are given in the 3rd pers. sg. See p. 264, Vocabulary, s.v. **licet** and n. 1. **Licet tibi ire.**
10. (1) (for) one day (7) in a few days (13) home (= to home)
 (2) in one day (8) on the same night (14) at/from Athens
 (3) on that day (9) (for) many days (15) at home
 (4) from Rome (10) into the ship (16) to Athens
 (5) at Rome (11) in the ship (17) from home
 (6) to Rome (12) out of the ship (18) (for) a few hours

11. In a few hours we shall go to Rome. 12. We are going to the city; they are going home. 13. As we have often admitted, you may not (are not permitted to) go from Rome to Athens (*lit.*, to go is not permitted to you). 14. Why did you leave home (go away from home) so quickly? 15. They are coming to Rome in order to go to Athens with my brother. 16. Do not go away from Rome. 17. When your brother had been killed at Rome, we kept urging you to return to Athens. 18. If he should go into the territory of the enemy at this time, he would perish in a few hours. 19. He said that he did not want to stay in that country of yours many days. 20. You said that you would return home from Athens in one hour. 21. I beg of you to return from the ship to the island in a short time. 22. In those days we were accustomed to be at Athens. 23. If they had injured his friends at Rome, he would have returned to Rome in a very short time. 24. Although my brother stayed at home, I nevertheless went away from home into new lands. 25. The Romans, if they wanted to say something bad, often used to say: "Go to the devil." 26. He is persuading them to study Latin.

27. (11) **hōrīs** = abl.: time within which; **Rōmam** = acc.: place to which; (12) **domum** = acc.: place to which; (13) **Rōmā** = abl.: place from; **Athēnās** = acc.: place to; **īre** = pres. inf.: subject of **licet**; (14) **domō** = abl.: place from; (15) **Rōmam** = acc.: place to; (18) **frātre** = abl.: abl. abs.; (18) **tempore** = abl.: time when; **eat** = pres. subj.: fut. less vivid; **hōrīs** = abl.: time within; (19) **velle** = pres. inf.: ind. state.; **diēs** = acc.: time how long; (20) **domum** = acc.: place to; **Athēnīs** = abl.: place from; **hōrā** = abl.: time within; **reditūrum esse** = fut. inf.: ind. state.; (21) **tempore** = abl. time within; **redeās** = pres. subj.: jussive noun clause; (22) **diēbus** = abl.: time when; **Athēnīs** = locative: place where; (23) **amīcīs** = dat.: spec. verbs; **Rōmae** = locative: place where; **redisset** = plupf. subj.: past contr. to fact condit.; (24) **domī** = locative: place where; **terrās** = acc.: place to; **domō** = abl.: place from; (26) **studeant** = pres. subj.: jussive noun clause.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 38

1. A relative clause with the indicative tells a *fact* about the antecedent.
2. A relative clause with the subjunctive tells a *characteristic* of the antecedent, indicates it to be a person or thing of such a sort. See p. 269.
3. See p. 270.
4. See p. 270–71.
5. My friend who defended the consul was himself a very famous man. 6. But there was no one who would defend that base fellow. 7. What is there which men fear more than a tyrant? 8. Who is there who would hesitate between liberty and the command of a tyrant? 9. At ancient Rome there were those who loved money more than the state. 10. Let that evil man depart from his country—he who has endured the hatred of all good citizens. 11. Catiline, who had made such a great plot against the state, was driven from the city by Cicero. 12. What life can be pleasant for that leader as he goes off into exile? 13. Who is there who would be able to bear such pain? 14. If a person is not agreeable and good, he will not live a truly happy life, it seems to me. 15. They will not trust a consul who would do base deeds. 16. Do not trust a man who is harsh to his friends. 17. Cicero was a consul who would place the state before his own safety. 18. They knew why we wanted to follow such a brave consul. 19. I know nothing which could be easier for me. 20. I am seeking a leader whom all men would praise. 21. They were going to Rome to ask for freedom. 22. The Romans, who had captured ten Greek republics with their own armies, were themselves—amazing to say—taken captive by the Greek arts! 23. For the ancient men there was nothing which was better than courage and wisdom. 24. Nothing is to be feared which cannot injure the soul.
25. The **quī . . . dēfendit** states a fact about the **amīcus**; it does not describe his character. The subjunctive clause in #6 tells what kind of person the imagined **nēmō** might be.
26. Syntax: (7) **metuat** = pres. subj.: characteristic; (8) **dubitet** = pres. subj.: characteristic; (9) **Rōmae** = loc.: place where; **amārent** = impf. subj.: characteristic; (10) **abeat** = pres. subj.: jussive; **passus est** = perf. indic. rel. cl. of fact; (11) **fēc-
cerat** = plupf. ind.: rel. cl. of fact; (12) **ducī** = dat.: reference; **potest** = pres. ind.: main verb in a direct question; (13) **possit** = pres. subj.: characteristic; (14) **erit** = fut. indic.: simple fut. condit.; **mihi** = dat.: ref.; (15) **cōsulī** = dat.: spec. vbs.;

(16) *amīcīs* = dat.: dat. w. adjs.; (17) *salūtī* = dat.: compound vb.; *antepōneret* = impf. subj.: characteristic; (18) *vellēmus* = impf. subj.: ind. quest.; (19) *mihi* = dat.: ref.; *possit* = pres. subj.: characteristic; (21) *rogātum* = acc. supine: purpose; (22) *cēperant* = plupf. ind.: rel. cl. of fact; *dictū* = abl. supine: respect; (23) *virīs* = dat.: ref.; (24) *animō* = dat.: spec. vbs.; *possit* = pres. subj.: characteristic.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 39

1. (1) See p. 276 s.v. "The Gerund."
 (2) See p. 276.
 (3) See p. 276–77.
 (4) In its four cases it is used as a noun is used. See p. 277.
 (5) The infinitive; see p. 277.
2. (1) See p. 276 s.v. "The Gerundive."
 (2) The gerundive is an adjective.
 (3) As an adjective it modifies a noun or pronoun and agrees with that noun or pronoun in gender, number, and case.
 (4) The gerundive (e.g., *laudandus*, **-a**, **-um**) is declined as *magnus*, **-a**, **-um** is. See p. 276.
 (5) Since the gerund has only the endings **-ī**, **-ō**, **-um**, **-ō**, any feminine or any plural ending on an **-nd-** base is bound to indicate a gerundive; and also, if an **-nd-** form agrees with a noun as an adjectival modifier, it must be a gerundive.
3. (1) The Latin gerund is normally translated by the English gerund in *-ing* with any attending noun constructions or adverbial modifiers.
 (2) The gerundive is to be translated by the English as if it were a gerund with an object and any adverbial modifiers. In other words, both the gerund and the gerundive are to be translated in the same way. See p. 277–78.
 (3) (A) We learn by reading with care.
 (B) We learn by reading books with care.
4. We learn by experiencing. 5. They came to learn (for learning). 6. He gave (devoted) himself to learning. 7. They came to your school to learn (for the sake of learning). 8. The boy went to the school desirous of learning (eager to learn). 9. The fear of dying kept terrifying him. 10. The hope of living after death encourages many people. 11. By thinking (= by using his head) he overcame them.
12. He devoted (gave) himself—(1) to seeking glory. (2) to waging war. (3) to making money. (4) to getting power. (5) to destroying states. (6) to following this leader. (7) to saving his country. (8) to seeking peace. (9) to attacking wrongs. (10) to writing books. (11) to reading books. (12) to learning philosophy. (13) to learning Latin literature. (14) to understanding the truth. (15) to seeking wisdom. (16) to helping human beings.
13. He came to Rome—(1) to undertake this work. (2) to see the Roman games. (3) to see the old buildings. (4) to seek peace. (5) for the sake of undertaking this work (to undertake . . .). (6) for the sake of learning philosophy (to learn . . .). (7) for the sake of reading new books (to read . . .). (8) to see the games.
14. He wrote a book—(1) about enduring pain. (2) about overcoming fear. (3) about

- living a good life. (4) about managing the state. (5) about waging war. (6) about defending liberty. (7) about conquering the enemy. (8) about giving gifts.
15. We become wiser—(1) by reading Latin literature. (2) by learning philosophy. (3) by experiencing life. (4) by conquering fear. (5) by following truth.
16. We help our very selves—(1) by always reading good books. (2) by freeing unfortunate men from fear. (3) by offering aid. (4) by helping others.
17. He consumed much time—(1) in thinking (speaking, running). (2) in doing these tasks. (3) in finding the way. (4) in preparing an army. (5) in preparing supplies (troops).
18. He had time for writing this book only.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 40

1. See p. 284–85.
2. Positive fear clauses are introduced by *nē*; negative clauses by *ut*.
3. The noun must itself be modified by an adjective.
4. I greatly fear that the general may not send us enough help. 5. She was a woman of the greatest courage and loyalty and in fact very like her mother. 6. Do not fear that all the men and women of great courage will depart from Rome. 7. This is, indeed, easy to say but difficult to do! 8. They came home to please their parents. 9. You do wish to hear something good, don't you? 10. Do you wish to have much wisdom? Study Latin! 11. He ordered the three soldiers to go to Rome to seek peace. 12. You do not hesitate to say this, do you, my friend? 13. You urge me to be of great courage and to have hope of safety, but I fear that I may be too weak. 14. For my part I place wealth ahead of wisdom. For I do not think that human beings can find a happy life without a great deal of money. 15. However, very many rich men experience much fear. 16. Poor men are often happier and have less fear. 17. Money itself is not bad; but the things of the mind and the soul offer more help for living happily. 18. Nine of the leaders urged us to supply more aid. 19. When five of the guards had been killed, my father fled into that free land with two of his sons and with a large number of friends. 20. Never will he have enough leisure; yet some leisure is better than nothing. 21. In our times we all have too much of fear and too little of hope. 22. Great faith and courage must be found by all men.

Appendix

SOME ETYMOLOGICAL AIDS

Two Rules of Phonetic Change

Prefixes

Suffixes

SUPPLEMENTARY SYNTAX

SUMMARY OF FORMS

SOME ETYMOLOGICAL AIDS

TWO RULES OF PHONETIC CHANGE

“Phonetic” derives from Greek **phōnē**, *sound, voice, speech* (cp. phonograph, phonology, symphony, telephone). Consequently, phonetic change means a change which occurs in original speech sounds for one reason or another. Of the many instances of this in Latin, the following two rules of phonetic change are probably the most important ones for the beginner.

A. *Vowel weakening* usually occurs in the medial syllables of compounds according to the following outline.

1. **ā** > **ī** before a single consonant and before **ng**.
- ā** > **ē** before two consonants.

cāpiō, cāptum: ac-cīpiō, ac-cēptum
 fāciō, fāctum: per-fīciō, per-fēctum
 fācilis: dif-fīcilis
 cādō, cāsum: oc-cīdō, oc-cāsum (Note that long *ā* does not change.)
 tāngō, tāctum: con-tīngō, con-tāctum

2. *ē* > *ī* before a single consonant.

tēneō: con-tīneō (*but* contentum)
 prēmō: com-prīmō (*but* compressum)

3. *ae* > *ī*.

quaerō, quaesītum: re-quirō, re-quīsītum
 laedō, laesum: col-līdō, col-līsūm
 caedō, caesum: in-cīdō, in-cīsūm; oc-cīdō, oc-cīsūm
 aestimō: ex-īstimō

4. *au* > *ū*.

claudō: in-clūdō, ex-clūdō
 causor: ex-cūsō

B. *Assimilation* of the final consonant of a prefix to the initial consonant of the base word commonly occurs.

ad-capiō > ac-cipiō	in-mortālis > im-mortālis
dis-facilis > dif-ficilis	in-ruō > ir-ruō

PREFIXES

Listed here are important prefixes helpful in the analysis of both Latin words and English derivatives. The Latin prefixes have passed over into English unchanged except where indicated. Incidentally, most Latin prefixes were also used by the Romans as prepositions; but the few labeled "inseparable" appear only as prefixes.

ā-, *ab-*, *away, from.*

ā-vocō, *call away* (avocation)
ā-vertō, *turn away* (avert)
ā-mittō, *send away, let go, lose*
ab-sum, *be away* (absent)
ab-eō, *go away*
ab-dūcō, *lead away* (abduct)

ad- (by assimilation *ac-*, *af-*, *ag-*, *al-*, *an-*, *ap-*, *ar-*, *as-*, *at-*), *to, towards, in addition.*

ad-vocō, *call to, call* (advocate)
ad-dūcō, *lead to* (adduce)
ad-mittō, *send to, admit*
ac-cēdō, *go to, approach* (accede)
ac-cipiō (*ad-capiō*), *get, accept*
ap-pōnō, *put to* (apposition)
as-sentiō, *feel towards, agree to, assent*

ante-, *before.*

ante-pōnō, *put before, prefer*
ante-cēdō, *go before, precede, excel* (antecedent)

circum-, *around*.

circum-dūcō, *lead around*

circum-veniō, *come around, surround* (circumvent)

circum-stō, *stand around* (circumstance)

com- (**com** = **cum**; also appears as **con-**, **cor-**, **col-**, **co-**), *with, together*; intensive force: *completely, very, greatly, deeply, forcibly*.

con-vocō, *call together* (convoke)

con-dūcō, *lead together* (conduct)

com-pōnō, *put together, compose* (component)

com-mittō, *send together, bring together, entrust* (commit)

cōn-sentiō, *feel together, agree* (consent)

cō-gō (**co-agō**), *drive together, force* (cogent)

com-pleō, *fill completely, fill up* (complete)

cōn-servō, *save completely, preserve* (conserve)

con-cēdō, *go completely, go away, yield, grant* (concede)

con-tendō, *stretch greatly, strive, hurry* (contend)

col-laudō, *praise greatly or highly*

cor-rōborō, *strengthen greatly* (corroborate)

contrā-, *against, opposite*. (Not common as a prefix in Latin but fairly common in English, especially in the form *counter-*.)

contrā-dicō, *speak against or opposite, oppose, rely* (contradict)

contrā-veniō (late Latin), *come against, oppose* (contravene)

dē-, *down, away, aside, out, off*; intensive force: *utterly, completely*.

dē-dūcō, *lead down or away, drawn down* (deduce, deduct)

dē-pōnō, *put aside, lay aside, entrust* (deponent, deposit)

dē-mittō, *send down, throw down, let fall* (demit)

dē-veniō, *come from, arrive at, reach*

dē-vocō, *call away or off*

dē-cēdō, *go away* (decease)

dē-mēns, *out of one's mind, demented*

dē-certō, *fight it out, fight to the finish*

dis- (**dif-**, **dī-**; inseparable), *apart, away, not*.

dis-pōnō, *put apart in different places, arrange* (disposition)

dis-cēdō, *go away, depart*

dī-mittō, *send away in different directions, let go* (dismiss)

dif-ferō, **dī-lātus**, *bear apart, scatter, put off, differ* (different, dilate)

dis-similis, *not similar, unlike, dissimilar*

dif-ficilis, *not easy, difficult*

ē-, ex- (**ef-**), *from out, forth*; intensive force: *exceedingly, up*.

ē-dūcō, *lead out* (educate)

ex-cēdō, *go out, from, away; go beyond* (exceed)

ē-mittō, *send out, forth* (emit)

ē-vocō, *call out, forth* (evoke)

ex-pōnō, *put out, set forth, explain* (exponent, exposition)

ē-veniō, *come out, forth; turn out, happen* (event)

ef-ficiō, (ex-faciō), *produce, accomplish, perform* (efficient, effect)

ex-pleō, *fill up, complete*

ex-asperō, *roughen exceedingly, irritate* (exasperate)

in- (im-, il-, ir-; sometimes *en-* or *em-* in Eng.), *in, into, on, upon, against.* (Also see *in-* below.)

in-vocō, *call in, call upon* (invoke)

in-dūcō, *lead in or into, introduce, impel* (induce)

im-mittō, *send into, send against, let loose against*

im-pōnō, *put in, lay upon* (impose)

in-veniō, *come upon, find* (invent)

in-clūdō, *shut in, shut* (include, enclose)

in-vādō, *go into, move against* (invade)

ir-ruō, *rush into or upon*

il-līdō (in-laedō), *strike or dash against*

in-genium (in + gen-, from **gignō,** *beget, give birth to*), *inborn nature, natural capacity, talent, character* (engine, ingenious)

in- (im-, il-, ir-; inseparable prefix; cognate with Eng. *un-*), *not, un-*.

in-certus, *not certain, uncertain*

in-iustus, *not just, unjust* (cp. *injustice*)

in-finitus, *not limited, unlimited* (infinite)

in-firmus, *not firm, weak* (infirm)

im-mortalis, *not mortal, deathless* (immortal)

il-litteratus, *unlearned, ignorant* (illiterate)

ir-revocabilis, *not-call-back-able, unalterable* (irrevocable)

inter-, *between, among.*

inter-veniō, *come between; interrupt* (intervene)

inter-cēdō, *go between* (intercede)

inter-mittō, *place between, leave off* (intermittent)

inter-pōnō, *put between, bring forward* (interpose)

inter-rēgnum, *period between two reigns* (interregnum)

intrō-, *within, in.* (Also used as adv.)

intrō-dūcō, *lead in* (introduce)

intrō-mittō, *send in*

intrō-spiciō, *look within* (introspect)

ob- (oc-, of-, op-), *towards, to, opposite, against, over.*

ob-dūcō, *lead toward or against*

ob-veniō, *come opposite, meet*

oc-currō, *run to meet, meet* (occur)

of-ferō, *bear towards, furnish* (offer)

op-pōnō, *put opposite, set against, oppose* (opposition)

per- (pel-), *through; intensive force: thoroughly, very, completely.*

per-dūcō, *lead through or along*

per-veniō, *come through to, arrive at, reach*

per-ferō, *carry through, bear thoroughly, endure*

per-mittō, *let go through, entrust, allow* (permit)

per-ficiō (-faciō), *do thoroughly, accomplish, finish* (perfect)
per-facilis, *very easy*
per-paucus, *very small*
pel-lūcidus, *shining through, transparent*

post-, *after.*

post-pōnō, *put after, esteem less, disregard* (postpone)
post-ferō, *put after, esteem less, disregard* (postpone)
post-scribō, *write after, add* (postscript)

prae-, *before, in front, forth; intensive force: very.* (In Eng. also spelled *pre-*.)

prae-moneō, *warn before, forewarn* (premonition)
prae-cēdō, *go before, excel* (precede)
prae-pōnō, *put before, place in command of, prefer* (preposition)
prae-mittō, *send before or forth, set before* (premise)
prae-scribō, *write before, order* (prescribe, prescription)
prae-ferō, *bear before, set before, prefer*
prae-clārus, *very noble, very famous, excellent*

prō-, *before, in front, forth, out, away, instead of, for.* (Sometimes *pur-* in Eng.)

prō-vocō, *call forth or out, challenge, excite* (provoke)
prō-vidēō, *see ahead, foresee, care for* (provide, provision, purvey)
prō-dūcō, *lead before or out, bring forth, prolong* (produce)
prō-cēdō, *go forward, advance* (proceed)
prō-pōnō, *put in front, set forth, declare* (proponent, purpose)
prō-mittō, *send forth, assure* (promise)
prō-cōnsul, *one who served in place of a consul* (proconsul)

re- (**red-**; inseparable), *back again.*

re-vocō, *call back, recall* (revoke)
re-dūcō, *lead back* (reduce)
re-cēdō, *go back, retire* (recede)
re-pōnō, *put back, replace, restore* (repository)
re-mittō, *send back, give up* (remit)
red-dō, *give back, restore, return*
red-eō, *go back, return*

sē- (inseparable), *apart, aside, without.*

sē-dūcō, *lead aside, separate* (seduce)
sē-cēdō, *go apart, withdraw, retire* (secede)
sē-pōnō, *put aside, select*
sē-moveō, *move aside, separate*
sē-cūrus, *without care, untroubled, serene* (secure)

sub- (**suc-**, **suf-**, **sug-**, **sup-**, **sur-**, **sus-**), *under, up (from beneath); rather, somewhat, a little, secretly.*

sub-dūcō, *draw from under, withdraw secretly*
suc-cēdō, *go under, go up, approach, prosper* (succeed)
sup-pōnō, *put under, substitute* (supposition, supposititious)
sub-veniō, *come under, help* (subvene, subvention)
sus-tineō (-teneō), *hold up, support, endure* (sustain)

super- (also *sur-* in Eng.), *over, above*.

super-pōnō, *place over or upon, set over* (superposition)

super-sedeō, *sit above or upon, be superior to, be above, refrain from, desist* (supersecede)

super-sum, *be over and above, be left, survive*

superō, *be above, surpass, conquer* (insuperable)

superbus, *above others, haughty, proud* (superb)

super-vivō, *survive*

super-ficiēs, *surface*

trāns- (*trā-*), *across, over*.

trāns-mittō, *send across, cross over* (transmit)

trā-ducō, *lead across* (traduce)

trāns-eō, *go across* (transition)

trā-dō, *give over, surrender, hand down* (tradition)

SUFFIXES

Of the very numerous Latin suffixes only a few of the more important ones are listed here with their English equivalents.

1. Suffix denoting the *agent*, the *doer*, the *one who* (**-tor** or **-sor**, m.; **-trīx**, f.).

-tor or **-sor** (cp. Eng. *-er*)

victor (**vincō**, **victum**, *conquer*), *conqueror, victor*

scrīptor (**scrībō**, **scrīptum**, *write*), *writer*

lēctor, **lēctrīx** (**legō**, **lēctum**, *read*), *reader*

ōrātor (**ōrō**, **ōrātum**, [*speak*], *plead*), *speaker, orator*

reperitor, **repertrīx** (**reperiō**, **reperitum**, *discover*), *discoverer*

auctor (**augeō**, **auctum**, *increase*), *increaser, author*

liberātor (**liberō**, **liberātum**, *free*), *liberator*

tōnsor (**tondeō**, **tōnsum**, *shave, clip*), *barber*

amātor (**amō**, **amātum**, *love*), *lover*

These nouns have the same base as that of the perfect participle.

2. Suffixes denoting *action* or *result of action* (**-or**, **-ium**, **-tiō**).

-or (Eng. *-or*)

amor (**amō**, *love*), *love, amour*

timor (**timeō**, *fear*), *fear*

dolor (**doleō**, *suffer pain*), *pain, suffering, grief*

error (**errō**, *go astray, err*), *error*

terror (**terreō**, *frighten, terrify*), *fright, terror*

-ium (Eng. *-y*; *-ce* when **-ium** is preceded by **c** or **t**)

studium (**studeō**, *be eager*), *eagerness, study*

colloquium (**colloquor**, *talk with*), *talk, conference, colloquy*

imperium (**imperō**, *command*), *command, power*

odium (**odī**, *hate*), *hate*

aedificium (**aedificō**, *build*) *building, edifice*

silentium (**silēns**, **silentis**, *silent*), *silence*

-tiō, -tiōnis, or -siō, -siōnis (Eng. *-tion* or *-sion*)

admonitiō (**admoneō, admonitum**, *admonish*) *admonition*

ratio (**reor, ratum**, *reckon, think*), *reckoning, plan, reason (ration)*

orātiō (**orō, orātum**, [*speak*], *plead*), *oration*

nātiō (**nāscor, nātum**, *be born*), *birth, nation*

occāsiō (**occidō, occāsum**, *fall down*) *a befalling, occasion, opportunity*

3. Suffixes denoting *quality, state, or condition* (**-ia, -tia, -tās, -tūdō**).

-ia (Eng. *-y*)

miseria (**miser, miserable**), *misery*

īnsānia (**īnsānus, insane**), *insanity*

victōria (**victor, victor**), *victory*

invidia (**invidus, envious**), *envy*

iniūria (**iniūrus, wrong, unjust**), *injustice, injury*

-tia (Eng. *-ce*)

amīcitia (**amīcus, friendly**), *friendship*

sapientia (**sapiēns, wise**), *wisdom, sapience*

scientia (**sciēns, knowing**), *knowledge, science*

iūstitia (**iūstus, just**), *justice*

dīligentia (**dīligēns, diligent**), *diligence*

-tās, -tātis (Eng. *-ty*)

libertās (**liber, free**), *freedom, liberty*

vērītās (**vērus, true**), *truth, verity*

paupertās (**pauper, poor**), *poverty*

cupiditās (**cupidus, desirous, greedy**), *greed, cupidity*

gravitās (**gravis, heavy, grave**), *weight, seriousness, gravity*

celeritās (**celer, swift**), *swiftness, celerity*

-tūdō, -tūdinis (Eng. *-tude*)

multitūdō (**multus, much, many**), *multitude*

magnitūdō (**magnus, large, great**), *magnitude*

pulchritūdō (**pulcher, beautiful**), *beauty, pulchritude*

sōlitūdō (**sōlus, alone**), *solitude*

sollicitūdō (**sollicitus, agitated, solicitous**), *solicitude*

4. Adjectival suffix meaning *full of* (**-ōsus**).

-ōsus, -ōsa, -ōsum (Eng. *-ous* or *-ose*)

studiōsus (**studium, zeal**), *full of zeal, eager (studious)*

imperiōsus (**imperium, command**), *full of command, imperious*

periculōsus (**periculum, danger**), *full of danger, dangerous*

vitiōsus (**vitium, fault, vice**), *faulty, vicious*

verbōsus (**verbum, word**), *wordy, verbose*

5. Adjectival suffix meaning *able to be, worthy to be; sometimes able to* (**-bilis**).

-bilis, -bile (Eng. *-able, -ible, -ble*)

laudābilis (**laudō, praise**), *worthy to be praised, laudable*

amābilis (**amō, love**), *worthy to be loved, lovable, amiable*

incrēdibilis (**crēdō**, *believe*), *not worthy to be believed, incredible*
mōbilis (**moveō**, *move*), *able to be moved, movable, mobile*
inexpugnābilis (**expugnō**, *conquer*), *unconquerable*
stabilis (**stō**, *stand*), *able to stand, stable*

6. Adjectival suffixes denoting *pertaining to* (**-ālis** or **-āris**, **-ānus**, **-icus**).

-ālis, **-āle**, or **-āris**, **-āre** (Eng. *-al* or *-ar*)

mortālis (**mors**, *death*), *pertaining to death, mortal*
vītālis (**vīta**, *life*), *pertaining to life, vital*
fātālis (**fātum**, *fate*), *fatal*
populāris (**populus**, *people*), *popular*
vulgāris (**vulgus**, *the common people*), *common, vulgar*

-ānus, **-āna**, **-ānum** (Eng. *-an* or *-ane*)

Rōmānus (**Rōma**, *Rome*), *pertaining to Rome, Roman*
hūmānus (**homō**, *man*), *pertaining to man, human, humane*
urbānus (**urbs**, *city*), *urban, urbane*
mundānus (**mundus**, *world*), *worldly, mundane*

-icus, **-ica**, **-icum** (Eng. *-ic*)

domesticus (**domus**, *house*), *pertaining to the house, domestic*
pūblicus (**populus**, *people*), *pertaining to the people, public*
rūsticus (**rūs**, *country*), *rustic*
cīvicus (**cīvis**, *citizen*), *civic*
classicus (**classis**, *class*), *pertaining to the classes, of the highest class; classic*

SUPPLEMENTARY SYNTAX

The following constructions are listed for the benefit of students who plan to continue their study of Latin beyond the introductory year. A number of these constructions have already been encountered here and there in the 40 formal chapters of this book. However, although often these can be easily translated without benefit of syntactical labels, it seems wise to catalog them here along with the more difficult items.

GENITIVE OF MATERIAL

The genitive may indicate the material of which a thing is made.

pōculum auri, *a goblet of gold*

Numerus **hostium** **crēscit**, *the number of the enemy is increasing.*

Mōns aquae **secūtus** est et tempestās trēs nāvēs cīnxit aggere **harēnae**, *a mountain of water followed and the storm surrounded three ships with a mound of sand.*

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

The objective genitive depends on a noun of verbal meaning and is used as the object of the verbal idea. It is sometimes translated by *for*.

amor **laudis**, *love of praise* (= amat laudem, *he loves praise*.)
 cupiditās **pecūniae**, *greed for money* (= cupit pecūniam, *he longs for money*.)
 metus **mortis**, *fear of death* (= metuit mortem, *he fears death*.)
 spēs **salūtis**, *hope for safety* (= spērat salūtem, *he hopes for safety*.)
 Fēmina erat dux **factī**, *a woman was the leader of the enterprise* (= dūxit factum.)
 laudātor **temporis** **actī**, *a praiser of the past* (= laudat tempus āctum.)

DATIVE OF PURPOSE

The dative may express the purpose for which a person or thing serves. A dative of reference (Ch. 38) often appears in conjunction with the dative of purpose, and this combination is called the “double dative” construction.

Petitiō mea **tibi** (dat. of ref.) summae **cūrae** (dat. of purp.) est, *my candidacy is (for) the greatest concern to you*.
 Ea rēs **mihi** (ref.) summae **voluptātī** (purp.) erat, *that matter was for the greatest pleasure to me = gave me the greatest pleasure*.
 Illī **nōbīs** (ref.) **auxiliō** (purp.) vēnērunt, *they came as an aid to us*.
 Hōs librōs **dōnō** (purp.) mīsit, *he sent these books as a gift*.
 Hoc mē iuvat et **mihi** (ref.) **mellī** (purp.) est, *this gratifies me and is (as) honey to me*.
 Optant locum **tēctō** (purp.), *they desire a place for a roof (building)*.

DATIVE OF POSSESSION

The dative can be used with **sum** to express the idea of possession.

Liber est **mihi**, *a book is to me = I have a book*.
 (Contrast: liber est **meus**, *the book is mine*.)
 Illī maior turba clientium est, *that man has a greater throng of retainers*.
 Sunt **tibi** animus et mōrēs, *you have a soul and character*.
 Haec **eīs** semper erunt, *they will always have these things*.
 Prudentia est illī **puellae**, *that girl has prudence*.
 Ō virgō, nōn **tibi** est vultus mortālis, *O maiden, you do not have the face of a mortal*.
 Sī umquam **mihi** fīlius erit . . . , *if I ever have a son . . .*

ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

The ablative may be used to tell in what specific respect a verb or an adjective holds true.

Hī omnēs **linguā, institūtis, lēgibus** inter sē differunt, *these all differ from one another in language, customs, and laws*.
 Illī **virtūte** omnibus (dat.) praestābant, *those men used to excel all in courage*.
 Id genus erat intractābile **bellō**, *that race was unmanageable in war*.
 Quis est praestantior aut **nōbilitāte** aut **probitāte** aut **studiō** optimārum artium?
Who is more outstanding in nobility or integrity or the pursuit of the finest arts?
 Ager bene cultus est ūber **ūsū** et ōrnātus **speciē**, *a field well cultivated is rich in usefulness and beautiful in appearance*.

Asia omnibus terrīs (dat.) antecellit ūbertāte agrōrum et varietāte fructuum et multitudine eārum quae exportantur, *Asia excels all lands in richness of fields and variety of fruits and large number of those things which are exported.*

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

The ablative can be used to indicate a cause or reason.

Miser **timōre** dēlirat, *the wretched man is insane with fear.*

Corpora eōrum **metū** dēbilia sunt, *their bodies are weak from fear.*

Aper **dentibus** timētur, *the boar is feared because of his teeth.*

Nihil arduum mortālibus est; caelum ipsum **stultitiā** petimus, *nothing is (too) arduous for mortals; we seek the sky itself in our folly.*

Odiō tyrannī in exsilium fūgit, *because of his hatred of the tyrant he fled into exile.*

Bonī **amōre** virtūtis peccāre ōdērunt, *good men because of their love of virtue hate to sin.*

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

With comparatives and adverbs suggesting comparison the ablative can be used to indicate the degree of difference in the comparison.

Tantō melius, *the better by so much = so much the better.*

Senex nōn facit ea quae iuvenis, at **multō** maiōra et meliōra facit, *an old man does not do the things which a young man does, but he does much greater and better things (greater by much).*

Multō ācrius iam vigilābō, *I shall now watch much more keenly.*

Rōmam **paucis** post **diēbus** vēnistī, *you came to Rome a few days afterwards (afterwards by a few days).*

Aberat ab eā urbe **tribus milibus** passuum, *he was three miles from that city (was away by three miles).*

Bonae Athēnae **paulō** plūs artis adiēcērunt, *good Athens added a little more skill (more by a little).*

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

In indirect discourse, subordinate clauses regularly have verbs in the subjunctive mood, even though they had the indicative in the direct form.

- { Lēgit librōs quōs mīserās, *he read the books which you had sent.*
- { Dīxit sē lēgisse librōs quōs mīssissēs, *he said that he had read the books which you had sent.*
- { Eī malī quī in urbe manent īnfīrmī erunt sine duce, *those evil men who remain in the city will be weak without their leader.*
- { Putō eōs malōs quī in urbe manēant īnfīrmōs futūrōs esse sine duce, *I think that those evil men who remain in the city will be weak without their leader.*
- { Sī id crēdet, errābit. *If he believes this, he will be wrong.*
- { Dīcō sī id crēdat eum errātūrum esse. *I say that if he believes this he will be wrong.*

OBJECTIVE INFINITIVE

The complementary infinitive has no subject accusative (see Ch. 6). However, when an infinitive with subject accusative is used as the object of a verb, it is called an objective infinitive.

Volunt venīre, *they wish to come.* (compl. inf.)

Iussit eōs venīre, *he ordered them to come.* (obj. inf.)

Nōn possum loquī, *I cannot speak.* (compl. inf.)

Nōn patitur mē loquī, *he does not permit me to speak.* (obj. inf.)

Nōn audet īre, *he does not dare to go.* (compl. inf.)

Coēgērunt eum īre, *they forced him to go.* (obj. inf.)

SUMMARY OF FORMS

NOUNS—DECLENSIONS

First	Second				Third	
porta, -ae f., <i>gate</i>	amīcus, -ī m., <i>friend</i>	puer, -ī m., <i>boy</i>	ager, -grī m., <i>field</i>	dōnum, -ī n., <i>gift</i>	rēx, rēgis m., <i>king</i>	corpus, -oris n., <i>body</i>
Sg.						
N. port-a	amīc-us ¹	puer	ager	dōn-um	rēx	corpus
G. port-ae	amīc-ī	puer-ī	agr-ī	dōn-ī	rēg-is	corpor-is
D. port-ae	amīc-ō	puer-ō	agr-ō	dōn-ō	rēg-ī	corpor-ī
A. port-am	amīc-um	puer-um	agr-um	dōn-um	rēg-em	corpus
Ab. port-ā	amīc-ō	puer-ō	agr-ō	dōn-ō	rēg-e	corpor-e
Pl.						
N. port-ae	amīc-ī	puer-ī	agr-ī	dōn-a	rēg-ēs	corpor-a
G. port-ārum	amīc-ōrum	puer-ōrum	agr-ōrum	dōn-ōrum	rēg-um	corpor-um
D. port-īs	amīc-īs	puer-īs	agr-īs	dōn-īs	rēg-ibus	corpor-ibus
A. port-ās	amīc-ōs	puer-ōs	agr-ōs	dōn-a	rēg-ēs	corpor-a
Ab. port-īs	amīc-īs	puer-īs	agr-īs	dōn-īs	rēg-ibus	corpor-ibus

Third (I-Stems)				Fourth	Fifth
cīvis, -is m., <i>citizen</i>	urbs, -is f., <i>city</i>	mare, -is n., <i>sea</i>	frūctus, -ūs m., <i>fruit</i>	cornū, -ūs n., <i>horn</i>	diēs, -ēī m., <i>day</i>
Sg.					
N. cīv-is	urb-s	mar-e	frūct-us	corn-ū	di-ēs
G. cīv-is	urb-is	mar-is	frūct-ūs	corn-ūs	di-ēī
D. cīv-ī	urb-ī	mar-ī	frūct-uī	corn-ū	di-ēī
A. cīv-em	urb-em	mar-e	frūct-um	corn-ū	di-em
Ab. cīv-e	urb-e	mar-ī	frūct-ū	corn-ū	di-ē
Pl.					
N. cīv-ēs	urb-ēs	mar-ia	frūct-ūs	corn-ua	di-ēs
G. cīv-ium	urb-ium	mar-ium	frūct-uum	corn-uum	di-ērum
D. cīv-ibus	urb-ibus	mar-ibus	frūct-ibus	corn-ibus	di-ēbus
A. cīv-ēs	urb-ēs	mar-ia	frūct-ūs	corn-ua	di-ēs
Ab. cīv-ibus	urb-ibus	mar-ibus	frūct-ibus	corn-ibus	di-ēbus

Vīs is irregular: Sg., N., *vīs*, G. (*vīs*), D. (*vī*), A. *vim*. Ab. *vī*; Pl., N. *vīrēs*, G. *vīrium*, D. *vīribus*, A. *vīrēs*, Ab. *vīribus*.

¹ The vocative singular of nouns like **amīcus** and of masculine adjectives like **magnus** ends in **-e**. The vocative singular of **fīlius** and of names in **-ius** ends in a single **-ī** (**fīlī**, **Vergilī**); the vocative singular of mascu-

line adjectives in **-ius** ends in **-ie** (**ēgregius**; **ēgregie**). Otherwise, the vocative has the same form as the nominative in all declensions.

ADJECTIVES—DECLENSIONS

First and Second Declensions							
Adj. in -us, -a, -um		Adj. in -er, -era, -erum; -er, -ra, -rum					
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.		
Singular			Singular ²				
N. magnus	magna	magnum	līber	lībera	līberum		
G. magnī	magnae	magnī	līberī	līberae	līberī		
D. magnō	magnae	magnō	līberō	līberae	līberō		
A. magnum	magnam	magnum	līberum	līberam	līberum		
Ab. magnō	magnā	magnō	līberō	līberā	līberō		
Plural			Singular ²				
N. magnī	magnae	magna	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum		
G. magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī		
D. magnīs	magnīs	magnīs	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō		
A. magnōs	magnās	magna	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum		
Ab. magnīs	magnīs	magnīs	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō		
Third Declension							
Two endings		Three endings		One Ending		Comparatives ⁵	
fortis, forte brave		ācer, ācris, ācre keen, severe		potēns ³ powerful		fortior, fortius braver	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Sg.							
N. fortis	forte	ācer ācris	ācre	potēns	potēns	fortior	fortius
G. fortis		ācris		potentis		fortiōris	
D. fortī		ācrī		potentī		fortiōrī	
A. fortem	forte	ācrem	ācre	potentem	potēns	fortiōrem	fortius
Ab. fortī		ācrī		potentī		fortiōre	
Pl.							
N. fortēs	fortia	ācrēs	ācria	potentēs	potentia	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
G. fortium		ācrium		potentium		fortiōrum	
D. fortibus		ācribus		potentibus		fortiōribus	
A. fortēs ⁴	fortia	ācres ⁴	ācria	potentēs ⁴	potentia	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Ab. fortibus		ācribus		potentibus		fortiōribus	

² The plural follows the pattern of the singular except that it has the plural endings.

³ Present participles follow the declension of **potēns** except that they have **-e** in the ablative singular

when used as genuine participles.

⁴ For **-īs** (acc. pl.) see Ch. 16.

⁵ For irregular **plūs** see Ch. 27.

PRONOUNS

Demonstrative

hic, <i>this</i>			ille, <i>that</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sg.					
N. hic	haec	hoc	ille	illa	illud
G. huius	huius	huius	illius	illius	illius
D. huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī
A. hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
Ab. hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō
Pl.					
N. hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
G. hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D. hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
A. hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Ab. hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

Relative quī, <i>who, which</i>			Interrogative ⁶ quis, <i>who?</i>		Intensive ipse, <i>himself</i> , etc.		
M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sg.							
N. quī	quae	quod	quis	quid	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
G. cuius	cuius	cuius	cuius	cuius	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
D. cui	cui	cui	cui	cui	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
A. quem	quam	quod	quem	quid	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Ab. quō	quā	quō	quō	quō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
Pl.							
N. quī	quae	quae	(Plural is same as that of relative.)		ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G. quōrum	quārum	quōrum			ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D. quibus	quibus	quibus			ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
A. quōs	quās	quae			ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab. quibus	quibus	quibus			ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

⁶The interrogative adjective *quī? quae? quod?* meaning *what? which? what kind of?* has the same declension as that of the relative pronoun.

PRONOUNS

Demonstrative

*is, this, that, he, she, it**idem, the same*

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sg.					
N. is	ea	id	īdem	eadem	idem
G. eius	eius	eius	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
D. eī	eī	eī	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
A. eum	eam	id	eundem	eandem	idem
Ab. eō	eā	eō	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
Pl.					
N. eī, īī	eae	ea	eīdem, īdem	caedem	eadem
G. eōrum	eārum	eōrum	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D. eīs, īīs	eīs, īīs	eīs, īīs	eīsdem ⁷	eīsdem	eīsdem
A. eōs	eās	ea	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Ab. eīs	eīs	eīs	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

Irregular Adjectives⁸*sōlus, alone, only*Personal⁹Reflexive⁹*suī, himself, herself, itself*

M.	F.	N.	ego, I	tū, you	
Sg.					
N. sōlus	sōla	sōlum	ego	tū	—
G. sōlūs	sōlūs	sōlūs	meī	tuī	suī ¹⁰
D. sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	mihi	tibi	sibi
A. sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	mē	tē	sē ¹¹
Ab. sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	mē	tē	sē ¹¹
Pl.					
N. sōlī	sōlae	sōla	nōs	vōs	—
G. sōlōrum	sōlārum	sōlōrum	{ nostrum nostrī	{ vestrum vestrī	suī
D. sōlīs	sōlīs	sōlīs	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
A. sōlōs	sōlās	sōla	nōs	vōs	sē ¹¹
Ab. sōlīs	sōlīs	sōlīs	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē ¹¹

⁷ Also *īsdem*.⁸ Similarly *ūnus, tōtus, ūllus, nūllus, alius, alter, uter, neuter* (see Ch. 9).⁹ All forms of the pronouns of the first and second persons except the nom. sg. and the nom. pl. may

also be used as reflexive pronouns.

¹⁰ These forms are reflexive only. The nonreflexive forms of the third person are supplied by *is, ea, id* (see Chs. 11, 13).¹¹ The form *sēsē* is also frequently found.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Regular		
longus, -a, -um (<i>long</i>)	longior, -ius	longissimus, -a, -um
fortis, -e (<i>brave</i>)	fortior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
fēlix, <i>gen.</i> fēlicis, (<i>happy</i>)	fēlicior, -ius	fēlicissimus, -a, -um
sapiēns, <i>gen.</i> sapientis (<i>wise</i>)	sapientior, -ius	sapientissimus, -a, -um
facilis, -e (<i>easy</i>)	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
līber, -era, -erum (<i>free</i>)	līberior, -ius	līberrimus, -a, -um
pulcher, -chra, -chrum (<i>beautiful</i>)	pulchrior, -ius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre (<i>keen</i>)	ācrior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
Irregular		
bonus, -a, -um (<i>good</i>)	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um (<i>large</i>)	maior, -ius	maximus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um (<i>bad</i>)	peior, -ius	pessimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um (<i>much</i>)	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um (<i>small</i>)	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
(prae, prō)	prior, -ius (<i>former</i>)	prīmus, -a, -um
superus, -a, -um (<i>that above</i>)	superior, -ius	summus (suprēmus), -a, -um

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Regular		
longē (<i>far</i>)	longius	longissimē
fortiter (<i>bravely</i>)	fortius	fortissimē
fēliciter (<i>happily</i>)	fēlicius	fēlicissimē
sapienter (<i>wisely</i>)	sapientius	sapientissimē
facile (<i>easily</i>)	facilius	facillimē
līberē (<i>freely</i>)	līberius	līberrimē
pulchrē (<i>beautifully</i>)	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
ācritē (<i>keenly</i>)	ācrius	ācerrimē
Irregular		
bene (<i>well</i>)	melius	optimē
magnopere (<i>greatly</i>)	magis	maximē
male (<i>badly</i>)	peius	pessimē
multum (<i>much</i>)	plūs	plūrimum
parum (<i>little</i>)	minus	minimē
(prae, prō)	prius (<i>before</i>)	prīmum; prīmō
diū (<i>a long time</i>)	diūtius	diūtissimē

NUMERALS

Cardinals	Ordinals	Roman Numerals
1. ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	I
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus, alter	II
3. trēs, tria	tertius	III
4. quattuor	quārtus	IIII; IV
5. quīnque	quīntus	V
6. sex	sextus	VI
7. septem	septimus	VII
8. octō	octāvus	VIII
9. novem	nōnus	VIII; IX
10. decem	decimus	X
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus	XI
12. duodecim	duodecimus	XII
13. tredecim	tertius decimus	XIII
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	XIII; XIV
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus	XV
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI
17. septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII
18. duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsīmus	XVIII
19. ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsīmus	XVIII; XIX
20. vīgintī	vīcēsīmus	XX
21. vīgintī ūnus, ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēsīmus prīmus	XXI
30. trīgintā	trīcēsīmus	XXX
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus	XXXX, XL
50. quinquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus	L
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus	LX
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus	LXX
80. octōgintā	octōgēsīmus	LXXX
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus	LXXX; XC
100. centum	centēsīmus	C
101. centum ūnus	centēsīmus prīmus	CI
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus	CC
300. trecentī	trecentēsīmus	CCC
400. quadringentī	quadringentēsīmus	CCCC
500. quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus	D
600. sescentī	sescentēsīmus	DC
700. septingentī	septingentēsīmus	DCC
800. octingentī	octingentēsīmus	DCCC
900. nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus	DCCCC
1000. mīlle	mīllēsīmus	M
2000. duo mīlia	bis mīllēsīmus	MM

Declension of Numerals

For the declension of **ūnus** see Ch. 9 or **sōlus** above.

For **duo**, **trēs**, and **mīlle** see Ch. 15.

The forms from **trecentī** through **nōngentī** are declined in the plural like **ducentī**, -ae, -a.

The ordinals are declined like **prīmus**, -a, -um.

The other forms are indeclinable.

CONJUGATIONS 1–4

Principal Parts

1st: laudō	laudāre	laudāvī	laudātum
2nd: moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum
3rd: agō	agere	ēgī	āctum
4th: audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītum
3rd (-iō): capiō	capere	cēpī	captum

Indicative Active

Present

laudō	moneō	agō	audiō	capiō
laudās	monēs	agis	audīs	capis
laudat	monet	agit	audit	capit
laudāmus	monēmus	agimus	audīmus	capimus
laudātis	monētis	agitis	audītis	capitis
laudant	monent	agunt	audiunt	capiunt

Imperfect

laudābam	monēbam	agēbam	audiēbam	capiēbam
laudābās	monēbās	agēbās	audiēbās	capiēbās
laudābat	monēbat	agēbat	audiēbat	capiēbat
laudābāmus	monēbāmus	agēbāmus	audiēbāmus	capiēbāmus
laudābātis	monēbātis	agēbātis	audiēbātis	capiēbātis
laudābant	monēbant	agēbant	audiēbant	capiēbant

Future

laudābō	monēbō	agam	audiam	capiam
laudābis	monēbis	agēs	audiēs	capiēs
laudābit	monēbit	aget	audiet	capiet
laudābimus	monēbimus	agēmus	audiēmus	capiēmus
laudābitis	monēbitis	agētis	audiētis	capiētis
laudābunt	monēbunt	agent	audient	capient

Perfect

laudāvī	monuī	ēgī	audīvī	cēpī
laudāvistī	monuistī	ēgistī	audīvistī	cēpistī
laudāvit	monuit	ēgit	audīvit	cēpit
laudāvimus	monuimus	ēgimus	audīvimus	cēpimus
laudāvistis	monuistis	ēgistis	audīvistis	cēpistis
laudāverunt	monuerunt	ēgērunt	audīverunt	cēpērunt

Pluperfect

laudāveram	monueram	ēgeram	audīveram	cēperam
laudāverās	monuerās	ēgerās	audīverās	cēperās
laudāverat	monuerat	ēgerat	audīverat	cēperat
laudāverāmus	monuerāmus	ēgerāmus	audīverāmus	cēperāmus
laudāverātis	monuerātis	ēgerātis	audīverātis	cēperātis
laudāverant	monuerant	ēgerant	audīverant	cēperant

Future Perfect

laudāverō	monuerō	ēgerō	audīverō	cēperō
laudāveris	monueris	ēgeris	audīveris	cēperis
laudāverit	monuerit	ēgerit	audīverit	cēperit
laudāverimus	monuerimus	ēgerimus	audīverimus	cēperimus
laudāveritis	monueritis	ēgeritis	audīveritis	cēperitis
laudāverint	monuerint	ēgerint	audīverint	cēperint

Subjunctive Active

Present

laudem	moneam	agam	audiam	capiam
laudēs	moneās	agās	audiās	capiās
laudet	moneat	agat	audiat	capiat
laudēmus	moneāmus	agāmus	audiāmus	capiāmus
laudētis	moneātis	agātis	audiātis	capiātis
laudent	moneant	agant	audiant	capiant

Imperfect

laudārem	monērem	agerem	audīrem	caperem
laudārēs	monērēs	agerēs	audīrēs	caperēs
laudāret	monēret	ageret	audīret	caperet
laudārēmus	monērēmus	agerēmus	audīrēmus	caperēmus
laudārētis	monērētis	agerētis	audīrētis	caperētis
laudārent	monērent	agerent	audīrent	caperent

Perfect

laudāverim	monuerim	ēgerim	audīverim	cēperim
laudāverīs	monuerīs	ēgerīs	audīverīs	cēperīs
laudāverit	monuerit	ēgerit	audīverit	cēperit
laudāverīmus	monuerīmus	ēgerīmus	audīverīmus	cēperīmus
laudāverītis	monuerītis	ēgerītis	audīverītis	cēperītis
laudāverint	monuerint	ēgerint	audīverint	cēperint

Pluperfect

laudāvissem	monuissē	ēgissem	audīvissem	cēpissem
laudāvissēs	monuissēs	ēgissēs	audīvissēs	cēpissēs
laudāvisset	monuisset	ēgisset	audīvisset	cēpisset
laudāvissēmus	monuissēmus	ēgissēmus	audīvissēmus	cēpissēmus
laudāvissētis	monuissētis	ēgissētis	audīvissētis	cēpissētis
laudāvissent	monuissent	ēgissent	audīvissent	cēpissent

Present Imperative Active

laudā	monē	age	audī	cape
laudāte	monēte	agite	audīte	capite

Indicative Passive

Present

laudor	moneor	agor	audior	capior
laudāris(-re)	monēris(-re)	ageris(-re)	audīris(-re)	caperis(-re)
laudātur	monētur	agitur	audītur	capitur
laudāmur	monēmur	agimur	audīmur	capimur
laudāminī	monēminī	agiminī	audīminī	capiminī
laudentur	monentur	aguntur	audiuntur	capiuntur

Imperfect

laudābar	monēbar	agēbar	audiēbar	capīēbar
laudābāris(-re)	monēbāris(-re)	agēbāris(-re)	audiēbāris(-re)	capīēbāris(-re)
laudābātur	monēbātur	agēbātur	audiēbātur	capīēbātur
laudābāmur	monēbāmur	agēbāmur	audiēbāmur	capīēbāmur
laudābāminī	monēbāminī	agēbāminī	audiēbāminī	capīēbāminī
laudābantur	monēbantur	agēbantur	audiēbantur	capīēbantur

Future

laudābor	monēbor	agar	audiar	capiar
laudāberis(-re)	monēberis(-re)	agēris(-re)	audiēris(-re)	capiēris(-re)
laudābitur	monēbitur	agētur	audiētur	capiētur
laudābimur	monēbimur	agēmur	audiēmur	capiēmur
laudābiminī	monēbiminī	agēminī	audiēminī	capiēminī
laudābuntur	monēbuntur	agentur	audientur	capiēntur

Perfect

laudātus ¹² sum	monitus sum	āctus sum	audītus sum	captus sum
laudātus es	monitus es	āctus es	audītus es	captus es
laudātus est	monitus est	āctus est	audītus est	captus est
laudātī sumus	monitī sumus	āctī sumus	audītī sumus	captī sumus
laudātī estis	monitī estis	āctī estis	audītī estis	captī estis
laudātī sunt	monitī sunt	āctī sunt	audītī sunt	captī sunt

Pluperfect

laudātus eram	monitus eram	āctus eram	audītus eram	captus eram
laudātus erās	monitus erās	āctus erās	audītus erās	captus erās
laudātus erat	monitus erat	āctus erat	audītus erat	captus erat
laudātī erāmus	monitī erāmus	āctī erāmus	audītī erāmus	captī erāmus
laudātī erātis	monitī erātis	āctī erātis	audītī erātis	captī erātis
laudātī erant	monitī erant	āctī erant	audītī erant	captī erant

Future Perfect

laudātus erō	monitus erō	āctus erō	audītus erō	captus erō
laudātus eris	monitus eris	āctus eris	audītus eris	captus eris
laudātus erit	monitus erit	āctus erit	audītus erit	captus erit
laudātī erimus	monitī erimus	āctī erimus	audītī erimus	captī erimus
laudātī eritis	monitī eritis	āctī eritis	audītī eritis	captī eritis
laudātī erunt	monitī erunt	āctī erunt	audītī erunt	captī erunt

Subjunctive Passive**Present**

lauder	monear	agar	audiar	capiar
laudēris(-re)	moneāris(-re)	agāris(-re)	audiāris(-re)	capiāris(-re)
laudētur	moneātur	agātur	audiātur	capiātur
laudēmur	moneāmur	agāmur	audiāmur	capiāmur
laudēminī	moneāminī	agāminī	audiāminī	capiāminī
laudentur	moneantur	agantur	audiantur	capiantur

Imperfect

laudārer	monērer	agerer	audīrer	caperer
laudārēris(-re)	monērēris(-re)	agerēris(-re)	audīrēris(-re)	caperēris(-re)
laudārētur	monērētur	agerētur	audīrētur	caperētur
laudārēmur	monērēmur	agerēmur	audīrēmur	caperēmur
laudārēminī	monērēminī	agerēminī	audīrēminī	caperēminī
laudārentur	monērentur	agerentur	audīrentur	caperentur

¹² The participles **laudātus** (-a, -um), **monitus** (-a, -um), etc., are used as predicate adjectives, and so their endings vary to agree with the subject.

Perfect

laudātus sim	monitus sim	āctus sim	audītus sim	captus sim
laudātus sīs	monitus sīs	āctus sīs	audītus sīs	captus sīs
laudātus sit	monitus sit	āctus sit	audītus sit	captus sit
laudātī sīmus	monitī sīmus	āctī sīmus	audītī sīmus	captī sīmus
laudātī sītis	monitī sītis	āctī sītis	audītī sītis	captī sītis
laudātī sint	monitī sint	āctī sint	audītī sint	captī sint

Pluperfect

laudātus essem	monitus essem	āctus essem	audītus essem	captus essem
laudātus essēs	monitus essēs	āctus essēs	audītus essēs	captus essēs
laudātus esset	monitus esset	āctus esset	audītus esset	captus esset
laudātī essēmus	monitī essēmus	āctī essēmus	audītī essēmus	captī essēmus
laudātī essētis	monitī essētis	āctī essētis	audītī essētis	captī essētis
laudātī essent	monitī essent	āctī essent	audītī essent	captī essent

Present Imperative Passive

In practice the passive forms are found only in deponent verbs. (See Ch. 34.)

Participles**Active**

<i>Pres.</i> laudāns	monēns	agēns	audiēns	capīens
<i>Fut.</i> laudātūrus	monitūrus	āctūrus	audītūrus	captūrus

Passive

<i>Perf.</i> laudātus	monitus	āctus	audītus	captus
<i>Fut.</i> laudandus	monendus	agendus	audiendus	capiendus

Infinitives**Active**

<i>Pres.</i> laudāre	monēre	agere	audīre	capere
<i>Perf.</i> laudāvisse	monuisse	ēgisse	audīvisse	cēpisse
<i>Fut.</i> laudātūrus esse	monitūrus esse	āctūrus esse	audītūrus esse	captūrus esse

Passive

<i>Pres.</i> laudārī	monērī	agī	audīrī	capī
<i>Perf.</i> laudātus esse	monitus esse	āctus esse	audītus esse	captus esse
<i>Fut.</i> laudātum īrī	monitum īrī	āctum īrī	audītum īrī	captum īrī

DEPONENT VERBS**Principal Parts**

<i>1st Conj.:</i>	hortor	hortārī	hortātus sum (<i>urge</i>)
<i>2nd Conj.:</i>	fateor	fatērī	fassus sum (<i>confess</i>)
<i>3rd Conj.:</i>	sequor	sequī	secūtus sum (<i>follow</i>)
<i>4th Conj.:</i>	mōlior	mōlīrī	mōlītus sum (<i>work at</i>)
<i>3rd (-iō):</i>	patior	patī	passus sum (<i>suffer</i>)

Indicative**Present**

hortor	fateor	sequor	mōlior	patior
hortāris(-re)	fatēris(-re)	sequeris(-re)	mōlīris(-re)	pateris(-re)
hortātur	fatētur	sequitur	mōlītur	patitur
hortāmur	fatēmur	sequimur	mōlīmur	patimur
hortāminī	fatēminī	sequiminī	mōlīminī	patiminī
hortantur	fatentur	sequuntur	mōliuntur	patiuntur

Imperfect

hortābar	fatēbar	sequēbar	mōliēbar	patiēbar
hortābāris(-re)	fatēbāris(-re)	sequēbāris(-re)	mōliēbāris(-re)	patiēbāris(-re)
hortābātur	fatēbātur	sequēbātur	mōliēbātur	patiēbātur
hortābāmur	fatēbāmur	sequēbāmur	mōliēbāmur	patiēbāmur
hortābāminī	fatēbāminī	sequēbāminī	mōliēbāminī	patiēbāminī
hortābantur	fatēbantur	sequēbantur	mōliēbantur	patiēbantur

Future

hortābor	fatēbor	sequar	mōliar	patiar
hortāberis(-re)	fatēberis(-re)	sequēris(-re)	mōliēris(-re)	patiēris(-re)
hortābitur	fatēbitur	sequētur	mōliētur	patiētur
hortābimur	fatēbimur	sequēmur	mōliēmur	patiēmur
hortābiminī	fatēbiminī	sequēminī	mōliēminī	patiēminī
hortābuntur	fatēbuntur	sequentur	mōlientur	patientur

Perfect

hortātus sum	fassus sum	secūtus sum	mōlītus sum	passus sum
hortātus es	fassus es	secūtus es	mōlītus es	passus es
hortātus est	fassus est	secūtus est	mōlītus est	passus est
hortātī sumus	fassī sumus	secūtī sumus	mōlītī sumus	passī sumus
hortātī estis	fassī estis	secūtī estis	mōlītī estis	passī estis
hortātī sunt	fassī sunt	secūtī sunt	mōlītī sunt	passī sunt

Pluperfect

hortātus eram	fassus eram	secūtus eram	mōlītus eram	passus eram
hortātus erās	fassus erās	secūtus erās	mōlītus erās	passus erās
hortātus erat	fassus erat	secūtus erat	mōlītus erat	passus erat
hortātī erāmus	fassī erāmus	secūtī erāmus	mōlītī erāmus	passī erāmus
hortātī erātis	fassī erātis	secūtī erātis	mōlītī erātis	passī erātis
hortātī erant	fassī erant	secūtī erant	mōlītī erant	passī erant

Future Perfect

hortātus erō	fassus erō	secūtus erō	mōlītus erō	passus erō
hortātus eris	fassus eris	secūtus eris	mōlītus eris	passus eris
hortātus erit	fassus erit	secūtus erit	mōlītus erit	passus erit
hortātī erimus	fassī erimus	secūtī erimus	mōlītī erimus	passī erimus
hortātī eritis	fassī eritis	secūtī eritis	mōlītī eritis	passī eritis
hortātī erunt	fassī erunt	secūtī erunt	mōlītī erunt	passī erunt

Subjunctive**Present**

horter	fatear	sequar	mōliar	patiar
hortēris(-re)	fateāris(-re)	sequāris(-re)	mōliāris(-re)	patiāris(-re)
hortētur	fateātur	sequātur	mōliātur	patiātur
hortēmur	fateāmur	sequāmur	mōliāmur	patiāmur
hortēminī	fateāminī	sequāminī	mōliāminī	patiāminī
hortentur	fateantur	sequantur	mōliantur	patiantur

Imperfect

hortārer	fatērer	sequerer	mōlīrer	paterer
hortārēris(-re)	fatērēris(-re)	sequerēris(-re)	mōlīrēris(-re)	paterēris(-re)
hortārētur	fatērētur	sequerētur	mōlīrētur	paterētur
hortārēmur	fatērēmur	sequerēmur	mōlīrēmur	paterēmur
hortārēminī	fatērēminī	sequerēminī	mōlīrēminī	paterēminī
hortārentur	fatērentur	sequerentur	mōlīrentur	paterentur

Perfect

hortātus sim	fassus sim	secūtus sim	mōlītus sim	passus sim
hortātus sīs	fassus sīs	secūtus sīs	mōlītus sīs	passus sīs
hortātus sit	fassus sit	secūtus sit	mōlītus sit	passus sit
hortātī sīmus	fassī sīmus	secūtī sīmus	mōlītī sīmus	passī sīmus
hortātī sītis	fassī sītis	secūtī sītis	mōlītī sītis	passī sītis
hortātī sint	fassī sint	secūtī sint	mōlītī sint	passī sint

Pluperfect

hortātus essem	fassus essem	secūtus essem	mōlītus essem	passus essem
hortātus essēs	fassus essēs	secūtus essēs	mōlītus essēs	passus essēs
hortātus esset	fassus esset	secūtus esset	mōlītus esset	passus esset
hortātī essēmus	fassī essēmus	secūtī essēmus	mōlītī essēmus	passī essēmus
hortātī essētis	fassī essētis	secūtī essētis	mōlītī essētis	passī essētis
hortātī essent	fassī essent	secūtī essent	mōlītī essent	passī essent

Present Imperative

hortāre	fatēre	sequere	mōlīre	patere
hortāminī	fatēminī	sequiminī	mōlīminī	patiminī

Participles

<i>Pres.</i> hortāns	fatēns	sequēns	mōliēns	patiēns
<i>Perf.</i> hortātus	fassus	secūtus	mōlītus	passus
<i>Fut.</i> hortātūrus	fassūrus	secūtūrus	mōlītūrus	passūrus
<i>Ger.</i> hortandus	fatendus	sequendus	mōliendus	patiendus

Infinitives

<i>Pres.</i> hortārī	fatērī	sequī	mōlīrī	patī
<i>Perf.</i> hortātus esse	fassus esse	secūtus esse	mōlītus esse	passus esse
<i>Fut.</i> hortātūrus esse	fassūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	mōlītūrus esse	passūrus esse

IRREGULAR VERBS**Principal Parts**

sum	esse	fuī	futūrum	(be)
possum	posse	potuī		(be able, can)
volō	velle	voluī		(wish, be willing)
nōlō	nōlle	nōluī		(not to wish, be unwilling)
mālō	mālle	māluī		(prefer)
eō	īre	īī	itum	(go)

Indicative¹³**Present**

sum	possum	volō	nōlō	mālō	eō
es	potes	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	īs
est	potest	vult	nōn vult	māvult	it
sumus	possumus	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	īmus
estis	potestis	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	ītis
sunt	possunt	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	eunt

Imperfect

eram	poteram	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	ībam
erās	poterās	volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās	ībās
erat	poterat	volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat	ībat
erāmus	poterāmus	volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus	ībāmus
erātis	poterātis	volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis	ībātis
erant	poterant	volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant	ībant

Future

erō	poterō	volam	nōlam	mālam	ībō
eris	poteris	volēs	nōlēs	mālēs	ībīs
erit	poterit	volet	nōlet	mālet	ībit
erimus	poterimus	volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus	ībimus
eritis	poteritis	volētis	nōlētis	mālētis	ībītis
erunt	poterunt	volent	nōlent	mālent	ībunt

Perfect

fuī	potuī	voluī	nōluī	māluī	īī
fuistī	potuistī	voluistī	nōluistī	māluistī	īstī
fuit	potuit	voluit	nōluit	māluit	īit
fuimus	potuimus	voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus	īimus
fuistis	potuistis	voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis	īstis
fuērunt	potuērunt	voluērunt	nōluērunt	māluērunt	īērunt

Pluperfect

fueram	potueram	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram	ieram
fuerās	potuerās	voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās	ierās
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

Future Perfect

fuerō	potuerō	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō	ierō
fueris	potueris	volueris	nōlueris	mālueris	ieris
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

Subjunctive**Present**

sim	possim	velim	nōlim	mālim	eam
sīs	possīs	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs	eās
sit	possit	velit	nōlit	mālit	eat
sīmus	possīmus	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus	eāmus
sītis	possītis	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis	eātis
sint	possint	velint	nōlint	mālint	eant

¹³ Note that the verbs in this list have no passive voice (except for the idiomatic impersonal passive of *eō*, which is not used in this book).

Imperfect

essem	possem	vellem	nōllem	māllem	īrem
essēs	possēs	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs	īrēs
esset	posset	vellet	nōllet	māllet	īret
essēmus	possēmus	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus	īrēmus
essētis	possētis	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis	īrētis
essent	possent	vellent	nōllent	māllent	īrent

Perfect

fuerim	potuerim	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim	ierim
fuerīs	potuerīs	voluerīs	nōluerīs	māluerīs	ierīs
fuerit	potuerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit	ierit
fuerīmus	potuerīmus	voluerīmus	nōluerīmus	māluerīmus	ierīmus
fuerītis	potuerītis	voluerītis	nōluerītis	māluerītis	ierītis
fuerint	potuerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint	ierint

Pluperfect

fuissem	potuissem	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem	īssem
fui ssēs	potui ssēs	volui ssēs	nōlui ssēs	mālui ssēs	ī ssēs
fuisset	potuisset	voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset	ī sset
fui ssēmus	potui ssēmus	volui ssēmus	nōlui ssēmus	mālui ssēmus	ī ssēmus
fui ssētis	potui ssētis	volui ssētis	nōlui ssētis	mālui ssētis	ī ssētis
fuis sent	potuissent	voluissent	nōluissent	māluis sent	ī ssent

Present Imperative

es	_____	_____	nōlī	_____	ī
este	_____	_____	nōlīte	_____	īte

Participles

<i>Pres.</i> _____	potēns	volēns	nōlēns	_____	iēns (<i>gen. euntis</i>)
<i>Perf.</i> _____	_____	_____	_____	_____	itum
<i>Fut.</i> futūrus	_____	_____	_____	_____	itūrus
<i>Ger.</i> _____	_____	_____	_____	_____	eundum

Infinitives

<i>Pr.</i> esse	posse	velle	nōlle	mālle	īre
<i>Pf.</i> fuisse	potuisse	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse	īsse
<i>Fu.</i> futūrus esse or fore	_____	_____	_____	_____	itūrus esse

IRREGULAR: ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, to bear, carry**Indicative**

Present Act.	Pass.	Imperfect Act.	Pass.	Future Act.	Pass.
ferō	feror	ferēbam	ferēbar	feram	ferar
fers	ferris(-re)	ferēbās	ferēbāris(-re)	ferēs	ferēris(-re)
fert	fertur	ferēbat	ferēbātur	feret	ferētur
ferimus	ferimur	ferēbāmus	ferēbāmur	ferēmus	ferēmur
fertis	feriminī	ferēbātis	ferēbāminī	ferētis	ferēminī
ferunt	feruntur	ferēbant	ferēbantur	ferent	ferentur

Perfect Act.	Pass.	Pluperfect Act.	Pass.	Future Perfect Act.	Pass.
tulī	lātus sum	tuleram	lātus eram	tulerō	lātus erō
tulistī	lātus es	tulerās	lātus erās	tuleris	lātus eris
tulit	lātus est	tulerat	lātus erat	tulerit	lātus erit
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

Subjunctive

Present Act.	Pass.	Imperfect Act.	Pass.	Perfect Act.	Pass.
feram	ferar	ferrem	ferrer	tulerim	lātus sim
ferās	ferāris(-re)	ferrēs	ferrēris(-re)	tuleris	lātus sis
ferat	ferātur	ferret	ferrētur	tulerit	lātus sit
ferāmus	ferāmur	ferrēmus	ferrēmur	etc.	etc.
ferātis	ferāminī	ferrētis	ferrēminī		
ferant	ferantur	ferrent	ferrentur		
				Pluperfect	
				tulisses	lātus essem
				tulissēs	lātus essēs
				tulisset	lātus esset
				etc.	etc.
Pres. Imper. Act.	Pass.	Participles Act.	Pass.	Infinitives Act.	Pass.
fer	———	<i>Pres.</i> ferēns	———	ferre	ferrī
ferre	———	<i>Perf.</i> ———	lātus	tulisse	lātus esse
		<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus	ferendus	lātūrus esse	lātum irī

IRREGULAR: fīō, fierī, factus sum, to happen, become; be made, be done

Indicative Pres.	Impf.	Fut.	Perf.	Pluperf.	Fut. Perf.
fīō	fīēbam	fīam	factus sum	factus eram	factus erō
fīs	fīēbās	fīēs	factus es	factus erās	factus eris
fit	fīēbat	fīet	factus est	factus erat	factus erit
fīmus	fīēbāmus	fīēmus	factī sumus	factī erāmus	factī erimus
fītis	fīēbātis	fīētis	factī estis	factī erātis	factī eritis
fīunt	fīēbant	fīent	factī sunt	factī erant	factī erunt

Subjunctive Pres.	Impf.	Perf.	Pluperf.
fīam	fīerem	factus sim	factus essem
fīās	fīerēs	factus sis	factus essēs
fīat	fīeret	factus sit	factus esset
fīāmus	fīerēmus	factī sīmus	factī essēmus
fīātis	fīerētis	factī sītis	factī essētis
fīant	fīerent	factī sint	factī essent

Part.	Inf.
Pres. ———	fieri
Perf. factus	factus esse
Fut. faciendus	factum iri
Imperative:	fī, fīte

English-Latin Vocabulary

An Arabic (1) in parentheses after a verb shows that this is a regular verb of the first conjugation with a sequence of principal parts ending in **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**. For prefixes and suffixes see the lists in the Appendix. For more complete definitions of the Latin words, see the Latin-English Vocabulary.

A

able (be), possum, posse, potuī
about (concerning), dē + *abl.*
absolute ruler, tyrannus, -ī, *m.*
accomplish, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; **be accomplished**, fīo, fierī, factus sum
advice, cōnsilium, -iī, *n.*
afraid (be), metuō, -ere, metuī
after, post + *acc.*
after all, postrēmum
again, iterum
against, contrā + *acc.*
alas, heu, vae
all, omnis, -e
alone, sōlus, -a, -um
although, cum + *subj.*
always, semper
among, inter + *acc.*
ancient, antīquus, -a, -um
and, et, -que
anger, īra, -ae, *f.*
announce, nūntiō (1)

answer, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum
any, ūllus, -a, -um
any (anyone, anything, after sī, nisi, nē, num), quis.
 quid
argument, argūmentum, -ī, *n.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
arrest, comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum
arrogant, superbus, -a, -um
art, ars, artis, *f.*
as, ut + *indic.*
as . . . as possible, quam + *superlative*
Asia, Asia, -ae, *f.*
ask, rogō (1)
assure (I assure you, you may be assured), use
 personal pron. in dat. case (dat. of reference, e.g., tibi)
at (= time), abl. of time; (= place), loc. of names of cities
attack, oppugnō (1)
author, auctor, -tōris, *m.*
avert, āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum
away from, ab + *abl.*

B

bad, malus, -a, -um
band, manus, -ūs, *f.*
base, turpis, -e
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrum
beard, barba, -ae, *f.*
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum
beauty, fōrma, -ae, *f.*
because, quod
become, fīō, fierī, factus sum
beg, ōrō (1)
began, coepī, coepisse, coeptum (*pres. system supplied by incipiō*)
begin, incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (*see began above*)
believe, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum
benefit, beneficium, -iī, *n.*
better, melior, -ius
body, corpus, -poris, *n.*
book, liber, -brī, *m.*
both . . . and, et . . . et
boy, puer, puerī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e
brief, brevis, -e
bright, clārus, -a, um
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
bull, bōs, bovis, *m.lf.*
but, sed
by (= *agent*), ā or ab + *abl.*;
 (= *means*), *simple abl.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, -saris, *m.*
call, vocō (1); appellō (1)
can, possum, posse, potuī
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum
care, cūra, -ae, *f.*
certain (definite, sure), certus, -a, -um;
 (*indef.*) quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (*pron.*) or
 quoddam (*adj.*)
certainly, certē
character, mōrēs, mōrum, *m. pl.*
Cicero, Cicerō, -rōnis, *m.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.lf.*
citizenship, cīvītās, -tātis, *f.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
come, veniō, -īre, vēmī, ventum

come back, reveniō, -īre, -vēmī, -ventum
comfort, sōlācium, -iī, *n.*
command (noun), imperium, -iī, *n.*;
 (*vb.*), imperō (1)
common, commūnis, -e
commonwealth, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
concerning, dē + *abl.*
confess, fateor, -ērī, fassus sum
conquer, superō (1); vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum
constellation, sīdus, -deris, *n.*
consul, cōsul, -sulis, *m.*
country, patria, -ae, *f.*; terra, -ae, *f.*
courage, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
crime, scelus, -leris, *n.*

D

danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum
daughter, filia, -ae, *f.* (*dat. and abl. pl. filiābus*)
day, diēs, -ēī, *m.*
dear, cārus, -a, -um
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
dedicate, dēdicō (1)
deed, factum, -ī, *n.*
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus
delight, dēlectō (1)
depart, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus; abeō, -īre,
 -iī, -itum
deprived of (be), careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum
desire, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -itum; dēsīderō (1)
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum
destruction, exitium, -ī, *n.*
die, morior, -ī, mortuus sum
difficult, difficilis, -e
dignity, dignitās, -tātis, *f.*
dine, cēnō (1)
dinner, cēna, -ae, *f.*
dissimilar, dissimilis, -e
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; **be done**, fīō, fierī,
 factus sum
doctor, medicus, -ī, *m.*; medica, -ae, *f.*
dread, metus, -ūs, *m.*
drive out, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum

E

eagerness, studium, -iī, *n.*
easy, facilis, -e
eight, ōcto

either, *uter, utra, utrum*
eleven, *undecim*
emperor, *imperātor, -tōris, m.*
endure, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; patior, -ī, passus sum*
enemy, *hostis, -is, m. (usually pl.)*
enough, *satis*
entrust, *committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum*
err, *errō (1)*
esteem, *diligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum*
even, *etiam; not even, nē . . . quidem*
ever, *umquam*
evil (*adj.*), *malus, -a, -um; (noun), malum, -ī, n.*
expel, *expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum*
eye, *oculus, -ī, m.*

F

faith, *fidēs, -eī, f.*
false, *falsus, -a, -um*
fame, *fāma, -ae, f.*
family, *famīlia, -ae, f.*
father, *pater, -tris, m.*
fault, *culpa, -ae, f.; vitium, -iī, n.*
fear (*vb.*), *timeō, -ēre, -uī; (noun), metus, -ūs, m.; timor, -mōris, m.*
feel, *sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum*
few, *paucī, -ae, -a (pl.)*
fidelity, *fidēs, -eī, f.*
fifth, *quīntus, -a, -um*
finally, *dēnique*
find, *inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum*
first, *pīmus, -a, -um*
follow, *sequor, -ī, secūtus sum*
foolish, *stultus, -a, -um*
for (*conj.*), *nam, enim; (= since, because), quod, quoniam; (prep.), prō + abl.*
force, *vīs, vīs, f.*
forces (*troops*), *cōpiae, -ārum, f. pl.*
fortune, *fortūna, -ae, f.*
forum, *forum -ī, n.*
four, *quattuor*
free (*vb.*), *liberō (1); (adj.), liber, -era, -erum*
freely, *liberē*
friend, *amīcus, -ī, m.*
friendly, *amīcus, -a, -um*
friendship, *amīcitia, -ae, f.*
frighten, *terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum*
from (*away*), *ab; (out) ex; (down) dē: all + abl.*
fruit, *frūctus, -ūs, m.*

G

game, *lūdus, -ī, m.*
gate, *porta, -ae, f.*
gift, *dōnum, -ī, n.*
girl, *puella, -ae, f.*
give, *dō, dare, dedī, datum*
glory, *glōria, -ae, f.*
go, *eō, īre, ī, itum*
go astray, *errō (1)*
go away, *abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum*
good, *bonus, -a, -um*
gratitude, *grātia, -ae, f.*
great, *magnus, -a, -um*
greedy, *avārus, -a, -um*
Greek, *Graecus, -a, -um; a Greek, Graecus, -ī, m.*
ground, *terra, -ae, f.*

H

hand, *manus, -ūs, f.*
happy, *beātus, -a, -um; fēlix, gen. fēlicis*
harm, *noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum + dat.*
harsh, *dūrus, -a, -um; acerbus, -a, -um*
have, *habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum*
he, is; often indicated only by the personal ending of vb.
head, *caput, -pitis, n.*
hear, *audiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum*
heart (in one's), use personal pron. in dat. case (dat. of reference, e.g., mihi, tibi)
heavy, *gravis, -e*
help (*vb.*), *adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum; (noun), auxilium, -iī, n.*
her (*possessive*) *eius (not reflexive); suus, -a, -um (reflexive)*
hesitate, *dubitō (1)*
high, *altus, -a, -um*
higher, *altior, -ius; superior, -ius*
himself, *suī (reflexive); ipse (intensive)*
his, *eius (not reflexive); suus, -a, -um (reflexive)*
hold, *teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum*
home, *domus, -ūs, f.; at home, domī; (to) home, domum; from home, domō*
honor, *honor, -nōris, m.*
hope (*noun*), *spēs, -eī, f.; (vb.), spērō (1)*
house, *casa, -ae, f.*
however, *autem (postpositive)*
how great, *quantus, -a, -um*
how many, *quot*

human being, homō, -minis, *m.*
 humble, humilis, -e
 hundred, centum
 hurt, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum + *dat*

I

I, ego, meī; *often expressed simply by the personal ending of vb.*
 if, sī; if . . . not, nisi
 ill, malum, -ī, *n.*
 illustrious, clārus, -a, -um
 in, in + *abl.*
 infancy, īnfantia, -ae, *f.*
 injustice, iniūria, -ae, *f.*
 into, in + *acc.*
 iron, ferrum, -ī, *n.*
 it, is, ea, id; *often indicated only by personal ending of vb.*

J

join, iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūctum
 judge, iūdex, -dicis, *m.*
 just, iūstus, -a, -um

K

keenly, ācriter
 kindness, beneficium, -iī, *n.*
 king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
 know, sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; not know, nesciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
 knowledge, scientia, -ae, *f.*

L

labor, labor, -bōris, *m.*
 lack, careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum + *abl.*
 land, patria, -ae, *f.*; terra, -ae, *f.*
 large, magnus, -a, -um
 Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um
 law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
 lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum
 leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
 learn (in the academic sense), discō, -ere, didicī;
 (get information), cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum
 left, sinister, -tra, -trum
 let (someone do something), express this with
jussive subj.

letter (epistle), litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
 liberty, lībertās, -tātis, *f.*
 life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
 light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*
 listen (to), audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
 literature, litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
 little, parvus, -a, -um; little book, libellus, -ī, *m.*
 live, vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum; live one's life, vītam
 agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum
 long (for a long time), diū
 lose, āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum
 love, amō (I)
 luck, fortūna, -ae, *f.*

M

make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum
 man, vir, virī, *m.*; homō, -minis, *m.*;
often expressed by masc. of an adj.
 many, multī, -ae, -a
 master, magister, -trī, *m.*; dominus, -ī, *m.*
 may (indicating permission to do something), licet
 + *dat.* + *inf.*
 mercy, clēmētia, -ae, *f.*
 method, modus, -ī, *m.*
 mind, mēns, mentis, *f.*
 money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
 more, plūs, plūris; *comp. of adj. or adv.*
 most, plūrimus, -a, -um; *superl. of adj. or adv.*
 mother, māter, -tris, *f.*
 mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
 move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum
 much, multus, -a, -um
 my, meus, -a, -um (*m. voc. sg. mī*)
 myself (reflexive), meī, mihi, *etc.*;
 (intensive) ipse, ipsa

N

name, nōmen, -minis, *n.*
 narrate, narrō (I)
 nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*
 nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
 neglect, neglegō, -ere, -glēxī, -glēctum
 neighbor, vīcīnus, -ī, *m.*; vīcīna, -ae, *f.*
 neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque
 never, numquam
 nevertheless, tamen
 new, novus, -a, -um
 night, nox, noctis, *f.*
 no, nūllus, -a, -um

nobody, nēmō, *m.* /f- for decl. see Lat-Eng. Vocab.
 not, nōn; nē with jussive, jussive noun, and purp-
 clauses; at with fear clauses
 nothing, nihil (indecl.), *n.*
 now, nunc
 number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

O

obey, pāreō -ēre, -uī + dat.
 offer, offerō -ferre, obtulī, oblātum
 office, officium, -iī, *n.*
 often, saepe
 old man, senex, senis, *m.*
 on (= place), in + abl.; (= time), simple abl.
 on account of, propter + acc.
 once, semel
 one, unus, -a, -um
 only (adv.), tantum; (adj.), solus, -a, -um
 opinion, sententia, -ae, *f.* (in one's) opinion, use
 personal pron. in dat. case (dat. of reference e.g.
 mihi, tibi)
 or, aut
 orator, orator, -ōris, *m.*
 order, ubiō -ēre, nussī, nussum; imperō (1) + dat.
 (in) order to, ut (+ subj.); in order not to, nē (+
 subj.)

other, another, alius, alia, aliud;
 the other of two, alter, -tra, -trum;

(all) the other, ceterī, -ae, -a

ought, debēō -ēre, -uī, -itum

our, noster, -tra, -trum

out of, ex + abl.

overcame, superō (1)

overpower, opprimō -ēre, -pressī, -pressum

own, his own, suus, -a, -um; my own, meus, -a, -um

P

pain, dolor, -ōris, *m.*

part, pars, partis, *f.*

passion, cupiditas, -tatis, *f.*

patience, patientia, -ae, *f.*

pay. See penalty.

peace, pax, pācis, *f.*

penalty, poena, -ae, *f.* pay the penalty, poenā
 dare

people, populus, -ī, *m.*

perceive, sentio -īre, -ēnsī, -ēnsū

perhaps, fortasse

perish, pereō -īre, -īī, -itum

permit, patior, -ī, passus sum

it is permitted, licet, licēre, licuit (impers.)

perpetual, perpetuus, -a, -um

persuade, persuadēō -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsum + dat.

philosopher, sapiēns, -entis, *m.*

philosophy, philosophia, -ae, *f.*

place, locus, -ī, *m.* pl. loca, -ōrum, *n.*

plan, cōsiliū, -iī, *n.*

pleasant, iūcundus, -a, -um

please, placeō -ēre, -uī, -itum; + dat., with a
 request amābō tē

plebeians, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*

poem, carmen, -minis, *n.*

poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*

(as . . . as) possible (or greatest possible, brightest
 possible, etc.), quam + superl. of adj. or adv.

power (command), imperium, -iī, *n.*

powerful, potēns, gen. potentis

praise (vb.), laudō (1); (noun), laus, laudis, *f.*

prepare, parō (1)

preserve, cōservō (1)

pretty, bellus, -a, -um; pulcher, -chra, -chrum

provided that, dummodo + subj.

pupil, discipulus, -ī, *m.* discipula, -ae, *f.*

pursuit, studium, -iī, *n.*

put, pōnō -ēre, posuī, positum

Q

queen, rēgina, -ae, *f.*

quickly, celeriter, cito

R

rather, express this with comp. degree of adj. or
 ad.

read, legō -ēre, lēgī, lēctum

real, vērus, -a, -um

reason, ratio, -ōnis, *f.*

receive, accipio -ēre, -cēpi, -ceptum

recognize, recognoscō -ēre, -nōvi, -nitum

regain, recipio -ēre, -cēpi, -ceptum

remain, remanēō -ēre, -māni, -mānum

report, nūntiō (1)

reputation, fama, -ae, *f.*

rest, the rest, ceterī, -ae, -a

return (go back), redeō -īre, -īī, -itum

return (in return for), pro + abl.

right (noun), ius, iūris, *n.* (adj.), iustus, -tra,
 -trum

road, via, -ae, *f.*

Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
rose, rosa, -ae, *f.*
rule (*noun*), regnum, -ī, *n.*; (*vb.*), regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum
run, currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum

S

sad, tristis, -e
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
sake (for the sake of), *gen.* + causā
salt, sāl, salis, *m.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem
satisfy, satiō (1)
save, servō (1); cōservō (1)
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum
second, secundus, -a, -um; alter, -era, -erum
see, vidēō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum
seek, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītum
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum
serious, gravis, -e
serve, serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum + *dat.*
seven, septem
she, ea; often indicated only by the personal ending of *vb.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
show, ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum
shun, vitō (1); fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrum
sign, signum, -ī, *n.*
since, quoniam + *indic.*; cum + *subj.*; *abl. abs.*
sister, soror, -rōris, *f.*
six, sex
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*; **slavegirl**, serva, -ae, *f.*
sleep, somnus, -ī, *m.*
small, parvus, -a, -um
so, ita, sīc (usually with *vbs.*), tam (usually with *adjs. and advs.*); **so great**, tantus, -a, -um
soldier, mīles, -litis, *m.*
some, a certain one (*indef.*), quīdam, quaedam, quiddam; (more emphatic *pron.*), aliquis, aliquid
some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī
son, fīlius, -iī, *m.*
soon, mox
sort, genus, -neris, *n.*
soul, animus, -ī, *m.*
sound, sānus, -a, -um; salvus, -a, -um
spare, parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrum + *dat.*

speak, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; loquor, -ī, locūtus sum
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, statum
state, cīvītās, -tātis, *f.*; rēs pūblica, reī pūblīcae, *f.*
story, fābula, -ae, *f.*
strong, fortis, -e; **be strong**, valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum
student, discipulus, -ī, *m.*; discipula, -ae, *f.*
study (*noun*), studium, -iī, *n.*; (*vb.*), studeō, -ēre, -uī + *dat.*
suddenly, subitō
summer, aestās, -tātis, *f.*
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*
suppose, opīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; putō (1)
supreme power, imperium, -iī, *n.*
sure, certus, -a, -um
sweet, dulcis, -e
swift, celer, -eris, -ere
sword, ferrum, -ī, *n.*; gladius, -iī, *m.*
Syracuse, Syracūsae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

T

talk, loquor, -ī, -cūtus sum
teach, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum
teacher, magister, -trī, *m.*; magistra, -ae, *f.*
tell, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum
ten, decem
terrify, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
than, quam; or simple *abl.*
thank, grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum + *dat.*
that (*demonstrative*), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id;
that (*of yours*), iste, ista, istud
that (*subord. conj.*), not expressed in *ind. state.*; ut (*purp. and result*); nē (*fear*)
that . . . not, nē (*purp.*), ut . . . nōn (*result*); ut (*fear*)
that (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod
their, suus, -a, -um (*reflexive*); eōrum, eārum (*not reflexive*)
them. See **he, she, it**.
then, tum; deinde
there, ibi
therefore, igitur (*postpositive*)
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*; often merely the *neut. of an adj.*
think, putō (1); arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum
third, tertius, -a, -um
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id
thousand, mīlle (*indecl. adj. sg.*), mīlia, -iūm, *n.* (*noun in pl.*)
three, trēs, tria

through, per + *acc.*
throw, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum
thus, sic
time, tempus, -poris, *n.*
to (*place to which*), ad + *acc.*; (*ind. obj.*), *dat.*;
 (*purp.*), ut + *subj.*, ad + *gerund* or *gerundive*
today, hodiē
tolerate, tolerō (1)
tomorrow, crās
too, nimis, nimium; or use *comp. degree of adj.* or
adv.
trivial, levis, -e
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
true, vērus, -a, -um
truly, vērē
trust, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum + *dat.*
truth, vēritās, -tātis, *f.*
try, experior, -īrī, expertus sum
twenty, vīgintī
two, duo, duae, duo
tyrant, tyrannus, -ī, *m.*

U

unable (be) nōn possum
uncertain, incertus, -a, -um
under, sub + *abl.* (= *place where*),
 + *acc.* (= *place to which*)
understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum;
 comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsu
unfortunate, miser, -era, -erum
unless, nisi
unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōluī
urban, urbane, urbānus, -a, -um
urge, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum
use, ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum + *abl.*

V

very: express this by the *superl. degree of adj.* or
adv.
vice, vitium, -iī, *n.*
Virgil, Vergilius, -iī, *m.*
virtue, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*

W

want, volō, velle, voluī
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*

warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
wealth, dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
weapons, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
well, bene
what (*pron.*), quid; (*adj.*), quī, quae, quod
when, *participial phrase*; *abl. abs.*; cum + *subj.*;
 (*interrogative*), quandō
where, ubi
wherefore, quārē
which (*rel. pron. and interrogative adj.*), quī, quae,
 quod
while, dum
who (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrogative*), quis,
 quid
whole, tōtus, -a, -um
why, cūr
wicked, malus, -a, -um
wife, uxor, uxōris, *f.*
willing (be), volō, velle, voluī
window, fenestra, -ae, *f.*
wisdom, sapientia, -ae, *f.*
wise, sapiēns, *gen. sapientis*
wisely, sapienter
wish, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; volō, velle, voluī
with, cum + *abl.*; *abl. of means (no prep.)*
without, sine + *abl.*
woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*
word, verbum, -ī, *n.*
work, opus, operis, *n.*
worse, peior, -ius
write, scribō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum
writer, scrīptor, -tōris, *m.*

Y

year, annus, -ī, *m.*
yesterday, herī
yield, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum
you, tū, tuī; often expressed simply by the *personal*
ending of vb.
young man, adulēscēns, -centis, *m.*
your (*sg.*), tuus, -a, -um; (*pl.*), vester, -tra, -trum
yourself (*reflexive*), tuī, tibi, *etc.*; (*intensive*), ipse,
 ipsa
youth, iuvenis, -is, *m.*

Latin-English Vocabulary

An Arabic numeral after a vocabulary entry indicates the chapter in which the word is first introduced as an item of required vocabulary. Arabic (1) in parentheses after a verb shows that this is a regular verb of the first conjugation with a sequence of principal parts ending in *-āre, -āvī, -ātum*. For prefixes and suffixes see the lists in the Appendix.

A

ā or *ab*, *prep.* + *abl.*, from, away from;
by (*agent*). 14
abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go away, depart. 37
absconditus, -a, -um, hidden, secret
absēns, gen. -sentis, adj., absent, away. 37
absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrum, be away, be absent
abundantia, -ae, f., abundance
ac. See *atque*.
accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, come near,
approach. 36
accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take, receive,
accept. 24
accommodō (1), adjust, adapt
accūsātor, -tōris, m., accuser
accūsō (1), accuse
ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen, eager, severe,
fierce. 16
acerbitās, -tātis, f., harshness
acerbus, -a, -um, harsh, bitter, grievous. 12
Achillēs, -is, m., Achilles, Greek hero, chief
character in the *Iliad*
aciēs, -eī, f., sharp edge, keenness, line of battle

acquīrō, -ere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum, acquire, gain
ācriter, adv., keenly, fiercely. 32
ad, prep. + *acc.*, to, up to, near to. 8
addiscō, -ere, -didicī, learn in addition
adducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead to, induce
adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go to, approach. 37
adferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum, bring to. 31
adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, affect, afflict, weaken
adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, add
adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum, help, aid, assist;
please. 4
admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, wonder at, admire
admittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, admit, receive,
let in. 17
admoneō = *moneō*
adnuō, -ere, -nuī, nod assent
adoptō (1), wish for oneself, select, adopt
adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrum, be near, be present,
assist
adulātiō, -ōnis, f., fawning, flattery
adulēscēns, -centis, m. and f., young man or
woman. 12
adulēscēntia, -ae, f., youth. 5
adultus, -a, -um, grown up, mature, adult
adūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, set fire to, burn, singe

adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come (to), arrive
adversus, -a, -um, facing, opposite, adverse. 34
adversus, prep. + acc., toward, facing; against
advesperāscit, advesperāscere, advesperāvit,
impers., evening is coming on, it is growing
 dark

aedificium, -iī, n., building, structure. 39
aegrē, adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely
aequitās, -tātis, f., justice, fairness, equity
aequus, -a, -um, level, even, calm, equal, just,
 favorable. 22

aes, aeris, n., bronze. 40
aestās, -tātis, f., summer. 35
aestus, -ūs, m., heat, tide
aetās, -tātis, f., period of life, life, age, an age,
 time. 16

aeternus, -a, -um, eternal
Agamemnon, -nonis, m., Agamemnon,
 commander-in-chief of the Greek forces at Troy
ager, agrī, m., field, farm. 3
agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, drive, lead, do, act; *of time*
or life, pass, spend;

grātiās agere + dat., thank. 8

agricola, -ae, m., farmer. 3
agrīcultūra, -ae, f., agriculture
āit, āiunt, he says, they say, assert. 25

Alexander, -drī, m., Alexander the Great,
 renowned Macedonian general and king,
 4th cen., B.C.

aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another (*cp. alius*),
 foreign, strange, alien

aliōquī, adv., otherwise

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, indef. pronominal adj.,
 some

aliquis, aliquid (gen. alicuius; dat. alicui), indef.
pron., someone, somebody, something. 23

aliter, adv., otherwise

alius, alia, aliud, other, another;
aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others. 9

alō, -ere, aluī, altum, nourish, support, sustain,
 increase, cherish. 13

alter, -era, -erum, the other (of two), second. 9

altus, -a, -um, high, deep

ambitiō, -ōnis, f., a canvassing for votes; ambition;
 flattery

ambulō (1), walk. 39

āmēn, adv. from Hebrew, truly, verily, so be it

amīca, -ae, f., (female) friend. 3

amīcitia, -ae, f., friendship. 17

amiculum, -ī, n., cloak

amīcus, -a, -um, friendly. 11

amīcus, -ī, m., (male) friend. 3

āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, lose, let go. 12

amō (1), love, like; **amābō tē**, please. 1

amor, amōris, m., love. 7

āmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move away, remove
an, adv. and conj. introducing the second part of a
double question (see utrum), or; *used alone*, or,
 can it be that

ancilla, -ae, f., maidservant

angelus, -ī, m., angel

angulus, -ī, m., corner

angustus, -a, -um, narrow, limited

anima, -ae, f., soul, spirit. 34

animal, -mālis, n., a living creature, animal. 14

animus, -ī, m., soul, spirit, mind; **animī, -ōrum**,
 high spirits, pride, courage. 5

annus, -ī, m., year. 12

ante, prep. + acc., before (*in place or time*), in
 front of; *adv.*, before, previously. 13

anteā, adv., before, formerly

antepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put before, prefer
 + *dat.* 35

antīquus, -a, -um, ancient, old-time. 2

Apollō, -linis, m., Phoebus Apollo, god of sun,
 prophecy, poetry, etc.

apparātus, -ūs, m., equipment, splendor

appellō (1), speak to, address (as), call, name. 14

approbō (1), approve

appropinquō (1) + dat., approach, draw near to

aptus, -a, -um, fit, suitable

apud, prep. + acc., among, in the presence of, at
 the house of. 31

aqua, -ae, f., water. 14

āra, -ae, f., altar

arānea, -ae, f., spider's web

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, judge, think. 34

arbor, -boris, f., tree. 38

arcus, -ūs, m., bow

argentum, -ī, n., silver, money

argūmentum, -ī, n., proof, evidence, argument. 19

arma, -ōrum, n., arms, weapons. 28

arō (1), plow

ars, artis, f., art, skill. 14

arx, arcis, f., citadel, stronghold. 23

as, assis, m., an as (a small copper coin roughly
 equivalent to a cent). 31

Asia, -ae, f., Asia, commonly the Roman province
 in Asia Minor. 12

asper, -era, -erum, rough, harsh. 21

aspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, look at, behold

assentātor, -tōris, m., yes-man, flatterer

astrum, -ī, *n.*, star, constellation
at, *conj.*, but; but, mind you; but, you say; *a more emotional adversative than sed*. 19
āter, **ātra**, **ātrum**, dark
Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Athens. 37
Athēniēnsis, -e, Athenian; **Athēniēnsēs**, -ium, the Athenians
atque or **ac**, *conj.*, and, and also, and even. 21
atquē, *conj.*, and yet, still
auctor, -tōris, *m.*, author, originator. 19
auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*, authority
audācia, -ae, *f.*, daring, boldness, audacity
audāx, *gen. audācis*, daring, bold
audeō, -ēre, **ausus sum**, dare. 7
audiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, hear, listen to. 10
audītor, -tōris, *m.*, hearer, listener, member of an audience. 16
auferō, -ferre, **abstulī**, **ablātum**, bear away, carry off
Augustus, -ī, *m.*, Augustus, the first Roman emperor
aureus, -a, -um, golden
auris, -is, *f.*, ear. 14
aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold
aut, *conj.*, or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or. 17
autem, *postpositive conj.*, however; moreover. 11
auxilium, -iī, *n.*, aid, help. 31
avāritia, -ae, *f.*, greed, avarice
avārus, -a, -um, greedy, avaricious. 3
āvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, carry away
āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, turn away, avert. 23
āvocō (1), call away, divert

B

balbus, -a, -um, stammering, stuttering
barba, -ae, *f.*, beard
bāsium, -iī, *n.*, kiss. 4
beātus, -a, -um, happy, fortunate, blessed. 10
bellicus, -a, -um, relating to war, military
bellum, -ī, *n.*, war. 4
bellus, -a, -um, pretty, handsome, charming. 4
bene, *adv. of bonus*, well, satisfactorily, quite. 11
(comp. melius; superl. optimē. 32)
beneficium, -iī, *n.*, benefit, kindness, favor. 19
benevolentia, -ae, *f.*, good will, kindness
bēstia, -ae, *f.*, animal, beast
bibō, -ere, **bibī**, drink. 30
bis, *adv.*, twice
bonus, -a, -um, good, kind. 4 (*comp. melior; superl. optimus. 27*)

bōs, **bovis**, *m. lf.*, bull, ox, cow
brevis, -e, short, small, brief. 16
brevitās, -tātis, *f.*, shortness, brevity
breviter, *adv.*, briefly
Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain
Brundisium, -iī, *n.*, important seaport in S. Italy
Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, famous Roman name: L. Junius Brutus, who helped establish the Roman republic; M. Junius Brutus, one of the conspirators against Julius Caesar

C

C., abbreviation for the common name **Gāius**
cadō, -ere, **cecidī**, **cāsūrum**, fall. 12
caecus, -a, -um, blind. 17
caelestis, -e, heavenly, celestial
caelum, -ī, *n.*, sky, heaven. 5
Caesar, -sarīs, *m.*, Caesar, especially Gaius Julius Caesar. 12
calamitās, -tātis, *f.*, misfortune, disaster
calculus, -ī, *m.*, pebble
campana, -ae, *f.*, bell (*late Lat.*)
candidus, -a, -um, shining, bright, white; beautiful. 33
canis, -is (*gen. pl. canum*), *m. lf.*, dog
canō, -ere, **cecinī**, **cantum**, to sing about
cantō (1), sing
capillus, -ī, *m.*, hair (*of head or beard*)
capiō, -ere, **cēpī**, **captum**, take, capture, seize, get. 10
captō (1), grab, seek to get, hunt for (legacies, etc.)
caput, -pitis, *n.*, head; leader; beginning; life; heading, chapter. 11
carbō, -bōnis, *m.*, coal, charcoal
careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum + *abl. of separation*, be without, be deprived of, want, lack, be free from. 20
cāritās, -tātis, *f.*, dearness, affection
carmen, -minis, *n.*, song, poem. 7
carpō, -ere, **carpsī**, **carptum**, harvest, pluck, seize. 36
Carthāgō, -ginis, *f.*, Carthage (city in N. Africa). 24
cārus, -a, -um, dear. 11
casa, -ae, *f.*, house, cottage, hut. 21
cāsus, -ūs, *m.*, accident, chance
catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain
Catīlina, -ae, *m.*, L. Sergius Catiline, leader of

the conspiracy against the Roman state in 63 B.C.
Catullus, -ī, m., Gaius Valerius Catullus, 1st cen. B.C. lyric poet
cattus, -ī, m., cat (*late word for classical fēlēs, -is*)
causa, -ae, f., cause, reason; case, situation; *causā with a preceding gen.*, for the sake of, on account of. 21
caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, beware, avoid
cavus, -ī, m., hole
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum, go, withdraw; yield to, submit, grant. 28
celer, -eris, -ere, swift, quick, rapid. 16
celeritās, -tātis, f., speed, swiftness
celeriter, swiftly, quickly
cēna, -ae, f., dinner. 26
cēnō (1), dine. 5
centum, indecl. adj., a hundred. 15
cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, distinguish, discern, perceive. 22
certē, adv., certainly
certus, -a, -um, definite, sure, certain, reliable. 19
cervus, -ī, m., stag, deer
cēterī, -ae, -a, the remaining, the rest, the other. 30
Cicerō, -rōnis, m., Marcus Tullius Cicero. 8
cicūta, -ae, f., hemlock (*poison*)
cinis, -neris, m., ashes
circēnsēs, -ium, m. pl. (sc. lūdī), games in the Circus
cito, adv., quickly. 17
cīvilis, -e, civil, civic
cīvis, -is, m. f., citizen. 14
cīvitās, -tātis, f., state, citizenship. 7
clārus, -a, -um, clear, bright; renowned, famous, illustrious. 18
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, shut, close
clēmēntia, -ae, f., mildness, gentleness, mercy. 16
coepī, coepisse, coeptum (defective vb.; pres. system supplied by incipiō), began. 17
coerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, curb, check, repress
cōgitō (1), think, ponder, consider, plan. 1
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, become acquainted with, learn, recognize; *in perf. tenses*, know. 30
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum, drive or bring together, force, compel. 36
colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, gather together, collect
collocō (1), place, put, arrange
collum, -ī, n., neck
colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, cultivate; cherish

color, -ōris, m., color
commemorō (1), remind, relate, mention
commisceō, -ēre, -uī, -mixtum, intermingle, join
committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, entrust, commit. 15
commūnis, -e, common, general, off/for the community. 20
comparō (1), compare
compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put together, compose
comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēsum, grasp, seize, arrest; comprehend, understand. 30
concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, yield, grant, concede
concilium, -iī, n., council
condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, put together or into, store; build, found, establish. 29
cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, collātum, bring together, compare; *sē cōnferre*, betake oneself, go. 31
cōnfidō, -ere, -fisis sum, have confidence in, believe confidently, be confident
cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, confess
congregō (1), gather together, assemble
coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw, hurl, put with force; put together, conjecture
coniūratiō, -ōnis, f., conspiracy
coniūrātī, -ōrum, m. pl., conspirators. 20
cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, try, attempt. 34
cōnscientia, -ae, f., consciousness, knowledge; conscience
cōnscius, -a, -um, conscious, aware of
cōnservō (1), preserve, conserve, maintain. 1
cōnsilium, -iī, n., counsel, advice, plan, purpose; judgment, wisdom. 4
cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī + in, depend on
cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrum + ex, consist of
cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, become accustomed
cōnsul, -sulis, m., consul. 11
cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultum, look out for, have regard for
cōnsultum, -ī, n., decree
cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, use up, consume. 30
contemnō, -ere, -tempī, -temptum, despise, scorn. 36
contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, strive, struggle, contend, hasten. 29
contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold together, keep, enclose, restrain, contain. 21
contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum, touch closely, befall, fall to one's lot

contrā, *prep.* + *acc.*, against. 19
contundō, -*tundere*, -*tudī*, -*tūsum*, beat, crush, bruise, destroy. 36
conturbō (1), throw into confusion
convertō, -*ere*, -*vertī*, -*versum*, turn around, cause to turn
convocō (1), call together, convene
cōpia, -*ae*, *f.*, abundance, supply; **cōpiae**, -*ārum*, supplies, troops, forces. 8
cōpiōsē, *adv.*, fully, at length, copiously
Corinthus, -*ī*, *f.*, Corinth
cornū, -*ūs*, *n.*, horn. 20
corōna, -*ae*, *f.*, crown
corpus, -*poris*, *n.*, body. 7
corrīgō, -*ere*, -*rēxī*, -*rēctum*, make right, correct
corrōborō (1), strengthen
corrumpō, -*ere*, -*rūpī*, -*ruptum*, ruin, corrupt
cōtidīc, *adv.*, daily, every day. 36
crās, *adv.*, tomorrow. 5
creātor, -*tōris*, *m.*, creator
creātūra, -*ae*, *f.*, creature (*late Lat.*)
crēber, -*bra*, -*brum*, thick, frequent, numerous
crēdō, -*ere*, **crēdidī**, **crēditum**, believe, trust. 25; + *dat.* 35
creō (1), create. 12
crēscō, -*ere*, **crēvī**, **crētum**, increase. 34
crūdēlis, -*e*, cruel
crūstulum, -*ī*, *n.*, pastry, cookie
cubiculum, -*ī*, *n.*, bedroom, room
culpa, -*ae*, *f.*, fault, blame. 5
culpō (1), blame, censure. 5
cultūra, -*ae*, *f.*, cultivation
cum, *conj.*, with *subj.*, when, since, although; with *ind.*, when. 31
cum, *prep.* + *abl.*, with. 10
cūnctātiō, -*ōnis*, *f.*, delay
cūnctātor, -*tōris*, *m.*, delayer
cūnctor (1), delay
cupiditās, -*tātis*, *f.*, desire, longing, passion, cupidity, avarice. 10
cupīdō, -*dinis*, *f.*, desire, passion. 36
cupīdus, -*a*, -*um*, desirous, eager, fond; + *gen.*, desirous of, eager for. 39
cupiō, -*ere*, **cupivī**, **cupitum**, desire, wish, long for. 17
cūr, *adv.*, why. 18
cūra, -*ae*, *f.*, care, attention, caution, anxiety. 4
cūrō (1), care for, attend to; heal, cure; take care. 36
currō, -*ere*, **cucurri**, **cursum**, run, rush, move quickly. 14

cursus, -*ūs*, *m.*, running, race; course. 28
curvus, -*a*, -*um*, curved, crooked, wrong
custōdia, -*ae*, *f.*, protection, custody; *pl.*, guards. 32
custōs, -*tōdis*, *m.*, guardian, guard

D

damnō (1), condemn
Dāmoclēs, -*is*, *m.*, Damocles, an attendant of Dionysius
dē, *prep.* + *abl.*, down from, from; concerning, about. 3
dea, -*ae*, *f.* (*dat. and abl. pl. deābus*), goddess. 6
dēbeō, -*ēre*, -*uī*, -*itum*, owe, ought, must. 1
dēbilitō (1), weaken
dēcernō, -*cre*, -*crēvī*, -*crētum*, decide, settle, decree. 36
dēcērtō (1), fight it out, fight to the finish, contend
decimus, -*a*, -*um*, tenth. 15
dēcipiō, -*ere*, -*cēpi*, -*ceptum*, deceive
decor, -*cōris*, *m.*, beauty, grace
dēcrētum, -*ī*, *n.*, decree
dēdicō (1), dedicate. 28
dēfendō, -*cre*, -*fendī*, -*fēsum*, ward off, defend, protect. 20
dēficiō, -*ere*, -*fēcī*, -*fectum*, fail
dēgustō (1), taste
dēhinc, *adv.*, then. 25
deinde, *adv.*, thereupon, next, then. 18
dēlectātiō, -*ōnis*, *f.*, delight, pleasure, enjoyment. 27
dēlectō (1), delight, charm, please. 19
dēleō, -*ēre*, **dēlēvī**, **dēlētum**, destroy, wipe out, erase. 17
dēlībērō (1), consider, deliberate
dēmēns, *gen. -mentis*, *adj.*, out of one's mind, insane, foolish
dēmīttō, -*ere*, -*mīsī*, -*misum*, let down, lower
dēmōnstrō (1), point out, show, demonstrate. 8
Dēmōsthenēs, -*is*, *m.*, Demosthenes, the most famous Greek orator, 4th cen. B.C.
dēnique, *adv.*, at last, finally. 29
dēns, *dentis*, *m.*, tooth
dēpōnō, -*ere*, -*posuī*, -*positum*, put down, lay aside
dēportō (1), carry off
dēsīderō (1), desire, long for, miss. 17
dēsidiōsus, -*a*, -*um*, lazy
dēsīnō, -*ere*, -*sīvī*, -*situm*, cease, leave off. 34
dēsīpiō, -*ere*, act foolishly
dēstinātus, -*a*, -*um*, resolved, resolute, firm
dētrīmentum, -*ī*, *n.*, loss, detriment

deus, -ī, m. (voc. sg. **deus**, nom. pl. **deī** or **dī**, dat. and abl. pl. **dīs**), god. 6

dēvocō (1), call down or away

dexter, -tra, -trum, right, right-hand. 20

diabolus, -ī, m., devil

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, say, tell, speak; call, name. 10

dictāta, -ōrum, n. pl., things dictated, lessons, precepts

dictātor, -tōris, m., dictator

dictō (1), say repeatedly, dictate

diēs, -ēī, m., day. 22

difficilis, -e, hard, difficult, troublesome. 16

digitus, -ī, m., finger, toe. 31

dignitās, -tātis, f., merit, prestige, dignity. 38

dignus, -a, -um + *abl.*, worthy, worthy of. 29

dīligēns, gen. -gentis, adj., diligent, careful. 27

dīligenter, adv., diligently

dīligentia, -ae, f., diligence

dīligō, -ere, dīlēxī, dīlēctum, esteem, love. 13

dīmidium, -īī, n., half

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, send away, dismiss

Dionŷsius, -īī, m., Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go away, depart. 20

discipula, -ae, f., and **discipulus, -ī, m.**, learner, pupil, disciple. 6

discō, -ere, didicī, learn. 8

disputātiō, -ōnis, f., discussion

disputō (1), discuss

dissimilis, -e, unlike, different. 27

dissimulō (1), conceal

distinguo, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, distinguish

diū, adv., long, for a long time. 12

dīves, gen. dīvitis or dītis, adj., rich. 32

dīvīnus, -a, -um, divine, sacred

dīvitiae, -ārum, f. pl., riches, wealth. 13

dō, dare, dedī, datum, give, offer. 1

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, teach. 8

doctrīna, -ae, f., teaching, instruction, learning

doctus, -a, -um, taught, learned, skilled. 13

doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum, grieve, suffer; hurt, give pain. 31

dolor, -lōris, m., pain, grief. 38

domesticus, -a, -um, domestic; civil

domina, -ae, f., mistress, lady. 40

dominātus, -ūs, m., rule, mastery, tyranny

dominicus, -a, -um, belonging to a master; the Lord's

dominus, -ī, m., master, lord. 40

domus, -ūs (-ī), f., house, home; **domī**, at home;

domum, (to) home; **domō**, from home. 37

dōnum, -ī, n., gift, present. 4

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -itum, sleep. 31

dubitō (1), doubt, hesitate. 30

dubium, -īī, n., doubt

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, lead; consider, regard; prolong. 8

dulcis, -e, sweet, pleasant, agreeable. 16

dum, conj., while, as long as; at the same time that; until. 8

dummodo, conj., with *subj.*, provided that, so long as. 32

duo, duae, duo, two. 15

dūrō (1), harden, last, endure

dūrus, -a, -um, hard, harsh, rough, stern, unfeeling, hardy, tough, difficult. 29

dux, ducis, m., leader, guide, commander, general. 23

E

ē. See ex.

ecclēsia, -ae, f., church (*ecclesiastical Lat.*)

ēducō (1), bring up, educate. 23

ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead out

efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, carry out; bury; lift up, exalt

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish, perform, bring about, cause

effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrum, flee from, flee away, escape

egeō, -ēre, eguī + *abl. or gen.*, need, lack, want. 28

ego, meī, I. 11

ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, go out, depart. 34

ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw out, drive out. 15

elementum, -ī, n., element, first principle

elephantus, -ī, m., elephant. 31

ēloquēns, gen. -quentis, adj., eloquent

ēloquentia, -ae, f., eloquence

ēmendō (1), correct, emend

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum, buy

ēmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move away, remove

enim, postpositive conj., for, in fact, truly. 9

Ennius, -īī, m., Quintus Ennius, early Roman writer

ēnumerō (1), count up, enumerate

eō, ire, īī (or īvī), itum, go. 37

epigramma, -matis, n., inscription, epigram

epistula, -ae, f., letter, epistle

eques, equitis, m., horseman

equidem, adv. *especially common with 1st pers.*, indeed, truly, for my part

equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, cavalry
equus, -ī, *m.*, horse. 23
ergā, *prep.* + *acc.*, toward. 38
ergō, *adv.*, therefore
ēripīō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, snatch away, take away, rescue. 22
errō (1), wander, err, go astray, be mistaken. 1
error, -rōris, *m.*, a going astray, error, mistake
et, *conj.*, and; even (= **etiam**); **et . . . et**, both . . . and. 2
etiam, *adv.*, even, also. 11
etsī, *conj.*, even if (**et-sī**), although. 38
ēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come out, turn out, happen
ēventus, -ūs, *m.*, outcome, result
ex or **ē**, *prep.* + *abl.*, out of, from within, from; by reason of, on account of. **Ex** can be used before consonants or vowels; **ē**, before consonants only. 8
excellētia, -ae, *f.*, excellence, merit
excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take out, except; take, receive, capture. 24
exclāmō (1), cry out, call out
exclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut out, exclude
excruciō (1), torture, torment
excūsātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, excuse
exemplar, -plāris, *n.*, model, pattern, original. 14
exemplum, -ī, *n.*, example, model
exeō, -īre, -īī, -itum, go out, exit. 37
exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army. 32
exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum (*ex* + *agō*), drive out, force out, extract, drive through, complete, perfect. 36
eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary, excellent
exitium, -īī, *n.*, destruction, ruin. 4
expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive out, expel, banish. 24
experior, -īrī, -pertus sum, try, test, experience. 39
expleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill, fill up, complete. 28
explicō (1), unfold, explain. 40
expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, set forth, explain, expose. 30
exquisītus, -a, -um, sought-out, exquisite, excellent
exsilium, -īī, *n.*, exile, banishment. 31
exspectō (1), look for, expect, await. 15
exstinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, extinguish
externus, -a, -um, foreign
extorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortum, twist away, extort
extrā, *prep.* + *acc.*, beyond, outside
extrēmus, -a, -um, outermost, last, extreme

F

Fabius, -īī, *m.*, Roman name; especially Quintus Fabius Maximus Cunctator (the Delayer), celebrated for his delaying tactics (Fabian tactics) against Hannibal
fābula, -ae, *f.*, story, tale; play. 24
facile, *adv.*, easily. 32
facilis, -e, easy; agreeable, affable. 16
faciō, -ere, **fēcī**, **factum**, make, do, accomplish, 10; *passive*: **fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum**. 36
factum, -ī, *n.*, deed, act, achievement. 13
facultās, -tātis, *f.*, ability, skill, opportunity, means
falsus, -a, -um, false, deceptive
fāma, -ae, *f.*, rumor, report; fame, reputation. 2
familia, -ae, *f.*, household, family. 19
fās (*indecl.*), *n.*, right, sacred duty; **fās est**, it is right, fitting, lawful
fateor, -ērī, **fassus sum**, confess, admit. 34
fatigō (1), weary, tire out. 40
fātum, -ī, *n.*, fate, death; *often pl.*, the Fates. 29
faucēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, jaws; narrow passage.
fēliciter, *adv.*, happily. 32
fēlix, *gen.* -līcis, *adj.*, lucky, fortunate, happy. 22
fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman. 3
fenestra, -ae, *f.*, window. 21
ferē, *adv.*, almost, nearly, generally
ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, bear, carry, bring; suffer, endure, tolerate; say, report. 31
ferōx, *gen.* -rōcis, fierce, savage. 25
ferrum, -ī, *n.*, iron, sword. 22
ferus, -a, -um, wild, uncivilized, fierce
festinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, haste
festinō (1), hasten, hurry
ficus, -ī and -ūs, *f.*, fig tree
fidēlis, -e, faithful, loyal. 25
fidēs, -eī, *f.*, faith, trust, trustworthiness, fidelity; promise, guarantee, protection. 22
fīlia, -ae, *f.* (*dat. and abl. pl. fīliābus*), daughter. 3
fīlius, -īī, *m.*, son. 3
fīnis, -is, *m.*, end, limit, boundary, purpose; **fīnēs**, -ium (boundaries) territory. 21
fiō, **fieri**, **factus sum**, occur, happen, become, be made, be done. 36
fīrmus, -a, -um, firm, strong, reliable. 38
flamma, -ae, *f.*, flame, fire
flūctus, -ūs, *m.*, billow, wave
flūmen, -minis, *n.*, river. 18
fluō, -ere, **flūxī**, **flūxum**, flow. 18
for, **fārī**, **fātus sum**, speak (prophetically), talk, foretell. 40

forīs, *adv.*, out of doors, outside. 37
fōrma, -ae, *f.*, form, shape, beauty. 2
formīca, -ae, *f.*, ant
fōrmō (1), form, shape, fashion
fors, **fortis**, *f.*, chance, fortune
forsan, *adv.*, perhaps
fortasse, *adv.*, perhaps. 36
fortis, -e, strong, brave. 16
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely. 32
fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, luck. 2
fortūnātē, *adv.*, fortunately
fortūnātus, -a, -um, lucky, fortunate, happy. 13
forum, -ī, *n.*, market place, forum. 26
foveō, -ēre, **fōvī**, **fōtum**, comfort, nurture, support.
 35
frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother. 8
frōns, **frontis**, *f.*, forehead, brow, front
frūctus, -ūs, *m.*, fruit, profit, benefit, enjoyment.
 20
frūgālītās, -tātis, *f.*, frugality
frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain
fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight
fugiō, -ere, **fūgī**, **fugitūrum**, flee, hurry away; go
 into exile; avoid, shun. 10
fugitīvus, -ī, *m.*, fugitive, deserter, runaway slave
fugō (1), put to flight, rout
fulgeō, -ēre, **fulsī**, flash, shine
furor, -rōris, *m.*, rage, frenzy, madness
fūrtificus, -a, -um, thievish
fūrtim, *adv.*, stealthily, secretly. 30

G

Gāius, -īi, *m.*, Gaius, a common praenomen (first name); usually abbreviated to **C.** in writing
Gallus, -ī, *m.*, a Gaul. The Gauls were a Celtic people who inhabited the district which we know as France.
gaudeō, **gaudēre**, **gāvīsus sum**, be glad, rejoice. 23
gaudium, -īi, *n.*, joy, delight
geminus, -a, -um, twin. 25
gēns, **gentis**, *f.*, clan, race, nation, people. 21
genū, **genūs**, *n.*, knee. 20
genus, **generis**, *n.*, origin, kind, sort, class. 18
gerō, -ere, **gessī**, **gestum**, carry, carry on, manage, conduct, accomplish, perform. 8
gladius, -īi, *m.*, sword
glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, fame. 5
gracilis, -e, slender, thin. 27
Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece. 19
Graecus, -a, -um, Greek; **Graecus**, -ī, *m.*, a Greek. 6

grātia, -ae, *f.*, gratitude, favor; **grātiās agere** + *dat.*, to thank. 8
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, agreeable; grateful. 37
gravis, -e, heavy, weighty, serious, important, severe, grievous. 19
gravitās, -tātis, *f.*, weight, seriousness, importance, dignity
graviter, *adv.*, heavily, seriously
gustō (1), taste

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, have, hold, possess; consider, regard. 3
hāmus, -ī, *m.*, hook
Hannibal, -balis, *m.*, Hannibal, celebrated Carthaginian general in the 2nd Punic War, 218–201 B.C.
hasta, -ae, *f.*, spear. 23
haud, *adv.*, not, not at all (*strong negative*)
herī, *adv.*, yesterday. 5
heu, *interjection*, ah!, alas! (*a sound of grief or pain*). 33
hic, **haec**, **hoc**, *demonstrative adj. and pron.*, this, the latter; *at times weakened to* he, she, it, they. 9
hīc, *adv.*, here. 25
hinc, *adv.*, from this place, hence
hodiē, *adv.*, today. 3
Homērus, -ī, *m.*, Homer, the Greek epic poet
homō, **hominis**, *m.*, human being, man. 7
honor, -nōris, *m.*, honor, esteem; public office. 30
hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour, time. 10
horrendus, -a, -um, horrible, dreadful
hortor, -ārī, -ātus **sum**, urge, encourage. 34
hortus, -ī, *m.*, garden
hospes, -pitis, *m.*, stranger, guest; host
hostis, -is, *m.*, an enemy (of the state); **hostēs**, -ium, the enemy. 18
hui, *interj.*, *sound of surprise or approbation not unlike our* “whee”
hūmānitās, -tātis, *f.*, kindness, refinement
hūmānus, -a, -um, pertaining to man, human, humane, kind, refined, cultivated. 4
humilis, -e, lowly, humble. 27
humus, -ī, *f.*, ground, earth, soil. 37
hypocrita, -ae, *m.*, hypocrite (*ecclesiastical Lat.*)

I

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, lie, lie prostrate, lie dead. 25
iaciō, -ere, **iēcī**, **iactum**, throw, hurl. 15

- iaculum**, -ī, *n.*, dart, javelin
iam, *adv.* now, already, soon. 19
iānua, -ae, *f.* door. 35
ibi, *adv.* there. 6
īdem, *eadem*, **idem**, the same. 11
identidem, *adv.* repeatedly, again and again
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, fit, appropriate. 37
igitur, *postpositive conj.* therefore, consequently. 5
ignārus, -a, -um, not knowing, ignorant
ignis, -is, *m.*, fire. 22
ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum + *dat.*, grant pardon to, forgive, overlook. 35
illacrimō (1) + *dat.*, weep over
ille, *illa*, **illud**, *demonstrative adj. and pron.*, that, the former; the famous; *at times weakened to* he, she, it, they. 9
illūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum, mock, ridicule
imāgō, -ginis, *m.*, image, likeness
imitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, imitate
immineō, -ēre, overhang, threaten
immodicus, -a, -um, beyond measure, moderate, excessive
immortālis, -e, not subject to death, immortal. 19
immōtus, -a, -um, unmoved, unchanged, unrelenting. 37
impedimentum, -ī, *n.*, hindrance, impediment
impediō, -īre, -īvī, -itum, impede, hinder, prevent. 38
impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, urge on, impel
impendeō, -ēre, hang over, threaten, be imminent
imperātor, -tōris, *m.*, general, commander-in-chief, emperor. 24
imperīōsus, -a, -um, powerful, domineering, imperious
imperium, -iī, *n.*, power to command, supreme power, authority, command, control. 24
imperō (1), give orders to, command + *dat.* + *ut*. 35
impleō, -ēre, **implēvī**, **implētum**, fill up, complete
imprimis, *adv.* especially, particularly
imprōvidus, -a, -um, improvident
impudēns, *gen. -dentis, adj.*, shameless, impudent
impudenter, *adv.* shamelessly, impudently
impūnītus, -a, -um, unpunished, unrestrained, safe
in, *prep.* + *abl.*, in, 3; + *acc.*, into, toward, against. 9
inānis, -e, empty, vain
incertus, -a, -um, uncertain, unsure, doubtful
incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, begin, commence. 17
inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut in, inclose
incorruptus, -a, -um, uncorrupted, genuine, pure
incrēdibilis, -e, incredible
indicō (1), indicate, expose, accuse
indignus, -a, -um, unworthy
indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead in, introduce, induce
industria, -ae, *f.*, industry, diligence
industrius, -a, -um, industrious, diligent
ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go in, enter. 37
ineptiō, -īre, play the fool, trifle
inexpugnābilis, -e, impregnable, unconquerable
īnfantia, -ae, *f.*, infancy
īnferī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, those below, the dead
īnferō, -ferre, **intulī**, **illātum**, bring in, bring upon, inflict
īnfinītus, -a, -um, unlimited, infinite
īnfirmitas, -a, -um, not strong, weak, feeble. 38
īnflammō (1), set on fire, inflame
īnfōrmis, -e, formless, deformed, hideous
īnfortūnātus, -a, -um, unfortunate
ingenium, -iī, *n.*, nature, innate talent. 29
ingēns, *gen. -gentis, adj.*, huge. 16
īngrātus, -a, -um, unpleasant, ungrateful
īniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw on or into, put on; inspire
īnimīcus, -ī, *m.*, (personal) enemy
īnīquus, -a, -um, unequal, unfair, unjust
īnitium, -iī, *n.*, beginning, commencement. 33
īniūria, -ae, *f.*, injustice, injury, wrong. 39
īniūstus, -a, -um, unjust. 10
īnops, *gen. -opis, adj.*, poor, needy
īnquam. *See inquit.*
īnquit, *defective verb*, he says, *placed after one or more words of a direct quotation; other forms:*
īnquam, I say, **īnquis**, you say. 22
īnsānia, -ae, *f.*, insanity, folly
īnsciēns, *gen. -entis*, unknowing, unaware
īnscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, inscribe, entitle
īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, ambush, plot, treachery. 6
īnsōns, *gen. -sontis*, guiltless, innocent
īnstituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtum, establish, institute
īnsula, -ae, *f.*, island. 23
īnsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, rise up
integer, -gra, -grum, untouched, whole, unhurt
īntelligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, understand. 11
īntempestīvus, -a, -um, untimely
īnter, *prep.* + *acc.*, between, among. 15
īnterceptiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, intercept
īnterdum, *adv.*, at times, sometimes
īntereā, *adv.*, meanwhile
īnterficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill, murder. 37

interrogātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, interrogation, inquiry
intrō (1), walk into, enter
intrōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead in, introduce
intus, *adv.*, within
invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, enter on, move against, assail
inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come upon, find. 10
inventor, -tōris, *m.*, inventor
invēstīgō (1), track out, investigate
invictus, -a, -um, unconquered; unconquerable
invidēō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, be envious; + *dat.*, look at with envy, envy, be jealous of. 31
invidia, -ae, *f.*, envy, jealousy, hatred. 31
invīsus, -a, -um, hated; hateful
invītō (1), entertain; invite, summon. 26
invītus, -a, -um, unwilling, against one's will
iocus, -ī, *m.*, joke, jest
ipse, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, *intensive pron.*, myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, *etc.*; the very, the actual. 13
īra, -ae, *f.*, ire, anger. 2
īrāscor, -ī, *īrātus sum*, be angry
īrātus, -a, -um, angered, angry. 35
irrītō (1), excite, exasperate, irritate
is, *ea*, *id*, *demonstrative pron. and adj.*, this, that; *personal pron.*, he, she, it. 11
iste, *ista*, *istud*, *demonstrative pron. and adj.*, that of yours, that; such; *sometimes with contemptuous force*. 9
ita, *adv. used with adjs., vbs., and advs.*, so, thus. 29
Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy. 15
itaque, *adv.*, and so, therefore. 15
iter, *itineris*, *n.*, road, route, journey. 37
iterō (1), repeat
iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time. 21
iubeō, -ēre, *iussī*, *iussum*, bid, order, command. 21
iūcunditās, -tātis, *f.*, pleasure, charm
iūcundus, -a, -um, agreeable, pleasant, gratifying. 16
iūdex, -dicis, *m.*, judge, juror. 19
iūdicium, -iī, *n.*, judgment, decision, opinion; trial. 19
iūdicō (1), judge, consider
iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, *iūctum*, join. 13
Iuppiter, *Iovis*, *m.*, Jupiter, Jove
iūrō (1), swear
iūs, *iūris*, *n.*, right, justice, law. 14; *iūs iūrandum*, *iūris iūrandī*, *n.*, oath
iussū, *defective noun, abl. sg. only, m.*, at the command of

iūstus, -a, -um, just, right. 40
iuvenis, -is (*gen. pl. iuvenum*), *m./f.*, a youth, young person
iuvō, -āre, *iūvī*, *iūtum*, help, aid, assist; please. 4

L

lābor, -ī, *lāpsus sum*, slip, glide
labor, -bōris, *m.*, labor, work, toil. 7
labōrō (1), labor; be in distress. 21
labrum, -ī, *n.*, lip
laccessō, -ere, -līvī, -ītum, harass, attack
lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear. 40
lacūnar, -nāris, *n.*, paneled ceiling
laetāns, *gen. -tantis, adj.*, rejoicing
laetus, -a, -um, happy, joyful
Latīnus, -a, -um, Latin. 22
laudātor, -tōris, *m.*, praiser
laudō (1), praise. 1
laus, *laudis*, *f.*, praise, glory, fame. 8
lēctor, -tōris, *m.*, *lēctrix*, -trīcis, *f.*, reader. 36
lectus, -ī, *m.*, bed
lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, ambassador, deputy
legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion
legō, -ere, *lēgī*, *lēctum*, pick out, choose; read. 18
lēnis, -e, smooth, gentle, kind
lentē, *adv.*, slowly
Lentulus, -ī, *m.*, P. Cornelius Lentulus Sura, chief conspirator under Catiline, left in charge of the conspiracy when Catiline was forced to flee from Rome
Lesbia, -ae, *f.*, Lesbia, the name which Catullus gave to his sweetheart
levis, -e, light, slight, trivial. 17
lēx, *lēgis*, *f.*, law, statute. 26
libellus, -ī, *m.*, little book. 17
libenter, *adv.*, with pleasure, gladly. 38
liber, -era, -erum, free. 5
liber, -brī, *m.*, book. 6
liberālis, -e, of, relating to a free person; worthy of a free man, decent, liberal, generous. 39
liberālītās, -tātis, *f.*, generosity, liberality
liberātor, -tōris, *m.*, liberator
liberē, *adv.*, freely. 32
liberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, (one's) children
liberō (1), free, liberate. 19
libertās, -tātis, *f.*, liberty, freedom. 8
libō (1), pour a libation of, on; pour ritually; sip, touch gently. 39
licet, *licēre*, *licuit*, *impers. + dat. and inf.*, it is permitted, one may. 37

ligō (1), bind, tie
līmen, -*minis*, *n.*, threshold. 26
lingua, -*ae*, *f.*, tongue; language. 25
lintheum, -*ī*, *n.*, linen, napkin
littera, -*ae*, *f.*, a letter of the alphabet; **litterae**, -*ārum*, a letter (epistle); literature. 7
lītus, -*toris*, *n.*, shore, coast. 23
locō (1), place, put
locuplētō (1), enrich
locus, -*ī*, *m.*, place; passage in literature; *pl.*, **loca**, -*ōrum*, *n.*, places, region; **locī**, -*ōrum*, *m.*, passages in literature. 9
longē, *adv.*, far. 32
longinquitās, -*tātis*, *f.*, distance, remoteness
longus, -*a*, -*um*, long. 16
loquāx, *gen.* -*quācis*, *adj.*, talkative, loquacious
loquor, -*ī*, **locūtus sum**, say, speak, tell, talk. 34
lucrum, -*ī*, *n.*, gain, profit
lūdō, -*ere*, **lūsī**, **lūsum**, play
lūdus, -*ī*, *m.*, game, sport; school. 18
lūna, -*ae*, *f.*, moon. 28
lupus, -*ī*, *m.*, wolf
lūx, **lūcis**, *f.*, light. 26
luxuria, -*ae*, *f.*, luxury, extravagance

M

Maecēnās, -*ātis*, *m.*, Maecenas, unofficial "prime minister" of Augustus, and patron and friend of Horace
magis, *adv.*, more, rather
magister, -*trī*, *m.*, master, schoolmaster, teacher. 4
magistra, -*ae*, *f.*, mistress, schoolmistress. 4
magnanimus, -*a*, -*um*, great-hearted, brave, magnanimous. 23
magnopere, *adv.*, greatly, exceedingly (*comp.* **magis**; *superl.* **maximē**). 32
magnus, -*a*, -*um*, large, great, important. 2 (*comp.* **maior**; *superl.* **maximus**. 27);
maiōrēs, -*um*, *m. pl.*, ancestors. 27
maiestās, -*tātis*, *f.*, greatness, dignity, majesty
maior. *See* **magnus**.
maiōrēs, -*um*, *m. pl.*, ancestors. 27
male, *adv.*, badly, ill, wrongly (*comp.* **peius**; *superl.* **pessimē**). 32
mālō, **mālle**, **māluī**, to want (something) more, instead; prefer. 32
malum, -*ī*, *n.*, evil, misfortune, hurt, injury. 30
malus, -*a*, -*um*, bad, wicked, evil. 4 (*comp.* **peior**; *superl.* **pessimus**. 27)

mandātum, -*ī*, *n.*, order, command, instruction
maneō, -*ēre*, **mānsī**, **mānsūm**, remain, stay, abide, continue. 5
manus, -*ūs*, *f.*, hand; band; handwriting. 20
Mārcellus, -*ī*, *m.*, Marcellus, Roman general who captured Syracuse in 212 B.C.
Mārcus, -*ī*, *m.*, Marcus, a common Roman first name, usually abbreviated to **M.** in writing
mare, -*is*, *n.*, sea. 14
marītus, -*ī*, *m.*, husband
māter, -*tris*, *f.*, mother. 12
māteria, -*ae*, *f.*, material, matter
mātrīmōnium, -*ī*, *n.*, marriage
maximus. *See* **magnus**.
medicus, -*ī*, *m.*, and **medica**, -*ae*, *f.*, doctor, physician. 12
mediocris, -*e*, ordinary, moderate, mediocre. 31
meditor, -*ārī*, -*ātus sum*, reflect upon, practice
medius, -*a*, -*um*, middle; *used partitively*, the middle of. 22
mel, **mellis**, *n.*, honey
melior. *See* **bonus**.
meminī, **meminisse**, *defective*, remember
memor, *gen.* -*moris*, *adj.*, mindful
memoria, -*ae*, *f.*, memory, recollection. 15
mendōsus, -*a*, -*um*, full of faults, faulty
mēns, **mentis**, *f.*, mind, thought, intention. 16
mēnsa, -*ae*, *f.*, table; dining, dish, course; **mēnsa secunda**, dessert. 26
mēnsis, -*is*, *m.*, month
merces, -*cēdis*, *f.*, pay, reward, recompense
merīdiānus, -*a*, -*um*, of midday, noon; southern
merus, -*a*, -*um*, pure, undiluted. 33
mēta, -*ae*, *f.*, turning point, goal. 40
metuō, -*ere*, **metuī**, fear, dread. 38
metus, -*ūs*, *m.*, fear, dread, anxiety. 20
meus, -*a*, -*um* (*m. voc.* **mī**), my. 2
mīles, **mīlitis**, *m.*, soldier. 23
mīlitāris, -*e*, military
mīlle, *indecl. adj.* in *sg.*, thousand;
mīlia, -*ium*, *n., pl. noun*, thousands. 15
minimus. *See* **parvus**.
minor. *See* **parvus**.
minuō, -*ere*, **minuī**, **minūtum**, lessen, diminish. 30
mīrābilis, -*e*, amazing, wondrous, remarkable. 38
mīror, -*ārī*, -*ātus sum*, marvel at, admire, wonder. 35
mīrus, -*a*, -*um*, wonderful, surprising, extraordinary
miscēō, -*ēre*, **miscuī**, **mixtum**, mix, stir up, disturb. 18

miser, -era, -erum, wretched, miserable, unfortunate. 15
miserē, *adv.*, wretchedly
misericordia, -ae, f., pity, mercy
mītēscō, -ere, become *or* grow mild
mītis, -e, mild, gentle; ripe
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, send, let go. 11
modo, adv., now, just now, only
modus, -i, m., measure, bound, limit; manner, method, mode, way. 22
moenia, -ium, n. pl., walls of a city. 29
molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, disagreeable, annoying
mōlior, -iŕī, mōlītus sum, work at, build, undertake, plan. 34
molliō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, soften; make calm *or* less hostile. 29
mollis, -e, soft, mild, weak
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, remind, warn, advise, 1;
moneō eum ut + subj. 36
monitiō, -ōnis, f., admonition, warning
mōns, montis, m., mountain. 20
mōnstrum, -ī, n., portent; monster
monumentum, -ī, n., monument. 40
mora, -ae, f., delay. 4
morbus, -ī, m., disease, sickness. 9
mrior, -ī, mortuus sum, die. 34
mors, mortis, f., death. 14
mortālis, -e, mortal. 18
mortuus, -a, -um, dead. 28
mōs, mōris, m., habit, custom, manner;
mōrēs, mōrum, habits, character. 7
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move; arouse, affect. 18
mox, adv., soon. 30
mulier, -eris, f., woman. 39
multō (1), punish, fine
multum, adv., much
(comp. plūs; superl. plūrimum). 32
multus, -a, -um, much, many, 2
(comp. plūs; superl. plūrimus). 27
mundus, -ī, m., world, universe. 21
mūnīmentum, -ī, n., fortification, protection
muniō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, fortify, defend; build (a road)
mūnus, -neris, n., service, office, function, duty; gift
mūs, mūris, m.lf., mouse
Mūsa, -ae, f., a Muse (one of the goddesses of poetry, music, etc.)
mūtātiō, -ōnis, f., change
mūtō (1), change, alter; exchange. 14

N

nam, conj., for. 13
narrō (1), tell, narrate, report. 24
nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, be born, spring forth, arise. 34
nāsus, -ī, m., nose. 40
nāta, -ae, f., daughter. 29
nātālis, -is (sc. diēs), m., birthday
nātiō, -ōnis, f., nation, people
nātūra, -ae, f., nature. 10
nauta, -ae, m., sailor. 2
nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f., voyage, navigation
nāvīgō (1), sail, navigate. 17
nāvis, -is, f., ship. 21
nē, conj. with subj., that . . . not, in order that . . . not, in order not to, 28, 36; that, 40; *adv. in nē* . . . *quidem*, not . . . even. 29
-ne, enclitic added to the emphatic word at the beginning of a question the answer to which may be either "yes" or "no." It can be used in both direct and indirect questions. 5
nec. See neque.
necessārius, -a, -um, necessary
necesse, indecl. adj., necessary, inevitable
necō (1), murder, kill. 7
nefās (indecl.), n., wrong, sin
neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, neglect, disregard. 17
negō (1), deny, say that . . . not. 25
nēmō, (nullūs), nēminī, nēminem, (nūllō, -ā), m.lf., no one, nobody. 11
nepōs, -pōtis, m., grandson, descendant. 27
neque or nec, conj., and not, nor;
neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor. 11
nesciō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, not to know, be ignorant. 25
neuter, -tra, -trum, not either, neither. 9
nēve, and not, nor (used to continue ut or nē + subj.)
niger, -gra, -grum, black
nihil (indecl.), n., nothing. 1, 4
nihilum, -ī, n., nothing
nimis or nimium, adv., too, too much, excessively. 9
nisi, if . . . not, unless, except. 19
niveus, -a, -um, snowy, white
noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitum + dat., do harm to, harm, injure. 35
nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi, not . . . wish, be unwilling. 32
nōmen, nōminis, n., name. 7
nōn, adv., not. 1
nōndum, adv., not yet

nōne, *interrog. adv.* which introduces questions expecting the answer "yes." 40

nōnnūllus, -a, -um, some, several

nōnnumquam, sometimes

nōnus, -a, -um, ninth

nōs. See *ego*.

nōscō. See *cognōscō*.

noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours. 5

notārius, -iī, *m.*, writer of shorthand, stenographer

novem, *indecl. adj.*, nine. 15

novus, -a, -um, new, strange. 7

nox, *noctis, f.*, night. 26

nūbēs, -is, *f.*, cloud. 14

nūbō, -ere, **nūpsī**, **nūptum**, cover, veil; + *dat.* (*of a bride*) be married to, marry. 35

nūllus, -a, -um, not any, no, none. 9

num, *interrogative adv.*: (1) introduces direct questions which expect the answer "no"; (2) introduces indirect questions and means whether. 40

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number. 3

numquam, *adv.*, never. 8

nunc, *adv.*, now, at present. 6

nūntiō (1), announce, report, relate. 25

nūntius, -iī, *m.*, messenger, message

nūper, *adv.*, recently. 12

nūtriō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, nourish, rear

O

Ō, *interjection*, O!, oh! 2

obdūrō (1), be hard, persist, endure

obeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go up against, meet; die. 37

obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, offer; cite (*as grounds for condemnation*)

oblectō (1), please, amuse, delight; pass time pleasantly. 36

obruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, overwhelm, destroy

obsequium, -iī, *n.*, compliance

obstinātus, -a, -um, firm, resolved

occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, occasion, opportunity. 28

occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum (*cadō*, fall), fall down; die; set (*of the sun*). 31

occīdō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum (*caedō*, cut), cut down; kill, slay

occultē, *adv.*, secretly

occupō (1), seize

oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye. 4

ōdī, **ōdisse**, **ōsūrum** (*defective vb.*), hate. 20

odium, -ī, *n.*, hatred. 38

Oedipūs, -podis, *m.*, Oedipus, Greek mythical figure said to have murdered his father and married his mother

offerō, -ferre, **obtulī**, **oblātum**, offer. 31

officiū, -iī, *n.*, duty, service. 4

ōlim, *adv.*, at that time, once, formerly; in the future. 13

omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, let go, omit

omnīnō, *adv.*, wholly, entirely, altogether. 40

omnipotēns, *gen. -tentis, adj.*, all-powerful, omnipotent

omnis, -e, every, all. 16

onerō (1), burden, load

onus, **oneris**, *n.*, burden, load

opera, -ae, *f.*, work, pains, help

opīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, suppose. 40

oportet, -ēre, **oportuit** (*impers.*), it is necessary, proper, right. 39

oppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, set against, oppose

opportūnē, *adv.*, opportunely

opportūnus, -a, -um, fit, suitable, advantageous, opportune

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, suppress, overwhelm, overpower, check. 23

opprobrium, -iī, *n.*, reproach, taunt, disgrace

oppugnō (1), fight against, attack, assault, assail. 39

ops, **opis**, *f.*, help, aid; **opēs**, **opum**, power, resources, wealth. 33

optimus. See *bonus*.

optō (1), wish for, desire

opus, **operis**, *n.*, a work, task; deed, accomplishment. 38

ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, speech. 38

ōrātor, -tōris, *m.*, orator, speaker. 23

orbis, -is, *m.*, circle, orb; **orbis terrārum**, the world, the earth

ōrdō, **ōrdinis**, *m.*, rank, class, order

oriōr, -irī, **ortus sum**, arise, begin, proceed, originate

ōrnō (1), equip, furnish, adorn. 39

ōrō (1), speak, plead; beg, beseech, entreat. 36

ōs, **ōris**, *n.*, mouth, face. 14

ōsculum, -ī, *n.*, kiss. 29

ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, exhibit, show, display. 23

ōstium, -iī, *n.*, entrance, door

ōtium, -iī, *n.*, leisure, peace. 4

ovīs, -is, *f.*, sheep

P

paedagōgus, -ī, m., slave who attended children
(particularly at school)

pāgānus, -ī, m., a countryman, peasant; pagan

palam, adv., openly, plainly

palma, -ae, f., palm

pānis, -is, m., bread

pār, gen. paris, adj., equal, like. 32

parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrum + dat., be lenient to, spare. 35

parēns, -rentis, m./f., parent. 28

pāreō, -ēre, -uī + dat., be obedient to, obey. 35

pariēs, -ietis, m., wall

pariō, -ere, peperī, partum, beget, produce

parmula, -ae, f., little shield

parō (1), prepare, provide, get, obtain. 19

pars, partis, f., part, share; direction. 14

parum, adv., little, too little, not very (much)
(*comp. minus; superl. minimē*). 32

parvus, -a, -um, small, little, 4 (*comp. minor; superl. minimus*). 27)

passer, -seris, m., sparrow

patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, make open, open;
disclose, expose. 25

pateō, -ēre, -uī, lie open, be open, be accessible, be evident. 32

pater, -tris, m., father. 12

patiēns, gen. -entis, adj., patient; + *gen.*, capable of enduring

patientia, -ae, f., suffering, patience, endurance. 12

patior, -ī, passus sum, suffer, endure, permit. 34

patria, -ae, f., fatherland, native land, (one's) country. 2

patrōnus, -ī, m., patron, protector

paucī, -ae, -a, usually pl., few, a few. 3

pauper, gen. -peris, adj., of small means, poor. 32

paupertās, -tātis, f., poverty, humble circumstances. 32

pāx, pācis, f., peace. 7

peccō (1), sin, do wrong

pectus, -toris, n., breast, heart. 35

pecūnia, -ae, f., money. 2

peior. See malus.

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, strike, push, drive out, banish. 24

per, prep. + acc., through. 13

percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, gain, learn, perceive

perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditum, destroy, ruin, lose
pereō, -īre, -īī, -itum, pass away, be destroyed,
perish. 37

peregrīnor, peregrīnārī, peregrīnātus sum, travel
abroad, wander. 37

perfectus, -a, -um, complete, perfect

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bear, endure, suffer

perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, do thoroughly,

accomplish, bring about

perfugium, -īī, n., refuge, shelter. 24

periculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous

periculum, -ī, n., danger, risk. 4

perimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, destroy

perītus, -a, -um, skilled, expert

permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -misum, permit, allow

perniciōsus, -a, -um, destructive, pernicious

pernoctō (1), spend or occupy the night. 39

perpetuus, -a, -um, perpetual, lasting,

uninterrupted, continuous. 6

perscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, write out, place
on record

persequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, follow up, pursue, take
vengeance on

Persicus, -a, -um, Persian

persuadeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, make sweet to,
persuade + *dat.* + *ut*. 35

perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten thoroughly,
terrify

pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, pertain to, relate to,
concern

perturbō (1), throw into confusion, trouble,
disturb, perturb

pervenīō, -īre, -vēmī, -ventum + ad, come through
to, arrive at, reach

pēs, pedis, m., lower leg, foot. 38

pessimus. See malus.

pestis, -is, f., plague, pestilence, curse, destruction

petō, -ere, petivī, petītum, seek, aim at, beg,
beseech, 23; **petō ab eō ut + subj.** 36

philosophia, -ae, f., philosophy, love of wisdom. 2

philosophus, -ī, m., and philosopha, -ae, f.,
philosopher. 33

piger, -gra, -grum, lazy, slow, dull

pīpiō (1), chirp, pipe

piscātor, -tōris, m., fisherman

piscis, -is, m., fish

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum + dat., be pleasing to,
please. 35

plācō (1), placate, appease

plānē, adv., plainly, clearly

platea, -ae, *f.*, broad way, street

Platō, -tōnis, *m.*, Plato, the renowned Greek philosopher

plēbs, **plēbis**, *f.*, the common people, populace, plebeians. 33

plēnus, -a, -um, full, abundant, generous. 6

plūrimus. *See multus.*

plūs. *See multus.*

poēma, -matis, *n.*, poem

poena, -ae, *f.*, penalty, punishment; **poenās dare**, pay the penalty. 2

poēta, -ae, *m.*, poet. 2

pōmum, -ī, *n.*, fruit, apple

pōnō, -ere, **posuī**, **positum**, put, place, set. 27

pōns, **pontis**, *m.*, bridge

populus, -ī, *m.*, the people, a people, nation. 3

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate, entrance. 2

possessio, -ōnis, *f.*, possession, property

possum, **posse**, **potuī**, be able, can, have power. 6

post, *prep.* + *acc.*, after, behind. 7

postea, *adv.*, afterwards. 24

postpōnō, -ere, -**posuī**, -**positum**, put after, consider secondary

postquam, *conj.*, after

postrēmum, *adv.*, after all, finally; for the last time. 40

potēns, *gen.* -**tentis**, *pres. part.* of **possum** as *adj.*, able, powerful, mighty, strong. 16

potestās, -tātis, *f.*, power, ability, opportunity

potior, -īrī, **potitus sum** + *gen.* or *abl.*, get possession of, possess, hold

potius, *adv.*, rather, preferably

prae, *prep.* + *abl.*, in front of, before. 26

praebeō, -ēre, -**uī**, -**itum**, offer, provide. 32

praeceptum, -ī, *n.*, precept

praeclārus, -a, -um, noble, distinguished, famous, remarkable

praeferō, -ferre, -**tulī**, -**lātum**, bear before, display; place before, prefer

praefficiō, -ere, -**fēcī**, -**fectum**, put in charge of
praemittō, -ere, -**mīsī**, -**missum**, send ahead or forward

praemium, -ī, *n.*, reward, prize. 35

praesidium, -ī, *n.*, guard, detachment, protection

praestō, -āre, -**stitī**, -**stitum**, excel (+ *dat.*); exhibit, show, offer, supply. 28

praesum, -esse, -**fuī**, be at the head of, be in charge of

praeter, *prep.* + *acc.*, besides, except; beyond, past. 40

praetereō, -īre, -ī, -**itum**, go by, pass, omit

praeteritus, -a, -um, *perf. part.* of **praetereō** as *adj.*, past

premō, -ere, **pressī**, **pressum**, press, press hard, pursue. 23

pretium, -ī, *n.*, price, value, reward

prex, **precis**, *f.*, prayer

prīmō, *adv.*, at first, first, at the beginning. 30

primum, *adv.*, first, in the first place; **quam**

primum, as soon as possible

prīmus. *See prior.* 27

prīnceps, *gen.* -**cipis**, chief; *m./f. noun*, leader, prince, emperor. 28

prīncipium, -ī, *n.*, beginning. 12

prior, **prius**, *comp. adj.*, former, prior; **prīmus**, -a, -um, first, foremost, chief, principal. 27

prīstinus, -a, -um, ancient, former, previous. 38

prius, *adv.*, before, previously

prīvātus, -ī, *m.*, private citizen

prīvō (1), deprive

prō, *prep.* + *abl.*, in front of, before, on behalf of, in return for, instead of, for, as. 12

probitās, -tātis, *f.*, uprightness, honesty, probity. 18

probō (1), test; approve, recommend. 27

prōcōsul, -sulis, *m.*, proconsul, governor of a province

prōditor, -tōris, *m.*, betrayer, traitor

proelium, -ī, *n.*, battle

prōferō, -ferre, -**tulī**, -**lātum**, bring forward, produce, make known, extend

proficīscor, -ī, **profectus sum**, set out, start. 34

profor, -ārī, -ātus sum, speak out

prōfundō, -ere, -**fūdī**, -**fūsum**, pour forth

prohibeō, -ēre, -**uī**, -**itum**, prevent, hinder, restrain, prohibit. 20

prōiciō, -ere, -**īēcī**, -**iectum**, throw forward or out

prōmittō, -mittere, -**mīsī**, -**missum**, send forth, promise. 32

prōnūntiō (1), proclaim, announce; declaim; pronounce. 20

prōpōnō, -ere, -**posuī**, -**positum**, put forward, propose

proprius, -a, -um, one's own, peculiar, proper, personal, characteristic

propter, *prep.* + *acc.*, on account of, because of. 5

prōtinus, *adv.*, immediately. 22

prōvideō, -ēre, -**vīdī**, -**vīsum**, foresee, provide, make provision

proximus, -a, -um (*superl.* of **propior**), nearest, next

prūdēns, *gen.* -**dentis**, *adj.*, wise, prudent

prūdentē, *adv.*, wisely, discreetly

prūdentia, -ae, *f.*, foresight, wisdom, discretion

pūblicus, -a, -um, of the people, public;
rēs pūblica, reī pūblīcae, f., the state
pudīcus, -a, -um, modest, chaste. 26
pudor, -dōris, m., modesty, bashfulness
puella, -ae, f., girl. 2
puer, puerī, m., boy; *pl.* boys, children. 3
puerīliter, adv., childishly, foolishly
pugna, -ae, f., fight, battle
pugnō (1), fight. 29
pulcher, -chra, -chrūm, beautiful, handsome;
 fine. 5
pulchrē, adv., beautifully, finely. 32
pulchritūdō, -dinis, f., beauty
pūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, punish
pūrgō (1), cleanse
pūrus, -a, -um, pure, free from
putō (1), clean, trim; reckon, suppose, judge,
 think, imagine. 25
Pŷthagorās, -ae, m., Pythagoras, Greek
 philosopher and mathematician of 6th cen. B.C.

Q

quā, adv., by which route, where
quadrāgintā, indecl. adj., forty
quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum, seek, look for,
 strive for; ask, inquire, inquire into. 24
quam, adv., how, 16; *conj.*, than, 26; as . . . as
 possible (*with superl.*), 26
quamvis, adv. and conj., however much, however;
 although
quandō, interrogative and rel. adv. and conj., when;
sī quandō, if ever. 5
quantus, -a, -um, how large, how great, how
 much. 30
quārē, adv., because of which thing, therefore,
 wherefore, why. 6
quārtus, -a, -um, fourth. 15
quasi, adv. or conj., as if, as it were. 39
quattuor, indecl. adj., four. 15
-que, enclitic conj., and. *It is appended to the*
second of two words to be joined. 6
quemadmodum, adv., in what manner, how
queror, -ī, questus sum, complain, lament. 38
quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which, what,
 that. 17
qui? quae? quod?, interrog. adj., what? which? what
 kind of? 19
quid, what, why. See quis.
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (pron.) or quoddam
(adj.), *indef. pron. and adj.*: as *pron.*, a certain

one or thing, someone, something; *as adj.*, a
 certain. 26
quidem, postpositive adv., indeed, certainly, at
 least, even; **nē . . . quidem**, not even. 29
quiēs, -ētis, f., quiet, rest, peace
quīn, adv., indeed, in fact. 40
quīn etiam, adv., why even, in fact, moreover
Quīntus, -ī, m., Quintus, a Roman praenomen,
 abbreviated to **Q.** in writing
quis? quid?, interrogative pron., who? what? which?
 19
quis, quid, indef. pron., *after sī, nisi, nē, and num*,
 anyone, anything, someone, something. 33
quisquam, quidquam (or quicquam), indef. pron.
and adj., anyone, anything
quisque, quidque, indef. pron., each one, each
 person. 13
quisquis, quidquid, indef. pron., whoever,
 whatever. 23
quō, adv., to which or what place, whither, where
quod, conj., because. 11
quōmodo, adv., in what way, how
quondam, adv., formerly, once. 22
quoniam, conj., since, inasmuch as. 10
quoque, adv., also, too. 17
quot, indecl. adj., how many, as many. 27
quotiēscumque, adv., however often, whenever

R

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum, seize, snatch, carry
 away. 21
rārus, -a, -um, rare
ratio, -ōnis, f., reckoning, account; reason,
 judgment, consideration; system, manner,
 method. 8
recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go back, retire, recede
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take back, regain,
 admit, receive. 24
recitō (1), read aloud, recite. 17
recognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, recognize,
 recollect. 38
recordātiō, -ōnis, f., recollection
recreō (1), restore, revive; refresh, cheer. 36
rēctus, -a, -um, straight, right; **rēctum, -ī, n.**, the
 right, virtue
recuperātiō, -ōnis, f., recovery
recuperō (1), regain
recūsō (1), refuse. 33
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, give back, return
redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go back, return. 37

redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead back, bring back
referō, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātum, carry back, bring back; repeat, answer, report. 31

rēgīna, -ae, *f.*, queen. 7

rēgius, -a, -um, royal

rēgnum, -ī, *n.*, rule, authority, kingdom

regō, -ere, **rēxī**, **rēctum**, rule, guide, direct. 16

relegō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, read again, reread

relevō (1), relieve, alleviate, diminish

relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum, leave behind, leave, abandon. 21

remaneo, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, remain, stay behind, abide, continue. 5

remedium, -ī, *n.*, cure, remedy. 4

remissio, -ōnis, *f.*, letting go, release; relaxation. 34

removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, remove

repente, *adv.*, suddenly. 30

reperiō, -īre, -pperī, -pertum, find, discover, learn, get. 40

repetitiō, -ōnis, *f.*, repetition

repetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, seek again, repeat

rēpō, -ere, **rēpsī**, **rēptum**, creep, crawl

repugnō (1) + *dat.*, fight against, be incompatible with

requiescō, -ere, -quievī, -quiētum, rest. 37

requirō, -ere, -quīsivī, -sītum, seek, ask for, miss, need, require. 36

rēs, **reī**, *f.*, thing, matter, business, affair; **rēs**

pública, **reī públicae**, state, commonwealth. 22

resistō, -ere, -stitī, make a stand, resist, oppose

respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, answer. 29

restituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtum, restore

retrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, drag or draw back

reveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come back, return

revertor, -ī, -vertī (*perf. is act.*), -versum, return

revocō (1), call back, recall

rēx, **rēgis**, *m.*, king. 7

rhētoricus, -a, -um, of rhetoric, rhetorical

rīdeō, -ēre, **rīsī**, **rīsum**, laugh, laugh at. 24

ridiculus, -a, -um, laughable, ridiculous. 30

rogō (1), ask, ask for. 30; **rogō eum ut** + *subj.*, 36

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome. 14

Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman. 3

rosa, -ae, *f.*, rose. 2

rōstrum, -ī, *n.*, beak of a ship; **Rōstra**, -ōrum, the

Rostra, speaker's platform

rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel

rotundus, -a, -um, wheel-shaped, round

rūmor, -mōris, *m.*, rumor, gossip. 31

ruō, -ere, **ruī**, **rutum**, rush, fall, be ruined

rūs, **rūris**, *n.*, the country, countryside. 37

rūsticor, -ārī, -ātus sum, live in the country. 34

rūsticus, -a, -um, rustic, rural

S

sabbatum, -ī, *n.*, the Sabbath

sacculus, -ī, *n.*, little bag, purse

sacrificium, -ī, *n.*, sacrifice

sacerdōs, **sacerdōtis**, *m.*, priest. 23

sacrilegus, -a, -um, sacrilegious, impious

saepe, *adv.*, often. 1

saeta equīna, -ae -ae, *f.*, horse-hair

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow

sāl, **salis**, *m.*, salt; wit. 33

salsus, -a, -um, salty, witty

salūbris, -e, healthy, salubrious

salūs, **salūtis**, *f.*, health, safety; greeting. 21

salūtō (1), greet

salveō, -ēre, be well, be in good health. 1

salvus, -a, -um, safe, sound. 6

sānctificō (1), sanctify, treat as holy

sānctus, -a, -um, sacred, holy

sānitās, -tātis, *f.*, health, soundness of mind, sanity

sānō (1), heal

sānus, -a, -um, sound, healthy, sane. 5

sapiēns, *gen. -entis, adj.*, wise, judicious; *as a noun, m.*, a wise man, philosopher. 25

sapienter, *adv.*, wisely, sensibly. 32

sapientia, -ae, *f.*, wisdom. 3

sapiō, -ere, **sapivī**, have good taste; have good sense, be wise. 35

satiō (1), satisfy, sate. 3

satis, *indecl. noun, adj., and adv.*, enough, sufficient(ly). 5

sator, -tōris, *m.*, sower, planter; begetter, father. 38

satura, -ae, *f.*, satire. 16

saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock, stone. 40

scabiēs, -ēī, *f.*, the itch, mange

scelerātus, -a, -um, criminal, wicked, accursed

scelestus, -a, -um, wicked, accursed, infamous

scelus, -leris, *n.*, evil deed, crime, sin, wickedness. 19

schola, -ae, *f.*, school

scientia, -ae, *f.*, knowledge, science, skill. 18

sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, know. 21

scribō, -ere, **scripsī**, **scriptum**, write, compose. 8

scriptor, -tōris, *m.*, writer, author. 8

sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, separate

secundus, -a, -um, second; favorable. 6

sēcūrus, -a, -um, free from care, untroubled, safe
sed, conj., but. 2

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, sit. 34
sēductor, -tōris, m. (*ecclesiastical Lat.*), seducer
semel, adv., a single time, once, once and for all,
 simultaneously. 31
semper, adv., always. 3
senātor, -tōris, m., senator
senātus, -ūs, m., senate. 20
senectūs, -tūtis, f., old age. 10
senex, senis, adj. and n., old, aged; old man. 16
sēnsus, -ūs, m., feeling, sense. 20
sententia, -ae, f., feeling, thought, opinion, vote;
 sentence. 2
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsū, feel, perceive, think,
 experience. 11
septem, indecl. adj., seven. 15
sepulchrum, -ī, n., grave, tomb
sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, follow. 34
serēnō (1), make clear, brighten; cheer up,
 soothe. 36
sēriō, adv., seriously
sērius, -a, -um, serious, grave
sermō, -mōnis, m., conversation, talk
serō, -ere, sēvī, satum, sow
serviō, -īre, -īvī, -itum + dat., be a slave to,
 serve. 35
servitūs, -tūtis, f., servitude, slavery. 20
servō (1), preserve, keep, save, guard. 1
servus, -ī, m., and serva, -ae, f., slave. 24
sevērītās, -tātis, f., severity, sternness, strictness
sī, conj., if. 1
sīc, adv. (most commonly with verbs), so, thus. 29
sīcut, adv. and conj., as, just as, as it were
sīdus, -deris, n., constellation, star. 29
signum, -ī, n., sign, signal, indication, seal. 13
silentium, -iī, n., silence
silva, -ae, f., forest, wood
similis, -e, similar to, like, resembling. 27
simplex, gen. -plicis, adj., simple, unaffected
simulātiō, -ōnis, f., pretense
sine, prep. + abl., without. 2
singulī, -ae, -a, pl., one each, single, separate
singultim, adv., stammeringly
sinister, -tra, -trum, left, left-hand; harmful, ill-
 omened. 20
sitiō, -īre, -īvī, be thirsty
socius, -iī, m., companion, ally
Sōcratēs, -is, m., Socrates
sōl, sōlis, m., sun. 27
sōlācium, -iī, n., comfort, relief. 24
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, be accustomed. 37
sōlitūdō, -dinis, f., solitude, loneliness

sollicitō (1), stir up, arouse, incite
sollicitūdō, -dinis, f., anxiety, concern, solicitude
sollicitus, -a, -um, troubled, anxious, disturbed
Solōn, -lōnis, m., Solon, Athenian sage and
 statesman of the 7th-6th cen. B.C.
sōlum, adv., only, merely; **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam,**
 not only . . . but also. 9
sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only, the only. 9
somnus, -ī, m., sleep. 26
Sophoclēs, -is, m., Sophocles, one of the three
 greatest writers of Greek tragedy
sopor, -pōris, m., deep sleep
sordēs, -dium, f. pl., filth; meanness, stinginess
soror, -rōris, f., sister. 8
spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsum, scatter, spread, strew
spectāculum, -ī, n., spectacle, show
spectō (1), look at, see. 34
speculum, -ī, n., mirror. 33
spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum, scorn, despise, spurn
spērō (1), hope for, hope. 25
spēs, -eī, f., hope. 22
spīritus, -ūs, m., breath, breathing; spirit, soul. 20
stabilis, -e, stable, steadfast
stadium, -iī, n., stadium
statim, adv., immediately, at once
statua, -ae, f., statue
stēlla, -ae, f., star, planet. 28
stilus, -ī, m., stilus (*for writing*)
stō, stāre, stetī, statum, stand, stand still or
 firm. 13
studeō, -ēre, -uī + dat., direct one's zeal to, be
 eager for, study. 35
studiōsus, -a, -um, full of zeal, eager, fond of
studium, -iī, n., eagerness, zeal, pursuit, study. 9
stultus, -a, -um, foolish; stultus, -ī, m., a fool. 4
suāvis, -e, sweet. 33
sub, prep. + abl. with verbs of rest, + acc. with
verbs of motion, under, up under, close to. 7
subitō, adv., suddenly. 33
subitus, -a, -um, sudden
subiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, subject, subdue
sublīmīs, sublīme, elevated, lofty; heroic, noble. 38
subrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, smile (down)
 upon. 35
succurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, run up under, help
sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, be sufficient, suffice
suī (sibi, sē, sē), reflex. pron. of 3rd pers., himself,
 herself, itself, themselves. 13
sum, esse, fui, futurum, be, exist. 4; **est, sunt may**
 mean there is, there are. 1
summa, -ae, f., highest part, sum, whole

summus, -a, -um. *See superus.*

sūmō, -ere, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptum**, take, take up, assume

sūmptus, -ūs, *m.*, expense, cost

supellex, -lectilis, *f.*, furniture, apparatus

superbus, -a, -um, arrogant, overbearing, haughty, proud. 26

superior. *See superus.*

superō (1), be above, have the upper hand, surpass, overcome, conquer. 5

superus, -a, -um, above, upper: **superī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the gods (*comp. superior*, -ius, higher; *superl.*

suprēmus, -a, -um, last, or **summus**, -a, -um, highest). 27

supplicium, -iī, *n.*, punishment

suprā, *adv. and prep. + acc.*, above

suprēmus. *See superus.*

surculus, -ī, *m.*, shoot, sprout

surgō, -ere, **surrēxī**, **surrēctum**, get up, arise. 29

suscipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, undertake. 25

suspendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēsum, hang up, suspend; interrupt. 38

sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, hold up, sustain, endure

suus, -a, -um, reflexive possessive *adj. of 3rd pers.*, his own. her own. its own. their own. 13

synagōga, -ae, *f.*, synagogue

Syrācūsae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Syracuse. 37

T

tabella, -ae, *f.*, writing tablet; **tabellae**, -ārum, letter, document

taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, be silent, leave unmentioned. 28

tālis, -e, such, of such a sort. 34

tam, *adv. used with adjs. and advs.*, so, to such a degree; **tam . . . quam**, so . . . as. 29

tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless, still. 8

tamquam, *adv.*, as it were, as if, so to speak. 35

tandem, *adv.*, at last, finally

tangō, -ere, **tetigī**, **tāctum**, touch. 21

tantum, *adv.*, only. 26

tantus, -a, -um, so large, so great, of such size. 29

tardus, -a, -um, slow, tardy

tegō, -ere, **tēxī**, **tēctum**, cover, hide, protect

temeritās, -tātis, *f.*, rashness, temerity

temperantia, -ae, *f.*, moderation, temperance, self-control

tempestās, -tātis, *f.*, period of time, season; weather, storm. 15

templum, -ī, *n.*, sacred area, temple

temptātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, trial, temptation

tempus, -poris, *n.*, time. 7

tendō, -ere, **tetendī**, **tentum** or **tēsum**, stretch, extend; go

teneō, -ēre, -uī, **tentum**, hold, keep, possess, restrain. 14

terō, -ere, **trīvī**, **trītum**, rub, wear out

terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, ground, land, country. 7

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten, terrify. 1

tertius, -a, -um, third. 15

thema, -matis, *n.*, theme

Themistoclēs, -is, *m.*, Themistocles, celebrated

Athenian statesman and military leader who advocated a powerful navy at the time of the Persian Wars

timeō, -ēre, -uī, fear, be afraid of, be afraid. 15

timor, -mōris, *m.*, fear. 10

titulus, -ī, *m.*, label, title; placard

toga, -ae, *f.*, toga, the garb of peace

tolerō (1), bear, endure, tolerate. 6

tollō, -ere, **sustulī**, **sublātum**, raise, lift up; take away, remove, destroy. 22

tondeō, -ēre, **totondī**, **tōnsum**, shear, clip

tōnsor, -sōris, *m.*, barber

tōnsōrius, -a, -um, of or pertaining to a barber, barber's

tot, *indecl. adj.*, that number of, so many. 40

tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire. 9

trāctō (1), drag about; handle, treat, discuss

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, give over, surrender, hand down, transmit, teach. 33

tragoedia, -ae, *f.*, tragedy

trahō, -ere, **trāxī**, **tractum**, draw, drag; derive, get. 8

trāns, *prep. + acc.*, across. 14

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go across, cross; pass over, ignore. 39

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bear across, transfer, convey

trānsitus, -ūs, *m.*, passing over, transit, transition. 39

trēdecim, *indecl. adj.*, thirteen. 15

tremō, -ere, **tremuī**, tremble

trepidē, *adv.*, with trepidation, in confusion

trēs, **tria**, three. 15

trīgintā, *indecl. adj.*, thirty

trīstis, -e, sad, sorrowful; joyless, grim, severe. 26

triumphus, -ī, *m.*, triumphal procession, triumph

Trōia, -ae, *f.*, Troy. 23

Trōiānus, -a, -um, Trojan

tū, tuī, you. 11

Tullius, -īi, m., Cicero's family name

tum, adv., then, at that time; thereupon, in the next place. 5

tumultus, -ūs, m., uprising, disturbance

tumulus, -ī, m., mound, tomb

tunc, adv., then, at that time

turba, -ae, f., uproar, disturbance, mob, crowd, multitude. 14

turpis, -e, ugly, shameful, base, disgraceful. 26

tūtus, -a, -um, protected, safe, secure

tuus, -a, -um, your, yours (*sg.*). 2

tyrannus, -ī, m., absolute ruler, tyrant. 6

U

ubi, rel. adv. and conj., where; when; interrogative, where? 6

ulciscor, -ī, ultus sum, avenge, punish for wrong done

ūllus, -a, -um, any. 9

ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, extreme; last, final. 25

ultrā, adv. and prep. + acc., on the other side of, beyond. 22

umbra, -ae, f., shade; ghost

umerus, -ī, m., shoulder, upper arm

umquam, adv., ever, at any time. 23

unde, adv., whence, from what or which place; from which, from whom. 30

ūnus, -a, -um, one, single, alone. 9

urbānus, -a, -um, of the city, urban, urbane, elegant. 26

urbs, urbis, f., city. 14

ūsque, adv., all the way, up (to), even (to), continuously, always. 31

ūsus, -ūs, m., use, experience, skill, advantage

ut, conj.; *A. with subj., introducing* (1) *purpose*, in order that, that, to (28); (2) *result*, so that, that (29); (3) *jussive noun clauses*, to, that (36); (4) *fear clauses*, that . . . not (40); *B. with indic.*, just as, as, when. 24

uter, utra, utrum, either, which (of two). 9

ūtilis, -e, useful, advantageous. 27

ūtilitās, -tātis, f., usefulness, advantage

ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum + abl., use; enjoy, experience. 34

utrum . . . an, adv. and conj., whether . . . or. 30

uxor, -ōris, f., wife. 7

V

vacō (1), be free from, be unoccupied

vacuus, -a, -um, empty, devoid (of), free (from)

vae, interjection, alas, woe to. 34

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum, be strong, have power; be well, fare well; **valē** (**valēte**), good-bye. 1

valētūdō, -dinis, f., health, good health, bad health

varius, -a, -um, various, varied, different

-ve, conj., or 33

vehemēns, gen. -mentis, adj., violent, vehement, emphatic, vigorous

vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, carry, convey

vel, conj., or (*an optional alternative*)

vēlōx, gen. -lōcis, adj., swift

vēndō, -ere, vēndidī, vēnditum, sell. 38

venia, -ae, f., kindness, favor, pardon

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, come. 10

ventitō (1), come often

ventus, -ī, m., wind. 39

Venus, -neris, f., Venus, goddess of grace, charm, and love

verbera, -rum, n. pl., blows, a beating

verbum, -ī, n., word. 5

vērē, adv., truly, really, actually, rightly

vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, show reverence for, respect; be afraid of, fear. 40

Vergilius, -īi, m., Virgil, the Roman epic poet

vērītās, -tātis, f., truth. 10

vērō, adv., in truth, indeed, to be sure, however. 29

versus, -ūs, m., line, verse. 20

vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn, change. 23

vērūs, -a, -um, true, real, proper. 4

vesper, -peris or -perī, m., evening; evening star. 28

vespillō, -lōnis, m., undertaker

vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours (*pl.*). 6

vestiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, clothe

vetus, gen. -teris, adj., old. 34

via, -ae, f., road, street, way. 10

vīcīnus, -ī, m., and **vīcīna, -ae, f.**, neighbor. 21

vicissitūdō, -dinis, f., change, vicissitude

victor, -tōris, m., victor

victōria, -ae, f., victory. 8

vīctus, -ūs, m., living, mode of life

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, see, observe;

understand, 1; **videor, -ērī, vīsus sum**, be seen, seem, appear. 18

vigilō (1), be awake, watch, be vigilant

vīgor, -gōris, m., vigor, liveliness

vīlla, -ae, f., villa, country house

vincō, -ere, vīcī, vīctum, conquer, overcome. 8

vinculum, -ī, n., bond, chain. 36

vīnum, -ī, n., wine. 31

vir, virī, m., man, hero. 3

virgō, -ginis, *f.*, maiden, virgin. 7
virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*, manliness, courage, excellence, virtue, character, worth. 7
vīs, vīs, *f.*, force, power, violence; **vīrēs, vīrium**, strength. 14
vīta, -ae, *f.*, life, mode of life. 2
vitiosus, -a, -um, full of vice, vicious. 34
vitium, -iī, *n.*, fault, vice, crime. 6
vītō (1), avoid, shun. 14
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum, live. 10
vīvus, -a, -um, alive, living. 30
vix, *adv.*, hardly, scarcely, with difficulty
vocō (1), call, summon. 1
volō, velle, voluī, wish, want, be willing, will. 32
volō (1), fly

voluntārius, -a, -um, voluntary
voluntās, -tātis, *f.*, will, wish
voluptās, -tātis, *f.*, pleasure. 10
vōs. See tū.
vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice, word. 34
vulgus, -ī, *n.* (*sometimes m.*), the common people, mob, rabble. 21
vulnus, -neris, *n.*, wound. 24
vultus, -ūs, *m.*, countenance, face, 40.

X

Xenophōn, -phontis, *m.*, Xenophon, Greek general and author

Abbreviations

AUTHORS AND WORKS CITED

- Aug., St. Augustine (Confessions)
Caes., Caesar
 B.C., Bellum Civile
 B.G., Bellum Gallicum
Catull., Catullus (Poems)
Cic., Cicero
 Am., De Amicitia
 Arch., Oratio pro Archia
 Att., Epistulae ad Atticum
 Cat., Orationes in Catilinam
 De Or., De Oratore
 Div., De Divinatione
 Fam., Epistulae ad Familiares
 Fin., De Finibus
 Inv., De Inventione Rhetorica
 Leg., De Legibus
 Marcell., Oratio pro Marcello
 Off., De Officiis
 Or., Orator
 Phil., Orationes Philippicae in M. Antonium
 Pis., Oratio in Pisonem
 Planc., Oratio pro Plancio
 Q. Fr., Epistulae ad Q. Fratrem
 Rep., De Re Publica
 Sen., De Senectute
 Sex. Rosc., Oratio pro Sex. Roscio
 Sull., Oratio pro Sulla
 Tusc., Tusculanae Disputationes
 Verr., Actio in Verrem
Enn., Ennius (Poems)
Hor., Horace
 A.P., Ars Poetica (Ep. 2.3)
 Ep., Epistulae
 Epod., Epodes
 Od., Odes (Carmina)
 Sat., Satires (Sermones)
Juv., Juvenal (Satires)
Liv., Livy (Ab Urbe Condita)
Lucr., Lucretius (De Natura Rerum)
Mart., Martial (Epigrams)
Macr., Macrobius (Saturnalia)
Nep., Nepos
 Att., Atticus
 Cim., Cimon
 Milt., Miltiades
Ov., Ovid

A.A., Ars Amatoria	Cons. Polyb., Ad Polybium de Consolatione
Am., Amores	Ep., Epistulae
Her., Heroides	Suet., Suetonius
Met., Metamorphoses	Aug., Augustus Caesar
Pers., Persius (Satires)	Caes., Julius Caesar
Petron., Petronius (Satyricon)	Tac., Tacitus
Phaedr., Phaedrus (Fables)	Ann., Annales
Plaut., Plautus	Dial., Dialogus de Oratoribus
Aul., Aulularia	Ter., Terence
Mil., Miles Gloriosus	Ad., Adelphi
Most., Mostellaria	And., Andria
Stich., Stichus	Heaut., Heauton Timoroumenos
Plin., Pliny the Elder	Hec., Hecyra
H.N., Historia Naturalis	Phorm., Phormio
Plin., Pliny the Younger	Veg., Vegetius Renatus
Ep., Epistulae	Mil., De Re Militari
Prop., Propertius (Elegies)	Vell., Velleius Paterculus (Histories)
Publil. Syr., Publilius Syrus (Sententiae)	Virg., Virgil
Quint., Quintilian	Aen., Aeneid
Inst., Institutiones Oratoriae	Ecl., Eclogues
Sall., Sallust	Geor., Georgics
Cat., Catilina	Vulg., Vulgate
Sen., Seneca the Elder	Eccles., Ecclesiastes
Contr., Controversiae	Exod., Exodus
Sen., Seneca the Younger	Gen., Genesis
Brev. Vit., De Brevitate Vitae	
Clem., De Clementia	

OTHER ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	ablative case	conj.	conjunction
abs.	absolute	contr. to fact	contrary to fact
acc.	accusative case	cp.	compare (Lat. <i>comparā</i>)
act.	active voice	dat.	dative case
A.D.	after Christ (Lat. <i>annō dominī</i> , lit., in the year of the Lord)	decl.	declension
adj.	adjective	dep.	deponent
adv.	adverb	e.g.	for example (Lat. <i>exemplī grātiā</i>)
App.	Appendix	Eng.	English
B.C.	before Christ	etc.	and others (Lat. <i>et cētera</i>)
ca.	about (Lat. <i>circā</i>)	f./F./fem.	feminine gender
cen(s).	century(ies)	ff.	and the following (lines, pages)
Ch(s).	Chapter(s)	Fr.	French
cl.	clause	fr.	from
comp.	comparative (degree)	fut.	future tense
compl.	complementary	fut. perf.	future perfect tense
		gen.	genitive case

Ger.	German	pass.	passive voice
Gk.	Greek	perf.	perfect (present perfect) tense
ibid.	in the same place (Lat. <i>ibidem</i>)	pers.	person
id.	the same (Lat. <i>idem</i>)	pl.	plural
i.e.	that is (Lat. <i>id est</i>)	plupf.	pluperfect (past perfect) tense
imper.	imperative mood	P.R.	Practice and Review (sentences)
impers.	impersonal	prep.	preposition
impf.	imperfect tense	pres.	present tense
ind. quest.	indirect question	pron.	pronoun
ind. state.	indirect statement	purp.	purpose
indecl.	indeclinable	ref.	reference
indef.	indefinite	rel.	relative
indic.	indicative mood	Russ.	Russian
inf.	infinitive	sc.	supply, namely (Lat. <i>scilicet</i>)
interj.	interjection	sent.	sentence
Introd.	Introduction	sg.	singular
irreg.	irregular	Sp.	Spanish
It.	Italian	spec.	special
L.A.	<i>Locī Antīquī</i>	S.A.	<i>Sententiae Antīquae</i>
Lat.	Latin	S.S.	Supplementary Syntax
L.I.	<i>Locī Immūtātī</i>		(p. 442–45)
lit.	literally	subj.	subjunctive mood
loc.	locative case	superl.	superlative
m./M./masc.	masculine gender	s.v.	under the word (Lat. <i>sub verbō</i>)
mid.	middle	vb(s).	verb(s)
n./N./neut.	note <i>or</i> neuter gender	voc.	vocative case
no(s).	number(s)	Vocab.	Vocabulary
nom.	nominative case	vs.	as opposed to, in comparison with
obj.	object <i>or</i> objective		(Lat. <i>versus</i>)
p.	page(s)	w.	with
part.	participle		

Index

Page references to illustrations are italicized.

Ab

- with ablative of personal agent, 118–19, 143
- in place constructions, 256

Ablative case

- absolute, 155–57
- of accompaniment, 92, 142
- as adverbial case, 10
- with cardinal numerals, 99, 143
- of cause, 444
- of comparison, 173
- of degree of difference, 444
- of description, 285
- forms of. *See* Declension
- of manner, 92, 142, 143
- of means or instrument, 91–92, 143
- of personal agent, 118–19, 143
- of place from which, 130, 262
- of place where, 142, 262
- with prepositions, 18*n*, 68*n*
 - summary of uses, 142–43
- without prepositions, summary of uses, 143
- of separation, 130–31
- with special deponent verbs, 237–38
- of specification, 443–44
- of time when or within which, 99–100, 143, 263
- usage of, 91–92

Accents, xliii–xliv, 4

Accompaniment, ablative of, 92, 142

Accusative case

- as direct object, 10
- of duration of time, 263
- forms of. *See* Declension
- infinitive in indirect statement with, 164–66
- of place to which, 262

Achilles, 87

Active voice, 2

- deponent verbs, 234–38
- infinitive, 162–63
- participles, 147–48
- perfect system. *See* Perfect system, active voice
- personal endings for, 2–3
- present system
 - 1st and 2nd conjugation, 3–5, 31–33
 - 3rd conjugation, 49–51, 62–64
 - 4th conjugation, 62–63
 - subjunctive, 187, 194

Ad

- with gerundive or gerund, 278
- in place constructions, 262

Adjectives

- 1st declension, 11–12, 14*n*, 25–26, 33, 57–58
- 2nd declension, 17–18, 24–26, 33, 57–58
- 3rd declension, 104–06, 172–73
- agreement of, 12, 25
- comparison of, 171–73. *See also* Superlatives, of adjectives
- declension, 172–73, 181
- formation, 171–72
- irregular formation, 180–81
- summary of forms, 450
- usage and translation, 172–73
- dative case with, 245–46
- demonstrative, 55–57
 - idem, eadem, idem**, 70–71
 - is, ea, id**, 70
- with genitive ending in **-ius** and dative ending in **-i**, 57–58
- interrogative, 124–25
- predicate, 26–27
- reflexive possessives, 84
- substantive, 27

- Adjectives (*cont.*)
 summary of forms, 447
 verbal. *See* Gerundive; Participles
 word order and, 19, 20
- Adverbs, 19
 ablative case and, 10
 comparison of, 220–21
 irregular, 220–21
 summary of forms, 450
 definition of, 10*n*
 formation of, 219–20
- Aeneas, 154, 288–91
- Agamemnon, 53
- Agent
 ablative of, 118–19, 143
 dative of, 157–58
- Agreement
 of adjectives, 12, 25–26
 of relative pronouns, 110–12
 subject-verb, 13
- Alexander the Great, 87, 232
- Allobroges, 133, 259
- Alma-Tadema, Sir Lawrence, 114
- Alphabet, xxxix–xli
- Anglo-Saxon language, xxviii–xxxi
- Antony, Marc, 72, 288
- Apposition, 19
- Archaising Period, xxxvii
- Aristotle, 232
- Arria, 281
- Articles, 11*n*, 60
- Athena (Minerva), 154
- Audiō**, conjugation of, 63
- Augustan Period, xxxv–xxxvi, 25
- Augustine, Saint, xxxvii
- Augustus, xxxv–xxxvi, 21, 23, 159, 161, 217
- Bacon, Francis, xxxviii*n*
- Bede, Caedmon's Anglo-Saxon Verses and the
 Difficulties of Translation, 301–02
- Browne, Sir Thomas, xxxi*n*
- Brutus, Lucius, 79
- Caecina Paetus, 281, 348
- Caelius (Rufus), 183
- Caesar, xxxiv, 79, 128, 161, 176, 266, 272, 274
 The Nations of Gaul, 176
- Caesar of Heisterbach, The Devil and a Thirteenth-
 Century Schoolboy, 302–03
- Capiō**, conjugation of, 64
- Cardinal numerals, 97–99, 451
 ablative with, 99, 143
 genitive with, 99
- Carthage, 40, 154, 159, 290
- Cases
 definition of, 9
 of nouns, 9–11, 13. *See also* Ablative case; Accusa-
 tive case; Dative case; Declension; Genitive
 case; Locative case; Nominative case; Voca-
 tive case
- Catiline (Lucius Sergius Catilina), 73, 95, 133, 208,
 210, 218, 240, 258–59
- Catullus, xxxiii–xxxiv, 201, 209, 266, 304–07
 Alley Cat, 183
 Ask Me if I Care, 273
 Bids a Bitter Farewell to Lesbia, 128
 Bids His Girlfriend Farewell, 15
 B.Y.O.B., etc., etc., 231–32
 Death of a Pet Sparrow, 305–06
 Dedicates His Poetry Book, 47
 A Dedication, 304–05
 Disillusionment, 292–93
 Frāter Avē, Atque Valē, 306–07
 Give Me a Thousand Kisses!, 216
 How Many Kisses?, 199, 305
 I Love Her . . . I Love Her Not, 258
 On Lesbia's Husband, 242–43
 Promises, Promises!, 281
 Thanks a Lot, Tully!, 183–84
- Causā**, with genitive phrase, 278
- Cause, ablative of, 444
- Characteristic, relative clauses of, 269–70
- Cicero, xxxiii–xxxiv, xxxvii–xxxviii, 30, 53, 72, 152,
 183, 210, 217, 218, 250, 291, 307–25
 The Aged Playwright Sophocles Holds His Own,
 127
 Alexander the Great and the Power of Litera-
 ture, 87
 On Ambition and Literature, Both Latin and
 Greek, 146
 anecdotes from, 322–25
 The Arrest and Trial of the Conspirators, 311–16
 The Authority of a Teacher's Opinion, 87
 On Contempt of Death, 319–20
 Cyrus' Dying Words on Immortality, 101
 Death of a Puppy (Example of an Omen), 322
 Denounces Catiline in the Senate, 73
 Derivation of "Philosophus" and Subjects of Phi-
 losophy, 294–95
 Dē Vītā et Morte, 316–20

Cicero (*cont.*)

- On the Ethics of Waging War, 53
- Evidence and Confession, 208–09
- Fabian Tactics, 102
- Get the Tusculan Country House Ready, 325
- How Demosthenes Overcame His Handicaps, 293
- Imagines the State of Rome Itself Urging Him to Punish the Catilinarian Conspirators, 95
- The Incomparable Value of Friendship, 66
- Literature: Its Value and Delight, 320–22
- Mārcus Quīntō Frātrī S., 267
- A More Positive View About Immortality, 317–19
- The Most Pitiful Speech I've Ever Heard!, 273
- The Nervousness of Even a Great Orator, 200
- Oh, Give Me a Figgy Sprig, 273
- On the Pleasures of Love in Old Age, 114
- Quam Multa Nōn Dēsīderō!, 323
- The Rarity of Friendship, 29
- Socrates' "Either-Or" Belief, 316–17
- Sorry, Nobody's Home!, 251
- The Sword of Damocles, 294
- Testimony Against the Conspirators, 258–59
- Themistocles; Fame and Expediency, 324–25
- Thermopylae: A Soldier's Humor, 35–36
- Too Conscientious (An Example of Irony), 322–23
- Two Examples of Roman Wit, 273
- Two Letters to, 274
- The Tyrant Can Trust No One, 293–94
- Urges Catiline's Departure from Rome, 133
- On the Value and the Nature of Friendship, 295–96
- The Value of Literature, 290
- Vitriolic Denunciation of the Leader of a Conspiracy Against the Roman State, 307–11
- On War, 296–97
- What Makes a Good Appetite, 323–24
- Your Loss, My Gain, 232–33

Ciceronian Period, xxxiii–xxxv

Cimon, 225

Cincinnatus, 168

Circus Maximus, 120

Claudius, 241

Clauses

- participial phrases translated as, 150
- subjunctive, 186
 - conditional sentences, 229
 - cum**, 211–12
 - fear, 285
 - indirect questions, 204
 - jussive, 188

Clauses (*cont.*)

- jussive noun, 253
- proviso, 223
- purpose, 189, 196, 253
- relative clause of characteristic, 269
- result, 196–97
- subordinate, 124
 - in indirect discourse, 444
- Cleopatra, 273
- Cognate languages, xxviii–xxxii
- Collatinus, 47
- Commands
 - imperative, 5, 50, 51, 63, 188, 213, 223, 237, 261
 - jussive noun clauses, 253–54
 - jussive subjunctive, 188
 - negative, **nōlō** and, 223
- Comparison (comparative degree)
 - ablative of, 173
 - of adjectives, 171–73. *See also* Superlatives, of adjectives
 - declension, 172–73, 181
 - formation, 171–72
 - summary of forms, 450
 - usage and translation, 172–73
 - of adverbs, 220–21
 - irregular, 220–21
 - summary of forms, 450
- Complementary infinitive, 38–39
- Compound verbs, dative case with, 247–48
- Conditional sentences, 228–30
 - indicative, 228–29
 - subjunctive, 229
- Conjugation. *See also* First conjugation; Fourth conjugation; Second conjugation; Third conjugation
 - definition of, 2
 - of deponent verbs, 234–37
 - personal endings for. *See* Personal endings
 - summary of forms of, 452–60
- Conjunction, **cum** as, 211
- Consonants, pronunciation of, xlii
- Constantine, 88
- Cornelius Nepos, 47
- Cum**, with ablative case, 92, 142
- Cum** clauses, 211–12
- Cyrus the Great, 101
- Dante, xxxviii
- Dative case
 - with adjectives, 245–46

Dative case (*cont.*)

- of agent, 157–58
- with compound verbs, 247–48
- forms of. *See* Declension
- general use of, 10
- of possession, 443
- of purpose, 443
- of reference or interest, 270
- with special verbs, 246–47

Dē

- ablative case with, 99, 143
- in place constructions, 262

Declension, xxxviii

- 1st, 11–12, 14*n*
 - adjectives, 11–12, 25–26, 33, 57–58
- 2nd, 17–19
 - adjectives, 33, 57–58
 - masculines ending in **-er**, 18
 - masculines ending in **-us**, 17–18
 - neuters, 24–26
- 3rd, 43–44
 - adjectives, 104–06, 172–73
 - i-stem nouns, 89–91, 105
- 4th, 129–30
- 5th, 141–42
- of adjectives, summary of forms, 447
- definition of, 11
- of gerund, 276–77
- of participles, 148–49
- of pronouns
 - demonstratives, 55–56, 70–71
 - intensive, 85
 - personal, 67–68
 - reflexive, 82–83
 - relative, 110
- use of term, 11*n*

Definite article, 11*n*, 60

Degree of difference, ablative of, 444

Demonstratives

- hic**, **ille**, **iste**, 55–57
- īdem**, **eadem**, **idem**, 70–71
- is**, **ea**, **id**, 70
- usage and translation of, 56–57

Demosthenes, 132, 199

Deponent verbs, 234–38

- ablative case with, 237–38
- definition of, 234
- principal parts and conjugation of, 234–37
- semideponent, 237
- summary of forms of, 455–57

Derived languages, xxviii–xxxi

Descartes, 30

Description, genitive and ablative of, 285–86

Diēs Ūrae, 146

Dionysius, 40, 101, 113, 183, 266

Diphthongs, pronunciation of, xli

Direct object, 2, 19

accusative case and, 10

Direct questions, **-ne**, **num**, and **nōne**, 284**Domus**, in place constructions, 262

Dufresnoy, Charles, 208

Dummodo, 223

Early Period of Latin literature, xxxii–xxxiii

Ego/nōs

declension of, 67–68

usage of, 68–70

Endings

- 1st declension, 11–12, 19
- 2nd declension, 17–19, 24–25
- 3rd declension, 43–44, 105
- 4th declension, 129–30
- 5th declension, 141
- i-stem, 89–91, 105
- personal
 - deponent verbs, 234
 - perfect system active, 77
 - present system active, 2
 - present system passive, 116–17

English language, xxvii–xxxii

Ennius, 102, 251

Eō, conjugation of, 260–61**-er** adjectives, 1st and 2nd declension, 33

Erasmus, xxxviii

Etruria, 227

Etymology. *See also last section of each chapter*

definition of, 15–16

Ex

- ablative case with, 99, 143
- in place constructions, 262

Fabius Maximus, Quintus, 102, 232–33

Fear clauses, 285

Ferō, conjugation of, 212–13

Fifth declension, 141–42

summary of forms of, 446

Finite verbs, 82

Fīō, conjugation of, 254–55

First conjugation

future indicative

First conjugation (*cont.*)

active, 31–32

passive, 117

imperative, 5

imperfect indicative

active, 31–32

passive, 117

present indicative

active, 4

passive, 116–17

present infinitive

active, 3

passive, 117

subjunctive, 186–87, 194, 202–03

summary of forms of, 452–55

First declension, 11–12, 14*n*

2nd declension compared with, 19

adjectives, 11–12, 25–26

ending in **-er**, 33

summary of forms of, 446–47

Fourth conjugation, 62–63

future indicative

active, 63

passive, 135–36

imperative, 63

imperfect indicative

active, 63

passive, 136

present indicative

active, 62

passive, 135

present infinitive

active, 63

passive, 136

subjunctive, 186–87, 194, 202–03

summary of forms of, 452–55

Fourth declension, 129–30

summary of forms of, 446

Fronto, xxxvii

Fundanus, Minicius, 80

Future indicative

deponent verbs, 235

of **possum**, 38of **sum**, 37

Future indicative active

1st and 2nd conjugation, 31–32

3rd conjugation, 49, 50

4th conjugation, 63

Future indicative passive

1st and 2nd conjugation, 117

Future indicative passive (*cont.*)

3rd and 4th conjugation, 135–36

Future passive participle. *See* Gerundive

Future perfect

active, 77–78

deponent verbs, 235

passive, 122

Future tense, translation of, 32

Gaul, 176

Gellius, xxxvii

Gender

1st declension, 12

2nd declension, 17–18

neuters, 24–26

3rd declension, 44, 90

4th declension, 129

5th declension, 141

Genitive case

with cardinal numerals, 99

of description, 285

forms of. *See* Declension

general use of, 10

of material, 442

objective, 69*n*, 442–43partitive (of the whole), 69*n*, 98–99

possessive, 10

of the whole (partitive genitive), 69*n*, 98–99

Gerundive (future passive participle), 147, 276, 281

gerund compared with, 277

in passive periphrastic, 155, 157

phrases, 277–78

Gerunds, 276–78, 281

declension of, 276–77

gerundive compared with, 277

phrases, 277–78

gladiators, 243–44

Golden Age, xxxiii–xxxv, xxxviii

Greek alphabet, xxxix

Greek literature, xxxiii

Hamilcar, 102, 281

Hannibal, 102, 281–82

Hic

declension of, 55, 56

is compared with, 56

use and translation of, 56–57

Homer, 87, 114, 145

Horace, xxxv, 7, 185, 291, 337–43
 Aurea Mediocritās—The Golden Mean, 338–40
 Autobiographical Notes, 298–99
 “Carpe Diem,” 337
 Contemplates an Invitation, 7
 Dē Cupiditate, 159–60
 Diēs Fēstus, 342
 The Grass Is Always Greener, 22
 Integer Vitae, 337–38
 Lābuntur Annī, 340–41
 Longs for the Simple, Peaceful Country Life on
 His Sabine Farm, 299
 A Monument More Lasting than Bronze, 290,
 342–43
 The Satirist’s Modus Operandi, 160
 A Sense of Balance in Life, 341–42
 Who Is Truly Free?, 258

Humus, in place constructions, 262

Īdem, eadem, idem, 70–71

Ille

declension of, 55, 56
 etymology and, 60
 is compared with, 70
 use and translation of, 56–57

Imperative, 188

1st and 2nd conjugation, 5
 3rd conjugation, 50, 51, 63
 4th conjugation, 63
 definition of, 2
 of deponent verbs, 237
nōlō, 223

Imperfect indicative

deponent verbs, 235
 of **possum**, 38
 of **sum**, 37

Imperfect indicative active

1st and 2nd conjugation, 31–33
 3rd conjugation, 50–51, 63
 4th conjugation, 63

Imperfect indicative passive

1st and 2nd conjugation, 117
 3rd and 4th conjugation, 136

Imperfect subjunctive, 194–95

deponent verbs, 236
 usage and translation of, 195–96

Imperfect tense

perfect (present perfect) tense compared with,
 77–78
 translation, 32–33

Impersonal verbs, 264*n*

In

with ablative case, 142
 in place constructions, 262

Indefinite article, 11*n*, 60

Indicative, xxxviii*n*

definition of, 2
 future. *See* Future indicative; Future indicative ac-
 tive; Future indicative passive
 imperfect. *See* Imperfect indicative; Imperfect in-
 dicative active; Imperfect indicative passive;
 Imperfect tense
 present. *See* Present indicative; Present indicative
 active; Present indicative passive
 subjunctive compared with, 186

Indicative conditional sentences, 228–29

Indirect command (jussive noun clauses), 253–54

Indirect object, 10, 19

Indirect questions, 204

Indirect statement (indirect discourse)

definition of, 164
 infinitive in, with accusative subject, 164–66
 list of verbs followed by, 167
 subordinate clauses in, 444

Indo-European languages, xxviii–xxx, xxxii*n*

Infinitive, 162–66

complementary, 38–39
 definition of, 3*n*
 of deponent verbs, 236–37
 to distinguish the conjugations, 3, 50
 in indirect statement, with accusative subject,
 164–66

irregular verbs

possum, posse, potuī, 38
sum, 26

objective, 445

present passive, 117, 136

usage of, 163

Instrument (means), ablative of, 91–92

Intensive pronouns, 85

Interest, dative of, 270

Interrogative adjectives, 124–25

Interrogative pronouns, 123–24

Intransitive verbs, 26. *See also* **sum**

-iō verbs

conjugation of, 62–64
 participles, 148
 subjunctive, 186–87, 194

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum, 85

Irregular verbs

eō, 260–61
ferō, 212–13

Irregular verbs (*cont.*)**fiō**, 254–55**mālō**, 222**nālō**, 222–23**possum**, 38, 195**sum**, 26, 37, 157, 195

summary of forms of, 457–60

volō, 221–22**Is, ea, id**

declension of, 68

as demonstrative, 70

usage of, 68–70

Isidore of Seville, xxxviii

The Days of the Week, 192

Iste, declension of, 56**I-stem** nouns of 3rd declension, 89–91, 105**Iubeō**, with jussive noun clauses, 254

Jerome, Saint, xxxvii

Johnson, Samuel, xxxvii

Jussive noun clauses, 253–54

Jussive subjunctive, 188

Juvenal, xxxvi–xxxvii, 36, 210

Explains His Impulse to Satire, 109

Latin language, in linguistic history, xxvii–xxxii

Latin literature

brief survey of, xxxii–xxxix

“vulgar,” xxvii, xxxvii–xxxviii

Lentulus, 208, 258–59

Leonidas, 35–36

Lesbia, 183, 199, 216, 242

Linking verbs, intransitive, 26. *See also* **sum**

Livy, xxxv

On the Death of Cicero, 326

Laments the Decline of Roman Morals, 40–41

The Rape of Lucretia, 47

Locative case, 262

Lucretia, rape of, 47

Lucretius, xxxiii

Maccari, Cesare, 73

Macrobius, *Facētia* (Witticisms), 217

Macrons, xli, 4

Maecenas, 7, 21

Mālō

conjugation of, 222

with jussive noun clauses, 254

Manlius, 133

Manner, ablative of, 92, 142, 143

Martial, xxxvi, 353–54

A Covered Dish Dinner!, 209

Dialus Still Buries His Clients, 81

Even Though You Do Invite Me—I’ll Come!, 354

Fake Tears, 354

The Good Life, 177

To Have Friends One Must Be Friendly, 192

His Only Guest Was a Real Boar!, 35

“I Do.” “I Don’t!,” 251

“I Do Not Love Thee, Doctor Fell,” 40

I Don’t Cook for Cooks!, 258

Issa, 355

It’s All in the Delivery, 114

Large Gifts—Yes, but Only Bait, 301

A Legacy-Hunter’s Wish, 209

Maronilla Has a Cough, 251

Message from a Bookcase, 128

Note on a Book by Lucan, 273

Note on a Copy of Catullus’ *Carmina*, 209–10

Oh, I’d Love to Read You My Poems . . . Not!, 258

The Old Boy Dyed His Hair, 353

Paete, *Nōn* Dolet, 281

Please . . . Don’t!, 226

Please Remove My Name from Your Mailing List!, 191

Pretty Is as Pretty Does, 242

Pro-*cras*-tination, 354

The Quality of Martial’s Book, 257

The Rich Get Richer, 232

Ringo, 217

Store Teeth, 94–95

Summer Vacation, 252

On a Temperamental Friend, 109

Thanks . . . but No Thanks!, 266

A Vacation . . . from You!, 226

And Vice Is Not Nice!, 242

A Visit from the Young Interns, 145

What’s in a Name?, 335

When I Have . . . Enough!, 59

You’re All Just Wonderful!, 200

Material, genitive of, 442

Matthew, The Lord’s Prayer, 301

Means (instrument), ablative of, 91–92, 143

Medieval Period, xxxvii–xxxviii

Middle English, xxxi

Milo, 215

Milton, John, xxxviii

Minerva (Athena), 154

Mood

definition of, 2

imperative, 2, 5, 50, 63, 237

- Mood (*cont.*)
 indicative, 2
 subjunctive, 2, 186–87
- More, Sir Thomas, xxxviii
- Mycenae, 53
- ne, num, nōne**, in direct questions, 284–85
- Nepos, xxxv, 47, 327–37
 Aristides the Just, 333–35
 The Character of Cimon, 225
 Hannibal; The Second Punic War, 297–98
 Hannibal and the Beginnings of the Second Punic War, 281–82
 Miltiades and the Battle of Marathon, 327–30
 Themistocles and the Battle of Salamis, 330–33
 Timoleon, 335–37
- Newton, Sir Isaac, xxxviii
- Nōlō**
 conjugation of, 222–23
 with jussive noun clauses, 254
 negative commands and, 223
- Nominative case
 forms of. *See* Declension
 as subject, 10
- Nouns
 1st declension, 11–12
 2nd declension, 17–19, 24–25
 3rd declension, 43–44, 89–91
 4th declension, 129–30
 5th declension, 141–42
 in apposition, 19
 cases of, 9–11, 13. *See also* Ablative case; Accusative case; Dative case; Declension; Genitive case; Nominative case; Vocative case
 predicate, 26–27
 substantive adjectives as, 27
 summary of forms, 446–47
 verbal. *See* Gerund; Infinitive; Supine
- Number, 1, 13
- Numerals, 97–98, 451
 cardinal, 97–99, 451
 ablative case, 99, 143
 ordinal, 98, 451
- Objective genitives, 69, 442–43
- Objective infinitive, 445
- Object of verb
 direct, 2, 10, 19
 indirect, 10, 19
- Odo de Cerinton. Who Will Put the Bell on the Cat's Neck!, 302
- Ordinal numerals, 98, 451
- Orestes, 192
- Ovid, xxxvi, 291
 Asks the Gods to Inspire His Work, 250–51
 On Death and Metamorphosis, 121
- Paetus, Caecina, 281
- Pannini, Giovanni, 96
- Paradigms
 meaning and use of, 3
 said aloud, 3–4
- Participles (participial phrases), 147–53. *See also* Gerundive
 ablative absolute, 155–57
 declension of, 148–49
 of deponent verbs, 236–37
 passive periphrastic, 155, 157
 translation of
 as clauses, 150
 as verbal adjectives, 147, 149–50
- Partitive genitive, 69
- Passive periphrastic (gerundive + **sum**), 155, 157
- Passive voice, 2
 definition of, 118
 infinitive, 162–63
 participles in, 147–48
 perfect system, 122
 subjunctive, 203
 usage and translation, 123
 present system
 1st and 2nd conjugation, 116–18
 3rd and 4th conjugation, 135–36
 subjunctive, 188, 194
- Patristic Period, xxxvii
- Perfect indicative
 active, 77
 deponent verbs, 235
 passive, 122
 imperfect tense compared with, 77–78
 translation of, 77–78
- Perfect subjunctive
 active, 202
 deponent verbs, 236
 passive, 202–03
- Perfect system
 active voice, 75–78
 perfect active stem and, 76–77
 principal parts, 75–76
 usage, translation and distinction from the imperfect, 77–78
 definition of, 75

- Perfect system (*cont.*)
 passive voice, 122–23
 usage and translation, 123
 subjunctive, 202–03
- Periodic style, 19–20
- Periphrasis, definition of, 157*n*
- Persia, 35–36, 132, 215
- Persius, 291
- Person, 1, 13
- Personal agent, ablative of, 118–19, 143
- Personal endings
 active voice, 2–3, 77
 passive voice, 116
- Personal pronouns, 67–70
 declension of, 67–68
 definition of, 67
 reflexive pronouns compared with, 83–84
 usage of, 68–70
- Petrarch, xxxviii
- Petronius, xxxvi
 Trimalchio's epitaph, 266–67
- Phaedrus, 343–46
 The Ass and the Old Shepherd, 345
 Dē Cupiditāte, 160
 The Fox and the Tragic Mask, 343–44
 The Fox Gets the Raven's Cheese, 344–45
 The Other Person's Faults and Our Own, 343
 Sour Grapes, 343
 The Stag at the Spring, 344
 The Two Mules and the Robbers, 345–46
- Phonetic change, 435–36
- Phrases
 gerund and gerundive, 277–78
 participial
 ablative absolute, 155–57
 translation, 150
- Pittoni, Giovanni, 102
- Place constructions, 261–62
 from which, 130, 143, 262
 to which, 262
 where, 142, 262
- Plato, 152
- Plautus, xxxiii, xxxviii
- Pliny, xxxvi, 346–53
 On Behalf of a Penitent Freedman, 351–52
 Concern about a Sick Freedman, 350–51
 Delights of the Country, 346–47
 Endows a School, 300
 Faithful in Sickness and in Death, 348–49
 Happy Married Life, 347–48
 Selection of a Teacher, 352–53
- Pliny (*cont.*)
 A Sweet, Brave Girl, 349–50
 What Pliny Thinks of the Races, 300
 Why No Letters?, 300
 Writes to Marcellinus about the Death of Fundanus' Daughter, 80–81
- Pluperfect (past perfect), usage of, 78
- Pluperfect indicative
 active, 77
 deponent verbs, 234
 passive, 122
- Pluperfect subjunctive, 202–03
 deponent verbs, 236
- Plūs**, declension of, 181
- Polyphemus, 108
- Pompeii, 40, 42, 209
- Pompey, 274
- Pontilianus, 191
- Possession
 dative of, 443
 genitive case and, 10
- Possessives, reflexive, 84
- Possum**
 with complementary infinitive, 38–39
 conjugation of, 38
 subjunctive, 195
- Postpositive word, 34
- Praeneste, 139
- Predicate, definition of, 26
- Predicate adjectives, 26–27
- Predicate nouns, 26–27
- Prefixes, 436–40
- Prepositions, xxxviii
 with ablative case, 10–11, 18*n*, 68*n*, 142–43
 with accusative case, 10
 definition of, 10*n*
 object of, 10
 in place constructions, 261–62
- Present imperative active
 1st and 2nd conjugation, 5
 3rd conjugation, 50, 51, 63
 4th conjugation, 63
- Present imperative passive, deponent verbs, 237
- Present indicative
 deponent verbs, 235
 of **possum**, 38
 of **sum**, 26
- Present indicative active
 1st and 2nd conjugation, 4
 3rd conjugation, 49, 50, 62
 4th conjugation, 62

Present indicative passive

1st and 2nd conjugation, 116–17

3rd and 4th conjugation, 135–36

Present stems. *See* Stems of verbs, present

Present subjunctive

conjugation of, 186–87

deponent verbs, 235

of **possum**, 195of **sum**, 195

translation of, 188–89

Present system

1st and 2nd conjugation

imperative, 5

indicative, 3–4, 31–32, 116–18

subjunctive, 186–87, 194

3rd conjugation

imperative, 50, 51

indicative, 49–51, 62–64, 135–36

subjunctive, 186–87, 194

4th conjugation

imperative, 63

indicative, 62–63, 135–36

subjunctive, 186–87, 194

definition of, 75

Pronouns

demonstrative

hic, **ille**, **iste**, 55–57**idem**, **eadem**, **idem**, 70–71**is**, **ea**, **id**, 70

intensive, 85

interrogative, 123–24

personal, 67–70

declension, 67–68

definition of, 67–68

reflexive pronouns compared with, 83–84

usage, 68–70

reflexive, 82–84

personal compared with, 83–84

relative, 110–12

declension, 110

interrogative adjectives compared with,
124–25

usage and agreement, 110–11

summary of forms of, 448–49

Pronunciation, xxxix–xliv

accent and, xliii–xliv

of consonants, xlii

of diphthongs, xli

syllables and, xlii–xliii

of vowels, xli, 4

Propertius, xxxvi

Proviso clauses, 223

Publius Syrus, xxxv

Purpose, dative of, 443

Purpose clauses, 189, 196

jussive noun clauses compared with, 253

Pylades, 192

Pyrrhus, 168, 170

Pythagoras, 87–88

Quam

with comparative and superlative adjectives, 173

with comparative and superlative adverbs, 220

Questions

direct, **-ne**, **num**, and **nōne**, 284

indirect, 204

Quī, quae, quod

as interrogative adjectives, 124–25

as relative pronouns, 110–12

Quīdam, 99

Quintilian, xxxvi

Aristotle, Tutor of Alexander the Great, 232

Raphael, 88

Reading passages. *See specific authors*

Reference, dative of, 270

Reflexive possessives, 84

Reflexive pronouns, 82–84

personal pronouns compared with, 83–84

Regulus, 280

Relative clauses of characteristic, 269–70

Relative pronouns, 110–12

declension of, 110

interrogative adjectives compared with, 124–25

usage and agreement, 110–12

Result clauses, 196–200

Romance languages, xxix, xxxvii, 44*n*etymology and, 22, 29–30, 48, 60, 73, 95, 102, 114,
139, 146, 178, 184–85, 193, 200, 275, 282

Rome, 8, 96, 265

Rubicon river, 128, 274

Rūs, in place constructions, 262

Salinator, Marcus Livius, 232–33

Schoenfeld, Johann, 282

Scipio Nasica, 251

Second conjugation

future indicative

active, 31–32

passive, 117

imperfect indicative

active, 31–32

Second conjugation (*cont.*)

- passive, 117
- present indicative
 - active, 4
 - passive, 116–17
- present infinitive
 - active, 3
 - passive, 117
- subjunctive, 186–87, 194, 202–03
- summary of forms of, 452–55

Second declension, 17–19

- 1st declension compared with, 19
- adjectives, 25–26
 - in **-er**, 33
- masculines in **-er**, 18
- masculines in **-us**, 17–18
- neuters, 24–26
- summary of forms of, 446–47

Semi-deponent verbs, 237

Seneca, xxxvi, 60

Claudius' excremental expiration, 241

When I Have . . . Enough!, 59–60

Separation, ablative of, 130–31, 143

Shakespeare, William, xxxiii

Silver Age, xxxvi–xxxvii

Socrates, 152, 168, 208

Solon, 257

Sophocles, 79, 127

Specification, ablative of, 443–44

Stems of participles, 147–48

Stems of verbs

- perfect active, 76–77
- present
 - 1st and 2nd conjugation, 3, 5
 - 3rd conjugation, 50
 - 4th conjugation, 63

Sub

- with ablative case, 142
- in place constructions, 262

Subject, 19, 26*n*

- agreement of with verb, 13
- of indicative, accusative case, 164–66
- nominative case as, 10

Subject-object-verb (SOV) pattern, 5

Subjunctive, xxxviii, 186–89, 194–97, 202–05

- clauses, 186
 - conditional sentences, 229
 - cum**, 211–12
 - fear, 285
 - indirect questions, 204
 - jussive, 188, 253–54

Subjunctive (*cont.*)

- proviso, 223
- purpose, 189, 196, 253
- relative clause of characteristic, 269
- result, 196–97
 - subjunctive by attraction, 258
- definition of, 2, 186
- of deponent verbs, 235–36
- imperfect, 194–97
 - usage and translation, 195–96
- perfect, 202–03
- pluperfect, 202–03
- of **possum**, 195
- present, 186–87, 195
- of **sum**, 195
- translation of, 188, 195–96, 203

Subordinate clauses, 124

- in indirect discourse, 444

Substantive adjectives, 27

Suffixes, 440–42

Sum

- conjugation of
 - future and imperfect indicative, 37
 - present indicative, 26
 - subjunctive, 195
- with gerundive, 155, 157
- with predicate nouns or adjectives, 26–27

Superlatives

- of adjectives
 - declension, 172
 - irregular formation, 179–80
 - peculiar formation, 178–79
 - regular formation, 171–72
 - usage and translation, 172–73
- of adverbs, 220–21

Supine, 270–71

Syllables, xlii–xliii

Synopsis, 136

Syntax, 13

Tacitus, xxxvi

Tarquinius Superbus, 47, 159

Tarquinius, Sextus, 47

Tense(s)

- definition of, 2
- future, 31–32, 37, 38, 49, 50, 63, 75, 117, 135–36
- future perfect, 77, 78
- imperfect, 75
 - indicative, 31–33, 37, 38, 50–51, 63, 117, 136
 - subjunctive, 194–97
- infinitive, 163, 165

Tense(s) (*cont.*)

- participles, 147–48
- perfect
 - indicative, 77–78
 - subjunctive, 202–03
- pluperfect
 - indicative, 77, 78
 - subjunctive, 202–03
- present, 26, 38, 75
 - imperative, 5
 - indicative, 3–5, 38, 49, 50, 62, 116–17, 135
 - subjunctive, 186–87, 195
- sequence of, 204–06
- subjunctive, 186

Terence, xxxiii, 48

- An Uncle's Love for His Nephew and Adopted Son, 184

Themistocles, 132, 215

Thermopylae, 35–36, 168

Third conjugation, 49–51

- future indicative
 - active, 49, 50
 - passive, 135–36
- imperfect indicative
 - active, 50–51
 - passive, 136
- iō** verbs, 62–64
- present indicative
 - active, 49, 50
 - passive, 135
- present infinitive
 - active, 50, 62
 - passive, 136
- subjunctive, 186–87, 194, 202–03
- summary of forms of, 452–55

Third declension, 43–44

- adjectives, 104–06
- usage, 106
- i-stem nouns, 89–91, 105
- summary of forms of, 446–47

Time constructions, 263

Time when or within

- ablative of, 99–100, 143, 263

Transitive verbs

- definition of, 2
- infinitive, 162
- participles of, 147
- voice and, 2

Translation, 5

- 3rd declension and, 44

Translation (*cont.*)

- of comparative adjectives, 172–73
- of demonstratives, 56–57
- of future tense, 32
- of imperfect tense, 32–33
- of **is, ea, id**, 70
- of perfect passive system, 123
- of perfect tense, 77
- of relative pronouns, 112
- of subjunctive, 188, 195–96, 203
- Troy, 152–54, 168–70, 191, 289–90

Tū/vōs

- declension of, 67–68
- usage of, 68–70

Ūnus, etymology and, 60

UNUS NAUTA, 57–58

Verbs. *See also* Conjugation; Mood; Tense(s); Voice

- agreement of with subject, 13
- auxiliary, xxxviii
- characteristics of, 1–2
- dative case with
 - compound verbs, 247–48
 - special verbs, 246–47
- deponent, 234–38
 - summary of forms of, 455–57
- finite, 82
- intransitive, 26. *See also* **sum**
 - infinitive, 162
- irregular. *See* Irregular verbs
- transitive, 2
 - infinitive, 162
 - participles, 147
 - word order and, 5, 19–20

Virgil, xxxv, 7, 154, 209, 290–91

The Death of Laocoon . . . and Troy, 168–69

Jupiter Prophesies to Venus the Future Glory of Rome, 288–89

Laocoon Speaks Out Against the Trojan Horse, 152–53

Messianic Eclogue, 139

Vīs, declension of, 91Vocative case, forms of. *See* DeclensionVoice. *See also* Active voice; Passive voice

- definition of, 2

Volō

- conjugation of, 221–22
- with jussive noun clauses, 254

Vowels, pronunciation of, xli, 4

Vulgate, xxviin, xxxv

West, Benjamin, 192

Whole, genitive of the (partitive genitive), 98–99

Wilson, Thomas, xxxin

Word order, 13, 19

Xenophon, 138

Xerxes, 36

Location of the Sententiae Antiquae

1. (1) Pers., Sat. 6.27. (2) Plaut., Most. 1.3.30.
(3) Suet., Aug. 25 (4) Hor., Sat. 1.2.11.
(5) Sen., Clem. 1.2.2. (6) Cic., Sest. 67.141.
(7) Cic., Cat. 4.3. (8) Virg., Aen. 3.121 and
4.173 and 184. (9) Ter., Heaut. 190 et pas-
sim. (10) Cic., Fam. 2.16.4. (11) Hor., Sat.
1.9.78. (12) Hor., Sat. 1.10.81–83.
(13) Cic., Cat. 1.12.30. (14) Cic., Inv. 1.1.1.
(15) Publil. Syr. 321.
2. (1) Plaut., Stich. 5.2.2. (2) Virg., Aen. 3.121.
(3) Ter., Ad. 5.8.937. (4) Cic., Marcell. 4.12.
(5) Cic., Verr. 2.4.54. (6) Hor., Sat. 2.7.22–
24. (7) Sen., Ep. 8.1. (8) Sen., Ep. 17.5.
(9) Cic., Fin. 3.1.2. (10) Sen., Ep. 8.5.
(11) Sen., Ep. 18.14, De Ira 1.1.2; cp. Ch. 16
S.A.8. (12) Sen., Ep. 18.15. (13) Sen., Ep.
115.16. (14) Hor., Od. 3.11.45. (15) Cic.,
Pis. 10.22.
3. (1) Cic., Cat. 4.1. (2) Hor., Sat. 2.6.41.
(3) Phaedr., Fab. I. Prologus 4. (4) Cic.,
Tusc. 5.3.9. (5) Hor., Sat. 2.7.84 and 88.
(6) Nep., Cim. 4. (7) Hor., Ep. 1.2.56.
(8) Sen., Ep. 94.43. (9) Publil. Syr., 56.
(10) Publil. Syr. 697. (11) Sen., Clem. 1.2.2.
4. (1) Cic., Am. 15.54. (2) Ter., Heaut. 2.3.295–
296. (3) Ter., Ad. 5.9.961. (4) Hor., Sat.
1.4.114. (5) Proverbial; cp. Cic., Phil. 12.2.5.
(6) Hor., Od. 2.16.27–28. (7) Sen., De Ira II
18ff. and III init.; cp. Ter., Phor. 1.4.185.
(8) Virg., Ecl. 5.61. (9) Hor., Sat. 1.1.25.
(10) Ter., Ad. 4.5.701–702. (11) Catull. 5.7.
(12) Vulg., Eccles. 1.15. (13) Cic., Am.
21.79. (14) Pers., Sat. 6.27. (15) Cic., Cat.
1.4.9.
5. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.9.23. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.13.31.
(3) Cic., Off. 1.20.68. (4) Ov., Her. 3.85.
(5) Cic., Fam. 14.3.1 (6) Ter., Ad. 5.8.937.
(7) Ter., Ad. 5.9.992–993. (8) Cic., Att. 2.2.
(9) Sen., Cons. Polyb. 9.6. (10) Ter., Ad.
5.8.937. (11) Sen., Ep. 17.5. (12) Virg., Ecl.
5.78. (13) Hor., Ep. 2.3.445–446 (Ars Po-
etica).
6. (1) Cic., Tusc. 5.20.57. (2) Cic., Tusc. 5.21.61.
(3) Cic., Cat. 3.1.3. (4) Cic., Cat. 3.12.29.
(5) Cic., Cat. 1.6.13. (6) Liv. 21.1.2.
(7) Cic., Arch. 3.5. (8) Sen., Ep. 73.16.
(9) Publil. Syr. 302. (10) Publil. Syr. 282.
7. (1) Ter., Heaut. 1.1.77. (2) Vulg., Eccles. 1.10.
(3) Hor., Od. 3.1.2–4. (4) Hor., Sat. 2.7.22–
23. (5) Hor., Ep. 1.16.52. (6) Mart.
12.6.11–12. (7) Hor., Sat. 1.6.15–16.
(8) Cic.; cp. graffiti. (9) Sen., Ep. 82.2.
(10) Cic., Phil. 10.10.20. (11) Hor., Sat.
1.9.59–60. (12) Cic., Cat. 3.12.29.
(13) Vulg., Luke 2.14.
8. (1) Ter., Ad. 5.4.863. (2) Ter., Heaut. 3.1.432.
(3) Laberius; see Macr. 2.7. (4) Cic., Cat.
3.1.3. (5) Publil. Syr. 507; also Macr. 2.7.
(6) Sen., Ep. 8.3. (7) Catull. 49. (8) Liv.
26.50.1. (9) Cic., Tusc. 1.42.98. (10) Cic.,
Arch. 11.26. (11) Cic., Marcell. 5.15.
(12) Hor., Ep. 2.2.65–66. (13) Hor., Ep.
1.2.1–2. (14) Sen., Ep. 106.12. (15) Sen.,
Ep. 7.8. (16) Liv. 22.39.21.
9. (1) Ter., Phor. 4.5.727. (2) Ter., Phor. 4.3.670.
(3) Ter., Heaut. 4.3.709. (4) Cic., Am.
27.102. (5) Ter., Phor. 3.3.539. (6) Cic.,
Cat. 1.13.31. (7) Cic., Cat. 1.4.9. (8) Mart.
10.72.4. (9) Liv. 22.39.10.
10. (1) Cic., Off. 1.20.68. (2) Ter., Ad. 4.3.593.
(3) Ter., Ad. 3.2.340. (4) Mart. 6.70.15.
(5) Cic., Clu. 18.51. (6) Lucr. 6.93–95.
(7) Pers. 5.153. (8) Hor., Epod. 13.3–4.
(9) Cic., Sen. 19.67. (10) Virg., Georg. 3.284.
(11) Virg., Aen. 3.395. (12) Publil. Syr. 764.
(13) Cic., Am. 24.89.
11. (1) Hor., Sat. 2.5.33. (2) Ter., Ad. 1.1.49.
(3) Plin., Ep. 1.11.1. (4) Plin., Ep. 5.18.1.
(5) Ter., Hec. 1.2.197. (6) Cic., Cat. 1.8.20.
(7) Cic., Marcell. 11.33. (8) Cic., Fam.
1.5.b.2. (9) Liv. 120. (10) Hor., Ep. 2.2.58.
(11) Mart. 12.47. (12) Cic., Am. 21.80.
12. (1) Vulg., Gen. 1.1 and 27. (2) Suet., Caes. 37.
(3) Ter., Hec. 3.5.461. (4) Cic., Sen. 19.68.
(5) Sen., Brev. Vit.; see Duff, Silver Age p.
216. (6) Ter., Phor. 2.1.302. (7) Cic., Sen.
7.22. (8) Cic., Off. 1.24.84. (9) Tac., Ann.
1.1.1. (10) Laber. in Macr. 2.7.
13. (1) Caes., B.G. 1.21. (2) Cic., Sull. 24.67.
(3) Cic. Cat. 3.10. (4) Cic., Am. 21.80.
(5) Publil. Syr. 206. (6) Sen., Ep. 7.8.
(7) Sen., Ep. 80.3. (8) Phaedr. 4.21.1.
14. (1) Vulg., Gen. 1.10. (2) Lucr. 5.822–823.
(3) Virg., Ecl. 2.33. (4) Hor., Sat. 1.1.33–

34. (5) Ter., Phor. 3.2.506. (6) Hor., Od. 3.1.13. (7) Enn. in Cic., Rep. 3.3.6. (8) Sall., Cat. 3.4. (9) Hor., Od. 3.30.6–7. (10) Hor., Ep. 2.3.268–269. (11) Cic., Sen. 6.17. (12) Hor., Ep. 1.11.27.
15. (1) Ter., Hec. 3.4.421–422. (2) Cic., Fam. 16.9.2. (3) Cic., Arch. 3.5. (4) Tac., Ann. 12.32. (5) Cic., Cat. 3.2.3. (6) Cic., Verr. 2.5.62. (7) Catull. 3.5 and 10. (8) Ter., Ad. 5.4 *passim*. (9) Cic., Tusc. 5.20.58.
16. (1) Phaedr., 3.7.1. (2) Virg., Geor. 1.145. (3) Ter., Phor. 1.4.203. (4) Cic., Or. 59.200. (5) Virg., Aen. 3.657–658. (6) Virg., Aen. 4.569–570. (7) Mart. 7.85.3–4. (8) Hor., Ep. 1.2.62; *cp.* Ch. 2 S.A. 11. (9) Servius on Aen. 1.683. (10) Hor., Od. 2.16.27–28. (11) Phaedr., Fab. 1. Prologus 3–4. (12) Cic., Leg. 1.22.58. (13) Sen., Clem. 1.19.6. (14) Sen. Brev. Vit. (15) Cic., Sen. 19.70. (16) Vell. 2.66.3 (*cp.* Duff., Silver Age p. 91).
17. (1) Ter., Phor. 2.1.287–288. (2) Cic., N.D. 3.34.83. (3) Cic., Cat. 1.12.30. (4) Publil. Syr. 321. (5) Hor., Ep. 1.2.40–41. (6) Publil. Syr. 353. (7) Publil. Syr. 232. (8) Cic., Am. 15.54. (9) Publil. Syr. 86. (10) Cic., Am. 25.92. (11) Cic., Am. 27.102. (12) Sen., Ep. 7.1 and 8.
18. (1) Virg., Aen. 5.231. (2) Tac., Ann. 15.59. (3) Cic., Cat. 1.3.6. (4) Publil. Syr. 393. (5) Ov., Met. 4.428. (6) Plin., Ep. 9.6.1. (7) Cic., Fam. 9.20.3. (8) Lucr. 3.830–831. (9) Publil. Syr. 37. (10) Cic., Marcell. 2.7. (11) Enn. (See Duff., Golden Age p. 148.) (12) Hor., Sat. 1.2.11. (13) Juv. 1.74.
19. (1) Lucr. 1.112. (2) Cic., Cat. 3.5.13. (3) Cic., Sest. 67.141. (4) Ter., Hec. 1.2.132. (5) Cic., Cat. 1.4.9. (6) Cic., Planc. 33.80. (7) Cic., Am. 15.55.
20. (1) Mart. 13.94.1. (2) Cic., Fin. 5.29.87. (3) Cic., Am. 12.42. (4) Cic., De Or. 1.61.261. (5) Hor., Od. 1.38.1. (6) Hor., Sat. 1.3.66. (7) Cic., Sen. 5.15. (8) Sen., Clem. 1.6.2–3. (9) Cic., Off. 1.2.4. (10) Quint., Inst. 8.3.41. (11) Hor., Od. 1.22.1–2. (12) Cic., Fam. 16.9.3. (13) Cic., Cat. 3.5.10.
21. (1) Publil. Syr. 507. (2) Mart. 1.86.1–2. (3) Cic., Cat. 1.11.27. (4) Hor., Epod. 16.1–2. (5) Cic., Am. 6.22. (6) Cic., Sen. 19.69. (7) Cic., N.D. 2.62.154. (8) Cic., Sen. 17.59. (9) Phaedr., App. 27. (10) Vulg., Job 28.12. (11) Liv., 22.39.19.
22. (1) Cic., Att. 9.10.3. (2) Hor., Od. 2.3.1–2. (3) Cic., Rep. 3.31. (4) Cic., Cat. 1.1.3. (5) Cic., Marcell. 10.32. (6) Cic., Cat. 1.12.30. (7) Cic., Cat. 3.1.1. (8) Liv. 32.33.10. (9) Plaut., Aul. 4.10.772. (10) Cic., Am. 17.64. (11) Hor., Ep. 2.3.148–149. (12) Virg., Georg. 2.490 and 493. (13) Sen., Ep. 17.12. (14) Hor., Ep. 1.1.19. (15) Hor., Sat. 1.1.106–107. (16) Mart. 10.76.1.
23. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.2.6. (2) Liv. 44.42.4. (3) Hor., Sat. 1.1.68–69. (4) Cic., N.D. 2.4.12. (5) Hor., Ep. 2.1.156. (6) Nep., Att. 4. (7) Quint., Inst. Praef. 5. (8) Hor., Sat. 1.10.72. (9) Quint., Inst. 11.3.157. (10) Cic., N.D. 3.33.82. (11) Cic., Sen. 3.9. (12) Hor., Ep. 1.16.66. (13) Sen., Ep. 61.3. (14) Hor., Ep. 1.18.71.
24. (1) Cp. Plutarch, Cato ad fin. (2) Plin., H.N. 33.148. (3) Caes., B.C. 2.43. (4) Cic., Sex. Rosc. 1.3. (5) Cic., Marcell. 8.24. (6) Hor., Od. 3.14.14–16. (7) Cic., Rep. 2.30. (8) Tac., Dial. 5.
25. (1) Ter., Heaut. Prolog. 18. (2) Cic., 1.11.27. (3) Cic., Cat. 1.11.27. (4) Cic., Cat. 3.2.4. (5) Cic., Cat. 4.10.22. (6) Cic., Off. 1.1.1. (7) Ter., Phor. 4.1.581–582. (8) Cic., Sen. 16.56. (9) Enn. in Cic., Div. 2.56.116. (10) Cic., Tusc. 1.42.101. (11) Cic., Tusc. 5.37.108. (12) Cic., quoted in Dumesnil's Lat. Synonyms s.v. *abnuere*. (13) Cic., Tusc. 5.40.118. (14) Cic., Sen. 21.77. (15) Cic., Sen. 19.68. (16) Plin., Ep. 7.9.15.
26. (1) Cic., Sen. 16.55. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.3.6. (3) Sen., Contr. 6.7.2; Publil. Syr. 253. (4) Cic., Cat. 3.1.5. (5) Sen., Ep. 61.3. (6) Ov., Her. 17.71–72. (7) Hor., Epod. 2.1.7, 8. (8) Cic., Am. 26.99. (9) Cic., Sen. 19.68. (10) Mart. 1.107.1–2. (11) Mart. 14.208. (12) Cic., Off. 1.22.74. (13) Catull. 12.
27. (1) Ov., Met. 7.21–22. (2) Mart. 1.16.1. (3) Ter., Ad. 5.5.884, 5.7.922. (4) Plin., Ep. 10.88. (5) Cic., Sen. 6.19. (6) Cic., Off. 1.22.78. (7) Cic., Off. 1.22.77. (8) Cic., Sen. 2.5. (9) Sen., Ep. 17.9. (10) See Ch. 4 S.A.7. (11) Cic., Marcell. 3.8. (12) Cic., Tusc. 5.20.57–5.21.62.
28. (1) Liv. 22.39.21. (2) Cic., Off. 1.22.77. (3) Cic., Cat. 1.7.18. (4) Ter., Phor. 5.5.831. (5) Hor., Epod. 13.3–4. (6) Sen., Ep. 80.3. (7) Sen. (8) Diog. Laert.: a Latin translation from his Greek. (9) Quint., Inst. 2.2.5. (10) Cic., Am. 24.89. (11) Ov., A.A. 1.97. (12) Virg., Aen. 1.1–2.
29. (1) Virg., Ecl. 10.69. (2) Virg., Aen. 4.653. 655. (3) Ter., Phor. 3.2.497–498. (4) Hor., Ep. 1.1.40. (5) Juv. 1.30. (6) Cic., Cat. 1.1.3.

- (7) Cic., Phil. 10.10.20. (8) Cic., Phil. 4.5.9.
 (9) Nep., Milt. 5. (10) Cic., De Or. 1.61.260.
 (11) Hor., A.P. (Ep. 2.3) 335–336. (12) Ter.,
 Heaut. 4.2.675. (13) Cic., Off. 1.23.80.
 (14) Cic., Am. 9.29.
30. (1) Cic., Cat. 4.3.6. (2) Phaedr. 3.7.1. (3) Hor.,
 Sat. 1.5.67–68. (4) Virg., Ecl. 8.43.
 (5) Hor., Sat. 1.4.16. (6) Cic., Marcell.
 10.30. (7) Lucr. 1.55–56. (8) Lucr. 2.4.
 (9) Hor., Ep. 1.2.1–4. (10) Hor., Ep. 1.18.96–
 97, 100–101. (11) Sen., Ep. 115.14.
 (12) Prop. 2.15.29–30. (13) Cic., Tusc.
 1.41.99.
31. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.6.15. (2) Cic., Am. 12.42.
 (3) Cic., Cat. 1.5.10 and 1.9.23. (4) Hor.,
 Od. 1.14.1–2. (5) Cic., Marcell. 7.22.
 (6) Cic., Q. Fr. 1.2.4.14. (7) Cic., Cat. 3.5.12.
 (8) Cic., Sen. 10.33. (9) Liv. 45.8. (10) Ter.,
 Ad. 2.1.155. (11) Ter., Phor. 1.2.137–138.
 12. Cic., Cluent. 53.146.
32. (1) Publil. Syr. 512. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.5.10.
 (3) Hor., Ep. 1.6.29. (4) Ter., Ad. 5.9.996.
 (5) Ter., Heaut. 4.1.622. (6) Cic., Sen. 3.7.
 (7) Ter., Ad. 4.5.701. (8) Caes., B.G. 3.18.
 (9) Plaut., Trin. 2.2.361. (10) Publil. Syr.
 129. (11) Sall., Cat. 8. (12) Cic., Fin.
 3.7.26. (13) See Ch. 18 S.A. 11. (14) Sen.,
 Ep. 80.6. (15) Hor., Sat. 1.1.25–26.
 16. Hor., Ep. 2.3.102–103 (Ars Poetica).
33. (1) Veg., Mil. Prolog. 3. (2) Cic., Off. 1.22.76.
 (3) Cic., Sull. 31.87. (4) Cic., Q. Fr. 1.3.5.
 (5) Phaedr. App. 18. (6) Hor., Sat. 2.7.22–
 24. (7) Publil. Syr. 412. (8) Hor., Od.
 4.10.6. (9) Juv. 3.152–153.
34. (1) Virg., Aen. 3.188. (2) Hor., Sat. 1.3.68–69.
 (3) Cic., N.D. 2.62.154. (4) Cp. Sen., De Ira
 2.9.1 and Cic., Tusc. 3.9.19. (5) Cic., Cat.
 1.5.10. (6) Hor., Od. 3.16.7. (7) Cic., Fam.
 7.10.1. (8) Publil. Syr. 350. (9) Mart. Bk. I
 Praef. 1–2. (10) Cic., Sen. 19.69. (11) Ter.,
 Heaut. 1.2.239–240. (12) Cic., Am. 6.22.
 (13) Cic., De Or. 2.67.274. (14) Virg., Aen.
 1.199.
35. (1) Sen., cp. Ep. 8.7; and Hor., Sat. 2.7.83 ff. and
 Ep. 1.16.66. (2) Publil. Syr. 290. (3) Publil.
 Syr. 99. (4) Hor., Sat. 1.1.86–87. (5) Cic.,
 Fin. 1.18.60, 4.24.65; De Or. 1.3.10 et pas-
 sim. (6) Publil. Syr. 767 and 493. (7) Vulg.,
 Gen. 1.26. (8) Cic., Rep. 2.24.59. (9) Caes.,
 B.G. 4.23 and 5.45. (10) Quint., Inst.
- 10.1.112. (11) Hor., Ep. 2.2.41–42.
 (12) Publil. Syr. 687. (13) Hor., Sat. 2.2.135–
 136. (14) Virg., Aen. 1.630. (15) Publil.
 Syr. 288.
36. (1) Vulg., Gen. 1.3. (2) Lucr. 1.205. (3) Ter.,
 Heaut. 2.3.314. (4) Caes., B.C. 2.43.
 (5) Ter., Ad. 3.4.505. (6) Ter., Heaut.
 5.5.1049 and 1067. (7) Hor., Od. 1.11.7–8.
 (8) Pers. 5.151–152. (9) Sen., Ep. 61.2.
 (10) Cic., Sen. 8.26. (11) Hor., Ep. 2.2.206–
 211. (12) Hor., Od. 1.24.19–20. (13) Ov.,
 Am. 1.2.10. (14) Cic., Am. 5.7. (15) Cic.,
 Arch. 2.3.
37. (1) Hor., Ep. 2.3.68. (2) Virg., Aen. 6.126.
 (3) Ov., A.A. 3.62–65. (4) Ter., Hec. 1.2.132;
 Ad. 1.1.26. (5) Ter., Ad. 5.5.882. (6) Ter.,
 Ad. 4.1.517, 4.2.556. (7) Hor., Sat. 1.9.1.
 (8) Cic., Tusc. 5.21.62. (9) Cic., Verr.
 2.4.54.120. (10) Ter., Hec. 3.4.421 and 423.
 (11) Cic., Cat. 1.9.23. (12) Nep., Att. 8; Cic.,
 Phil. 2.12.28, Tusc. 5.37.109 (names
 changed). (13) Cic., Att. 12.50. (14) Cic.,
 Sen. 7.24. (15) Prop., 2.15.23–24.
38. (1) Caes., B.G. 1.31. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.4.9.
 (3) Cat., 4.7.16. (4) Cic., Am. 7.23.
 (5) Cic., Cat. 1.6.13. (6) Cic., Am. 15.53.
 (7) Cic., Cat. 1.7.18. (8) Cic., Cat. 4.11.24.
 (9) Virg., Ecl. 1.7. (10) Cic., Fam. 4.5.6.
 (11) Sen., Ep. 17.11. (12) Cic., Marcell. 4.11.
 (13) Plin., Ep. 5.16.4–5. (14) Hor., Od.
 1.37.1–2.
39. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.12.30. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.13.32.
 (3) Cic., Off. 1.22.74. (4) Publil. Syr. 762.
 (5) Cic., Off. 1.25.89. (6) Cic., Verr. 2.4.54.
 (7) Cic., Off. 3.32.113. (8) Cic., Sest. 2.5
 (9) Cic., Sen. 5.15. (10) Cic., Att. 2.23.1.
 (11) Publil. Syr. 704. (12) Cic., Leg. 1.23.60.
 (13) Virg., Aen. 4.175. (14) Cic., Fam.
 5.12.4.
40. (1) Cic., Cat. 4.7.14. (2) Hor., Od. 3.30.6–7.
 (3) Cic., Tusc. 1.41.97. (4) Ter., Ad. 5.4.856.
 (5) Sen., Ep. 7.7. (6) Plin., Ep. 9.6.2.
 (7) Lucr. 4.1286–87. (8) Cic., Fam. 14.12.
 (9) Liv.: see Loci Immutati #17. (10) Cic.,
 Marcell. 10.32. (11) Catull. 43.1–3.
 (12) Ter., Heaut. 1.1.77. (13) Cic., Am.
 21.81. (14) Vulg., Exod. 20.11. (15) Caes.,
 B.G. 1.47. (16) Cic., Cat. 1.4.8. (17) Cic.,
 Planc. 42.101.

ABOUT THE AUTHOR

Frederic M. Wheelock (1902–1987) received the A.B., A.M., and Ph.D. degrees from Harvard University. His long and distinguished teaching career included appointments at Haverford College, Harvard University, the College of the City of New York, Brooklyn College, Cazenovia Junior College (where he served as Dean), the Darrow School for Boys (New Lebanon, NY), the University of Toledo (from which he retired as full Professor in 1968), and a visiting professorship at Florida Presbyterian (now Eckert) College. He published a number of articles and reviews in the fields of textual criticism, palaeography, and the study of Latin; in addition to *Wheelock's Latin* (previously titled *Latin: An Introductory Course Based on Ancient Authors*), his books include *Latin Literature: A Book of Readings* and *Quintilian as Educator* (trans. H. E. Butler; introd. and notes by Prof. Wheelock). Professor Wheelock was a member of the American Classical League, the American Philological Association, and the Classical Association of the Atlantic States.

ABOUT THE REVISION EDITOR

Richard A. LaFleur received the B.A. and M.A. in Latin from the University of Virginia and the Ph.D. in Classical Studies from Duke University. He has taught since 1972 at the University of Georgia, where he is currently Franklin Professor and Head of one of the largest Classics programs in North America. He has numerous publications in the fields of Latin language, literature, pedagogy, and teacher-preparation, including five recent books, *The Teaching of Latin in American Schools: A Profession in Crisis*, *Latin Poetry for the Beginning Student*, *Love and Transformation: An Ovid Reader*, *Latin for the 21st Century: From Concept to Classroom*, and (with Paul Comeau) *Workbook for Wheelock's Latin*. Professor LaFleur is also editor of *The Classical Outlook* (since 1979) and a past President of the American Classical League (1984–1986). He has been recipient of nearly half a million dollars in grants from the National Endowment for the Humanities and other agencies and of state, regional, and national awards for teaching and professional service, including, in 1984, the American Philological Association's award for Excellence in the Teaching of Classics.

When Professor Frederic M. Wheelock's *Latin* first appeared in 1956, the reviews extolled its thoroughness, organization, and conciseness; at least one reviewer predicted that the book "might well become the standard text" for introducing students to elementary Latin. Now, more than four decades later, that prediction has certainly proved accurate.

The sixth edition of *Wheelock's Latin* has all the features that have made it the bestselling single-volume beginning Latin textbook, many of them revised and expanded:

- 40 CHAPTERS WITH GRAMMATICAL EXPLANATIONS AND READINGS BASED ON ANCIENT ROMAN AUTHORS
- SELF-TUTORIAL EXERCISES WITH AN ANSWER KEY FOR INDEPENDENT STUDY
- AN EXTENSIVE ENGLISH-LATIN/LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY
- A RICH SELECTION OF ORIGINAL LATIN READINGS—UNLIKE OTHER TEXTBOOKS, WHICH CONTAIN PRIMARILY MADE-UP LATIN TEXTS
- ETYMOLOGICAL AIDS

Also new to the sixth edition are maps of the Mediterranean, Italy, and the Aegean area, as well as numerous photographs illustrating aspects of classical culture, mythology, and historical and literary figures presented in the chapter readings.

PRAISE FOR THE PREVIOUS EDITION

"Generations of students have learned Latin successfully from Wheelock's venerable text. LaFleur preserves the best features of the original book, while adapting it to meet twenty-first-century demands."

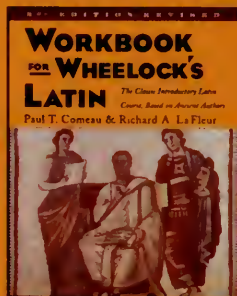
—Professor Anne H. Groton, St. Olaf College

"The new edition makes a world of difference."

—Professor Robert A. Kaster, Princeton University

"The sentences for translation have been tremendously improved; . . . expansion of grammatical explanations and advice about how to study Latin [appear in] almost all the chapters."

—Professor Cecil Wooten, University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, in the *Classical Journal*

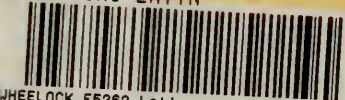


Also Available:
WORKBOOK FOR
WHEELOCK'S LATIN,
3RD EDITION,
REVISED

PRICE

\$20.00

WHEELOCK'S LATIN



WHEELOCK F5262 Latin
5140650 0P000004 07282003 HARP
352- B 535138

513

www.harpercollins.com

Cover design © 2000 by Irving Freeman

Cover photograph © by Giraudon/Art Resource, NY

ISBN 0-06-095641-0



5 2095 >

EAN

9 780060 956417

USA \$20.95 Canada \$30.95

0600